



Kodak

Prinergy Connect

Workflow System

Version 5.2

Workshop User Guide

English

Copyright

© Kodak, 2012. All rights reserved.

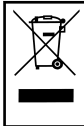
Some documentation is distributed in Portable Document Format (PDF). You may reproduce such documentation from the PDF file for internal use. Copies produced from the PDF file must be reproduced in whole.

Trademarks

Kodak, Creo, Connect, Direct, Evo, InSite, Maxtone, Pandora, Powerpack, Preps, Prinerger, Publish, SQUAREspot, and Staccato are trademarks of Kodak.

Acrobat, Adobe, Distiller, Illustrator, Photoshop, and PostScript are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Apple, AppleShare, AppleTalk, iMac, ImageWriter, LaserWriter, Mac OS, Power Macintosh, and TrueType are registered trademarks of Apple Inc. Macintosh is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S.A. and other countries. Hexachrome, PANTONE, PANTONE Goe, PANTONE Hexachrome, and PANTONE MATCHING SYSTEM are the property of Pantone, Inc. PEARL, PEARLdry, PEARLgold, PEARLhdp, and PEARLsetter are registered trademarks of Presstek, Inc. XEROX is a trademark of XEROX CORPORATION.

Equipment recycling



In the European Union, this symbol indicates that when the last user wishes to discard this product, it must be sent to appropriate facilities for recovery and recycling.

Contact your local Kodak representative or refer to <http://www.kodak.com/go/recycle/> for additional information on the collection and recovery programs available for this product.

REACH

Please consult <http://www.kodak.com/go/REACH> for information about the presence of substances included on the candidate list according to article 59(1) of Regulation (EC) No. 1907/2006 (REACH).

<http://graphics.kodak.com/>

Internal 731-02055A-EN Rev. A

Revised 2012-03-23

Contents

| | | |
|---|---|----|
| 1 | Using help..... | 1 |
| | Help tabs and buttons..... | 1 |
| 2 | Getting started..... | 3 |
| | What is Prinerger Workshop?..... | 3 |
| | Starting Prinerger Workshop..... | 4 |
| | Connect to Server dialog box..... | 5 |
| | Updating Workshop on the client..... | 6 |
| | Starting Dashboard..... | 7 |
| | How do I start processing jobs?..... | 7 |
| | Remote access to Workshop and a Prinerger server..... | 7 |
| | Prinerger Direct..... | 9 |
| | Adobe software components..... | 10 |
| | Quitting Prinerger Workshop..... | 12 |
| | Pinging a remote Prinerger server..... | 12 |
| | Locating translated documents..... | 13 |
| 3 | Job Finder..... | 15 |
| | About the Job Finder window..... | 15 |
| | Changing views in Job Finder..... | 16 |
| | Job Finder window..... | 16 |
| | Menus in Job Finder..... | 19 |
| | Workshop menu in Job Finder..... | 19 |
| | File menu in Job Finder..... | 20 |
| | Edit menu in Job Finder..... | 22 |
| | View menu in Job Finder..... | 22 |
| | Process menu in Job Finder..... | 23 |
| | Tools menu in Job Finder..... | 24 |
| | Help menu in Job Finder..... | 26 |
| | Keyboard shortcuts in Job Finder..... | 26 |
| 4 | Job Manager..... | 29 |
| | About the Job Manager window..... | 29 |
| | About user and job favorites..... | 29 |
| | Changing views in Job Manager..... | 30 |
| | Selecting items in Job Manager..... | 30 |
| | Expanding and collapsing items in the Process Templates pane..... | 31 |
| | Getting information about an element..... | 31 |
| | Managing process templates on the job and user tab..... | 31 |
| | Job Manager window..... | 32 |
| | Pages view..... | 33 |
| | Signatures view..... | 39 |
| | Separations view..... | 46 |
| | Storage view..... | 48 |
| | History view..... | 51 |
| | Process Templates pane..... | 52 |
| | Processes pane..... | 53 |
| | Get Info dialog box..... | 53 |
| | Manage Job/User Favorites dialog box..... | 58 |
| | Menus in Job Manager..... | 59 |

| | |
|---|-----------|
| Workshop menu in Job Manager..... | 60 |
| File menu in Job Manager..... | 60 |
| Edit menu in Job Manager..... | 63 |
| View menu in Job Manager..... | 66 |
| Job menu in Job Manager..... | 67 |
| Process menu in Job Manager..... | 68 |
| Tools menu in Job Manager..... | 70 |
| Help menu in Job Manager..... | 72 |
| Keyboard shortcuts in Job Manager..... | 73 |
| 5 Workflow..... | 75 |
| A typical workflow..... | 75 |
| Diagram: workflow..... | 76 |
| Workflows in Prinerger Direct..... | 76 |
| Hub-and-spoke workflow with partial jobs..... | 77 |
| Hub-and-spoke workflow with jobs..... | 78 |
| Flat-based workflow..... | 79 |
| Page creator workflow | 80 |
| 6 Jobs..... | 81 |
| Creating jobs..... | 81 |
| Job creation..... | 81 |
| Pre-jobs..... | 82 |
| Job, group, and file naming requirements and best practices | 83 |
| Template jobs..... | 83 |
| Job folders..... | 84 |
| Creating jobs and pre-jobs..... | 85 |
| Create New Job / Pre-Job dialog box..... | 86 |
| Select Template Job dialog box..... | 88 |
| Job attributes..... | 89 |
| Job status..... | 89 |
| Job attributes..... | 90 |
| Setting job status and other attributes..... | 90 |
| Edit / Set Job Attributes dialog box..... | 91 |
| Managing jobs..... | 96 |
| Job management..... | 96 |
| Getting information on jobs..... | 97 |
| Finding jobs and pre-jobs..... | 98 |
| Find Job dialog box..... | 98 |
| Find Job Results dialog box..... | 98 |
| Opening jobs and pre-jobs..... | 99 |
| Open Job dialog box..... | 99 |
| Renaming jobs and pre-jobs..... | 100 |
| Rename Job dialog box..... | 100 |
| Using job notes..... | 100 |
| Job Notes dialog box..... | 101 |
| Destroying jobs and pre-jobs..... | 102 |
| Destroy Job dialog box..... | 102 |
| Viewing information about jobs and pre-jobs..... | 102 |
| Job Info dialog box..... | 103 |
| Changing a job to a pre-job or a pre-job to a job..... | 107 |
| Move Job dialog box..... | 107 |
| Job groups..... | 108 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| About job groups..... | 108 |
| Moving jobs and pre-jobs between groups..... | 108 |
| Creating groups..... | 108 |
| Create New Group dialog box..... | 109 |
| Moving groups..... | 110 |
| Move Group dialog box..... | 110 |
| Renaming groups..... | 110 |
| Rename Group dialog box..... | 111 |
| Deleting groups..... | 111 |
| Copying and moving jobs between servers..... | 111 |
| About copying jobs..... | 112 |
| About moving jobs..... | 112 |
| About moving jobs from a remote server..... | 113 |
| Copying jobs and pre-jobs..... | 114 |
| Copy Job / Pre-Job dialog box..... | 115 |
| Moving jobs from remote servers..... | 116 |
| Move Job from Remote Server dialog box..... | 117 |
| Copy Job process template..... | 117 |
| Custom fields..... | 118 |
| About custom fields..... | 118 |
| Viewing custom fields..... | 119 |
| Creating custom fields..... | 120 |
| Custom Fields Manager dialog box..... | 120 |
| Add Custom Fields dialog box..... | 122 |
| 7 Input files..... | 125 |
| Customer files..... | 125 |
| About preparing customer files..... | 125 |
| About supported input file types..... | 126 |
| About FreeHand..... | 126 |
| About Illustrator..... | 127 |
| About InDesign..... | 128 |
| About PageMaker | 128 |
| About Photoshop..... | 129 |
| About copydot scans and other DCS files..... | 129 |
| About duotones..... | 130 |
| About QuarkXPress..... | 130 |
| Adding and deleting files..... | 143 |
| About adding and removing files..... | 143 |
| Adding input files using the menu..... | 145 |
| Adding input files using drag-and-drop..... | 146 |
| Adding input files using a hot folder..... | 147 |
| Removing input files..... | 147 |
| Deleting pages | 147 |
| Add Input Files dialog box..... | 147 |
| Correcting input files..... | 150 |
| About correcting input files..... | 150 |
| Overwriting all pages in a file (multiple-pages-per-file original)..... | 150 |
| Overwriting individual pages (multiple-pages-per-file original)..... | 151 |
| Overwriting individual pages (single-page-per-file original)..... | 152 |
| CT/LW and TIFF/IT files..... | 153 |
| About processing CT/LW and TIFF/IT files..... | 153 |
| About TIFF input files..... | 157 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| About enhancing processing of CT/LW files..... | 157 |
| About eliminating artifacts when processing CT/LW files..... | 159 |
| About moving CT/LW data around the network..... | 160 |
| PDF files..... | 160 |
| About PDF input files..... | 161 |
| About PDF specification levels..... | 162 |
| About transparency support..... | 163 |
| About recommended Acrobat Distiller 8, 9, and X settings for content..... | 165 |
| Raster-separated data..... | 167 |
| Formatting raster-separated data to use with Workshop and Pandora..... | 167 |
| Correcting the dieline orientation in Copydot Toolkit..... | 168 |
| Merging dielines to artwork in copydot toolkit..... | 168 |
| Setting the trim box in Copydot Toolkit..... | 169 |
| Reformatting TIFF files as a high-resolution PDF in Copydot ToolKit..... | 170 |
| 8 Starting processes..... | 171 |
| About starting processes..... | 171 |
| Starting processes..... | 171 |
| Bypassing the Start Process dialog box..... | 172 |
| Stopping, pausing, and resuming processes..... | 172 |
| Deleting completed processes..... | 173 |
| Generating a process report for troubleshooting..... | 173 |
| Choose process template dialog box..... | 174 |
| Start Process dialog box..... | 174 |
| Start Process for Digital Printing dialog box..... | 177 |
| 9 Process templates..... | 183 |
| About process templates..... | 183 |
| About modifying process templates..... | 183 |
| About temporarily modifying process templates..... | 183 |
| About protecting process templates..... | 184 |
| What are JTPs?..... | 184 |
| Creating process templates..... | 185 |
| Creating process templates based on an existing process template..... | 186 |
| Save process template dialog box..... | 186 |
| Modifying process templates..... | 187 |
| Temporarily modifying process templates..... | 187 |
| Renaming process templates..... | 187 |
| Deleting process templates..... | 188 |
| Process Template Editor..... | 188 |
| Saving factory templates..... | 189 |
| Factory templates..... | 189 |
| File Browser dialog box..... | 190 |
| Menus in Process Template Editor..... | 190 |
| Workshop menu in Process Template Editor..... | 190 |
| File menu in Process Template Editor..... | 191 |
| Edit menu in Process Template Editor..... | 192 |
| View menu in Process Template Editor..... | 193 |
| Tools menu in Process Template Editor..... | 193 |
| Help menu in Process Template Editor..... | 195 |
| Keyboard shortcuts in Process Template Editor..... | 195 |
| Process template groups..... | 196 |
| About process template groups..... | 196 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| Creating process template groups..... | 197 |
| Renaming process template groups..... | 197 |
| Deleting process template groups..... | 197 |
| Changing process template group icons..... | 198 |
| Moving process templates between groups..... | 198 |
| 10 Refining..... | 199 |
| About refining..... | 199 |
| Refining input files manually..... | 200 |
| Refining input files using a hot folder..... | 200 |
| Refine process template..... | 201 |
| CEPS Conversion section of the Refine process template..... | 201 |
| Fonts and Images section of the Refine process template..... | 202 |
| Normalize section of the refine process template..... | 209 |
| PDF Preflight section of the Refine process template..... | 218 |
| Copydot section of the Refine process template..... | 220 |
| Spot Color Handling section of the Refine process template..... | 221 |
| ColorConvert section of the refine process template..... | 225 |
| Trap section of the refine process template..... | 233 |
| Optimize section of the Refine process template..... | 245 |
| Thumbnail section of the Refine process template..... | 251 |
| Impose section of the Refine process template..... | 251 |
| About bypassing refine..... | 252 |
| Bypass Refine process template..... | 253 |
| Why PDF?..... | 255 |
| About common density limit..... | 256 |
| About neutral density..... | 256 |
| About overprint conversion..... | 257 |
| About overprint handling..... | 257 |
| About reader spread splitting..... | 260 |
| About step limit..... | 262 |
| About thumbnails..... | 262 |
| Trapping examples..... | 265 |
| About using OPI with transparent effects..... | 267 |
| Using soft masks during OPI..... | 268 |
| Using drop shadows during OPI..... | 269 |
| Including clipping paths during OPI..... | 270 |
| Including spot color channels during OPI..... | 270 |
| PDF preflight..... | 271 |
| About PDF preflight..... | 271 |
| About page box layout | 272 |
| Preflighting PDF files..... | 274 |
| Managing Preflight profiles..... | 274 |
| Viewing PDF Preflight reports..... | 275 |
| Generating PDF Preflight reports for distribution..... | 275 |
| Preflight Profile Manager..... | 276 |
| Preflight Profile Editor..... | 276 |
| Document settings in Preflight Editor..... | 278 |
| Page settings in Preflight Editor | 283 |
| Font settings in Preflight Editor..... | 286 |
| Color settings in Preflight Editor..... | 289 |
| Image settings in Preflight Editor..... | 296 |
| OPI settings in Preflight Editor..... | 299 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Text and Line Art settings in Preflight Editor..... | 300 |
| PDF/X settings in Preflight Editor..... | 302 |
| Image search paths..... | 304 |
| About image search paths..... | 304 |
| About OPI..... | 307 |
| About optimizing images..... | 309 |
| Adding image search paths..... | 310 |
| Deleting image search paths..... | 310 |
| Setting the order of image search paths..... | 310 |
| Image Search Paths dialog box..... | 310 |
| Fonts..... | 312 |
| Font handling overview..... | 312 |
| Font Converter..... | 313 |
| Font search paths..... | 314 |
| OpenType fonts..... | 315 |
| Asian fonts..... | 316 |
| Converting fonts..... | 320 |
| Font Installation dialog box..... | 320 |
| Using font search paths..... | 321 |
| Font Search Path dialog box..... | 322 |
| Adobe in Prinerger..... | 323 |
| About Adobe applications..... | 323 |
| About trapping tools..... | 323 |
| About plug-ins for Adobe Acrobat..... | 325 |
| Viewing or editing pages..... | 326 |
| Viewing or editing traps..... | 326 |
| Deleting traps..... | 327 |
| Starting a plug-in for Adobe Acrobat..... | 327 |
| Prinerger PDF File Editor..... | 327 |
| Editing PDF files in Adobe Illustrator..... | 329 |
| Resolving conflicts in Prinerger PDF File Editor..... | 330 |
| Kodak Distiller Assistant..... | 331 |
| Kodak Distiller Assistant overview..... | 331 |
| Setting up Kodak Distiller Assistant..... | 332 |
| Distiller Assistant components..... | 333 |
| 11 Page sets and impositions | 341 |
| Page sets | 341 |
| Page sets | 341 |
| About assigning pages | 342 |
| About assigning specific positions to pages | 343 |
| About copying page assignments between page sets | 345 |
| About deleting page sets | 345 |
| About layering pages in page sets | 345 |
| About page sets and multiple imposition plans | 346 |
| Adding page sets | 347 |
| Add Page Set dialog box | 347 |
| Layering pages | 348 |
| Deleting page sets | 349 |
| Manually assigning pages to page sets and imposition plans | 349 |
| Assign Page to Page Set Position dialog box | 349 |
| Copying page assignments between page sets | 350 |
| Copy Page Assignments dialog box | 351 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| Unassigning pages from page set positions | 351 |
| Impositions | 351 |
| About imposition plans | 351 |
| Supported imposition file types | 352 |
| About importing populated job tickets from Preps..... | 353 |
| About importing impositions | 354 |
| About removing vs. destroying imposition plans | 354 |
| Importing impositions | 355 |
| Importing a populated job ticket from Preps..... | 356 |
| Updating imposition plans | 356 |
| Removing imposition plans | 357 |
| Destroying imposition plans | 357 |
| Preserving cutting data from Preps..... | 358 |
| Import process template (impositions)..... | 358 |
| Destroy Imposition dialog box..... | 368 |
| Import Imposition dialog box..... | 368 |
| Page geometry | 371 |
| About page geometry | 371 |
| Using addition and subtraction when setting page geometry | 372 |
| Example: page offset | 375 |
| Example: page geometry order of operations | 375 |
| Example: page orientation | 377 |
| Setting page geometry | 377 |
| Set Page Geometry dialog box | 378 |
| Centering pages | 379 |
| About centering pages | 379 |
| Centering pages | 380 |
| Returning centered pages to their original offsets | 380 |
| Automated Page Assignment (APA) | 380 |
| About Automated Page Assignment | 380 |
| About the names and location of APA files..... | 382 |
| About geometry assignments..... | 382 |
| Examples: APA page assignment | 385 |
| About rules for APA..... | 392 |
| About adding and subtracting page positions in APA | 394 |
| About wild cards and pattern matching in APA..... | 398 |
| About page set position wild cards in APA | 401 |
| About creating raw APA..... | 409 |
| About wild cards in raw APA..... | 412 |
| About named patterns as back references in raw APA..... | 412 |
| Creating or editing APA files in the APA editor..... | 415 |
| Creating or editing APA files in a text editor..... | 416 |
| Enable APA in process templates..... | 417 |
| Automated Page Assignment Editor | 417 |
| Open APA File dialog box..... | 423 |
| Save APA File as dialog box..... | 423 |
| Menus in Automated Page Assignment Editor..... | 424 |
| Ganging..... | 430 |
| Identifying source pages and page aliases..... | 430 |
| Ganging with page aliases..... | 432 |
| 12 Outputs..... | 433 |
| Generating loose page output | 433 |

- Loose Page Output process template433
 - Copydot section of the Loose Page Output process template433
 - ColorFlow section of the Loose Page Output process template.....434
 - ColorConvert section of the Loose Page Output process template440
 - Layout section of the Loose Page Output process template445
 - Render section of the Loose Page Output process template452
 - Calibration and Screening section of the loose page output process template.....459
 - Processed File Options section of the Loose Page Output process template469
 - File Format section of the Loose Page Output process template471
 - Device section of the Loose Page Output process template476
 - Include JDF for Digital Print section of the Loose Page Output process template479
 - Marks section in the Loose Page Output process template483
- Generating imposition outputs489
- Imposition Output process template489
 - Copydot section of the Imposition Output process template490
 - ColorFlow section of the Imposition Output process template.....491
 - ColorConvert section of the Imposition Output process template497
 - Layout section of the Imposition Output process template501
 - Render section of the Imposition Output process template510
 - Calibration and Screening section of the imposition output process template.....513
 - Processed File Options section of the Imposition Output process template524
 - File Format section of the Imposition Output process template526
 - Device section of the Imposition Output process template531
 - Include JDF for Digital Print section of the Imposition Output process template534
 - Marks section in the imposition output process template538
- Generating final output.....543
- Final Output process template.....544
 - Copydot section of the Final Output process template.....544
 - ColorFlow section of the final output process template.....545
 - ColorConvert section of the Final Output process template.....551
 - Layout section of the Final Output process template.....556
 - Render section of the Final Output process template.....562
 - Calibration and Screening section of the Final Output process template.....565
 - PrintLink section of the Final Output process template.....575
 - Processed Files section of the Final Output process template.....578
 - Device section of the Final Output process template.....580
 - File Format section of the Final Output process template.....583
 - Marks section in the Final Output process template.....588
 - Creating page and sheet mark files that include variable marks.....591
- Generating CT/LW output for the Karat digital device593
- CTLW Karat Output process template.....594
 - ColorFlow section of the CTLW Karat Output process template.....594
 - ColorConvert section of the CTLW Karat Output process template.....596
 - Layout section of the CTLW Karat Output process template.....600
 - Render section of the CTLW Karat output process template606
 - Device section of the CTLW Karat Output process template613
 - Marks section in the CTLW Karat Output process template.....614
- Proofs and final output.....620
 - About supported output formats.....620
 - About support output file types.....625
 - About generating proofs and final output.....626
 - Remaking plates.....626
 - Plate Remake dialog box.....627
 - Applying ColorFlow curves and making tonal adjustments.....628

| | |
|---|-----|
| Tonal Control dialog box..... | 629 |
| About PDF/X..... | 630 |
| About soft proofs..... | 636 |
| About document screening..... | 637 |
| About dot shapes..... | 638 |
| About minimum dot size calculation..... | 640 |
| Screen types..... | 641 |
| About screen systems..... | 643 |
| Staccato Dot Size and Screen Ruling Equivalents..... | 647 |
| About screen angles..... | 649 |
| About seamless imaging..... | 650 |
| About advanced TIFF tags..... | 650 |
| About TIFF compression..... | 651 |
| What is PJTF?..... | 652 |
| Example: crop marks..... | 653 |
| Example: add extra vertical space..... | 653 |
| Example: orientation..... | 653 |
| Example: add extra horizontal space..... | 654 |
| Example: shifting images horizontally and vertically..... | 654 |
| About tiling output..... | 655 |
| About custom file naming..... | 657 |
| About outputting to a file..... | 661 |
| Using the Altona Test Suite..... | 662 |
| Setting up Maxtone screens..... | 663 |
| Setting up Staccato screens..... | 664 |
| IS Screening..... | 665 |
| IS screening..... | 665 |
| Creating and editing IS screen sets..... | 665 |
| Using seamless imaging..... | 668 |
| Hiding IS screen sets..... | 668 |
| Digital printers..... | 669 |
| About using digital printers..... | 669 |
| Sending files using the Managed Connections method..... | 671 |
| Sending files using an alternate Managed Connections method..... | 672 |
| Sending files using the legacy method..... | 672 |
| Submit to Digital Print dialog box..... | 675 |
| Publish File process template..... | 677 |
| Marks..... | 689 |
| About marks..... | 689 |
| Methods of adding marks files..... | 691 |
| Sheet marks on final output..... | 691 |
| Calculating the at distance value on final output..... | 692 |
| Recommended Acrobat Distiller 8, 9, and X settings for marks..... | 692 |
| Sheet marks options explained..... | 695 |
| Overview of adding marks..... | 697 |
| Importing imposition marks files..... | 698 |
| Configuring Distiller for marks..... | 698 |
| Distilling PostScript marks files..... | 698 |
| Setting a process template to use marks file..... | 699 |
| Marks options in the process template..... | 700 |
| Variable marks..... | 700 |
| Text-file-based marks..... | 719 |
| Publish to PDF..... | 724 |
| About publishing PDF files..... | 724 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Publishing PDF files..... | 725 |
| Publish to PDF File dialog box..... | 725 |
| Web growth..... | 728 |
| Web growth profiles..... | 729 |
| Example: web growth profile..... | 730 |
| Example: nonlinear web growth profile..... | 731 |
| Example: Trapezoidal/pillow sheet growth profile..... | 734 |
| Example: tower-color file..... | 735 |
| Calculating web growth..... | 736 |
| Creating a web growth profile..... | 739 |
| Setting up a tower-color profile..... | 739 |
| Applying and removing a web growth profile..... | 739 |
| Set Web Growth Profile dialog box..... | 741 |
| PrintLink..... | 742 |
| About PrintLink..... | 742 |
| Creating a process template to generate a PPF file..... | 744 |
| Customizing tags in the PrintLink configuration file..... | 746 |
| Sample PrintLink configuration file..... | 747 |
| Customizable tags in the PrintLink PPF file..... | 747 |
| Ink reports..... | 750 |
| Previewing loose pages | 752 |
| About previewing loose page output | 752 |
| Previewing loose page output | 752 |
| Imposition Preview dialog box | 753 |
| Special output..... | 754 |
| Creating PDF/X output..... | 754 |
| Creating a process template for DCS vector output..... | 755 |
| Creating a process template for thermal bluelines..... | 756 |
| Creating a process template for Veris..... | 758 |
| Creating PDF 1.3 output from complex transparency files..... | 759 |
| Page set booklets..... | 760 |
| About page set booklets | 760 |
| Creating a process template for page set booklets | 761 |
| Generating a page set booklet | 762 |
| Signature booklets | 762 |
| About signature booklets | 762 |
| Preparing to generate a signature booklet..... | 763 |
| Creating a process template for signature booklets | 764 |
| Generating a signature booklet | 769 |
| 13 Approvals..... | 771 |
| About approvals..... | 771 |
| Changing the approval status of pages | 772 |
| Changing the approval status of proofs..... | 772 |
| Approval Comment dialog box..... | 773 |
| 14 Color..... | 775 |
| Color spaces..... | 775 |
| About color spaces..... | 775 |
| About converting color spaces..... | 775 |
| Managing color spaces..... | 776 |
| Color Space Editor window..... | 776 |
| Rename Color Component dialog box..... | 777 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Select File dialog box..... | 777 |
| Menus in Color Space Editor..... | 778 |
| Color libraries and definitions..... | 781 |
| About color libraries and definitions..... | 781 |
| About how Prinergy searches for color definitions..... | 783 |
| About the PANTONE library..... | 784 |
| Adding or changing colors in separations..... | 785 |
| Adding or changing color definitions while refining..... | 786 |
| Adding or changing color definitions while generating loose proofs..... | 787 |
| Color Editor window..... | 788 |
| Managing color definitions..... | 790 |
| Job Color Picker dialog box..... | 791 |
| Global Color Picker dialog box..... | 791 |
| Managing color libraries..... | 791 |
| Add New Color Library dialog box..... | 792 |
| Import Color Library dialog box..... | 792 |
| Export Color Library dialog box..... | 793 |
| Copying a color between the Job and Global tabs..... | 793 |
| Select a Color Library dialog box..... | 793 |
| Menus in Color Editor..... | 794 |
| Separations..... | 798 |
| About color separations..... | 798 |
| Identifying common separations..... | 799 |
| Seeing which pages contain a color | 800 |
| Adding a color separation..... | 800 |
| Add Separation dialog box..... | 800 |
| Setting initial separations..... | 801 |
| Color Separations dialog box..... | 801 |
| Specifying a color print order..... | 803 |
| Print Order dialog box..... | 803 |
| Spot colors..... | 804 |
| About reducing and preserving spot colors (overview)..... | 804 |
| About Color Combiner..... | 805 |
| About reducing and preserving spot colors during refine..... | 807 |
| About reducing and preserving spot colors in proofs..... | 809 |
| About reducing and preserving spot colors in final output..... | 812 |
| Reducing spot colors (workflow)..... | 814 |
| Aliasing spot colors to different names..... | 815 |
| Preserving spot colors during refine..... | 816 |
| Reducing all spot colors during refine..... | 816 |
| Reducing individual spot colors during refine..... | 817 |
| Preserving spot colors in loose page output | 818 |
| Reducing all spot colors in loose page output | 818 |
| Reducing individual spot colors in loose page output..... | 819 |
| Preserving spot colors in imposition output | 821 |
| Reducing all spot colors in imposition output | 821 |
| Reducing individual spot colors in imposition output | 822 |
| Preserving spot colors in final output..... | 823 |
| Reducing all spot colors in final output..... | 824 |
| Reducing individual spot colors in final output..... | 825 |
| Color Mappings dialog box..... | 826 |
| Color Output dialog box..... | 828 |
| About Spotless Extended Color Management..... | 830 |
| Die line and varnishes..... | 830 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| About die line and varnish colors..... | 830 |
| Setting die line and varnish colors..... | 831 |
| Using ColorFlow software..... | 831 |
| 15 Monitoring..... | 839 |
| Processes..... | 839 |
| About monitoring processes in Job Manager..... | 839 |
| About completed processes..... | 840 |
| About process status icons..... | 840 |
| Viewing detailed information about a process..... | 841 |
| Deleting completed processes..... | 841 |
| Processes pane..... | 841 |
| Process Info dialog box..... | 842 |
| Queue Manager..... | 843 |
| About Queue Manager..... | 844 |
| Opening Queue Manager..... | 845 |
| Stopping, pausing, and resuming processes in Queue Manager..... | 845 |
| Changing processing priority..... | 845 |
| Viewing information about processes in Queue Manager..... | 846 |
| Queue Manager window..... | 846 |
| Select Task Priority dialog box..... | 849 |
| Menus in Queue Manager..... | 849 |
| System History..... | 854 |
| About System History..... | 855 |
| About viewing screening information of completed jobs..... | 855 |
| Displaying System History..... | 856 |
| Copying system history messages..... | 856 |
| System History window..... | 856 |
| Menus in System History..... | 857 |
| Job history..... | 861 |
| About viewing job history..... | 861 |
| About destroying job history..... | 861 |
| Viewing job history..... | 862 |
| Destroying history entries..... | 862 |
| 16 Job export/import..... | 863 |
| Job export..... | 863 |
| About exporting jobs..... | 863 |
| About incremental exports..... | 864 |
| Exporting a job or partial job..... | 865 |
| Export process template..... | 865 |
| Job import..... | 866 |
| About importing jobs..... | 867 |
| Importing an entire job using the menus..... | 867 |
| Importing an entire job using hot folders..... | 868 |
| Importing a partial job using the menus..... | 868 |
| Importing a partial job using hot folders..... | 869 |
| Import Job dialog box..... | 869 |
| Import process template (jobs)..... | 870 |
| 17 Archives..... | 875 |
| Archive, purge, and retrieve..... | 875 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| About archiving, purging, and retrieving jobs..... | 875 |
| About status and state changes after archiving, purging, and retrieving..... | 877 |
| Archiving..... | 878 |
| Archive process template..... | 879 |
| Purging..... | 881 |
| Purge process template..... | 882 |
| Retrieving..... | 884 |
| Retrieve process template..... | 885 |
| Moving from Archive-to-tape to Archive-to-disk | 887 |
| Media Manager..... | 888 |
| About managing storage media..... | 888 |
| About verifying a medium..... | 888 |
| About copying a medium..... | 889 |
| About completing a tape..... | 890 |
| Viewing information about media pools and disk volumes..... | 890 |
| Verifying that a media pool or disk volume is readable..... | 891 |
| Copying an entire medium..... | 891 |
| Making a tape read only..... | 892 |
| Archive Medium Logical Copy process template..... | 892 |
| Media Manager window..... | 895 |
| Menus in Media Manager..... | 898 |
| 18 Automation..... | 905 |
| Hot folders..... | 905 |
| About hot folders..... | 905 |
| About adding files to a hot folder..... | 906 |
| About hot folders functions..... | 907 |
| Adding files to a hot folder..... | 907 |
| Creating hot folders..... | 908 |
| Deleting hot folders..... | 909 |
| Editing hot folders..... | 909 |
| Reusing hot folders with a template job..... | 909 |
| Disabling hot folders..... | 910 |
| Create/Edit Hot Folder for Job dialog box..... | 910 |
| Manage Hot Folders for Job dialog box..... | 912 |
| Smart hot folders..... | 912 |
| Smart hot folders..... | 912 |
| Examples: invalid naming patterns..... | 914 |
| About the hot folder type options..... | 916 |
| Examples: valid naming patterns..... | 917 |
| About naming patterns in smart hot folders..... | 919 |
| Case study: smart hot folder..... | 921 |
| Diagram: create jobs and process, move, and rename files using smart hot folders..... | 923 |
| Diagram: create jobs and process files using smart hot folders..... | 924 |
| Diagram: create jobs, process, and move files using smart hot folders..... | 925 |
| Diagram: create jobs using smart hot folders..... | 926 |
| Diagram: move files using smart hot folders..... | 926 |
| Diagram: process files using smart hot folders..... | 927 |
| Diagram: rename files using smart hot folders..... | 927 |
| Working with smart hot folders..... | 928 |
| Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box..... | 928 |
| Configuring smart hot folders..... | 929 |
| Navigating the Add/Edit Smart Hot Folder dialog box..... | 932 |

| | |
|---|-------------|
| Add/Edit Smart Hot Folder dialog box..... | 932 |
| Select Target Group dialog box..... | 936 |
| Checking whether the smart hot folder worked..... | 936 |
| Workflow templates..... | 937 |
| About workflow templates..... | 937 |
| Using a workflow template..... | 938 |
| Creating and modifying workflow templates..... | 938 |
| Workflow Template Editor..... | 939 |
| 19 Versions..... | 941 |
| About versioning..... | 941 |
| Layered PDF Versioning..... | 941 |
| About Layered PDF Versioning..... | 941 |
| Legacy versioning..... | 1022 |
| About legacy versioning..... | 1022 |
| Overview of legacy versioning steps..... | 1024 |
| Preparing the base and version input files..... | 1025 |
| Importing versioning impositions | 1025 |
| Importing versioning impositions and use existing page sets | 1026 |
| Copying source page assignments to other imposition plans | 1027 |
| Reordering page layers | 1027 |
| Enter Number of Versions dialog box..... | 1027 |
| Import Versioning Imposition dialog box | 1028 |
| Reorder Page Assignments dialog box | 1030 |
| Select Page Set dialog box | 1031 |
| Outputting versioned separations..... | 1031 |
| 20 Customization..... | 1033 |
| About customizing Workshop..... | 1033 |
| Displaying and hiding columns..... | 1034 |
| Moving columns..... | 1034 |
| Sorting items by column..... | 1034 |
| Displaying lists or thumbnails..... | 1035 |
| Expanding and collapsing all items in a view or pane..... | 1035 |
| Setting Workshop preferences..... | 1035 |
| Overriding the default mode (Connect or Powerpack) on a client..... | 1036 |
| Workshop Preferences dialog box..... | 1036 |
| Visible Columns dialog box in History view..... | 1041 |
| Visible Columns dialog box in Imposition Plans pane | 1041 |
| Visible Columns dialog box in Input Files pane..... | 1043 |
| Visible Columns dialog box in Job Finder..... | 1044 |
| Visible Columns dialog box in Media Manager..... | 1047 |
| Visible Columns dialog box in Page Sets pane | 1050 |
| Visible Columns dialog box in Pages pane | 1050 |
| Visible Columns dialog box in Queue Manager..... | 1053 |
| Visible Columns dialog box in Separations view..... | 1055 |
| Visible Columns dialog box in Storage view..... | 1057 |
| Visible Columns dialog box in System History..... | 1058 |
| 21 Integrated products..... | 1059 |
| Preps..... | 1059 |
| Preps integration options..... | 1059 |

| | |
|--|------|
| Setting up integrated Preps..... | 1060 |
| Editing Prinergy Impositions in Preps..... | 1061 |
| Saving Preps resource files to Prinergy folder..... | 1061 |
| Importing a raw imposition file manually | 1062 |
| Importing a raw imposition file with hot folders | 1063 |
| Importing a raw imposition file with smart hot folders | 1064 |
| Creating a Preps imposition plan | 1065 |
| Editing a Preps imposition | 1068 |
| Opening Preps outside of job context..... | 1070 |
| Setting Integrated Preps preferences..... | 1070 |
| Edit Imposition dialog box | 1071 |
| New Imposition dialog box | 1073 |
| New Imposition Details dialog box | 1074 |
| Start Imposition Application dialog box | 1079 |
| Preps Ganging..... | 1080 |
| Preps Ganging and Prinergy..... | 1080 |
| Setting the Preps Ganging software location..... | 1081 |
| Creating a layout with integrated Preps Ganging..... | 1081 |
| Editing a layout with integrated Preps Ganging..... | 1082 |
| Automating creation of a ganged job..... | 1083 |
| Imposition software | 1087 |
| About integrating imposition software | 1087 |
| Overview of tasks for integrating imposition software | 1088 |
| Setting the imposition software location | 1088 |
| Create an Export process template for impositions | 1089 |
| Create an Import process template for impositions | 1089 |
| Creating or editing Pandora impositions | 1089 |
| Configure Imposition Applications dialog box | 1091 |
| Prepress Portal..... | 1092 |
| About integrating with Prepress Portal..... | 1092 |
| About approval statuses and Prepress Portal..... | 1093 |
| About the location of files from Prepress Portal..... | 1093 |
| About creating and controlling jobs in Prepress Portal..... | 1094 |
| Job workflow with Prepress Portal..... | 1095 |
| Enabling web access for customers with Prepress Portal..... | 1096 |
| Select Web Access Customer dialog box..... | 1096 |
| Prinergy Business Link..... | 1096 |
| About integrating with Prinergy Business Link..... | 1096 |
| Sending information to Business Link..... | 1097 |
| Customizing work types..... | 1097 |
| Manage Work Types dialog box..... | 1098 |
| Edit Work Type dialog box..... | 1099 |
| Switching users..... | 1099 |
| Connect to Server dialog box..... | 1099 |
| Creative software..... | 1100 |
| About opening files in other software..... | 1100 |
| Configuring the list of other software..... | 1100 |
| Opening a file with other software..... | 1101 |
| Configure Applications dialog box..... | 1101 |
| Digital print software..... | 1102 |
| About integrating digital print client software..... | 1102 |
| Integrating digital print client software with Workshop..... | 1103 |
| Add Digital Print Application dialog box..... | 1104 |
| Configure Digital Print Application dialog box..... | 1104 |

| | |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| UpFront integration..... | 1105 |
| UpFront, Preps, and Prinergy..... | 1105 |
| Connecting UpFront to Prinergy..... | 1106 |

1

Using help

Help tabs and buttons

Use the tabs and buttons in the Help window to navigate through the help system.

Tabs at the bottom of the left pane

Contents

Displays the Table of Contents

Index

Displays the index (a list of key words).

Search Results

Displays the topics that were found the last time that you searched.

Buttons above the left pane

Print Topics

Choose **Print selected topic** to print this particular topic or **Print selected topic and all subtopics** to print the entire chapter.

Collapse All

Collapses all expanded topics in the left pane.

Refresh/Show Current Topic

Highlights the current topic in the Table of Contents in the left pane. This is useful after you follow links to new topics.

Maximize and Minimize

Maximize expands the pane to fill the entire window. **Minimize** returns a maximized pane to its previous size. You can also double-click the title of the pane to switch between the expanded and minimized pane sizes.

Buttons above the right pane

Go Back

Displays the previous page, in the same way as Web browsers.

Go Forward

Displays the next page, in the same way as Web browsers.
Available only after you use **Go Back**.

Home

Displays the main page of the help system.

Show in Table of Contents

Highlights the current topic in the Table of Contents in the left pane. This is useful after you follow links to new topics.

Bookmark Document

Saves the topic as a bookmark or "favorite" in the Web browser.
Available only in certain Web browsers.

Print Page

Prints the current topic (not the contents of the entire window).

Maximize and Minimize

Maximize expands the pane to fill the entire window. **Minimize** returns a maximized pane to its previous size. You can also double-click the title of the pane to switch between the expanded and minimized pane sizes.

2

Getting started

What is Prinergy Workshop?

Prinergy enables you to create and edit jobs, refine input files into pages, assign pages to page sets and impositions, proof pages and impositions, output to film or plate, monitor job activity and status, and archive job files.

Prinergy product family

Prinergy is the name of the product family that includes:

- Prinergy Connect
- Prinergy Powerpack
- Kodak Prinergy Direct
- Prinergy Evo

Products are defined by the features they offer, and product features are controlled by licensing. The Prinergy Administrator license determines the number of concurrent users allowed in a Prinergy system. You may add features to your Prinergy product by purchasing license keys for specific features.

Components of Prinergy

Prinergy consists of several software components:

- **Administrator** enables you to configure and manage your Prinergy system.

Administrator runs on the Prinergy server.

For information about Administrator, see the Prinergy administration documentation.

- **Prinergy Workshop** is the component that you use on a daily basis. It enables you to create jobs, assign pages to page sets and imposition plans, monitor job activity and status, and start processing on elements.

Prinergy Workshop is client software that runs on both Apple Macintosh and Microsoft Windows operating systems. It can be distributed throughout your facility, creating a teamwork environment where prepress managers, customer service

representatives, prepress, and plateroom operators can initiate work or obtain current production status.

- **Prinerger Dashboard** software shows status and progress of Prinerger jobs in a graphical, consolidated view. Dashboard is designed for customer service representatives, prepress managers, and production planners. Job status is updated continuously, so the current status of Prinerger jobs is always available. Dashboard lets you search for jobs and create job lists based on your criteria, so that you can view only the jobs that you're interested in.

This guide provides detailed information about using Prinerger Workshop. For a basic overview of Prinerger Workshop and the Prinerger system see the *Prinerger Connect Quick Start Guide*.

Prinerger Workshop visually groups all of the information pertaining to a job, including source files, imposition plans, status, history, and other data.

See also:

[Adobe software components](#) on page [10](#)


[Job Finder window](#) on page [16](#)

[Job Manager window](#) on page [32](#)

[Starting processes](#) on page [171](#)

Starting Prinerger Workshop

Note: This procedure assumes that Prinerger Workshop is already installed. For information on installing Prinerger Workshop, contact your system administrator.

1. On your client desktop, double-click the **Workshop**  icon.
The Connect to Server dialog box appears.
2. If your system has more than one server, in the **Server** list, select the primary server.
If the **Server** list does not display the server that you want, the server may be in a different Windows subnet (Windows) or Apple zone (Macintosh). In that case, select **Other**. In the Enter Host Name dialog box, type the IP address or name of the server and then click **OK**.
3. Compare the number in the **Workshop Version** field with the number in the **Server Version** field. If the numbers are different, update Prinerger Workshop now.
4. In the **User name** box, type your user name.
5. In the **Password** box, type your password.
If you do not know your user name or password, contact your system administrator.

6. If your system includes Prinergy Business Link software, and you may want to change the current user without having to restart Prinergy Workshop, select **Enable User Switching**.
7. Click **Login**.

Prinergy Workshop starts and the Job Finder appears.

See also:

[Switching users](#) on page [1099](#)

Connect to Server dialog box

User name

Enter the user name associated with your Prinergy Workshop account.

Password

Enter the password associated with your Workshop account.

Enable User Switching

Select this check box if you want to be able to change the current user identity without having to restart Prinergy Workshop.

This check box is available only if you use Kodak Prinergy Business Link software.

Server

The name of the primary Prinergy server.

Prinergy Workshop Version

Displays the version of Workshop installed on your computer. If this version differs from the server version, update Prinergy Workshop.

Note: On Mac OS X and Windows computers, you cannot log in to Workshop unless the Workshop version and the server version are the same.

Server Version

Displays the version of Prinergy installed on the primary Prinergy server. If this version differs from the server version, update Prinergy Workshop.

Note: On Mac OS X and Windows computers, you cannot log in to Prinerger Workshop unless the Prinerger Workshop version and the server version are the same.

Connection Information

Click ▸ to expand this area, which enables you to select a server and update the version of Workshop if necessary.

Updating Workshop on the client

You can automatically update Workshop with the Prinerger Installer Wizard when you start the Workshop software. This provides you with updates for existing features. If you want to install new software (for example, Prinerger PDF Edit, Prinerger Digital Submit, or Prinerger Digital Direct), you must run the Prinerger Installer Wizard from the share.

Requirements:

- Quit other software, such as Prinerger VPS or Kodak Preps.
- On computers running Mac OS X, you must have an administrator password to update Workshop. For more information, contact your system administrator.

Perform this procedure on all workstations after the servers and render stations have been upgraded.

1. To start Workshop, type your user name and password, and click **Login**.
If the number beside **Workshop Version** is different than the number beside **Server Version**, the Workshop updating process is triggered automatically. If the two numbers are the same, Workshop starts normally.
2. In the Synchronize Workshop dialog box, click **Yes**.
If you click **No**, you cannot log on to Workshop.
3. On a computer running Mac OS X, perform the following actions:
 - a. In the Prinerger Workshop dialog box, click the **lock** icon.
 - b. In the Authenticate dialog box, in the **Password** box, type the administrator password.
 - c. Click **OK**.
4. Follow the instructions in the wizard to update the software.
The system installs the latest version of Workshop.
5. When the installation is complete, click **Done**.
Workshop starts automatically.

Starting Dashboard

Dashboard is available on any computer with a web browser, whether Prinerger is installed on that computer or not.

1. In a web browser, go to `http://<prinerger-server-name>/Dashboard`, where `<prinerger-server-name>` is the name of the Prinerger primary server that you want to view.
2. Enter your user name and password.
3. If a message indicates that you need a newer version of the Adobe Flash Player software, follow the prompts to download and install the correct version of Adobe Flash Player.

Next: In Dashboard, click the Help link at the upper right corner of the Dashboard window to display the Dashboard Help, or right-click an item to display context-sensitive help for that item. In addition, many menu items have tool tips that display information.

How do I start processing jobs?

To process jobs, you use Prinerger Workshop to apply process templates to jobs or elements of a job.

Process templates and workflow templates control all processes, such as refine and output. Process templates contain instructions for a single process, while workflow templates link two or three process templates together.

Process templates save time and reduce errors by allowing you to store your preferred settings in a file. Instead of entering the various settings and options each time, you start the saved process template in a variety of ways, and the system automatically applies those settings.

If process templates are not already set up, you need to create them using the Process Template Editor.

See also:

[Process Template Editor](#) on page [188](#)

Remote access to Workshop and a Prinerger server

There are two methods for controlling a Prinerger server and running Workshop from a location other than where the Prinerger system is installed:

- Use Windows Terminal Services (WTS) to open a remote desktop
- Run Workshop locally and connect to a remote Prinerger server

Using WTS to open a remote desktop

You can control Prinerger servers remotely using WTS. WTS is factory-installed on each Prinerger server (primary, secondary, and render station) and is normally used for remote servicing of the Prinerger system.

Because it is running at all times, WTS can be useful for remotely administering a server, without the need for a site visit. You can also use WTS via Prinerger Administrator and Workshop job control to create jobs, add inputs, edit process templates, and so on. WTS does not work well for design work or evaluation. For example, attempting to open PDF pages over a WTS link results in very poor screen-drawing performance.

Note: Microsoft licensing limitations allow you to make only two WTS administrative connections at a time to a single server. You can add more remote WTS licenses, but Kodak supports only two licenses.

Connecting to the server

To access a server running WTS, client software must be installed. The Microsoft Remote Desktop Connection software works well for this purpose.

If you are using the Mac OS or a version of Windows that does not include Remote Desktop Connection software, you can download the software from the Microsoft web site.

Running Workshop locally and connecting to a remote Prinerger server

Using a suitable remote access connection, you can run Workshop directly from your remote location:

1. Install Workshop on your Windows-based or Macintosh computer.
See the Prinerger user documentation for installation instructions.
2. Start your remote connection.
See your operating system documentation for instructions.
3. Start Workshop.

If you have trouble connecting to the Prinerger server, try pinging the remote Prinerger server.

Remote access connection setup

No matter which method you use, you require a TCP/IP network connection from your computer to the network where the Prinerger primary server resides. There are many ways to accomplish this; three of the more popular ones are described here. Consult the user

documentation for the product or method you want to use. If you already use one of these methods, no further setup is required.

- Dial-up link
- Virtual Private Network (VPN)
- Opening a firewall port

Note: Do not set up any of these methods directly on a Kodak workflow server. Kodak workflow server modems are specially configured for support purposes and are not intended for general remote control use. Always set up any remote access method on a non-Kodak server and use the local network to access it.

Performance improves with available bandwidth (the faster, the better). It is possible for remote Windows-based and Macintosh client computers to achieve performance that equals the performance of on-site computers.

Virtual Private Network (VPN)

A VPN uses a tunneling protocol to create a virtual, encrypted link over another medium, usually the Internet, to connect two networks.

Instructions for setting up a Windows VPN are available at <http://support.microsoft.com/kb/305550>

Opening a firewall port

This method is useful only for accessing a Prinerger server via WTS. Inbound connections on port 3389 can be allowed at the firewall, enabling WTS access directly over the Internet.

This is the least desirable of the methods listed, because of potential security risks. With careful application of firewall rules, this method can be made reasonably secure. However, it is better to spend the time and effort to configure a VPN server for a more secure and flexible service.

Note: Running Prinerger Workshop remotely (without WTS) over a firewall is not supported and is impossible to do securely. Prinerger Workshop is designed to run on a LAN, with no firewall between it and the primary server. Using Prinerger Workshop locally requires a direct, non-firewall connection to the remote LAN.

See also:

[Pinging a remote Prinerger server](#) on page 12

Prinerger Direct

Prinerger Direct software serves these two specific situations:

- Flat-based workflow where Prinerger Direct accepts imposed flats created in Preps or other software.
- Hub-and-spoke setup where Prinerger Direct imports jobs that were exported from Kodak Prinerger Connect.

In both situations, Prinergy Direct is used only to create imposition proofs and make plates.

Since Prinergy Direct is targeted to specific situations, some features are visible but unavailable. Here is a summary of the unique restrictions in Prinergy Direct:

- You can import only by using a hot folder that is associated with an Import process template. You cannot use the **Import Job** or **Import Job (Incremental)** menu items to start an Import process template.
- You can add and refine files only by using a hot folder linked to a Refine process template. You cannot manually add input files, select them, or start a Refine process template on them. In the Refine process template, the CEPS, PDF Preflight, Trap, and Thumbnail sections are unavailable.
- You cannot work with pages, page sets, or impositions. The **Pages** view, **Imposition Plans** view, and the Loose Page Proof process templates are not available.
- You can manage the colors of a job only via the Color Separations dialog box. You cannot do color mapping and management via the Color Mapping and Color Output dialog boxes.
- The workflow templates are available only using a hot folder.
- You cannot export jobs.

The Imposition Proof process templates and the Final Output process templates function similarly to the way they do in other Prinergy products.

Adobe software components

Prinergy includes new versions of software components from Adobe Systems Incorporated with this release. When you perform minor updates or major upgrades, check the `readme.txt` file to identify the latest Adobe software components that are installed.

| Software component | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| Adobe PDF Print Engine RIP | Adobe PDF Print Engine RIP rasterizes documents. Halftone screening patterns are defined by Kodak components. Adobe PDF Print Engine is the preferred RIP. Version: 2.5 |
| CPSI RIP | CPSI RIP rasterizes documents. Halftone screening patterns are defined by Kodak components. Version: 3018.101-04 |

| Software component | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| Flattener | The flattener converts documents from PDF to the Adobe PostScript language. Version: 3018.101-04 |
| Normalizer | The normalize function converts documents from the PostScript language to PDF files. Version: 9.0 |
| PDF Library | Prinerger uses the PDF Library to read, modify, and write PDF documents. Version: 10 |
| Adobe Illustrator software | Prinerger 5.2 and later support Illustrator CS3, CS4, and CS5 for use with the PDF File Editor. |
| Adobe Acrobat software | Prinerger supports Acrobat software versions 8, 9, and X. It is your responsibility to acquire and install the number of Acrobat licenses needed for client workstations. Install the Acrobat software on each Mac or Windows workstation before installing Workshop, to ensure that the Kodak plug-ins for Adobe Acrobat software are in the correct folders. Note: The Kodak Prinerger Powerpack software is bundled with one Acrobat software license. Prinerger includes several Kodak plug-ins for Acrobat, as well as Adobe Distiller job options. These plug-ins and job options are automatically installed when you install Prinerger Workshop. Kodak plug-ins for earlier versions of Acrobat are not removed during a Prinerger Workshop upgrade, but they will not be updated or supported in the future. Note: The Floating License Manager (FLIM), which allows a particular number of users to share the same license, controls the number of concurrent users. Some plug-ins do not require a license. |

Take these precautions

Ensure that the version of the RIP used to proof and approve content is the same version that is used to make final output.

Proofs and plates—When upgrading to a version of Prinerger where the RIP components have been upgraded, be careful when plating jobs that were proofed with the old RIP. Because the RIPs are different, an interpretation difference may occur between proof and plate. Ideally, jobs should be plated with the same version of Prinerger that was used to generate the proofs. Hub and spoke configurations should coordinate when performing upgrades to ensure that they are using the same RIP.

Reprints—To reprint jobs that were printed using an older RIP, rerun proofs using the new RIP. This ensures that there are no unforeseen differences between the original press run and the reprint.

Adobe PDF Print Engine—Prinerger includes Adobe PDF Print Engine, the PDF RIP from Adobe Systems Inc.

Because Adobe PDF Print Engine is a PDF RIP, files remain in PDF throughout processing. The RIP does not consume PostScript objects, and it does not flatten PDF files to PostScript before processing, like CPSI RIP does.

Adobe PDF Print Engine provides the following advantages over CPSI RIP:

- Adobe PDF Print Engine accurately handles files with native transparency without flattening. If a file exposes a problem in the flattener or in CPSI RIP, Adobe PDF Print Engine can handle the file correctly.
- Adobe PDF Print Engine's rendering of fonts is more like Adobe Acrobat's rendering of fonts.
- Adobe PDF Print Engine correctly renders text that is located below transparent images. Occasionally, when low-resolution proofs are rendered by CPSI RIP, the text appears fatter due to the flattening that occurs in CPSI. Because Adobe PDF Print Engine does not flatten, it does not have this problem.

Adobe PDF Print Engine has the following disadvantages:

- Adobe PDF Print Engine cannot process PDF files containing embedded PostScript objects, including pages that were processed with PostScript bypass or with OPI bypass features of Prinergy.
- In some cases, Adobe PDF Print Engine processes copydot data and separated pages more slowly than CPSI RIP.

Quitting Prinergy Workshop

- Perform one of these actions:
 - On a Windows-based client: In Job Finder, from the **File** menu, select **Quit**.
 - On a Macintosh client: In Job Finder or Job Manager, from the **Workshop** menu, select **Quit Workshop**.

Any open Prinergy Workshop windows close.

Pinging a remote Prinergy server

If Workshop cannot connect to the primary server even after you enter the IP address manually, use the ping utility to determine whether the IP address is accessible.

When you log in, in the Connect to Prinergy Server dialog box, in the Primary host box, you may need to manually enter the IP address of the primary server. The network broadcast that Workshop normally uses

to find a primary server does not often work well across a routed connection.

1. Open the command prompt window.
2. At the command prompt, type: `ping <primary server IP address>`

For example: `ping 2.159.12.141`.

Your computer will send several packets of data to the specified IP address.

3. At the bottom of the command prompt, check the **Ping statistics**.

If the packets of data were sent and received successfully, the IP address you specified is accessible.

If the packets of data were not sent and received successfully, the IP address is not accessible. In this case, your connection is not set up properly. Contact your IT department for assistance.

Locating translated documents

Some of the documents that this user guide refers to have been translated into other languages.

For a list of translated documents for this product:

1. Log on to the Kodak eCentral Internet portal at <https://partnerplace.kodak.com/>.
2. Select **Support & Services > Self-Support > Product Documentation**.
3. In the **Choose a product** list, select the product, and click **Go**.

You will see a complete list of available documents for this product, including titles that have been translated.

3

Job Finder

About the Job Finder window

Job Finder is the first window that appears when you start Prinergy Workshop.

You must create a job for every publication that you want to print and then add to the job the content files that make up that publication.

Job Finder is where you:

- Find jobs and pre-jobs
- Create new jobs and pre-jobs
- Manage existing jobs and pre-jobs
- Set job status and other attributes
- Create and manage groups to organize your jobs

Inside Job Finder are columns that provide information about each job, such as when the job was created, where the job is stored, job status, and so on. You can display and hide columns. The columns affect Job Finder speed.

Job Finder consists of two views: **Jobs** and **Pre-Jobs**.

In either view, jobs and pre-jobs are organized by group. Grouping jobs makes them easier to find and manage. We recommend that you store jobs and pre-jobs in separate groups to help you distinguish between them.

Changing views in Job Finder

Change between the **Jobs** view and the **Pre-Jobs** view of Job Finder.

- Perform one of these actions:
 - Click **Jobs** or **Pre-Jobs** at the top of Job Finder.
 - From the **View** menu, select **Jobs** or **Pre-Jobs**.

Job Finder window

Views

Jobs

Lists all of the jobs in your system.

Pre-Jobs

Lists all of the pre-jobs in your system

Columns

Name

The name of the job, pre-job, or group. This column cannot be hidden.

Job Alias

The alias of jobs in your system. For systems where the job name is a number, the job alias provides the meaningful job name. **Job Alias** corresponds to **Job Description** in Kodak InSite Prepress Portal. If you change the job alias in Prinergy, the job description in InSite Prepress Portal is changed.

Kind

Indicates whether the item is a job, pre-job, or group.

Job Status

The status of the job. When a job is created, its status is set to **In Prepress**.

You can change a job's status in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box. The following statuses are available:

- **Created**
- **In Prepress**

- **On Press**
- **Shipped**
- **Completed**
- **Ready for Final Output**
- **Completed Final Output**

If the job is enabled for Web access through Prepress Portal, the following additional statuses are available:

- **In Cart**
- **Pending Order Approval**
- **Order Requested**
- **Order Accepted**
- **Order Rejected**

Select **Enable Press Side Proofing** if the workflow includes the Kodak PressProof software.

Job Home

The full path name for the job folder location.

Created

The date and time when you created the job or pre-job.

Job Code

A job code that you specify. The job code can be anything that is meaningful to you or to your customer.

The job code is:

- Available to an imposition job ticket
- Available as a variable mark on the job's output
- Exported with a job
- Included in CIP3 files when Prinergy generates CIP3 files during final output

The job code also appears in Prepress Portal, if the job is enabled for Web access through Prepress Portal. If you change the job code in Prinergy, the job code in PrePress Portal is changed.

Proof Due

The date and time that the proofs for the job are due. This information is set in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box.

Final Output Due

The date and time that the final output for the job is due. This information is set in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box.

Web Access Customer

The name of the customer for whom you have enabled web access. This information is set in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box.

Online

Indicates whether a job is fully or partially **Offline** or **Online**.

Offline indicates that no files in the job's job folder exist on the job home server. Files from outside the job folder may still be online. When you fully purge a job, its status is **Offline** since purging removes all files in the job folder from the job home server.

Online indicates that at least one file for the job is on the job home server.

If this column is blank, the status of the job is not known.

Max Layers

The maximum number of pages that you can assign to one page position. This information is set in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box and only applies to legacy versioning jobs.

Pages Approved

The number of approved pages, over the total number of pages in the job.

Errors/Warnings

Displays the most important error or warning status from the most recent processes in the **Processes** pane of Job Manager.

Full Surfaces

The number of surfaces for which all positions have pages assigned, over the total number of surfaces in the job.

Final Output Count

The number of separations you have output using a final output process template, over the total number of separations in the job.

Last Final Output

Date and time the last separation was output using a final output process template.

Last Archived

The date and time that someone last archived the job.

Archive Status

The quantity of files in the job that you have archived at any time. Possible statuses are:

- **None:** The job has not been archived.
- **Some:** Some but not all files in the job were archived. This can occur when you:
 - Archive only selected files, not the whole job
 - Archive the job, and then add one or more files to the job, for example, by adding input or processing an input file that had not been processed before the archive
 - Change one or more of the archived files, for example by processing it again
- **All:** The job was archived and no changes have been made to any files in the job.

Stale Archive Status

The quantity (**All Some**, or **None**) of files in the job that have changed since the last archive.

Custom Fields

You can create custom fields for jobs or for elements within a job, so that you can track unique information about the job or element. Custom fields let you determine the type of information that you view about a job or job element.

Custom Fields appear in Job Finder when you create custom fields using the Custom Fields Manager dialog box and select them in the Visible Columns dialog box.

Menus in Job Finder

Workshop menu in Job Finder

Note: This menu is available only when running Prinerger Workshop on a Macintosh client.

About Prinerger Workshop

Displays information about Prinerger Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the server name.

Preferences

Use to view and modify Prinerger Workshop preferences. When you select this menu item, the Workshop Preferences dialog box appears.

Note: On a Windows client, this menu item appears under the **Edit** menu. On a Macintosh client, it appears under the **Workshop** menu.

Quit / Quit Prinerger Workshop

Quits Prinerger Workshop. Any open Prinerger Workshop windows are closed.

File menu in Job Finder

Note: Some menu items are available only in the **Jobs** view or the **Pre-Jobs** view.

New Job / New Pre-Job

Use to create a new job or pre-job. When this menu item is selected, the Create New Job or Create New Pre-Job dialog box appears.

Open / Open Job / Open Pre-Job / Open Jobs in Group

This menu item appears as **Open Job** or **Open Pre-Job** when a job or pre-job is selected. Use this menu item to open the selected job or pre-job.

This menu item appears as **Open Jobs in Group** when a group is selected. Use this menu item to open all of the jobs in the selected group, including all of the jobs in any sub groups.

This menu item appears as **Open** when a group is selected that does not contain any jobs, or when no job or group is selected. When you select **Open**, the Open Job dialog box appears, prompting you to select a job to open.

Import Job

After you select a job or pre-job this menu item displays the Import Job dialog box where you can select an exported job (<filename>.zip) and import it into the selected job or pre-job.

Export Job

After you select a job or pre-job, this menu item display the Choose Process Template dialog box where you select an export process template and export the selected job or pre-job.

New Group

Use to create a new group.

Change Group

Use to move the selected job or pre-job to another group, or to move the selected group to another group.

Move to Pre-Job / Job

Use to change the selected job to a pre-job or the selected pre-job to a job. Once changed, the job will move to the **Pre-Jobs** tab, or the pre-job will move to the **Jobs** tab.

Note: Changing a pre-job to a job might stop Insite upload processing from working on that job, depending on how Insite is configured.

Move Job from Remote Server

Use to move the selected job from the server to a different server. When this menu item is selected, the Move Job from Remote Server dialog box appears.

Rename / Rename Job / Rename Pre-Job / Rename Group

Use to rename the selected job, pre-job, or group.

Copy / Copy Job / Copy Pre-Job

Use to copy the selected job, pre-job, or group. When this menu item is selected, the Copy Job dialog box appears.

Delete / Destroy Entire Job / Destroy Entire Pre-Job / Delete Group

Use to destroy the selected job or pre-job, or to delete the selected group. When this menu item is selected, the Destroy Job dialog box appears.

Get Info

Use to display information about the selected job or pre-job. When this menu item is selected, the Job Info dialog box appears.

Quit / Quit Prinergy Workshop

Quits Prinergy Workshop. Any open Prinergy Workshop windows are closed.

Edit menu in Job Finder

Note: Some menu items are available only in the **Jobs** view or the **Pre-Jobs** view.

Cut, Copy, and Paste (unavailable)

Set Job to Completed

Use to set the status of the selected job to **Completed**.

Setting a job's status to **Completed** deactivates the job.

Set Job to In Prepress

Use to set the status of the selected job to **In Prepress**.

Edit Job Attributes / Edit Pre-Job Attributes

Use to view and modify the attributes of the selected job or pre-job. When this menu item is selected, the Edit Job Attributes dialog box appears.

Find Job / Find Pre-Job

Use to locate a job or pre-job.

Preferences

Use to view and modify Prinergy Workshop preferences. When you select this menu item, the Workshop Preferences dialog box appears.

Note: On a Windows client, this menu item appears under the **Edit** menu. On a Macintosh client, it appears under the **Workshop** menu.

Enable Rule Set in Selected Jobs

Select this menu item to enable a rule set for the selected jobs.

This menu item opens the Enable Rule Set in Selected Jobs dialog box where you navigate through the rule set groups, select the rule set that you want to enable, and then click the **Enable in <n> Jobs** button. The **<n>** indicates the number of jobs you selected in Job Finder.

View menu in Job Finder

Note: Some menu items are available only in the **Jobs** view or the **Pre-Jobs** view.

Refresh

Updates the contents of the current window.

Jobs

When in the **Pre-Jobs** view use this menu item to switch to the **Jobs** view.

Pre-Jobs

When in the **Jobs** view use this menu item to switch to the **Pre-Jobs** view.

Visible Columns

Use to display and hide columns in the current window or pane. When you select this menu item, the Visible Columns dialog box appears. From there, you select the columns that you want to display, and clear the columns that you want to hide.

The columns that can be displayed vary from window to window.

Process menu in Job Finder

<process category> > <process type> > <process group> > <process template>

The name of each process template that applies to selected elements is available on the **Process** menu.

Click this item to start process on the selected elements using this process template.

Workflow > <workflow type> > <workflow group> > <workflow template>

Each workflow template that applies to selected elements is available on the **Process** menu.

Click this item to start process on the selected elements using this workflow template.

Manual Start Rules > <rules context> > <rules group> > <rule set>

Expands to display the rule sets that:

- Apply to the currently selected elements
- Are triggered by Manual Trigger events
- Are enabled

The first submenus under **Manual Start Rules** are:

- **All Jobs**: Select this to see system rule sets.
- **Job <job name>**: Select this to see the job rule sets enabled for the job that you are in.

After you select the first submenu, navigate through the rule set groups and select the rule set that you want to trigger.

Tools menu in Job Finder

Change User

Displays the Connect to Server dialog box where you can log in as another user without quitting Prinermy Workshop.

This menu item appears only if you have Kodak Prinermy Business Link software connected to the Prinermy system.

Job Finder

Opens Job Finder.

If you are already in Job Finder, this menu item is unavailable.

Destroy History Entries

In the **History** view, select one or more history entries and then use **Destroy History Entries** to delete the selected entries.

Process Template Editor

Launches **Process Template Editor**, where you can create and modify process templates.

Automated Page Assignment Editor

Starts the **Automated Page Assignment Editor**, which you use to create and check APA files.

Queue Manager

Launches **Queue Manager**, where you can view the Job Ticket Processors (JTPs) and process types.

Media Manager

Launches **Media Manager**, where you can manage your archive tapes and disk volumes.

System History

Launches **System History**, which displays the detailed history of all the activity occurring outside of job context (such as jobs and groups that were created or destroyed), as well as job archive, purge, and retrieve history.

Smart Hot Folder Manager

Launches the Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box, where you can add, edit and delete smart hot folders.

Configure Imposition Application

Displays the Configure Imposition Applications dialog box, where you can identify the location of imposition software that you want to integrate with Prinergy Workshop.

Start Imposition Application

Displays the Start Imposition Application dialog box, where you choose which imposition software to start. You create this list of imposition applications with the Configure Imposition Application tool from the **Tools** menu. If an application requires a license and is licensed, it appears in bold.

Color Editor

Launches **Color Editor**, where you can create color recipes for all jobs.

Color Space Editor

Launches **Color Space Editor**, where you can create and edit color spaces.

Font Converter

Launches **Font Converter**, where you can convert font files into PFA (Printer Font ASCII) format, which Prinergy requires to correctly process fonts.

Preflight Profile Manager

Launches **Preflight Profile Manager**, where you can, during the refine process, evaluate PDFs to detect problems that may affect processing in a publishing or prepress workflow.

Plate Remake

Opens the Plate Remake dialog box, where you can enter the identification number of a plate to quickly remake the plate using the same process template settings and output device that were used to make the original plate. For more information, see [Remaking plates](#) on page [626](#).

Digital Print Administration Console

Launches the Digital Print Administrator, where you can add and configure a digital print application that Prinergy can launch to print PDFs.

Rule Set Manager

Opens the Rule Set Manager, where you can create and edit rule sets. The Rule Set Manager also lets you organize rule sets into groups.

Activate Rule Set in Selected Jobs

Opens the **Select Rule Set** dialog box, where you can activate rule sets for one or more jobs.

Help menu in Job Finder

Online help

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy online help.

On <current window or view>

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy Workshop user guide, open to the topic for the currently selected window or view.

Quick Start Guide

Starts Adobe Acrobat and displays a PDF file of the *Prinergy Connect Quick Start Guide*

eCentral Online Support

Starts your Web browser and displays the eCentral portal at <https://ecentral.kodak.com/>.

Visit graphics.kodak.com

Starts your Web browser and displays the Kodak Web site at <http://graphics.kodak.com/default.htm>.

About Prinergy Workshop

Displays information about Prinergy Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the Prinergy server name.

Note: This menu item appears on the **Help** menu only when you are running Prinergy Workshop on a Windows-based client computer. On a Macintosh client computer, the menu item **About Workshop** appears on the **Workshop** menu.

Keyboard shortcuts in Job Finder

| Macintosh Keyboard Shortcut | Windows Keyboard Shortcut | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| ⌘ + Delete | Ctrl + Delete | Destroys the selected job or pre-job, or deletes the selected group |
| ⌘ + I | Ctrl + I | Displays the Job Info dialog box for the selected job or pre-job |

| Macintosh Keyboard Shortcut | Windows Keyboard Shortcut | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| ⌘ + N | Ctrl + N | Displays the Create New Job dialog box (in the Jobs view) or the Create New Pre-Job dialog box (in the Pre-Jobs view) |
| ⌘ + O | Ctrl + O | Opens the selected job or pre-job |
| ⌘ + Q | Ctrl + Q | Quits Prinerger Workshop |
| ⌘ + R | Ctrl + R | Refreshes the selected view |
| ⌘ + 1 | Ctrl + 1 | Displays the Jobs view |
| ⌘ + 2 | Ctrl + 2 | Displays the Pre-Jobs view |

See also:

[Create New Job / Pre-Job dialog box](#) on page [86](#)

[Job Info dialog box](#) on page [103](#)

[Choose process template dialog box](#) on page [174](#)

4

Job Manager

About the Job Manager window

Job Manager is where you do most of your work on a job.

For example, you add input files, import imposition plans, assign pages to page sets and imposition plans, and start processing.

The Job Manager window appears when you create a new job or pre-job or open an existing job or pre-job from Job Finder.

The window title displays the:

- Login ID of the user currently logged in to Prinergy Workshop
- Name of the job
- Name of the server where the job is

Every job or pre-job that you open appears in its own Job Manager window. You can open multiple Job Manager windows to work on more than one job at the same time.

About user and job favorites

The **Job** and **User** tabs of the **Process Templates** pane display favorites, meaning process templates that you want to access quickly or frequently.

You start processes with the process templates on both the **Job** and **User** tabs in the same way that you start processes on the **Global** tab.

Job favorites

Job favorites are the process templates on the **Job** tab and are specific to each job. Any process templates that you add to it will be available each time anyone opens the job on any computer.

Use this tab to store process templates any users may need for this job. To add process templates to the **Job** tab, see Managing process templates on the job and user tab, or you can select the **Add Process Template to Job Favorites** check box in the Start Process dialog box.

Job favorites are one of the settings you can save in a template job. You can create a template job and add process templates to its **Job** tab. Then you can create new jobs based on this template job and

automatically copy the contents of the **Job** tab from the template job to the new jobs.

User favorites

User favorites are the process templates on the **User** tab and are specific to your user account. Any process templates that you add to it will be available each time you open any job.

Use this tab to store process templates you need for several jobs. To add process templates to the **User** tab, see Managing process templates on the job and user tab.

Changing views in Job Manager

- Perform one of these actions:
 - At the top of Job Manager, click the appropriate button: **Pages**, **Signatures**, **Separations**, **Storage**, or **History**.
 - From the **View** menu, select the appropriate menu item: **Pages**, **Signatures**, **Separations**, **Storage**, or **History**.
 - Use a keyboard shortcut.

Selecting items in Job Manager

You can select items in several ways in Job Manager:

| To select | Do this |
|--------------------------------|--|
| All items in a pane | Click in a pane. On the Edit menu, click Select All . (The name of the menu item varies depending on the active pane.) |
| Items in a series | In List view, click the first item you want to select, hold down the Shift key, and click the last item. In Thumbnail view, create a box, or marquee, around the items you want to select. |
| Items that are not in a series | Hold down the Ctrl key (or the ⌘ key on a Macintosh), and click the items you want to select. (This applies to both List view and Thumbnail view.) |
| Only even or odd pages | Select the page positions. On the Edit menu, select Keep Even Pages Selected or Keep Odd Pages Selected . Note: In Pages view, this applies only to the Page Sets pane, not to the Pages pane. In Signatures view, this applies to the Imposition Plans pane. |

| To select | Do this |
|---------------------------|--|
| An entire imposition plan | In the Signatures or Separations view, select the name of the imposition plan. In the Storage view, select the file. |
| An entire page set | In Pages view, select the name of the page set in the Page Sets pane. |

Expanding and collapsing items in the Process Templates pane

| To Expand or Collapse | Do This |
|-----------------------|--|
| One item | Click the + or - icon next to the item. |
| All items | Right-click anywhere in the Process Templates pane, and select Expand All or Collapse All . Tip: You can also select the Process Templates pane. From the View menu, select Expand All or Collapse All . |

Getting information about an element

1. In Job Manager, select one or more elements, such as an input file.
2. Perform one of the following actions:
 - From the **File** menu, select **Get Info**.
 - Right-click the selection, and select **Get Info**.
3. Review the Get Info dialog box for the selected elements.
4. Click **Close**.

Managing process templates on the job and user tab

1. From the **Job** menu, select **Manage Job/User Favorites**.
Tip: You can also right-click anywhere in the **Job** or **User** tab of the **Process Templates** pane, and select **Manage Job/User Favorites**.
2. In the Manage Job/User Favorites dialog box, click the **Job** or **User** tab.

3. Perform any of the following actions:

| To | Do This |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Add a process template | Double-click the process template. |
| Delete a process template | Double-click the process template that you want to remove. |
| Change the order of process templates | Select a process template, and click Move Up or Move Down . |
| Add a separator | Click Add Separator . |
| Move a separator | Select the separator, and click Move Up or Move Down . |

4. Click **OK**.

Tip: You can also add a process template to the **Job** tab by selecting the **Add Process Template to Job Favorites** check box in the Start Process dialog box.

Job Manager window

Main pane

Pages view (with **Page Sets**, **Pages**, and **Input Files** panes)

Signatures view (with **Imposition Plans**, **Pages**, and **Input Files** panes)

Separations view

Storage view

History view

Job

The job button enables you to treat the whole job as if it were an element. You can start certain processes (archiving, purging, retrieving, and exporting) for the whole job without selecting the job files individually, and without exiting Job Manager. You can also locate the **Jobs** folder in the file browser, and get job information by opening the folder named after the job.

Right-click the job button to display the available menu items.

Right-hand panes

Process Templates pane

Processes pane

See also:

[Pages view](#) on page [33](#)

[Signatures view](#) on page [39](#)

[Separations view](#) on page [46](#)

[Storage view](#) on page [48](#)

[History view](#) on page [51](#)

Pages view

The **Pages** view of Job Manager displays information about input files, pages (input files that have been processed), and page sets.

Use this view to perform the following tasks:

- Add input files to a job
- Refine input files
- Add page sets
- Import imposition plans
- Assign pages to page sets
- Make loose page output

This view is similar to the **Signatures** view except that you see a job in reader order rather than as a layout.

Panes in Pages view

The **Pages** view has three panes, each with its own buttons and columns.

The **Page Sets** pane displays page sets for the job.

- A page set is similar to the idea of a "run list." When you import an imposition plan into the job or create a page set, the page set appears in this pane. A page set can also be created independently of an imposition.
- When you assign pages to positions in the page set, the assignment information also appears in this pane.
- You can also proof pages from this pane.

The **Pages** pane displays information about refined PDF page files. In this pane, you can work with individual PDF files to perform the following tasks:

- View a soft proof in Acrobat
- Output loose page output
- Manage page position assignments

The **Input Files** pane displays the unprocessed input files that you add to the job. You work in this pane when refining input files. Files in this pane appear in list view only. After you process your input files, you may want to collapse the **Input Files** pane to reduce the space that it occupies.

Description of Pages view

Note: The columns that you see depend on which columns are set to be displayed or hidden.

Page Sets pane

Group by Page Set

Switch this button **on** to group pages by page set, or **off** to group all pages together.

This button is available only in list view. In thumbnail view, **Group by Page Set** is always enabled.

Page Position

The page position number is a combination of the page set prefix and the position number (both user-definable).

You define the prefix when you create a page set or add an imposition plan to a job.

A value appears only if the page has been assigned to a page position on a page set.

Page

The file name of the page that is assigned to the page position

Assignment Count

Displays the number of pages assigned to the page position

Layered Page Number

Applies to the Layered PDF Versioning feature, which is currently under development. For more information, contact your sales representative.

Run List

If an imposition was imported from Preps, this column displays the run list as defined in Preps. The run list shows the order in which each page appears in the product.

Product/Part

If an imposition was imported from Preps, this column displays the product name, part name, and part page number. For

example, Brochure (A) BW Text 15 means that the product is Brochure (A), the part is BW Text, and the page position is 15.

<custom field> (more than one may be visible)

Any custom fields that were created for this job element with the **Show in Workshop** check box selected

Pages pane



Group by Assignment

Switch this button **on** to sort pages into two groups—assigned or not assigned to a page position in a page set. Switch this button **off** to group all pages, assigned and unassigned, together.

Group by Assignment can be enabled or disabled only when in list view. In thumbnail view, **Group by Assignment** is always enabled.

If both **Group by Assignment** and **Group by Input File** are enabled, sorting is first by assignment and then by input file.



Group by Input File

Switch this button **on** to sort pages according to the input files from which they were created. Switch this button **off** to group all pages together, regardless of input file.

This button can be enabled only when in list view.

If both **Group by Assignment** and **Group by Input File** are enabled, sort is first by assignment and then by input file.

Page

The file name of the page that is assigned to the page position

Page Position

The page position number is a combination of the page set prefix and the position number (both user-definable).

You define the prefix when you create a page set or add an imposition plan to a job.

A value appears only if the page has been assigned to a page position on a page set.

Surface

The name of the surface and signature to which the page is assigned. For example, if the page is assigned to the front surface of Signature 1, the **Surface** column displays A Front 1.

This column is available only in the **Pages** pane of the **Signatures** view.

Input File

The name of the input file from which the page was created

Date Refined

The date and time that the page was created

Page File Location

The path to the page file

Size

The size of the file.

The file size is listed in KB if the file is less than 1 MB, or in MB if the file is 1 MB or more.

If it is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

Preflight Report

Indicates whether a PDF Preflight report has been generated for the PDF page, or whether it is not available.

Ordinal Number

The page number in a multi-page file that this page represents

Versioned Page Status

This is part of Layered PDF Versioning. For information about it, see the *Prinergy Layered PDF Versioning User Guide*.

Page Colors

The process and spot colors in the page

Composite

Indicates whether the page is composite.

A composite file is not divided into color separations.

Customer Approval

The approval status of the page. These are the possible approval statuses:

- **Approval not Required**
- **Approval Requested**
- **Approval in Progress**
- **Waiting for Correction**
- **Approved**
- **Rejected**

Media Size

The width and height of the media box of the PDF file.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Trim Size

The horizontal and vertical measurements to which the page will be cut. The trim size is determined by the page position to which the page is assigned.

If the file is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Offset

The horizontal and vertical adjustments made to the page from the lower-left corner.

This column appears in the **Signatures** pane and the **Pages** pane.

If the page is not centered, the value is the same in both panes.

If the page is centered, the value in the **Signatures** pane is the difference between the **Media Size** and the **Trim Size**.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Scale (%)

The horizontal and vertical scale measurement of the page, as a percentage of the page's original size.

If the file is not a PDF file, the scale appears as **N/A**.

Orientation (°)

The number of degrees that the page is rotated.

Select from 0, 90 CW (clockwise), 180, and 90 CCW (counter-clockwise).

If the file is not a PDF file, the orientation appears as **N/A**.

<process template>

The name of the process template group that was used to process the file and the processing status.

This column automatically appears in these panes:

- **Input Files** pane when an input file is processed
- **Pages** pane when a page is processed
- **Imposition Plans** pane when a surface is processed

This is known as a dynamic column. More than one dynamic column may appear if more than one process template is used.

<custom field> (more than one may be visible)

Any custom fields that were created for this job element with the **Show in Workshop** check box selected

Input Files pane

Primary File

The name of the input file

Files

The number of input files in the row

Size

The size of the file.

The file size is listed in KB if the file is less than 1 MB, or in MB if the file is 1 MB or more.

If it is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

Modified

The date and time that the file was last modified

Created

The date and time that the file was created

Kind

The file type—for example, **Layered PDF**, **PostScript** or **PDF**

Location

The path to the file

<process template>

The name of the process template group that was used to process the file and the processing status.

This column automatically appears in these panes:

- **Input Files** pane when an input file is processed
- **Pages** pane when a page is processed
- **Imposition Plans** pane when a surface is processed

This is known as a dynamic column. More than one dynamic column may appear if more than one process template is used.

Job

The job button enables you to treat the whole job as if it were an element. You can start certain processes (archiving, purging, retrieving, and exporting) for the whole job without selecting the job files individually, and without exiting Job Manager. You can also locate the `JOBS` folder in the file browser, and get job information by opening the folder named after the job.

Right-click the job button to display the available menu items.

Signatures view

The **Signatures** view of Job Manager displays information about input files, pages (input files that have been processed), and imposition plans.

Use this view to:

- Assign pages to page positions of imposition plans
- Proof impositions

This view is similar to the Pages view, except that you can see a job as a layout rather than in reader order.

Panes in Signatures view

The **Signatures** view has three panes, each with their own buttons and columns.

The **Imposition Plans** pane displays information about the imposition plans (signatures and surfaces) for the job.

- When you create an imposition plan or import one into a job, the imposition plan displays in this pane.
- When you assign pages to page positions of the imposition plan the page assignment information also appears in this pane.
- In thumbnail view imposition plans appear hierarchically with their corresponding signatures. Surfaces appear below each signature.

The **Pages** pane displays information about refined PDF page files. In this pane, you can work with individual PDFs to:

- Soft-proof with Adobe Acrobat
- Output loose page output
- Manage page position assignments

The **Input Files** pane displays the unprocessed input files that you add to the job. You work in this pane when refining input files. Files in this pane display in list view only. After you process your input files, you may want to collapse the **Input Files** pane to reduce the space that it occupies.

Description of Signatures view

Note: The columns you see depend on the columns you display or hide.

Imposition Plans pane

Name

The name of the element.

For a page, the name is in the form of <input file name>.<page #>.p.

Page

When the hierarchy is opened to display individual positions, this column displays the file name that is assigned to each position.

On the rows that contain information other than positions, this column indicates the number of positions in the surface that have files assigned to them—for example, 4 of 4 Assigned.

Assignment Count

Displays the number of pages assigned to the page position

Workstyle

The workstyle as specified by the imposition plan—for example, **Sheetwise**.

Page Set

The name of the page set to which the imposition plan is linked.

Web Growth Profile Name

Any web growth profile associated with the signature, sheet, or surface.

A web growth profile is an XML file used to digitally compensate for press distortion.

Web Growth Profile Path

The location of any web growth profile associated with the signature, sheet, or surface.

Note: If a web growth profile is specified in Job Manager, this overrides any web growth profile that is defined for the process template.

Center Page

Indicates whether the page is centered.

Offset

The horizontal and vertical adjustments made to the page from the lower-left corner.

This column appears in the **Signatures** pane and the **Pages** pane.

If the page is not centered, the value is the same in both panes.

If the page is centered, the value in the **Signatures** pane is the difference between the **Media Size** and the **Trim Size**.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Trim Size

The horizontal and vertical measurements to which the page will be cut. The trim size is determined by the page position to which the page is assigned.

If the file is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

<process template>

The name of the process template group that was used to process the file and the processing status.

This column automatically appears in these panes:

- **Input Files** pane when an input file is processed
- **Pages** pane when a page is processed
- **Imposition Plans** pane when a surface is processed

This is known as a dynamic column. More than one dynamic column may appear if more than one process template is used.

<custom field> (more than one may be visible)

Any custom fields that were created for this job element with the **Show in Workshop** check box selected

Pages pane



Group by Assignment

Switch this button **on** to sort pages into two groups—assigned or not assigned to a page position in a page set. Switch this button **off** to group all pages, assigned and unassigned, together.

Group by Assignment can be enabled or disabled only when in list view. In thumbnail view, **Group by Assignment** is always enabled.

If both **Group by Assignment** and **Group by Input File** are enabled, sorting is first by assignment and then by input file.



Group by Input File

Switch this button **on** to sort pages according to the input files from which they were created. Switch this button **off** to group all pages together, regardless of input file.

This button can be enabled only when in list view.

If both **Group by Assignment** and **Group by Input File** are enabled, sort is first by assignment and then by input file.

Page

When the hierarchy is opened to display individual positions, this column displays the file name that is assigned to each position.

On the rows that contain information other than positions, this column indicates the number of positions in the surface that have files assigned to them—for example, 4 of 4 Assigned.

Page Position

The page position number is a combination of the page set prefix and the position number (both user-definable).

You define the prefix when you create a page set or add an imposition plan to a job.

A value appears only if the page has been assigned to a page position on a page set.

Surface

The name of the surface and signature to which the page is assigned. For example, if the page is assigned to the front surface of Signature 1, the **Surface** column displays A Front 1.

This column is available only in the **Pages** pane of the **Signatures** view.

Input File

The name of the input file from which the page was created

Date Refined

The date and time that the page was created

Page File Location

The path to the page file

Size

The size of the file.

The file size is listed in KB if the file is less than 1 MB, or in MB if the file is 1 MB or more.

If it is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

Preflight Report

Indicates whether a PDF Preflight report has been generated for the PDF page, or whether it is not available.

Ordinal Number

The page number in a multi-page file that this page represents

Page Colors

The process and spot colors in the page

Composite

Indicates whether the page is composite.

A composite file is not divided into color separations.

Customer Approval

The approval status of the page. These are the possible approval statuses:

- **Approval not Required**
- **Approval Requested**
- **Approval in Progress**
- **Waiting for Correction**
- **Approved**
- **Rejected**

Media Size

The width and height of the media box of the PDF file.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Trim Size

The horizontal and vertical measurements to which the page will be cut. The trim size is determined by the page position to which the page is assigned.

If the file is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Offset

The horizontal and vertical adjustments made to the page from the lower-left corner.

This column appears in the **Signatures** pane and the **Pages** pane.

If the page is not centered, the value is the same in both panes.

If the page is centered, the value in the **Signatures** pane is the difference between the **Media Size** and the **Trim Size**.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Scale (%)

The horizontal and vertical scale measurement of the page, as a percentage of the page's original size.

If the file is not a PDF file, the scale appears as **N/A**.

Orientation (°)

The number of degrees that the page is rotated.

Select from 0, 90 CW (clockwise), 180, and 90 CCW (counter-clockwise).

If the file is not a PDF file, the orientation appears as **N/A**.

<process template>

The name of the process template group that was used to process the file and the processing status.

This column automatically appears in these panes:

- **Input Files** pane when an input file is processed
- **Pages** pane when a page is processed
- **Imposition Plans** pane when a surface is processed

This is known as a dynamic column. More than one dynamic column may appear if more than one process template is used.

<custom field> (more than one may be visible)

Any custom fields that were created for this job element with the **Show in Workshop** check box selected

Input Files pane**Primary File**

The name of the input file

Files

The number of input files in the row

Size

The size of the file.

The file size is listed in KB if the file is less than 1 MB, or in MB if the file is 1 MB or more.

If it is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

Modified

The date and time that the file was last modified

Created

The date and time that the file was created.

Kind

The file type—for example, **Layered PDF**, **PostScript** or **PDF**

Location

The path to the file

<process template>

The name of the process template group that was used to process the file and the processing status.

This column automatically appears in these panes:

- **Input Files** pane when an input file is processed
- **Pages** pane when a page is processed
- **Imposition Plans** pane when a surface is processed

This is known as a dynamic column. More than one dynamic column may appear if more than one process template is used.

 **Job**

The job button enables you to treat the whole job as if it were an element. You can start certain processes (archiving, purging, retrieving, and exporting) for the whole job without selecting the job files individually, and without exiting Job Manager. You can also locate the `JOBs` folder in the file browser, and get job information by opening the folder named after the job.

Right-click the job button to display the available menu items.

Separations view

The **Separations** view of Job Manager displays information about the individual separations of a surface.

This view has only one pane. Files in this view display in list view only.

Description of Separations view

Note: The columns you see depend on the columns you display or hide.

Name

The name of the element.

For a page, the name is in the form of `<input file name>.<page #>.p`.

Page Assignments

Indicates the number of page positions in the signature or surface that have pages assigned to them—for example, 4 of 4 Assigned.

Workstyle

The workstyle as specified by the imposition plan—for example, **Sheetwise**.

Page Set

The name of the page set to which the imposition plan is linked.

Common

Labels a separation in a versioning job as **Base**, **Common**, **Unique**, or **Not Identified**.

- **Base** identifies the separations in the first imposition plan you imported into the job.
- **Common** identifies the separations you use in each of the versioning impositions. These are the separations that stay the same for each version. Common separations are duplicates of the base separations. For this reason, common separations are grayed-out, indicating you don't need to output them, because you will output the base separations.
- **Unique** identifies the separations for which you have more than one version—that is, the separations that differ for each version.
- **Not Identified** indicates the **Common** column is unpopulated. To populate the column, from the **Job** menu, select **Identify Common Separations**.

Note: When outputting separations for a versioning job, you output the bold separations (the base and unique separations); you don't output the grayed-out separations (the common separations).

Web Growth Profile Name

Displays the name of the web growth profile, if one is selected.

Web Growth Profile Path

Displays the path to the web growth profile, if one is selected.

Content

Displays the kind of content a separation contains:

- **Has Page Content** indicates the separation contains page information.
- **Mark Content Only** indicates the separation has marks only.
- **Empty** indicates the separation has no page information and no marks.

<process template>

The name of the process template group that was used to process the file and the processing status.

This column automatically appears in these panes:

- **Input Files** pane when an input file is processed
- **Pages** pane when a page is processed
- **Imposition Plans** pane when a surface is processed

This is known as a dynamic column. More than one dynamic column may appear if more than one process template is used.

<custom field> (more than one may be visible)

Any custom fields that were created for this job element with the **Show in Workshop** check box selected

Job

The job button enables you to treat the whole job as if it were an element. You can start certain processes (archiving, purging, retrieving, and exporting) for the whole job without selecting the job files individually, and without exiting Job Manager. You can also locate the `JOB`s folder in the file browser, and get job information by opening the folder named after the job.

Right-click the job button to display the available menu items.

Storage view

The **Storage** view of Job Manager lists all of the input files, pages, imposition plans and miscellaneous files that are part of the job.

Use this view to check the location and archive status of job files.

This view has only one pane. Files in this view display in list view only.

Description of Storage view

Note: The columns you see depend on the columns you display or hide.

Group by Online Status

Switch this button **on** to sort files by archive state. Possible states are:

- **Missing**
- **Offline**
- **Online and Currently Archived**

- **Online and Never Archived**
- **Online and Previously Archived**

Switch this button **off** to group all files together, regardless of archive state.

If both **Group by Online Status** and **Group by File Kind** are enabled, files are sorted first by online status. Then within each online status grouping, files are sorted by file kind.

Group by File Kind

Switch this button **on** to sort files by file kind. Possible file kinds are:

- **Imposition Plan Files**
- **Input Files**
- **Miscellaneous Files**
- **Page Files**

Switch this button off to group all files together, regardless of file kind.

If both **Group by Online Status** and **Group by File Kind** are enabled, files are sorted first by online status. Then within each online status grouping, files are sorted by file kind.

Primary File

The name of the element.

Files

The number of files associated with the primary file.

Size

The size of the file.

The file size is listed in KB if the file is less than 1 MB, or in MB if the file is 1 MB or more.

If it is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

Modified

The date and time that the file was last modified

Created

The date and time that the file was created

Description

The file type and how it is used in Prinerly. For example, **PDF Input File**, **PostScript Input File**, **PDF Page**, or **Imposition Plan**.

Last Archived

The date and time that someone last archived the job.

Location

The path to the file

Archive State

The archive state of the file. Possible states are:

- **Online and Never Archived:** The file has never been archived, purged, or retrieved.
- **Online and Currently Archived:** The file has been archived, but has not been purged or retrieved.
- **Offline:** The file has been purged. (It also had to be archived before the purge, or the purging would not occur.)
- **Online and Previously Archived:** The file has been changed since it was archived, and has not been archived since it was changed.
- **Missing:** The file is not on the file system, and it has not been archived. It also has not been purged because purging deletes files only if they have been archived. Therefore, an action other than purging deleted the file.

A job's **Stale Archive Status** is connected to the **Archive State** of its files.

- If the **Archive State** of all files in a job is **Online and Never Archived** or **Online and Currently Archived**, the job's **Stale Archive Status** is **None Stale**.
- If the **Archive State** of some files is **Online and Previously Archived**, the job's **Stale Archive Status** is **Some Stale**.

Job

The job button enables you to treat the whole job as if it were an element. You can start certain processes (archiving, purging, retrieving, and exporting) for the whole job without selecting the job files individually, and without exiting Job Manager. You can also locate the `Jobs` folder in the file browser, and get job information by opening the folder named after the job.

Right-click the job button to display the available menu items.

History view

The **History** view of Job Manager displays the detailed history of all the activity for a particular job. For each job, the **History** view displays:

- A description of each action taken on the job. (You can expand each description to display additional details, and double-click each additional detail to display more information and copy the text.)
- Individual messages for each action. (The same messages appear in the Process Info dialog box when the process is active.)
- The date and time the action was taken
- The severity of the message

If the History view gets cluttered, you can destroy the messages if you have permission to do so.

Description of History view

Note: The columns you see depend on the columns you display or hide.

Group by category

Switch this button on to sort history messages by action or process type. For example actions relating to adding or removing input files are grouped under **File Management**. Actions relating to assignments are grouped under **Assignment**.

Switch this button off to group all history messages together, regardless of action or process type.

Description

A short description of the action taken. For each action, the description includes a number at the end of the text indicating the number of detail items listed for that action. You can expand an action to view its details.

User Name

The logon name of the user who initiated the action.

Time

The date and time that the action or process was initiated.

Severity

Indicates whether the message is for information only, or is an error or warning.

Information Message

Indicates that the action or process was completed successfully.

Warning Message

Indicates that the action or process reported a problem, but carried on to completion.

Error Message

Indicates that the action or process failed.

Job

The job button enables you to treat the whole job as if it were an element. You can start certain processes (archiving, purging, retrieving, and exporting) for the whole job without selecting the job files individually, and without exiting Job Manager. You can also locate the `Jobs` folder in the file browser, and get job information by opening the folder named after the job.

Right-click the job button to display the available menu items.

Process Templates pane

The **Process Templates** pane is visible in every view of Job Manager. This pane lists the process templates that you use to start processing on jobs and elements. It also lists the digital devices that you can submit digital jobs to.

From this pane, you can create, open, modify, rename, and delete process templates. You can also submit jobs to digital devices, by dragging and dropping elements onto digital devices.

This pane also lists workflow templates and automation rules. Both workflow templates and automation rules help to automate and sequence multiple processes. See the Rules-Based Automation guide.

This pane displays the process templates and automation rules, organized into three tabs:

- **Global**-lists all of the process templates in the system
- **Job**-lists the process templates that you want to access quickly whenever you are working on a particular job
- **User**-lists the process templates that you want to access quickly whenever you log in to Prinergy Workshop on any job.

See also:

[About workflow templates](#) on page [937](#)

Processes pane

While each process runs, the **Active** tab displays the following:

- Icons indicating the status of the process.
- A description of the process in the following format:

| | | | | | | | |
|--------|---|---------------------------|---|---------------------|---|-----------------------|---------------------|
| server | : | process template group | : | process template | : | number of elements | type of elements |
|--------|---|---------------------------|---|---------------------|---|-----------------------|---------------------|

For example, `Atreus:Templates:Refine:10 Input Files`

If you changed the name of the process template in the Start Process dialog box, the **Processes** pane displays the revised name.

- A progress bar indicating the overall progress of the process. (The same progress bar appears in the Process Info dialog box for the active process.) Once the process is completed or stopped, the progress bar disappears.

Get Info dialog box

Note: Jobs and rule sets have specific Get Info dialog boxes.

Name

The name of the element.

For a page, the name is in the form of `<input file name>.<page #>.p`.

Type

The type of element for which information is being displayed for example, **Input File**, **Page**, **Page Set**, or **Signature**.

Details

The information in the **Details** area is specific to each type of element. Click ▸ to expand this collapsible section to view more details.

Input Files

Created

The date and time that the file was created

Kind

The file type—for example, **Layered PDF**, **PostScript** or **PDF**

Location

The path to the file

Modified

The date and time that the file was last modified

Size

The size of the file.

The file size is listed in KB if the file is less than 1 MB, or in MB if the file is 1 MB or more.

If it is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

Pages**ByPass Refine**

Indicates whether the page was processed using a bypass refine process template.

Color Setup

The Kodak ColorFlow color setup assigned to the page during refine.

If no color setup was assigned, the value is **N/A**.

Composite

Indicates whether the page is composite.

A composite file is not divided into color separations.

Customer Approval

The approval status of the page. These are the possible approval statuses:

- **Approval not Required**
- **Approval Requested**
- **Approval in Progress**
- **Waiting for Correction**
- **Approved**
- **Rejected**

Customer Kodak Approval Comment

Any comment that was added when the approval status of the page was set.

Date Refined

The date and time that the page was created

Input File

The name of the input file from which the page was created

Offset

The horizontal and vertical adjustments made to the page from the lower-left corner.

This column appears in the **Signatures** pane and the **Pages** pane.

If the page is not centered, the value is the same in both panes.

If the page is centered, the value in the **Signatures** pane is the difference between the **Media Size** and the **Trim Size**.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Ordinal Number

The page number in a multi-page file that this page represents

Orientation (°)

The number of degrees that the page is rotated.

Select from 0, 90 CW (clockwise), 180, and 90 CCW (counter-clockwise).

If the file is not a PDF file, the orientation appears as **N/A**.

Page

The file name of the page that is assigned to the page position

Page Colors

The process and spot colors in the page

Page File Location

The path to the page file

Page Open for Edit

Whether the page is currently open for editing. If **Yes**, the user who has the page open is also listed.

Page Position

The page position number is a combination of the page set prefix and the position number (both user-definable).

You define the prefix when you create a page set or add an imposition plan to a job.

A value appears only if the page has been assigned to a page position on a page set.

Scale (%)

The horizontal and vertical scale measurement of the page, as a percentage of the page's original size.

If the file is not a PDF file, the scale appears as **N/A**.

Size

The size of the file.

The file size is listed in KB if the file is less than 1 MB, or in MB if the file is 1 MB or more.

If it is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

Media Size

The width and height of the media box of the PDF file.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Trim Size

The horizontal and vertical measurements to which the page will be cut. The trim size is determined by the page position to which the page is assigned.

If the file is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Page Sets**Assigned Positions**

The number of page positions to which pages are assigned out of the total number of available page positions—for example, 1 of 8.

Page Set Prefix

The prefix assigned to the page positions of the page set.

Imposition Plans

Assigned Page Positions

The number of page positions to which pages are assigned out of the total number of available page positions—for example, 1 of 8.

Job Ticket Version

The software that created the imposition plan.

Page Set

The name of the page set to which the imposition plan is linked.

Signatures

The total number of signatures in the imposition plan.

Signatures

Page

The number of page positions to which pages are assigned out of the total number of available page positions—for example, 16 of 16.

Web Growth Profile Name

Any web growth profile associated with the signature, sheet, or surface.

A web growth profile is an XML file used to digitally compensate for press distortion.

Web Growth Profile Path

The location of any web growth profile associated with the signature, sheet, or surface.

Note: If a web growth profile is specified in Job Manager, this overrides any web growth profile that is defined for the process template.

Workstyle

The workstyle as specified by the imposition plan—for example, **Sheetwise**.

Surfaces

Assigned Page Positions

The number of page positions to which pages are assigned out of the total number of available page positions—for example, 1 of 8.

Separations

Separations have no displayable attributes.

Custom Fields

The information in the **Custom Fields** area is used for tracking information on the job or element. Click ▶ to expand this collapsible section to view more details.

You can edit your custom fields in the right-hand column or can use the Custom Fields Manager dialog box to create custom fields for a job or elements in a job.

Processing Info

Expand this collapsible section to view history messages for any processing performed on the selected element.

Manage Job/User Favorites dialog box

list

Displays the process templates that you can add to the **Job** or **User** tab.

Add

Select a process template in the list and click **Add** to add the process template to the **Job** or **User** tab of the **Process Templates** pane.

Tip: You can also double-click a process template in the list to add it to the **Job** or **User** tab.

Add Separator

Click to add a horizontal line to the list of process templates on the **Job** or **User** tab. The separator appears below the selected process template. If no process template is selected, the separator appears at the bottom of the list of process templates.

Remove

Select a process template or a separator on the **Job** or **User** tab and click **Remove** to remove the process template or separator from the tab.

Tip: You can also double-click a process template or separator to remove it.

Job Favorites

Lists the process templates that are listed on the **Job** tab of the **Process Templates** pane whenever you open the job.

To add a process template to the **Job** tab select the process template in the list on the left of the dialog box and click **Add**. Or, double-click the process template to add it to the **Job** tab automatically.

User Favorites

Lists the process templates that are listed on the **User** tab of the **Process Templates** pane whenever you log in to Prinerger Workshop with the same user name and password.

To add a process template to the **User** tab select the process template in the list on the left of the dialog box and click **Add**. Or, double-click the process template to add it to the **User** tab automatically.

Move Up

Select a process template or separator on the **Job** or **User** tab and click **Move Up** to move the selection up the list.

The process templates and separators appear on the **Job** and **User** tabs of the **Process Templates** pane in the order that you set in the Manage Job/User Favorites dialog box.

Move Down

Select a process template or separator on the **Job** or **User** tab and click **Move Down** to move the selection down the list.

The process templates and separators appear on the **Job** and **User** tabs of the **Process Templates** pane in the order that you set in the Manage Job/User Favorites dialog box.

Workshop menu in Job Manager

Note: This menu is available only when running Prinergy Workshop on a Macintosh client.

About Prinergy Workshop

Displays information about Prinergy Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the server name.

Preferences

Use to view and modify Prinergy Workshop preferences. When you select this menu item, the Workshop Preferences dialog box appears.

Note: On a Windows client, this menu item appears under the **Edit** menu. On a Macintosh client, it appears under the **Workshop** menu.

Quit / Quit Prinergy Workshop

Quits Prinergy Workshop. Any open Prinergy Workshop windows are closed.

File menu in Job Manager

Note: Some menu items are available only in specific views or when specific elements are selected.

New

Use to create a new job. When you select this menu item, the Create New Job dialog box appears.

Open

Use to open an existing job. When you select this menu item, the Open Job dialog box appears.

Import Job (Incremental)

Displays the Import Job dialog box which lets you import a previously exported partial job into a job or a pre-job.

Export Job (Incremental)

Select signatures and then use this menu item to export them as a partial job.

Export Job

Displays the Choose Process Template dialog box, which lets you select a process template and export the job that is open in

Job Manager. The system places the exported file in the location specified by the process template you selected while exporting the job.

Close Window

Closes the current window, but does not quit Prinergy Workshop.

Add Input Files

Use to add non-CT/LW input files to the job. When you select this menu item, the Add Input Files dialog box appears.

Add Page Set

Select this menu item to create a page set for the job. When you select this menu item, the Add Page Set dialog box appears.

Import Imposition

Use this menu item to import an imposition plan into the job.

Import Versioning Imposition

Use this to import an imposition plan with versioning and add it to your job.

Create New Imposition

Displays the New Imposition dialog box where you select an imposition application to launch from within Prinergy to create a new imposition.

This menu item is available only if you have configured imposition software to work with Prinergy Workshop.

Remove/Delete

Use to remove or delete the selected elements. When you select this menu item, you may be prompted to confirm that you want to remove or delete the selected elements (if the **Show Confirmation Dialogs for All Deletes** option is enabled in the Prinergy Workshop Preferences dialog box).

The **Remove/Delete** menu item varies depending on the type of elements selected:

- **Remove File**-Removes the selected files from the **Storage** view
- **Remove Input**-Removes the selected input files from the **Input Files** pane
- **Remove Imposition**-Removes the selected imposition plans from the **Signature** and **Separations** views

- **Delete Page**-Deletes the selected pages from the **Pages** pane
- **Delete Page Set**-Deletes the selected page sets from the **Page Sets** pane of Job Manager
- **Delete Process**-Deletes the selected processes from the **Completed** tab of the **Processes** pane

Destroy Imposition

Use to permanently delete the selected imposition plan and its associated input files, pages, and page sets from the system.

Important: Once you destroy it, you cannot retrieve it or its associated files. If you want to retain the associated files, use the **Remove Imposition** menu item instead.

Open File With

Enables you to open files in another application without leaving Prinergy Workshop. You can open input files, processed pages, and assigned pages.

In Job Manager select the file and choose an item from the **Open File With** sub-menu:

- **(default application)** to open the file with the same application your operating system uses when you double-click this type of file in Windows Explorer or Macintosh Finder.
- **<Application>** to open the file using the selected application. To add an application to the list select **Edit List** and configure the Configure Applications dialog box.
- **Edit List** to edit the sub-menu list. In the Configure Applications dialog box, browse to any application on your computer. Select the executable file (.exe) and click **OK**. The selected application will subsequently appear in the **Open File With** sub-menu list.

Open Job Folder in File Browser

Launches Microsoft Internet Explorer or Macintosh Finder and displays the job folder.

Publish to PDF File

Select a page, and then select this menu item to create a low-resolution or high-resolution PDF file of the page.

Open VPS Files

Select a page, surface, signature, or separation that you want to view (anywhere that a VPS file has been created) and select the **Open VPS Files** menu item to display the VPS file.

Get Info

Use to display details about the selected elements. When you select this menu item, the Get Info dialog box appears.

Edit menu in Job Manager

Note: Some menu items are available only in specific views or when specific elements are selected.

Cut, Copy, and Paste (not available)

Select All

Select an element in a Job Manager pane and then use the **Select All** to select all of the elements in the pane.

For example select an input file in the **Input Files** pane, and then use **Select All Files** to select all of the input files in the pane.

The name of **Select All** changes depending on the elements with which you are working.

Keep Even Pages Selected

After selecting multiple page positions, use this menu item to keep only the even-numbered positions selected. This applies to the Page Sets pane of the **Pages** view and the Imposition Plans pane of the **Signatures** view.

Keep Odd Pages Selected

After selecting multiple page positions, use this menu item to keep only the odd-numbered positions selected. This applies to the Page Sets pane of Pages view and the Imposition Plans pane of Signatures view.

Assign Page to Position

Use to assign the selected pages to positions in a page set. When you select this menu item, the Assign Page to Page Set Position dialog box appears.

Edit Imposition

Select an imposition and then click this menu item to launch imposition software and edit the imposition.

This menu item is available only if you have configured imposition software to work with Prinergy Workshop.

Unassign

Use to unassign the selected pages from their page positions in a page set or imposition plan.

Reorder Page Assignments

In the **Pages** or **Signatures** view, select a layered page assignment, then use this menu item to display the Reorder Page Assignments dialog box. Use this dialog box to change the order of the layered pages for the page assignment.

This menu item applies only when you are working with a versioned imposition plan.

Copy Page Assignments

In the **Pages** view, use this menu item to copy page positions with assigned pages from one page set to another.

Set Page Geometry

In the **Pages** or **Signatures** view, select a page or page set, then use this menu item to display the Set Page Geometry dialog box.

Customer Approval

Use to manually set the approval status for a selected page. Available approval statuses are:

- **Approval not Required**
- **Approval Requested**
- **Approval in Progress**
- **Waiting for Correction**
- **Approve**
- **Reject**

When you select the approval status, a dialog box appears where you can type a comment about the approval change.

Approval is not required before further processing; it simply helps you to monitor your job's progress.

Edit Job Attributes / Edit Pre-Job Attributes

Use to view and modify the attributes of the selected job or pre-job. When this menu item is selected, the Edit Job Attributes dialog box appears.

Set Initial Separations

Select one or more surfaces or an entire signature, and then use this menu item to reset the separations in the selection to the page colors defined in the pages assigned to the page set.

Use this command after you import an imposition plan into a job with an existing page set or after you create color mappings you no longer want.

Color Separations

Select a signature, then use this menu item to display the Color Separations dialog box where you set up color mapping for the selected signature.

Color Printing Order

Select a signature, then use this menu item to display the Print Order dialog box where you specify the order in which you want the color separations to be printed, for example, CMYK or KCMY.

Set Web Growth Profile

Select a signature, sheet, or surface, then use this menu item to display the Set Web Growth Profile dialog box, where you select a web growth profile for the press on which the signature, sheet, or surface will run.

Clear Web Growth Profile

Select a signature, surface, or sheet, and then use this menu item to disassociate a web growth profile file from the signature, surface, or sheet.

When you clear or set a web growth profile to an entity, it includes the levels below. For example, setting a web growth profile to a signature will include all sheets and surfaces below. Clearing a web growth profile from a sheet will include all surfaces below.

Center Page

In the **Imposition Plans** pane of the **Signatures** view, select one or more pages. Then select this menu item to center the media or trim box of the selected pages to the center of the imposition trim box.

Use Page Offsets

In the **Imposition Plans** pane of the **Signatures** view, select one or more pages, then select this menu item to return previously centered pages to their original page offsets.

Preferences

Use to view and modify Prinergy Workshop preferences. When you select this menu item, the Workshop Preferences dialog box appears.

Note: On a Windows client, this menu item appears under the **Edit** menu. On a Macintosh client, it appears under the **Workshop** menu.

View menu in Job Manager

Note: Some menu items are available only in specific Job Manager views or when specific elements are selected.

Refresh

Updates the contents of the current window.

as Thumbnails

Displays the contents of pane as thumbnails, which are low-resolution sample images.

as List

Displays the contents pane in a list. In this case, each item is represented by a line of descriptive text.

Expand All

Expands all items in the selected view or pane.

Collapse All

Collapses all items in the selected view or pane.

Pages

Displays the **Pages** view of Job Manager.

Signatures

Displays the **Signatures** view of Job Manager.

Separations

Displays the **Separations** view of Job Manager.

Storage

Displays the **Storage** view of Job Manager.

History

Displays the **History** view of Job Manager.

Visible Columns

Use to display and hide columns in the current window or pane. When you select this menu item, the Visible Columns dialog box appears. From there, you select the columns that you want to display, and clear the columns that you want to hide.

The columns that can be displayed vary from window to window.

Job menu in Job Manager

Note: Some menu items are available only in specific views or when specific elements are selected.

Destroy

Use to destroy the open job. When you select this menu item, the Destroy Job dialog box appears.

Important: When you destroy a job, Prinergy permanently removes the files and all information about the files from the system. Only destroy a job when you are sure that you will never need it again.

Notes

Use to create notes for the job, or to edit or delete existing job notes. When you select this menu item, the Job Notes dialog box appears.

Manage Job/User Favorites

Use to add process templates to and remove process templates from the **Job** and **User** tabs of the **Process Templates** pane. When you select this menu item, the Manage Job/User Favorites dialog box appears.

Manage Hot Folders

Use to create hot folders for the job, or to edit or delete existing hot folders. When you select this menu item, the Manage Hot Folders dialog box appears.

Image Search Path

Use to add or delete an image search path for the job. When you select this menu item, the Image Search Paths dialog box appears.

Font Search Path

Use to add or delete an font search path for the job. When you select this menu item, the Font Search Paths dialog box appears.

Change Signature ID Code Template

Use to edit the signature ID code settings for the job. When you select this menu item, the Signature ID Code Editor dialog box appears.

Identify Common Separations

Select a signature, then click this to identify which separations from the signature are common to all signatures as opposed to which separations are versions.

Preflight Report Viewer

Displays the PDF Preflight report for the selected PDF.

Submit for Digital Printing

Select one or more pages or signatures, then select this menu item. In the Submit to Digital Printing dialog box, you then select a digital print application.

Use Submit for Digital Printing when you want to control and print digital output using a digital print application such as XDS Plus for Xerox FreeFlow Print Submission.

See also:

[Editing signature ID codes](#) on page [714](#)

Process menu in Job Manager

Note: Some menu items are available only in specific Job Manager views or when specific elements are selected.

**<process category> > <process type> > <process group> >
<process template>**

The name of each process template that applies to selected elements is available on the **Process** menu.

Click this item to start process on the selected elements using this process template.

Workflow > <workflow type> > <workflow group> > <workflow template>

Each workflow template that applies to selected elements is available on the **Process** menu.

Click this item to start process on the selected elements using this workflow template.

Manual Start Rules > <rules context> > <rules group> > <rule set>

Expands to display the rule sets that:

- Apply to the currently selected elements
- Are triggered by Manual Trigger events
- Are enabled

The first submenus under **Manual Start Rules** are:

- **All Jobs:** Select this to see system rule sets.
- **Job <job name>:** Select this to see the job rule sets enabled for the job that you are in.

After you select the first submenu, navigate through the rule set groups and select the rule set that you want to trigger.


Process Tools

Use this menu item to access further menu items specific to the selected element. The menu item varies depending on the type of element selected in Job Manager:

| If you select | The menu is | And the menu contains |
|---|-------------------------------------|---|
| Process template or workflow template in the Process Templates pane | Process Template Tools | Edit, Rename, and Delete |
| Process template group in the Process Templates pane | Process Template Group Tools | New or New Process Template (to create a new process template of the same type as the selected process template group). |
| Rule set in the Process Templates pane | Process Template Tools | View Rule Set, Get Info, Disable, Open Copy, Rule Set Manager, and Stop All Processing |
| Active process in the Processes pane | Processing Tools | Pause, Resume, Stop and Create Process Report |
| Completed process in the Processes pane | Processing Tools | Create Process Report (to create a detailed report on the selected process to send to your service representative). |

Approve

After generating a proof select the proofed item and then select this menu item to set the proof's Approval Status to **Approved**.

This displays an approved icon  in the dynamic column that appeared after the proofing process.

Unlike Customer Approval status, proof approvals are not visible in Prepress Portal.

Proof approvals do not affect other processing that you can do in Prinergy Workshop.

Reject

After generating a proof select the proofed item and then select this menu item to set the proof's Approval Status to **Rejected**.

This displays a rejected icon 🚫 in the dynamic column that appeared after the proofing process.

Unlike Customer Approval status, proof approvals are not visible in Prepress Portal.

Proof approvals do not affect other processing that you can do in Prinergy Workshop.

Clear

If a proof's approval status has been set to Approved or Rejected, select the proofed item and then select this menu item to clear the approval status.

This causes the approved icon ✅ or rejected icon 🚫 to no longer appear in the dynamic column for the proofing process.

Unlike Customer Approval status, proof approvals are not visible in Prepress Portal.

Proof approvals do not affect other processing that you can do in Prinergy Workshop.

Tools menu in Job Manager

Change User

Displays the Connect to Server dialog box where you can log in as another user without quitting Prinergy Workshop.

This menu item appears only if you have Kodak Prinergy Business Link software connected to the Prinergy system.

Job Finder

Opens Job Finder.

If you are already in Job Finder, this menu item is unavailable.

Destroy History Entries

In the **History** view, select one or more history entries and then use **Destroy History Entries** to delete the selected entries.

Process Template Editor

Launches **Process Template Editor**, where you can create and modify process templates.

Automated Page Assignment Editor

Starts the **Automated Page Assignment Editor**, which you use to create and check APA files.

Queue Manager

Launches **Queue Manager**, where you can view the Job Ticket Processors (JTPs) and process types.

Media Manager

Launches **Media Manager**, where you can manage your archive tapes and disk volumes.

System History

Launches **System History**, which displays the detailed history of all the activity occurring outside of job context (such as jobs and groups that were created or destroyed), as well as job archive, purge, and retrieve history.

Smart Hot Folder Manager

Launches the Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box, where you can add, edit and delete smart hot folders.

Configure Imposition Application

Displays the Configure Imposition Applications dialog box, where you can identify the location of imposition software that you want to integrate with Prinergy Workshop.

Start Imposition Application

Displays the Start Imposition Application dialog box, where you choose which imposition software to start. You create this list of imposition applications with the Configure Imposition Application tool from the **Tools** menu. If an application requires a license and is licensed, it appears in bold.

Color Editor

Launches **Color Editor**, where you can create color recipes for all jobs.

Color Space Editor

Launches **Color Space Editor**, where you can create and edit color spaces.

Font Converter

Launches **Font Converter**, where you can convert font files into PFA (Printer Font ASCII) format, which Prinergy requires to correctly process fonts.

Preflight Profile Manager

Launches **Preflight Profile Manager**, where you can, during the refine process, evaluate PDFs to detect problems that may affect processing in a publishing or prepress workflow.

Plate Remake

Opens the Plate Remake dialog box, where you can enter the identification number of a plate to quickly remake the plate using the same process template settings and output device that were used to make the original plate. For more information, see [Remaking plates](#) on page [626](#).

Digital Print Administration Console

Launches the Digital Print Administrator, where you can add and configure a digital print application that Prinergy can launch to print PDFs.

Rule Set Manager

Opens the Rule Set Manager, where you can create and edit rule sets. The Rule Set Manager also lets you organize rule sets into groups.

Activate Rule Set in Selected Jobs

Opens the **Select Rule Set** dialog box, where you can activate rule sets for one or more jobs.

Help menu in Job Manager

Online help

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy online help.

On <current window or view>

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy Workshop user guide, open to the topic for the currently selected window or view.

Quick Start Guide

Starts Adobe Acrobat and displays a PDF file of the *Prinergy Connect Quick Start Guide*

eCentral Online Support

Starts your Web browser and displays the eCentral portal at <https://ecentral.kodak.com/>.

Visit graphics.kodak.com

Starts your Web browser and displays the Kodak Web site at <http://graphics.kodak.com/default.htm>.

About Prinerger Workshop

Displays information about Prinerger Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the Prinerger server name.

Note: This menu item appears on the **Help** menu only when you are running Prinerger Workshop on a Windows-based client computer. On a Macintosh client computer, the menu item **About Workshop** appears on the **Workshop** menu.

Keyboard shortcuts in Job Manager

| Macintosh Keyboard Shortcut | Windows Keyboard Shortcut | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| ⌘ + Delete | Ctrl + Delete | Deletes or removes the selected element |
| ⌘ + A | Ctrl + A | Selects all elements in the selected window or pane |
| ⌘ + D | Ctrl + D | Displays the Color Separations dialog box |
| ⌘ + E | Ctrl + E | Displays the Choose Process Template dialog box |
| ⌘ + F | Ctrl + F | Displays the Font Search Paths dialog box |
| ⌘ + G | Ctrl + G | Displays the Image Search Paths dialog box |
| ⌘ + I | Ctrl + I | Displays the Get Info dialog box for the selected element |
| ⌘ + K | Ctrl + K | Displays the Add Page Set dialog box |
| ⌘ + L | Ctrl + L | Displays the Import Imposition dialog box |
| ⌘ + M | Ctrl + M | Lets you set Page Geometry |
| ⌘ + N | Ctrl + N | Displays the Create New Job dialog box |
| ⌘ + O | Ctrl + O | Displays the Open Job dialog box |
| ⌘ + Q | Ctrl + Q | Quits Prinerger Workshop |
| ⌘ + R | Ctrl + R | Refreshes the current window |
| ⌘ + T | Ctrl + T | Displays the Add Input Files dialog box |
| ⌘ + W | Ctrl + W | Closes Job Manager |
| ⌘ + Y | Ctrl + Y | Displays the Assign Page to Page Set Position dialog box |

| Macintosh Keyboard Shortcut | Windows Keyboard Shortcut | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| ⌘ + 1 | Ctrl + 1 | Displays the Pages view of Job Manager |
| ⌘ + 2 | Ctrl + 2 | Displays the Signatures view of Job Manager |
| ⌘ + 3 | Ctrl + 3 | Displays the Separations view of Job Manager |
| ⌘ + 4 | Ctrl + 4 | Displays the Storage view of Job Manager |
| ⌘ + 5 | Ctrl + 5 | Displays the History view of Job Manager |
| ⌘ + Shift + V | Ctrl + Shift + V | Opens VPS |

See also:

[Pages view](#) on page [33](#)

[Signatures view](#) on page [39](#)

[Separations view](#) on page [46](#)

[Storage view](#) on page [48](#)

[History view](#) on page [51](#)

5

Workflow

A typical workflow

Your workflow can follow this typical workflow.

1. Create a job.

When you create a job in Prinerger, you set up a virtual directory structure (electronic filing system). You organize jobs in groups.

2. Add input files.

You add input files to a job to tell Prinerger which files to work with and where they are located.

3. Refine input files.

You refine input files by selecting an input file and then applying a refine process template to it. The refine process creates a stable, PDF digital master of each page in the input file. The refine process can perform any or all of the following functions:

- Preflight files
- Optimize images
- Convert CT/LW or TIFF/IT
- Resolve OPI comments
- Embed fonts
- Recombine separated files
- Check for low-resolution images and missing fonts
- Fine-tune copydot content
- Manage colors to achieve consistency between the color proofing device and the press
- Trap files
- Generate thumbnails
- Impose pages

These options are controlled by the settings in the refine process template.

4. Manage page sets and impositions.

PDF pages are assigned to page positions on one or more page sets. You can create page sets before making imposition decisions or have page sets automatically created when you add imposition plans to a job.

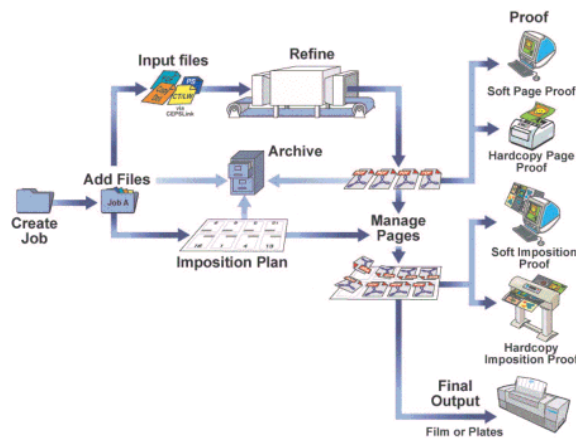
In Prinergy Workshop, you can view and edit the PDF pages with Acrobat, and make last-minute layout changes using the integrated imposition software.

5. Output proofs.
You can output both individual PDF pages and imposition plans to proofing devices or to various soft-proof file formats (Virtual Proofing System or TIFF files). Proofing is governed by parameters set in the selected output process template.
6. Output plates or film.
Select the whole imposition, individual signatures, surfaces, or separations to send for final output. Parameters are set in the selected output process template.
7. Archive.

Whole jobs or individual files can be archived, including miscellaneous files that are placed in the job folder. Once a job is archived, you can purge the entire job or some of its files from the hard disk, freeing up disk space for other uses. An archived job can be retrieved as a whole job or as individual files. Archiving is controlled through parameters set in the selected archive process template.

Destroying a job deletes all traces of it from the system, leaving no possibility for retrieval. Destroying is different than purging a job because purged jobs can be retrieved from an archive.

Diagram: workflow



Workflows in Prinergy Direct

Prinergy Direct software has two main workflows: one using imposed flats and one using a hub-and-spoke setup with other Prinergy systems.

To create jobs in Prinergy Direct, you can start with imposed flats or exported jobs.

Imposed flats

Prinergy Direct can accept imposed flats from other software such as Preps, Kodak Pandora, or Adobe InDesign.

To accept the files, you must set up a job with an add-and-process hot folder linked to a refine process template. When you drop the flats into the hot folder, Prinergy Direct refines the files into PDF flats.

Hub-and-spoke

You can use Prinergy Direct in a hub-and-spoke setup where the hub is a Prinergy Connect or Prinergy Powerpack system and the spoke is Prinergy Direct.

How you accept the export depends on whether the other Prinergy system exports an entire job or a partial job:

- To accept an entire job, you set up a pre-job with an add-and-process hot folder linked to an ImportAll process template. When you drop the export into the hot folder, Prinergy Direct creates a new job.
- To accept a partial job, you take an existing job and set up an add-and-process hot folder linked to an ImportIncremental process template. When you drop the export into the hot folder, Prinergy Direct adds the imported files to the job.

Hub-and-spoke workflow with partial jobs

Your workflow can follow a hub-and-spoke setup where you export a partial job from one Prinergy system and import it into another Prinergy system.

Prerequisite: The .zip file was exported from Prinergy using an ExportIncremental process template. (If you have a complete job, see Hub-and-Spoke Workflow with Jobs instead.)

1. Create a job or open an existing job.
2. Add a hot folder and associate it with an **ImportIncremental** process template.
3. Drop the export file into the hot folder.

Prinergy adds the export to the existing job. If the imported signature name matches an existing signature name, Prinergy adds 01 to the imported signature.

4. Open the job.
Prinerger displays flats as signatures in **Separations** view.
5. Manage colors separations (optional).
6. Proof the imposition by running an imposition output process template.
7. Make plates by running a final output process template.

See also:

[Hub-and-spoke workflow with jobs](#) on page [78](#)

[Creating jobs and pre-jobs](#) on page [85](#)

[Opening jobs and pre-jobs](#) on page [99](#)

[Generating imposition outputs](#) on page [489](#)

[Generating final output](#) on page [543](#)

[Color Separations dialog box](#) on page [801](#)

[Import process template \(jobs\)](#) on page [870](#)

[Adding files to a hot folder](#) on page [907](#)

[Creating hot folders](#) on page [908](#)

Hub-and-spoke workflow with jobs

Your workflow can follow a hub-and-spoke setup where you export an entire job from one Prinerger system and import it into another Prinerger system.

Prerequisite: The .zip file was exported from Prinerger using an ExportAll process template. (If you have a partial job, see Hub-and-Spoke Workflow with Partial Jobs instead.)

1. Create a pre-job.
2. Add a hot folder and associate it with an **ImportAll** process template.
3. Drop the export file into the hot folder.
Prinerger creates a new job named after the .zip filename.
4. Open the job.
Prinerger displays flats as signatures in **Separations** view.
5. Manage colors separations (optional).
6. Proof the imposition by running an imposition output process template.

7. Make plates by running a final output process template.

See also:

[Hub-and-spoke workflow with partial jobs](#) on page [77](#)

[Creating jobs and pre-jobs](#) on page [85](#)

[Opening jobs and pre-jobs](#) on page [99](#)

[Generating imposition outputs](#) on page [489](#)

[Generating final output](#) on page [543](#)

[Color Separations dialog box](#) on page [801](#)

[Import process template \(jobs\)](#) on page [870](#)

[Adding files to a hot folder](#) on page [907](#)

[Creating hot folders](#) on page [908](#)

Flat-based workflow

Your workflow can start with an imposed flat (PS, PDF, EPS) created in Preps, Pandora, InDesign, or other software.

Note: The flat-based workflow fails if the AutoFlatRefining and AutoFlatOutput process templates have been deleted from the Prinergy system.

1. Create a job.
2. Add a hot folder and associate it with a refine process template.
3. In the refine process template, ensure **Treat Input Files as Flat** is selected in the Impose section.
4. Drop the file into the hot folder.
Prinergy refines the files into PDF flats and then displays flats as signatures in **Separations** view.
5. Manage colors separations (optional).
6. Proof the imposition by running an imposition output process template.
7. Make plates by running a final output process template.

See also:

[Creating jobs and pre-jobs](#) on page [85](#)

[Refine process template](#) on page [201](#)

[Generating imposition outputs](#) on page [489](#)

[Generating final output](#) on page [543](#)

[Color Separations dialog box](#) on page [801](#)

[Adding files to a hot folder](#) on page [907](#)

[Creating hot folders](#) on page [908](#)

Page creator workflow

If you prepare files but do not make film or plates at your site, coordinate workflow details with your printer.

Handing files to the printer site

In order that your workflow outputs files as intended, it is **important** to do the following:

- Coordinate with your printer site to perform tests with reasonably complex sample files.
- Communicate with your printer site that when they input the Prinergy pages, they should not perform additional processing on the pages. Otherwise, another proof cycle may be required.

Accordingly, if the printer site uses Prinergy, they should refine with as few settings as possible (Refine-no options, Optimize-no options), to ensure they don't inadvertently change the file from the publisher's intention. (For example, refining with **Set Black to Overprint** or **Set Colors to Knockout** selected in the ColorConvert section of the refine process template can change the appearance of traps.)

As a 'page creator,' you refine and deliver files (usually pages; not flats) to a printer, who has specific output requirements based on his operation.

See also:

[About supported output formats](#) on page [620](#)

[Creating PDF/X output](#) on page [754](#)

[Creating PDF 1.3 output from complex transparency files](#) on page [759](#)

6

Jobs

Creating jobs

Job creation

A job is a publication that you want to print. To work on a publication, you must create a job for it in Job Finder.

When you create a job, you must choose the server and volume where it will be stored. Once a job is created, you cannot move it to any other volume. To move a job or pre-job to another volume or server, you must export or copy it.

You can create jobs and pre-jobs inside or outside of a group. To create them inside a group, create the group first, or create the group when you create the jobs or pre-jobs.

Once you create a job or pre-job:

- A Job Manager window appears for the job.
- Database entries are created for tracking the job.
- A new folder is created specifically for the job.

Options

When you create a new job or pre-job, the following options are available:

- **Template Job**

You can copy settings from a job that you have set up as a template job. Settings in the template job, such as hot folders and image search paths, are copied to the new job.

- **Job Attributes**

You can set the job attributes when you create a job—for example, due dates and job codes. You also set the job attributes to enable ColorFlow for the job and to select a default color setup for the job.

- **Import Job**

You can import a previously exported Prinergy job. You can choose the import process template with which to import the job.

See also:

[Pre-jobs](#) on page [82](#)

[Job, group, and file naming requirements and best practices](#) on page [83](#)

[Template jobs](#) on page [83](#)

[Job folders](#) on page [84](#)

[About copying jobs](#) on page [112](#)

[Using ColorFlow software](#) on page [831](#)

Pre-jobs

A pre-job is similar to a job but is used when you want to store elements that are used in more than one job.

Pre-jobs are useful in these ways:

- To automatically create jobs by dropping exported jobs into pre-job hot folders

You create a pre-job with hot folder that is linked to an import process template. When you drop exported jobs (with a **.zip** extension) into the hot folder for the pre-job, Prinergy automatically creates a job. The job is at the root of the server on which the pre-job exists, and has the same name as the exported job.

- As a place to collect elements that are used in many jobs, such as logos

When you want to use these elements in a job, you point the image paths from the job to the pre-job folders where the items are stored.

For example, if you produce a magazine for the same customer every month, you may want to reuse an image search path. To do this, create the pre-job, and then set the image search path to a folder containing the customer's logo and other frequently used images. Then when you create a new job for the customer, copy the image search path from the pre-job. The new job can then access the same images.

- By customers using Prepress Portal to upload files

For more information see your Prepress Portal documentation.

We suggest that you create a pre-job on each of your job servers, so you can make use of the pre-job feature on each of your servers.

Job, group, and file naming requirements and best practices

The name of a job or pre-job must:

- Be 31 characters or less.
- Be unique:

A job and pre-job cannot have the same name.

Two jobs cannot have the same name, even if they are in different groups.

- Not include the following special characters: / : ' \ " ? * < > |.
- Not include Windows-reserved device names for the name of a file, such as CON, PRN, AUX, NUL, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6, COM7, COM8, COM9, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7, LPT8, and LPT9.

Note: Prinerjy will not show an error if you use these device names.

The name of a group must:

- Be 31 characters or less.
- Be unique.
- Not include the following special characters: / : ' \ " ? * < > |.

Note: While Prinerjy will not show an error if you create group names with these characters, you will not be able to archive jobs to disk from such groups.

The name of files used in Prinerjy (input files, impositions) should:

- Not include the following special characters: / : ' \ " ? * < > |.

Not include Windows-reserved device names for the name of a file, such as CON, PRN, AUX, NUL, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6, COM7, COM8, COM9, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7, LPT8, and LPT9.

- Not include characters that could interfere with the operation of APA, such as # \$, . . + - * %

Template jobs

A template job is a job that contains settings that you want to reuse in other jobs. Any existing job or pre-job can act as a template job.

For example you may expect to create the same hot folders to add input files or import imposition plans to each of your jobs. Rather than re-creating the same hot folders each time you create a new job, you

can set up hot folders for one job and use it as a template for other jobs. This job becomes the template job.

When you create future jobs, you use the **Template Job** option and select the template job. The job folder of the new job automatically contains the copied hot folders.

The purpose of template jobs is to reduce repetitive tasks and save you time. You set up a template job once, then base multiple new jobs on it.

When creating a new job based on a template job, you can select which parts of the template job to include—for example, image search paths, job favorites, and active rule sets.

See also:

[Select Template Job dialog box](#) on page [88](#)


Job folders

When you create a new job, Prinergy creates a new folder on the volume that you selected when creating the job.

The new folder—called a job folder—has the same name that you gave the job. For example, if you created a job called **Magazine** on **Server1**, volume **J_Drive**, the new job folder would be `\Server1\J_Drive\JOBS\Magazine`.

The job folder is where you:

- Access hot folders that you create for the job.
- Access custom folders—called user defined folders—for storing input files and images. The user defined folders are set up in Prinergy Administrator. For example, you may set up a `Source` folder for a job's source files.
- Locate `.VPS` files to proof
- Download and upload files to and from customers with Prepress Portal

Note: The job button () in Job Manager enables easy access to the job folder. Right-click the job button and select **Open Job Folder in File Browser**.

Subfolders in the job folder

All job folders contain these subfolders:

- `Control`: Files that control job processing, such as job template files and APA files
- `Digital Print`: Files waiting for the digital print queue. Files are deleted when they enter the digital print queue or when the digital print application closes.
- `Fonts`: Font files converted using Per-Job Font Converter

- **HotFolders:** Any hot folders that you create for the job
 - **Processed:** Files resulting from hot folder processing.
- **System:** Files generated from—or required for— refining, preflighting, and importing impositions.
- **UserDefinedFolders:** Any job-related files that you place here, folders that you create, or custom folders that you set up in Prinergy Administrator.
- **WebDownloads, WebUploads, and WebAnnotatedProofs:** Files being exchanged with customers using Prepress Portal.

You can view job folders in a file browser, but do not change the file structure of the `System` folder and its subfolders, or you may lose data. If you view the `System` folder, note that some files in it are visible from a Windows-based computer but not from a Macintosh computer.

Creating jobs and pre-jobs

1. In Job Finder, select **Jobs** to create a job or select **Pre-Jobs** to create a pre-job.
2. Select **File > New Job** or **File > New Pre-Job**.
The Create New Job dialog box or Create New Pre-Job dialog box appears.
3. Perform one of the following actions:
 - Use the lists to select the group in which you want to create the job or pre-job, and click **Open**.
 - Click **New Group** to create a new group. In the **Create New Group** box, type a name for the new group, following the naming requirements, and click **Create**.
4. If your system has more than one server, in the **Job Home Server** box, select the server on which you want to create the job or pre-job.
5. If your system has servers that share volumes, in the **Job Volume** box, select the volume on which you want to create the job or pre-job.
6. In the **Name** box, type a name for the job or pre-job, following the naming requirements.
7. If you want to use the advanced job-creation features, click ▸ beside **Options** and set the options as follows:
 - To base the new job on a template job, select the **Template Job** check box. In the Select Template Job dialog box, use the lists to locate and select the template job on which you want to base

the new job. Select the options that you want to copy from the template job, and click **OK**.

- To set job attributes for the new job—such as number of layers, due date, or default color setup—select the **Job Attributes** check box. In the Set Job Attributes dialog box, set the attributes that you want, and click **OK**.
- To import an exported job, select the **Import Job** check box. In the Import Job dialog box, select the exported job that you want to import, and click **OK**.

8. Click **Create.**

The job or pre-job appears in a new Job Manager window.

Create New Job / Pre-Job dialog box

This dialog box has two different names. The name is **Create New Job** when you are creating a job and **Create New Pre-Job** when you are creating a pre-job.

The dialog box displays the settings that were entered when the last job was created.

lists

The drop-down and the list work together to navigate groups.

When the drop-down displays:

- **Groups on <server name>**, the list displays the groups on the specified server
- A group name, the list displays the contents of the specified group, including jobs and groups

When you click the drop-down, you see the path of the displayed item in reverse order. For example, if the drop-down displays a subgroup, when you click the drop-down, you see the name of the group that the subgroup is in, followed by **Groups on <server name>**.

Open

Opens the selected item.

New Group

Click this button to display the Create New Group dialog box, which you use to create a new group (rather than selecting an existing group) in which to create the new job or pre-job.

Home

Server

Lists the servers on which you can create jobs and pre-jobs. The **Server** list is available only if you have more than one server.

Volume

Lists the volumes on the server that you selected in the **Server** list. The **Volume** list is available only if your system has more than one shared volume.

Create new Job/Pre-Job as

Type a name for the new job or pre-job. The name must:

- Be 31 characters or less
- Be unique, even if other jobs or pre-jobs are created in different groups
- Not be the same as the group name-to avoid confusion
- Not include the following special characters: \ / : ' \ " ? * < > |
- Not start or end with a space character or end with a . (period)

Options

Click ▶ beside **Options** to display more options for creating a job or pre-job.

Template Job

Select this check box to display the Select Template Job dialog box, which you use to base your new job or pre-job on a template job.

Job Attributes

Select this check box to display the Set Job Attributes dialog box, which you use to set the job attributes for the new job or pre-job.

Import Job

Select this check box to display the Import Job dialog box, where you can base your new job or pre-job on a previously exported job.

Select Template Job dialog box

lists

The drop-down and the list work together to navigate groups.

When the drop-down displays:

- **Groups on <server name>**, the list displays the groups on the specified server
- A group name, the list displays the contents of the specified group, including jobs and groups

When you click the drop-down, you see the path of the displayed item in reverse order. For example, if the drop-down displays a subgroup, when you click the drop-down, you see the name of the group that the subgroup is in, followed by **Groups on <server name>**.

Hot Folders

Select this check box to copy the hot folders from the template job to the new job.

Image Search Paths

Select this check box to copy the image search paths from the template job to the new job.

Note: A search path to a folder within a job folder is a relative search path. A path to a folder outside of a job folder—for example, a path to an image library—is an absolute search path. When a job is set up to use a template job's search paths, relative search paths become references to folders within the new job but absolute search paths continue to reference the same folders that were referenced in the template job.

Font Search Paths

Select this check box to copy the font search paths from the template job to the new job.

Note: A search path to a folder within a job folder is a relative search path. A path to a folder outside of a job folder—for example, a path to an image library—is an absolute search path. When a job is set up to use a template job's search paths, relative search paths become references to folders within the new job but absolute search paths continue to reference the same folders that were referenced in the template job.

Job Favorites

Select this check box to copy the Job Favorites from the template job to the new job.

Automated Page Assignment

Select this check box to copy the Automated Page Assignment (APA) file from the template job to the new job.

Information from the APA file with the latest date and time in the template job is added to the `Job.apa` file in the `<job folder>\Control` folder for the new job. If you use both the **Import Job** option (with an APA file) and the **Template Job** option (including the APA file), the APA file from the imported job overwrites the APA file from the template job.

Active Rule Sets

Select this check box to copy the active rule sets from the template job to the new job.

Layered PDF Versioning (LPV) Version Plan

Select this check box to copy the version plan from the template LPV job to the new job. For more information, see the *Prinergy Layered PDF Versioning User Guide*.

Imposition Plans

Select this check box to copy the imposition plans from the template job to the new job. This automates imposition selection and reduces repetitive tasks when you create new jobs.

RIP To Use

Select this check box to have the new job use the same RIP as the template job. The RIP will be either the Adobe PDF Print Engine (APPE) RIP or the Adobe CPSI RIP, depending on which RIP was selected in the template job's attributes.

Color Setup

Select this check box to have the new job use the same ColorFlow color setup as the template job.

Job attributes

Job status

Job status is an attribute that you can set for a job or pre-job. Job status options are:

- **Created:** The default status of any job created in Prepress Portal.
- **In Prepress:** Indicates a job or pre-job is active. Files dropped into the hot folder of the job or pre-job are processed. Also, the job or

pre-job is included in Prinergy reports. This is the default status of all new jobs and pre-jobs.

- **Ready for Final Output, Completed Final Output, On Press, and Shipped:** Indicates progress of a job or pre-job. These statuses must be set manually.
- **Completed:** Indicates a job or pre-job is inactive. Files dropped into the hot folder of the job or pre-job are not processed. Also, the job or pre-job is not included in Prinergy reports. This is the default status of any job that is purged using the purge process template. It is also the default status of any retrieved job.

Job attributes

Though most job information is generated automatically, you can set some optional job attributes to help you track a job's due dates and status. You also set job attributes to enable ColorFlow for the job and to select a default color setup for the job. You can set job attributes when you create a job, or later in Job Finder or Job Manager.

Job attributes include:

- Whether the job is enabled for ColorFlow, and if so, the job's default color setup
- The RIP to use for the job
- Regional versioning. If you are using legacy versioning, it is the maximum number of pages that you can assign to a page position. Regional versioning is also called layers for versioning.
- Due date and times for the proof and the final output
- Job code
- Job status
- Whether to enable the job for Web access by a specific print buyer through Prepress Portal

Job attributes are optional; you do not have to set them to successfully run a job.

You can set and view job attributes in the Job Attributes dialog box and view job attributes in the Job Finder columns.

Setting job status and other attributes

Requirements:

Ensure that the jobs or pre-jobs are not open in Job Manager.

1. In Job Finder, select one or more jobs or pre-jobs.
2. Perform one of the following actions:

| To | Do This |
|--|---|
| Set the status to Completed | From the Edit menu, select Set Job to Completed . |
| Set the status to In Prepress | From the Edit menu, select Set Job to In Prepress . |
| Change any attribute or set any status | From the Edit menu, select Edit Job Attributes . In the Edit Job Attributes dialog box, set or modify the options as desired, and click OK . |

Note: Newly set job attributes do not appear in the Job Finder window until you refresh it by clicking **View > Refresh**.

If you cannot see a column with the attribute you set, such as the **Job Status** column, you must display the column.

Tip: You can also set job attributes when creating a new job or pre-job.

Edit / Set Job Attributes dialog box

This dialog box has two names. The name is Set Job Attributes when you are creating a new job or pre-job or Edit Job Attributes when you are changing an existing job or pre-job.

ColorFlow

Enable ColorFlow

Select this option to enable ColorFlow for the job.

ColorFlow simplifies the process of setting up color and ensuring that jobs are processed using correct color settings.

When you enable ColorFlow for the job, and then process the job's files using a refine or output process template, the files are processed according to the ColorFlow settings that you configure in those process templates.

Note: After you run a job with ColorFlow enabled, you cannot re-run the job without ColorFlow enabled unless you re-create the job.

Default Color Setup

Select a default color setup for the job.

A color setup is a collection of several device conditions and the color control elements (curves, device profiles, and DeviceLink profiles) that are required to match a common target on all the reproduction devices.

When you refine a job's pages using a refine process template in which ColorFlow settings are enabled, the color setup that is assigned to the refined pages is either the color setup specified in the refine process template or the default color setup for the job, depending on how the refine process template is configured.

For more information about ColorFlow, see [Using ColorFlow software](#) on page [831](#).

RIP Options

RIP Name

Select **Adobe PDF Print Engine** or **Adobe CPSI** to choose the RIP for the job.

Adobe PDF Print Engine is the default RIP.

Final Output Handling When RIP is Different

Select **Fail** or **Warn** to indicate how you want final output handled when the RIP is different.

For example if you submit a job that contains a PostScript object that the RIP cannot process, you could set this option to **Fail** to indicate that an operator needs to remake any proofs that have been made using that RIP.

Regional Versioning

Regular Job

Select this option if the job is a regular job and versioning is not required.

Layered PDF Versioning (LPV) Job

For information about Layered PDF Versioning, see the *Prinergy Layered PDF Versioning User Guide*.

Legacy Versioning Job

Select this option if you are using the original Prinergy system to create multiple versions of a publication. This versioning system requires multiple imposition plans and the manipulation of color separations.

For more information, see the *Prinergy Regional Versioning User Guide*.

Max Layers

The maximum number of pages that you can assign to one page position. This information is set in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box and only applies to legacy versioning jobs.

Due Date Time

Proof

The date and time when proofs for the job are due. This date is exported with a job.

Click **Edit** next to this option to display the Proof Due Date dialog box, which you use to enter the month, day, year, and time when the proofs are due.

Click **Clear** next to this option to delete the previously entered due date.

The computer's operating system controls date and time formats.

Final Output

The date and time when the final output for the job is due. This date is exported with a job. This date also appears in Prepress Portal.

Click **Edit** next to this option to display the Output Due Date dialog box, which you use to enter the month, day, year, and time when the final output is due.

Click **Clear** next to this option to delete the previously entered due date.

The computer's operating system controls date and time formats.

Miscellaneous

Job Alias

The alias of jobs in your system. For systems where the job name is a number, the job alias provides the meaningful job name. **Job Alias** corresponds to **Job Description** in InSite Prepress Portal. If you change the job alias in Prinergy, the job description in InSite Prepress Portal is changed.

Job Code

A job code that you specify. The job code can be anything that is meaningful to you or to your customer.

The job code is:

- Available to an imposition job ticket
- Available as a variable mark on the job's output
- Exported with a job
- Included in CIP3 files when Prinergy generates CIP3 files during final output

The job code also appears in Prepress Portal, if the job is enabled for Web access through Prepress Portal. If you change the job code in Prinergy, the job code in PrePress Portal is changed.

Job Status

The status of the job. When a job is created, its status is set to **In Prepress**.

You can change a job's status in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box. The following statuses are available:

- **Created**
- **In Prepress**
- **On Press**
- **Shipped**
- **Completed**
- **Ready for Final Output**
- **Completed Final Output**

If the job is enabled for Web access through Prepress Portal, the following additional statuses are available:

- **In Cart**
- **Pending Order Approval**
- **Order Requested**
- **Order Accepted**
- **Order Rejected**

Select **Enable Press Side Proofing** if the workflow includes the Kodak PressProof software.

APA behavior on RIP

This job attribute is available when you use Automated Page Assignment (APA) and create CT/LW jobs.

This job attribute determines how to resolve any conflicts between the page position assignments specified in the APA file and pages that have been previously assigned to a position in Prinergy Workshop.

When you refine a page, Prinergy looks in the Automated Page Assignment (APA) file to determine its page set position and then automatically assigns it to this position. There are times, however, when there may already be a page assigned to that page set position. When Prinergy encounters this conflict, it needs to determine which of the following actions to take:

- Retain the page currently assigned to this position and leave the newly refined page as unassigned.
- Assign the newly refined page to the page position specified in the APA file and unassign the page currently assigned to this position.

The **APA behavior on RIP** attribute enables you to choose how Prinergy handles page assignment conflicts when it re-refines a page in this job. Select:

- **Retain Assignments** to retain the page currently assigned to the position specified in APA file, and leave the re-refined page as unassigned.
- **Overwrite Assignments** to assign the refined page to the position specified in the APA file, overwriting the existing page assignment. The page that is currently assigned to this position then becomes unassigned.
- **None** to disregard the APA file entirely. This means that a re-refined page that has never been assigned stays unassigned; and a re-refined page that has been assigned stays in its assigned position.

This job attribute overrides the default APA behavior for new jobs which is set in Prinergy Administration. For information on how to set default APA behavior for new jobs, see the Prinergy System Administration Guide.

Note: The job's APA files are stored in the **<Job>/Control** folder. If there is more than one APA file, for example, **Job.apa** and **Job.v1.apa**, Prinergy looks at the APA file with the latest date and time. It does not refer to the version number in the file name.

Web Access

Enable Web Access

Allows the selected customer to view the job in Prepress Portal.

When you select the **Enable Web Access** check box, the Select Web Access Customer dialog box appears. Select the customer for whom you want to allow Web access for the job.

Customer

Lists the customer whose name you selected when you enabled Web access to the job.

Managing jobs

Job management

After you create jobs or pre-jobs, you can:

- Find them, if you're not sure about the job's name or location
- Open them
- Rename them
- Move them between groups
- Move them between Prinerger systems
- Copy them
- Add notes to them
- Add custom fields to them
- Destroy them

Finding jobs

If you want to open a job but are not sure of its exact name or its group, you can search for it with the Find Job dialog box.

If you know the exact name, you can enter it.

If you do not know the exact name, you can use the "*" wild card in place of one or more letters. For example, if you search for **magazine***, you will find all jobs that start with **magazine**. You can use multiple wild cards in the same search.

You can use uppercase or lowercase letters. Case does not matter in the search.

The search results display each job that matches your search and the group it is in. When you select a job and click **Open**, the job opens.

Opening jobs

You can open a job from either Job Finder or Job Manager. You can open pre-jobs from Job Finder only.

Each job opens in a new Job Manager window. You can open several Job Manager windows at once.

If you're not sure about the job's name or location, see [Finding jobs and pre-jobs](#) on page [98](#).

Renaming jobs

You can rename jobs and pre-jobs in Job Finder.

You cannot rename a job if any processes are in progress on elements of that job.

You can rename a job while the job is open in Job Manager, but the name change does not take effect in Job Manager until you close and reopen the job. You can still start processes in Job Manager when it is showing the old job name.

You can also [Renaming groups](#) on page [110](#).

Adding custom fields to jobs

You can create custom fields for jobs or for elements within a job, so that you can track unique information about the job or element. Custom fields let you determine the type of information that you store and display about a job or job element.

Adding notes to jobs

You can add notes to a job. You can also edit or delete job notes. All users can see the notes that others have added. Notes have a time stamp to show when they were last modified.

Prepress Portal users can work with job notes. Prepress Portal job notes that are visible to all users are also visible in Workshop. Job notes created in Workshop are visible to InSite administrators.

Dashboard users can do everything with job notes that you can do in Workshop, including adding, editing, deleting, and viewing Workshop job notes.

Destroying jobs

If you never intend to finish or use a job or pre-job, you can destroy it. You can select multiple jobs at a time to destroy with a single operation.

Important: Destroying a job or pre-job permanently deletes all files and information about the job or pre-job. You cannot retrieve it later.

To keep a copy of the job for future use, see [About Archiving, Purging, and Retrieving Jobs](#).

Getting information on jobs

You can get detailed information about jobs or pre-jobs in the Job Info dialog box. The Job Info dialog box displays information about all of the job or pre-job details, including file size information.

You can get information about multiple jobs or pre-jobs from Job Finder. Each one has a separate Job Info dialog box.

You can get information about the currently open job from Job Manager.

Finding jobs and pre-jobs

1. In Job Finder, select the **Jobs** view to find a job or the **Pre-Jobs** view to find a pre-job.
2. From the **Edit** menu, select **Find Job** or **Find Pre-Job**.
3. In the Find Job dialog box, type the name of the job that you want to find.

You can use either uppercase or lowercase letters and the * (asterisk) as a wild card.

4. Click **OK**.

The Find Job Results dialog box appears, displaying the jobs that match your search.

To help you identify your job, the following information is listed: name, group in which the job resides, job code, location of the job, and the date and time that the job was created.

5. Select the job that you want to open, and click **Open**.

Tip: You can also double-click the job to open it.

A Job Manager window opens for the job.

Find Job dialog box

Job Name

The name of the job your want to search for.

Find Job Results dialog box

Name

The name of each job that matches your search.

Select one of the jobs listed and click **Open**.

Group

The group in which the job or pre-job was created.

Job Code

The job code that you specified when you created the job.

Location

The file path to the job or pre-job, using the UNC format (`\<servername>\<jobvolume>\Jobs\<jobname>`).

Created

The date and time when you created the job or pre-job.

Opening jobs and pre-jobs

The way that you open jobs and pre-jobs depends on which window you are in.

- If you are in the Job Finder window:
 1. Select the **Jobs** view to open a job, or the **Pre-Jobs** view to open a pre-job.
 2. Perform one of the following actions:
 - Double-click the job or pre-job.
 - Select the job or pre-job, and from the **File** menu, select **Open Job**.
 - Right-click the job or pre-job and select **Open Job**.
- If you are in the Job Manager window:
 1. From the **File** menu, select **Open**.
 2. In the Open Job dialog box, select the job that you want to open and click **Open**.

Open Job dialog box

lists

The drop-down and the list work together to navigate folders.

When the drop-down displays:

- **Volumes**, the list displays the volumes in your system
- A volume name, the list displays folders at the root of the selected volume
- A folder name, the list displays the contents of that folder

When you click the drop-down, you see the path of the displayed item in reverse order. For example, if the drop-down displays a subfolder, when you click the drop-down, you see the name of the folder that the subfolder is in, followed by the name of the volume that the folder is on, followed by **Volumes**.

Open

Use this button to open the item selected in the list.

Renaming jobs and pre-jobs

1. In Job Finder, select the **Jobs** view to rename a job or the **Pre-Jobs** view to rename a pre-job.
2. Select the job or pre-job.
3. From the **File** menu, select **Rename Job**.

Note: **Rename Job** is not available if any processes are occurring on the job's elements.

4. In the Rename Job dialog box, type the new name, following the naming requirements.
5. Click **Rename**.

If the job is open in Job Manager, the name change does not take effect in Job Manager until you close and reopen the job.

Rename Job dialog box

New Name

Enter a new name for the job.

Using job notes

1. In Job Manager, from the **Job** menu, select **Notes**.
2. In the Job Notes dialog box:

| To | Do This |
|-------------------|---|
| Add a job note | Type a note in the Add a New Note box, and click Add . Job notes are visible to Dashboard users and InSite administrators. |
| Change a job note | Select the job note, and click Edit . Make your changes and click Save . The changed note is moved to the top of the list. |
| Delete a job note | Select the job note, and click Delete . This job note is marked as deleted and hidden. |

| To | Do This |
|------------------------|--|
| Show deleted job notes | Select the Show Deleted Notes check box. To see the full text of a deleted job note, select the note, and click View . Note: Job notes are not deleted permanently. When you select this check box, all the job notes for this job that have been created, edited, or deleted are displayed. |

Job Notes dialog box

list

Lists all the notes for a job, including job notes created in Prepress Portal that are visible to all users, and all job notes created in Dashboard. The list includes a few lines of each job note. To view the full text of a job note, select it and click **Edit**.

Add a New Note

Type a new job note in this box and click **Add**.

Add

This button is available only after you type text in the **Add a New Note** box. Click this button to add the text in the **Add a New Note** box to the job notes list.

Job notes are visible to Dashboard users and InSite administrators.

Edit

Click this button to edit the selected note or to view the full text of the selected note.

After making changes click **Save**. The changed note is moved to the top of the list.

Delete

Click this button to mark the selected note as deleted and to hide it. (Job notes are not deleted permanently; they are hidden.) To display deleted job notes, select **Show Deleted Notes**.

Show Deleted Notes

Select this check box to display all the job notes that have been created, edited, or deleted for this job.

View

This button is available only after you select a deleted job note. Click this button to view the full text of the deleted job note.

Destroying jobs and pre-jobs

Important: Destroying a job or pre-job permanently deletes all files and information about the job or pre-job.

1. Start destroying a job in one of these ways, depending on which window you are in:

| In | Do This |
|-------------|--|
| Job Finder | Select the jobs or pre-jobs. From the File menu, select Destroy Entire Job . |
| Job Manager | From the Job menu, select Destroy > Destroy . |

2. In the Destroy Job dialog box, type your user name in the **User Name** box and your password in the **Password** box.
3. Click **Destroy**.

Destroy Job dialog box

User name


Enter the user name associated with your Prinerigy Workshop account.

Password

Enter the password associated with your Prinerigy Workshop account.

Viewing information about jobs and pre-jobs

1. Select a job or pre-job:

| In | Do This |
|-------------|--|
| Job Finder | Select one or more jobs or pre-jobs |
| Job Manager | Select the  <job name> button |

2. From the **File** menu, select **Get Info**.

The Job Info dialog box appears displaying details about the job. If you selected more than one job or pre-job, a separate Job Info dialog box appears for each one.

Job Info dialog box

Name

The name of the job, pre-job, or group. This column cannot be hidden.

Kind

Indicates whether the selection is a **Job** or **Pre-Job**.

Details

The information in the **Details** area is specific to each type of element. Click ▶ to expand this collapsible section to view more details.

Pages Approved

The number of approved pages, over the total number of pages in the job.

APA Behavior on RIP

Displays how this job resolves conflicts between the page position assignments specified in the APA file and pages that have been previously assigned to a position in Prinergy Workshop.

- **Retain Assignments** to retain the page currently assigned to the position specified in APA file, and leave the re-refined page as unassigned.
- **Overwrite Assignments** to assign the refined page to the position specified in the APA file, overwriting the existing page assignment. The page that is currently assigned to this position then becomes unassigned.
- Select **None** to disregard the APA file entirely. This means that a re-refined page that has never been assigned stays unassigned; and a re-refined page that has been assigned stays in its assigned position.

Archive Status

The quantity of files in the job that you have archived at any time. Possible statuses are:

- **None:** The job has not been archived.
- **Some:** Some but not all files in the job were archived. This can occur when you:
 - Archive only selected files, not the whole job
 - Archive the job, and then add one or more files to the job, for example, by adding input or processing an input file that had not been processed before the archive
 - Change one or more of the archived files, for example by processing it again
- **All:** The job was archived and no changes have been made to any files in the job.

Created

The date and time when you created the job or pre-job.

Errors/Warnings

Displays the most important error or warning status from the most recent processes in the **Processes** pane of Job Manager.

Final Output Count

The number of separations you have output using the final output process template, over the total number of separations in the job.

Final Output Due

The date and time that the final output for the job is due. This information is set in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box.

Full Surfaces

The number of surfaces for which all positions have pages assigned, over the total number of surfaces in the job.

Group

The group in which the job or pre-job was created.

Job Code

A job code that you specify. The job code can be anything you desire. It can be a code that is meaningful to you or to your customer.

The job code is:

- Available to an imposition job ticket
- Available as a variable mark on the job's output
- Exported with a job
- Included in CIP3 files when Prinergy generates CIP3 files during final output

The job code also displays in Prepress Portal, if the job is enabled for web access through Prepress Portal.

Job Home

The full path name for the job folder location.

Job Status

The status of the job. When a job is created its status is set to **In Prepress**.

You can change job status in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box. Possible statuses are.

- **Created**
- **In Prepress**
- **Ready for Final Output**
- **Completed Final Output**
- **On Press**
- **Shipped**
- **Completed**

Last Archived

The date and time that someone last archived the job.

Last Final Output

Date and time the last separation was output using a final output process template.

Max Layers

The maximum number of pages you can assign to one page position. This information is set in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box, and only applies to legacy versioning jobs.

Name

The name of the job, pre-job, or group. This column cannot be hidden.

Online

Indicates whether a job is fully or partially **Offline** or **Online**.

Offline indicates that no files in the job's job folder exist on the job home server. Files from outside the job folder may still be online. When you fully purge a job, its status is **Offline** since purging removes all files in the job folder from the job home server.

Online indicates that at least one file for the job is on the job home server.

If this column is blank, the status of the job is not known.

Proof Due

The date and time that the proofs for the job are due. This information is set in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box.

Stale Archive Status

The quantity (**All Some**, or **None**) of files in the job that have changed since the last archive.

Web Access Customer

The name of the customer for whom you have enabled web access. This information is set in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box.

Sizes

Expand this collapsible section to view information about the size of the job folder and related files.

Job Folder

The total size of all files in the job folder.

Other Files

The total size of all files that have been added to the job but are located outside of the job folder.

Custom Fields

You can create custom fields for jobs or for elements within a job, so that you can track unique information about the job or element. Custom fields let you determine the type of information that you view about a job or job element.

Custom Fields appear in the Job Info dialog box when you create custom fields using the Custom Fields dialog box. You can edit values for custom fields in the Job Info dialog box.

Note: The fields in this dialog box also appear as columns in [Job Finder window](#) on page 16.

Changing a job to a pre-job or a pre-job to a job

In Job Finder, you can change a pre-job to a job or a job to a pre-job.

It is possible to perform these actions on a group of jobs (or pre-jobs) simultaneously.

Note: Changing a pre-job to a job might stop InSite upload processing from working on that job, depending on how the InSite software is configured.

1. In Job Finder, select the job or pre-job that you want to change.
2. Select the **File** menu.

- If you are in the **Pre-Jobs** view, select **Move to Job**.

After Prinergy changes the pre-job to a job, it appears in the **Jobs** view.

- If you are in the **Jobs** view, select **Move to Pre-Job**.

After Prinergy changes the job to a pre-job, it appears in the **Pre-Jobs** view.

Move Job dialog box

lists

The drop-down and the list work together to navigate folders.

When the drop-down displays:

- **Volumes**, the list displays the volumes in your system
- A volume name, the list displays folders at the root of the selected volume
- A folder name, the list displays the contents of that folder

When you click the drop-down, you see the path of the displayed item in reverse order. For example, if the drop-down displays a subfolder, when you click the drop-down, you see the name of the folder that the subfolder is in, followed by the name of the volume that the folder is on, followed by **Volumes**.

Open

Use this button to open the item selected in the list.

Move to <group name>

Click this button when you are ready to move the job to the group selected in the list.

Job groups

About job groups

The jobs and pre-jobs in Job Finder are organized into groups that you create. Grouping jobs makes them easier to find and manage.

For example, if you produce a monthly magazine, you might want to create a group for it, and then, within that group, create a separate job for each issue of the magazine.

You can create a new group while you create a job or pre-job, or separately. You can further organize your jobs by creating groups within groups.

If you later decide to organize your jobs in a different way, you can move jobs between groups, move groups into other groups, and rename groups. You can also delete a group, if it is empty.

Groups are not part of the folder structure that you can see in a file browser. They are part of the data structure inside Prinerly.

Moving jobs and pre-jobs between groups

1. In Job Finder, select the **Jobs** view to move a job, or the **Pre-Jobs** view to move a pre-job.
2. Select the job or pre-job.
3. Select **File > Change Group of Job**.
4. In the Change Group dialog box, use the lists to locate and select the group to which you want the job or pre-job to go.
5. Click **Move to "<group name>"**.

Creating groups

Tip: You can also create a group when [Creating jobs and pre-jobs](#) on page 85.

1. In Job Finder, from the **File** menu, select **New Group**.
Tip: You can also right-click anywhere in Job Finder and select **New Group**.
2. In the Create New Group dialog box, use the lists to locate the root of the volume or the existing group that you want to create the new group in.
3. In the **New Group Name** box, type a name for the group.
4. Click **Create**.

Create New Group dialog box

lists

The drop-down and the list work together to navigate groups.

When the drop-down displays:

- **Groups on <server name>**, the list displays the groups on the specified server
- A group name, the list displays the contents of the specified group, including jobs and groups

When you click the drop-down, you see the path of the displayed item in reverse order. For example, if the drop-down displays a subgroup, when you click the drop-down, you see the name of the group that the subgroup is in, followed by **Groups on <server name>**.

Open

This is not visible if you open this dialog box from the Create New Job or Create New Pre-Job dialog box.

Use this button to open the item selected in the list.

New Group Name

Type a name for the new group. The group name must:

- Be 31 characters or less
- Be unique

In addition to giving the group a unique name, avoid using the same name for your group and your job; it can cause confusion.

- Not include the following special characters: \ / : ' \ " ? * < > |
- Not start or end with a space character or end with a . (period)

Moving groups

1. In Job Finder, select the group.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Change Group (of group)**.
Tip: You can also right-click the group and select **Change Group (of group)**.
3. In the Change Group dialog box, use the lists to locate either the root or group that you want to move the group into.
4. Click **Move to "<new location>"**.

Move Group dialog box

lists

The drop-down and the list work together to navigate groups.

When the drop-down displays:

- **Groups on <server name>**, the list displays the groups on the specified server
- A group name, the list displays the contents of the specified group, including jobs and groups

When you click the drop-down, you see the path of the displayed item in reverse order. For example, if the drop-down displays a subgroup, when you click the drop-down, you see the name of the group that the subgroup is in, followed by **Groups on <server name>**.

Open

Opens the selected item.

Move to "<new location>"

Click this button when you are ready to move the group to the location selected in the list.

Renaming groups

1. In Job Finder, select the group that you want to rename.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Rename Group**.
Tip: You can also right-click the group and select **Rename Group**.
3. In the Rename Group dialog box, type a new name for the group in the **New Name** box.
4. Click **Rename**.

Rename Group dialog box

New Name

Type a name for the new group. The group name must:

- Be 31 characters or less
- Be unique

In addition to giving the group a unique name, you should avoid using the same name for your group and your job; it can cause confusion.

- Not include the following special characters: \ / : ' \ " ? * < > |
- Not start or end with a space character or end with a . (period)

Deleting groups

1. In Job Finder, ensure the group is empty.
 - If the group contains sub groups, delete them.
 - If a group contains jobs or pre-jobs, destroy or move them.
2. Select the group.
3. From the **File** menu, select **Delete Group**.

Tip: You can also right-click the group and select **Delete Group**.

4. When a confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

Copying and moving jobs between servers

About copying jobs

In Prinergy, you can copy original jobs and pre-jobs to create new jobs and pre-jobs on your Prinergy system. You can copy a job when you need to perform the following tasks:

- Create a backup of a job. For example, you can copy an original job and make revisions, remakes or test changes on the new copied job, leaving the original job intact.
- Move a job. For example, you can copy a job to another server/share combination on your Prinergy system and delete the original job.
- Retrieve an archived job to a newly created copy of the job. For example, you can archive and purge Job 1, copy Job 1 to create Job 2, and retrieve Job 1 into Job 2.

When you copy a job, all job related data from the original job is copied to the new job. If the original job is online, the job folder contents are copied to the new job. If the original job is offline, you have to use the Archiver to retrieve the job folder contents into the new job.

When you copy a job, it is optional to copy the history log and the job folder of an original job to a new job. If you choose to copy the history log and the job folder, the new job will contain all of the functionality and job attributes of the original job, including: pages, page sets, imposition plans, page assignments, version plans, color libraries, history processing information, miscellaneous files, archives, hot folders, job notes, custom fields, as well as, image and font search paths. For image and font search paths, the paths are copied, but any content residing outside of the job folder is not copied.

You can copy a job using a pre-set copy job process template. After a job has been copied, you can change the job data as necessary. You can only copy one job at a time.

As with any job, a job that is created using the copy job function can be destroyed.

About moving jobs

There are several ways to move jobs and pre-jobs in Job Finder:

- You can move jobs and pre-jobs from one group to another within the same Prinergy system using the **File > Change Group (of Job)** function.
- You can move jobs and pre-jobs to another volume using the **File > Copy Job** function. When you copy a job, a copy of the job remains on the server. After a job is copied, you can delete the original version.

- You can move jobs and pre-jobs to another Prinerger system using the **File > Move Job From Remote Server** function. When you move a job or pre-job, the job files remain on the job's home server.
- You can also move jobs and pre-jobs to another server by exporting them.

About moving jobs from a remote server

In Job Finder, you can move jobs and pre-jobs between two Prinerger systems using the **File > Move Job From Remote Server** function. When you move a job or pre-job, the job files remain on the job's home server. Previously, you could move jobs and pre-jobs to another server only by exporting them.

This feature is useful for the following tasks:

- Upgrading a server—you can move all of the jobs off a Prinerger system before upgrading it.
- Maximizing production—you can move jobs between Prinerger systems to distribute the workload. For example, if you have 20 jobs running on one primary server and only five jobs running on another primary server, you can move some jobs to achieve better throughput.

For instructions about moving jobs and pre-jobs between two Prinerger systems, see [Moving jobs from remote servers](#) on page 116.

Limitations

When you move a job or pre-job from another Prinerger system, make sure that you are aware of the following limitations:

- Job folders—The job files remain on the source server.
- Process templates—if the job has a hot folder that processes files using a custom process template, it is assumed that the process template on the target Prinerger system has the same settings as the process template on the source Prinerger system.
- Custom fields—when you move a job that contains custom field information, it is also available for the job on the target Prinerger system.
- Rules-Based Automation—when you move a job that has rule sets enabled in it, the rule sets are copied from the source Prinerger system and re-enabled in the moved job on the target Prinerger system. However, if a rule is executing when the job is moved, execution is permanently stopped.

Requirements

When you move a job or pre-job from another Prinerger system, make sure that you are aware of the following requirements:

- Both Prinerger systems must be running the same Prinerger version.
- The source job or pre-job must not be in use when you move the job.
- The job cannot be purged—either partially or fully.
- The target Prinerger system must not already have a job with the same name.
- The job cannot have a hot folder that processes files using a custom process template, unless the custom process template also exists on the target Prinerger system.
- The target server (the one you are moving the job from) must be defined as the job home of the destination server. To do this:
 1. On the primary server, open **Prinerger Administrator > Tools > File Shares**.
 2. On **Network File Shares Configuration**, click **Add**.
 3. In the **Choose New Share** box, enter the server name (or ID) and the job home that you want to share (for example, `AraxiVolume_ServerName_J`).
 4. When new share host is added to **File Shares** (on the left side), select it with the cursor, and then select the **Share can be used for job home** check box on the right side.

Copying jobs and pre-jobs

1. In Job Finder, select the **Jobs** view to copy a job or the **Pre-Jobs** view to copy a pre-job.
2. Select a job or pre-job that you want to copy.
From the **File** menu, select **Copy Job** or right-click on the job and select **Copy Job**.
3. Do one of the following in the Copy Job / Pre-Job dialog box:
 - Use the lists to select the group in which you want to copy your job and click **Open**.
 - Click **New Group** to create a new group. In the Create New Group box, type a name for the new group following the naming requirements, and then click **Create**.
4. If your system has more than one server, from the **Server** box, select the server on which you want to copy the job or pre-job.
5. If your system has more than one shared volume, from the **Volume** box, select the volume on which you want to create the job or pre-job.

6. In the **Create new Job as** box, type a name for the job or pre-job, following the naming requirements.
7. If you want to copy a job using a pre-set copy job process template, click the **Select** button. From the Choose Process Template dialog box, select a Copy Job process template and click **OK**.
8. Click **Copy Job**.
9. From the Start Process dialog box, set the attributes you want, and click **OK**.

The copied job or pre-job appears in a new Job Finder window.

Copy Job / Pre-Job dialog box

This dialog box has two different names. The name is Copy Job when you are copying a job and Copy Pre-Job when you are copying a pre-job.

The dialog box displays the settings that were entered when the last job was copied.

lists

The drop-down and the list work together to navigate groups.

When the drop-down displays:

- **Groups on <server name>**, the list displays the groups on the specified server
- A group name, the list displays the contents of the specified group, including jobs and groups

When you click the drop-down, you see the path of the displayed item in reverse order. For example, if the drop-down displays a subgroup, when you click the drop-down, you see the name of the group that the subgroup is in, followed by **Groups on <server name>**.

Open

Opens the selected item.

New Group

Click this button to display the Create New Group dialog box, which you use to create a new group (rather than selecting an existing group) in which to copy the new job or pre-job.

Home

Server

Lists the servers on which you can copy jobs and pre-jobs. The **Server** list is available only if you have more than one server.

Volume

Lists the volumes on the server that you selected in the **Server** list. The **Volume** list is available only if your system has more than one shared volume.

Create new Job/Pre-Job as

Type a name for the new job or pre-job. The name must:

- Be 31 characters or less
- Be unique, even if other jobs or pre-jobs are created in different groups
- Not be the same as the group name-to avoid confusion
- Not include the following special characters: \ / : ' \ " ? * < > |
- Not start or end with a space character or end with a . (period)

Moving jobs from remote servers

Requirements:

If you want to move jobs and pre-jobs from another Prinermy system, you must be logged on to Workshop on the primary server that you want to move the job to.

Before you can move a job (or pre-job) from a remote server, you must make sure that the target server (that you are bringing the job from) is defined as the job home of the destination server (the one you are bringing the job to).

1. On the primary server, open Prinermy Administrator, and select **Tools > Files Shares**.
2. In Network File Shares Configuration dialog box, click the **Add** button.
3. In the **Choose New Share** box, enter the server name (or ID) and the job home that you want to share—for example, `AraxiVolume_ServerName_J`.
4. After the new share host is added to the file shares (on the left side), select it, and select the **Share can be used for job home** check box.

Move the job

After you define the target server as the job home of the destination server, you can move the job.

1. In Job Finder, select the **Jobs** view to move a job or the **Pre-Jobs** view to move a pre-job.
2. Select the job or pre-job.
3. Select **File > Move Job from Remote Server**.
4. In the Move Job from Remote Server dialog box, select the server that you want to move the job from.
5. In the jobs list, select a single job or multiple jobs to move.
6. Click **Move to "<server name>"**.

The server name that is listed on the button indicates the server that Workshop is connected to.

Move Job from Remote Server dialog box

Server <list>

Select the primary server from the list that you want to move a job from.

Jobs <list>

Select a job group from the list and the job(s) that you want to move.

Move to "<server name>"

Click this button when you are ready to move the job(s) from the server.

The server name that is listed on the button indicates the server that Workshop is connected to.

Copy Job process template

This topic applies only if you are copying jobs or pre-jobs.

Copy Job Folder

Select this check box to copy the job folder contents from the original job to the new job.

If the original job is online, the job folder contents are copied to the new job. If the original job is offline, you have to use the Archiver to retrieve the job folder contents into the new job.

Copy Job History

Select this check box to copy the job history contents from the original job to the new job.

Custom fields

About custom fields

Create custom fields so that you can track unique information about each job or each element within a job, such as all of the surfaces in a job.

For example, you can use custom fields for the following tasks:

- To show who is the salesperson for a job. For example, you can create a custom field at the job level, called **Salesperson**, and view the information in the Visible Columns or Get Info dialog boxes.
- To create variable marks and custom file naming. For example, if you have created custom fields at the job level or job element level (Page, Page Set, Imposition, Signature, Surface, and Separation), you can use them for variable marks and custom file naming. For example, for the mark `#[CustomFieldSurface_Web]`, Web is the name that you defined for the custom field surface, and it would print on output.

Where custom fields appear

When you create custom fields:

- They appear in the Get Info dialog box if the **Show in Workshop** check box is selected in the Custom Fields Manager.
- They appear in the main windows of Workshop if the **Show in Workshop** check box is selected in the Custom Fields Manager and the field's check box is selected in the Visible Columns dialog box for the window, view, or pane.
 - Job-level fields appear as columns in Job Finder.
 - Element-level fields appear as columns in Job Manager. For example, fields for pages can appear as columns in the Pages pane.
- They are available for use in Rules-Based Automation (RBA). You can use RBA to enter values, or you can use a change in a custom field as a trigger for a rule. For example, if you create a custom field for a job, each time users enter values in the custom field, they trigger the **Job Custom Field Changed** event.

Entering values into custom fields

You can enter values for custom fields in these ways:

- Manually in Workshop
- Automatically by importing an imposition that is part of a JDF file that contains custom field data
- Automatically via Business Link by setting up Prinergy to get data for custom fields from an XML file created by an MIS (management information system) when the MIS creates a new Prinergy job via Business Link
- Using the **Set Custom Fields** action in RBA

Rights to work with custom fields

User rights for custom fields is controlled using Prinergy Administrator. You must have a specific user right to modify which custom fields are defined and what their default value and visibility is. Without the right to manage custom fields, the Custom Fields Manager is in read-only mode, and its title displays the words "Read only." Any Workshop user can edit the values assigned to custom fields. For information about setting user rights for managing custom fields, see Prinergy System Administration guide.

Viewing custom fields


You can display custom fields in Workshop.

Requirements: To see any custom field in Workshop, the **Show in Workshop** check box must be selected next to the field in Custom Fields Manager.

- To show fields as columns in Job Finder or Job Manager, perform any of the following actions:
 - To show a job-level field in Job Finder, select **View > Visible Columns**, and select the custom fields that you want to see in Job Finder.
 - To show an element-level field in Job Manager, select **View > Visible Columns**, and select the custom fields that you want to see in the appropriate pane in Job Manager.

For example, select the **Pages** pane, select **View > Visible Columns**, and select the custom fields that you want to see in the **Pages** pane in Job Manager.

Tip: Use the **Select All** and **Deselect All** buttons if you must select or clear a large number of fields.

- To view fields for a specific job or element, perform any of the following actions:
 - To view the information in a job-level field from Job Finder, right-click a job, and select **Get Info**.
 - To view the information in a job-level field from Job Manager, right-click the **job** button , and select **Get Info**.
 - To view the information in an element-level field from Job Manager, right-click an element, and select **Get Info**.

For example, right-click a page in the **Pages** pane, select **Get Info**, and look for the field in the **Custom Fields** area of the Get Info dialog box.

Creating custom fields

Create a custom field for a job or a job element, such as a surface.

Prerequisite: To create, modify, or delete a custom field, you must have a specific right in Prinerger Administrator. Otherwise, the Custom Fields Manager is in read-only mode, and its title displays the words “Read only.”

1. In Job Finder or Job Manager, from the **Tools** menu, select **Custom Fields Manager**.
2. In the Custom Fields Manager, select one of the following options:
 - If you want the field to describe an entire job, select **Job**.
 - If you want the field to describe elements within each job, select the element. Options are: **Page**, **Page Set**, **Page Position**, **Imposition Plan**, **Signature**, **Surface**, or **Separation**.
3. Click **Add**, and define the custom field’s **Name**, **Type**, and **Default Value**. Then, click **Add**, and click **Close**.
4. If you do not want the field to appear in Workshop, clear the check box next to the field in the **Show in Workshop** column.

Custom Fields Manager dialog box

You can use the Custom Fields Manager dialog box to create custom fields for a job, or for elements in a job.

Note: If this dialog box is in read-only mode, you do not have rights to work with custom fields. Contact your system administrator to give you rights using Prinerger Administrator.

Category

Select a job or job element to display and manage custom field information. Click ▶ to expand or minimize the category list panel.

Name

Identifies the names of the custom fields for the element selected.

You cannot edit this column. If you want to update the name of the custom field, you have to delete the custom field and create a new one.

Default Value

Identifies the default value of the custom field.

You can edit a default value for a custom field by selecting the default value column and updating the value. For example, if the **Type** for the default value is set to **Date**, you can select the default value column and click the triangle to display a calendar to select a new date.

Type

Identifies the data type for the custom field that is used to show information about the job or element selected. The options are as follows:

Text: Use alphabetical characters only.

Integer: Use whole numbers only.

Decimal: Use numerical values only.

Yes/No: Checkbox (selected=Yes)

Date: Select a date from the calendar.

You cannot edit this column. If you want to update the data type for the custom field, you have to delete the custom field and create a new one.

Show in Workshop

In Job Finder and Job Manager, this check box identifies if the custom fields for the job or element selected appear in the Visible Columns and Get Info dialog boxes. You can turn this value **ON** or **OFF** for the custom field by selecting or clearing the check box.

Create

Click the **Create** button to add a new custom field for the job or element selected.

Delete

Select a custom field, and click **Delete** to remove it from the system. When a warning message appears, click **Continue** to confirm the deletion.

XSLT for Link JDFs

Import metadata from Link JDFs

XSLT for Link JDFs

You can create custom fields automatically if you use Business Link software and have a defined XSLT file.

If you select this check box, the custom fields for the element you selected are automatically created and populated with information from an XSLT file that you selected.

XSLT file

Select the XSLT file that Prinerger uses to interpret the JDF file.

Add Custom Fields dialog box

Use this dialog box to create a custom field.

Name

Identifies the names of the custom fields for the element selected.

You cannot edit this column. If you want to update the name of the custom field, delete the custom field and create a new one.

Default Value

Identifies the default value of the custom field.

You can edit a default value for a custom field by selecting the default value column and updating the value. For example if the **Type** for the default value is set to **Date**, you can select the default value column and click the triangle to display a calendar to select a new date.

Type

Identifies the data type for the custom field that is used to show information about the job or element selected. The options are as follows:

Text: Use alphabetical characters only.

Integer: Use whole numbers only.

Decimal: Use numerical values only.

Yes/No: Checkbox (selected=Yes)

Date: Select a date from the calendar.

You cannot edit this column. If you want to update the data type for the custom field, you have to delete the custom field and create a new one.

Add

Click this button to finish the process of creating a new custom field, and close the Add Custom Field dialog box.

After clicking this button, start typing values for another new custom field or click **Close** to return to Custom Fields Manager.

7

Input files

Customer files

About preparing customer files

Customer files are the source files that you use to produce the final printed product.

General best practices

- Composite files are preferred, but separated files such as those created with QuarkXPress or Adobe PageMaker, are also acceptable. However, the separations set in separated input files cannot be modified in Prinergy. With composite input files, you can decide at the last minute how you want to output colors. If you require trapping and color matching, you must use composite input files. You can mix composite and separated files in the same Prinergy job.
- We recommend that you always include or embed fonts in your input files.
- Customer files can be stored on any server or disk that Prinergy can see. When you add files to a Prinergy job, you tell the system where the customer files are stored.

For information about specific file formats, see:

- [About Supported Input File Types](#)
- [About Copydot Scans and Other DCS Files](#)
- [About Processing CT/LW and TIFF/IT](#)
- [About Duotones](#)
- [About PDF Input Files](#)
- [About Transparency Support](#)

For information about preparing files from specific software, see:

- [About Illustrator](#)
- [About PageMaker](#)
- [About QuarkXPress](#)
- [About Adobe Photoshop](#)
- [About InDesign](#)
- [About Macromedia FreeHand](#)

About supported input file types

Prinerger supports the following types of input files:

- PDF 1.2, 1.3, 1.4 (separated or composite).
- PDF 1.5 files are supported; however, PDF 1.5 features are not fully supported. (See Note 1.)
 - Layers: For LPV jobs, you can retain layers of incoming files. For non-LPV jobs, visible layers are united onto a single layer.
- PDF 1.6 files are supported; however, some PDF 1.6 features are not supported, for example, Open Type fonts. (See Note 1.)
 - If Open Type fonts are detected, the input file is flattened.
- PDF/X-1a:2001, PDF/X-3
- PostScript Level 1, 2, and PostScript 3 (separated or composite) (See Note 3.)
- EPS
- DCS 1 and DCS-2 (single or multi-file)
- CT/LW (Kodak Brisque and PS/M 5 and up) (See Note 2.) Includes New, Native, and Handshake formats of CT and LW
- TIFF/IT-P1 (See Note 2.)
- TIFF
- JPEG

Prinerger also supports variable data input files for outputting to a digital printer. Currently, only Kodak NexPress and Creo Spire digital printers are supported. The NexPress only supports the PPML/VDX file type. The Creo Spire supports PPML/VDX, PPML/GA and VPS file types.

Notes:

- PDF 1.5 and 1.6 files can be processed if they are free of features that are not supported.
- Supported only if your system includes a CEPS JTP.
- For color-separated files, some functionality, such as trapping and color management, is not available.

About FreeHand

Adobe FreeHand best practices for Prinerger:

- In File/Output Options, select ASCII Images, turn on Include OPI comments.
- Save as EPS.

Note that FreeHand will include OPI comments for TIFF only (not EPS). To perform OPI on an EPS (including DCS), create a sample of the file using an image sampler. OPI-ing a DCS is desirable because Prinerger

will recomposite the DCS on OPI into the composite page allowing you to use Prinergy trapping.

About Illustrator

To prepare Illustrator 8 files for use in Prinergy:

- When you save a file, include the document fonts to ensure you don't have to add the fonts in Prinergy. If you choose not to include document fonts, you must set the font search path in Prinergy.
- Handling DCS files should be largely unnecessary. Copydot images should be saved as PDF in TIFF Assembler Plus and then placed into Illustrator. Contone images with spots can be saved from Photoshop as PSD, TIFF, or PDF and then placed in Illustrator. If, however, DCS files still need to be placed in Illustrator, you must create a low-resolution placement file from the DCS using an image sampler. Place the .samp file in the Illustrator file, and refine in Prinergy using a refine process template with OPI.
- Ensure any die lines are stroked with a unique spot color and are set to overprint. If this isn't done, the settings can be corrected in Prinergy, but it is more efficient to correct in Illustrator.
- Ensure varnishes are filled and/or stroked with a unique spot color and are set to overprint.
- Save your file as an Illustrator EPS Level 3 using the following settings in the EPS Format dialog box:
 - **Compatibility-8.0**
 - **Preview-8-bit IBM PC**
 - Under **Options**, select **Include Placed Files**, **Include Document Fonts**, and **CMYK PostScript**. Deselect **Include Document Thumbnails**.

To prepare Illustrator 9 and later files for use in Prinergy:

- Follow the instructions for preparing Illustrator 8 files.
- Illustrator 9 and later is capable of outputting PDF 1.4 (native transparency), and PDF 1.5 (layers), both of which Prinergy handles well.
 - Native transparency can be useful because of its increased quality and smaller files. Enable Native transparency in the Save PDF dialog box by selecting **Compatibility: Acrobat 5 (PDF 1.4)**. Alternately, selecting **PDF/X-4** from the **Standard** drop-down list in the Save PDF dialog is another good starting point for creating good PDFs for Prinergy's use. Check the other panels in the dialog box to ensure that other settings are appropriate for your environment.
 - Layers are useful only if you are preparing files for use with Layered PDF Versioning jobs. Enable layers in the Save PDF dialog box by selecting **Compatibility: Acrobat 6 (PDF 1.5)**, and

then selecting the **Create Acrobat Layers from Top-Level Layers** check box.

- These settings can be saved as a preset in Illustrator. For more information about transparency, see [About transparency support](#) on page 163. For more information, consult the Illustrator online help.

It may also be helpful to set the document size to be equal to the dieline.

1. Open the PDF in Acrobat.
2. With Pitstop, select the outer extents of the dieline.
3. Activate the Pitstop Artboard tool.
4. From the Artboard **Presets** menu, select **Fit to Selected Art**.
5. To then add bleed, go to **File > Document setup**, and enter the bleed amount.
6. Save the PDF and bring it into Prinergy.

About InDesign

InDesign 2.0 and later is capable of outputting PDF 1.4 (native transparency), and PDF 1.5 (layers), both of which Prinergy handles well.

- Native transparency can be useful because of its increased quality and smaller files. Enable Native transparency in the Export PDF dialog box by selecting **Compatibility: Acrobat 5 (PDF 1.4)**. Alternately, selecting **PDF/X-4** from the **Standard** drop-down list in the Export PDF dialog is another good starting point for creating good PDFs for Prinergy's use. Check the other panels in the dialog box to ensure that other settings are appropriate for your environment.
- Layers are useful only if you are preparing files for use with Layered PDF Versioning jobs. Enable layers in the Export PDF dialog box by selecting **Compatibility: Acrobat 6 (PDF 1.5)**, and then selecting the **Create Acrobat Layers** check box.

These settings can be saved as a preset in InDesign. For more information, consult the InDesign online help.

For more information about transparency, see [About transparency support](#) on page 163.

About PageMaker

- Composite PostScript is required if you want to use Prinergy's trapping or color matching features.
- When printing PostScript, you should select a printer driver and PPD that support color devices. Prinergy installs a PPD with Prinergy Workshop that meets this criteria (**Prinergy Refiner.ppd**).

You should use an Apple LaserWriter printer driver version 8.5.1 or newer.

- You should include registration marks when preparing your PostScript files. In the Print Document dialog box, click **Paper** . Select the **Printer's marks** and **Page information** check boxes. In the **Paper size** box, select **Custom** . A new paper size that allows for the marks is displayed in the Custom Paper Size dialog box.
- Prinergy determines the trim box from crop mark information supplied in PageMaker 6.0, 6.5 and 7.0 PostScript files that include registration marks.
- We recommend that you always include or embed fonts in the PostScript files.

About Photoshop

- When saving DCS files from Photoshop and placing them in desktop software such as Illustrator or QuarkXPress, save the DCS file as either a grayscale composite or a color composite file with a preview. Prinergy will merge high-resolution DCS data to composite when it OPIs composite thin PostScript.
- You must save the file with a preview, otherwise the desktop software may not add the OPI comments.
- For DCS 1 files, select either of:
 - **Color Composite**
 - **Grayscale Composite**

Do not choose **No Composite PostScript**.

- For DCS-2 files, select one of:
 - **Single File with Grayscale Composite**
 - **Multiple File with Grayscale Composite**
 - **Single File with Color Composite**
 - **Multiple File with Color Composite**

Do not choose **Single File DCS No Composite** or **Multiple File DCS, No Composite** as this may cause OPI comments to disappear when placed in QuarkXPress.

- For TIFF images, you can use clipping paths, spot colors, soft masks, and drop shadows with OPI. See [Including spot color channels during OPI](#) on page [270](#) and [About using OPI with transparent effects](#) on page [267](#).

About copydot scans and other DCS files

Reformat copydot scans to 2 KB tiles (2048 pixels x 2048 pixels), and G4 compression.

You can add DCS 1 and DCS-2 files directly to a job. When adding DCS files, add only the main file (the DCS control file); do not add the

separation files. DCS files can be single-file or multi-file. When processed through the normalize function, they become PDF files (separated) that cannot be color matched or trapped. For information about creating composite output, see the **Re-combine** check box in the refine process template.

An alternative workflow is to place partial-page raster DCS files in page layout software, such as QuarkXPress or Adobe PageMaker, and save the files as composite thin PostScript. You can then add the PostScript file to a Prinergy job. When Prinergy fattens the file, it creates a composite DCS file.

About duotones

If you create duotones with Adobe Photoshop 3.0 or 4.0 or any version of Corel PhotoPaint, you must save the duotones as separated DCS files. Saving as composite PostScript (EPS) will not preserve spot colors (that is, the image will be converted to process colors).

If you create duotones in Adobe Photoshop 5.0, you must save them using Adobe Photoshop 5.0.2. Photoshop 5.0 prevents duotones from working correctly on PostScript 3 devices. The free upgrade to Photoshop 5.0.2 is available for download from <http://www.adobe.com/>.

Saving duotones in Photoshop software

To save duotones in Photoshop, select **Image > Mode > Multichannel**. Then, save the file as DCS singles. Ensure that the image is not set to **CMYK** mode in Photoshop software. If the image is set to CMYK mode, spot colors are converted to process colors in Prinergy.

Saving duotones in layout software

You can output duotones (that were created in Adobe Photoshop 5.0.2 and saved as DCS files) from layout software as one of the following formats:

- Composite PostScript with OPI comments (composite thin PostScript). When Prinergy fattens the file, it creates a composite file.
- Separated PostScript with images (separated fat PostScript). Prinergy cannot perform trapping and color-handling functions on separated input files.

About QuarkXPress

Determine the best method and format of outputting from QuarkXPress for you. Also, read about any issues and observations about your version of QuarkXPress from a Prinergy perspective.

What's New in QuarkXPress 8

The QuarkXPress 8 software introduces PANTONE color library support and an updated user interface.

- **PANTONE color library support:** The color library includes added support for the latest color systems from Pantone (PANTONE® Goe™ Bridge coated). Prinergy 4.1.2.1 and 5.0 ships with PANTONE Goe color libraries.
- **User Interface:** Although the user interface is somewhat updated, most of the Quark user experience has changed little from previous versions, ensuring easy transition to the new product
- Added features, for example, Bezier drawing tools, grid tool, super step-and-repeat.

What's New in QuarkXPress 7

The QuarkXPress 7 software includes transparent-looking effects, corrected trim box information, improved blends, color setups, and more.

- **Transparency:** You can now create transparent-looking effects, such as drop shadows and knock-backs. When outputting PDF files from QuarkXPress, the transparency is flattened to PDF 1.3. There is no native PDF 1.4 transparency output from QuarkXPress, so Prinergy will not need to flatten QuarkXPress 7 pages.
- **TrimBox:** TrimBox information is correct for both Adobe PostScript and PDF output. In QuarkXPress 6.5, PDF output did not have TrimBox information; the TrimBox information was interpreted from PostScript files that were submitted to the Prinergy software
- **Blends:** Blends are represented by one high-quality shading object. In QuarkXPress 6.5, blend objects were represented by many small adjacent boxes, which could sometimes result in banding on high-resolution output.
- **PDF/X-1 and PDF/X-3:** You can output PDF files with PDF/X-1 or PDF/X-3 certification.
- **Color Setups:** Input setups allow you to specify source profiles. Output Setups include characteristics such as mode (composite or separated), model (for example, DeviceN), and the ICC profile to apply—for example, generic Quark CMYK or US Web Coated (SWOP) v2. After you define the color control options, you can select them in the output style Color pane.
- **Color Library changes:** The new Pantone Color Bridge Library is built into QuarkXPress 7.0.
- **Job jackets/JDF:** You can use "job jackets" to constrain document attributes at the design stage, and you can export job jackets to other software applications.

What's New in QuarkXPress 6.5

The QuarkXPress 6.5 software introduces support for DeviceN colors, composite CMYK output, and PDF output.

In previous versions of QuarkXPress, many objects could not be reproduced in composite files without the use of third-party extensions, such as the Creo Colorized TIPP extension. Other objects could not be reproduced from QuarkXPress in composite files, for example, multi ink objects.

QuarkXPress 6.5 supports:

- DeviceN colors, so you can create spot-colored TIFF files without using the Creo Colorized TIFF extension
- The ability to output composite CMYK, and As Is colors. (As Is colors provide the ability to output composite CMYK and images in the color space in which they are defined using the As Is selection in the Print Style list.)
- The ability to generate PDF files directly from QuarkXPress, due to its Jaws PDF engine

What are the new print settings in QuarkXPress 6.5?

The Print dialog box in QuarkXPress 6.5 is very similar to the dialog box in QuarkXPress 5. Like QuarkXPress 5, QuarkXPress 6.5 includes the OPI extension, which doesn't allow Print Style control over OPI. You may want to disable the OPI extension. The other controls seem to behave as in QuarkXPress 5.

The most significant change to outputting in QuarkXPress 6.5 is the ability to output DeviceN and As Is colors.

The following provides a brief description of different types of output options:

- Selecting **Composite CMYK** will convert TIFF images to CMYK.
- Selecting **Composite RGB** will convert TIFF images to RGB.
- Selecting **As Is** will leave images in the color space in which they are defined.
- Selecting **DeviceN** will represent pages with DeviceN where appropriate. This will allow spot-colored TIFFs and multiple inks. Creo recommends you select this option when printing documents that include spot colors. Images retain their original color spaces. This is the recommended setting when generating PostScript for Prinergy and Kodak Prinergy Evo.

These print colors are also available when exporting PDF from QuarkXPress 6.5. However, due to geometry limitations when using PDF direct from QuarkXPress 6.5, many operators find that it's better to output PostScript and refine directly in Prinergy or Prinergy Evo.

QuarkXPress 8.1 and later

In QuarkXPress 8.1 and later, transparency effects no longer need to be flattened. QuarkXPress 8.1 can output native PDF 1.4 transparency, which works well with Prinergy. You can configure this by creating a new PDF style in QuarkXPress, and then going to the **Transparency** panel and selecting the **Export Transparency Natively** option. Be sure to check the other tabs to ensure the correctness of those settings. For more information, consult your QuarkXPress help.

QuarkXPress 7 and 8.0: Issues and observations

Most known issues with QuarkXPress 7 and 8 involve transparency, colorized TIFF files, and geometry from PostScript.

Transparency

- Transparency support still very limited in QuarkXPress 8.0 and earlier. Transparency in imported PDFs is not retained on export. The PDF import filter (Quark JAWs engine) still flattens transparency while converting everything to internal Quark format. Transparency objects created in QuarkXPress are more likely to retain their transparency appearance than placed PDFs that contain transparency.
- When flattening, QuarkXPress 7 and 8 rasterizes objects that are below a transparent object. For example, transparency over a vector EPS file will result in a rasterized version of the vector data with the visual effect of the transparency. Because of this, for placed EPS files with very fine features (such as small text), you should increase the QuarkXPress flattening resolution in the output style.
- Using transparency and artificial font styles (such as artificial bold, italic, outline, shadow) may not result in the correct output. QuarkXPress 7 warns you about this when outputting.
- Using transparency with overprints (set in QuarkXPress or in placed EPS files) does not work. Overprint objects often disappear or knock out on output, when there is a transparent object on top of them.

Transparency with OPI

- OPI seems to work well with transparency when using bitmap-based TIFF and raster EPS images. When an image interacts with transparency, the QuarkXPress software renders the affected portion of the image with its transparency effect, using the highest resolution data available. QuarkXPress places the rendered version of the image on top of the OPI placement, so when you trigger OPI,

it places the unaffected image below the effected portion of the image.

- Vector EPS files work with OPI but are rasterized in areas where they interact with transparency.
- OPI does not work for file formats with low-resolution FPO/proxy and DCS previews. The QuarkXPress software renders the transparent effect using the low-resolution preview in the FPO and DCS, because the high-resolution data is not available. These image types will be low-resolution in areas where they interact with transparency, even after the high-resolution OPI swap has taken place.

Placed PDF files

As in earlier versions of the QuarkXPress software, placing PDF files may not work correctly. Objects inside the PDF file that use overprints or native unflattened PDF 1.4 transparency often don't output correctly from QuarkXPress. If you need to retain the appearance of overprints and transparency effects in a PDF file to be placed:

1. Open the PDF file in the Adobe Acrobat software.
2. Save the file in EPS format.
3. Place the EPS file (not the PDF file) in QuarkXPress.

Note: Placing a large, almost invisible, transparent object (for example, 0.1% tint) over a PDF file forces the QuarkXPress flattener to rasterize the PDF, often with better results.

Color recommendations

Use a DeviceN color setup, such as **Composite CMYK and Spot**, when working with spot colors. However, this setting will convert LAB and RGB images to CMYK. Quark's color management will convert RGB to CMYK using the ICC profile specified in the color setup. If it is important to preserve LAB and RGB images in their original color spaces, select the **As Is** output option.

If you do not intend to color manage CMYK to CMYK conversions during output and you are using **QuarkXPress 7 Default** or **QuarkXPress Emulate Legacy** source setups, then no color conversion would be performed on CMYK data. The reason no color conversions would be performed in this case is because both default setups have the **Color Manage CMYK Sources to CMYK Destinations** setting disabled.

In order to preserve spot color information you need to use DeviceN instead of composite CMYK output. To use DeviceN, click **Edit > Color Setups > Source**. Click **Duplicate** to create a copy of the default setup. In the CMYK tab, click **Color Manage CMYK Sources to CMYK Destinations**, and save the setup with a new name.

To set your global defaults to use DeviceN, click **Preferences > Print Layout > Color Manager > Source Options > Source Setup**, and select the source setup you created in this procedure.

Colorized TIFF files

- Colorized TIFF files used with OPI result in lost background color. Instead, create the effect in Adobe Photoshop or output fat PostScript.
- Multi-ink colorized TIFF files do not output correctly. In a fat workflow, multi-ink colorized TIFF files are missing from the final PDF file. In a thin workflow, they are converted to CMYK on thin PDF output or are colored incorrectly in thin PostScript output.

Geometry from PostScript

- PostScript generated from the Print dialog results in incorrect TrimBox geometry after refine in Prinergy. This was fixed in Prinergy 3.1.0.3.
- Bleed box in Quark7 PS is rotated. Exporting PDF from Quark maintains the correct bleedbox. This was fixed in Prinergy 4.1.2.2.
- QuarkXPress 8 geometry issues that were fixed in Prinergy 4.1.2.2:
 - PostScript subpage (refined) rotated 90
 - PostScript missing trim and bleed after refine
- PostScript generated from QuarkXPress 8.01 Print dialog box results in missing geometry (trim box and bleed box information). To workaround this issue, export PDF from QuarkXPress instead of using the Print dialog box. This was fixed in Prinergy 5.1.2.1.

QuarkXPress 6.5: Issues and observations

The QuarkXPress 6.5 software has issues with blends, QuarkXPress-generated PDF files, colorized TIFFs used with OPI, and PDFs placed in QuarkXPress.

- If you are running a Prinergy system only, an Invalid Restore error from Prinergy normalize function may occur when refining DeviceN color PostScript. This has been fixed in Prinergy 2.1.0.21 and later. This was also an issue for older versions of the Distiller Assistant. Workarounds included outputting as PDF from QuarkXPress 6.5, or pre distilling using a newer version of the Distiller Assistant.
- Blends from QuarkXPress 6.5 may be subject to stepping, which is abrupt shifts in tone. Blends are represented not as a single high-quality shading object, but as multi object groups. Check for this by viewing a QuarkXPress 6.5 PDF file in wire frame mode. This might not be an issue for small blends, high-contrast blends, or lower-LPI scenarios, but it may produce stepping effects in blends with subtle

transitions over long distances. This might be fixed in a future update of QuarkXPress 6.5.

- QuarkXPress-generated PDF files do not include trim box geometry information. You must enter trim box geometry manually in Prinergy Workshop or with the Acrobat Geometry Editor plug-in for both Prinergy and Prinergy Evo. PostScript files from QuarkXPress 6.5 that are run through Prinergy Evo or a Distiller Assistant-enabled Distiller, do not have this issue.
- Colorized TIFFs used with OPI result in lost background color.
- Placing PDFs in QuarkXPress 6.5 and outputting is somewhat unpredictable if placing prepress-quality PDF files, because overprints may get changed, resulting in lost traps.

New image filters in Quark 6.5

QuarkXPress 6.5 has these additional image filters: Vista and PSD Import. In general, Creo recommends that the following conditions be followed for these plug-ins:

- Vista-modified images: composite fat DeviceN output, or cautious use of OPI.
- PSD-placed images: use composite fat DeviceN for most cases. If PSD includes spot colors, use separated fat PostScript. Avoid use of OPI.

| Image Filters | Test Results |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Vista Xtension-Fat Workflow | <p>Separated fat PostScript output and Composite fat PostScript using DeviceN PostScript output both yield good results.</p> <p>Composite fat using CMYK colorspace might be adequate for some CMYK-only jobs, but note that spot-colored TIFFs will be converted to CMYK.</p> |
| VistaXtension-OPI Workflow | <p>Before generating thin PostScript, the user needs to export images that have been modified by Vista, using Render Picture Alterations option in the File > Save Picture or Collect for Output dialog box in QuarkXPress.</p> <p>If you create thin PostScript without exporting the images, the resulting Prinergy subpage has incorrect non-altered image information.</p> <p>Colorized TIFFs lose their background colors after refining. This is a known issue with QuarkXPress 6 thin PostScript.</p> |

| Image Filters | Test Results |
|---|--|
| PSD Import Xtension-Fat Workflow | <p>Simple use of PSD files (turning layers on/off, turning channels on/off, applying different opacities) works fine with fat PostScript from QuarkXPress.</p> <p>Alpha masks in PSD files work best with composite fat output. (When using separated fat PostScript, the alpha channel clipping path edge becomes a separate spot color separation.)</p> <p>Spot colors in PSD files do not work with composite PostScript. Spot colors are changed to process colors, even if using DeviceN output. Separated PostScript works fine.</p> |
| PSD Import Xtension-OPI Workflow | <p>When document is output as thin PostScript and is processed through Prinergy using OPI, "missing image" errors occurs in Prinergy for some PSD images that have alpha mask, alpha channel, and spot color channel. Layers and channels that are turned off in QuarkXPress are not represented in the resulting Prinergy subpage.</p> |

QuarkXPress 5: Issues and observations

The QuarkXPress 5 software has issues with the OPI XTension. Also, you are still required to output colorized TIFFs in composite PostScript.

With regards to PostScript output, QuarkXPress 5.0 contains few improvements over previous versions. No major problems are introduced, but existing composite PostScript output issues are not fixed. Some minor PostScript fixes are introduced, for example, stroke overprints in composite PostScript. However, the Creo Color TIFF XTension (formerly the Prinergy Print XTension) is still required to output colorized TIFFs in composite PostScript.

Some new features have been introduced, including forms, AppleScripting, and web page creation.

However, a Prinergy-specific problem regarding the OPI XTension has also been introduced. The OPI XTension allows QuarkXPress to output OPI 2.0 comments. If using this extension with Prinergy OPI, the Usage dialog box has an OPI pane that enables you to turn off specific images for OPI. When printing thin PostScript, QuarkXPress creates PostScript with the OPI 2.0 comment "IncludedImageQuality: 3.0", which indicates that the OPI system should NOT attempt to merge the image. However, Prinergy will still incorrectly attempt to perform the OPI merge. To work around this problem, remove the OPI XTension, or do not disable specific images for OPI in the Usage/OPI dialog box.

Also note that if the OPI XTension is active, you cannot create a Composite Thin or Composite Fat Print Style in QuarkXPress.

PostScript versus PDF

In most cases with QuarkXPress 7 and later, PDF output is as good as PostScript output.

In QuarkXPress 6 and earlier, there are clear benefits to outputting PostScript files rather than PDF files.

In all versions of QuarkXPress, PostScript output can give a better final result in the following situations:

- When placing a PSD file with an alpha mask
- When a transparency interacting with a placed PDF file results in medium-quality JPEG compressed images

Also, you will need to prepare separated PostScript from QuarkXPress if:

- You want to maintain QuarkXPress traps.
- You are using QuarkXPress 5.x or later and are using TIFF files that are colorized with spot colors and are not using the colorized TIFF XTension. (This is no longer necessary with QuarkXPress 6.x or later DeviceN output.)
- You have placed DCS files and either want to work "fat" or the DCS is vector-based or a format that cannot be merged by Prinergy OPI.
- You are encountering a problem with composite PostScript from QuarkXPress.

Outputting a PDF using Export

This is the recommended method of outputting QuarkXPress files. This method is available in QuarkXPress 7 and later.

Requirements: Ensure that in the Preferences dialog box, in the **PDF** tab, you have selected **Create PDF**.

1. In the QuarkXPress software, open the document.
2. Select **File > Export > Layout** as PDF.
3. Select the PDF style that you want to use.

Outputting a PostScript file using Export

If you choose to output to PostScript instead of to PDF from QuarkXPress, we recommend that you use this method to generate the output. This method is available in QuarkXpress 7 and later.

1. In the QuarkXpress software, open the document and click **Preferences**.
2. In the Preferences dialog box, in the **PDF** tab, click **Create PostScript file for Later Distilling**.
3. Select **File > Export > Layout as PDF**.

A PostScript file is created.

Outputting a PostScript file using Print

Use these procedures if you want to generate output from QuarkXPress using the Print dialog box (instead of using the Export option). This is the traditional method of outputting QuarkXPress files.

1. [Downloading the Refiner PPD](#)
If outputting PostScript files from QuarkXPress for the Prinergy or Prinergy Evo refiner, configure your printer drivers or software to use the Prinergy Refiner PPD, which supports color devices.
2. [Setting up a PostScript printer](#)
Setup a PostScript printer to use the Prinergy Refiner PPD for creating a PostScript file of your job from your original authoring software, such as QuarkXPress. You can use an actual or virtual PostScript printer to create a PostScript file.
3. [Printing to a PostScript file from QuarkXPress 7 and 8](#)
After downloading the refiner and setting up a PS printer, use this procedure to print a PS file from QuarkXPress 7 or 8.
4. [Relevant Options for Printing to PS](#)
Use the following settings when printing QuarkXPress files to PostScript for Prinergy.

Downloading the Refiner PPD

If outputting PostScript files from QuarkXPress for the Prinergy or Prinergy Evo refiner, configure your printer drivers or software to use the Prinergy Refiner PPD, which supports color devices.

Requirements:

Note: The Prinergy Refiner PPD file comes with the Prinergy Evo Client software. See the *Prinergy Evo Installation guide* for more information.

If you prefer, you can use Imation's Prepress Xtension instead of the Prinergy Refiner PPD file.

1. In a Web browser, go to `https://ecentral.creo.com/`.
2. Click **Self Support > Downloads**.
3. Select a product. For example, **Prinerger Connect**.
4. Enter the search word: `ppd`.
5. Click **Go**.
6. Select the **Prinerger Refiner PPD** file, and uncompress and copy the file to the following location on your Macintosh hard drive:
`Library\Printers\PPDs\Contents\Resources
\en.lproj`.

Setting up a PostScript printer

Setup a PostScript printer to use the Prinerger Refiner PPD for creating a PostScript file of your job from your original authoring software, such as QuarkXPress. You can use an actual or virtual PostScript printer to create a PostScript file.

Requirements: You must have downloaded the Prinerger Refiner PPD file.

Note: If installing Prinerger Evo Client software, see the Prinerger Refiner PPD installation README that comes with the Prinerger Evo Client installation image.

1. Start the Mac Printer Setup Utility software located at:
`Applications\Utilities\Printer Setup Utility`.
Note: In Mac OS X version 10.2, this is `Print Setup`. In Mac OS X version 10.3, this is `PrinterSetupUtility`.
After starting the Printer Setup Utility, the list of printers that are currently installed appears.
2. Click **Add**.
3. In the list, select **IP Printing**. In the **Printer's Address** box, type `localhost`.
4. Clear the **Use default queue on server** check box.
5. Enter a **Queue Name** that is the name of the new printer, for example, `PostScript`.
6. In the **Printer Model** box, select **Creo Products**.
Prinerger Refiner appears in the **Model Name** box.
7. Click **Add** and exit the Printer Setup Utility.

You are now set up to create a PostScript file of your job from your original authoring software.

Printing to a PostScript file from QuarkXPress 7 and 8

After downloading the refiner and setting up a PS printer, use this procedure to print a PS file from QuarkXPress 7 or 8.

1. In the QuarkXPress software, open the document and click **File > Print**.
2. Click **Printer**, and click **OK** in the message dialog box.
3. In the Print dialog box, click **PDF** and select **Save PDF as PostScript**.
4. In the Save dialog box, save the file to the desired location and name. Click **Save**.
5. In the Print dialog box, on the **Device** tab, in the **PPD** box, select **Prinerger Refiner**.
6. On the **Color** tab, in the **Mode** box, select **Composite**. In the **Setup** box, select **As is**. Select the appropriate options for OPI, marks, and other aspects. See [Relevant Options for Printing to PS](#) on page 141.
7. Click **Print**.

Relevant Options for Printing to PS

Use the following settings when printing QuarkXPress files to PostScript for Prinerger.

| Device Options | |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| PPD | Prinerger Refiner PPD |
| Paper Size | Custom as desired |
| Resolution | 2400 dpi |

| Color Options | |
|---------------|---|
| Mode | Composite |
| Setup | As is See notes on Color Recommendations. |

| Picture Options | |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| Output | Normal |
| Ful resolution TIFF output | ON |
| Resolution | 2400 dpi |

| Font Options | |
|--------------|-----------|
| Select All | ON |

Note: We recommend that you always include or embed fonts in the PostScript files.

| Registration Marks Options | |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| Mode | Centered |
| Width and Height | As desired |

Note: Include registration marks when preparing your PostScript files. Select either **Centered** or **Off Center**. These marks will automatically be applied when the file is refined. You will be able to view and modify the settings using Prinergy's Geometry Editor plug-in to Adobe Acrobat and the Set Page Geometry dialog box.

| Layer Options | |
|---------------|-----------|
| Select All | ON |

| Transparency Options | |
|--------------------------------|-----------|
| Ignore Transparency Flattening | ON |

| OPI Options | |
|-------------|---|
| OPI Active | <p>OFF for hi-res output</p> <p>ON for lo-res output. Set Tiff Options and EPS Options as OFF. (Don't include images.)</p> <p>ON for image proxy output. Set Tiff Options and EPS Options as ON. (Include images.)</p> |

| Advanced Options | |
|------------------|----------------|
| PostScript Level | Level 3 |

Setting Up Output Styles

In QuarkXPress, you can set up output styles for PDF and PostScript files, such as fat composite or thin separated.

Output styles make it easy to create consistent PostScript and PDF files and help to reduce errors when configuring the Print dialog box.

1. In QuarkXPress, select **Edit > Output Styles**.
2. In the **Verification** list, select **None**, **PDF/X-1**, or **PDF/X-3**.
3. On the **Pages**, **Metadata**, and **Hyperlinks** tabs, select the options that you want.
4. On the **Compression** tab:
 - For color and grayscale images, in the **Compression** box, select **Manual ZIP (8-bit)**, and in the **Resolution** box, select **300**.
 - For monochrome images, in the **Compression** box, select **CCITT G4**, and under **Resolution**, select the **Compress Text and Line Art** option.

5. On the **Color** tab:
 - a. In the Mode box, select **Composite**.
 - b. In the Setup box, select **Composite CMYK and Spot** or a similar DeviceN color setup. (To access color setups in QuarkXPress, select **Edit > Color Setups > Output**.)
6. On the **Fonts** tab, select the **Download all fonts** option.
7. On the **Marks** tab, in the **Registration marks mode** box, select **Centered**.
8. On the **Bleed** tab, select **0.25 inch**.
9. On the **Transparency** tab:
 - a. Ensure that the **Ignore transparency flattening** check box is cleared. (Required).
 - b. In the **Transparency flattening resolution** box, select **300 dpi**, OR
If job quality requires higher resolution, select **600 dpi**. You can then choose to either retain the 600 dpi resolution from QuarkXPress, OR use Prinergy (**Optimize** pane) to downsample the 600 dpi image to 300 dpi.
Retaining the 600 dpi resolution from QuarkXPress provides a better quality result than using Prinergy to downsample. The 300 dpi anti-aliased result will render better than the 300 dpi result that you get from QuarkXPress
10. On the **OPI** tab, select the options that you want.
For a thin workflow, select the **OPI Active** option, and do not select the **TIFF Include Images**, **Low Resolution**, and **EPS Include Images** options.
11. On the **JDF** tab, select the options that you want.

Adding and deleting files

About adding and removing files

Input files are those files received from your customer (the print buyer) that make up the content of the publication being printed. Once you have created a job for the publication, you can add input files to the job. You must add input files to the job before you can begin processing them.

Preparing customer files

For information on how to prepare specific formats of customer files, see About Preparing Customer Files. For a list of the input formats supported, see About Supported Input File Types.

For information about setting to use in specific creative software, see *About FreeHand*, *About Illustrator*, *About InDesign*, *About PageMaker*, *About Photoshop*, and *About QuarkXPress*.

For information about recommended Distiller settings, see *Acrobat Distiller 4*, *Acrobat Distiller 5*, *Acrobat Distiller 6*, *Acrobat Distiller 7*, and *Acrobat Distiller 8*.

For detailed information about specific file types, see *Copydot scans and DCS files*, *CT/LW and TIFF/IT*, *Duotones*, *PDF*, and *About Transparency Support in Prinergy 4*.

Adding files to a job

You can add files manually using the **Add Input File** menu item or automatically by using a hot folder. You can also add files by dragging them from a file browser into Job Manager.

Source of input files

When you add files to the job, you are creating an entry in the database referencing the location of the files. Therefore, you can store input files on any input volume; you do not have to copy the files to the job folder in order to add them to the job. (We recommend that you store the input files for a job in the job folder, but this is not required.)

Input files and archiving

When you archive the job, a copy of the original input files is archived along with the job.

When you add input files using a hot folder, the input files are stored in the <job folder>\HotFolders\Processed folder. When you archive the job, the input files are archived along with the job.

Removing files

You may need to remove an input file that you have added to a job—for example, if you added the wrong file or you discover a problem with the file and want to fix and re-add it.

You can delete a page from a job without deleting the input file from which it was generated. However, you must remove both the original input file and any pages generated from that input file before you can re-add the same input file or another input file of the same name. Alternatively, if you do not want to delete the pages associated with

the input file, you can rename the input file before re-adding it to the job.

See also:

[About preparing customer files](#) on page [125](#)

[About supported input file types](#) on page [126](#)

[About FreeHand](#) on page [126](#)

[About Illustrator](#) on page [127](#)

[About InDesign](#) on page [128](#)

[About PageMaker](#) on page [128](#)

[About Photoshop](#) on page [129](#)

[About copydot scans and other DCS files](#) on page [129](#)

[About duotones](#) on page [130](#)

[CT/LW and TIFF/IT files](#) on page [153](#)

[PDF files](#) on page [160](#)

[About transparency support](#) on page [163](#)

[About recommended Acrobat Distiller 8, 9, and X settings for content](#) on page [165](#)

Adding input files using the menu

Requirements: Ensure that the job to which you want to add input files is open in Job Manager.

1. Perform one of the following actions:
 - From the **File** menu, select **Add Input Files**.
 - Right-click a blank area of the **Input Files** pane and select **Add Input Files**.
2. In the Add Input Files dialog box, in the **Select Files to Add** section, browse to and select the input files that you want to add.

Tip: The dialog box remembers the location that you last navigated to before closing the dialog box.
3. Perform one of the following actions:
 - Click **Add Selected** to add the selected files.
 - Click **Add All** to add all of the input files in the open folder.
4. If you want to automatically process the files to be added, select the **Process Selected Files using Process Template** check box, and click **Select** to choose a process template.
5. Click **OK**.

The added files appear in the **Input Files** pane of Job Manager.

Adding input files using drag-and-drop

Requirements: Ensure that the job to which you want to add input files is open in Job Manager.

1. Select a file (or files) from any location—your workstation desktop, a USB storage device, a DVD, across the network file system, or somewhere on the Prinergy volume.
2. Drag-and-drop the files either into the **Input Files** pane or onto a process template in the **Process Templates** pane. The Add Input Files dialog appears, listing the files that were dragged and dropped.
3. (Optional) Select the **Exclude invalid file types** if some of the selected files are not valid input files.

Note: Invalid files appear with a yellow warning icon.

4. If the files are from a location other than the Prinergy volume, enter the path or browse to a location on the Prinergy volume where you want the input files to be copied, in the **Copy Path** box.

Tip: The path that appears by default is %JOB%\UserDefinedFolders—a relative path that copies files to the UserDefinedFolder folder in the current job. It is possible to configure a different default copy path in Prinergy Administrator.

Note: It is not mandatory to have a copy path if the files are already located on the Prinergy volume. If you clear the **Copy files to Prinergy volume** check box, the files will be registered and added to the job.

5. If you want to automatically process the files to be added, select the **Process Selected Files using Process Template** check box, and click **Select** to choose a process template.

Note: If you dropped the file directly onto a process template, the Add Input Files dialog has the **Process Selected Files using Process Template** check box selected, and the name of the process template populated.

6. Click **OK**.

The added files appear in the **Input Files** pane of Job Manager.

Note: If you drag and drop a file with the same name as one that has already been added to the job, you will see a message asking whether to overwrite the existing file. If you overwrite the file, the new file will not be re-registered or re-processed. It is recommended to remove the original file with all its corresponding pages from the job before dragging and dropping a new version.

Adding input files using a hot folder

1. Open the job.
2. Create a hot folder for the job.
3. Add files to the hot folder.

The result depends on the type of files and the type of hot folder.

Removing input files

You remove input files and delete pages.

1. In the **Input Files** pane of the **Pages** or **Signatures** view, select the input files.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Remove Input**, or right-click the files and select **Remove Input**.

Deleting pages

You remove input files and delete pages.

1. In the **Pages** pane of the **Pages** or **Signatures** view of Job Manager, select the pages.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Delete Page**, or right-click the files and select **Delete Page**.

Add Input Files dialog box

The Add Input Files dialog has different options available, depending on whether you are adding the files using the **Add Input File** menu item or whether you are dragging and dropping files from a file browser into Job Manager.

Options available when selecting input files to add

Select Files To Add

Use the lists in this section to browse to and select the input files that you want to add to the job.

Files of Type

Select an option to filter the files that are displayed in the **Select Files to Add** section by a specific file type. Only files of the selected type are displayed.

Options are:

- **All Eligible Files**
- **All Files**
- **PostScript (PS)**
- **Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)**
- **Portable Document Format (PDF)**
- **Tagged Image File Format (TOF, TIFF, TIFFIT, TIFF-IT)**
- **Desktop Color Separation (DCS)**
- **Brisque Page (ASSG, CH, CT, LW, NLW, NCT)**
- **Variable Data Files (PPML, VDX, VPS)**
- **JPEG (JPG, JPEG)**

By default **All Eligible Files** is selected. An eligible file is any file of any of the types listed above.

Show Hidden Files

Select this check box to include hidden files, such as system files, in the results.

You can set the default selection of this check box on the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Select All Includes Subfolders

Select this option and then click **Add All** to include all of the input files in the open folder and all of its subfolders in the **Files to Add** box.

Volumes

Displays all volumes in the Prinergy system.

Job Folder

Opens the job folder for the current job.

Open

Opens the selected item.

Add Selected

Displays selected files in the **Files To Add** box.

Add All

Displays all files in the open folder in the **Files To Add** box.

Remove Selected

Removes the selected files from the **Files To Add** box.

Remove All

Removes all files from the **Files To Add** box.

Files To Add

Lists the input files that you have selected to add to the job.

Process Selected Files using Process Template

Select this check box to automatically refine the selected files you are adding to the job. For information on the process template to be used to process the files, click the **Select** button.

Options available when dragging and dropping input files into Job Manager

These options are available whether you dropped the input files into the **Input Files** pane or onto a process template in the **Process Templates** pane.

Files To Add

Lists the input files that you have dragged and dropped into Job Manager.

Exclude invalid file types

When this check box is selected, the invalid file types in the list are grayed out, and are not copied and registered in the job.

Remove Selected

Removes the selected files from the **Files To Add** box.

Copy files to Prinerger volume

If the files are from a location other than the Prinerger volume, this option is selected by default, so you can copy the input files to the Prinerger volume. If the files are located on the Prinerger volume, you have the option of copying the files to a different location on the Prinerger volume.

Copy Path

Enter the path or browse to a location on the Prinerger volume where you want the input files to be copied.

Overwrite all files with same name

If this check box is selected, if the destination directory contains input files with the same names, the copied files will overwrite

those existing files. No warnings appear. If this check box is not selected, a message dialog will ask you to confirm whether you want to overwrite the existing files.

Note: If you overwrite a file, the new file will not be re-registered or re-processed. It is recommended to remove the original file with all its corresponding pages from the job before dragging and dropping a new version.

Process Selected Files using Process Template

Select this check box to automatically refine the selected files you are adding to the job. If you dropped the file directly onto a process template, this check box is automatically selected, and the name of the process template populated.

Correcting input files

About correcting input files

There are different ways to revise or correct a subset of pages from a multi-page document.

The approach you choose is dictated by the file format of the original job and the number of pages that need to be revised.

You can revise or correct pages either after refining or after page assignment.

Overwriting all pages in a file (multiple-pages-per-file original)

If the original file has multiple pages and many of the pages need corrections, you can create a corrected input file that includes all of the pages, similar to the original. When it is refined, all of the original pages are overwritten. Page assignments are preserved.

This approach may not be appropriate if manual edits were made to some of the pages—for example, manual traps, PDF edits, and so on. Manual edits are overwritten when the entire set of pages is overwritten. This approach may also be inappropriate if the file takes a long time to write out of Quark or InDesign, or a long time to refine in Prinergy.

1. Correct the pages in the source software, and create a new PDF file that includes all of the pages.
2. Refine the new input file.
 - If the original file was added using a hot folder, drop the revision file with the same name into the hot folder.
 - If the original file was added manually in Workshop, overwrite the original file on disk with the revision file, and refine the revision file from Workshop. There is no need to re-add the file to Workshop.

Existing pages are overwritten. Page assignments are preserved.

Example

The original job file is `book.pdf` and it contains pages 1 through 98. Refining it in Prinergy creates the files `book.p1.pdf` through `book.p98.pdf`.

The corrected file is also called `book.pdf` and contains pages 1 through 98. Refining it in Prinergy creates the files `book.p1.pdf` through `book.p98.pdf`. This overwrites the existing refined pages and keeps any existing page assignments.

Overwriting individual pages (multiple-pages-per-file original)

If the original file has multiple pages and a limited number of pages need corrections, you can create corrected input files with new names that each have one page per file. When the pages are refined, the original pages are not overwritten. Page assignment must be redone for the corrected pages.

In this approach, the original pages are preserved, but the corrected files are assigned to the page set and are output to plate. The benefit of this approach is that the original pages are present and can be referred to. However, this may cause confusion because there are multiple copies of a page.

1. Create the corrected pages so that there's a single page in each file. Ensure that you use a consistent, predictable naming convention.
2. Refine the new file(s).
The existing pages are not overwritten. Page assignments are not preserved.
3. Assign the revised pages to the page set either manually or using APA.

Example

The original job file is `book.pdf` and contains pages 1 through 98. Refining it in Prinergy creates the files `book.p1.pdf` through `book.p98.pdf`.

The corrected files are named with a convention that lists their page number, such as `book.RevPage2.pdf` and `book.RevPage74.pdf`. Refining them in Prinergy creates the files `book.RevPage2.p1.pdf` and `book.RevPage74.p1.pdf`.

By default, Prinergy does not automatically assign the revised pages to the existing page set. The revised pages can be assigned manually or automatically by refining the new file with APA. For the example above, the APA pattern would be `ASSIGN=[#Position].RevPage[#Position].p1.pdf` "*" `[#Position] 1.`

Overwriting individual pages (single-page-per-file original)

If the original files each have one page and a limited number of the pages need corrections, you can create corrected input files that each have one page per file. When the pages are refined, the original incorrect pages are overwritten. Page assignments are preserved.

This approach makes page revisions indistinguishable from pages without revisions in the final job.

1. Create the corrected pages so that there's a single page in each file. Use the same naming convention as the original pages.
For instructions, see *Splitting a multi-page PDF file into single pages*.
2. Refine the new files.
The existing page is overwritten. Page assignments are preserved.

Example

The original job files are `book.page1.pdf` through `book.page98.pdf`. Refining the job in Prinergy creates the files `book.page1.p1.pdf` through `book.page98.p1.pdf`.

The corrected files are called `book.page2.pdf` and `book.page74.pdf`. Refining them in Prinergy creates the files `book.page2.p1.pdf` and `book.page74.p1.pdf`. This overwrites the existing refined pages and keeps any existing page assignments.

See also:

[Splitting a multi-page PDF file into single pages per file using Acrobat](#) on page 153

[Splitting a multi-page PDF file into single pages per file using QuarkXPress or InDesign](#) on page 153

Splitting a multi-page PDF file into single pages per file using Acrobat

Use Acrobat to change a multi-page input file into multiple single-page files before bringing it into Prinergy.

1. Create a multi-page PDF.
2. Using the **Extract pages** function in Acrobat, split the PDF into single-page PDF files. If necessary, rename the files to the desired naming convention using a third-party tool like [ABetterFinderRename](#). There is a minor cost associated with this tool.

Next: Make corrections to the job by overwriting a single page.

See also:

[Overwriting individual pages \(single-page-per-file original\)](#) on page [152](#)

Splitting a multi-page PDF file into single pages per file using QuarkXPress or InDesign

Use the QuarkXPress or InDesign software to change a multi-page job into multiple single-page files before bringing it into Prinergy.

Requirements: This may require a third-party utility.

- Follow the instructions for the software that you're using:
 - For InDesign—<http://indesignsecrets.com/page-exporter-utility-peu-5-script-updated-for-cs3.php>. New files use the naming convention `<filename>.P02.pdf`.
 - For QuarkXPress 7—From the **Edit** menu, select **Output Styles**. Select the PDF Output Style that you want to use. In the **Pages** pane, select **Export pages as separate PDFs**. New files use the naming convention `filename (Page 02).pdf`.
 - For QuarkXPress or InDesign—<http://exporttools.badiassoftware.com>

Next: Make corrections to the job by overwriting a single page.

See also:

[Overwriting individual pages \(single-page-per-file original\)](#) on page [152](#)

CT/LW and TIFF/IT files

About processing CT/LW and TIFF/IT files

The **CEPS Conversion** section of a refine process template defines how Prinergy handles Brisque CT/LW or TIFF/IT-P1 input files. The CEPS

JTP can be used to convert CT/LW and TIFF/IT to PDF files consisting of two layers: continuous-tone (CT) and line work (LW).

General guidelines for using CT/LW files with Prinergy

For best results, follow these general guidelines when using CT/LW files with Prinergy:

- Perform as much of the page preparation as possible in the originating workflow/RIP to reduce the potential for introducing errors. For example, perform color conversion, including spot color handling and overprint settings, and trapping on the Brisque before importing CT/LW files into Prinergy.
- Simplify the linework components for faster processing through Prinergy. For example, try to avoid CT content in the LW file. If you are working with TIFF/IT pages, avoid or simplify high resolution contone (HC) components to obtain faster Prinergy processing times.
- If you use Kodak Full Auto Frame (FAF)/RIP templates to create CT/LW pages in the Brisque, use a specific template to create CT/LW output that is optimized for use with Prinergy. For example, this template could have the resolution set to match the Prinergy output device resolution. This output template should also RIP vignettes to the CT layer instead of the LW layer.
- When refining files with the CEPSConversion JTP, ensure that all the page elements, for example, CT/ICT, LW/HC/ILW, ASSG/FP/IFP, and so on, are available before starting the refine process in Prinergy. If elements are missing, the refine process fails.

Preparing CT/LW and TIFF/IT files

When submitting CT/LW or TIFF/IT files to Prinergy software:

- Ensure that files are trapped and color-matched.
- Ensure that the CT/LW and TIFF/IT files are one of the following file types:
 - CT/LW files generated by Brisque or PS/M
 - TIFF/IT-P1 files
- For CT/LW files, ensure that you add the ASSG, CT, and LW files to a Prinergy job at the same time.
- For TIFF/IT-P1 files, ensure that you add the FP, CT, and LW files to a Prinergy job at the same time

Note: If you are using the CEPS JTP to convert files to PDF, ensure that the input resolution matches the desired output resolution. For example, when the desired output is 2400 dpi, use the CEPS JTP with line work resampled to 2400 dpi.

Merge separated CT/LW pages on the Brisque

Merge separated CT/LW pages on the Brisque before sending the pages to Prinergy for processing. You can identify separated CT/LW pages by their multiple LW files. The CEPS JTP and other products such as CEPStLink cannot process separated CT/LW pages. To merge separated CT/LW to composite CT/LW, use the **Merge** function on the Brisque or PS/M before bringing the pages into Prinergy for processing.

This function has no visible impact on final output and is recommended for use with all separated CT/LW files.

There are two reasons why the CT/LW pages may be separated:

- Separated PostScript going into the Brisque may cause CT/LW pages to be separated. This is the most common cause.
- Too many LW colors may cause CT/LW pages to be separated. There is a limit of 64,000 colors in the NLW specification. If the NLW is very complex, then the Brisque may have separated the CT/LW. If you can't merge the CT/LW because of this limitation, then you should try some of the other techniques, such as RIPing vignettes to CT. This avoids separating the CT/LW as well as improving output performance.

Detect excessively complex pages

There is a class of very complex pages that may still fail conversion in the CEPS JTP. You can identify these pages by:

- CT/LW that is separated (multiple LW files) and that fails merging to composite on the Brisque, or
- TIFF/IT with an HC file that cannot be opened in Kodak PressTouch (a free download from eCentral).

There are two situations which can result in these very complex pages:

- Complex page characteristics combined with inappropriate RIP choices can result in these very complex pages. Choosing different RIP settings, as outlined later in this topic, may resolve this.
- PDF 1.4 style transparency using layered CTs can result in these very complex pages. This can create many CT-to-CT edges. RIPing CT-to-CT borders to CT resolution resolves this.

Unsupported types of CT/LW and TIFF/IT

If your files are not of the file types specified above—for example, if your files are PS/2, Whisper, or Linotype-Hell—you must convert them before Prinergy can use them.

You have the following options:

| If You Have | Then |
|---|--|
| CT/LW files that the CEPS JTP cannot use | Use the Translate function on the Brisque to convert the files to a Brisque CT/LW file. |
| CT/LW or TIFF/IT files that the CEPS JTP cannot use | Use CEPSTLink software or a third-party product to convert them to PDF files or another format that Prinergy recognizes. |

For existing DCS files for which the CT/LW file is unavailable, see [About copydot scans and other DCS files](#) on page 129.

Using Enfocus PitStop to change color recipes

Enfocus PitStop handles CT and LW layers differently when you use it to change color recipes in PDF files. For CT layers, Enfocus PitStop displays only the color of the current selection; you can make color retouches to the layer, but you can't change the color recipe. For LW layers, Enfocus PitStop displays both the source and target color, so you can change the color recipe. For more information, see the Enfocus PitStop documentation.

Sample recommendations for processing CT/LW

These are sample recommendations for RIPing CT/LW through Prinergy to a 2400 dpi device.

| Option | Advantages | Potential Drawbacks | When to Use |
|---|---|---|---|
| RIP: LW resolution = 2400.0 dpi (94.48819 dpm) | Reduces the potential to introduce artifacts | None if page is RIPed to correct resolution. May result in very slight image quality degradation if resampling at conversion stage. | Always (recommended) |
| RIP: CT resolution = 300.0 dpi | Reduces the potential to introduce artifacts when using PDF2Go on Brisque 3 | May result in very slight image quality degradation | Always when using PDF2Go on Brisque 3 |
| RIP vignettes to CT layer, not LW layer | Speeds up processing time in Prinergy | May result in very slight image quality degradation | Always (recommended) |
| In the Brisque RIP, set CT on CT Border to CT Res | Speeds up processing time in Prinergy | In the final output, may result in fuzzy edges where contone images overlap | When processing speed is more important than crisp edges in the final output, or when a page is too complex to refine otherwise |
| In the Brisque RIP, set Screen Grabs to CT Res | Speeds up processing time in Prinergy | In final output, may result in fuzzy text in screen captures | When processing speed is more important than clearly defined text in screen captures |

| Option | Advantages | Potential Drawbacks | When to Use |
|--|---|---|--|
| Avoid running copydot content through Brisque | Speeds up processing time in Prinergy and eliminates several opportunities to introduce moiré artifacts. Allows use of Copydot JTP. | Partial page copydot inputs might require Brisque processing. Copydot must be correct resolution prior to entering Brisque. | Whenever possible (recommended) |
| Avoid HC components when creating TIFF/IT sets. If you must include HC components, try to minimize the amount of data that they contain. | Speeds up processing time in Prinergy | Final output quality may be affected. Specifics depend on page characteristics. | When processing speed is more important than various aspects of final output quality |

About TIFF input files

The normalize function accepts the following TIFF Input Files:

- 8-bit TIFF files (composite as well) created in Adobe Photoshop software, including files in grayscale, RGB, and CMYK color spaces.
- 1-bit Photoshop TIFF files (bitmaps)
- TIFFs with spot channels
- L*a*b* with indexed color spaces
- whole image and tile formatting.

The normalize function does not support 1-bit and 8-bit TIFF files from third-party workflows and software.

About enhancing processing of CT/LW files

Prinergy takes longer to process raster-based files than vector-based pages. However, there are some steps you can take to improve performance when processing through Prinergy.

Among the settings that affect performance, there are some that may adversely affect image characteristics. For example, an option may result in blurry edges where contone images overlap, or fuzzy text in screen shots. Evaluate whether the benefits of increased performance outweigh the potential drawbacks.

RIP vignettes to the CT layer (not the LW layer)

When creating the CT/LW file using the Brisque RIP, RIP the vignettes to the CT layer not the LW layer. RIPing vignettes to the CT layer speeds up processing in Prinergy.

To RIP vignettes to the CT layer, enable the following settings in the Vignette Handling window in the Brisque RIP pane:

- Scitex Vignettes
- Vignette to CT (CMYK)
- Convert Vignette to PS3

This option has minimal visible impact on final output and is recommended for use with all CT/LW files.

Set CT on CT border to CT Res in the Brisque RIP

To increase Prinergy processing performance, in the CT Handling window in the Brisque RIP pane, set **CT on the CT Border** to **CT Res**.

This may negatively affect your final output quality, resulting in fuzzy edges where contone images overlap. Implement this option only if this reduced output quality is acceptable.

Note: If the Brisque template that you are using contains a Kodak Full Auto Frame (FAF) trapping atom as well as the RIP atom, you might have to change the FAF settings in order to be able to select **CT Res** at the RIP stage.

Set Screengrabs to CT Res in the Brisque RIP

To increase Prinergy processing performance, in the CT Handling window in the Brisque RIP pane, set **Screengrabs** to **CT Res**.

This may negatively affect your final image output quality, resulting in fuzzy text in the screen captures. Implement this option only if this reduced output quality is acceptable.

Avoid HC components when creating TIFF/IT pages

If possible, avoid creating HC (high-resolution contone) files when creating TIFF/IT pages. HC components may process very slowly through Prinergy. If you must include HC components, try to minimize the amount of data that they contain. For example, avoid photograph-like content. Text and flat tints in the HC are acceptable. Specific instructions for avoiding HC components, or minimizing the amount of data included, are software dependent.

Some general guidelines to follow are:

- Set **CT on CT borders** to **CT Res**. HC components may be created when high-resolution borders exist between contone images.
- RIP vignettes to the CT layer.

As with the CT/LW file format, these settings may negatively affect the output, depending on page characteristics. Use these settings only if the benefits of increased performance outweigh the drawbacks.

About eliminating artifacts when processing CT/LW files

Raster-based files can be prone to artifacts on the final output without proper page preparation. (An artifact is an unexpected element, usually a single-pixel black or white line.) High-resolution loose page proofs may not show artifacts, although a high-resolution imposition proof often does. Here are some recommendations for reducing artifacts.

Ensure that LW and output resolution match when imaging

Before submitting pages for final output, make sure that the LW resolution matches the final output device resolution. If the LW resolution doesn't match the output device resolution, Prinergy must resample the LW data at the output stage, which may introduce artifacts.

You can set the LW output resolution on a Brisque when creating CT/LW pages. For example, if you are outputting to a 2400 dpi Kodak Trendsetter platesetter, RIP your pages to CT/LW with the LW resolution set at 2400.0 dpi (94.48819 dpm). Or, you can set the LW by refining the CT/LW file with a refine process template with the CEPSConversion JTP enabled and set to resample at the appropriate LW resolution. Use the Prinergy Process Template Editor to create or edit a refine process template.

RIPing to the device resolution has no visible impact on final output and is recommended for use with all CT/LW files. Setting the LW resolution on a Brisque, that is, creating CT/LW at the correct resolution, is preferable to setting it in Prinergy where you resample to correct resolution at the conversion stage. Resampling to at the conversion stage may have a slight visible impact, since resampling errors may occur.

Avoid running Copydot pages through the Brisque

A copydot page that was run through the Brisque is susceptible to moiré artifacts unless extreme care is taken.

Using the CEPS JTP

LW resolution: If possible, RIP LW to 2400 dpi (94.48819 dpm). Always resample at the CEPS JTP stage of your refine process template to ensure the resolution is correct.

Using PDF2Go on Brisque version 3

CT resolution: Should be set to a dpi that converts easily into PostScript points. Recommended settings in dpi are: 300 dpi (11.81102 dpm), 320, 360, 375, 400, 450, 480, 500, 576, 600, 720, 750, and 800. This option may have a very slight negative impact on your final

output quality, due to lowered CT resolution. If possible, RIP CT to 300 dpi. Always resample at the PDF2Go stage as well, to ensure that the resolution is correct.

LW resolution: If possible, RIP LW to 2400 dpi (94.48819 dpm). Always resample at the PDF2Go stage to ensure that the resolution is correct.

Using PDF2Go on Brisque version 4

LW resolution: If possible, RIP LW to 2400 dpi (94.48819 dpm). Always resample at the PDF2Go stage to ensure that the resolution is correct.

Using ExportPS - Any Version

ExportPS is not currently recommended for bringing pages into Prinergy. However, if using ExportPS, extreme caution must be taken at the RIP stage, that is, at CT/LW creation, to ensure that the LW resolution matches the intended device resolution, for example, 2400 dpi (94.48819 dpm). This is because ExportPS does not resample the page. Sending an ExportPS page with the wrong resolution for output in Prinergy, that is, resampling at the output stage, can introduce artifacts.

Using the PostScript Bypass feature will enable you to avoid artifacts on final output when importing ExportPS DCS files into Prinergy. Contact your Kodak representative to set this up.

About moving CT/LW data around the network

Select the entire job folder to copy, not just the individual page components or files.

Selecting the contents of the job folder instead of the folder itself and copying the files to removable media results in a page that cannot be processed because the assign file for the job is missing. The assign file is located within the folder structure but is not visible on the Mac or Brisque. If you are using a Brisque or a PS/M version 5 or later, it automatically creates a hidden assign file when RIPing. The assign file is necessary for processing the CT/LW page.

PDF files

About PDF input files

PDF files can be used as input for a Prinergy workflow. These PDFs can come from several sources:

- Saved directly out of creative software such as InDesign, QuarkXPress, Illustrator, or Photoshop
- Created by distilling PostScript files from most creative software using Acrobat
- Created by a PDF creation tool or suite such as Kodak Prepare software

PDF or PostScript?

Saving creative work to a PDF file can have varying results depending on the software and the features used to create the file.

Note: When Prinergy Workshop is installed, the system places some settings files in the `Acrobat Distiller` folder. One of these files contains recommended settings for Acrobat Distiller for distilling page and sheet mark PostScript files to create PDF un-imposed marks files.

Separated PostScript

Separated files are locked down in terms of overprints and colorbreaks. Composite files allow you to color manage and trap them.

Even though we recommend composite PS/PDF as input to Prinergy, customers can still use separated files as input. However, distilling separated PostScript can produce unwanted results in Prinergy workflow, in that Distiller sometimes has difficulty determining the color of the separated pages. When this file is brought into Prinergy, Prinergy splits each separated page into its own subpage element. You can overcome this issue by using the Separations Repair Acrobat plugin on the file before bringing it into Prinergy.

Advanced attributes

PDF 1.4 Transparency: Prinergy supports transparent objects in digital masters.

PDF 1.5 Layers: Prinergy supports layered input files. For Layered PDF Versioning (LPV) jobs, you can preserve layers of incoming PDF files. For non-versioning jobs, Prinergy will automatically unite the visible layers to a single layer during the refine process.

PDF 1.5 16-bit Images: Prinergy does not support 16-bit images in digital masters. However, 16-bit images will be converted to 8-bit images during refine without converting the file to PDF 1.3.

PDF 1.6 OpenType Fonts and 3D Annotations: Prinergy currently does not support OpenType fonts in digital masters. Files with this kind of

object are very rare. It is difficult to create this object with the current desktop applications. When Prinergy encounters this kind of object, it will convert the file to PDF 1.3. Note that converting to PDF 1.3 will also flatten any transparent objects in the file.

Non-separable Blend Modes and Non-white-preserving Blend Modes:

Non-separable blend modes (Hue, Saturation, Color, Luminosity) and non-white-preserving blend modes (Difference and Exclusion) are not supported by the following:

- Separation Viewer plug-in
- Vector output JTP (not for use when creating separated output)
- Prepress Portal Smart Review proofing

This means that files that use the non-separable or non-white-preserving blend modes will fail:

- To separate in Separation Viewer
- To trap in PDF Trapper
- To output separated vector output
- To proof in Prepress Portal Smart Review unless the proofing mode uses the Proofing JTP

About PDF specification levels

The following represent only limited highlights of the specification levels for input files in the print industry.

| Level Attributes | |
|---|---|
| PostScript level 1 | Able to draw objects and images with one color, that is, separated. |
| PostScript level 2 | Includes all the attributes of PostScript 1 with the addition of composite colors such as RGB and CMYK. |
| PostScript level 3 | Includes all the attributes of PostScript 2 with the addition of DeviceN and shading objects. |
| PDF 1.3 | Almost the equivalent of PostScript 3. |
| When you move from PDF 1.4 to an earlier specification level (that is, PDF 1.3, PostScript level 3, and earlier), there is no native transparency. The move to an earlier level will invoke flattening. | |
| PDF 1.4 | Includes all the attributes of PDF 1.3 with the addition of transparency and JBIG2 compression. |
| PDF 1.5 | Includes all the attributes of PDF 1.4 with the addition of layers and JPEG 2000 compression. |
| PDF 1.6 | Includes all the attributes of PDF 1.5 with the addition of native Open Type fonts. |

About transparency support

Transparency is an effect that you can build in Adobe Illustrator 9 and later and Adobe InDesign 2 and later. When you write a PDF 1.4 file from these software applications, the file contains native transparency.

Prinergy now supports transparent objects in digital masters. This transparency support should:

- Enable simpler, faster, and more accurate trapping
- Retain the number of editable objects in Acrobat
- Help to eliminate artifacts (on output, especially in low-resolution proofs) that are sometimes introduced during flattening

Differences between Prinergy versions

Prior to Prinergy 4, transparent objects in PDF 1.4 and later files had to be flattened to PDF 1.3 objects during the normalizing process.

Flattening is the process of converting all overlapping transparent areas into discrete, opaque areas to represent the look of the original transparency. Flattening retains the vector integrity of the objects as much as possible; however, flattening may rasterize some objects, depending upon file complexity.

The flattening feature is available in Prinergy 4 and later by selecting **Flatten to PDF 1.3** in the **Normalize** section of the refine process template.

Handling files with transparency

The following file formats (by their nature) do not contain native transparency:

- PS
- EPS
- DCS
- PDF 1.3 or earlier
- PDF/X-1a (PDF/X-1a is a restricted subset of PDF that prohibits transparency.)

(If the original file had contained transparency effects, they would have been flattened.) Because these formats do not include native transparency, they cannot take advantage of Prinergy 4's transparency handling.

To take advantage of Prinergy's transparency handling, ensure that your incoming files contain native (unflattened) transparency. To do this, save incoming files as PDF 1.4 or later in Illustrator and InDesign.

To determine whether a PDF file contains native transparency, open the file in Acrobat and use the Transparency Flattening tool (the

location of this varies by Acrobat version). Set the **Highlight** list to **Transparent Objects**. If any objects in the preview appear in red, there is native transparency in the file.

You can preserve transparency during the refine process. The **PDF 1.4 to PDF 1.6 (Acrobat 5 to 7)** list on the **Normalize** pane in the refine process template has the following options:

- **Flatten to PDF 1.3:** Prinerger detects and flattens all files with native PDF 1.4 transparency, using the highest quality setting. This is the behavior from Prinerger 3 and earlier.
- **Leave as is:** Prinerger detects and preserves transparent effects in PDF 1.4 or later files.
- **Fail:** Prinerger detects but fails when it encounters transparent objects.

Processing transparent files: possible approaches

| Desktop Application | Refine | Output | Notes |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------|--|
| Save as PDF 1.3 input | Refine to PDF 1.3 digital master | Output with CPSI RIP | <p>This workflow was possible in Prinerger 3.x. Flattening occurs at the input creation step (from the desktop software). Sites that receive PostScript, EPS, DCS, PDF 1.3, or PDF/X:1-a input use this workflow.</p> <p>This workflow is useful when you need PDF 1.3, PDF/X-1a, or PostScript for downstream processing and want to put the responsibility for flattening on the page creator.</p> |
| Save as PDF 1.4 input | Refine to PDF 1.3 digital master | Output with CPSI RIP | <p>This workflow was possible in Prinerger 3.x. Sites that receive PDF 1.4 or later can use this workflow.</p> <p>Flattening occurs when Prinerger refines the input file. This workflow is useful when you need PDF 1.3, PDF/X-1a, or PostScript for downstream processing but want Prinerger to perform the flattening. (Prinerger's flattening assumes highest quality output so there is no possibility of the file being flattened with quality settings that are too low.)</p> |
| Save as PDF 1.4 input | Refine to PDF 1.4 digital master | Output with CPSI RIP | <p>This workflow is possible only in Prinerger 4.0 and later. Sites that receive PDF 1.4 or later can use this workflow.</p> <p>Flattening only occurs when Prinerger's CPSI RIP processes the PDF digital master file. This workflow is useful when you want the benefit of native transparency workflow and prefer the file not to be flattened during refine.</p> <p>Drawbacks to this are that CPSI RIP's flattening can slow output. Flattening can take time on complex files so not flattening on input means you are deferring flattening to the output stage. Additionally, when pages have text below transparent images, for example, low-resolution proofs might still have text that looks fat.</p> |

| Desktop Application | Refine | Output | Notes |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| Save as PDF 1.4 input | Refine to PDF 1.4 digital master | Output with Adobe PDF Print Engine | This workflow is possible only in Prinerger 4.0 and later. Sites that receive PDF 1.4 or later can use this workflow. Flattening does not occur in this workflow. This workflow is useful when you want the benefit of native transparency workflow and prefer the file not to be flattened. |

About recommended Acrobat Distiller 8, 9, and X settings for content

Use the following settings when distilling content files to PDF files for Prinerger input. For distilling marks, see [Recommended Acrobat Distiller 8, 9, and X settings for marks](#) on page 692.

General

| File Options | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Compatibility | Acrobat 5.0 (PDF 1.4 and later) Use this setting if you want transparent objects to be handled natively without flattening during the refine process. |
| Object Level Compression | Off |
| Auto-Rotate Pages | Off |
| Binding | Left |
| Resolution | 2400 dpi |
| Page Range | All Pages |
| Embed thumbnails | ON |
| Optimize for fast web view | OFF |

| Default Page Size | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| Width | 8.5 |
| Height | 11.0 |
| Units | Inches |

Images

| Color Images | |
|--------------|------------|
| Downsample | Off |
| Compression | ZIP |

| Color Images | |
|---------------|-------------|
| Image Quality | High |

| Grayscale Images | |
|------------------|------------|
| Downsample | Off |
| Compression | ZIP |

| Monochrome Images | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| Downsample | Off |
| Compression | CCITT Group 4 |
| Anti-Alias to gray | Off |

Fonts

| | |
|--|-------------------|
| Embed all fonts | ON |
| Subset embedded fonts when percent of characters used is less than | 100% |
| When embedding fails | Cancel Job |
| Embedding | Base 14 Fonts |

Color

| Adobe Color Settings | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| Settings File | None |
| Color Management Policies | Leave Color Unchanged |
| Document Rendering Intent | Default |

| Device-Dependent Data | |
|--|----------|
| Preserve under color removal and black generation settings | ON |
| When transfer functions are found | Preserve |
| Preserve halftone Information | ON |

Advanced

| Options | |
|--|-----|
| Allow PostScript file to override Adobe PDF settings | OFF |
| Allow PS Xobjects | ON |
| Convert gradients to smooth shades | ON |
| Convert smooth lines to curves | ON |

| Options | |
|---|-----|
| Preserve Level 2 covepage Semantics | ON |
| Preserve Overprint Settings | ON |
| Overprinting Default is Non-Zero Overprinting | ON |
| Save Adobe PDF Setting in PDF File | OFF |
| Save Original JPEG Images in PDF File if possible | OFF |
| Save Portable Job Ticket in PDF File | OFF |
| Use Prologue.PS and Epilogue.PS | OFF |
| Create Job Definition Format (JDF) File | OFF |

| Document Structuring Conventions (DSC) | |
|--|-----|
| Process DSC comments | ON |
| Log DSC warnings | OFF |
| Preserve EPS information from DSC | ON |
| Preserve OPI comments | OFF |
| Preserve Document information from DSC | ON |
| Resize page and center artwork for EPS files | ON |

| Standards | |
|---------------------|------|
| Compliance Standard | None |

Raster-separated data

Formatting raster-separated data to use with Workshop and Pandora

Using Copydot Toolkit Pro, format raster separated data for use in Workshop or Pandora. You can format 1-bit TIFF, Raster DCS, and Copydot input files.

1. Merging Dielines to Artwork in Copydot Toolkit

When dielines are received in a separate file, merge them to the artwork.

Optional: If necessary, correct the dieline Orientation in copydot toolkit.

2. Setting the Trim Box in Copydot Toolkit

Set the trim box and bleed to match the margins for the artwork.

3. Reformatting TIFF Files as a High-Resolution PDF in Copydot Toolkit

Reformat TIFF files to a high-resolution PDF format.

4. Refining Input Files Manually

Refine the prepared high-resolution PDF in Workshop.

Note: You must use a refine process template that generates thumbnails.

Correcting the dieline orientation in Copydot Toolkit

When dielines are created separately from artwork, the dieline orientations may not match. You can correct the orientation.

➤ Perform one of these actions:

- In Copydot Toolkit Viewer, from the **Edit** menu, select **Rotation**.
- In Workshop, from the **Edit** menu, select **Set Page Geometry**.
Re-output the dieline separation as TIFF.

Merging dielines to artwork in copydot toolkit

In some cases, the dieline may be scanned separately from the artwork and delivered in a separate file. Use the registration feature of Copydot Toolkit (CTK) to bring the dieline into the job and position it correctly relative to the artwork.

The prerequisites for performing this procedure are:

- Copydot Toolkit 4.0 Pro
- The artwork in a CTK-supported formats
- The dieline in a CTK-supported formats
- The resolutions of the artwork and dieline match—for example, both are 2400 dpi.

If the dieline is not the same resolution as the artwork, the dieline is scaled relative to the artwork. Because the dieline was created separately from the artwork, its orientation may not match the artwork's orientation.

Note: If the dieline has not been scanned, you can export it from the CAD application in EPS format. Then, refine the EPS file in Prinergy and output it in 1-bit

TIFF format at a resolution that matches the artwork. CTK can then read the 1-bit TIFF representation of the dieline.

1. In CTK, create a new job, and add the artwork separations.
2. Locate the dieline separation file, and then add the file to the job.
3. When prompted, keep the existing separations (do not discard the artwork separations).
4. Click the **View** button to start the Image Viewer.
5. From the **Registration** menu, select **Restart Registration** to activate the registration tools.
6. In the Image Viewer Separation Manager, select the dieline separation and use the **Move Separation** tool to move the dieline relative to the 1-up artwork.
7. When the dieline is correctly positioned, from the **Registration** menu, select **Approve Registration and Save**.

Setting the trim box in Copydot Toolkit

1. Create a new job or select an existing job in the Jobs window.
2. From the **Input** menu, select **Browse**, and select the TIFF files you want to view.

The TIFF files appear in the **Process** dialog box. You may need to assign colors so they appear correctly.

For more information, see the *Copydot Toolkit User Guide*.

3. Click **View**.
Zoom files are created for viewing.
4. Zoom out until you can see the entire frame.
5. Click the **Page Frame (Crop) Tool** button, and drag the frame so it matches the size of the dieline.
6. From the **File** menu, select **Save**.
7. From the **Edit** menu, select **Active Frame**.
The Edit Active Frame dialog box appears.
8. In the Output dialog box:
 - a. Click the **Page Frame** option button.
 - b. Under **Bleed**, assign bleed to the margins of the page.
 - c. Under **Film Crop**, assign an equal value to margins of the page.
9. Click **OK**.
10. From the **File** menu, select **Save**.

The trim box is set with bleed added.

Reformatting TIFF files as a high-resolution PDF in Copydot ToolKit

1. Close the Image Viewer window.
2. In the Settings area of the Job window (right side), under **Process**, in the **Output Type** box, select **Copydot**.
3. In the **Output File** box, under **Output**, browse to a location to save the PDF.
4. In the **General** tab, under **Output**, make the following selections:
 - In the **Resolution** box, enter the output resolution.
 - In the **File Format** box, select **PDF**.
 - In the **File Generation** box, select **Composite**.
 - In the **Color Space** box, select **CMYK+**.
 - In the **Compression** box, select **G4**.
 - In the **Interleave** box, select **Plane**.
 - In the **Image Format** box, select **Tiled**.
 - In the **Tile Height** box, enter 2048.
 - In the **Tile Width** box, enter 2048.
5. Under **Output**, click the **Place/Prev** tab and make the following selections:
 - Select **LoRes Preview**.
 - In the **Color Space** box, select **CMYK**.
 - In the **Compression** box, select **None**.
 - In the **Resolution (ppi)** box, select **72**.
6. Click **Browse** and select the desired location.
7. In the **Output File** box, enter a name for the reformatted PDF. (Ignore the **Save as type** pop-up menu.)

Note: Copydot Toolkit automatically appends the file name with `.PDF`, so you do not need to enter a filename extension.

8. Under **Execution**, click the **Restart Processing** button.

The TIFF files are reformatted as a high-resolution PDF.

8

Starting processes

About starting processes

One of the tasks that you will perform most frequently in Prinergy Workshop is initiating processing. For example, processes include refining input files, proofing, making film or plates, archiving job files, and submitting files to digital devices. Any element can undergo some sort of processing.

In general, you initiate a process by selecting the elements to be processed, and then select the desired process template or digital device. All of the process templates and digital devices are listed in the Process Templates pane of Job Manager.

When you start a process, you can edit the process template temporarily.


You can start a process in several ways:

- Using a menu item
- Dropping elements onto a process template or digital device in the process templates pane
- Using the pop-up menu (right-clicking the element and navigating to the process template)
- Using the pop-up menu in the process templates pane (selecting the elements, right-clicking the process template in the process templates pane, and selecting **Start Processing**).

Starting processes

You can run a process on one or more jobs from Job Finder, a single job from Job Manager, or selected files from Job Manager.

1. Select the files or jobs that you want to affect:

| To Affect | Do This |
|------------------|---|
| One or more jobs | In Job Finder, select the jobs. |
| One job | In Job Manager, click the Job  button. Note: The Job button applies only to export and storage processes. |

| To Affect | Do This |
|-------------------------|---|
| Specific files in a job | In Job Manager, select the files from the Pages , Signatures , Separations , or Storage view. |

- Choose the process template:

| If You Are In | Do This |
|---------------------------|---|
| Job Finder or Job Manager | Right-click the selection, and using the cascading menus, select the process template. |
| Job Finder or Job Manager | From the Process menu, using the cascading menus, select the process template. |
| Job Manager | Drag the selection to the Process Templates pane, and drop it on the process template. |
| Job Manager | In the Process Templates pane, right-click the process template and select Start Processing . |

Note: The only process templates available are the ones that apply to your selection. Process templates that do not apply are unavailable.

- In the Start Process dialog box, modify the options as desired.
When you submit a job to a digital device, the Start Process for Digital Printing dialog box is displayed.
- If desired, modify the process template before starting the process by clicking **Edit Process Template**, modifying the process template, and clicking **OK**.
- Click **OK** to begin processing.

The Process Info dialog box appears if **Show Process Info Window When Process Is Created** is selected in the Prinergy Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Bypassing the Start Process dialog box

- Press and hold the **Alt** or **Option** key while dragging elements onto a process template.

Note: You cannot modify the process template before starting the process or make other changes in the Start Process dialog box, such as changing the process name or priority or entering a comment about the process.

Note: For digital print jobs, you cannot bypass the Start Process for Digital Printing dialog box.

Stopping, pausing, and resuming processes

You can stop or pause a process before it ends. If you stop a process, you cannot resume it. If you pause it, you can resume it.

Note: You cannot pause a digital print job, once it has been submitted to a digital device. If you stop a digital print job that is running on a digital device, you cannot resume the process; you must resubmit the job.

1. In Job Manager, on the **Active** tab of the **Processes** pane, select the process.
2. Perform one of the following actions:
 - From the **Process** menu, select **Processing Tools**, and then select **Stop**, **Pause**, or **Resume**.
 - Right-click the process and select **Stop**, **Pause**, or **Resume**.
 - In the Process Info dialog box and click the **Stop** button.

Tip: You can also stop, pause, or resume a process from Queue Manager.

Deleting completed processes

1. On the **Completed** tab of the **Processes** pane in Job Manager, select the process that you want to delete.
2. Perform one of the following actions:
 - From the **File** menu, select **Delete Process**.
 - Right-click the process, and select **Delete Process**.

Generating a process report for troubleshooting

To help troubleshoot a problem, generate a detailed report about a specific process to send to your service representative.

1. In the **Processes** pane in Job Manager, select an active or completed process.
2. From the **Process** menu, select **Processing Tools**.
3. In the **Comment** box of the **Create Process Report** dialog box, record any information that may help the service representative solve the problem. This text is added to a comment file in the resulting zip file.

Three files (.stdout, .txt, .zip) are generated in the following directory:
%ServerName%\%AraxiHome%\CreoAraxi\support
\ProcessErrorInfo\%JobName%\%ProcessName-
ProcessCode%

Next:

Send the .zip file to your service representative.

Choose process template dialog box

Select a template from the list

Select a workflow processor or server.

Navigation tree

Expand the navigation tree to select the desired process template.

Start Process dialog box

Process Template

Displays the name of the selected process template

Process Name

Displays information about the process. By default, information is displayed in the following format:

<workflow processor>:<process template group>:<process template>:<number of elements being processed> <type of element being processed>

However, you can rename the process as desired.

User Comment

Enables you to type a comment associated with the process, if desired.

The comment appears in the Process Info dialog box for the process and is stored in the **History** view for the job.

Priority

Use this list to assign a priority to this process. These are the options:

- **Low**
- **Normal (default)**
- **High**
- **Urgent**

A process with a specific priority will be executed before processes with a lower priority, and after processes with a higher priority. For example, a process set to **High** will be executed before any processes set to **Low** or **Normal**, and after any processes set to **Urgent**. If multiple processes are

submitted with the same priority, they are executed in the order in which they were submitted.

Add Process Template to Job Favorites

Select this option to automatically add the selected process template to the **Job** tab of the **Process Templates** pane for the job (if the process template has not already been added).

By default, this option is not selected. However, you can select **Automatically Add Templates Used for Processing to Job Favorites** in the Workshop Preferences dialog box to have the **Add Process Template to Job Favorites** selected by default whenever you initiate a process.

This option is available only if you start a process from Job Manager, not from Job Finder.

Work Type

Use this list to indicate the type of work being done, so that your company can track and report on job costs and status. The names of the available work types have two parts—a category, followed by an item. These are the built-in work types:

- **Regular or Original Work - System defined original work item**
- **Alteration Chargeable - System defined chargeable alteration**
- **Alteration Non-Chargeable - System defined non chargeable alteration**
- **Rework Chargeable - System defined chargeable re-work item**
- **Non chargeable re-work - System defined non chargeable re-work item**

In addition to these work types, you can click **Edit** next to the **Work Type** list to add new work types. You can modify items or delete work types that you create, but you cannot modify or delete built-in work types.

Note: This option is available only if the Prinerger Business Link software is connected to your Prinerger system and if you start a process from Job Manager, not from Job Finder.

Edit

Click this button to add and modify work items for a specific work category. Any items that you add appear under **Work Type** in the Start Process dialog box.

Note: This option is available only if the Business Link software is connected to your Prinergy system and if you start a process from Job Manager, not from Job Finder.

Edit Process Template

Click this button to view and modify the selected process template before initiating the process.

When you modify a process template in this way, any changes to the process template are temporary and are discarded once the process is complete. The changes do not affect the original process template and they are not saved with the job. You cannot redo the same process without making the same changes to the process template again.

PDF Layer Selection

Click this button to view the layers in the input file and to choose which layers you want to retain. All retained layers are united and applied to the base content. Layers that are not retained are discarded.

Color Mappings

This button is visible only when you start a refine or loose page output process template. Click this button to change how colors will be output.

When you refine pages, this button opens the Color Mappings dialog box. The button does not appear when you refine input files.

When you generate loose page output, this button opens the Color Output dialog box.

Tonal Control

Click this button to open the Tonal Control dialog box. This dialog box enables you to assign a ColorFlow curve channel to a separation, surface, or job selected for plate output. It also enables you to make on-the-fly tonal adjustments to these curves, without affecting the original ColorFlow curves. This button is visible only for halftone output processes.

Zip Filename

The name of the export file. By default, it displays the name of the job, plus the `.zip` file name extension. You can change the file name, but ensure it ends with `.zip`.

This box is visible only when starting an export process.

Output Comment

Use this box to type a comment associated with the output, if desired. This box defaults to the last output comment that you entered on this workstation.

The comment is stored in the **History** view for the job.

You can also place this text on output using the variable mark \$ [OutputComment] in page or sheet marks.

Selected Items

Expand this section to view a list of the jobs or elements selected for processing.

Layered PDF Flattening Warning

When you process layered PDF files, a warning message appears to indicate that if the **PDF 1.4-1.6 (Acrobat 5-7)** option located in the **Normalize** section of the refine process template is set to **Flatten to PDF 1.3**, the refined files will be flattened and layers will be combined as indicated in the Layer Selection dialog box.

Layer handling happens before flattening, so that layers are handled as specified in the Layer Selection dialog box before flattening occurs. This allows you to omit certain layers before processing the page as PDF 1.3. As a general rule, for Layered PDF Versioning (LPV) jobs, you do not want to flatten to PDF 1.3, which would destroy the layers of the incoming PDF 1.5 file. This would defeat the purpose of using layered input.

Note: If you use Rules-Based Automation to start a process, most options in the dialog box do not apply, so they are not displayed.

Start Process for Digital Printing dialog box

Digital Device Queue

Displays the name of the selected queue on the digital device.

Process Name

Displays information about the process you are submitting to the digital device. By default, information is displayed in the following format:

<digital device>:<print settings>:<number of pages being processed>

However, you can rename the process as desired.

User Comment

Use this box to type a comment associated with the process, if desired.

The comment appears in the Process Info dialog box for the process and is stored in the **History** view for the job.

Priority

For most digital devices, jobs are processed in the order that they are submitted. You can use this list to select the processing priority for some jobs. Possible priorities are:

- **Low**
- **Normal (default)**
- **High**
- **Urgent**

A process with a specific priority will be executed before processes with a lower priority, and after processes with a higher priority. For example, a process set to **High** will be executed before any processes set to **Low** or **Normal**, and after any processes set to **Urgent**. If multiple processes are submitted with the same priority, they are executed in the order in which they were submitted.

Add Digital Print Target to Job Favorites

Select this option to automatically add the selected digital device to the **Job** tab of the **Process Templates** pane for the job (if the digital device has not already been added).

By default this option is not selected. However, you can select **Automatically Add Templates Used for Processing to Job Favorites** in the Workshop Preferences dialog box to have the **Add Digital Print Target to Job Favorites** selected by default whenever you initiate a process.

This option is available only if you start a process from Job Manager, not from the Job Finder.

Work Type

Use this list to indicate the type of work being done, so that your company can track and report on job costs and status. The names of the available work types have two parts—a category, followed by an item. The built-in work types are:

- **Regular or Original Work - System defined original work item**
- **Alteration Chargeable - System defined chargeable alteration**

- **Alteration Non-Chargeable - System defined non chargeable alteration**
- **Rework Chargeable - System defined chargeable re-work item**
- **Non chargeable re-work - System defined non chargeable re-work item**

In addition to these work types you can click **Edit** next to the **Work Type** list to add new work types. You can modify items or delete work types that you create, but you cannot modify or delete built-in work types.

Note: This option is available only if Link software is connected to your Prinergy system and if you start a process from Job Manager, not from the Job Finder.

Edit

Click this button to add and modify work items for a specific work category. Any items that you add appear under **Work Type** in the Start Process dialog box.

Note: This option is available only if Link software is connected to your Prinergy system and if you start a process from Job Manager, not from the Job Finder.

Items to Submit

This tab lists elements that are being submitted to the digital device.

Content Preparation

This tab allows you to select the settings that determine how the multi-page PDF file that you will submit to the digital device is going to be created.

If you are in the **Pages** view, and you submit one or more files from the Page Position pane or Page pane to a digital device listed in the Process Templates pane, the Loose Page Proof Template area is displayed in the Content Preparation tab. You can do the following actions:

- Click the **Select** button to choose a digital device from the Process Template dialog box.
- Click the **Edit** button to change the settings.
- Click the **Color Mapping** button to define color output options.
- Click the **Select Versions** button to identify which versions you want to output.

If you are in the **Pages** view, and you submit a file from the Input File pane to a digital device, the Content Preparation tab is

not displayed because you are submitting the actual input file directly to the digital device.

If you are in the **Signature** view or **Separations** view, and you submit one or more files from the Page Position pane to a digital device, the Loose Page Proof Template area is displayed in the Content Preparation tab and you can do the actions described above. If you submit an imposition plan, the Imposition Proof Template area is displayed in the Content Preparation tab. You can **Select** and **Edit** an imposition template, and use the **Select Versions** button, but the **Color Mapping** button is not displayed.

Note: If you are submitting a job that has JDF content, make sure that you have set up the correct JDF template for the digital device. See the Digital Print Installation and Configuration guide.

Color Mappings

This button is only visible when you start a refine or loose page output process template. Click this button to change how colors will be output.

When refining pages this button opens the Color Mappings dialog box. The button does not appear when refining input files.

When generating loose page output this button opens the Color Output dialog box.

Select Versions

For jobs that have versioning, you can output all languages or select specific languages to output.

Print Settings

This tab allows you to select the print settings to determine how the PDF file is printed using the digital device.

In the JDF Template box click the **Select** button to choose the JDF template to associate to the PDF file.

In the Print Settings area the **Print Job Name** is listed in which the PDF file resides. You can change the print job name if you want. In the **Quantity** box, select the number of copies that you want to print.

Note: If you are submitting a job that has JDF content, make sure that you have set up the correct JDF template for the digital device. See the Digital Print Installation and Configuration guide.

Device

This tab displays information about the **type** of digital device that you selected and its current **status**.

Device status may be in any of the following states.

- **Available**
- **Unavailable**
- **Idle (waiting and ready)**
- **Down**
- **Status Unknown**

Additional information about the device status may be displayed depending on the type of digital device.

Layered PDF Flattening Warning

When you process layered PDF files a warning message appears to indicate that if the **PDF 1.4-1.6 (Acrobat 5-7)** option located on the Normalize section of the refine process template is set to **Flatten to PDF 1.3**, the refined files will be flattened and layers will be combined as indicated in the Layer Selection dialog box.

Layer handling happens before flattening, so that layers are handled as specified in the Layer Selection dialog box before flattening occurs. This allows you to omit certain layers before processing the page as PDF 1.3. As a general rule, for LPV jobs you do not want to flatten to PDF 1.3, which would destroy the layers of the incoming PDF 1.5 file. This would defeat the purpose of using layered input.

Note: If you use Rules-Based Automation to start a process, most options in the dialog box do not apply, so they are not displayed.

File Browser dialog box

Unlabeled list and results area

Selecting an item in the list at the top left of the dialog box displays that item's contents in the box below.

When you select:

- **Volumes**, the volumes in your system appear
- A volume name, folders at the root of the selected volume appear
- A folder name, files within the folder appear

The path of the displayed item in the list appears in reverse order, for example, folder name followed by volume name.

Desktop

Click this button to locate items on the computer desktop.

Open

Opens the selected item.

Show Hidden Files

Select this check box to include hidden files, such as system files, in the results.

You can set the default selection of this check box on the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

9

Process templates

About process templates

A process template is a file containing a collection of options and parameters that tells Prinerger how to perform a process.

When you initiate processing on a job or element, you must select a process template that contains the desired processing parameters.

Use Process Template Editor to create, view, and modify process templates and workflow templates. Process templates contain instructions for a process, and workflow templates link two or more process templates together to offer you more automation. Also use Process Template Editor to change the order or grouping of process templates.

For a list of all process templates, click the **Options** tab. For more information about workflow templates, see [About workflow templates](#) on page [937](#).

About modifying process templates

You can make either permanent or temporary changes to a process template.

Make permanent changes to a process template if you want the changes to be in effect whenever someone uses the process template in the future, regardless of which job or Prinerger Workshop client they are accessing the template from.

Make temporary changes to a process template if you want those changes to be in effect only while a specific process is executed, and discarded once the process is complete.

About temporarily modifying process templates

When you choose a process template to execute and the Start Process dialog box appears, you are given the option to edit the process template before running it.

When you edit a process template in this way, any changes to the process template are temporary and are discarded once the process is complete.

The changes do not affect the original process template and they are not saved with the job. You cannot redo the same process without making the same changes to the process template again.

About protecting process templates

You can determine which users will be allowed to create and edit process templates in Prinerger Workshop. This is done by setting user rights in Prinerger Administrator.

When a user who doesn't have the right to edit process templates is logged into Prinerger Workshop, an [x] appears to the right of the Process Template Editor menu options; the menu options are dimmed and unavailable. In addition, clicking **Edit Process Templates** in the Start Process window will allow you to only check the process template parameters and not change and save them.

For more information about setting user rights, see the *Prinerger System Administration guide*.

What are JTPs?

Job Ticket Processors (JTPs) are software components that implement specific actions or tasks to be performed as part of an Adobe Extreme system. The real work of an Extreme system is performed by one or more JTPs. This means that the kind of work of which an Extreme system is capable is determined by the JTPs installed in it.

All JTPs share common responsibilities and capabilities, but each JTP also has its own unique task. JTPs perform their tasks based on the information available in a PJTF file. Different JTPs make use of certain parts of a PJTF file and ignore other parts of the file. This allows multiple JTPs to share the same PJTF file and its associated PDF files. As each JTP performs its task, it consults the PJTF file for input and updates the PJTF file with the new information. For example, the Normalizer JTP looks for PostScript file descriptions in the PJTF and, after processing, changes the file description so it points to the new PDF file and not to the original PostScript file. This allows the next JTP in the sequence to operate on the PDF files, rather than the original PostScript files.

Each JTP has a unique name that describes its purpose. It is possible to have multiple copies of the same JTP running at the same time on the

same server or on different servers. This allows for distribution and parallel processing.

Prinerger contains a number of JTPs created to implement specific tasks that are not provided by the standard Extreme system. For example, Prinerger uses a JTP to generate thumbnails during refining and another JTP for archiving functions. In some cases, the functionality of a standard JTP has been extended.

Creating process templates

You can also create a new process template from the related Process Template Editor.

1. In the **Process Templates** pane, right-click the process template group you want (the folder just above the process templates), and select **New Process Template**.
2. Set the process template parameters as desired.
3. Click **Save**.
4. In the Save Process Template dialog box, select the group in which you want to save the process template, or create and select a new process template group.

| To | Do This |
|------------------------|---|
| Create a new group | Type a name for the new group and click Create Process Template Group . |
| Open an existing group | Double-click the group in the list. Tip: You can also select the group and select Open . |

5. Type a name for the new process template, then click **Create Process Template**.

Creating process templates based on an existing process template

1. In the **Process Templates** pane, locate a process template, and double-click it.
2. In the process template, modify the parameters as desired.
3. Click **Save As**.
4. Select an existing process template group in which the new process template will be located, or create and select a new process template group.

| To | Do this |
|------------------------|---|
| Create a new group | Type a name for the new group and click Create Process Template Group . |
| Open an existing group | Double-click the group in the list. Tip: You can also select the group and select Open . |

5. Type a name for the new process template and click **Create Process Template**.

Save process template dialog box

Note: This dialog box also applies to saving workflow templates.

lists

By default, the list displays the root of the selected process template group, and the list displays the process templates for the selected process template group.

The bottom box displays the process template name.

Create Process Template

Click this button to create a new process template.

If you opened an existing process template and want to save it as a new process template, you must modify the process template name before this button changes from **Save Process Template** to **Create Process Template**.

Create Process Template Group

Click this button to create a new process template group. A process template group is the level just above the process templates.

Modifying process templates

1. In the **Process Templates** pane, locate a process template, and double-click it.
2. In the process template, modify the parameters as desired.
3. Click **Save**.

Temporarily modifying process templates

1. Start a process.
2. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**. The process template opens in the Process Template Editor for the server or workflow processor on which the process template resides.
3. In the process template, modify the parameters as desired, and click **OK**.
4. In the Start Process dialog box, click **OK** to begin processing.

Note: Once processing is complete, the changes that you made to the process template are discarded. The changes do not affect the original process template and they are not saved with the job. You cannot redo the same process without making the same changes to the process template again.

Renaming process templates

Note: You can also rename a process template from the Process Template Editor.

1. In the **Process Templates** pane, locate a process template, right-click it, and select **Rename**.
2. Type a new name for the process template and click **Rename**.

Deleting process templates

Note: You can also delete a process template from Process Template Editor.

1. In the **Process Templates** pane, select the process template that you want to delete.
2. Right-click the selection and select **Delete**.
3. If prompted to confirm that you want to delete the process template, click **Continue**.
The process template disappears from the **Process Templates** pane.

Process Template Editor

Process templates

Prinerger offers several types of process templates. For option descriptions for each process template type, see:

- Refine Process Template Options
- Bypass Refine Process Template Options
- Loose Page Output Process Template Options
- Imposition Output Process Template Options
- Publish File Process Template
- Final Output Process Template Options
- CTLW Karat Output Process Template Options
- Archive Process Template Options
- Retrieve Process Template Options
- Archive Medium Logical Copy Process Template Options
- Purge Process Template Options
- Import Process Template Options (Jobs)
- Import Process Template Options (Impositions)
- Export Process Template Options
- Generate Versioned Pages Process Template Options
- Copy Job Process Template Options

Workflow templates

Prinerger offers workflow templates, which combine two or three process templates. See About Workflow Templates.

Factory read-only templates

See Factory Templates.

For menu descriptions, see Menus in Process Template Editor.

See also:

[Factory templates](#) on page [189](#)

[File Browser dialog box](#) on page [190](#)

[Menus in Process Template Editor](#) on page [190](#)

[Refine process template](#) on page [201](#)

[Import process template \(impositions\)](#) on page [358](#)

[Loose Page Output process template](#) on page [433](#)

[Imposition Output process template](#) on page [489](#)

[Final Output process template](#) on page [544](#)

[Export process template](#) on page [865](#)

[Import process template \(jobs\)](#) on page [870](#)

[Archive process template](#) on page [879](#)

[Purge process template](#) on page [882](#)

[Retrieve process template](#) on page [885](#)

[Archive Medium Logical Copy process template](#) on page [892](#)

[About workflow templates](#) on page [937](#)

Saving factory templates

You can use a factory template as a regular process template.

1. Open Process Template Editor.
2. Under **Factory Read-Only Templates**, select and open a factory template.
3. Select **File > Save As**.
4. Double-click the group where you want to save the process template.
5. Type a name for the factory template.
6. Click **Create Process Template**.

The factory template is now available for use as a regular process template.

Factory templates

Factory templates provide a stable set of process templates that can be used when the Response Center is troubleshooting a case. For example, when the Response Center asks you to run your file through a specific factory process template, they will have an easier time troubleshooting your file. The factory template takes out the uncertainty that other features such as ColorConvert or Trap haven't been accidentally turned on and affect the outcome.

Another advantage of factory templates is that they provide stable starting points for useful configurations. For example, you'll have a reasonable starting point for the settings of a contone PDF raster process template.

By default, the factory templates are visible only in the Process Template Editor. These templates do not appear in either the Job Manager window or the Start Process dialog box so as not to be inadvertently used in an incorrect manner.

To use a factory template as a regular process template, see *Saving Factory Templates*.

File Browser dialog box

lists

By default, the list displays the root of the selected process template group, and the list displays the process templates for the selected process template group.

The bottom box displays the process template name.

Volumes

Click this button to display all of the volumes in the Prinergy system.

Show Hidden Files

Select this check box to display hidden files, such as system files, in the list.

You can set the default selection of this check box in the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Menus in Process Template Editor

Workshop menu in Process Template Editor

Note: This menu is available only when running Prinergy Workshop on a Macintosh client.

About Prinergy Workshop

Displays information about Prinergy Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the server name.

Preferences

Use to view and modify Prinerger Workshop preferences. When you select this menu item, the Workshop Preferences dialog box appears.

Note: On a Windows client, this menu item appears under the **Edit** menu. On a Macintosh client, it appears under the **Workshop** menu.

Quit / Quit Prinerger Workshop

Quits Prinerger Workshop. Any open Prinerger Workshop windows are closed.

File menu in Process Template Editor

Note: Not all menu items are available all the time. Some menu items are available only when specific process templates or process template groups are selected.

New Process Template

Select an existing process template or process template group and then select **New Process Template** to create a new process template of the same type.

For example select an existing archive process template or archive process template group and then select **New Process Template**. A new archive process template opens with the default archive process template settings.

Modify and save the new process template as desired.

New Process Template Group

Select an existing process template type process template group, or process template and then select **New Process Template Group** to create a new process template group. Name the new process template group as desired.

New Workflow Template

Select a type of workflow template then select **New Workflow Template** to display a dialog box of options for a workflow template. Use the dialog box to create a new workflow template.

New Workflow Template Group

Select a type of workflow template then select **New Workflow Template Group**. Prinerger places an unnamed process template group in the Process Template Editor dialog box. The cursor blinks in the highlighted but unnamed group for you to name it.

Open

Opens the selected process template.

Delete

Deletes the selected process template or process template group.

Rename

Enables you to rename the selected process template or process template group.

Change Group Icon

Enables you to change the icon that represents the selected process template group. When you select this menu item, the File Browser dialog box opens. From there, you can browse to and select the icon that you want to associate with the selected process template group.

Close Window

Closes the current window, but does not quit Prinerger Workshop.

Quit

Quits Prinerger Workshop. Any open Prinerger Workshop windows are closed.

See also:

[Creating and modifying workflow templates](#) on page [938](#)

Edit menu in Process Template Editor

Note: Not all menu items are available all the time. Some menu items are available only when specific process templates or process template groups are selected.

Cut

Select a process template that you want to copy to another process template group and then select **Cut**. When you **Paste** the process template into the new process template group, the process template simultaneously appears in the new process template group and disappears from its original process template group. (Compare to **Copy**.)

Copy

Select a process template that you want to copy to another process template group and then select **Copy**. When you **Paste**

the process template into the new process template group the process template appears in the new process template group. (Compare to **Cut**.)

Paste

Pastes the copied process template to the selected process template group. (See also **Cut** and **Copy**.)

Note: You can only move a process template from one process template group to another process template group of the same type. For example, you can move an archive process template from one archive process template group to another archive process template group, but not to a purge process template group.

View menu in Process Template Editor

Refresh

Updates the contents of the current window.

Tools menu in Process Template Editor

Change User

Displays the Connect to Server dialog box where you can log in as another user without quitting Prinerger Workshop.

This menu item appears only if you have Kodak Prinerger Business Link software connected to the Prinerger system.

Job Finder

Opens Job Finder.

If you are already in Job Finder, this menu item is unavailable.

Destroy History Entries

In the **History** view, select one or more history entries and then use **Destroy History Entries** to delete the selected entries.

Process Template Editor

Launches **Process Template Editor**, where you can create and modify process templates.

Automated Page Assignment Editor

Starts the **Automated Page Assignment Editor**, which you use to create and check APA files.

Queue Manager

Launches **Queue Manager**, where you can view the Job Ticket Processors (JTPs) and process types.

Media Manager

Launches **Media Manager**, where you can manage your archive tapes and disk volumes.

System History

Launches **System History**, which displays the detailed history of all the activity occurring outside of job context (such as jobs and groups that were created or destroyed), as well as job archive, purge, and retrieve history.

Smart Hot Folder Manager

Launches the Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box, where you can add, edit and delete smart hot folders.

Configure Imposition Application

Displays the Configure Imposition Applications dialog box, where you can identify the location of imposition software that you want to integrate with Prinergy Workshop.

Start Imposition Application

Displays the Start Imposition Application dialog box, where you choose which imposition software to start. You create this list of imposition applications with the Configure Imposition Application tool from the **Tools** menu. If an application requires a license and is licensed, it appears in bold.

Color Editor

Launches **Color Editor**, where you can create color recipes for all jobs.

Color Space Editor

Launches **Color Space Editor**, where you can create and edit color spaces.

Font Converter

Launches **Font Converter**, where you can convert font files into PFA (Printer Font ASCII) format, which Prinergy requires to correctly process fonts.

Preflight Profile Manager

Launches **Preflight Profile Manager**, where you can, during the refine process, evaluate PDFs to detect problems that may affect processing in a publishing or prepress workflow.

Digital Print Administration Console

Launches the Digital Print Administrator, where you can add and configure a digital print application that Prinergy can launch to print PDFs.

Rule Set Manager

Opens the Rule Set Manager, where you can create and edit rule sets. The Rule Set Manager also lets you organize rule sets into groups.

Activate Rule Set in Selected Jobs

Opens the **Select Rule Set** dialog box, where you can activate rule sets for one or more jobs.

Help menu in Process Template Editor

Online help

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy online help.

On *<current window or view>*

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy Workshop user guide, open to the topic for the currently selected window or view.

eCentral Online Support

Starts your Web browser and displays the eCentral portal at <https://ecentral.kodak.com/>.

Visit graphics.kodak.com

Starts your Web browser and displays the Kodak Web site at <http://graphics.kodak.com/default.htm>.

Keyboard shortcuts in Process Template Editor

| Macintosh Keyboard Shortcut | Windows Keyboard Shortcut | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| ⌘ + Delete | Ctrl + Delete | Destroys the selected process template or process template group |
| ⌘ + RETURN | Ctrl + Enter | Opens the selected process template |

| Macintosh Keyboard Shortcut | Windows Keyboard Shortcut | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| ⌘ + C | Ctrl + C | Copies the selected process template |
| ⌘ + N | Ctrl + N | When a process template type, process template group, or process template is selected, opens a new process template of the same type. For example, select an existing archive process template or archive process template group, and then press Ctrl + N. A new archive process template opens with the default archive process template settings. |
| ⌘ + Q | Ctrl + Q | Quits Prinergy Workshop |
| ⌘ + R | Ctrl + R | Refreshes the current window |
| ⌘ + V | Ctrl + V | Pastes a copied process template into the selected process template group |
| ⌘ + W | Ctrl + W | Closes the Process Template Editor window |
| ⌘ + X | Ctrl + X | Removes the selected process template |

Process template groups

About process template groups

Process templates are organized by category, type, and group. For example:

- Output (category)
 - Final Output (type)
 - Auto Flat Output (group)

Within each type, Prinergy comes with some default groups created, although you can rename or delete these groups and create new groups as desired. You can also change the group icons.

Note: Process template groups for imposition output and final output are usually grouped by output device type, such as Kodak Trendsetter Spectrum for imposition output process templates. We recommend selecting an icon appropriate for the device type, if available.

Creating process template groups

You can create a new process template group when you create a new process template, or directly in Process Template Editor. To create a new process template group from Process Template Editor:

1. Open Process Template Editor.
2. Perform one of the following actions:
 - Select an existing process template type, process template group, or process template and then from the **File** menu, select **New Process Template Group**.
 - Right-click a process template type and select **New Process Template Group**.
3. Type a name for the new group and press **Enter**.

Renaming process template groups

1. Open the Process Template Editor and select the process template group that you want to rename.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Rename**, or right-click the selection and select **Rename**.
The cursor appears next to the process template group name.
3. Type a new name and press **Enter**.
The process template group is renamed in Process Template Editor and in the **Process Templates** pane of Job Manager.

Deleting process template groups

Note: Deleting a process template group also deletes any process templates within that group.

1. Open Process Template Editor and select the process template group that you want to delete.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Delete**, or right-click the selection and select **Delete**.
3. When prompted to confirm that you want to delete the group, click **Delete**.
The process template group disappears from Process Template Editor and from the **Process Templates** pane of Job Manager.

Changing process template group icons

1. Open Process Template Editor and select the process template group whose icon you want to change.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Change Group Icon**, or right-click the selection and select **Change Group Icon**.
3. In the File Browser dialog box, browse to and select the icon that you want to represent the process template group.
4. Click **OK**.

Moving process templates between groups

1. Open Process Template Editor and select the process template that you want to move.
2. Perform one of the following actions:

| To | Do this |
|---|---|
| Copy the process template to another process template group and keep a copy in the original group | From the Edit menu, select Copy , or right-click the selection and select Copy . |
| Copy the process template to another process template group and remove it from the original group | From the Edit menu, select Cut , or right-click the selection and select Cut . |

3. Select the process template group to which you want to copy the process template.

Note: You can only move a process template from one process template group to another process template group of the same type. For example, you can move an archive process template from one archive process template group to another archive process template group, but you cannot move an archive process template from an archive process template group to a purge process template group.

4. From the **Edit** menu, select **Paste**, or right-click the selection and select **Paste**.

The process template appears in the selected group in Process Template Editor and in the **Process Templates** pane of Job Manager.

10

Refining

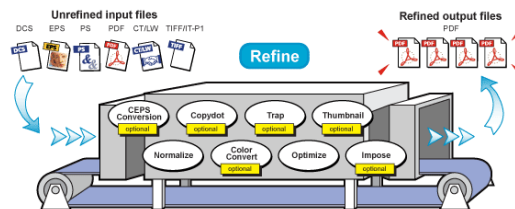
About refining

Refining is a key Prinergy process. In addition to converting your files to PDF, it can perform copydot handling, color conversion, trapping, thumbnail generation, and more. In most cases, you must refine your files before you can produce quality output in Prinergy.

Refined files include embedded fonts and images, so you do not have to manage the fonts and images of refined files.

You can choose to refine files while adding them to a job or later. When you refine files, you select a refine process template that contains predetermined settings. This process template guides the files through a series of JTPs.

Note: Files can be refined multiple times in order to apply different refine process settings. Refining also enables you to map colors.



Bypassing refine

If you are confident that your PDF input files are press-ready, you can choose to bypass the refine process. Bypassing refine ensures that the content does not change, and saves processing time and resources.

To bypass refine, you must use the **Bypass Refine** process template, which will only register your PDF input files with associated colorant and geometry attributes into the Prinergy system.

XMP metadata

Prinergy preserves XMP metadata in your input files. XMP is a standards-based metadata schema, providing structure for your information records.

XMP metadata can be used in a number of ways. For example, XMP metadata can include information regarding 3rd party OPI and trapping. It can also include information for future use, for example, whether or

not the file has already been preflighted by Prinergy, and if the preflight profile is GWG (Ghent Working Group) compliant.

See also:

[About supported input file types](#) on page [126](#)

[About adding and removing files](#) on page [143](#)

[About common density limit](#) on page [256](#)

[About neutral density](#) on page [256](#)

[About overprint conversion](#) on page [257](#)

[About overprint handling](#) on page [257](#)

[About step limit](#) on page [262](#)

[About thumbnails](#) on page [262](#)

[About reducing and preserving spot colors during refine](#) on page [807](#)

Refining input files manually

Requirements: You have already added input files to a job using a menu item or a hot folder.

1. In the **Input Files** pane of Job Manager, select the input files that you want to process.
2. Follow the instructions in Starting Process and select a process template.

You can choose any refine process template.

Prinergy refines the input files into PDF pages which appear in the **Pages** pane.

See also:

[Starting processes](#) on page [171](#)

Refining input files using a hot folder

1. Open the job.
2. Create a hot folder for the job and link it to the desired process template.

You can choose any refine process template.

3. Add files to the hot folder.

The result depends on the type of files and the type of hot folder.

Refine process template

At the top of the process template is the **Generate** list, which you use to select type of PDF to generate during the refine process. The choices are:

- **PDF**
- **PDF/X-1a:2001**
- **PDF/X-3:2002**

The refine process template contains several sections. Each section defines a subprocess of the refine process.

CEPS Conversion section of the Refine process template

The **CEPS Conversion** section of a refine process template defines how Prinergy takes CT/LW and TIFF/IT-P1 input files and generates PDF files. The resulting PDF files consist of two layers: line-work (LW) and continuous-tone (CT).

Note: Prinergy handles TIFF/IT-P1, CT/LW (generated by Brisque or PS/M 5 and later), and handshake pages (from PS/M 4 and earlier, and other sources); it does not handle other forms of these files. You must convert other types of CT/LW files to PostScript before you input them to Prinergy, or to an accepted input format using a translation function, such as that found on the Brisque. Also, when generating files from Brisque for Prinergy, you must ensure the files are trapped and color-matched before you submit them to Prinergy.

JTP

Select the job ticket processor (JTP) you want to use for Brisque CT/LW files.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Resample LW

Resamples LW files to the specified resolution.

To enable resampling select the **Resample LW** check box and then select the device resolution from the list, and specify the unit of measurement for the resolution.

To disable resampling clear the **Resample LW** check box.

Scaling

Type the percentage at which you want Prinergy to scale CT/LW files. Type 100% for no scaling.

Note: Scaling isn't recommended for CT/LW files.

Fonts and Images section of the Refine process template

The **Fonts and Images** section of a refine process template controls image replacement (PDF OPI) and font handling in PostScript, EPS, and PDF input files during the normalizing step of the refine process.

Image Replacement

Standard OPI Image Links

Search for High-Resolution Images in Image Search Paths

Select this check box to direct Prinergy to request high-resolution images in image search paths.

This check box applies to PostScript or PDF files that contain OPI comments in low-resolution images generated by Asset Library.

If the image is not found Prinergy either fails or continues with a warning, depending on what is selected in the **Fail on Missing Images** check box.

Asset Library Image Proxy Links

Search for High-Resolution Images in Asset Library

Select this check box to direct Prinergy to request high-resolution images from Asset Library, an integrated asset management system that enables you to easily manage a job's digital assets, such as images and text.

This check box applies to PostScript or PDF files that contain OPI comments in low-resolution images generated by Asset Library.

If the image is not found Prinergy either fails or continues with a warning, depending on what is selected in the **If Asset Library Image Not Found** list.

History Logging

Use this list to determine whether **History** view displays messages about images found in Asset Library and how much detail is provided. Choose:

- **Verbose** to list the name of the PDF page that contains an Asset Library image and the name of the image. The list includes one line per image found.
- **Normal** to list the name of the PDF page that contains an Asset Library image, the number of images on the page, and

the name of the first image. The list includes one line per PDF page.

- **Terse** to list the name of the input file, the number of PDF pages that contain Asset Library images, and the total number of images. The list includes one line per input file.
- **None** if you do not want **History** view to display messages about Asset Library images

If Asset Library Image Not Found

Determines whether a page fails when Prinerger cannot find an image in Asset Library for OPI. The options are:

- **Warn & Search in Image Search Paths**
- **Fail Page**

This list applies only when **Search For High-Resolution Images in Asset Library** is selected.

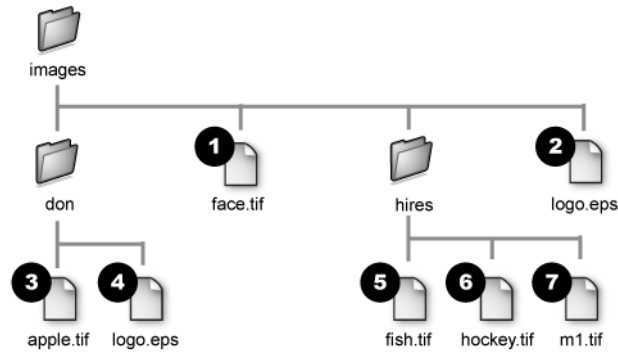
Image Search Path Options

Search for Subfolders

Select this check box to have Prinerger automatically search through the subfolders for images for an OPI image swap. Searches the subfolders in alphabetical order and all immediate subfolders are searched first before looking deeper.

Earlier versions of Prinerger required you to specify each folder that contained images for the OPI image swap. This could be a lot of work if you organize images into many different folders. Now, while looking for a matching image, you can instruct the system to search through subfolders.

If the option is selected, Prinerger searches the subfolders in alphabetical order and searches all immediate subfolders are searched first before looking deeper. The following diagram shows the search order if the search path was set to the folder **images**. The numbers indicate the order in which the OPI engine encounters each file as it searches through the subfolders.



If the OPI engine is looking for the image **fish.tif** it will find file number 5 inside the folder **hires from tim** after searching the root folder (the folder **images**) and after searching the folder **don's images**. If the OPI engine is looking for the image **logo.eps**, it will find file number 2 rather than number 4.

Users are advised to consider that different images with the same file name might be discovered by the search algorithm in unexpected ways. The example contains two images named **logo.eps** and this ambiguity could cause bad results. Users are advised to check the refined pages carefully if there is any doubt.

Recursive searching can take a long time if Prinerger has to search many subfolders. Performance of refine processing may be affected: be cautious when using this feature with search paths pointing to large disks.

Skip Images With These Suffixes

If this check box is selected, OPI image replacement will not be done for images with suffixes that are specified in this box (for example, .tiff, .jpg, .jpeg).

This option is useful when there are high-resolution TIFF files and low-resolution FPO (for placement only) files on the same PDF page.

Fail on Missing Images

Available when the **Search for High-Resolution Images in Image Search Paths** check box is selected.

Fails the normalize process when OPI can't locate an image.

When you enable this feature, Prinerger produces an error message when OPI can't find an image for the input file. Prinerger fails to produce a PDF file due to the missing image, and displays an error message and/or icon (✖) in three places:

in the Active Processes pane in Job Manager, in the Process Info dialog box, and on the History view in Job Manager.

When you disable this feature Prinergy displays a warning message or icon (▲) in the above locations when it can't find an image for the input file. Prinergy still produces a PDF file, but it is missing an image.

Image Attributes

Apply Clipping Path in Photoshop TIFFs

Select this check box to use the clipping path directly from Adobe Photoshop TIFF images.

Note: If the source file is not designed to use the clipping path from the Photoshop TIFF, unintended image clipping can occur. Check the refined files carefully if there is any doubt.

Clear this check box to ignore the clipping path set in Photoshop TIFF images.

Include Spot Channels in Photoshop TIFFs

Includes the spot color channels in addition to the CMYK channels during OPI image replacement.

When this check box is selected, the OPI engine merges the CMYK color channels with all spot color channels to produce a single, multichannel DeviceN image. Further refine processing such as color matching and trapping will function correctly for these images. When this check box is cleared, all of the spot color channels in the image file are ignored.

Spot color channels are created and edited using the Channels palette. Note that although Adobe Photoshop includes the name of the spot color channel, it does not include the recipe. Users should select the **Lookup Recipe in Color Database** option in the **Spot Color Handling** section of the refine process template, to get an accurate color recipe for proper color matching and trapping.

Be aware that Adobe InDesign software will not omit TIFF files for OPI that contain spot colors, even when OPI is selected in the Print dialog box. One workaround is to place a plain CMYK TIFF proxy image first, generate PostScript from InDesign software including the OPI comments (but omitting images), and then put the TIFF file containing the desired spot color channels into the search directories.

Image Transparency

Create Soft Masks from Photoshop TIFF Alpha Channels

Creates effects such as feathered edges or soft silhouettes during OPI image replacement.

Normal clipping paths cannot produce this effect—clipping paths give only a hard edge to the image. Soft masks may give either a hard or soft edge, depending on the design of the mask.

When enabled, the OPI engine looks inside the Adobe Photoshop TIFF for an alpha channel to be used to create a soft mask for the source image. If more than one alpha channel is present, the first one is used—the remaining alpha channels are ignored. When this check box is cleared, all the alpha channels are ignored.

Note: This should not be confused with the Photoshop masking or transparency features that are part of the Layers palette. Alpha channels are created and edited using the Channels palette.

This feature is similar to the built-in capabilities of Adobe InDesign, although it will work with QuarkXPress software or any software that will generate OPI comments.

Make Drop Shadow Images Transparent

Select this check box to insert images into a layout that is intended as a drop shadow for a second image that is placed on top of the shadow image.

When this feature is enabled and the image is identified as a drop shadow, the OPI engine applies the transparency blend effect automatically. The image file names must use a special extension that identifies them as drop-shadow images, rather than normal (non-drop-shadow) images.

Transparent Drop Shadow Image Name Suffix

Sets the special extension for drop shadow images versus normal images. The default extension is .shd. The value cannot be blank.

Low Resolution Image Handling

Low Resolution Image Handling

Determines the system's response to low-resolution images. The **of Contone Resolution Below (ppi)** box and the **of Bitmap Resolution Below (ppi)** box determine which images are considered low resolution.

Select **Ignore low resolution images** when you want the system to continue processing regardless of the image quality. No warning messages are generated. When this option is selected, the **of Contone Resolution Below (ppi)** box and the **of Bitmap Resolution Below (ppi)** box are unavailable.

Select **Warn for low resolution images** when you want the system to display a warning message/icon (▲) when the resolution is less than the values indicated in the **of Contone Resolution Below (ppi)** box and the **of Bitmap Resolution Below (ppi)** box, but to continue processing.

Select **Fail on low resolution images** when you want the system to display an error message/icon (✖) when the resolution is less than the values indicated in the **of Contone Resolution Below (ppi)** box and the **of Bitmap Resolution Below (ppi)** box, and to stop processing. The system produces a PDF file, but a large, black X covers the PDF content.

of Contone Resolution Below

The system handles contone images with resolutions below this value with the action specified for low-resolution images in the **Low Resolution Image Handling** box.

of Bitmap Resolution Below

The system handles bitmap images with resolutions below this value with the action specified for low-resolution images in the **Low Resolution Image Handling** box.

Fonts

Prinerger can only embed missing fonts when the input file is PostScript or EPS. If Refining to PDF/X-1a:2001, Prinerger can also embed fonts if the source files are PDF.

Fail on Missing Fonts

Select to have the system fail the refine to PDF process when it can't find a font. When the system can't find a font in either the input file or in a search path specified in the Font Search Path dialog box, it produces a PDF file with a large, black X covering the content, and an error message and icon appear in the Processes pane and in the **History** view.

If you clear this check box a warning message and icon appears in the Processes pane and **History** view when the system can't find fonts in either the input file or in a search path specified in

the Font Search Path dialog box. The system still produces a PDF file, but the content is missing fonts.

In both cases if the process template has the **Try Emulation First** check box selected, the system tries to synthesize the missing font using Adobe's SuperATM Font Library. If the process template has the **Try Emulation First** check box cleared, or the system was unable to simulate the missing font, the it uses the font specified in the **Default Font** box (the system default is Courier).

Default Font

Type the name of the default font that you want Prinergy to use as a substitute for missing fonts. Recommended setting: Cleared.

If no font is specified Prinergy uses Courier font as a substitute.

Prinergy uses the default font when:

- A font is not embedded in the PostScript file
- A font is not installed (when you installed the Normalizer JTP)
- A font can't be found in a font search path
- The **Try Emulation First** check box is not selected, or Prinergy could not synthesize the font

Try Emulation First

Enables synthetic font substitution. When an input file's missing fonts are part of Adobe's SuperATM Font Library, Prinergy can construct synthetic fonts using Adobe's MultipleMaster font technology. However, when missing fonts are not part of Adobe's SuperATM Font Library, Prinergy uses the default font specified in the **Default Font** box.

Therefore if Prinergy discovers a missing font and the process template has the **Try Emulation First** check box selected, Prinergy tries to simulate the missing font using Adobe's SuperATM Font Library. If the process template has the **Try Emulation First** check box cleared, or Prinergy was unable to simulate the missing font, Prinergy uses the font specified in the **Default Font** box (the system default is Courier).

Recommended setting: Cleared.

Remove Font XUIDs

XUID stands for extended unique ID, which is a font characteristic introduced with Normalizer 6.

Select this check box to remove font XUIDs if you are refining files that may be exported and ripped on systems that use the 3011 RIP (Prinergy 2.2.1.10 or earlier) or other older RIPs.

If left unchecked, the older RIP may crash in some circumstances.

Use System Fonts

Select to use fonts installed on the system instead of the fonts embedded in the input files. If selected, the system fonts are embedded in the input file during the refine process.

If you select this option but the system does not have the same fonts as the input file, one of the following occurs:

- If the input file has embedded fonts, the refine process uses these embedded fonts instead.
- If the input file does not have embedded fonts, the refine process fails.

Note: This option does not work for Type3 fonts.

Override Resolution at 1200 dpi

Select this check box if you want to override the underlying resolution that the normalize function uses when refining files. This is required if you need to process low-resolution Asian fonts.

See also:

[About using OPI with transparent effects](#) on page [267](#)

[Using soft masks during OPI](#) on page [268](#)

[Using drop shadows during OPI](#) on page [269](#)

[Including clipping paths during OPI](#) on page [270](#)

[Including spot color channels during OPI](#) on page [270](#)

[About image search paths](#) on page [304](#)

[Font Converter](#) on page [313](#)

Normalize section of the refine process template

The **Normalize** section of a refine process template defines how PostScript files are converted to reliable PDF pages.

This section is required and cannot be disabled.

JTP

Specifies the job ticket processor that Prinergy will use for normalizing.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinerger Administrator.

PDF Level Handling

Indicates how Prinerger will handle PDF 1.4-1.6 files.

PDF 1.4-1.6 (Acrobat 5-7) files can contain a transparency feature that cannot be described in native form in PostScript or in PDF 1.3. For transparency and layers to be represented in PostScript and PDF 1.3 files, the file must be flattened into a single layer.

These are the options for handling PDF 1.4-1.6 files:

Leave as is

PDF 1.4-1.6 files are processed without any conversion.

Flatten to PDF 1.3

Prinerger flattens PDF 1.4-1.6 files into a single layer.

Fail

Processing fails when Prinerger encounters any PDF 1.4-1.6 files.

Warn when Converting

This option is available when you select **Flatten to PDF 1.3**. Prinerger gives a warning when it flattens a file.

Default Page Size

Specifies the page size for the refined PDF file.

Select from the list of common sizes, or select **Custom**, and then enter your own default measurements.

When you select a standard size, the **Width** and **Height** boxes are set to the correct values. If you change these values, the box is automatically set to **Custom**. Use the **Width** and **Height** boxes to specify the default page width and height in the selected unit of measure.

In most cases, input files contain page size information. Prinerger uses the page size information in the input file unless you select the **Override Page Size** check box, or if the input file does not contain page size information.

If you select the **Override Page Size** check box, Prinerger uses the information in the **Default Page Size** area, instead of the page size information in the input file.

When input files do not contain page size information, Prinergy automatically uses the information in the **Default Page Size** area. The following files are examples of PostScript files that do not contain page size information:

- PostScript from PTX (the Imation PrePress XTension for QuarkXPress)
- PostScript from the QuarkXPress software that uses the **Save as EPS** option
- PostScript from LaserWriter drivers later than version 8.4
- Files produced by custom or proprietary software—for example, directory printers, phone books, and so on

Apply Acrobat rotation

Retains the page rotation specified in Acrobat.

If this check box is selected, the resulting refined file retains the rotation as specified in Acrobat, even if used in older Prinergy releases or other workflow RIPs that do not honor the Acrobat rotation.

Suppress Generation of Failed SubPages

Prevents a page from being generated if it fails on refine.

If this check box is selected and an input file fails on refine, Prinergy does not register the input file in the database nor does it generate a PDF page.

All error-free subpages in the file will generate normally. For example, if a file contains three subpages and the first is flawed, this is the result:

- The first subpage refines with an error and no file named `<file>.p1.pdf` is generated.
- The second and third subpages refine correctly and files named `.p2.pdf` and `.p3.pdf` are generated.

Apply Photoshop-embedded ICC Profiles

Indicates that Prinergy should turn any ICC color profile that was embedded as a comment into an EPS file or other image file using Adobe Photoshop software, into a standard ICC color profile in the refined PDF file. If you want the profile to be applied during color matching, you should also enable the **ColorConvert** section of the refine process template.

Clear this check box if you want the color data in the file to remain unchanged.

Lines

Minimum Line Weight

Specifies the desired minimum weight of thin lines in input files. Type the minimum size, and select a unit of measure.

Thicken Thin Lines (PS Only)

Thickens lines in input files that are below the line weight specified in the **Minimum Line Weight** box. The lines are thickened to the weight specified in the **Minimum Line Weight** box.

Note: This feature does not thicken thin lines in PDF input files. If you select the **Thicken Thin Lines (PS Only)** check box and either the **Warn for thin lines** or **Fail on thin lines** options and submit a mix of PDF and PostScript files to Prinergy, Prinergy will thicken thin lines in the PostScript files and either warn you about thin lines in the PDF files or fail the refine process on the PDF files with thin lines.

Thin Line Handling

Determines how the system handles lines in input files that are thinner than the value specified in the **Minimum Line Weight** box. There are three options:

Ignore thin lines

Thin lines are ignored and no warning message appears.

Warn for thin lines

The system detects thin lines that it cannot thicken and displays a warning message.

Fail on thin lines

The system fails the refine to PDF process when it detects thin lines that it cannot thicken.

Note: If you select the **Thicken Thin Lines (PS Only)** check box and either the **Warn for thin lines** or **Fail on thin lines** options and submit a mix of PDF and PostScript files to Prinergy, Prinergy will thicken thin lines in the PostScript files and either warn you about thin lines in the PDF files or fail the refine process on the PDF files with thin lines.

Security

Secure PDF Password

Stores the password needed to successfully open and process a secure PDF document.

A PDF document can have password security for opening, or editing and printing, or both. In order to successfully normalize the document, the most significant password must be provided. Type the editing and printing password if it has been set in the document. Otherwise, type the opening password.

Note: Prinergy supports the following security methods—password with 40-bit RC4, 128-bit RC4, or 128-bit AES encryption. The following security methods do not work with Prinergy—password with 256-bit AES encryption, Certificate-based security, and Adobe LiveCycle Rights Management.

Separations

Re-combine

Specifies that overprinting should be used to create a composite PDF file from a separated input file. Re-combining enables the file to be trapped and to be viewed from devices that cannot combine separations.

Selecting the **Re-combine** option automatically enables the **Copydot** option of the refine process template. This protects any copydot images that might be in the file from being trapped and/or color matched. Trapping or color matching copydot images can introduce artifacts or cause the Trapper to run very slowly.

Note: For best results, disable the **ColorConvert** section if using the re-combine feature. Using color matching with **Re-combine** produces unpredictable knockouts.

If you must color match, ensure that you perform the following actions:

- Clear the **Set Overprint CMYK White to Knockout** check box (which is enabled by default in the **ColorConvert** section). If the check box is selected, the re-combine feature may convert blank (white) objects to an overprint CMYK white object in the composite PDF.
- Check the output carefully for unintended knockouts.

Note: For best results, do not trap recombined pages unless you are certain that the pages do not already contain traps. Software such as QuarkXPress inserts traps in separated output only. Because mixing traps from other software with Prinergy traps can give inconsistent results, ensure that a single trapping method is used.

Input Config File

Normalizer Input Configuration File

The Normalizer Input Configuration file is a configuration file used by the Prinergy system.

By default, Prinergy Workshop is set up to use the standard configuration file (`NormInputConfig`). Most Prinergy users will not need to change this selection.

Some customers may have modified this file for such purposes as PostScript bypass. If you need one or more specialized versions of the configuration file, you can attach one to a refine process template by clicking the **Browse** button and selecting the file from its network location. This feature allows the `NormInputConfig` file to be process-template-specific, which is useful in certain workflow configurations.

Note: If you do not use the **Browse** button to select a path, but type in a file name instead, Prinergy will search for the file in the executable directory (`%AraxiHome%\AdobeExtreme\bin`).

The Prinergy Administrator Diagnostics viewer (DIAG) will show which configuration file is being used.

Color Space Control

Input File Control

The color space control settings let you screen for input file data that is in nonpress (nonCMYK or nongrayscale) color spaces.

Ignore

Prinergy ignores RGB or device-independent data in input files. If you select **Ignore**, the **Detect RGB** and **Detect Device Independent** check boxes are unavailable and cannot be selected. If Prinergy encounters RGB or device-independent data, it gives no message and doesn't fail the job.

Warn

Prinergy issues a warning when the selected data type is found in the input file. A warning message and yellow triangle appear in the Process Info dialog box and job history for each check box that is selected. A PDF file is created. A large X does not cover the PDF content.

Fail

Prinergy fails the job when the selected data type is found in the input file. An error message and red X appear in the Process Info dialog box and job history for

each check box that is selected. A PDF file is created, but the content is covered by a large black X.

Input File Control works in conjunction with the **Detect RGB** and **Detect Device Independent** check boxes. You select an **Input File Control** option to indicate how you want Prinergy to respond when it locates data in a nonpress color space. You select the **Detect RGB** and/or **Detect Device Independent** check boxes to indicate what type of data you want Prinergy to detect.

Note: Settings in the **ColorConvert** section of the refine process template determine if and how the undesired color spaces are converted.

You can set these same options in the **Optimize** section of the refine process template. You can have the Color Space Control settings enabled in either the **Normalize** section or the **Optimize** section, or both. Turning the settings on in the **Optimize** section allows you to check that color conversion was performed in the refine stage as you expected.

You might want to warn only about RGB and CIE-based color spaces in the **Normalize** section, because you are converting them in the Color Matcher, but warn during optimizing about CIE-based color spaces that the Color Matcher wasn't set up to convert.

Detect RGB

Select this option to have Prinergy detect RGB data in the input file.

The **Input File Control** selection determines what Prinergy will do if it finds RGB data.

The **Detect RGB** check box is unavailable if the **Input File Control** selection is **Ignore**.

Detect Device Independent (ICCBased, Lab, CalGray, and CalRGB)

Select this option to have Prinergy detect device-independent data in the input file—for example CIE L*a*b* data.

The selection for **Input File Control** determines how Prinergy behaves when it finds device-independent data.

The **Detect Device Independent** check box is unavailable if the **Input File Control** selection is set to **Ignore**.

Separated File Control

These control settings let you detect nongray images (raster data) and nongray vector data in separated input files.

In each of the **Detect Non Gray Images** and the **Detect Non Gray Vector Data** lists, select one of the following options:

Ignore

No warning is issued.

Warn

A warning is issued when Prinergy detects nongray data (of the type specified).

Fail

The refine process fails when Prinergy detects nongray data (of the type specified).

CEPS Detector**Enable CEPS (CT/LW and TIFF/IT) Detection**

If the **Enable CEPS (CT/LW and TIFF/IT) Detection** feature is selected, Prinergy will detect CT/LW content or converted forms of CT/LW or TIFF/IT on a page. Prinergy marks the CT/LW data so that it is not trapped and any overprint settings are not modified.

Trapping CT/LW data may produce artifacts such as hairline gaps on the refined PDF page. Changing overprint settings may create a result that was not intended, such as removing existing traps.

This feature is helpful for mixed content—for example, content with vector text and CEPS format images. In this case, the Enable CEPS Detection feature will mark the CEPS content so it will not be trapped and the overprint settings will not be changed. The vector content will be trapped and the overprint settings will be changed.

This feature is also useful for sites where the operator does not know whether a page was originally CEPS. In this case, the feature will mark the entire CEPS page so it will not be trapped and the overprint settings will not be changed. Vector-based pages will be trapped and overprint settings will be changed.

If this feature is enabled and CT/LW or TIFF/IT data is detected in an input file during refining, a message appears in the Process Info dialog box for the process, and in the history log.

Note: This feature works only if you use the Trapper and Color Matcher JTPs.

Versioning Automated Page Assignment

Build Versioned Page

Select this check box if you are using page name patterns to automatically link refined pages to versioned pages.

This is part of layered PDF versioning. For information, see the *Prinergy Layered PDF Versioning User Guide*.

Spread Splitting

The reader-spread-splitting feature automates the process of splitting 2-up reader spreads into discrete pages. These discrete pages can then be assigned to page set positions and the imposition.

Note: You can split reader spreads only during the first refine.

Split Reader's Spread Pages

Select this check box to enable the types of reader spread layouts. Select the check box beside the icons that represent how the pages are laid out.

- When splitting a multipage file, determine how the pages are bound (left- or right-bound) and the location of the first and last pages. Consider -N- to be the last page in the spread.

| Binding style | First and last pages | Select check box |
|---------------|----------------------|---|
| Left Bound | Together | <input type="checkbox"/> N 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 ... |
| | Apart | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 ... <input type="checkbox"/> N <input type="checkbox"/> |
| | Together | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 <input type="checkbox"/> 4 ... |
| Right Bound | Together | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> N <input type="checkbox"/> 3 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 ... |
| | Apart | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> 5 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 ... <input type="checkbox"/> N <input type="checkbox"/> |
| | Together | <input type="checkbox"/> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 4 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 ... |

- When splitting a single-page file, determine how the two pages are laid out. Consider -N- to be page 2. (Ignore the **Left Bound** and **Right Bound** labels and the other page icons.)

| Page 1 | Select check box |
|--------------|---|
| On the left | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> N |
| On the right | <input type="checkbox"/> N <input type="checkbox"/> 1 |

Centerfold Bleed

Specifies the size of the bleed box for the split page. The bleed is captured from the adjoining page.

PDF Box Handling

Eliminate TrimBox and BleedBox

If this check box is selected, Prinergy uses the trim and bleed values in the media box.

If this check box is cleared, Prinergy uses the trim and bleed values in the original PDF file.

Output Intent

Use this area to specify an ICC profile or named print condition in the Output Intents section of the PDF/X file that you are generating.

A named print condition is a documented printing situation with a defined relationship between input data and the colorimetry of the printed image. Typically, named print conditions are registered with an organization such as the ICC.

Perform one of the following actions:

- To specify an ICC profile, select the **Profile** check box, and specify the path of a profile.
- To specify a named print condition, select the **Name** check box, and select a print condition from the list.
- To use the ICC profile specified in the **ColorConvert** section for PDF/X generation, click the **Use ColorConvert Destination profile** check box.

Note: **Match Colors in Page Content** in the **ColorConvert** section must be selected.

This area is available only when a **PDF/X** format is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

See also:

[About transparency support](#) on page [163](#)

[Copydot section of the Refine process template](#) on page [220](#)

[About reader spread splitting](#) on page [260](#)

[About PDF/X](#) on page [630](#)

PDF Preflight section of the Refine process template

The **PDF Preflight** section of a refine process template defines the profile used to check for errors and defines how to handle those errors.

Important: Enabling this section disables the following options in other sections of the refine process template because the preflight profile is controlling these aspects:

- In the **Generate** list, the **PDF/X-1a:2001** option is unavailable
- In the **Normalize** section, **Color Space Control** and **CEPS Detector** areas are unavailable
- In the **Optimize** section, all areas are unavailable

In the preflight profile, the **Font** and **OPI** controls do not operate, even though they are available. Prinergy will, however, report missing fonts in a preflight report regardless of the profile setting.

Preflight Profile Files

Select a PDF Preflight profile to use to evaluate your pages.

Preflight Handling

Select to determine how Prinergy responds to PDF Preflight errors in a page. (You classify conditions that are errors in PDF Preflight profile editor.)

Warnings: Ignore on Warning-Prinergy completes processing.

Warnings: Warn on Warning-PDF Preflight warns you of warnings. Warning messages appear in the Active Processes Pane in Job Manager and in the **History** view.

Warnings: Fail on Warning-PDF Preflight places an 'X' across all pages with warnings. The preflight process does not stop at the first warning.

Error: Ignore on Error-Prinergy completes processing.

Error: Warn on Error-PDF Preflight warns you of errors. Warning messages appear in the Active Processes Pane in Job Manager and in the **History** view.

Error: Fail on Error-PDF Preflight places an 'X' across all pages with errors. The preflight process does not stop at the first error.

Note: You can select only an equal or more severe behavior for errors as for warnings. For example, if you select **Warn on Warning**, then the choices for errors is reduced to only **Warn on Error** or **Fail on Error**.

Note: You can stop the generation of failed subpages when you set up your preflight profile to **Fail on Errors**. In the refine process template, Normalize section, select the **Suppress Generation of Failed Subpages** check box.

Report

Create Report on Error

Select if you want a PDF Preflight report for each PDF page that has preflight errors.

Always Create Report

Select if you want a PDF Preflight report for each PDF page.

Auto Report Generation

Automatically generate PDF version of Preflight Report

Select if you want Prinergy to automatically generate a PDF version of the Preflight report. One Preflight report is created for each input file.

The resulting report is appropriate for distribution outside of the Prinergy system, for example, e-mailing.

Create One Report per Input File

Select to create a separate PDF Preflight report for each PDF page.

This option is not available unless you select the **Automatically generate PDF version of Preflight Report** check box.

Preflight Report Location

Type the path or navigate to the directory in which you want the Preflight report to be created.

Copydot section of the Refine process template

The **Copydot** section of a refine process template defines how Prinergy handles copydot files.

When you enable the **Copydot** section, the system automatically reformats copydot images for optimal performance during output. Only disable the **Copydot** section for one or more of the following reasons:

- Your input files lack copydot images.
- You have already optimized the copydot images in your input files.
- You don't need alternate images.

JTP

Select a job ticket processor (JTP) to use for copydot files.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Resample

Enables resampling of copydot files to the specified resolution. Use this feature when you want the resolution of copydot images in your refined content to match that of your output device.

Select the **Resample** check box to enable resampling of copydot files.

Clear the **Resample** check box to disable resampling of copydot files.

Note: You can resample copydot images during final output instead of during refining.

Target Resolution

Specify the resolution of the target output device in the **X** and **Y** boxes, and then select a unit of measure.

Generate Alternate Images

Generates alternate low-resolution images, which Prinergy uses when you use the Publish PDF feature. The system automatically descreens alternate copydot images to 300 dpi, and they are JPG compressed.

Select this check box to generate an alternative image for each copydot image.

Clear this check box to disable this feature.

Spot Color Handling section of the Refine process template

The **Spot Color Handling** section of a refine or re-refine process template defines how Prinergy handles spot colors, and defines which libraries color recipes are retrieved from.

This section is required and cannot be disabled.

JTP

Select the JTP (job ticket processor) to use for spot color handling. Spot Color Handling uses the Color Matcher JTP.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Map Spot Colors

Note: The options in the Color Mappings dialog box override the options in this section.

Enable Spot Color Mapping

Enables you to control spot color mapping.

If this check box is selected, you can either:

- map all colors to process by selecting the **Map All Spot Colors to Process** option
- map some colors to process and not others by editing the Color Mappings dialog box
- not map spot colors by selecting the **Don't Map Spot Colors** option

If this check box is cleared, all spot color mapping is disabled, including the settings in the Color Mappings dialog box.

Map All Spot Colors to Process

Converts spot colors in input files to process color.

This option is only available when the **Enable Spot Color Mapping** check box is selected.

Don't Map Spot Colors

Retains spot color definitions as they are defined in the input file.

This option is only available when the **Enable Spot Color Mapping** check box is selected.

Customize Spot Color Mapping

Selecting this option enables the Color Mapping button which allows you to specify spot color mapping instructions for a list of colors, as well as indicate the default setting for colors not listed.

If this option is not selected, the Color Mapping button is not available and you can access color mapping from the Start Process dialog box.

If you set spot color mapping in the Start Process dialog box, the color mapping setting in the process template are ignored.

Process CEPS Data

Select this check box to specify spot color mapping and color matching of CEPS data.

For more information, see the help on the **CEPS Conversion** section and the **Normalize** section of the refine process template.

Source of Color Recipes

Extract Recipe from the File

Select this option to use the color recipes defined in the PDF file.

Lookup Recipe in Color Database

Select this option to look up the color recipes in Prinergy color libraries.

Color Libraries

Selectable

From the **Selectable** list select the color libraries that you want Prinergy to search for color recipes, and click **Add**.

Note: Ensure that you select color libraries with color spaces that are compatible with the **Final Output Process Profile**.

Selected

Using **Move Up** and **Move Down** arrange the color libraries in the **Selected** box in the order (descending) that you want them to be searched.

To remove a color library from the list select the color library and click **Delete**.

Use Recipe from File if not found in Color Database

Select this check box if you want to use the color recipe defined in the PDF file if the color is not found in any of the selected color libraries within Prinergy.

Note: Currently, this check box cannot be cleared.

Auto-Resolve Spot Color Naming Conflicts

If the **Auto-Resolve Spot Color Naming Conflicts** option is enabled, Prinergy automatically changes some PANTONE spot color name endings.

For example, spot colors ending in CV or CVC are always renamed with a C name ending.

The following table indicates how Prinergy will change spot color name endings.

| Original Spot Color Name Ending | Spot Color Name Ending After Auto-Resolve |
|---------------------------------|---|
| CV, CVC, PC, EC, no suffix | C |
| CVU | U |

The following spot color name endings are not changed: C, U, CVS.

Where spot colors are renamed, they are renamed on all pages of a refined document, not just on pages that have identical colors with different name endings.

The purpose of the renaming is to have identical PANTONE spot colors end up on the same separation, even if they have different name endings. A single plate can then be made for that PANTONE color for the sheet.

Note: PANTONE 028 C (coated) and PANTONE 028 U (uncoated) both print using the same ink (a mixture of pigments specified by the PANTONE corporation), but they are different colors because they are print on different paper stocks (coated vs. uncoated). Prinergy doesn't automatically rename these colors because it assumes they are different colors. However, you may use the color mapping feature to force the colors to show up on the same separation.

Resolve Ambiguous Spot Color Definitions

Causes the system to choose a single spot color definition if a file contains multiple definitions for a spot color.

The system chooses the best definition based on the color space and alternate color definition (ACD).

- A definition with Separation color space that defines the colorant is preferred over a DeviceN color space where the colorant is only one of many colorants.
- The ACD is chosen in the following order of priority:
 1. L*a*b*
 2. CMYK
 3. Gray
 4. RGB

If this check box is cleared, any file with multiple definitions for a spot color may:

- Not display the spot color consistently in the layout application (such as QuarkXPress and InDesign)
- Incorrectly map the spot colors to process if **Map All Spot Colors to Process** is also selected

Convert to Destination

Primary Color Output

Specify the ICC profile that objects to be color-matched will use for final output.

You must specify an ICC profile in this box, regardless of whether your final output process is for a proofer or printer.

Note: This box is located in the **ColorConvert** section and the **Spot Color Handling** section of the refine process template. Changing the entry in one section changes the entry in the other section.

Note: In the **ColorConvert** section, the **Primary Color Output** box is unavailable when the **Enable ColorFlow** check box is selected. The ICC profile is automatically delivered by ColorFlow in this case.

See also:

[Color Mappings dialog box](#) on page [826](#)

ColorConvert section of the refine process template

The **ColorConvert** section of the refine process template defines how Prinergy handles overprints and uses ICC profiles and ColorFlow device conditions to transform color data from the input color space to the output color space.

JTP

Select the JTP (job ticket processor) to use for color conversion. For converting colors, use the Color Matcher JTP.

Note: You set up JTPs in Prinergy Administrator.

Overprint Conversion

Select to perform automatic conversion of overprints.

Set Colors to Knock Out

Select this check box to override the overprint setting in the input file and knock out the colors. As a result, color printing order affects which separation is knocked out.

This feature makes content color matching available for all objects on a PDF page.

Set Black to Overprint when Black is ___ % or higher

Select this check box to overprint pure black objects (that is, K=1-100% and CMY=0%) when the black tint equals or is greater than the value that you specify in the adjacent box. For example, if an input file contains a black object with 75% black

and you type 70% in the adjacent box, Prinergy overprints the object.

Set Rich Black to Overprint

Note: The **Set Rich Black to Overprint** check box is available only when the Color Matcher JTP is used.

Select this check box to overprint all rich black objects (that is, K=100%, and at least one of C, M, and Y has more than 0% tint). When the **Set Rich Black to Overprint** check box is selected, the **Set Black to Overprint** check box is automatically selected.

Note: Overprinting rich black may result in high ink coverage in some areas, depending on the percentage of tint in the C, M, and Y channels.

Set Overprint CMYK White to Knock Out

Select this check box to knock out all white objects.

White is considered white when black (K) is less than 0.9%—that is, C=0%, M=0%, Y=0%, and K<0.9%.

Sometimes a graphic designer inadvertently defines white (which is really the absence of ink) to be overprinted, which makes white objects invisible when the file is RIPed. For white to be visible, it must be knocked out.

If you want all white objects to be overprinted, clear the **Set Overprint CMYK White to Knock Out** check box.

Enable Gray Overprint

Note: The **Enable Gray Overprint** check box is available only when the Color Matcher JTP is used.

The **Enable Gray Overprint** check box affects grayscale objects that are set to be overprinted. The Color Matcher JTP represents the overprint mode of grayscale objects in a way that the RIP can process. By default, this check box is selected.

When the **Enable Gray Overprint** check box is cleared, the Color Matcher JTP doesn't affect the overprinting of grayscale objects. This results in knockout behavior for CMYK objects below the grayscale object and may be the preferred behavior in some situations.

Note: You can view the overprint mode in the Enfocus PitStop software and view the results in the Virtual Proofing System software or in the Acrobat software.

Enable CMYK Overprint

Select this check box to convert the overprint mode from OPM 0 to OPM 1.

When an object is overprinted with OPM 0, channels with no data are painted with a tint of zero. For example, the zero channels in a 100,0,0,0 CMYK object knock out the channels of a 0,100,100,100 CMYK object. The channels of the 0,100,100,100 CMYK object overprint only a spot object.

When an object is overprinted with OPM 1, channels with no data are not painted at all, causing background objects that are painted in that channel to show through the channel. For example, the zero channels in a 100,0,0,0 CMYK object overprint the channels of a 0,100,100,100 CMYK object.

For more information on OPM, see a PostScript or PDF reference guide.

Overprint Handling (CPU Intensive)

Select this check box to use vector overprint handling, which prevents overprinted objects from generating unintended knockouts, including on objects printed on a transparency stock.

Apply vector overprint handling if you are converting spot colors to process colors or if you are color matching from one CMYK color space to another CMYK color space. Kodak Spotless color management involves the conversion of most spot colors to process colors.

Note: Applying vector overprint handling is very CPU intensive. Your computer may slow down considerably.

Note: This feature does not eliminate all overprints. For example, in objects where overprinting does not have an effect on output, these objects are still considered overprints. For example, if you set black to overprint other objects, but one black object is not placed on top of another object, the black object is still considered an overprinted object after overprint handling.

Final Output Resolution

Type the resolution that is suitable for the intended output device.

The default setting is **2400 dpi**.

Preserve Traps

Select this check box to preserve existing Kodak traps when vector overprint handling is used.

Note: When existing traps are preserved, you cannot remove them in later processing. You must remove the traps in the original file. Traps are color-managed as regular objects.

Match Colors

The Color Matcher JTP handles color management in Prinergy. It performs the following functions:

- RGB image conversion
- CMYK-to-CMYK color matching

Prinergy is shipped with a standard ICC profile that automatically converts RGB images and graphics to CMYK.

For CMYK-to-CMYK color matching, the Color Matcher JTP uses ICC profiles to transform the color space of a PDF file to a color space that is appropriate for a particular output device. The Color Matcher JTP is a purchased option for Prinergy.

When color matching is selected during the refine process, color data is matched to an output device.

Preserve White and Black Colors for Graphics

When this option is selected, the Color Matcher JTP bypasses pure white and pure black. For example, if an input file has a build of 0,0,0,100, Color Matcher does not touch the input build of pure black, for graphics only. Similarly, for pure white, if an input file has a CMYK build of 0,0,0,0, Color Matcher does not touch the input build of pure white. The following builds are also preserved:

- 255,255,255 RGB
- 0,0,0 RGB
- 255 Gray
- 0 Gray

Preserve Any CMYK Pure Black for Graphics

When this option is selected, Color Matcher bypasses all CMYK (0, 0, 0, 0...100) colors. The options are available regardless of whether ColorFlow is used. The options are also unrelated to the use of a DeviceLink profile.

Override Embedded Profiles

Select the desired **CYMK Graphics**, **CMYK Images**, **RGB Graphics**, and **RGB Images** check boxes to ignore the color profiles that are embedded in input files. These selections

enable you to assign different profiles to images and graphics, as specified in the **Assign Input Device Conditions** area.

Note: If no profiles are specified in the **Assign Input Device Conditions** area, the embedded profiles are removed and are not replaced.

If you do not select a check box, the Color Matcher JTP processes a color space for images and graphics that have an embedded profile, working in conjunction with the **Primary Color Output** profile. Images and graphics are converted to the CIE L*a*b* space before being converted to the final output space. If there is no embedded profile, the Color Matcher JTP processes a color space for a profile assigned in the **Assign Input Device Conditions** area.

Enable ColorFlow

Select this check box to use the ColorFlow software, which provides color relationship management that unifies all color elements (such as ICC profiles and curves) and manages the relationship between them and the device print conditions. When you select **Enable ColorFlow**, the adjacent **Snapshot** and **Color Setup** lists become available.

Snapshot

A ColorFlow snapshot captures the state of the entire color database, making its elements available to the workflow and providing a convenient backup. The snapshot feature makes it unnecessary for you to manually save and name multiple versions of your color control elements after adjusting them. At any time, you can easily roll back (revert) to the state of a previous snapshot in the ColorFlow software. If you roll back to a previous snapshot, ColorFlow behaves as if changes after that snapshot never happened.

When you have completed your work in ColorFlow to a certain level and you are satisfied with the elements in color setups, you will mark a snapshot as *approved*. By default in Prinergy Connect, the currently approved snapshot is used. Only one snapshot can be in the approved state at any time.

Color Setup

From this list of color setups that have been created in the ColorFlow software, select either a specific color setup or **<Job_ColorSetup>**.

Note: This list includes all color setups that have been created in the ColorFlow software. A color setup is a collection of device conditions and the color control elements (curves, device profiles, and DeviceLink profiles) that are required to match a common target on all the reproduction devices.

All color setups associated with the selected color database snapshot are listed.

If you select a specific color setup, that color setup is applied to a job's files when the files are refined using this process template. If you select **<Job_ColorSetup>**, the default color setup specified for the job is used instead.

Assign Input Device Conditions

In this section, you can assign source profiles (device profiles) to images and graphics to define the input color space for those objects. Source profiles use an RGB color space, similar to a scanner, digital camera, or monitor. **Images** refers to raster image data, and **Graphics** refers to vector data.

You can also use a DeviceLink profile that includes both the source and the destination ICC profiles. A DeviceLink profile can be used to replace a source file in Prinergy. DeviceLink profiles enable you to go from one color space to another without converting to CIE L*a*b* and produce very good results with more shadow detail. The most common types of DeviceLink profiles are RGB to CMYK and CMYK to CMYK.

Both CMYK-to-CMYK and RGB-to-CMYK profiles convert from one color space to another—for example, from a source color space to a destination color space. The CMYK-to-CMYK profile also converts from one color model to another.

The source profile is applied if the **CMYK Images**, **CMYK Graphics**, **RGB Images**, or **RGB Graphics** check box is selected and a selected object in the input file does not have an embedded profile. Each type of object has a check box for selecting color matching and a box where you can enter the input ICC profile file information.

Note: An ICC profile is a color space description that acts as a standard for accurate reproduction of colors across different platforms, devices, and applications, according to the standards of the International Color Consortium (ICC). For example, an ICC profile that describes a specific RGB device, such as a Kodak EasyShare camera, provides a mapping of the camera's red, green, and blue color space to device-independent L*a*b* coordinates (or CIELAB color space). ICC profiles are stored on your home server at `CreoAraxi\data\ICC-Profiles`.

To disable color matching for an object type with no embedded profile, clear the check box beside that object type.

Note: The default action for RGB images and graphics is to convert them to CMYK using a standard ICC profile that is shipped with Prinergy. The default source profile is `Monitor\Adobe RGB 1998.icm`, and the default destination profile is `US WebCoated SWOP.icm`.

Note: When the **Enable ColorFlow** check box has been selected, you select input device conditions, not ICC profiles or DeviceLink profiles. The input device conditions that are available in this case are the conditions that have been configured in ColorFlow (which then supplies the DeviceLink profiles for the CMYK-to-CMYK or RGB-to-CMYK conversion). For more information, see [Tell me more about the ColorFlow and Prinergy integration](#) on page 837.

Primary Color Output

Specify the ICC profile that objects to be color-matched will use for final output.

You must specify an ICC profile in this box, regardless of whether your final output process is for a proofer or printer.

Note: This box is located in the **ColorConvert** section and the **Spot Color Handling** section of the refine process template. Changing the entry in one section changes the entry in the other section.

Note: In the **ColorConvert** section, the **Primary Color Output** box is unavailable when the **Enable ColorFlow** check box is selected. The ICC profile is automatically delivered by ColorFlow in this case.

Prefer embedded Output Intents for Final Output Profile

If your input file is PDF/X-3 and you want to use the color profile specified in the PDF/X-3 output intents, select the **Prefer embedded Output Intents for Final Output Profile** check box.

Note: This check box may also support PDF/X-1a input files with an output intent tag.

Retain CMYK Black In

Select this check box to preserve black in images and graphics that are defined in the CMYK color space.

For ICC-based color-matching engines, CMYK images and graphics are transformed from CMYK to L*a*b* and back to CMYK, so that Prinergy can perform color matching. During the transformation from CMYK (four components) to CIE L*a*b* (three components) and back again, the black (K channel separation information—UCR/GCR) has in the past been destroyed. When selected, this check box instructs the Color Matcher JTP to preserve the black channel information as much as possible. As a result, the amount of black relative to CMY in the images and graphics remains about the same. This practice helps reduce ink consumption.

Note: When you select this check box, the Color Matcher JTP requires additional processing time because of the extra calculations involved.

Note: When ColorFlow has been specified, the **Retain CMYK Black In** options are unavailable, because all black generation parameters are specified when DeviceLink profiles are created.

CMYK Images

Select this check box to preserve the black channel information when CMYK images are transformed from CMYK to L*a*b* and back to CMYK.

CMYK Graphics

Select this check box to preserve the black channel information when CMYK graphics are transformed from CMYK to L*a*b* and back to CMYK.

Rendering Intent

Select a colorimetric rendering intent for the selected object types:

- In the **Images in:** section, select **CMYK**, **RGB**, or **Calibrated Colors**
- In the **Graphics in:** section, select **CMYK**, **RGB**, or **Calibrated Colors**

Select **Relative** to turn off gamut compression and retain color saturation for the selected object types.

Select **Perceptual** to use gamut compression and produce fewer saturated colors for the selected object types.

Select **From PDF** to use the rendering intent that is specified in the file when output by the creative software for the selected object types.

Select **Absolute** to represent the colors solely with the light source for the selected object types. No correction is made for the output media's white point. For example, an output media's white point might be the color of paper with no print marks on it.

Select **Saturation** to represent the colors in a way that preserves or emphasizes saturation for the selected object types.

Note: Calibrated colors are described in a device-independent color space, such as an ICC-based color space, CalGray, or CalRGB. For colorimetric rendering of calibrated colors, do not select the **Override Embedded Profiles** check box.

Treat pure gray RGB as gray

Select this check box to convert pure gray RGB to a black-only process color.

Pure gray RGB is defined as any gray that is created by equal values of red, green, and blue—for example, R=23, G=23, B=23.

Treat shading as

Use this option for color-matching shadings.

By default, this option is set to **Image**, because Prinergy typically treats shading objects as images. When an input file doesn't define a source profile for shading, Prinergy uses the source profile from the image.

Select **Graphic** for PDF pages with shading and gradients that look similar, when you want shading and gradients to appear the same after color matching.

Process CEPS Data

Select this check box to specify spot color mapping and color matching of CEPS data.

For more information, see the help on the **CEPS Conversion** section and the **Normalize** section of the refine process template.

Color match 1-bit images

Select this check box to color match 1-bit images. One-bit images are images that represent two tones, typically black and white. The pixel is either a 0 or 1 value. Examples are copydot images.

Note: When selected, this check box converts 1-bit images to 8-bit images. The conversion causes pages to become larger and to render more slowly. Clear this check box if you do not require color matching of 1-bit images or if the feature causes unacceptable performance degradation. (For example, copydot files take a very long time to refine and render.)

This check box is available when **Match Colors in Page Content** is selected.

Reset to Defaults

Select to return all options to the default (factory-set) values.

Trap section of the refine process template

The **Trap** section of the refine process template determines how Prinergy handles trapping in input files.

JTP

Specifies the JTP (job ticket processor) that Prinergy will use for trapping.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Trap Settings

Retrap Trapped Pages

Instructs the system to retrap pages that have already been trapped in Prinergy. This does not delete traps created in upstream software.

Trap Time-out

Manages job throughput by setting a time limit on the trapping step of the refine process. If the site production schedule requires that there be a maximum time limit on trapping files, any files that exceed the time limit can either be reviewed in the Prinergy PDF Trap Editor plug-in in Acrobat or trapped at a time when no other jobs are in the queue.

The default setting for **Trap Time-out** is 0 seconds—that is, no expiration time for the trap step. Any other setting for **Trap Time-out** would typically factor in the demands of the shop schedule and the complexity of the file being trapped.

Note: This option is available only if the Trapper JTP is selected in the **JTP** box.

Trap Tiling Pattern

Traps all of the internal objects in a tiling pattern. Trapping a tiling pattern can result in too much complexity and can slow down trapping, so this option can be turned off. The **Trap Tiling Pattern** check box is selected by default. The rest of the file is also trapped.

Note: This option is available only if the Trapper JTP is selected in the **JTP** box.

Size

Width/Height

Specifies the width and height of a trap.

Type in the values for width and height, and then choose a unit of measure.

Line Splits

Controls the size of traps that extend into stroked objects.

Strokes with a width of up to <x>% of the trap width specified will get an inside trap with half the stroke width.

As a result, the system avoids a third color in the stroke center that is a different color than the trap colors.

Range: 0% to 10,000.0%

For example:

| | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| Default line split | = 200.0% |
| Stroke width | = 0.4 pt |
| Trap width | = 0.25 pt |
| Result | = Inside trap width of 0.2 pt |

Here, the trap width multiplied by the line split value is greater than the stroke width divided by the two inside traps, $(0.25 \times 2) > (0.4/2)$, so the inside traps are forced to shrink to half the stroke width, or 0.2 pt.

If the line split is more than 200.0%, and the trap width is greater than the stroke width divided by two, then the trap width is forced to be half of the stroke width.

If the line split is 0.0%, the feature is disabled and there is no change to the trap width; trapping into the stroke is like trapping into any other object.

Geometry

Line Joins

Determines the shape of the corner between two trap segments—that is, where the lines join. You can select one of the following styles:

- **Bevel**
- **Round**
- **Miter**

Miter Limit

Determines whether a mitered trap will shorten to a bevel shape. Available when you select **Miter** for the **Line Joins** option.

Range: 100% to 10,000%

Default: 500.0%

3 Color Joins

Determines the shape of a trap where three or more objects meet. You can select one of the following shapes:

- **Mitered Corners**
- **Clipped Chokes**

Trap Trimming

Reduces the size and shape of traps that extend into small objects.

Where a regular trap can get too close to another object such as white knockout text, the trap is trimmed back to the center point of the object that is accepting the trap. This can result in a trap with a variable width along its length.

In the **Trap Trimming** box, select **Automatic** to have the trap trimming feature re-examine any traps created in this job and reduce them as needed.

Note: This option is available only with the **Advanced Trapping** option.

Cutbacks

Create Cutbacks

Select to create a trap where multi-colored objects border with white areas of the page. This prevents mis-registration artifacts from being visible along white edges and helps keep knockout (reversed) text from filling in.

Create Cutbacks when Primary tint value is above

Determines the minimum primary tint value at which cutbacks should be created.

Create Cutbacks when Primary ink Neutral Density is above

Determines the minimum primary ink neutral density value at which cutbacks should be created.

Cutbacks width percentage of global traps

Determines relative width of global traps that should be taken up by the cutbacks.

Images

Trap to

Controls whether or not images trap to objects and/or images trap to images.

Select the **Objects** check box to trap images to objects; clear this check box to disable this feature. This feature lets images trap to other objects such as trapping vector images to raster data. A small image area around a vector object is sampled to determine the average color value of the trap object.

And/or:

Select the **Images** check box to trap images to images; clear this check box to disable this feature.

Direction

Controls the placement of traps between an image and an object and/or an image and another image. These are the options:

Automatic

Determines the best direction based on the general rule of trapping light colors into dark colors.

Center

Causes the trap to span the border between the two items that require a trap, regardless of the light to dark relationship.

Into Image

Creates a trap between an image and an object by spreading the object into the image.

Into Object

Creates a trap between an image and an object by spreading the image into the object.

Bitmaps

Controls how a complex bitmap or masked image is to be trapped. These are the options:

Trap All Bitmaps

Traps all colorized bitmaps and masked images with vector traps, no matter how complex the bitmaps are. This can take some time (even hours) to complete, because to trap a page containing colorized bitmap

images, the trapper must trace the outline of all of the nonwhite pixels to create vectors to use as traps.

Ignore Complex Bitmaps

Converts and traps colorized bitmap images except for too-complex bitmaps. Complexity is determined by an estimate of how long it would take to create vector outlines for a given bitmap.

Ignore All Bitmaps

Does not trap any bitmap images. Tags all bitmaps and masked images as complex bitmaps.

Any bitmaps tagged as complex bitmaps can be trapped manually using the Prinergy PDF Trap Editor software.

Copydot images are ignored for trapping.

Trap Resolution

Reduces file size by resampling any image data in the trap area to a lower resolution.

Range: 10 to 10,000 dpi

Recommended setting: **100 dpi**

Trap

Prinergy can create a trap when the file meets all of the following conditions:

- The difference between two separations, relative to the lower of the two, exceeds the value in the **Relative Step Limit** box in opposite directions.
- The sum of common neutral densities for all separations is less than the value in the **Common Density Limit** box.
- The absolute difference in the amount of colorants between two objects is greater than the **Minimum Absolute Step Limit**.

Step Limit

Determines whether a trap will be generated between adjacent colors (objects) depending on the relative difference (in %) in their amounts of colorants (inks). If the relative difference in amounts of colorants between two objects is less than the relative step limit specified, then no traps are generated.

The **Color Settings** section lets you override this setting for specific colors.

A setting of 100 disables trapping.

Range: 1% to 100%

Default: 25.0%

Minimum Absolute Step Limit

Determines that no traps will be generated between adjacent colors (objects) if the absolute difference in the amount of colorants between two objects is less than the absolute step limit.

This limit is intended to prevent traps between very light colors or colors with very small color steps as found in blends. For a trap to occur, the difference between amounts of colorants (separations) must be greater than this **Minimum Absolute Step Limit** and the value set for the relative step limit.

Range: 1% to 100%

Default: 5.0%

Common Density Limit

Determines whether a trap will be generated between adjacent objects that have common colors. If the two objects have enough common color, a trap is not required.

If a color is to be trapped based on the **Step Limit** value, the neutral density of the shared color is calculated and compared to the **Common Density Limit** value. If the shared neutral density is greater than the limit, no trapping occurs.

A setting of 3.294 is approximately equivalent to the sum of 100% of each of the CMYK inks. A trap is always created if you type a value greater than or equal to 3.294.

Range: 0.001 to 10.0

Default: 0.5

Centerline Trap Limit

Determines whether centerline traps are created between objects with similar values for neutral density. The system compares the neutral densities of two adjacent colors and creates a centerline trap when the neutral density of the lighter area is greater than the neutral density of the darker area multiplied by the **Centerline Trap Limit** value.

Note: You cannot add a centerline trap between black or opaque inks.

A setting of 0 results in almost all centerline traps. A setting of 100 results in no centerline traps unless adjacent objects have exactly the same value for neutral density.

Range: 1% to 100%

Default: 100%

Trap Color Scaling

Lightens the intensity of the trap color.

Trap color scaling helps to make traps in sensitive trapping situations less noticeable, for example, when trapping pastels. Scaling reduces the visibility of traps by reducing the amount of each component ink relative to its contribution to the trap color.

The system applies the **Trap Color Scaling** value to the separation values of the trap that originates from the lighter color (when neutral densities are compared).

A setting of 0 makes the traps invisible because all separations of the trap color become equal to the darker color. A setting of 100 turns **Trap Color Scaling** off.

Range: 0 to 100%

Default: 100%

The **Trap Color Scaling** option in the **Color Settings** section lets you override this setting for specific colors.

Keepaway Mode

Applies an opaque white trap to eligible color intersections. An eligible color intersection is one that is between adjacent objects painted by different inks. That is, each object is painted by at least one ink that does not paint the other.

A keepaway trap is also called a *knockout* trap or a *reverse* trap.

Keepaway mode is used in packaging trapping.

Black

These options determine how Prinergy handles black and rich black. You can set a particular separation to **Treat Color as Black** in the Prinergy Color Editor. This option is available with the PDF Trapper JTP.

Black Width Scaling

Calculates the black trap width as a percentage of the **Trap Width** value. The additional margin ensures that any support screens for a rich black don't peek out from under the black.

A 100% setting pulls back an object's color separations, except for the black, the same distance as the trap width used on the

rest of the page. Traps to black objects are the same size as other traps.

A less than 100% setting produces narrower traps. For example, a 50% scale means that traps to black objects will be 50% smaller than the usual trap width.

A greater than 100% setting produces wider traps. For example, a 200% scale means that traps to black objects will be twice the size of the usual trap width.

Range: 1% to 1000%

Default: 100%

Black Color Limit

Determines the minimum screen percentage at which the trapping engine considers black to be 100%, and therefore applies black trapping rules.

Black trapping rules include:

- Traps to objects defined as black are affected by **Black Width Scaling**.
- Colors placed underneath overprinting black solid objects form rich blacks. In areas where a rich black borders an unpainted object such as the substrate, the color under the black will be kept back from the border.
- The rules above do not apply unless the tint of the black objects is greater than or equal to the **Black Color Limit**.

A setting of 0 means that all screen percentages of the color black are considered black. A setting of 100 means that only solid black is considered black.

Range: 1% to 100%

Default: 95%

Black Density Limit

Determines the neutral density value at which the trap engine considers an ink to be black, and therefore applies black trapping rules.

Any ink set to a density higher than black causes the black to be treated as the lighter color. The black spreads into the higher density color. You may want to set a metallic ink density higher than black so that it traps correctly.

A setting of 10.0 means that no ink is considered black.

Range: 0.00 to 10.00

Default: 1.6

Overprint Black Strokes...Up To

Sets all black strokes with a width of up to $\langle n.n \rangle$ pt to overprint instead of trapping them. This overprint also applies to all strokes colored with spot colors whose neutral density is higher than the **Black Density Limit**.

Select this check box to enable this feature, and then specify a stroke width or accept the default. Clear the check box to disable this feature.

Range: 1 to 100 points

Note: This option is available only if the Trapper JTP is selected in the **JTP** box.

Overprint Black Graphics

Sets all black vector graphics to overprint instead of trapping them. This overprint also applies to vector graphics colored with spot colors whose neutral density is higher than the **Black Density Limit**.

Select the **Overprint Black Graphic** check box to enable this feature; clear the check box to disable this feature.

Overprint Black Bitmaps

Sets all black bitmap graphics to overprint instead of trapping them. This overprint also applies to bitmap graphics colored with spot colors whose neutral density is higher than the **Black Density Limit**.

Select the **Overprint Black Bitmaps** check box to enable this feature; clear the check box to disable this feature.

Note: This option is available only if the Trapper JTP is selected in the **JTP** box.

Text

You may want to handle text created with small font sizes differently where readability might be affected by applying standard trapping rules. In some cases, overprinting or smaller trap sizes provide better results.

Overprint Black Text Limit

Overprints black text with a point size less than or equal to this value.

A setting of 0 points causes all text to be treated the same as other objects. A setting of 100 causes all text sized less than or equal to 100 points to be overprinted rather than trapped.

You may want to choose a point size equal to your body text to make headlines trap normally and body text overprint.

Range: 0 to 1000 pt

Default: 12 pt

Small Text Size Limit

Determines at what point size text traps should be scaled. The scale percentage is set in the **Small Text Width Scaling (%)** box.

Note: Overprint cannot be used with colored text because overprinting changes the color of the text. For small colored text, you may want to set a smaller trap size. A setting of 0 means that no text traps are scaled. A setting of 100 means that traps are scaled for all text sized less than or equal to 100 points. Scaling traps for text that is 6 points or smaller (the default value) can significantly improve readability.

Range: 0 to 100 pt

Default: 6 pt

Small Text Width Scaling

Calculates the width of a small text trap as a percentage of the **Trap Width** value. Scaled traps are applied to text objects based on the value of **Small Text Size Limit**.

Range: 0 to 1000%

Default: 75%

Text Grouping

Groups text objects when trapping. All of the characters in a group will have the same trap direction and color.

Choose from the following grouping options—none, characters, words (default), lines.

Grouping by units larger than characters—such as words and lines—speeds up trapping and can sometimes give better visual results. Grouping by characters gives the most flexibility since each character can then have a different trap direction and color, depending on its background. A setting of none will keep the text groupings that are set up when the file is converted to PDF.

Note: This option is available only if the Trapper JTP is selected in the **JTP** box.

Color Settings

The **Color Settings** area lets you override some of the global settings by entering values for individual colors.

Ink Set

Specifies color settings for ink sets.

Select an ink set in the list. The neutral densities for the process colors change to those specified by the ink set.

Neutral Density

Specifies the neutral density value for each process color.

Step Limit

Determines whether a trap will be generated between adjacent colors (objects) depending on the relative difference (in %) in their amounts of colorants (inks). If the relative difference in amounts of colorants between two objects is less than the relative step limit specified, then no traps are generated.

A setting of 0 removes **Step Limit** as a criteria for trapping. A setting of 100 disables trapping.

Range: 0 to 100%

There is also an absolute threshold of 5% to prevent traps between very light colors. See **Minimum Absolute Step Limit**.

Trap Color Scaling

Lightens the intensity of the trap color for a particular separation.

Trap color scaling helps to make traps in sensitive trapping situations less noticeable, for example, when trapping pastels. Scaling reduces the visibility of traps by reducing the amount of each component ink relative to its contribution to the trap color.

The system applies the **Trap Color Scaling** value to the separation values of the trap that originates from the lighter color (when neutral densities are compared).

A setting of 0 makes the traps invisible because all separations of the trap color become equal to the darker color. A setting of 100 switches off **Trap Color Scaling**.

Range: 0 to 100%

See also:

[About common density limit](#) on page 256

[About neutral density](#) on page 256

[About step limit](#) on page 262

[Trapping examples](#) on page 265

[About trapping tools](#) on page 323

Optimize section of the Refine process template

The **Optimize** section of a refine process template defines how Prinergy optimizes high-resolution images in input files.

This section is required and cannot be disabled.

Note: If using PDF Preflight, the Optimize pane is unavailable because the preflight profile is controlling these options.

JTP

Select a job ticket processor (JTP) to use for optimizing.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Prepare PDF for Edit

You can prepare a PDF file for edit as part of the refining process. Select this check box to only prepare the PDF file for edit but not open it in Illustrator. If you do not select this check box, then when you select **PDF Editing > Open PDF for Editing** in Job Manager, Prinergy has to prepare the PDF file first before opening it for editing.

Color Images

Resample

Enables downsampling of color images. When enabled the system downsamples color images to the value set in the **Down to** box, using the method selected in the list.

Select the **Resample** check box to enable downsampling of color images, and then select a type of downsampling:

- Select **Average** for faster, less accurate downsampling.
- Select **Bicubic** for slower but more accurate downsampling.

Clear the **Resample** check box to disable downsampling of color images.

Down to

Specifies the resolution to which the system downsamples images.

The **Down to** box in the **Color Images** area applies to color images.

The **Down to** box in the **Grayscale Images** area applies to grayscale images.

In the **Down to** box, type the resolution to which you want the system to downsample images.

Recommended setting: double the lpi value. For example, 400 ppi for 200 lpi, 300 ppi for 150 lpi, 170 ppi for 85 lpi.

Note: The **Down to** and the **if Above** options are linked by ratio. When you change the **Down to** value, the **if Above** value changes according to the existing ratio between the two options.

if Above

Specifies the minimum resolution an image must be for the system to downsample it. The system does not downsample images with a resolution below the number specified in this option.

The **if Above** box in the **Color Images** area applies to color images.

The **if Above** box in the **Grayscale Images** area applies to grayscale images.

In the **if Above** box, type the minimum resolution an image must be for the system to downsample it.

Note: The **Down to** and the **if Above** options are linked by ratio. This ratio is the actual value stored in each process template, and it is stored as an integer. When you open a process template, the system calculates the **if Above** value from the **Down to** value and the ratio between the two options. When you change the **if Above** value, the **Down to** value stays the same, but the system rounds the **if Above** value to the nearest integer, according to the ratio between the two options.

Compression

Compresses color images using the selected compression format.

Select **None** to disable image compression.

Select **JPEG (Lossy)** to compress images using a JPEG format.

Select **ZIP (Lossless)** to compress images using the ZIP format.

Quality

Applies to JPEG compression options only.

Select a level of compression from the list. The compression level decreases as the quality level increases.

Grayscale Images

Resample

Enables downsampling of grayscale images. When enabled the system downsamples grayscale images to the value set in the **Down to** box, using the method selected in the list.

Select the **Resample** check box to enable downsampling of grayscale images, and then select a type of downsampling:

- Select **Average** for faster, less accurate downsampling.
- Select **Bicubic** for slower but more accurate downsampling.

Clear the **Resample** check box to disable downsampling of grayscale images.

Down to

Specifies the resolution to which the system downsamples images.

The **Down to** box in the **Color Images** area applies to color images

The **Down to** box in the **Grayscale Images** area applies to grayscale images.

In the **Down to** box, type the resolution to which you want the system to downsample images.

Recommended setting: double the lpi value. For example, 400 ppi for 200 lpi, 300 ppi for 150 lpi, 170 ppi for 85 lpi.

Note: The **Down to** and the **if Above** options are linked by ratio. When you change the **Down to** value, the **if Above** value changes according to the existing ratio between the two options.

if Above

Specifies the minimum resolution an image must be for the system to downsample it. The system does not downsample images with a resolution below the number specified in this option.

The **if Above** box in the **Color Images** area applies to color images.

The **if Above** box in the **Grayscale Images** area applies to grayscale images.

In the **if Above** box, type the minimum resolution an image must be for the system to downsample it.

Note: The **Down to** and the **if Above** options are linked by ratio. This ratio is the actual value stored in each process template, and it is stored as an integer. When you open a process template, the system calculates the **if Above** value from the **Down to** value and the ratio between the two options. When you change the **if Above** value, the **Down to** value stays the same, but the system rounds the **if Above** value to the nearest integer, according to the ratio between the two options.

Compression

Compresses grayscale images using the selected compression format.

Select **None** to disable image compression.

Select **JPEG (Lossy)** to compress images using a JPEG format.

Select **ZIP (Lossless)** to compress images using the ZIP format.

Quality

Applies to JPEG compression options only.

Select a level of compression from the list. The compression level decreases as the quality level increases.

Color & Grayscale Alternate Images

Generate

Generates alternate low-resolution images of the images in the input file. An alternate image is used when creating low resolution PDFs from Publish PDF, or Vector output from Prinergy, or Insite Prepress Portal.

Select the **Generate** check box to enable alternate images; clear the **Generate** check box to disable alternate images.

at

Determines the resolution of alternate images.

Type the resolution at which you want Prinergy to generate alternate images.

if Above

When you select the **Generate** check box images with a ppi above this value are downsampled to the value set in the **at ppi** box. Images below this value are not downsampled.

Compression

Compresses color and grayscale images using the selected compression format.

Select **JPEG (Lossy)** to compress images using a JPEG format.

Select **ZIP (Lossless)** to compress images using the ZIP format.

Color Space Control

Digital Master Control

The color space control settings let you screen for input file data that is in nonpress (nonCMYK or nongrayscale) color spaces.

The **Digital Master Control** option works in conjunction with the **Detect RGB** and **Detect DeviceIndependent** check boxes.

You select a **Digital Master Control** option to indicate how you want Prinergy to respond when it locates data in a nonpress color space. You select the **Detect RGB** and/or **Detect Device Independent** check boxes to indicate what type of data you want Prinergy to detect.

Note: Settings in the **ColorConvert** section of the refine process template determine if and how the undesired color spaces are converted.

Select **Ignore** if you want Prinergy to ignore RGB or device-independent data in input files. If you select **Ignore** the **Detect RGB** and **Detect Device Independent** check boxes are unavailable and cannot be selected. If Prinergy encounters RGB or device-independent data, it gives no message and doesn't fail the job.

Select **Warn** if you want Prinergy to issue a warning if the selected data type is found in the input file. A warning message and yellow triangle appear in the Process Info dialog box and job history for each check box that is selected. A PDF page is created. A large X does not cover the content.

Select **Fail** to have Prinergy fail the job when the selected data type is found in the input file. An error message and red X appear in the Process Info dialog box and job history for each check box that is selected. A PDF page is created but is covered by a large black X.

You can set these same options in the **Normalize** section of the refine process template. You can enable the color space control settings in either the **Normalize** section or the **Optimize** section, or both. Turning the settings on in the **Optimize** section allows you to check that color conversion was performed in the refine stage as you expected.

You might want to warn only about RGB and CIE-based color spaces in the **Normalize** section, because you are converting them in the Color Matcher, but warn during optimizing about CIE-based color spaces that the Color Matcher wasn't set up to convert.

Detect RGB

Select to have Prinergy detect RGB data in the input file.

The **Digital Master Control** selection determines what Prinergy will do if it finds RGB data.

The **Detect RGB** check box is unavailable if the **Digital Master Control** selection is **Ignore**.

Detect Device Independent (ICC-Based, Lab, CalGray, and CalRGB)

Select this option to have Prinergy detect device-independent data in the input file, for example L*a*b* data.

The selection for **Digital Master Control** determines Prinergy's actions when it finds device-independent data.

The **Detect Device Independent** check box is unavailable if the **Digital Master Control** selection is set to **Ignore**.

Separated File Control

These control settings let you detect nongray images (raster data) and nongray vector data in separated input files.

In each of the **Detect Non Gray Images** and the **Detect Non Gray Vector Data** lists, select one of the following options:

Ignore

No warning is issued.

Warn

A warning is issued when Prinergy detects nongray data (of the type specified).

Fail

The refine process fails when Prinergy detects nongray data (of the type specified).

Detect painted colorants in

Select the area of the PDF page from which painted colorants are extracted.

Select **Entire Page** to extract painted colorants from the entire PDF page.

Select **Media Box** to extract painted colorants from the media box only.

Select **Trim Box** to extract painted colorants from the trim box only.

For example, there might be objects outside the trim box painted in, let's say, cyan. If there are no cyan objects inside the trim box and you select this option; then there will be no cyan in the list of colors for the page and you will not have cyan separation to print.

Selecting **Media Box** or **Trim Box** might decrease performance.

See also:

[Editing PDF files in Adobe Illustrator](#) on page [329](#)

Thumbnail section of the Refine process template

This section has only one setting:

JTP

Select the JTP (job ticket processor) to use for thumbnail generation.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Impose section of the Refine process template

The **Impose** section of a refine process template defines how Prinergy automatically handles the imposition after the refine process. You can enable only one of the four options in any refine process template.

Treat Input Files as Flats

Enables automatic page set and imposition plan creation.

When you enable this feature, Prinergy assumes the input file is a flat. It automatically creates a page set and an imposition plan and populates both with the contents of the PDF file.

Note: The imposition plan that Prinergy creates does not contain margins or marks.

Create Page Set and Assign Pages

Enables automatic page set creation and page assignments for input files that have the same number of pages as the page set.

When you enable this feature, Prinergy automatically creates a page set and assigns pages to the page set based on the page order in the input file.

Automated Page Assignment-Retain Assignments, Using Job Settings

Enables the Automated Page Assignment (APA) feature.

When you enable this feature, Prinergy automatically assigns PDF pages to page set positions according to the instructions in an APA file (*Job.apa*), which is stored in the `<job folder>\Control` folder. However when you resubmit a page, for example, a corrected page, the system does not automatically assign it to a page position.

Note: If there is more than one APA file in the `<job folder>\Control` folder, for example, *Job.apa* and *Job.v1.apa*, the system uses the file with the latest date and time. It doesn't automatically use the file with the latest version number.

Automated Page Assignment-Overwrite Assignments, Using Job Settings

Enables the Automated Page Assignment (APA) feature.

When you enable this feature, Prinergy automatically assigns PDF pages to page set positions according to the instructions in an APA file (*Job.apa*) which is stored in the `<job folder>\Control` folder. When you resubmit a page, for example, a corrected page, the system automatically assigns the corrected page to a page position, overwriting the existing page in the page set.

Note: If there is more than one APA file in the `<job folder>\Control` folder, for example, *Job.apa* and *Job.v1.apa*, the system uses the file with the latest date and time. It doesn't automatically use the file with the highest version number.

About bypassing refine

If you are confident that your PDF input files are press-ready, you can choose to bypass the refine process. Bypassing refine ensures that the content does not change, and saves processing time and resources.

Important: This feature should not be used for files that are of unknown quality or are prone to problems. For such files, a full refine (including the normalization,

color conversion, and optimization) is best. The general recommendation for input files is to still do a full refine.

Press-ready PDFs

A press-ready PDF file is a file for which the printer only needs to impose, perform a last Prinergy Virtual Proofing System (VPS) check, and do the final output. The printer site is not expected to perform any modifications on the input files, since the publisher has checked that color conversion has taken place, traps and overprints are present in the file, preflight problems have been corrected, fonts have been included, the file RIPs correctly, and so on. The printer assumes that all settings in the files are as the page-preparation site intends on final output.

The bypass refine process

To bypass refine, process your PDF input files using the Bypass Refine process template, which only registers your PDF input files with associated colorant and geometry attributes into the Prinergy system; it does not change the contents of the file.

Important: Because no preflighting or corrections are performed, take care to proof your output. You should proof to an appropriate separation-capable proofer, such as to the Prinergy VPS software or to a Trendsetter Spectrum platesetter, to ensure that the separations and page content RIP and output as expected.

Note: Apparent document size discrepancy between input and refined PDF as seen in Workshop is a result of information that is added to the refined page. That is, colorant information is put into the PDF to allow Workshop to display painted colorants for each file.

Bypass Refine process template

Use the bypass refine process template to register your press-ready PDF files into the Prinergy system and to avoid refining the files. Bypassing refine ensures that the content does not change, and saves processing time and resources.



CAUTION: Because no preflighting or corrections are performed, proof all output to ensure separations and content output as expected.

Thumbnail section

The **Thumbnail** section of a bypass refine process template defines whether or not Prinergy generates thumbnails during the bypass refine process.

This section has only one setting:

JTP

Select the JTP (job ticket processor) to use for thumbnail generation.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinerger Administrator.

Impose section

The **Impose** section of a bypass refine process template defines how Prinerger automatically handles the imposition after the bypass refine process. You can enable only one of the following four options in a bypass refine process template.

Treat Input Files as Flats

Enables automatic page set and imposition plan creation.

When you enable this feature, Prinerger assumes the input file is a flat. It automatically creates a page set and an imposition plan and populates both with the contents of the PDF file.

Note: The imposition plan that Prinerger creates does not contain margins or marks.

Create Page Set and Assign Pages

Enables automatic page set creation and page assignments for input files that have the same number of pages as the page set.

When you enable this feature, Prinerger automatically creates a page set and assigns pages to the page set based on the page order in the input file.

Automated Page Assignment-Retain Assignments, Using Job Settings

Enables the Automated Page Assignment (APA) feature.

When you enable this feature, Prinerger automatically assigns PDF pages to page set positions according to the instructions in an APA file (*Job.apa*), which is stored in the *<job folder>\Control* folder. However when you resubmit a page, for example, a corrected page, the system does not automatically assign it to a page position.

Note: If there is more than one APA file in the *<job folder>\Control* folder, for example, *Job.apa* and *Job.v1.apa*, the system uses the file with the latest date and time. It doesn't automatically use the file with the latest version number.

Automated Page Assignment-Overwrite Assignments, Using Job Settings

Enables the Automated Page Assignment (APA) feature.

When you enable this feature, Prinergy automatically assigns PDF pages to page set positions according to the instructions in an APA file (`Job.apa`) which is stored in the `<job folder>` \Control folder. When you resubmit a page, for example, a corrected page, the system automatically assigns the corrected page to a page position, overwriting the existing page in the page set.

Note: If there is more than one APA file in the `<job folder>` \Control folder, for example, `Job.apa` and `Job.v1.apa`, the system uses the file with the latest date and time. It doesn't automatically use the file with the highest version number.

Why PDF?

Adobe's Portable Document Format (PDF) is a reliable file format for storing line art, images, and text (including all required fonts) for pages. Once created, a PDF file can be shared and reused among many different people or processes. Since a PDF file can be viewed on-screen or over the Web, it is simple to preview the content prior to making finished output.

There are two key differences between PostScript and PDF formats:

- PostScript is, essentially, a programming language. PDF is a page description language, making interpretation much more repeatable and reliable.
- An entire PostScript file must be interpreted to obtain the content of a single page. In a multi-page PDF file, the content for each page is independent. If changes are made to a single page, only that page needs to be reinterpreted.

PDF is the internal format for all of Prinergy's digital masters. Through the refining process, PostScript files are interpreted, a display list is created, and from that display list, a digital master PDF file is constructed.



About common density limit

Common Density Limit is used to prevent traps where they are not needed. Traps are not needed if a gap will not be visible due to the darkness or density at that place. It is controlled from the **Trap** section of refine process templates.

Common density is a neutral density calculated from the common parts of each single separation. In the table below, C60 M25 Y30 K10 and C40 M31 Y40 K14 have the common parts of C40 M25 Y30 K10. Spot colors are also considered, if present. Therefore, the common density is a value for the darkness for the worst possible misregistration. If this common density is above the **Common Density Limit** setting, no traps are required.

| Separation | Color1 | Color2 | Relative Ink Dot Percentage | Step Limit (25%) Satisfied? |
|------------|--------|--------|-----------------------------|---|
| Cyan | 60% | 40% | $(60-40)/40 = 0.5$ or 50% | Yes, 50% > 25% |
| Magenta | 25% | 31% | $(31-25)/25 = 0.24$ or 24% | No, 24% < 25% |
| Yellow | 30% | 40% | $(40-30)/30 = 0.33$ or 33% | Yes, 33% > 25% |
| Key | 10% | 14% | | Ignored, doesn't meet 5% minimum difference |

For the example above (common parts of C40 M25 Y30 K10), the common density is calculated as follows (CD = common density, ND = neutral density):

| | | | | |
|------|------------|---------------|-------------|----------|
| CD | = ND[Cyan] | + ND[Magenta] | +ND[Yellow] | +ND[Key] |
| | = 0.19 | +0.13 | +0.05 | +0.07 |
| | = 0.44 | | | |
| | | | | |
| 0.44 | < 0.5 | | | |

The common density of the two example colors is lower than the default limit of 0.5, so a trap would be created.

About neutral density

You can control neutral density from the **Trap** section of refine process templates.

All inks used for printing do not have the same darkness. For example, yellow is lighter than cyan. Neutral density is used to specify the darkness of a printing ink on paper. A neutral density of 0 is white (no ink). For process colors, the neutral densities vary, depending on the ink set (for example, EuroOffset, SWOP. For spot colors, neutral density can be explicitly specified. If a spot color is normal (non-opaque), neutral density can also be estimated from a given color.

Example of neutral densities for process colors:

| | |
|---------|------|
| Cyan | 0.61 |
| Magenta | 0.76 |
| Yellow | 0.16 |
| Black | 1.70 |

The neutral density of a non-100 percent value can be calculated from the area coverage (0-100 percent) and the neutral density of the ink. The neutral density of a composite color is the sum of neutral densities for all of the separations.

About overprint conversion

The refine process handles overprints and knockouts two ways:

- Manually
- Automatically

You use the manual feature by setting options (**Set Colors to Knockout, Set Black to Overprint, Set Rich Black to Overprint, Set Overprint CMYK White to Knockout, Enable Gray Overprint**) in the **ColorConvert** section of the refine process template.

Regardless of whether or not you select the manual overprint conversion settings, the system performs some automatic overprint and knockout conversions. This section describes how the system automatically handles the following overprint and knockout conversions:

- Die line overprint: The system overprints all objects in the Prinergy color database that are designated as die lines.
- Transparent overprint: The system overprints all objects in the Prinergy color database that are designated as transparent. This feature resolves a QuarkXPress issue with varnishes.

About overprint handling

Overprint handling is a feature in the **ColorConvert** section of the process template that helps to prevent overprinting objects from generating unintended knockouts. You can apply overprint handling in the refine, loose page output, and imposition output process templates.

The following examples show the effects of using overprint handling.

Example 1: All colors are shared



Originally, file is built with spot colors.
Since no separations are in common,
overprinting gives this result.

Figure 1: The desired overprint effect

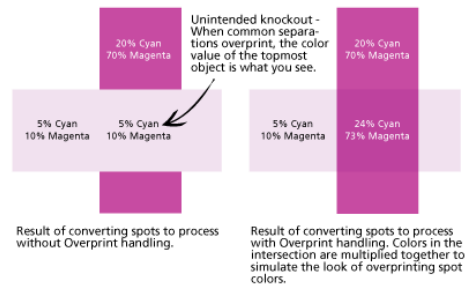


Figure 2: The outcome without and with overprint handling

Example 2: Some shared, some unshared colors



Originally, file is built with spot colors. Since no separations are in common, overprinting gives this result.

Figure 3: The desired overprint effect

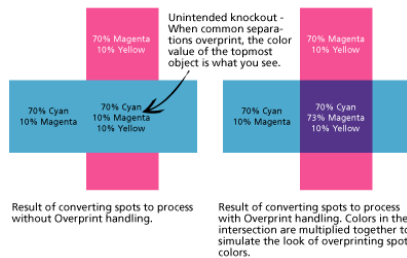


Figure 4: The outcome without and with overprint handling

Multiplicative blend formula

Prinergy uses the following formula to calculate the proper channel color amount for the intersecting area of overprinting objects:

$$1 - (1 - \text{Color1}) \times (1 - \text{Color2}) = \text{multiplicative blended amount}$$

where Color1 and Color2 are the underlying and overprinting amounts of a shared channel color. For example, if 70% magenta and 10% magenta were used, then Color1 and Color2 would be 0.7 and 0.1.

About reader spread splitting

Adobe Reader spread splitting automates the process of splitting 2-up reader spreads into discrete pages. The pages can then be assigned to page set positions and the imposition.

Prinerger can split reader spreads only during the first refine. During this process Prinerger:

- Duplicates each 2-up reader spread file
- In each 2-up reader spread file, changes the geometry to cut the trim box exactly in half
- Depending on whether it is a right or left page, adjusts the bleed box and media box to capture bleed from the adjoining page

Choosing the reader spread layout

Reader spread splitting appears in the Normalize section of the refine process template. In the process template, you select how the pages are arranged in the file so that Prinerger knows how many pages to expect, and which half of the reader spread to interpret as which page. The option you select in the process template depends on the number of pages in the file.

If you are splitting a multipage reader spread:

1. Determine if the document is right-bound or left-bound.
2. Determine whether the first and last page (“N”) are together on the same spread, or apart.
3. Select the applicable check box according to the following table.

| Binding Style | First and Last Pages | Select Check Box |
|---------------|----------------------|--|
| Left Bound | Together | <input type="checkbox"/> N <input type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 ... |
| | Apart | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 ... <input type="checkbox"/> N <input type="checkbox"/> |
| | Together | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 <input type="checkbox"/> 4 ... |
| Right Bound | Together | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> N <input type="checkbox"/> 5 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 ... |
| | Apart | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 5 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 ... <input type="checkbox"/> N <input type="checkbox"/> |
| | Together | <input type="checkbox"/> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 4 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 ... |

If you are splitting a single-page reader spread (each input file is one pair of pages, or one reader spread):

1. Determine how the first and second page (“N”) are laid out.
2. Select the applicable check box according to the following table.

Note: When splitting a single-page file use only the first two icons to determine how the two pages are arranged. Ignore the **Left Bound** and **Right Bound** labels and the additional page icons.

| | |
|--------------|---|
| Page One | Select Check Box |
| On the left | <input type="checkbox"/> L <input type="checkbox"/> R |
| On the right | <input type="checkbox"/> N <input type="checkbox"/> I |

Feature limitations

Prinerger cannot be configured to automatically compensate for inaccurate geometry in the input file (specifically the trim box setting). If the trim box geometry is incorrect in the input file, you must manually adjust for this. You can do this either before or after the reader spread splitting process.

To adjust for incorrect geometry before the pages are split, do one of the following:

- Use the Geometry Editor plug-in for Acrobat and adjust the trim settings on the input files. For more information, see the Geometry Editor guide.
- Pre-process the pages to set the geometry (using APA or the **Set Page Geometry** feature in Prinerger Workshop) and output to Vector PDF with **Apply Geometry** enabled. Bring the resulting PDF into the final job and use the reader spread splitting feature to split the pages.

To adjust for incorrect geometry after the pages are split, do one of the following:

- Use the Geometry Editor plug-in for Acrobat and adjust the trim settings on the split files. Re-refine the pages. For more information, see the Geometry Editor guide.
- Use APA to re-set the trim box (in the even and odd pages) to their appropriate values.
- Assign the pages to the page set positions in Prinerger Workshop. Select the even pages and use the **Set Page Geometry** feature to adjust the trim settings. Repeat for the odd pages.

For page splitting legacy CEPS (Brisque CT/LW or TIFF/IT) reader spreads which have no accurate TrimBox: In **Spread Splitting** area of the process template, set the **Centerfold Bleed** to 1/2" (or the distance that you measure from the intended trim to the edge of the file's MediaBox). Although the resulting pages still have inaccurate TrimBoxes, they can be centered in the imposition to give proper imposed output.

Notes:

- You cannot split a reader spread on a second refine. Although the options appear in the process template during a second refine, the split does not occur.
- Since the APA geometry settings are processed after the reader spread splitting, you currently cannot use APA to set geometry on the pre-split pages.

You can, however, use APA to set geometry on the pages after they have been split.

About step limit

You can set a relative step limit to affect whether a trap will be generated between adjacent colors (objects) depending on the relative difference in their amounts of colorants (inks). If the relative difference in amounts of colorants between two objects is less than the step limit, then no traps are generated. The step limit is controlled from the **Trap** section of refine process templates.

For each ink, the relative ink dot percentage between two adjacent colors is calculated as the difference between the two, divided by the lower one. In the first example in the table below, Color1 at 60 percent and Color2 at 40 percent lead to a relative ink dot percentage of $(60 - 40)/40 = 0.5$ or 50 percent.

A high value indicates a significant change between the two colors and thus a possible need for a trap. The trapper compares the relative ink dot percentage of the inks to the **Step Limit (%)** value, and considers creating a trap if the value for at least two separations is larger than the **Step Limit (%)** value and the step is in the opposite direction (that is, from Color1 to Color2, the dot percentage increases for one ink and decreases for another). Using the relative value here allows a higher sensitivity for traps between light colors and a lower sensitivity for traps between dark colors.

For the example in the table below, the trapper creates a trap because two separations increase in opposite directions equal to or greater than the **Step Limit** value of 25 percent.

| Separation | Color1 | Color2 | Relative Ink Dot Percentage | Step Limit (25%) Satisfied? |
|------------|--------|--------|-----------------------------|---|
| Cyan | 60% | 40% | $(60-40)/40 = 0.5$ or 50% | Yes, 50% >25% |
| Magenta | 25% | 31% | $(31-25)/25=0.24$ or 24% | No, 24% < 25% |
| Yellow | 30% | 40% | $(40-30)/30 = 0.33$ or 33% | Yes, 33% > 25% |
| Key | 10% | 14% | | Ignored, doesn't meet 5% minimum difference |

About thumbnails

When working with pages it is helpful to use thumbnails to see the page content.

When thumbnails appear

To create thumbnails of your pages refine the input files using a refine process template that has the **Thumbnail** section selected.







If you want thumbnails after you refine input files you can generate them by refining the PDF pages with **Thumbnail** selected.

To see thumbnails, select **View > as Thumbnails** in Job Manager. In thumbnail view, pages are grouped by assignment.

If you edit a page with Adobe Acrobat, thumbnails in Job Manager do not change automatically. If you want to update the thumbnail images, refine the PDF page again.

How thumbnails look

Here are the thumbnails that you may see:

| Icon | Meaning | Explanation |
|---|--|--|
|  | Actual | The actual page is shown in miniature. If the page is layered only the top subpage is visible. |
|  | Too big | The resolution of the thumbnail exceeds the maximum size possible in Prinergy, which is 1 MB. |
|  | Default | Either of these situations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The thumbnail was not created (because the page was not refined with Thumbnail selected) and the page has no errors. Actual thumbnails are not visible because Use Default (Blank) Thumbnails is selected in the Prinergy Workshop Preferences dialog box. |
|  | Error | The page contains one or more errors. This icon appears even if the thumbnail was not generated. <p>In layered pages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If thumbnails were generated, the error icon appears only if the top subpage has an error. If a lower subpage has an error, you can't see it. If thumbnails were not generated, the error icon appears if any subpage has an error. |
|  | Layered | The page is layered and more than one page is assigned to the page position. <p>Layering is used for legacy versioning, varnishes, and adding text to copydot scans.</p> |
|  | Layered(Layered PDF Versioning) | The page is layered using LPV. |

Controlling thumbnails

Control thumbnails in these ways:

- Viewing higher-resolution thumbnails

You can see higher-resolution thumbnails in Prinerger Workshop by selecting **Display Large Thumbnails** in the Prinerger Workshop Preferences dialog box. Large thumbnails are 24 dpi. The default resolution of thumbnails is 6 dpi.

If you display large thumbnails in Prinerger Workshop, make sure that Prinerger creates thumbnails with a resolution of at least 24 dpi. For example, if Prinerger creates thumbnails at 6 dpi and you select **Display Large Thumbnails** in Prinerger Workshop, the thumbnails will be fuzzy. You can specify the resolution of thumbnails on the **Thumbnails** tab of the Configuration Options dialog box in Prinerger Administrator.

- Speeding the display by using blank thumbnails

To speed the display of the thumbnails view you can use placeholders instead of real thumbnails. Select **Use Default (Blank) Thumbnails** in the Prinerger Workshop Preferences dialog box.

This is useful for:

- Large jobs in which displaying all generated thumbnails may decrease performance
 - Jobs where the page content is similar and thumbnails don't help to distinguish pages such as textual pages
- Make rows even in Thumbnail view

Display thumbnails in even-numbered rows by selecting **Show an Even Number of Thumbnails Per Row in All Page Views** in the Prinerger Workshop Preferences dialog box. This is useful with reader spreads.

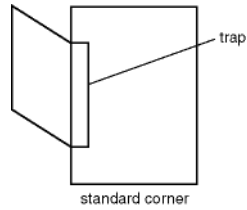
Interaction between thumbnails and proof processes

The JTP that generates thumbnails is the same one that generates proofs. If your installation of Prinerger includes only one Proofing JTP, you can experience delays when generating thumbnails and proofs at the same time.

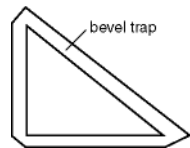
For example, if a proof takes a long time to generate, it may be queued behind a refine process that includes thumbnail generation. Similarly, if a refine process takes a long time, the thumbnail generation step may be queued behind a proof process.

Trapping examples

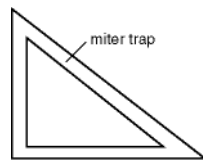
Standard corner trap



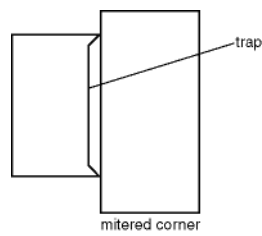
Bevel trap



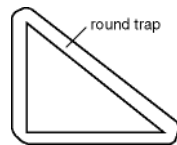
Miter trap



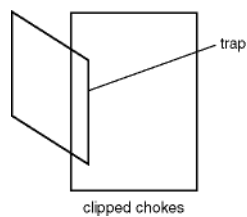
Mitered corner trap



Round trap

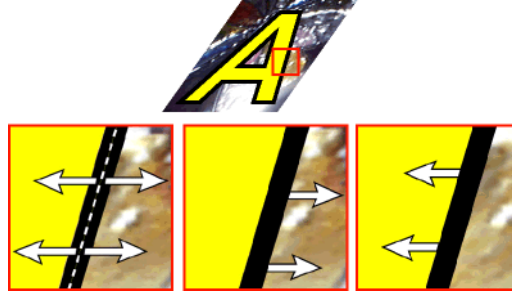


Clipped choke trap



Trap direction

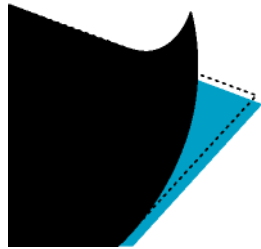
Values selected in the **Direction** box yield the following results:



Center, Into Image, and Into Object

Black width scaling

Black width scaling ensures supporting screens don't peek out from underneath black. This setting is the **Black Width Scaling** box in the **Black** area of the in the **Trap Settings** area in the **Trap** section of the Refine process template.



Small text scaling

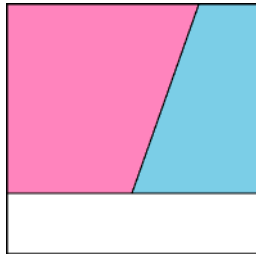
Here is animation demonstrating how scaling affects trapping on small text:



The text shown in the example is small—the letter **l** measures approximately 0.5 points across. With 100 percent trapping at a trap width of 0.3 points, the trap is so wide that the letter appears to be overprinting. When the trap is scaled to 25 percent, the trap is more appropriate to the size of the text.

Trap color scaling

Here is animation showing the result of different values for **Trap Color Scaling (%)**:



About using OPI with transparent effects


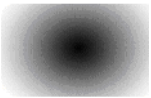
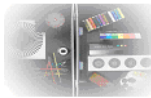
When using the OPI step in the refine process, you can use transparency features for TIFF images, such as soft masks and drop shadows.

Soft masks

PDF files can contain images with soft masks, such as feathered edges or soft silhouettes, that blend smoothly into the background—even if the background contains text or other images.

If OPI is required for TIFF images, Prinergy creates the soft mask from the first detected alpha channel in the TIFF file. The mechanism is similar to importing images into the Adobe InDesign software.

For example, here is an original image, a soft mask, and the resulting image with a soft mask:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  |  |  |
| Original image | Soft mask | Resulting image |

Drop shadows

PDF files can have drop shadows that blend smoothly into the document background. The objects behind a drop shadow show through the drop shadow; they are not hidden by it.

Typically, drop shadows result from creating one image as a shadow and placing it on top of another image. For example, here is an original image, a drop shadow, and the resulting image with a drop shadow:

| | | |
|---|---|--|
|  |  |  |
| Original image | Drop shadow image | Resulting image |

Using soft masks during OPI

You can create soft masks in refined PDF files during OPI.

1. Using the **Channels** palette in the Adobe Photoshop software, create soft masks.

Note: In Photoshop, do not confuse soft masks with the masking or transparency features that are part of the **Layers** palette.
2. Save the image as TIFF, and place it in a page layout software that generates OPI comments on output.
3. Ensure that black text is on top of all other objects in the layout. Prinerigy preserves text as vector objects as long as the text is not “under” any other objects. Make sure the entire text box is on top—even the corners—because Prinerigy looks at the bounding box of the text.
4. Ensure that spot colors have been defined as desired before writing the PostScript files.

The way that Prinerigy treats objects depends on the color space definition. If you want objects to appear only as CMYK, adjust the color definition in the layout software, not when you refine.

If spot color conversion is unavoidable, use color management. In the **ColorConvert** section of the refine process template, select the **Overprint Handling (CPU Intensive)** check box and clear the **Set Colors to Knockout** check box in the **Overprint Conversion** area.

5. Create thin PostScript from the layout software.
6. When refining the thin file, in the **Image Replacement** area of the **Fonts and Images** section of the refine process template:
 - a. Select the **Search for High-Resolution Images in Image Search Paths** check box to enable OPI.
 - b. Select the **Create Soft Masks from Photoshop TIFF Alpha Channels** check box.
7. Refine the files.

Using drop shadows during OPI

You can create drop shadows in refined PDF files during OPI.

1. Create the drop shadow in desktop publishing software.

For example, you can use ShadowCaster in the QuarkXPress software, use InDesign shadow-creation tools, or create the shadow manually in Photoshop.

You can create the drop-shadow image in grayscale, RGB, or CMYK color space. Grayscale is the most common color space.

2. Ensure that black text is on top of all other objects during layout, including the entire bounding box of the text.

The Prinergy software preserves text as vector objects only if none of the text is under an object.

3. Ensure that spot colors have been defined as desired before writing PostScript files.

The way that Prinergy treats objects depends on the color-space definition, such as spot colors versus process colors. If you want objects to appear only as CMYK, adjust the color definition in the layout software, not when you refine.

If spot color conversion is unavoidable, use color management. In the **ColorConvert** section of the refine process template, select the **Overprint Handling (CPU Intensive)** check box and clear the **Set Colors to Knockout** check box in the **Overprint Conversion** area.

4. For best results, save the image in TIFF format.
5. Decide which file extension you will use to identify drop-shadow images in Prinergy.

With ShadowCaster in QuarkXPress, the default extension is **.shd**, but you can use any extension that you want.

6. Change the extension of the image file name to the drop-shadow file extension that you chose in step 5.
7. In the **Image Replacement** area of the **Fonts and Images** section of the refine process template:
 - a. Select the **Search for High-Resolution Images in Image Search Paths** check box to enable OPI.
 - b. Select the **Make Drop Shadow Images Transparent** check box.
 - c. If you are using a file extension other than **.shd**, type the extension in the **Transparent Drop Shadow Image Name Suffix** box.
8. Refine the files.

Including clipping paths during OPI

With OPI, you can use the spot color channels created in TIFF images.

Notes: If the images are not Photoshop TIFF files, Prinergy ignores clipping paths. To use the spot color channels, you can use alternative methods. In software other than InDesign, save the images as DCS files, and replace them in the original layout. With InDesign, which does not omit TIFF files for OPI-containing spot colors even when OPI is selected in the Print dialog box, do either of the following actions:

- Create a plain alternate CMYK image for use as a proxy. Print the PostScript including the OPI comments but omitting the images. Add the TIFF file containing the desired spot color channels to an image search path.
 - Use proxy images created by an OPI solution, such as ColorCentral or Asset Library, for low-resolution image placement into InDesign. These images will be replaced by their high-resolution counterparts during the OPI step of the refine process.
1. Create the image as TIFF files in the Photoshop software.
 2. In the **Image Replacement** area of the **Fonts and Images** section of the refine process template, select the **Search for High-Resolution Images in Image Search Paths** check box to enable OPI.
 3. In the **Image Attributes** area, select the **Apply Clipping Path in Photoshop TIFFs** check box.
 4. Refine the files.

Including spot color channels during OPI

With Prinergy OPI, you can include the spot color information contained in the channels of TIFF images.

Note: If the images are not Photoshop TIFF files, Prinergy ignores spot color channels during OPI. Save the images as DCS files and replace them in the original layout.

The InDesign software does not omit TIFF files for OPI-containing spot colors, even when OPI is selected in the Print dialog box. Create a plain CMYK image as a proxy, print the PostScript, including the OPI comments but omitting images, and

then add the TIFF file containing the desired spot color channels into an OPI search path location in the Prinergy software.

1. Using the **Channels** palette in Photoshop, create the images as TIFF files.
2. In the **Image Replacement** area of the **Fonts and Images** section of the refine process template, select the **Search for High-Resolution Images in Image Search Paths** check box to enable OPI.
3. In the **Image Attributes** area, select the **Include Spot Colors in Photoshop TIFFs** check box.
4. In the **Spot Color Handling** section of the refine process template, select the **Lookup Recipe in Color Database** check box to provide an accurate color definition for proper color matching and trapping. You need to look up the recipe because Photoshop includes only the name of the spot color channel, not the color definition.

The Prinergy software merges the CMYK color channels with all spot color channels to produce a single, multi-channel (DeviceN) image.

PDF preflight

About PDF preflight

With PDF Preflight, you can, during the refine process, evaluate PDF pages to detect problems that may affect processing in a publishing or prepress workflow.

PDF Preflight conforms to all 2005 Ghent PDF Workgroup PDF/X-Plus specifications. For more information, see <http://www.ghentpdfworkgroup.org>.

Preflight profiles

PDF Preflight uses profiles to compare the PDF files to a number of criteria. Each profile represents a collection of settings that is checked during the refine process.

You must use the **Preflight Profile Manager** to add a preflight profile before preflighting PDF pages.

The following preflight profiles have been created in accordance with the GWG specifications for market segments:

| Preflight Profiles for Market Segments | |
|--|---------------------------|
| Advertising for Newspapers | SheetCMYK |
| Magazine Ads | SheetSpot High Resolution |

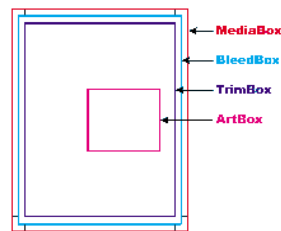
| Preflight Profiles for Market Segments | |
|--|--------------------------|
| Packaging Design High Resolution | SheetSpot Low Resolution |
| Packaging Design Low Resolution | WebCMYK Kodak News |
| Packaging Offset | WebSpot News |
| Packaging Gravure | WebCMYK High Resolution |
| Packaging Flexo | WebSpot High Resolution |

Viewing Preflight reports

After preflighting a job you can view a report of problems in the page that may affect processing in a publishing or prepress workflow. The report provides the criteria comparison results.

To determine whether or not a PDF Preflight report has been generated for a PDF file, you must display the **Preflight Report** column in Job Manager.

About page box layout



| | |
|------------------|---|
| media box | Defines the location and size of the physical medium on which the page is intended to be displayed or printed. |
| bleed box | Defines the bounds to which the contents of the page should be clipped when output in a production environment. Default value is the page's crop box. |
| trim box | Defines the intended dimensions of the finished page after trimming. This may be smaller than the media box to allow for production-related content such as printing instructions, cut marks, or color bars. The default value is the page's crop box. |
| art box | Defines the extent of the page's meaningful content, including potential white space. Default value is the page's crop box. |
| crop box | Defines the region to which the contents of the page are to be clipped (or cropped) when displayed or printed. Unlike the other boxes, the crop box has no defined meaning in terms of physical page geometry or intended use, it merely suggests where the page should be clipped. |

PDF/X-1a restrictions

PDF Preflight checks that files comply with PDF/X-1a:2001 standard.

In either of the following situations, you must specify either the art box or trim box.

- Page box layout does not conform with press layout
- Layout has no crop box or crop box is equal to media box

The art box defines the extent of a page's meaningful content. If you are using only part of a page, the art box is the area of text, pictures, and needed white space. The rest of the page, which is blank, isn't considered.

If you are using the whole page, then you must specify the trim box, media box, and the bleed box. If the bleed box is not already defined, you can specify that the normalizer function set the bleed box to be equal to the media box.

Press layout specifications:

- The outer box must be the media box.
- The bleed box must be inside or equal to the media box.
- The trim box must be inside or equal to the bleed box.
- The layout has no crop box or the crop box is equal to the media box.

Minimum Trim to Bleed Margin: PDF Preflight checks whether the document contains predetermined or sufficient bleed.

Minimum Bleed to Media Margin: See the preceding diagram to see how media margin is defined. PDF Preflight checks whether the document contains predetermined bleed.

Example

To set Prinerger to check the size of the trim box and check whether a bleed box is defined, perform the following steps.

In **Preflight Profile Editor > Page > Layout:**

- In the **Page box layout does not conform with** list, select **Press Layout**.
- Set **Minimum Trim to Bleed Margin** to **2 pt**.
- Set **Minimum Bleed to Media Margin** to **2 pt**.

With these settings, Prinerger checks whether a bleed box is defined. If it is not, Prinerger defines it during the refine process.

Preflighting PDF files

1. If required, add a PDF Preflight profile that contains the settings you want checked.
2. In Job Manager, right-click the PDF files you want to preflight, select **Refine** and then the refine process template you want to use.
3. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
4. In the process template, click the **PDF Preflight** section box to enable PDF Preflight.
5. In **Preflight Profile File**, select the PDF Preflight profile you want to check the PDF files against (see Step 1).
Modify the other PDF Preflight options in the refine process template as desired.
6. In the process template, click **OK**.
7. In the Start Refine Process dialog box, click **OK**.

Managing Preflight profiles

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Preflight Profile Manager**.
2. Perform one of the following as appropriate:

| If You Want To... | Then... |
|-------------------|---|
| View a profile | Select a profile, and view the description that appears in the Descriptions box. To view the settings, click Edit . In the Preflight Profile Editor, after viewing the settings, click Cancel . |
| Add a profile | Click Add , configure the settings as desired, and then click Save . In the Profile Name dialog box, type a name for the new profile. |
| Edit a profile | Select a profile, click Edit , modify the settings as desired, and then click Save . |
| Copy a profile | Select a profile, click Edit , modify the settings as desired, and then click Save As . In the Profile Name dialog box, type a name for the new profile. |
| Remove a profile | Select a profile, and then click Delete . |

Viewing PDF Preflight reports

1. In Job Manager, click a PDF file that has a PDF Preflight report.
2. From the **Job** menu, click **Preflight Report Viewer**.

The PDF Preflight report appears.

Generating PDF Preflight reports for distribution

To create PDF Preflight reports that you can distribute via e-mail or use with Prepress Portal, automatically generate PDF versions of the reports. In automatically generated reports, the links will work outside the Prinergy file system. Links in manually generated reports do not work outside the Prinergy file system.

1. If required, add a PDF Preflight profile that contains the settings you want checked.
2. Start a refine process template on the PDF files that you want to preflight.

Be sure to use a process template with the following options in the **PDF Preflight** section:

- A preflight profile
- The desired action on errors
- Whether to always create a report, or to create a report only when at least one error is detected
- Select **Automatically generate PDF version of Preflight Report**
- A preflight report location. If e-mailing the report, use, for example, %JOB%\Reports. If distributing the report with Prepress Portal, use %JOB%\WebDownloads.

Tip: You can either create a refine process template in advance or you can edit the refine process template when you start the refine process.

3. If you want proofs to go to the same location as the preflight reports, generate the proofs using an output process template with the following options:

- In the **Output To** list, select **PDF (Vector output)**.
- In the **Device** section, in the **Device Path** box, use the same path as the one used for preflight reports.

If e-mailing the files, use, for example, %JOB%\Reports.

If distributing the files with Prepress Portal, use %JOB%\WebDownloads.

- In the **File Format** section, in the **Include Images as** list, select **Low Resolution**.

Tip: To automatically send proofs and preflight reports to the same location, create a workflow template linking both process templates.

Preflight Profile Manager

List

Lists the preflight profiles defined in Prinergy. Select a profile to edit or delete.

Author

Displays the author name.

Description

Displays the profile description or selected category of preflight criteria.

Edit

Opens the Preflight Profile Editor, and lets you edit the preflight profile.

Add

Opens the Preflight Profile Editor, and lets you add a new preflight profile.

Lock

Restricts or enables you to edit the preflight profile. This option can be set using this dialog box or by using the **User Rights** tab on the **Configuration Options** dialog box in Administrator.

Delete

Lets you remove a preflight profile.

Preflight Profile Editor

Preflight Profile Editor appears when you are adding or editing a preflight profile.

Categories

Select the category that you want to set.

- **Document:** PDF Preflight identifies Acrobat compatibilities, compression, encryption, security, and other properties.
- **Page:** PDF Preflight detects empty pages and identifies the page size, annotations, bleed detection, and other properties.




- **Font:** PDF Preflight determines whether specific fonts are in the PDF file and whether they are embedded. PDF Preflight only embeds Apple TrueType and Type 1 fonts.
- **Color:** PDF Preflight detects color space information, spot colors, rendering information, and color management settings.
- **Image:** PDF Preflight identifies the image resolution and determines whether images are skewed or flipped and whether color, grayscale, and black-and-white images are compressed.
- **OPI:** PDF Preflight determines whether Open Prepress Interface (OPI) is used. If it is, PDF Preflight detects the OPI version and determines whether high-resolution images in the OPI path are missing.
- **Text and Line Art:** PDF Preflight identifies the size of text and the line widths. It also detects white text and objects and flatness tolerance, and defines and detects the live area.
- **PDF/X:** PDF Preflight determines whether the PDF file conforms to PDF/X-1a or PDF/X-3 and whether the file contains PostScript fragments.

Detect

Select the check box beside the setting that you want. For settings with a triangle (▸), click the triangle to expand the section.

Report

Enables you to specify how you want the PDF Preflight report to record the preflighting results. For each preflight setting, select one of the following:

-  **Information:** Displays the results of the PDF Preflight operation. If the PDF Preflight Report area in the process template is set to **Always create report**, the operation is logged in the PDF Preflight report and labeled as Information.
-  **Warning:** Warns you when the PDF file does not comply with the settings that you specified in the PDF Preflight profile. The PDF file may not output correctly. If the PDF Preflight Report area in the process template is set to **Always create report**, the failed settings are logged in the PDF Preflight report and labeled as a Warning.
-  **Error:** Specifies the severity of this condition if you do not specify **Fix**, or if the file could not be repaired. Select this setting when you need to identify problems that must be corrected before moving the PDF file to the next stage in the

workflow. The process template setting for **Preflight Handling (Ignore Errors, Warn on Errors, Fail on Errors)** determines how Prinergy handles Preflight error conditions.

Note: These warnings are different from the condition icons that appear in Job Manager when a file is being processed.

Fix

For settings which have a **Fix** option a **+** in the **Fix** column indicates that the **Fix** option is selected. A **-** in the **Fix** column indicates that the **Fix** option is not selected.

Click the triangle (▸) to expand the section and see a brief summary of what the software does when the **Fix** option is selected.

Save

Closes the dialog box and saves any changes you've made.

Save As

Lets you save the profile with a new name.

Cancel

Closes the dialog box without saving any changes.

Document settings in Preflight Editor

Information

Title

Detects the PDF file's title, which may have been set by the person who created the file in the source software, such as Adobe Illustrator.

Beside **Options**, type a title in the box. To confirm that the PDF file you're checking has the title that you typed, select **Is** or **Contains**. To confirm that the PDF file does not have the title that you typed, select **Is Not** or **Does Not Contain**.

To change the title select the **Fix** check box, and type a new name in the adjacent box. When you select the **Fix** check box, PDF Preflight displays **+** in the **Fix** column.

Subject

Detects the PDF file's subject name, which may have been set by the person who created the file in the source software.

Beside **Options**, type a subject in the box. To confirm that the PDF file you're checking has the subject that you typed, select **Is** or **Contains**. To confirm that the PDF file does not have the subject that you typed, select **Is Not** or **Does Not Contain**.

To change the subject name select the **Fix** check box.

Author

Detects the PDF file's author, which may have been set by the person who created the file in the source software.

Beside **Options**, type the author's name in the box. To confirm that the PDF file that you're checking has the author that you typed, select **Is** or **Contains**. To confirm that the PDF file does not have the author that you typed, select **Is Not** or **Does Not Contain**.

To change the author select the **Fix** check box.

Producer

Identifies the PDF file's producer, which is the software that generated the PDF file, such as Acrobat Distiller 5.0.

Beside **Options**, type a producer name in the box. To confirm that the PDF file that you're checking has the producer that you typed, select **Is** or **Contains**. To confirm that the PDF file does not have the producer that you typed, select **Is Not** or **Does Not Contain**.

To change the producer select the **Fix** check box.

Creator

Identifies the PDF file's creator, which is the software that created the original document, such as Microsoft Word.

Beside **Options**, type a creator name in the box. To confirm that the PDF file that you're checking has the creator that you typed, select **Is** or **Contains**. To confirm that the PDF file does not have the creator that you typed, select **Is Not** or **Does Not Contain**.

To change the creator select the **Fix** check box.

Keyword

Detects keywords in the PDF file. Use when you want to search for keywords in a document, instead of relying on the file name or opening the document and searching its contents.

Beside **Options**, type a keyword in the box. To confirm that the PDF file that you're checking has the keyword that you typed, select **Is** or **Contains**. To confirm that the PDF file does not have the keyword that you typed, select **Is Not** or **Does Not Contain**.

To change the keyword select the **Fix** check box.

Modification and creation date are not set

Identifies the PDF file's modification and creation dates.

To add a date to the current date select the **Fix** check box.

Trap flag

Detects the PDF file's trapping information

Select **Detect if Trap flag is or is not set to:**

- Trapped
- Not Trapped
- Unknown

To change the trap flag setting select the **Fix** check box. For example, if you select **Trap flag is not set to Trapped** and PDF Preflight detects that the flag isn't set to trapped in the PDF file, PDF Preflight changes it to trapped when you select the **Fix** check box. If you select **Trap flag is**, the **Fix** check box is not available.

If you convert the PDF file to PDF/X PDF Preflight automatically selects **Trap flag is not set to: Not Trapped**.

Format

PDF version is

Determines whether the PDF file is **Not Equal to** or **Less Than** PDF version 1.3, 1.4, or 1.5. Adobe Acrobat 4.0 and later fully supports PDF version 1.3.

Besides **Options**, select the PDF version.

PDF Preflight checks for PDF 1.4 or PDF 1.5 objects in the PDF file. If the file includes PDF 1.4 or 1.5 objects, most software cannot process the file correctly without flattening and converting it to PDF 1.3. Note that a PDF file may be created by Acrobat Distiller 5.0 and later and still be compatible with PDF 1.3.

PDF uses more advanced features than

Determines whether the PDF file uses more advanced features than PDF version 1.3 or 1.4.

PDF Preflight checks for PDF 1.4 or PDF 1.5 objects in the PDF file. If the file includes PDF 1.4 or 1.5 objects, most software cannot process the file correctly without flattening and

converting it to PDF 1.3. A PDF file may be created by Adobe Acrobat Distiller 5.0 and later and still be compatible with PDF 1.3.

Nonoptimal compression

Identifies the methods of compression for the PDF file. PDF Preflight uses ZIP and LZW compression for color images that are not optimally compressed and CCITT compression for monochrome images that are not optimally compressed.

To use ZIP compression select the **Fix** check box.

Document is ASCII encoded

Determines whether the PDF file uses ASCII or binary encoding. ASCII encoding works on all platforms and operating systems. Binary encoding provides smaller files and is acceptable in most situations.

To remove the ASCII encoding select the **Fix** check box.

Document is damaged

Determines whether the PDF file has missing objects, such as graphics.

PDF2Go Files

Detects files from PDF2Go software. PDF Preflight detects whether the PDF file is a Brisque or PDF2Go file or a PDF version of the Brisque Export PostScript file. PDF2Go files include only CEPS (CT/LW) data and should be protected from data manipulation, such as overprint and trapping.

Document contains Layers

PDF Preflight detects whether the PDF file has layers.

Document structure is compressed

PDF Preflight detects whether the PDF file metadata structure is compressed.

Security

Encryption

Determines whether the PDF file uses any encryption. Third-party software, such as Acrobat, can use encryption to restrict access to a PDF file. You can also set a password that restricts functions (for example, printing or selecting text) and restricts

other people from changing the security options that you selected.

Printing

Determines whether the PDF file permits printing.

Content editing

Determines whether the PDF file permits content changes.

Annotation editing and form authoring

Determines whether the PDF file permits changes to annotations, including links, bookmarks, attachments, and comments in the file. This also detects whether the PDF file allows the creation of forms. A PDF form can collect data from a user and then send the data via e-mail.

Metadata**Document contains form fields**

Detects whether the PDF file contains interactive form fields to be filled in by the user. The data from these fields can be exported or imported into other programs.

Document contains article threads

Detects whether the PDF file contains article threads, which link together items of content within the document that are logically connected but not physically sequential. For example, magazines and newspapers arrange text that may flow from column to column and sometimes across multiple pages. In Acrobat, you use the Article tool to create a series of linked rectangles that connect the various sections of an article.

Document contains Sun JavaScript

Detects whether the PDF file contains JavaScript, which can be added to a form field, link, bookmark, document, or page action.

Document contains thumbnails

Detects whether the PDF file contains thumbnails. Thumbnails are miniature previews of the pages in a document. In Acrobat, you can use page thumbnails to jump quickly to a selected page and to adjust the view of the pages.

Document contains bookmarks

Detects whether the PDF file contains bookmarks. A bookmark is a type of link that appears on the Bookmarks tab in the

navigation pane. Each bookmark goes to a different view or location in the document. You can use electronic bookmarks as you would with paper documents—to mark a place in a document to which you want to return. You can also use a bookmark to direct the reader's attention to where you want it.

Document does not conform to tagged PDF conventions

Detects whether or not the PDF file conforms to tagged PDF conventions (by determining whether or not the file contains the key **Marked** set to the value **true** in a **MarkInfo** dictionary).

A PDF conforming to tagged PDF conventions allow applications to easily extract and reuse content from a PDF document. The conventions are described in the PDF Specification.

Document contains actions

Detects whether the PDF file contains actions. In Acrobat, an action is an event that you can assign to a link, bookmark, page, and form field. It can include displaying a specified destination in a document, opening a file, submitting a form, and playing a sound or movie.

Document contains unused destinations

Detects whether the PDF file contains unused destinations. A destination is a particular view of a document, including the page of the document to be displayed and the zoom to use when displaying the page. Destinations may be associated with outline items, annotations, or actions.

Page settings in Preflight Editor

Information

Empty Pages

Detects empty pages in the PDF file.

Separated Pages

PDF Preflight detects whether there are separated pages in the PDF file that are independent of PDF/X-1a specified controls.

Multiple Pages

PDF Preflight detects whether the PDF file contains multiple pages.

Graphic element lies completely outside of the media box

PDF Preflight detects whether the PDF file contains graphic elements that are outside of the media box.

To remove all graphic elements that are outside of the media box, select the **Fix** check box.

Report transparent element

PDF Preflight detects whether the PDF file contains elements that are transparent.

Annotation

Annotations are included

Determines whether the PDF file includes any annotations. An annotation could be a note, link, bookmark, attachment, or movie or sound file.

To search for all annotations, select **Any annotation**. To exclude the printer's mark or trap network annotations, select **Except Printer's Mark or Trap Network annotations**. Printer's mark and trap network annotations are allowed outside of the bleed box in PDF/X files.

To remove the annotations, select the **Fix** check box.

Annotations are set to print

Determines whether the annotations in the PDF file will print.

To ensure that annotations don't print, select the **Fix** check box, and select **Do not print annotations** or select **Remove annotations**.

Layout

Measurement units

Determines the linear units used for the size of pages. You can select points, picas, inches, centimeters, or millimeters. The default is points.

Page size is defined by the

Determines the PDF box that defines the page size. Options include media box, crop box, trim box, art box, and bleed box. Trim box is likely to be the most useful setting.

Page size is not

Determines whether pages are the same size in the PDF file.

To confirm that all the pages in the PDF file are the same size, select **Equal for all pages**.

To confirm that the media boxes of the pages are the size that you specify, select the second option beside the two boxes, and type the media box dimensions in the boxes.

To change the page size, select the **Fix** check box. If you selected **Equal for all pages**, and you want to set the page size to the bounding box, select **Enclosing bounding box**. The enclosing bounding box refers to the PDF media box.

To set the page size to dimensions that you specify, select the second option, type the page dimensions in the boxes, and from the **Align page content to** list, select an alignment option.

Page orientation is not equal for all pages

Determines whether pages are a combination of portrait and landscape orientations.

To change all pages to the same orientation, select the **Fix** check box, and select **Portrait** or **Landscape**, according to your requirements.

Page box layout does not conform with <list>

PDF Preflight detects whether the page box layout in the PDF file does not conform with **Press Layout** or **Screen Viewing Layout**.

Select **Press Layout** or **Screen Viewing Layout**, and enter the **Minimum Trim to Bleed Margin** and **Minimum Bleed to Media Margin** points.

PDF Preflight checks whether the document contains predetermined or sufficient bleed.

Select the **Layout has crop box equal to trim box** or **Layout has no crop box or crop box is equal to media box** option.

Scaling

Page scaling factor is used

PDF Preflight detects whether the PDF file contains page scaling.

Page scaling ensures that a page prints with the same scale factor that is displayed on the screen.

Bleed

Measurement units

Determines the linear units used for the size of pages. You can select points, picas, inches, centimeters, or millimeters. The default is points.

Bleed detection

Determines whether the image extends to the bleed box. Defines the maximum gap that can exist between the trim box and the bleed box before the image requires bleed.

To adjust the bleed detection, enter the desired values. By default, bleed detection is turned off.

Check objects that touch the trim box, or objects that almost touch the trim box (within a certain distance).

Consider image content when deciding if images have sufficient bleed option to determine if the detection should take into account the content of images—for example, whether or not white pixels are acceptable.

You may find that the bleed detection feature works best if you enter the minimum bleed that is acceptable, rather than the minimum bleed that is ideal. For example, if you ask designers to create a 0.125-in. bleed, but find that a 0.0625-in. bleed is acceptable, the preflight results have fewer messages if you ask PDF Preflight to look for a 0.0625-in. bleed.

Note: This option can result in slower performance.

Note: The preflight bleed detection feature detects and reports bleed problems even when the trim box is equal to the media box. For example, a user might create a file in the QuarkXPress software with <X> amount of bleed, save and export the PDF file with no crop marks, and then import and refine it with <X> amount of bleed preflight detection.

Font settings in Preflight Editor

Type

True Type

Determines whether the PDF file contains TrueType fonts. TrueType fonts are built into Windows and Macintosh operating systems and print well on both PostScript and non-PostScript printers.

Type 1

Determines whether the PDF file contains Type 1 fonts. Type 1 fonts, also called PostScript fonts, contain defined character shapes in an encoded PostScript format and contain hints in their character definitions. Hints help reproduce font outlines while maintaining the font shape at low resolutions.

Type 3

Determines whether the PDF file contains Type 3 fonts, which are mostly ornamental and decorative. Type 3 fonts may contain gradations or be entirely black. Type 3 fonts produce larger files than TrueType or Type 1 fonts.

Multi-Master

Determines whether the PDF file contains Multi-Master fonts, which give designers more flexibility with a typeface. Use a Multi-Master font to create many variations of the same font.

Composite

Determines whether the PDF file contains Composite fonts, which enable the encoding of very large character sets and writing that is not horizontal. Composite font technology can be used worldwide.

City font is used

Determines whether the PDF file contains fonts named after cities. Macintosh system fonts typically have city names, for example, Athens, Chicago, Geneva, London, New York, San Francisco, Venice, and Monaco.

Name

Font Name

Checks the PDF file for the font names that appear in the **Font Name** boxes. Type the font name in the box. You can add up to eight **Font Name** boxes by clicking the plus sign (+). To delete a font name, select the box and click the minus sign (-).

Embedding

Font is not embedded

Determines whether any fonts in the PDF file are not embedded. Embedding prevents font substitution when readers

view or print the file and ensures that readers see the text in its original format.

If some fonts are not embedded in the PDF file select the **Fix** check box and select **Embed Font** to embed the fonts. PDF Preflight can embed Type 1 and TrueType fonts. To replace all text objects with vector objects in the output, select **Outline font**. This eliminates font formats that some RIPs may not be able to process. Text output in this way cannot be edited.

To ignore Base 14 fonts select **Ignore 14 base fonts**. Base 14 fonts are sometimes not embedded in PDF files because they're installed on most computers.

Double byte font is completely embedded

PDF Preflight detects whether double-byte fonts are completely embedded in the PDF file.

Embedded font is OpenType

PDF Preflight detects whether a PDF file contains embedded OpenType fonts.

Embedded font is <list>

To determine whether the PDF file contains all embedded fonts select **Complete**. To determine if the PDF file contains only a subset of embedded fonts, select **Subset**.

Style

Artificial Bold

Certain software applications allow you to specify artificial font styles, such as bolding and italics, even though the type family itself does not support the style. Use this feature to determine whether or not the PDF file contains any fonts with the following artificial styles:

- Artificial Bold
- Artificial Italic
- Artificial Outline
- Artificial Shadow

Artificial Italic

Certain software applications allow you to specify artificial font styles, such as bolding and italics, even though the type family itself does not support the style. Use this feature to determine

whether or not the PDF file contains any fonts with the following artificial styles:

- Artificial Bold
- Artificial Italic
- Artificial Outline
- Artificial Shadow

Artificial Outline

Certain software applications allow you to specify artificial font styles, such as bolding and italics, even though the type family itself does not support the style. Use this feature to determine whether or not the PDF file contains any fonts with the following artificial styles:

- Artificial Bold
- Artificial Italic
- Artificial Outline
- Artificial Shadow

Artificial Shadow

Certain software applications allow you to specify artificial font styles, such as bolding and italics, even though the type family itself does not support the style. Use this feature to determine whether or not the PDF file contains any fonts with the following artificial styles:

- Artificial Bold
- Artificial Italic
- Artificial Outline
- Artificial Shadow

Color settings in Preflight Editor

PDF Preflight includes some color condition detection and correction parameters that are not available in the **ColorConvert** section of the refine process template.

Preflight reports include color information based on both the settings in the **ColorConvert** section of the refine process template and the preflight options that you select in the Preflight Editor.

Process & RGB

A non press color is used

Determines whether the PDF file contains specific colors in the text, line art, and in pixel images that use one or more of the following color models:

- RGB
- Calibrated Gray
- Calibrated RGB
- LAB
- ICC Based

Pattern or indexed color is used

Determines whether the PDF file contains an indexed color space. Select **Pattern or indexed color is used** to select colors from a color map or color table in another color space. An indexed color space can considerably reduce the amount of data required to represent a sampled image.

Shading is used

Determines whether pattern shading is used in the PDF file

Ink coverage is lower than

Determines whether there is enough ink coverage in the PDF file to register on the plate. The default is 4%. You cannot enter a value less than 0 or greater than 3200.

To restrict ink coverage detection within a bounding box, select the **Restrict to elements within** check box, and then select **media box, crop box, trim box, art box, or bleed box**.

Optionally, you can select **Ignore colorant "All"** to ignore the registration color.

Note: The **Ignore colorant "All"** setting applies to both high and low coverage. If you select it when checking for low ink coverage, it will also apply if you select the **Ink coverage is higher than** check box.

Select the **Detect image ink coverage** check box to define a minimum area of connected pixels that must be below the ink coverage limit before an error is triggered. Then, use the **Sample area size** box and unit list to define a square area of connected pixels. You can enter a value between 0 and 3.5 inch or 9 cm, depending on the unit that was selected in the preferences.

Ink coverage is higher than

Determines whether the PDF file contains too many combined inks to produce a given color. You cannot enter a value less than 0 or greater than 3200.

To restrict ink coverage detection within a bounding box, select the **Restrict to elements within** check box, and then select **media box, crop box, trim box, art box, or bleed box**.

Optionally, you can select **Ignore colorant "All"** to ignore the registration color.

Note: The **Ignore colorant "All"** setting applies to both high and low coverage. If you select it when checking for high ink coverage, it will also apply if you select the **Ink coverage is lower than** check box.

Select the **Detect image ink coverage** check box to define a minimum area of connected pixels that must exceed the ink coverage limit before an error is triggered. Then, use the **Sample area size** box and unit list to define the side length of the square area of connected pixels. You can enter a value between 0 and 3.5 inch or 9 cm, depending on the unit that was selected in the preferences. If the average ink coverage of the pixels is above the limit, an error will be triggered.

RGB Black or CMYK Black is used

Determines whether the PDF file contains any black that is mixed from RGB or CMYK.

To convert black to grayscale, select the **Fix** check box.

RGB Gray or CMYK Gray is used

Determines whether the PDF file contains any gray that is mixed from RGB or CMYK.

To convert gray to grayscale, select the **Fix** check box.

Impure CMYK Black is used (sum of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow exceeds 70%)

Determines whether the PDF file contains any impure black. Black produced when the sum of cyan, magenta, and yellow inks exceed 70% is considered impure.

To convert the impure black to pure CMYK black, select the **Fix** check box.

Impure CMYK Gray is used (equal and non-zero amounts of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow)

Determines whether the PDF file contains any impure gray. Gray produced by equal amounts of cyan, magenta, and yellow is considered impure.

To convert the impure gray to shades of black ink only, select the **Fix** check box.

Spot Color

Spot color is used

Identifies painted spot colors in the PDF file.

To restrict spot color detection within a bounding box, select the **Restrict to elements within** check box, and then select **media box, crop box, trim box, art box, or bleed box**.

Spot color definition is ambiguous

Determines when two spot colors use the same name but have different alternate color space (ACS) values or different recipes (for example, CMYK equivalents) in the PDF file.

To repair the ambiguous spot colors, select the **Fix** check box. PDF Preflight uses the spot color with L*a*b* ACS, then CMYK ACS, then gray ACS, and finally RGB ACS. If the spot colors use the same ACS, PDF Preflight uses the first instance of the spot color and applies that instance to all other spot colors with the same name.

Spot color suffix is not

Determines specific PANTONE spot color name endings in the PDF file. In the list, you can select **C, CV, CVC, CVS, CVU, CVP,** or **U**.

For example, if you select **Spot color suffix is not: CV**, PDF Preflight checks the PDF file for spot color suffixes that are not **CV**. To change the name endings to **CV**, select the **Fix** check box.

Use this option to ensure that identical PANTONE spot colors appear on the same separation, even if they originally had different name endings.

Spot color has an alternative color space other than CMYK or Gray

Identifies spot colors with an ACS definition other than CMYK or gray in the PDF file.

Number of separations

Determines the number of separations in the PDF file and compares it to a number that you specify. To specify the number of separations, select a setting in the **Options: Is** list, and type a number in the adjacent box.

To not count CMYK colors, select the **Do not count colors (C,M,Y,K)** check box.

To not count All colors, select the **Do not count All** check box.

To not count a separation that you specify, select the **Do not count** check box, and type the name of the separation in the adjacent box.

To restrict spot color detection within a bounding box, select the **Restrict to elements within** check box, and select **media box**, **crop box**, **trim box**, **art box**, or **bleed box**.

Rendering Parameters

Custom transfer curve used for images

Determines whether the PDF file contains a custom transfer curve. A custom transfer curve adjusts the values of color components in the file to compensate for the output device and the human eye. The transfer curve can be text and line art, images, or any other element.

To add or remove a custom transfer curve, select the **Fix** check box, and select **Apply Transfer curve** or **Remove Transfer curve**. To apply a transfer curve, the curve must use CMYK or a spot color, and PDF Preflight profile must use color management.

Custom halftone curve is used

Determines whether the PDF file contains a custom halftone curve. A custom halftone curve defines characteristics such as screen angle, frequency, screen shape, and proprietary screen names. Screen information is applicable to RIPs that convert data to bitmaps.

To remove a custom halftone curve, select the **Fix** check box.

Under Color Removal function is used

Determines whether the PDF file contains an under-color-removal function. An under-color-removal function reduces the amounts of cyan, magenta, and yellow to compensate for the amount of black that was added by black generation.

To remove the under-color-removal function, select the **Fix** check box.

Rendering intent for text and line art are not

Determines whether the rendering intent for the text and line art is not one of the on-screen settings. In the **Options** list, select one of the following settings:

Absolute Colorimetric

Colors are solely represented using the light source. No correction is made for the output medium's white point. For example, an output medium's white point might be the color of paper with no print marks on it.

Relative Colorimetric

Colors are represented using a combination of the light source and the output medium's white point.

Perceptual

Colors are represented in a way that provides a pleasing perceptual appearance.

Saturation

Colors are represented in a way that preserves or emphasizes saturation.

The rendering intent influences the conversion from device-independent color spaces to a target color space.

To change the rendering intent setting, select the **Fix** check box. For example, if you selected **Absolute Colorimetric** and PDF Preflight detects that text and line art are not set to Absolute Colorimetric in the PDF file, PDF Preflight changes the text and line art when you select the **Fix** check box.

Rendering intent for images is not

Determines whether the rendering intent for images in the PDF file is not one of the on-screen options. In the **Options** list, select one of the following options:

- **Absolute Colorimetric**
- **Relative Colorimetric**
- **Perceptual**
- **Saturation**

To change the rendering intent setting, select the **Fix** check box. For example, if you selected **Absolute Colorimetric** in the **Options** list and PDF Preflight detects that images are not set to Absolute Colorimetric in the PDF file, PDF Preflight changes

them to Absolute Colorimetric when you select the **Fix** check box.

Rendering intent operator is used

Preflight detects the use of the rendering intent operator in the content stream and reports its use.

Black generation curve is used

Determines whether the PDF file uses the black generation curve, which calculates the level of black to use when converting RGB colors to CMYK.

To remove the black generation function, select the **Fix** check box.

Detect if Halftone phase is used

PDF Preflight detects whether the PDF file contains halftone phases.

To remove all halftone phases, select the **Fix** check box.

ICC Profiles

Text and line art <list> tagged with ICC profile

Determines whether the PDF file is tagged with an ICC profile for text, line art, and images.

To determine whether the PDF file contains text and line art that are tagged with an ICC profile, click **Text and Line Art** above the **Detect** area. Select **Text and line art**, and in the adjacent list, select **are** or **are not**.

To determine whether the PDF file contains images that are tagged with an ICC profile, click **Images** above the **Detect** area. Select **Images** and in the adjacent list, select **are** or **are not**.

To change the ICC profile, select the **Fix** check box, and select one of the following settings:

- Select **Remove ICC profile** to remove the embedded ICC profile from the PDF file.
- Tag with source ICC profile to add a source ICC profile to the PDF file. In the **Source ICC Profiles** area, select one or more of the following profiles:
 - **CMYK**
 - **RGB**
 - **Gray**

In the adjacent list, select a profile.

Multi Channel

NChannel color space is used

PDF Preflight detects whether a PDF file uses NChannel color spaces.

Image settings in Preflight Editor

Resolution

Resolution of color or grayscale image is below

Determines whether any color or grayscale images in the PDF file have a lower resolution than the value that you specify. To change the resolution, type a value in the adjacent box. The default is 150 dpi.

Resolution of color or grayscale image is above

Determines whether any color or grayscale images in the PDF file have a higher resolution than the value that you specify. The default is 300 dpi.

To reduce the resolution, select the **Fix** check box, type a number in the adjacent box, and select one of the following settings:

- **Average downsampling** to average the pixels in a sample area and replace the entire area with average pixel color at the specified resolution.
- **Bicubic downsampling** to use a weighted average to determine pixel color. This usually yields better results than the simple averaging method of downsampling. Bicubic is the slowest but most precise method, resulting in the smoothest tonal gradations.

Resolution of B&W images is below

Determines whether any black-and-white images in the PDF file have a lower resolution than the value that you specify. To change the resolution, type a value in the adjacent box. The default is 1200 dpi.

Resolution of B&W images is above

Determines whether any black-and-white images in the PDF file have a higher resolution than the value that you specify. To

change the resolution, type a value in the adjacent box. The default is 2400 dpi.

Kodak alternate <list> defined for images

Determines whether a Kodak alternate image is defined for images. An alternate image is used when creating low resolution PDFs from Publish PDF, or Vector output from Prinergy, or Insite Prepress Portal.

- To detect whether alternate images are present, select **Kodak alternate <is> defined for images**.
- To add alternate images if they aren't present, select **Kodak alternate <is not> defined for images** and then select the **Fix** check box.

Image has alternates defined

PDF Preflight detects whether the PDF file contains alternate images for printing.

If you want to use an alternate image, select the **And one of the alternates is the default for printing** check box.

Files contain CEPS data

Determines whether the PDF file contains any CEPS (CT/LW) or TIFF/IT files.

If you select the **Files contain CEPS data** check box, PDF Preflight marks the CT/LW data so that it is not trapped and overprint settings are not modified. Trapping CT/LW data may produce artifacts such as hairline gaps on the refined PDF. Changing overprint settings may create a result that was not intended, such as removing existing traps.

Select this check box for pages on which the content is mixed. For example, the content may have vector text and CEPS format images.

Image uses 16 bits per channel

PDF Preflight detects whether the PDF file contains any images that use 16 bits per sample.

Position

Image is rotated at an angle that is not a multiple of 90 degrees

Determines whether the PDF file contains an image that is rotated at an angle that is not a multiple of 90 degrees.

Image is skewed

Determines whether the PDF file contains an image that has a skew transformation applied. Ripping a skewed image from a PostScript format into a raster (or bitmap format) can be very time- and memory-intensive.

Image is flipped horizontally

Determines whether the PDF file contains an image that has been transformed into a mirror image.

Image is not scaled proportionally

Determines whether the PDF file contains an image in which the X scaling differs from the Y scaling.

To specify how much the X scaling can differ from the Y scaling, select the **Option** check box and type a number in the adjacent box. For example, if you select the **Option** check box and type 0.5%, PDF Preflight only detects images in which the X scaling differs from the Y scaling by more than 0.5%.

Compression

Color or grayscale images

Determines whether the PDF file contains images that are compressed using one or more of the on-screen options. From the **Options** menu, select one of the following options:

- **JPEG compressed.** JPEG compression removes image data and may reduce image quality. It can achieve much smaller file sizes than ZIP compression.
- **JPEG2000 compressed.** JPEG2000 compression may remove image data and may reduce image quality. It can achieve much smaller file sizes than ZIP compression.

Note: If an image is compressed with JPEG2000 compression and you modify it in Prinerger (for example, downsampling or color matching the image), Prinerger will not be able to encode it back to JPEG2000 compression. Therefore, it is recommended to select this check box, so that these images are detected, and then select the **Fix** check box and select **ZIP** (preferred) or **JPEG** as an alternative compression type.

- **ZIP compressed.** ZIP compression works well with large areas of single colors or repeating patterns, such as screenshots and simple images.
- **LZW compressed.** LZW compression is used in GIF and TIFF files. It is also suitable for compressing text files.
- **Run Length compressed.** Run Length compression does not remove data to reduce the file size, so it doesn't affect the

quality of images. It produces the best results in images that contain large areas of solid white or black.

- **Not compressed**

To use another compression method for color or grayscale images, select the **Fix** check box and select **JPEG** or **ZIP**. If you select **JPEG**, select a level of quality from the adjacent list.

Black and white images are

Determines whether the PDF file contains black-and-white images that are compressed using one or more of the following methods of the on-screen options. From the **Options** menu, select one of the following options:

- **JBIG compressed**. JBIG compression of bilevel images uses only one bit to express the color value of each pixel. JBIG compression does not remove data to reduce the file size, so it doesn't affect the quality of images.
- **CCITT compressed**. CCITT compression is appropriate for black-and-white images created in paint programs and for images scanned with an image depth of 1 bit. It does not remove data to reduce the file size, so it doesn't affect the quality of images.
- **ZIP compressed**
- **LZW compressed**
- **Run Length compressed**
- **Not compressed**

To use another compression method for black-and-white images, select the **Fix** check box and select **CCITT G4**, **ZIP**, or **Run Length**. CCITT G4 is a general-purpose option that produces good compression for most types of monochrome images.

JPEG compression ratio

Detects JPEG images in the PDF file that may have deteriorated because of a high compression ratio. PDF Preflight looks for images with a higher compression ratio than the value that you specify. The default value is 4.

OPI settings in Preflight Editor

OPI

OPI version is incompatible with

Determines whether the PDF file is incompatible with the OPI version that you specify.

To check OPI compatibilities select the **OPI version is incompatible with** check box and select 1.3, 2.0, or 1.3 and 2.0 from the adjacent list. OPI 2.0 defines a new set of comments and rules with no backward compatibility to version 1.x.

OPI is used

Determines whether the PDF file contains OPI images with a higher resolution than the value that you specify.

To check an OPI image for a PDF file select the **OPI is used** check box. To remove OPI image references with a higher resolution than you want, select the **Fix** check box and type the maximum resolution in the adjacent box.

Note: PDF Preflight will not detect OPI images if the **Search for High-Resolution Images in Image Search Paths** check box is selected on the **Fonts and Images** panel in the Refine process template. PDF Preflight will not detect non embedded fonts, if the **Fail on Missing Fonts** check box is selected on the **Fonts and Images** panel in the Refine process template.

High-resolution image in OPI path is missing

Determines whether the high-resolution image is missing in the OPI path or in any folders in the path. If the image is missing, additional processing of the PDF file may fail.

Text and Line Art settings in Preflight Editor

Text and Line Art

Text is smaller than <list> points

Determines whether the PDF file contains text that is smaller than the font point size that you specify. The default is 5 points.

Text is smaller than <list> and is colored with <list> or more separations

Determines whether the PDF file contains text that is smaller than the font point size that you specify and is colored with the number of separations that you specify. The defaults are 8 points for the font and two separations.

Text is smaller than <list> points and white

Determines whether the PDF file contains white text that is smaller than the point size that you specify. The default is 5 points.

White text does not knock out

Determines whether the PDF file contains white text that does not knock out (that is, the text is invisible).

To knock out white text, select the **Fix** check box.

Black text is smaller than <list> points and does not overprint

Determines whether the PDF file contains black text that does not overprint and is smaller than the font point size that you specify.

To overprint the black text, select the **Fix** check box.

Text is invisible (text has no fill nor stroke color)

Determines whether the PDF file contains text that uses neither stroke nor fill (that is, the text is invisible).

To remove the invisible text, select the **Fix** check box.

Line width less than <list> points

Determines whether the PDF file contains lines narrower than the width value that you specify. The default is 2.0 points.

To increase the minimum line width, select the **Fix** check box.

Some software, such as Adobe Illustrator, creates color blends between path objects by overlapping objects of a similar shape, position, and color. This produces the visual effect of a shading object. To protect the blend of these objects, select the **Protect Blend** check box.

The following blend types are supported:

- Radial blends with concentric circles that are increasing or decreasing
- Axial blends with overlapping paths of a similar shape but a slightly different position
- Interleaved blends made up of groups of paths with a similar shape but a slightly different position

Line width less than <list> points and is colored with <list> or more separations

Determines whether the PDF file contains lines narrower than the width value that you specify and that are colored with the number of separations that you specify. The defaults are 5.0 points and two separations.

To increase the minimum line width, select the **Fix** check box.

White objects do not knock out

Determines whether the PDF file contains white objects that are not set to knock out.

To knock out white objects, select the **Fix** check box.

Flatness tolerance is different than <list> points

Determines whether the flatness tolerance in the PDF file is different than the value that you specify. The flatness tolerance controls the maximum permitted distance in device pixels between the original path and an approximation of straight-line segments. In other words, flatness tolerance controls the precision of curve rendering.

To set the flatness tolerance in the PDF file to the number of points that you specify, select the **Fix** check box.

Maximum miter limit is above <list>

Determines whether the PDF file contains text and line art that has a miter limit above the number that you specify. The default is 10.0 points.

To decrease the miter limit of text and line art to the number specified, select the **Fix** check box.

Line art is invisible (line art has no fill nor stroke color)

Determines whether the PDF file contains line art that uses neither fill nor a stroke color (that is, the line art is invisible).

To remove the invisible line art, select the **Fix** check box.

Live Area**Measurement units**

Determines the linear units used for the size of pages. You can select points, picas, inches, centimeters, or millimeters. The default is points.

Live area detection: Page contains text that is too close to the inside of the trim box

Determines how close text can be to the trim box.

To adjust the live area detection, enter the desired values. By default, live area detection is turned off.

PDF/X settings in Preflight Editor

PDF/X

Document does not conform to

Determines whether the PDF file conforms to PDF/X-1a or PDF/X-3. PDF/X is an exchange format for sending pages between a page preparation and printing site. PDF/X is a subset of the full PDF specification and is intended to be more predictable because it has commonly agreed-on characteristics.

To determine whether the PDF file conforms to one of the PDF/X formats, select one of the following options:

- **PDF/X-1a**
- **PDF/X-3:** suitable for a color-managed workflow and allows for the exchange of data in the device color space or in an independent color space, such as L*a*b*, CalGray, or CalRGB

To convert the file to PDF/X-1a or PDF/X-3 select the **Fix** check box and set the output intent that resides in the root of the PDF file. The output intent describes how the PDF file should be printed using a CMYK printing process. An output intent uses either a registered profile (Standard ICC) or an output profile (CMYK output ICC profiles).

- **Standard ICC:** a reference to a registered ICC profile on <http://www.color.org>. It is always set to CGATS TR 001, which is SWOP (publication) printing in the U.S.
- **CMYK output ICC profiles:** from the adjacent list, select an output ICC profile that was set up in PDF Preflight.

Output intent does not conform to <list> requirements

Checks that the output intent is valid according to the selected PDF/X standards. The output intent identifies the final output destination of the PDF file, so that everyone involved in the workflow can take the output intent into account.

If the output intent is not valid, set the output intent in the PDF document to:

- A standard ICC characterization name
- A CMYK ICC profile

Document contains embedded PostScript fragments

Determines whether the PDF file contains embedded PostScript fragments. PostScript fragments may change the appearance of the printed document but they don't appear in the screen preview of the file.

PDF/X format does not permit PostScript fragments in a PDF file. Removing a fragment from a PDF file may also alter other elements.

TrapNet annotation does not conform to <list> requirements

Detects whether the PDF file contains TrapNet annotations that do not conform to **PDF/X-1a:2001** or **PDF/X-3:2002** requirements, depending on your selection.

Detect Unknown Objects

PDF Preflight detects whether the PDF file contains unknown objects.

PDF/X version key is not set to <list>

Detects whether the version key for the PDF file is set to **PDF/X-1a:2001** or **PDF/X-3:2002**, depending on your selection.

Document contains annotation which lies inside printable area (except TrapNet)

PDF Preflight detects whether the PDF file contains annotations which lie inside the printable area, except for TrapNet.

To remove annotations which lie inside the printable area except for TrapNet, select the **Fix** check box.

Image search paths

About image search paths

An image search path specifies the location of a job's high-resolution images. They tell the system where to search for referenced images.

Image search paths apply only when:

- Images are not embedded inside input files. You do not use image search paths when images are embedded inside input files.
- The input files have OPI comments
- The input files have not yet been processed
- OPI is enabled by selecting the **Search for High-Resolution Images in Image Search Paths** check box in the **Fonts and Images** section of the refine process template

If a job uses images in multiple folders, add an image search path for each folder and then specify the order in which you want the system to search the folders.

You can copy an image search path from an existing job when you create the job or after it is created.

How Prinergy searches for images

When searching for image files, Prinergy uses the following information:

- The location of the input PostScript file
- The path and file name content of each OPI comment
- The user-specified image search path from the Image Search Paths dialog box

If you use multiple image search paths, the list of search paths in the Image Search Paths dialog box determines the order in which they are searched. In other words, the system searches the paths starting at the top of the list in the Image Search Paths dialog box. Click the **Move Up** and **Move Down** buttons in the Image Search Paths dialog box to rearrange the order of the search paths. See the example below.

To control the search, you can:

- Determine whether Prinergy searches the subfolders of image search paths by selecting or clearing the **Search Subfolders** check box in the **Image Replacement** area of the **Fonts and Images** section of the process template. Prinergy searches the subfolders in alphabetical order, and searches all immediate subfolders before looking deeper. See the example below.
- Ignore certain types of images by selecting the **Skip Images With These Suffixes** check box and specifying the file extensions that you want the search to omit.
- Determine whether the refine process continues if an image is not found by selecting or clearing the **Failing on missing images** check box in the **Fonts and Images** section in the refine process template.

Example of searching multiple folders

Given the following conditions:

- A Macintosh share (used when writing the PostScript file) named MacVolume1 at \\NT1\Share1\Folder1.
- The input PostScript file is located at \\NT1\Share1\Folder1\Folder2\PostScriptFile.ps.

The Macintosh computer sees this location as MacVolume1:Folder2:PostScriptFile.ps.

- One of the images used in the PostScript file is located at \\NT1\Share1\Folder1\ImageFolder\Image.eps.

The Macintosh computer sees this location as MacVolume1:ImageFolder\Image.eps.

- The PostScript file contains the OPI comment:
%ALDImageFileName: MacVolume1:ImageFolder:Image.eps.
- The Image Search Paths dialog box in Prinergy Workshop contains the following image search paths:

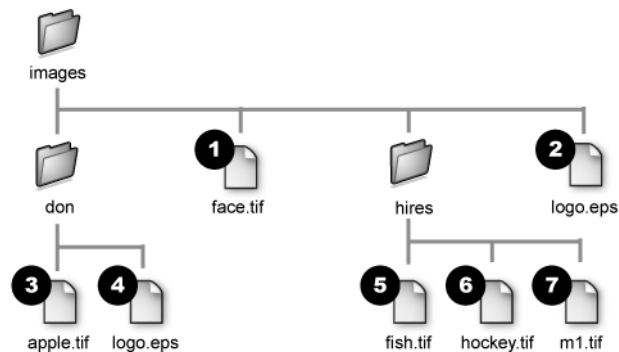
```
\\NT2\Share2\Folder3\Folder4\ImageFolder2
\\NT1\Share1\Folder1
```

Prinergy uses the following path names, in the order indicated, to find Image .eps:

1. The same directory as the input PostScript file: \
\\NT1\Share1\Folder1\Folder2\Image .eps
2. The first image search path: \
\\NT2\Share2\Folder3\Folder4\ImageFolder2\Image .eps
3. The second image search path: \
\\NT1\Share1\Folder1\Image .eps
4. The same directory as the input PostScript file, with the **%ALDImageFileName:** path \
\\NT1\Share1\Folder1\Folder2\ImageFolder\Image .eps
5. The first image search path, with the **%ALDImageFileName:** path \
\\NT2\Share2\Folder3\Folder4\ImageFolder2\ImageFolder\Image .eps
6. The second image search path, with the **%ALDImageFileName:** path \
\\NT1\Share1\Folder1\ImageFolder\Image .eps

Example of Searching Subfolders

This diagram shows the search order if the search path was set to the `images` folder. The numbers indicate the order in which Prinergy encounters each file as it searches through the subfolders.



If Prinergy was looking for the `fish.tif` image, it would find file number 5 inside the `hires` folder after searching the `images` root folder and after searching the `don` folder. If Prinergy was looking for

the `logo.eps` image, it would find file number 2 rather than number 4.

If you give different images the same name, Prinergy may discover the images in unexpected ways. The diagram contains two images named `logo.eps`; this ambiguity could cause undesirable results. If there is any doubt, carefully check the refined pages.

Recursive searching can take a long time if Prinergy has to search many subfolders. Performance of refine processing may be affected. Be cautious when using this feature with search paths that point to large disks.

About Macintosh characters and paths

This topic does not address the Macintosh character set or possibilities of translation from the Macintosh character set to the Windows NT file name character set. All names in these examples are very simple. This is only for clarity; it is not intended to imply restrictions on character sets.

The system parses the **%ALDImageFileName:** comment to remove the first portion of a Macintosh path. That portion is considered the disk name. The system always ignores the disk name, because the name may be ambiguous, or it may not exist as a folder name under the Windows NT operating system.

Because the system removes the disk name, you can specify a disk name in the Image Search Paths dialog box. To select a disk name, click the **Volumes** button in the Image Search Paths dialog box, and then select a volume. The system interprets the selected volume as the disk name for the job.

About OPI

Prinergy accepts PostScript and PDF files that contains OPI links and merges in high-resolution images following an image search path defined by selecting **Image Search Path** from the **Job** menu in Job Manager.

The parameters for OPI are set in the **Fonts and Images** section of the refine process template, and OPI is resolved as part of that process. This allows Prinergy to work with complete, optimized, reliable digital masters carrying full resolution data-everything needed to output to any device.

If you prefer, you can choose to continue using your own OPI. In this case, you should perform OPI before adding input files to a Prinergy job, and turn off the Prinergy OPI in the **Fonts and Images** section of the refine process template.

For TIFF images, you can use clipping paths, spot colors, soft masks, and drop shadows with OPI.

Supported image formats

The table below lists the file formats that OPI supports and does not support.

| Supported | Not Supported |
|--|---|
| EPS (RGB, grayscale, bitmap, CMYK, LAB, monotone, Photoshop duotone), Scitex APR | JPEG TIFF (JIFF) |
| Scitex .e linked to CMYK TIFF, CMYK DCS, CMYK + spot DCS, and multiple Scitex .e linked to a single HiRes file | Scitex .e linked to spot TIFF |
| TIFF (RGB, grayscale, bitmap, CMYK, LAB, LZW-compressed, JPEG-compressed) | TIFF/IT |
| Scitex CT (CMYK, grayscale) | CT (RGB) |
| JPEG-encoded EPS (composite PostScript) | JPEG-encoded DCS (separated PostScript) |
| JPEG | JPEG 2000 |
| PDF (Some software such as InDesign allows you to omit placed PDFs for replacement with OPI. This is supported with Prinergy OPI.) | |
| *Photoshop DCS 1.0 in a composite workflow. Formats supported: 8-bit binary and ASCII Hex data format, 1-bit Copydot | 1-bit images and other types of DCS 1.0 files in a composite workflow—for example, Vector DCS |
| *Photoshop DCS 2.0 in a composite workflow Formats supported: 8-bit binary, ASCII Hex data format, and the data format where the decode was first done by an ASCII 85 filter and then by a JPEG filter, 1-bit Copydot | 1-bit images and other types of DCS 2.0 files in a composite workflow—for example, Vector DCS |
| *Copydot DCS in a composite page from Renaissance scanner, EskoScan, Autologic, PCC, LinoColor, DCSMaker, Fuji, Cezanne, or NewsWay | |

*Prinergy enables OPI to support DCS 1.0 and 2.0 by intercepting the DCS set during the OPI merge and substituting the DCS set with a composite EPS file. Prinergy generates the EPS file by recombining the color channels from the DCS set into a DeviceN image.

Supported Image References in PostScript Input Files

Prinergy's OPI supports the following image references in PostScript input files:

- OPI version 1.3
- OPI version 2.0
- Imagemanager Pro (.lay file extensions)
- Scitex APR (.e file extensions)
- Helios (.lay file extensions)
- ColorCentral (.samp file extensions)

Note: In some cases, the above software can produce a low-resolution image that has a different file extension than the original high-resolution image. When PostScript input files contain low-resolution images that have different file extensions than the high-resolution images, Prinergy can replace the low-resolution image with the high-resolution image as long as both files are in the same folder.

About optimizing images

Optimizing is a function of the refiner that allows Prinergy to effectively handle high-resolution images in the PDF workflow. Images are downsampled according to specifications in the refine process template and cropped automatically, so only the necessary resolution and image portions are stored.

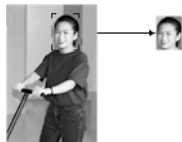
Downsampling

Sometimes the resolution specified for a contone image in the desktop publishing software is greater than is needed, even for high-quality color work. The additional resolution does not enhance the quality of the image, but does make files larger. Downsampling stores the image at a more appropriate resolution. An accepted rule of thumb is to set downsampling to a ppi (pixels per inch) value that is twice the final printed line screen or lpi (lines per inch). This is set in the **Optimize** section of the refine process template.

Image cropping

When an image is included in a file, but the whole image is not required, the file size is larger than necessary. Image cropping removes all image information that is not visible, except for a small border around the visible image. This happens automatically during the refine process when converting PostScript to PDF.

In the example below, the entire image was stored in the input file. The area within the rectangle is the visible portion. Optimizing discards almost all of the non-visible portions of the image (a border of 1 pixel outside the bounding box is retained).



Adding image search paths

1. Open the job or pre-job.
2. From the **Job** menu, select **Image Search Path**.
3. In the Image Search Paths dialog box, click **Add**.
4. In the Select Folder dialog box, select the folder that contains the images for the job, and click **Select "<folder>"**.
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each folder that you want searched.
Note: Subfolders are not searched. Add a search path for each specific folder that you want searched.
6. If you added more than one image search path for more than one folder, set the order in which they will be searched by selecting folders and clicking **Move Up** or **Move Down** to move folders up or down in the list.
7. Click **OK**.

Deleting image search paths

1. Open the job or pre-job.
2. From the **Job** menu, select **Image Search Path**.
3. In the Image Search Paths dialog box, select the image search path and click **Delete**.
4. Click **OK**.

Setting the order of image search paths

1. Open the job or pre-job.
2. From the **Job** menu, select **Image Search Path**.
3. In the Image Search Paths dialog box, select a folder and click **Move Up** or **Move Down** to move the folder up or down the list.
Move Up and **Move Down** are available only when the **Image search paths** list contains more than one folder.
4. Click **OK**.

Image Search Paths dialog box

Image search paths

Lists the folders that contain images for the job. The order in which the folders are listed is the order in which the system will search the folders, starting with the folder at the top of the list.

Add

Adds a path to the job. When you click this button, the Select Folder dialog box appears. From there, you can select the folder that the system will search for fonts or images.

Delete

Deletes the selected path.

Move Up

Moves the selected folder higher in the list of paths.

The system searches the folders in the order in which they are listed, starting with the folder at the top of the list.

The button is available only when the paths list contains more than one folder.

Move Down

Moves the selected folder lower in the list of paths.

The order in which the path folders are listed is the order in which the system will search the folders, starting with the folder at the top of the list.

The button is available only when the paths list contains more than one folder.

Select Folder dialog box

Unlabeled list and results area

Selecting an item in the list at the top left of the dialog box displays that item's contents in the box below.

When you select:

- **Volumes**, the volumes in your system appear
- A volume name, folders at the root of the selected volume appear
- A folder name, files within the folder appear

The path of the displayed item in the list appears in reverse order, for example, folder name followed by volume name.

Volumes

Displays all volumes in the Prinergy system.

Job Folder

Opens the job folder for the current job.

Open

Opens the selected item.

Show Hidden Files

Select this check box to include hidden files, such as system files, in the results.

You can set the default selection of this check box on the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Relative

Select this option to add an image search path relative to the job folder. Only the job folder itself or folders within the job folder can be added as relative image search paths.

This is useful when you know that the images for all of your jobs will always be stored in the job's job folder. If you create a template job with a relative image search path pointing to the template job's job folder, each job that you base on the template job automatically has an image search path pointing to its own job folder.

Note: This option is visible only when you open the Select Folder dialog box from the Image Search Paths dialog box, not when you open it from the Create Hot Folder for Job dialog box.

Select "<folder>"

Adds a path to the folder selected in the list, and closes the Select Folder dialog box.

Fonts

Font handling overview

Prinerger requires that fonts be in Printer Font ASCII format. You may need to use the Font Converter or add a font search path to the job.

If fonts are embedded in input files, or if the input files reference only the base 138 Adobe fonts that are shipped with Prinerger in PFA (Printer Font ASCII) format, Prinerger can refine and output PDF pages without the Font Converter or a font search path.

If fonts are not embedded in input files, use the Font Converter to make the font information available to Prinerger in PFA format. Add a font search path to the job for the job to be able to use the converted fonts. The font search path tells Prinerger where to locate the fonts for the job. When Prinerger refines the job, the normalize step embeds font

information from the specified **Fonts** folder in the PDF pages it creates during the refine process.

If your input files contain OpenType fonts that are not embedded in the file, or fonts from the Microsoft font suitcase, add the location of the fonts to the font search path. There is no need to use the Font Converter.

Subsetting or embedding fonts

Prinerger can process files with either subsetted or embedded fonts. Fully embedding fonts increases file size but in some situations it is preferable. For example, when you use Acrobat 6 to merge multiple PDF files, embedding fonts results in fewer problems with font resources and preserves the ability to edit fonts.

Font Converter

Use the Font Converter to convert font files to PFA (Printer Font ASCII) format, which Prinerger requires to correctly process fonts.

Font Converter contains two tabs: a **Global** tab and a **Job** tab. Fonts on the **Global** tab are stored on the home server and are available to all jobs. Fonts on the **Job** tab are stored in the job folder and are available only to that job. When in doubt, use the **Job** tab.

When Prinerger uses converted fonts

Prinerger uses converted fonts in two places:

- During the refine process, the normalize function uses PFA fonts to embed font information in the PDF pages it produces.
- During the output process, the renderer requires fonts in PFA format.

Supported source font types and formats

Font type refers to the content and structure of the information that is used to describe a font. Font format refers to the type of file that is used to store a font type.

The Font Converter can convert the following font types:

- PostScript Type 1
- PostScript Type 3
- PostScript Type 42
- PostScript Type 1 Multiple Master
- TrueType

The Font Converter can convert the following font formats:

| Source font format | Description |
|--|--|
| Macintosh PostScript in NTFS multi-stream file | No file name extension expected with font file. Finder type LWFN expected. POST resource in resource fork evaluated. Format may contain all supported PostScript font types. |
| Macintosh TrueType in NTFS multi-stream file | No file name extension expected with font file. Finder type TFIL expected. SFNT resource in resource fork evaluated. Format only contains TrueType font type. |
| Windows PFA | No file name extension expected with font file. Format may contain all supported PostScript font types. |
| Windows PFB | File name extension (.pfb) expected with font file. Format may contain all supported PostScript font types. |
| Windows TrueType | File name extension (.ttf) expected with font file. Format contains only TrueType font type. |

Converted font type and format

The Font Converter always converts fonts to a PostScript font type PFA format.

When the Font Converter converts PostScript font types, the font type remains the same, but the format usually changes. When the Font Converter converts TrueType fonts, the font type changes to PostScript Type 42, and the format changes to PFA.

Note: For fonts that are difficult to convert, try using Macromedia Fontographer to convert to a supported format.

Limitations of Font Converter

SMB file-sharing protocol does not support the Font Converter feature in Workshop. Font Converter works only with font files that have resource forks stored in an NTFS alternate data stream. Since SMB has resource forks stored in separate files, you need to manually convert the font files' resources to AFP format.

Font search paths

You need to use a font search path if the fonts for the job are not available.

The font search path specifies the location of the fonts. You can copy a font search path from an existing job when you create a new job, or you can set the font search path later, from Job Manager.

You do not need to set a font search path when either of the following is true:

- The fonts are embedded in the job files
- The fonts are in the <Job Folder>\Fonts folder

When Prinergy processes a job and detects that fonts are missing, it automatically looks in the following places, in the following order:

1. The location specified in the font search path for the job
2. The <Job Folder>\Fonts folder (for fonts converted for a specific job)
3. The %AraxiHome%\CreoAraxi\Data\Fonts folder (for fonts converted for all jobs)

When the fonts you want to use for the job are located in two or more folders, you must add a search path for each folder that you want Prinergy to search, and specify the order in which you want Prinergy to search the folders.

Missing or non-embedded fonts can be embedded into the PDF during the refining process. The font locations which the refiner uses for embedding are:

- Normalizer fonts: %AraxiHome%\AdobeExtreme\bin\fonts
- Global font converter fonts: %AraxiHome%\CreoAraxi\data\fonts
- Job font converter fonts: <Job Folder>\Fonts

Notes: The 14 base fonts are automatically embedded during refining. Therefore, the Prinergy normalize function will not detect missing 14 base fonts in a PDF file. To avoid this, customers can either:

- Clear the **Ignore the 14 base fonts** check box in the Preflight Profile Editor.
- Move the Normalizer fonts (except for Courier) out of the %AraxiHome%\AdobeExtreme\bin\fonts folder. This prohibits the normalize function from embedding missing fonts, and causes the normalize function to fail even for the missing 14 base fonts.

OpenType fonts

The Font Converter does not support OpenType fonts.

If your input files contain OpenType fonts that are not embedded in the file, add the location of the OpenType fonts to the font search path. This is likely a rare scenario, since software capable of handling OpenType fonts is also able to embed them.

Although the Font Converter cannot convert OpenType fonts, most native applications, for example Adobe Creative Suite 3, convert OpenType fonts to PostScript Type 1 (which the Font Converter supports) when embedding fonts. You can also include embedded OpenType fonts when exporting a PDF file from Macromedia FreeHand. As OpenType fonts gain popularity, more software will start supporting embedded OpenType fonts in exported PDF files.

Asian fonts

Prinerger supports CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) characters using the Character Identifier (CID) font file format; it does not support the Original Composite Format (OCF) font file format.

The following features are available:

- Downloading of aftermarket fonts from Apple Inc.
- Embedding of fonts during normalizing
- Trapping of fonts
- Outputting of fonts to proofing and final output devices

Frequently asked questions

- Is it feasible to normalize to PDF, embedding the CID fonts, and then output to RIPs that do not have those same CID fonts installed? What are the technical and legal implications of doing this?

As long as the font vendor has determined that their license allows end users to embed the fonts, it should work.

- Are bitmap fonts available for use on a Mac computer for page layout?

Bitmap fonts for each CJK set are available from Adobe Systems, Inc. and other vendors' Web sites—for example, Monotype Imaging Inc.

- Is there an upgrade policy for users who purchased OCF-formatted fonts to upgrade to the new CID font format?

For Adobe fonts, yes. Contact the font vendor for the latest upgrade pricing.

Available font bundles

When you purchase Prinerger, one of the following bundles is available, depending on the country in which you live.

Note: You can purchase only one factory font bundle; that bundle must be appropriate to your region. For example, if you are in Japan, you can buy either the Basic Japanese or Advanced Japanese bundle, but not both.

| Font bundle | Bundle contains |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Basic Japanese | First five Morisawa font programs |
| Full Japanese | All 23 Morisawa font programs |
| Simplified Chinese | All SinoType font programs |

| Font bundle | Bundle contains |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| Traditional Chinese | All Monotype font programs |
| Korean | All Han Yang font programs |
| CJK | All of the above |

The following table lists which font bundles are available in specific countries. If you require more fonts than the ones in the available font bundle, you must purchase the fonts locally, and load them as aftermarket fonts.

| Country | Available font bundle |
|----------------------------|--|
| Japan | Basic Japanese or Full Japanese or CJK |
| People's Republic of China | Simplified Chinese or CJK |
| Taiwan | Traditional Chinese or CJK |
| Hong Kong | Traditional Chinese or CJK |
| Korea | Korean or CJK |

CJK fonts are sold only as high-resolution versions. Japanese CJK fonts are quite expensive, both for Kodak and for customers purchasing those fonts as aftermarket packages. Kodak offers bundles as a convenience to our customers. Purchasing bundles saves the time and effort of purchasing the entire library and probably also saves money.

Some other issues to consider:

- Kodak cannot sell single font faces to customers. Fonts must be part of a defined package. Contact Adobe or other font vendors to purchase additional fonts.
- Kodak pays royalties for installed fonts for in-house systems (for example, demonstration systems, and so on) at the same fee schedule as for end users.
- These configurations don't cover the standard Roman versions or any other potential versions (Arabic, Cyrillic, and so on). Kodak is not obligated by Adobe to provide such versions.
- If you install the aftermarket font without the font bundle, and then install the bundled font from Kodak, the aftermarket font may not work. For this situation, you need to get a new license for the aftermarket font from the font vendor, and then reinstall the font.

Here are the existing font bundles:

- Configuration 1: Japanese, Standard (five faces)

All of these fonts use the Adobe-Japan1-5 Character Collection. Morisawa & Company, Ltd. owns the trademarks.

Ryumin Light KL

Gothic Medium BBB

Futo Min A101

Futo Go B101

Jun 101

- Configuration 2: Japanese, Deluxe (23 faces)

All of these fonts use the Adobe-Japan1-5 Character Collection. Morisawa & Company, Ltd. owns the trademarks.

Ryumin Light KL

Gothic Medium BBB

Futo Min A101

Futo Go B101

Jun 101

Midashi Min MA31

Midashi Go MB31

Shinsei Kaisho CBSK1

Ryumin Medium M-KL

Ryumin Bold B-KL

Ryumin Ultra U-KL

Shin Gothic L

Shin Gothic M

Shin Gothic B

Shin Gothic U

Jun 34

Jun 501

Gothic MB101 Bold

Gothic MB101 Heavy

Gothic MB101 Ultra

Ryumin Regular R-KL

Ryumin Heavy H-KL

Shin Gothic R

- Configuration 3: Simplified Chinese, Standard (one face)

All of these fonts use the Adobe-GB1-4 Character Collection. Adobe owns the trademarks.

Adobe Song Std-Light

- Configuration 4: Traditional Chinese, Standard (one face)

All of these fonts use the Adobe-CNS1-4 Character Collection.
Adobe owns the trademarks.

Adobe MingStd-Light

- Configuration 5: Korean, (one face)

All of these fonts use the Adobe-Korea 1-2 Character Collection.
Adobe owns the trademarks.

Adobe Myungjo Std-Medium

Font Protection for Factory-Installed Fonts

The only RIP property used to protect factory-installed fonts is license ID. Adobe assigns a unique license ID to each font bundle. For the fonts to be accessible, the ID of the font bundle must match the license ID specified by the RIP executable (Normalizer JTP). (Serial number and product name are relevant to after-market fonts, but not factory-installed fonts.)

Font protection for after-market fonts

Serial number, license ID, and product name properties of the RIP are used together to protect after-market fonts. The license ID and product name do not need to be unique on each hardware system. In the case of a Prinergy system, the license ID and product name will be the same for all component hardware systems.

The AppleTalk Font Downloader used to download the font must derive a unique serial number from some characteristic of the target hardware system. The AppleTalk Font Downloader encrypts the font files with a key derived from the serial number, license ID, and product name. For the font to be used or embedded into PDF on the target system, the RIP (Normalizer JTP) on that system must have the same serial number.

By default, and according to agreements with Morisawa, Adobe derives the serial number from the MAC (medium access control) address of the network card installed on the target system. This prevents the user from copying the installed font files from the original target system to a different system, and then using or embedding a font. To prevent the user from downloading the font from various systems, typical after-market font installers have a protection scheme that permits only a limited number of installs (for example, three).

Converting fonts

Convert fonts using the Font Converter.

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Font Converter**. If you are converting fonts for a specific job only, open Font Converter from **Job Manager**.

The Font Installation dialog box appears. The **Currently Installed Fonts** box lists the fonts that have already been converted and installed.

2. Select the volume on which the fonts you want to convert are stored, and click **Open**.
3. Select and open folders in the volume until you find the fonts that you want to convert.
4. Select the fonts, and click **Install**.
5. After Prinergy converts the selected fonts, click **Done**.
6. Add a font search path by performing the following as appropriate:

| If you converted fonts on this tab | Do this |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Global | For each job that uses the global fonts, add a font search path to the <code>CreoAraxi\Data\Fonts</code> folder on the home server that you are logged into. |
| Job | Add a font search path to the <code><Job Folder>\Font</code> folder for the job. |

Font Installation dialog box

Use the Font Installation dialog box to find and install fonts on your system, and to remove installed fonts. The dialog box is available from the **Tools** menu.

Unlabeled list and results area

Selecting an item in the list at the top left of the dialog box displays that item's contents in the box below.

When you select:

- **Volumes**, the volumes in your system appear
- A volume name, folders at the root of the selected volume appear
- A folder name, files within the folder appear

The path of the displayed item in the list appears in reverse order, for example, folder name followed by volume name.

Show Hidden Files

Select this check box to include hidden files, such as system files, in the results.

You can set the default selection of this check box on the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Volumes

Displays all volumes in the Prinergy system.

Open

Opens the selected item.

Install

Installs selected files to the **Global** tab or the **Job** tab, whichever is selected.

Remove

Removes selected files from the **Global** tab or the **Job** tab, whichever is selected.

Currently Installed Fonts

Global

Lists the fonts that are available to all jobs.

Job

Lists the fonts that are available only to the current job (the job from which you opened the Font Installation dialog box).

Using font search paths

Add, delete, or change the order of font search paths.

Note: You may also create a new job and base it on a template job that has the font search path you want to use.

1. From the **Job** menu, select **Font Search Path**.

2. In the Font Search Path dialog box:

| To | Do this |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Add a font search path | <p>a. Click Add.</p> <p>b. In the Select Folder dialog box, select a folder.</p> <p>Note: By default, the job folder appears, unless the job volume is not mounted. The list displays only folders; it does not display font files. Subfolders are not searched. You need to add a search path for each folder that you want searched.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To add a search path for fonts that have been converted with the Font Converter and are used globally, select the following folder: AraxiVolume on <your primary server>\CreoAraxi\Data\Fonts. To add a search path for fonts that have been converted with the Font Converter and are job-specific, select the following folder: <Job Folder>\Fonts. <p>c. Click Select "<folder name>".</p> |
| Delete a font search path | <p>a. Select the font search path folder.</p> <p>b. Click Delete.</p> |
| Change the font search path order | <p>a. Select the font search path folder.</p> <p>b. Click the Move Up or Move Down buttons to change the order of the selected folder.</p> <p>Note: The system searches through the folders starting at the first one on the list.</p> |

3. Click **OK**.

Font Search Path dialog box

Use the Font Search Path dialog box to modify font search paths. The dialog box is available from the **Job** menu.

Font Search Paths

Lists the folders that contain fonts for the job. The system searches the folders in the order in which the folders are listed, starting with the folder at the top of the list.

Add

Adds a path to the job. When you click this button, the Select Folder dialog box appears. From there, you can select the folder that the system will search for fonts or images.

Delete

Deletes the selected path.

Move Up

Moves the selected folder higher in the list of paths.

The system searches the folders in the order in which they are listed, starting with the folder at the top of the list.

The button is available only when the paths list contains more than one folder.

Move Down

Moves the selected folder lower in the list of paths.

The order in which the path folders are listed is the order in which the system will search the folders, starting with the folder at the top of the list.

The button is available only when the paths list contains more than one folder.

Adobe in Prinerger

About Adobe applications

Once you have refined input files to create PDF files you can:

- view the PDF pages on-screen using Adobe Acrobat
- modify page geometry using Adobe Acrobat
- edit traps using the PDF Trap Editor plug-in
- edit the PDF pages on-screen using Adobe Illustrator

You can start Acrobat from the **File** menu in Prinerger, or you can double-click a PDF page in Prinerger Workshop to automatically launch Acrobat.

You can start Illustrator using **File > Open PDF for Editing**, or you can right-click a PDF page in the **Pages** pane of the **Pages** view of Job Manager to convert the PDF page and edit it using Illustrator.

About trapping tools

Prinerger includes the following trapping components:

- Automatic trapper using the PDF Trapper JTP

This trapping component is part of Prinerger Workshop. It lets you do automatic trapping as a part of the refining process, using the

trapping parameters set in the refine process template. Additional automatic trapping options are available in PDF Trap Editor.

- PDF Trap Viewer

The PDF Trap Viewer is included with the purchase of Prinergy. It is a plug-in to Adobe Acrobat that lets you view traps created with the automatic trapper.

- PDF Trap Editor

The PDF Trap Editor is an additional trapping component that can be purchased separately. The PDF Trap Editor is a plug-in to Adobe Acrobat that allows you to interactively create, change, and delete traps. The advanced features of the PDF Trap Editor, such as setting trap geometry, making keepaway traps, and trap path editing, are used primarily in packaging.

Trapping using these tools has the following advantages:

- Resolution independence is maintained
- Prinergy can do spreads, chokes, and center traps
- You can view traps in the PDF Trap Viewer plug-in
- If you purchase a PDF Trap Editor plug-in, you can create and edit traps interactively

If you need to adjust any traps, you can do the following:

- Retrap automatically with a different set of process template parameters
- Use the PDF Trap Editor to retrap an entire page or change individual traps

For more information on the trapping tools, launch Adobe Acrobat, select **Plug-In Help** from the **Help** menu, and then select **PDF Trap Editor** from the submenu.

Note: The PDF Trap Editor is object-based, so it traps object to object or object to image. An object-based trapper is also sometimes called a vector-based trapper. Other types of trappers include raster trappers and hybrid trappers. A raster trapper traps rasterized data. Hybrid trappers combine raster and vector-based trapping.

Trapping using other methods

There are other methods and tools for trapping as described below. However, the content generator (the person creating the document) does not always know much about trapping, so it is best to leave trapping to the prepress shop or printer. As such, we recommend that you trap inside Prinergy using the trapping tools.

If you trap directly in the layout application (QuarkXPress or PageMaker), the following occurs:

- Imported EPS vector art is not trapped.
- Colored text over images can only be spread, not choked.
- PostScript from trapped QuarkXPress documents must be poured as separated files, which means you cannot convert spot colors to process colors in Prinergy. PageMaker has some of the same problems.

If you use a plug-in to QuarkXPress or PageMaker, the plug-in adds the trapping parameters to the QuarkXPress or PageMaker file. The traps are added to the page later.

About plug-ins for Adobe Acrobat

Prinergy may include the following plug-ins for Adobe Acrobat and other tools:

Prinergy PDF Compare—enables you to display differences between the original and revised pages within two versions of the same document

Prinergy PDF Merge—enables you to combine unique content from different versions of the same document into a new output document, while preserving common objects, such as traps and screens

PDF Trap Viewer—lets you check selected trap and object properties in already-refined and trapped PDF pages in Adobe Acrobat. You can also delete all traps

PDF Trap Editor—lets you trap whole pages or selected objects, edit existing traps, add traps, set trap geometry, and create keepaway traps to a refined and/or trapped page in Acrobat. Includes PDF Trap Viewer functions. Contains advanced features used mainly by packaging printers.

Prinergy Separation Viewer—lets you view the separations of a PDF file

Prinergy DotShop—lets you view, select, and edit halftone screening in a PDF file

Prinergy Geometry Editor—lets you visually set the trim size for a page

Prinergy Separation Repair—lets you regroup separations that were incorrectly grouped during refining

Prinergy View Accelerator—speeds up the display of a PDF by using low-resolution (alternate) images

Prinergy Preflight Locator—used with PDF Preflight, it locates the problematic elements in the PDF file directly from the PDF Preflight report

Prinergy Plate Builder—lets you add white, bump, and varnish separations to refined PDF files, based on existing objects in that file

Adobe Acrobat Distiller Assistant software—lets Acrobat Distiller users set options within a PDF file

Color TIFF XT software—solves the background colorized TIFF problem using PostScript 3 technology. XT is necessary only with QuarkXPress versions 4 and 5, not version 6.

Viewing or editing pages

Important: Make sure you delete all the traps in a PDF file before changing the content. You may be unable to delete traps after editing the content. As a result, the traps may remain in the file, possibly appearing as errors in the printed product.

1. In the Pages pane of the **Pages** view or **Signatures** view of Job Manager, click the PDF page you want to view.
2. Perform one of the following actions:
 - From the **File** menu, select **Open in Adobe Acrobat**.
 - Double-click the PDF page you want to view.

Note: You must have the job share mounted before double-clicking a PDF page will automatically launch Adobe Acrobat.

When you edit a page with Adobe Acrobat, the system does not update the thumbnails displayed in Job Manager. If you want to update the thumbnail images, you must refine the PDF page using a refine process template that has the **Thumbnail** section selected.

Viewing or editing traps

Once you open a page in Acrobat, you can start the PDF Trap Viewer or a PDF Trap Editor from the **Editing** toolbar or the **Tools** menu in Acrobat.

The PDF Trap Viewer plug-in is included with Prinergy. It lets you view traps made in Prinergy.

The PDF Trap Editor plug-in is purchased separately and lets you perform the following actions:

- View traps made in Prinergy
- Measure the color of an object, the trap, and the adjacent object
- Check the parameters used for trapping
- Delete individual traps or all traps from a page
- Edit individual traps
- Create traps
- Retrap a page with new parameters
- Edit trap geometry and the trap path, and set keepaway traps.

For assistance, once you have started Adobe Acrobat, see **Plug-In Help** on the **Help** menu in Acrobat.

Note: To view traps, you must have trapped files during the refine process. You control trapping options in the refine process by setting the options in the **Trap** section of a refine process template.

1. In the **Pages** pane of the **Pages** view of Job Manager, double-click a page to start Adobe Acrobat.
2. From the **Tools** menu in Adobe Acrobat, select **Kodak Tools** and then **Kodak PDF Trap Viewer** to view traps, or the **PDF Trap Editor** to view and edit traps.
3. For assistance on using these tools, select **Plug-In Help** from the **Help** menu in Acrobat, and then select **Kodak PDF Trap Editor**.

Deleting traps

You should delete traps from PDF pages before editing the pages because you may be unable to delete traps after editing PDF page content. As a result, the traps may remain in the file, appearing as errors in the printed product.

1. In the **Pages** pane of the **Page** view of Job Manager, double-click a page to start Adobe Acrobat.
2. From the **Tools** menu in Adobe Acrobat, select **Kodak Tools > Kodak PDF Trap Editor**.
3. Click **Delete all traps**.
4. Close the PDF Trap Editor window.
5. Save the PDF file and close Adobe Acrobat.

Starting a plug-in for Adobe Acrobat

- In Acrobat, in the toolbar, click the plug-in icon.

Note: For information on how to use the plug-ins, from the Help menu in Acrobat, select **Plug-in Help**, and then select the plug-in that you want to use.

Prinerger PDF File Editor

With Prinerger PDF File Editor, you can use Adobe Illustrator and Adobe Photoshop to edit refined PDF files.

PDF File Editor is a licensed feature and requires Adobe Illustrator CS3, CS4, or CS5 for either Windows or Macintosh.

Prinerger PDF File Editor includes:

- Prinerger server components that convert a Prinerger PDF file into an Illustrator file containing "Kodak Protected Art" objects and import the changes back into the job after the conversion. This includes:

- A plug-in for Adobe Illustrator that lets you selectively convert Kodak Protected Art objects into native Illustrator objects
- A javascript component for Adobe Illustrator that submits the changed file back into Prinergy
- The ability to automatically recognize changes in geometry and colorants
- A new contextual menu in Prinergy Workshop that lets you open refined PDF files in Illustrator, cancel an editing session, and resolve conflicting edits. A new visible column shows which operator has the PDF file open for editing.

Prinergy PDF File Editor has these benefits:

- Leverage your investment and skill sets in Illustrator and Photoshop so that operators who know Illustrator or Photoshop need no further training to be able to make edits to PDF files.
- Only the objects that need to be changed are converted to Illustrator native format, reducing the risk of an error during the conversion process.
- The Undo command is available if there are any problems converting objects to Illustrator native format.
- Most image types are extracted into the Photoshop .psd format and stored as external links to make image editing easy.
- When text changes are made, only the fonts that are used by the changed text need to be loaded into the system, rather than requiring all of the fonts in the document to be loaded into the system.

At present, Prinergy PDF File Editor has these limitations:

- Not all object types can be converted to Illustrator native format, including:
 - Duotone images. These images are saved as external inks in the PDF file.
 - DeviceN colored fills, strokes, gradients, and text.
 - Gradients that are not radial or linear.
- The color space for art converted to native format must be CMYK. Special color spaces are converted to CMYK on conversion.
- Transparent elements cannot be individually selected for conversion to native art. Entire groups of elements must be converted together.

Note: You can view the properties of a Kodak protected art element in PDF File Editor without first converting the element to Native. In PDF File Editor, select a protected art element, and then select **Protected Art Properties** from the **Window > Kodak** menu. Information about the protected art element is displayed, such as object type, color, fonts used, opacity, transparency blend mode, overprint state, and the applied Dotshop screen instance.

Editing PDF files in Adobe Illustrator

You can convert refined PDF files so that they can be edited in Illustrator, and you can edit photographs or images in the PDF file in Photoshop. After editing the PDF file, you can submit the edited PDF file back to Prinerger.

Requirements:

- PDF File Editor requires Adobe Illustrator CS3, CS4, or CS5 for either Windows or Macintosh.
 - Adobe CS3, CS4, or CS5 must be installed *before* you install Prinerger. If Prinerger is already installed, run **Uninstall Workshop** in the `Prinerger` folder, and then reinstall Workshop after CS3, CS4, or CS5 is installed. When installing Prinerger, be sure to select **Illustrator Plug-ins**.
 - If you want to keep older revisions of your edited pages, you can set the number of revisions to retain in Prinerger Administrator. For information about controlling revisioned pages for InSite, see the *Prinerger System Administration Guide*.
 - Always open `.ai` files in Illustrator, and always open `.psd` files in Photoshop.
 - In Windows, right-click a file with the `.ai` file name extension, and select **Open File With**. If necessary, select **Choose Program**. Highlight the appropriate program, select **Always use the selected program to open this kind of file**, and click **OK**.
 - For Macintosh instructions, in the **Finder Help** menu, search for **Always Open With**, and follow the instructions.
1. In the **Pages** pane of the **Pages** view of Job Manager, right-click a page and select **PDF Editing > Open PDF for Editing**.

If **Prepare PDF for Edit** was selected in the **Optimize** section of the refine process template when the file was refined, Illustrator opens the page for editing. Otherwise, the Process Info dialog box appears, showing the conversion process, and then Illustrator opens the page.

In Job Manager, the file icon changes to show that the file is being edited. You can select **View > Visible Columns > Open For Edit By** to see who is editing the file.

2. In Illustrator, edit the page. You can use Photoshop to edit the images in the Illustrator file.

| To | Do this |
|---|---|
| View the properties of a Kodak protected art element without first converting it to Native. | Select a protected art element, and then select Window > Kodak > Protected Art Properties to display information about the selected protected art element, such as object type, color, fonts used, opacity, transparency blend mode, overprint state, and the applied Dotshop screen instance. |
| Edit object types in native Illustrator format. Some object types must be converted to native Illustrator format before they can be edited. | Select the elements, and then select Filter > Kodak > Convert to Native . When you edit PDF files in Illustrator, the working files are located in <code><Job folder>\System\IllustratorDocumentWorking</code> . You can also select File > Open Recent Files in Illustrator to reopen a file that you were editing. When you finish editing a file, it is deleted from the <code>IllustratorDocumentWorking</code> folder. |
| Use Photoshop to edit images in the PDF file. | Select the image, and then select Edit > Edit Original . |
| Cancel editing of a PDF file. | In the Pages pane of the Pages view of Job Manager, right-click a page and select PDF Editing > Cancel PDF Editing . The file icon changes back to normal to show that the file is no longer being edited. |

3. When you finish editing the PDF file, select **File > Scripts > Kodak > Submit PDF to Prinerdy** to submit the PDF file to Workshop. The PDF file is submitted to a hot folder to be processed by Workshop.

See also:

[Optimize section of the Refine process template](#) on page [245](#)

Resolving conflicts in Prinerdy PDF File Editor

When you are editing a PDF file using Illustrator, if the same file is edited elsewhere, such as in Acrobat, or if that file is refined again, the file will be in a conflict state.

Requirements:

When a file is in a conflict state, the file icon changes to show there is a conflict, and a PDF file with a `.conflict` extension is created in your job folder.

1. In the **Pages** pane of the **Pages** view of Job Manager, right-click a page and select **PDF Editing > Resolve Conflicting Edits**.

Both PDF files open in Acrobat so that you can view and resolve the conflicts.

2. In Acrobat:

| To | Do This |
|--|---|
| Check the differences between PDF files. | Select Advanced > Kodak Tools > Prinergy PDF Compare . |
| Merge a PDF file into the opened PDF file. | Select Advanced > Kodak Tools > Prinergy PDF Merge . |

The file icon changes back to normal to show that the file is no longer in a conflict state.

3. In Job Manager, if you select **PDF Editing > Cancel PDF Editing**, the re-refined PDF file is kept and the PDF with the .conflict extension is deleted.

Kodak Distiller Assistant

Kodak Distiller Assistant overview

The Kodak Distiller Assistant helps Acrobat Distiller produce press-optimized, spot-color-enabled, top-quality PDF files for a composite PDF 1.3 or PostScript 3 workflow.

The extra features of the Kodak Distiller Assistant, which are added via a PostScript start-up file, are derived from the Prinergy normalize function. Implementation of these features is identical between the Prinergy normalize function and Acrobat Distiller, assuring users of consistent results. The Kodak Distiller Assistant makes extensive use of PostScript 3 features, including the following features:

- Idiom Recognition recognizes existing legacy PostScript code and dynamically replaces it with optimized PostScript code.
- Smooth Shades is a graphical object describing a gradient or gradient mesh. Instead of describing many small overlapping rectangles, the PostScript code describes an area to fill and the mathematical representation of the gradient in the gradient's natural color space. Thus, the RIP can apply extended halftoning and advanced rendering algorithms to eliminate the stepping typically found in large areas.
- DeviceN Colorspace allows the PostScript file to describe composite colors involving combinations of process and spot colors, and allows multiple spot colors to be expressed together. This is crucial for describing spot-to-spot blends, duotones, and so on.

For more information, see the *PostScript 3 Language Reference Manual*.

The Kodak Distiller Assistant is technically a file that consists of a group of PostScript "helper" files that resides in the `Startup` folder within the Distiller software. These files are active within both Prinergy Connect and Prinergy Evo and are invoked whenever PostScript and EPS files are encountered on input.

Setting up Kodak Distiller Assistant

Download and install the Kodak Distiller Assistant.

Requirements:

The Kodak Distiller Assistant supports both Mac and Windows clients. This software is compatible with Adobe Acrobat 4.0 (or later), for Microsoft Windows 98, Windows XP, Windows NT, Windows 2000, and Windows XP.

The Kodak Distiller Assistant replaces the older start-up files `PrinergyForDistiller` and `Synapse Distiller Startup`. If applicable, delete these files in your `Startup` folder when you upgrade.

1. Go to <http://graphics.kodak.com/>.
2. Search for `Distiller Assistant` and download the zipped file.
3. Extract and copy the `CreoDistillerAssistant` file to the `Distiller Startup` folder.
 - If you are using Distiller 6, the folder location is `C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Documents\Adobe PDF 6.0\Startup` on a Windows-based computer, or `/users/shared/Adobe PDF 6.0/startup` on a Mac computer.
 - If you are using Distiller 7, the folder location is `C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Documents\Adobe PDF 7.0\Startup` on a Windows-based computer, or `/users/shared/Adobe PDF 7.0/startup` on a Mac.
 - If you are using Distiller 8, the folder location is `C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Adobe\Adobe PDF\Distiller\Startup` on a Windows-based computer, or `/Library/Application Support/Adobe/Adobe PDF/Distiller/Startup` on a Mac.
4. If applicable, delete any file named `Example.ps` from the `Distiller Startup` folder because this file can interfere with the proper operation of the Kodak Distiller Assistant.

5. Copy the `Creo PDF Pages.joboptions` file to the Distiller Settings folder.
 - If you are using Distiller 6, the folder location is `C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Documents\Adobe PDF 6.0\Settings` on a Windows-based computer, or `/users/shared/Adobe PDF 6.0/settings` on a Mac.
 - If you are using Distiller 7, the folder location is `C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Documents\Adobe PDF 7.0\Settings` on a Windows-based computer, or `/users/shared/Adobe PDF 7.0/settings` on a Mac.
 - If you are using Distiller 8, the folder location is `C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Adobe\Adobe PDF\Distiller\Settings` on a Windows-based computer, or `/Library/Application Support/Adobe/Adobe PDF/Distiller/Settings` on a Mac.
6. You can delete the `Prinergergy Pages.joboptions` file, but this is not required.
7. Start Acrobat Distiller.
8. From the Distiller Job Options menu, select **Creo PDF Pages**.

Although these options are the recommended settings for Prinergergy input files, they are not required for the Kodak Distiller Assistant to function properly.

The Kodak Distiller Assistant is always active and automatically does its job by intercepting and improving PostScript codes.

Distiller Assistant components

The Kodak Distiller Assistant features solve problems that Acrobat Distiller may encounter when distilling PostScript and EPS files to PDF.

The names of the features appear in the Acrobat Distiller startup messages box.

Control Flatness v1.5

This feature enables or disables flatness size changes present in the input file, and helps avoid problems where legacy PostScript files set the flatness to a very high value. Many older Adobe RIP products were unable to render complex paths (often generating `limitcheck` errors). The workaround had been to set the graphics state flatness to larger and larger values. Unfortunately, this would often force the RIP to render paths as

a smaller number of line segments, resulting in curves which appeared flat (for example, circles that appear like stop signs).

Many legacy files still contain high flatness values, but newer RIPs (and the Distiller) can cope without raising the flatness value. This feature assists these legacy files by pretending to increase the flatness value, but letting the RIP render paths as smoothly as it can.

Note: The maximum resolution that still requires flatness control is 600 dpi. It is not necessary to control flatness if the device resolution is greater than this value. This check is not done in Distiller.

CreoScitex Artwork Systems ArtPro Separations v1.0

This feature rewrites some ArtPro procsets more efficiently to ensure better performance.

Adobe OPI Helper v1.5

The Prinergy normalize function uses an Adobe OPI merging engine. This feature corrects several bugs in that engine. Recent additions to this feature support Adobe PageMaker colored images correctly. The PageMaker bug would cause tinted images to be output at 100% intensity, rather than as set in the document for composite workflows.

Minimum Line Width v1.4

Many legacy applications generate PostScript that draws very thin lines (hairlines), expecting that the output will be appropriate for 300 or 600 dpi devices. When device resolutions increase to 2400 dpi, these thin lines seem to disappear, especially on a printing press. This is because the PostScript requests the smallest possible line (for example, a single device pixel). At 300 dpi, one device pixel is equal to 0.24 pt. At 2400 dpi, one device pixel is equal to 0.03 pt.

This feature monitors and modifies PostScript requests for line thickness, and ensures that the smallest thickness request is 0.216 pt or larger so the lines will appear even on high resolution devices. This check and enforcement works even when the input PostScript is scaled.

Control Smoothness v1.0

This feature enables or disables smoothness settings in files and resets the initial smoothness value to 0.002, which seems to be a good value for all RIPs.

Creo Rampage v1.1

This feature allows DCS sets created by Rampage to process to PDF without losing elements.

CreoScitex Vignettes v1.2

This feature contains logic to convert gradients created by the Scitex Blends XT into PS Level 3 smooth shades.

Detect RGB Images v1.1

This feature detects RGB images "masquerading" as /DeviceGray images in separated PostScript and forces them back to /DeviceRGB. Images in /DeviceRGB color space that appear in separated PDF files are properly rejected by the refiner's resource checking.

This module detects and converts back to RGB for:

- Photoshop RGB (tested with QuarkXPress 4.04 separated PostScript)
- RGB EPS using the colorimage operator embedded in QuarkXPress separated PostScript

Eliminate OPI Clip v1.1

Some EPS and DCS files (for example, copydot scans) have a bounding box equal to the trim only (does not include bleed). When Adobe OPI merges an EPS or DCS image, it generates PostScript to set up a clip equal to the bounding box that is specified in the image file.

This feature detects the use of clips by Adobe OPI when it merges EPS graphics and eliminates the clip.

InDesign Extra Color Fix v1.3

Under some circumstances, InDesign v1.1 emits extra named colors for process colors such as `_Cyan_`, `_Magenta_`, `_Yellow_` and `_Black_` (The erroneous part is the underscores.) when printing composite PostScript.

This feature stops InDesign PostScript from generating erroneous separations.

Prevent Adobe FrameMaker CropBox v1.0

FrameMaker sets the CropBox to be the trim box. This is not desirable for printers because it causes the trim marks (crop marks), which are painted outside of this box, to be clipped out so they do not appear on printed output.

Global Graphics ScriptWorks Compatibility v1.0

In the past, some of the files with Harlequin-specific commands have generated a rangecheck error in Distiller. This feature allows these commands to work in Distiller.

Separate Level 2 Images v1.1

When Photoshop JPEG EPS files are included in a pre-separated PostScript file, the images do not separate correctly; instead, the images appear only on the black plate. This feature intercepts these compressed images and allows them to separate correctly into their CMYK channels.

Note: This separation process requires extra processing time in Distiller.

This feature enables support, in separated PostScript, for composite (CMYK) images that use the dictionary form of the image operator. This kind of image cannot be separated properly with a Level 1 Separator.

Creo Shfill Overprint Fix v1.1

This feature forces shaded fills to overprint.

Creo Zap Printer Controls v1.4

The HP LaserJet driver for Windows often includes PJJ commands in the PostScript file. Sending the PostScript to a non-HP printer often causes PostScript errors. Since Distiller is not an HP printer, these files will also fail during conversion to PDF. This feature adds support to avoid unnecessary PostScript errors, even when the incoming PostScript file is generated with an HP LaserJet printer driver.

Automatic Geometry Recognition v2.3

This feature installs several idioms to capture and automatically set the trim size from PostScript files. The supported software is:

- QuarkXPress 3.32 and later, including XPress Passport and XPress Japanese

This feature installs idioms to replace crop mark painting procedures from QuarkXPress to detect, and potentially set geometry values, from crop marks and registration marks as specified by the user.

- Adobe PageMaker 6.0/6.5, including the Japanese version

This feature installs idioms to replace the crop mark painting procedure from Adobe PageMaker 6.0/6.5 to capture the

four edges of the trim box, and to set the page trim based on these marks.

- Adobe InDesign 1.0 and later

These idioms work by intercepting and recording the location of crop marks when the PostScript draws them. This requires enabling the crop marks when printing to a PostScript file from these applications.

For best results for viewing and modifying the trim box after the PDF is created, use the Kodak Prinergy Geometry Editor software.

Copydot Enhancements v1.2

This feature is an idiom to improve the PDF workflow for legacy copydot files created by Creo Renaissance scanners or the Kodak Copydot Toolkit software. This feature assists with tiling issues, and we highly recommend that you use this component when converting copydot EPS files to PDF pages.

For more information about CopyDot Toolkit, go to <http://graphics.kodak.com/>

Enhance Quark Color Separator v1.0

The PostScript-based color separation code in QuarkXPress does not correctly print Photoshop DCS-2 images with clipping paths. This feature provides a PostScript Level 3 idiom to correct this behavior. It supports QuarkXPress 3.32 and later, including XPress Passport.

Prevent FrameMaker RGB v1.0

PostScript generated by Adobe FrameMaker will automatically detect that it is executing within Distiller, and when it does, it converts all colors from CMYK to RGB. This feature was added to FrameMaker with the expectation that the PDF would only be viewed on the computer monitor and not printed.

To overcome this limitation of FrameMaker, this feature adds an idiom to intercept and fool the check for Distiller, returning a better result (for example, that no CMYK-to-RGB color conversion is necessary).

Adobe Illustrator Patches v1.11

Under some circumstances, Adobe Illustrator converts spot color gradients to process color smooth shades. This feature adds idioms to replace the Illustrator logic. It preserves spot colors by using DeviceN color space, and converts gradients to

smooth shades. It does not affect the Illustrator blend tool. It applies only to objects created with the gradient tool.

Additionally, this feature prevents Illustrator from substituting Courier for missing fonts. Missing fonts are properly reported in the Distiller log file. It supports Adobe Illustrator versions 7 and 8. It does not modify the behavior of versions 9 or 10. It also supplements Distiller's built-in support for older versions of Illustrator.

Quark Custom Blends v1.4

This feature is a set of idioms that replaces the custom color (spot color) blend code from Quark XPress 3 and 4, and uses the Smooth Shades patterns and DeviceN color space from PostScript 3 to represent these graphical constructs in a way that both produces smoother blends and still retains the custom colors. Blends with a mixture of spot and process colors are also supported.

This feature supports QuarkXPress 3.32 and later, including XPress Passport. It does not replace the Distiller built-in support for process-to-process blends.

Notes: This feature has the following limitations:

- These smooth shading blends looks "banded" in Acrobat, but that is only a visual effect of the CMYK to RGB transformation and a visual effect related to rendering slightly different colors butted together.
- Quark converts "multi-ink" colorants to process colors when a "multi-ink" colorant is used as an endpoint in a blend. If such a blend is constructed with one endpoint as a "multi-ink" colorant and the other endpoint as a spot color, Quark will represent this as a blend from a process color to a spot color (that is, the "multi-ink" colorant is lost).

FreeHand Blends v1.6

This feature is a set of idioms that reproduces the blends from the Macromedia FreeHand software (version 7 and later) using Smooth Shades and DeviceN color spaces. It avoids the "convert to process" behavior as well as increases the quality of blends.

This feature replaces Distiller's built-in support, and allows Distiller to create composite PDF files with spot color gradients from FreeHand. Note that this is contrary to the FreeHand documentation, which states that gradients with spot colors will be converted to process color. This feature ensures that spot colors are retained properly.

Notes: This feature has the following limitations:

- Viewing these smooth shading blends in Acrobat looks "banded" but that is only a visual effect of the CMYK to RGB transformation and a

visual effect related to rendering slightly different colors butted together.

- These idioms currently target FreeHand 7 and 8. They have also been tested successfully with FreeHand 9. Earlier or later versions are not directly supported, although some may work.

HelpShiraCeps2Ps

This feature optimizes Distiller for more efficient processing of Shira files.

11

Page sets and impositions

Page sets

Page sets

A page set is like a run list in Preps—it displays the pages of the job in reader order.

You can obtain a page set in the following ways:

- Add a page set manually in Prinergy Workshop using the **Add Page Set** menu item
- Import an imposition plan into Prinergy Workshop, which automatically creates a page set from the imposition plan
- Import a populated job ticket from Preps. The run list is imported and converted to a populated Prinergy page set.

Benefits of adding a page set manually

If you added a page set manually, you have the following options when you import the imposition plan:

- Link the imposition plan to the existing page set
- Create a new page set

In the first case, any pages that you assigned to the page set are automatically assigned to the corresponding positions of the imposition plan. The advantage of this is that you can do page assignment in Prinergy Workshop before you know what imposition plan you will be using. Once the imposition plan is identified, you can import an unpopulated imposition plan and link it to the page set, and pages are automatically assigned to the positions of the imposition plan.

Adding a page set automatically with Imposition Import

If you create a page set by importing an imposition plan into Prinergy Workshop, the page set is linked to the imposition plan. Then, if you assign a page to a position in the imposition plan in Prinergy Workshop, the page is also assigned to the corresponding page position in the page set. Alternatively, if you assign a page to a position in the page set, the page is also assigned to the corresponding position in the imposition plan to which the page set is linked.

Adding a page set automatically by importing a Preps job ticket

If you create a page set by importing a populated Preps job ticket into Prinergy Workshop, the page set is automatically linked to the imposition plan. The run list information is mapped to the page set position in Prinergy.

One page set and multiple imposition plans

Once a page set is created and pages are assigned to it, you can import multiple imposition plans and link each imposition plan to the same page set. This enables you to easily assign the same pages to different imposition plans if you want to output the pages to multiple presses that each require a different imposition plan.

Naming requirements for page sets and impositions

Avoid the characters #, \$, and % in page sets and impositions because they can interfere with Automated Page Assignment (APA) operation.

About assigning pages

You can assign pages in Prinergy Workshop or in imposition software.

Assigning Pages in Workshop

If you want to add or change page assignments after importing an imposition plan you can:

- Manually assign pages to and unassign pages from the imposition plan
- Use Automated Page Assignment (APA) to modify the APA file to reassign the pages.

When you import an unpopulated imposition, no pages are automatically assigned, but you can manually assign pages to the imposition plan. The advantage of creating an unpopulated imposition plan, is that you can create one generic imposition plan and reuse it in many Prinergy jobs, rather than having to create a unique imposition plan for every job.

Assigning Pages in the Imposition Software

For information about assigning pages in imposition software see your imposition software documentation.

Versioning

If you want to assign multiple pages to one position, see [About legacy versioning](#) on page [1022](#).

About assigning specific positions to pages

You can manually specify the positions to which the selected pages will be assigned by using the **Range** box on the Assign Page to Page Set Position Dialog Box. This is useful when you want to assign a single page to multiple positions or assign pages to nonconsecutive page positions.

A range can be composed of a single position or a list of positions.

- If the range is a list of positions, a selected page is assigned to all of the positions in the list. Individual assignment positions are separated by commas or hyphens. A range of positions can be written as two positions separated by a hyphen and enclosed in parentheses. A multiple assignment for one selected page can be written as positions separated by commas.
- If more than one page is selected any multiple assignments or ranges must be enclosed in parentheses.

Here are some guidelines for entering positions.

These examples assume that the pages listed in the **Page** column are: pages A, B, C, and D.

You can assign each page to a single page position or to multiple page positions. To assign a page to a single page position, simply type the number of the page position. For example, type **1** to assign Page A to page position 1.

| Position | Page |
|----------|--------|
| p1 | Page A |
| | Page B |
| | Page C |
| | Page D |

Use commas to separate the range of page positions to which each page will be assigned. For example type **1,2,3,4** to assign Page A to page position 1, Page B to page position 2, and so on.

| Position | Page |
|----------|--------|
| p1 | Page A |
| p2 | Page B |
| p3 | Page C |
| p4 | Page D |

To assign a single page to multiple page positions, enclose the list of page positions in parentheses. To assign a single page to consecutive page positions, use a hyphen to indicate the first and last page

positions. For example, type **(1-2)** to assign Page A to page positions 1 and 2.

| Position | Page |
|----------|--------|
| p1-2 | Page A |
| | Page B |
| | Page C |
| | Page D |

To assign a single page to nonconsecutive page positions use commas to separate the page positions. For example, type **(1,3)** to assign Page A to page positions 1 and 3.

| Position | Page |
|----------|--------|
| p1,3 | Page A |
| | Page B |
| | Page C |
| | Page D |

To assign multiple pages to a consecutive range of page positions you do not need to use parentheses. For example, type **1-4** to assign Page A to page position 1, Page B to page position 2, and so on.

| Position | Page |
|----------|--------|
| p1 | Page A |
| p2 | Page B |
| p3 | Page C |
| p4 | Page D |

To enter a range of page positions for each of the selected pages enclose each range in parentheses and separate with commas. For example, type **1, (2-4), (5,7), 8** for the following results:

| Position | Page |
|----------|--------|
| p1 | Page A |
| p2-4 | Page B |
| p5,7 | Page C |
| p8 | Page D |

To assign a single page to multiple page positions, both consecutive and nonconsecutive, enclose the whole list of page positions in parentheses. For example, type **(1,3-5,7)** to assign Page A to page positions 1, 3, 4, 5, and 7.

| Position | Page |
|----------|--------|
| p1,3-5,7 | Page A |
| | Page B |
| | Page C |
| | Page D |

About copying page assignments between page sets

You can copy page assignments from one page set to another page set using the **Copy Page Assignments** menu item.

This is useful, for example, when you want to copy page assignments between two imposition plans that are each linked to a different page set, or when a last-minute decision is made to output using a different layout and/or media size and you need to replace the imposition plan.

About deleting page sets

If you no longer need a particular page set in your job you can delete it using the **Delete Page Set** menu item. It disappears from the **Pages** view of Job Manager.

You cannot delete a page set if there are pages assigned to any of its page positions or if it is linked to an imposition plan. You must unassign any assigned pages and remove any linked imposition plans before deleting the page set.

About layering pages in page sets

Layering is the ability to assign two or more PDF pages to a single page position. The layering feature is useful for the following situations:

- Versioning
- Varnishes
- Adding text to Copydot scans

When you assign two or more pages to one page position the thumbnail of the page position displays a large V.

The V identifies the page position as a layered page position, and the V is associated with the bottom layer or page in the page position.

You can view the PDF pages in Adobe Acrobat but you can only view them one at a time. To view all the layers, you can output a Virtual Proofing System proof, and view the proof in Virtual Proofing System software.

Notes:

- When you output the job, all layers above the bottom layer must be set to overprint.
- The system cannot trap between layers. It can only overprint layers.

About page sets and multiple imposition plans

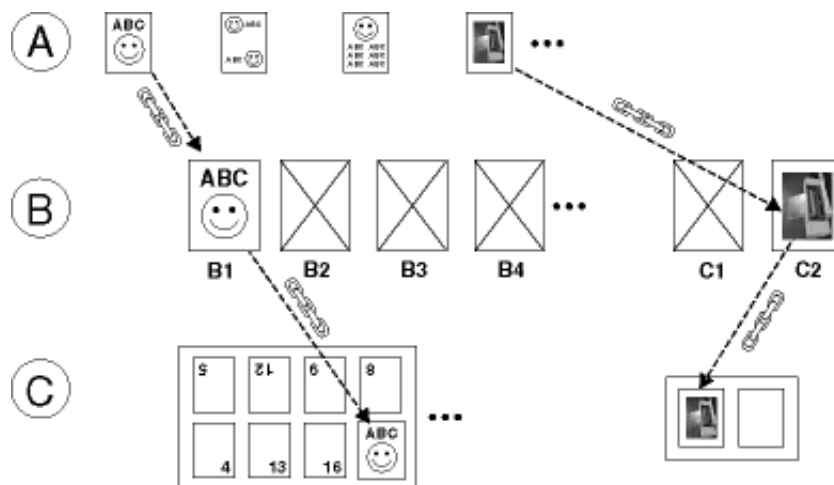
Page sets can be used in increasingly complex ways to help control page assignment and the use of multiple imposition plans. This topic describes three strategies for controlling assignments.

One page set and one imposition plan

In a basic example one page set is linked to one imposition plan. Prinergy will automatically create a page set when the imposition plan is added to a job. The page set created contains the same number of page positions as the imposition plan. In this example, it is not necessary for you to know how to manipulate page sets in any way.

One page set for each imposition plan

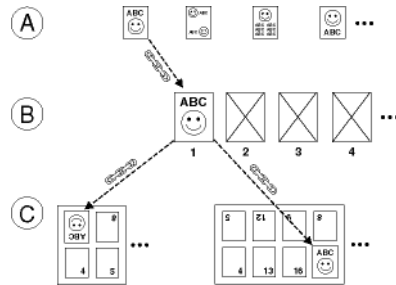
In a slightly more advanced scenario you can use page sets to name page positions. This is useful for jobs that contain multiple imposition plans. In this scenario, one page set is still linked to only one imposition plan, but more than one imposition plan is registered. By naming the page sets, page assignment is easier because you can tell by the position name which page to put there. For example, if there is one imposition plan for covers and one imposition plan for body pages, you can set a prefix of C for the page positions in the page set linked to the covers imposition plan and a prefix of B for the page positions in the page set linked to the body imposition plan.



Naming Page Sets (B)

One page set with multiple imposition plans

For advanced operations, you can link one page set to more than one imposition plan. This is useful for situations where you want to print the same job on different presses that require different imposition plans or when you make a last-minute press change. To link a page set to multiple imposition plans, you select the existing page set when adding imposition plans to the job.



Linking Pages (A) to a Page Set (B), then to Multiple Imposition Plans (C)

Adding page sets

This procedure describes how to add a page set to a job using the **Add Page Set** menu item. You can also create a page set automatically when you import an imposition.

1. Open the job in Job Manager.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Add Page Set**.
3. In the Add Page Set dialog box, specify the page number for the first page of the page set, and the number of pages in the page set. Change the page set name and prefix if desired.
4. Click **Add**.

The page set appears in the Page Sets pane of the **Pages** view with no pages assigned to its positions.

If desired, you can now manually assign to the positions of the page set or import an imposition plan and link it to this page set.

Add Page Set dialog box

Existing Page Sets

Lists any existing page sets for the job.

New Page Set Name

Displays a name for the new page set. You can edit this name by typing a new name in the box.

Prefix

Displays the letter that will be used to identify the page positions in the new page set. You can change the prefix by typing up to five alphanumeric characters. The prefix must not end with a number.

When you select an existing page set this option is blank.

Page Start

The starting page number for the page set. You can type in this box to change the starting page number.

Note: When you select an existing page set from the **Existing Page Sets** box this option displays the starting page number for the existing page set.

Page Count

The total number of pages for the page set. You can type in this box to change the total number of pages.

Note: When you select an existing page set from the **Existing Page Sets** box this option displays the total number of pages for the existing page set.

Page End

The ending page number for the page set. The number is calculated by adding the numbers in the **Page Start** and **Page Count** boxes.

Layering pages


1. Enable the layering feature for the job:
 - a. In Job Finder, select the job.
 - b. From the **Edit** menu, select **Edit Job Attributes**.
 - c. In **Max Layers**, type the desired number of layers.
2. Open the job in Job Manager, and add your input files.
3. Using a refine process template that generates thumbnails, refine the input files.
4. Create, edit, or import the imposition plan.

For information about creating and editing, see [Preps](#) on page [1059](#) and [Imposition software](#) on page [1087](#). For information about importing, see [Importing impositions](#) on page [355](#).
5. From the **View** menu, select **as Thumbnails**.
6. Drag the base PDF page thumbnails to the desired page positions.

7. Drag the second layer of PDF page thumbnails to the desired page positions, on top of the base PDF page thumbnails. The layered pages display a large black V.

Deleting page sets

Page sets can only be deleted if they are not linked to an imposition plan. Remove the imposition plan to break the link between an imposition plan and a page set.

1. In the Page Sets pane of the **Pages** view of Job Manager, click the **Group by Page Set** icon () so that the page sets display by group.
2. Select the page set that you want to delete.
3. From the **File** menu, select **Delete Page Set**.
4. If prompted to confirm, click **Continue**.

Manually assigning pages to page sets and imposition plans

You can manually assign pages to the positions of a page set or imposition plan by dragging pages onto positions or by using the **Assign Page to Position** menu item.

1. In the Pages pane of the **Pages** or **Signatures** view of Job Manager, select the pages that you want to assign.

Note: If you want to use the automatic method, select pages in the order that you want them assigned.

2. Perform one of the following actions:

| To | Do This |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Manually make assignments | <p>Drag the pages onto the desired positions of the page set (in the Pages view) or imposition plan (in the Signatures view).</p> <p>If you select multiple pages, drag them to the first position to which you want to assign pages.</p> |
| Automatically make assignments | <p>From the Edit menu, select Assign Page to Position. (You can also right-click the selection and select Assign Page to Position.)</p> <p>In the Assign Page to Page Set Position dialog box, specify the page set and page positions to which you want to assign the pages, and then click OK.</p> |

Assign Page to Page Set Position dialog box

Page Set

Displays the name of the page set to which you are assigning the selected pages.

Position

Use this list to select the page positions to which you want to assign the selected pages. Options are:

- **Position**
- **Odd Position**
- **Even Position**
- **Unassigned Position**

Starting at

Displays the page number at which you want to start the range of page assignments. You can type in this box to change the starting page number.

Range

Use this box instead of the **Position** list when you want to manually specify the page positions to which the selected pages (as listed in the **Page** column) will be assigned.

To assign a single page to multiple positions, use brackets in the **Range** box. For example, typing (1, 3, 5) in **Range** box will assign the selected single page to positions 1, 3, and 5,

To assign multiple pages to nonconsecutive positions, don't use brackets in the **Range** box. For example, typing 1, 3, 5 in the **Range** box will assign the selected three pages to positions 1, 3, and 5.

Position

Displays the page position to which the page will be assigned based on the position or range that you specified.

Page

The name of the page that will be assigned to the page position. Pages are listed in the order in which you selected them.

Copying page assignments between page sets

Note: To copy assignments from one page set to another page set, more than one page set must be added to the job.

1. In the **Page Sets** pane of the Pages view of Job Manager, select the positions that you want to copy.

Tip: To select all of the positions at once, click the name of the page set.

2. From the **Edit** menu, select **Copy Page Assignments**.

3. In the Copy Page Assignments dialog box, in the **To Page Sets** list, select the page set to which you want to copy the assignments.

You can also select more than one page set.

The selected assignments are copied to the destination page set. If there is an existing assignment for a position in the destination page set, the existing assignment is overwritten.

Copy Page Assignments dialog box

Copy Assignment

Indicates the layer of the source position to be copied.

Currently only the **Base Page** layer is available.

To Page Set

Indicates the page set to which you want to copy the page assignments. You can also select more than one page set.

Unassigning pages from page set positions

1. Perform one of the following actions:
 - To unassign pages from a page set, select the pages in the Page Sets pane of the **Pages** view.
 - To unassign pages from an imposition plan, select the pages in the Imposition Plans pane of the **Signatures** view.

Tip: To select all of the positions in a page set or imposition plan at once, click the name of the page set or imposition plan. To select all of the positions in all page sets or imposition plans, from the **Edit** menu, select **Select All Page Positions** or right-click and select **Select All Page Positions**.

2. Perform one of the following actions:
 - Drag the selected pages and drop them onto the Pages pane.
 - From the **Edit** menu, select **Unassign**.

Impositions

About imposition plans

An imposition plan provides layout information for pages in a job.

If you often edit or create imposition plans after you have created a Prinergy job, you can speed up the task of working with imposition software by integrating it with Prinergy. See [About integrating imposition software](#) on page [1087](#).

Supported imposition file types

You can import the following types of files (and their related marks files) into Prinergy:

| Files from imposition software | Imposition software release | Unpopulated PJTF | Populated PJTF | Unpopulated JDF | Populated JDF |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| Preps | 6.0 and later | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| | 5.0 and later | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| | 4.1.2 | yes | yes | yes | - |
| | 4.0.6 | yes | yes | - | - |
| | 3.7.7 | yes | - | - | - |
| Pandora | 1.2 and later | - | yes | - | - |
| Dynagram DynaStrip | 4.0 and later* | yes | - | - | - |
| Ultimate Technologies ImposStrip | 7.0 and later* | yes | - | yes | - |
| Heidelberg Prinect Signa Station | 6 and later* | yes | yes | - | - |
| Facilis | 4.0 | - | - | yes | yes |
| | 3.7 | yes | - | - | - |

Note: The Preps DLL on the Prinergy server (which is used to convert Preps jobs, JDFs, and so on to impositions) only works in Preps 6 mode. This means that sites with Preps 5 clients must migrate these clients to Preps 6 in order to edit Prinergy impositions. Check the eCentral portal for online training resources, or contact your Kodak representative for training options. Preps version 5 and earlier are no longer tested or supported. Functions that previously used Preps 5 (for example, creation of impositions from within Prinergy jobs, creation of impositions outside of Prinergy jobs, editing of impositions, and so on) may still work, but if problems are discovered, customer support will advise upgrading to Preps 6.

Preps 5 templates can be migrated by opening and saving them in the Preps 6.2 standalone application. The Prep 6.2 application and DLL have been modified to translate Preps 5 templates to Preps 6 mode at the moment they're opened.

* Not all releases of the imposition software are qualified. For the most current information, contact a service representative.

For information about other imposition software, please contact your imposition software vendor.

Note: Portable Job Ticket Format (PJTF) files can have extensions other than `.pjtf`—for example, `.jt`.

About importing populated job tickets from Preps

You can create a populated job ticket in Preps by including real files (pages) in the Preps run list. The products, parts, and assembly information (run list) from the Preps job ticket are imported into Prinerger.

The generated PJTF or JDF file includes a UNC path to the run list files.

Important: Before you can import a populated job ticket from Preps, the following tasks must be completed:

- A system administrator must enable the **Import Populated Job Ticket** option in the Import/Export JTP in Prinerger Administrator. For more information, see the *Prinerger System Administration Guide*.
- For the Mac only, a system administrator must correctly configure the SFMHOSTS file by setting the mapping of the Macintosh zone to the Windows 2000 server. The syntax is `zone:sfmservername=ntservername`. For example, if you have an Windows 2000 server named CWA420 in the Production zone, the entry in the SFMHOSTS file would be `Production:CWA420=CWA420`. The SFMHOSTS file is located in `<%AraxiHome%>\CreoAraxi\etc`.

Importing product intent

If the populated job ticket that is imported from Preps contains products and parts, these are imported into the job, and are displayed in Workshop in the **Product/Part** column in the **Pages** view.

The **Run List** column in Workshop displays the run list as it was defined in Preps. This run list information is mapped to the page set position in Prinerger.

Assigning pages via an APA file

If pages were not assigned in the Preps job ticket, you can process the files using a refine process template with the **Automated Page Assignment (APA)** option turned on in the **Impose** section. Prinerger imports the populated job ticket and creates an APA file with page and geometry assignment instructions based on the populated job ticket. The APA file is created in `<job folder>\Control`.

Each time you import a populated job ticket into a job, Prinerger adds the populated job ticket information at the beginning of the APA file, and increments the file name (`Job.apa`, `Job.v1.apa`, `Job.v2.apa`).

About importing impositions

You can import an imposition at any time to:

- Add an imposition to a job.

(This includes reusing an existing imposition and substituting new pages rather than creating a new imposition.)

- Rename an imposition. Currently, Prinergy does not support renaming of impositions. To rename an imposition, import it and change the name during the import.

For the import to be successful:

- The marks file and imposition file must be stored in the same folder.
- The new pages must be the same shape and size as the original pages.

Using menus or hot folders

You can import imposition and marks files using the **Import Imposition** menu item or by dropping the imposition and marks files into a hot folder or smart hot folder.

When you import an imposition plan it appears in the Imposition Plans pane of the **Signatures** view.

About removing vs. destroying imposition plans

If you no longer need a particular imposition plan in your job you can remove or destroy it. Whether you remove or destroy an imposition plan depends on whether you will need the job's input files, pages, or page sets again.

Removing

You remove an imposition plan using the **Remove Imposition** menu item.

When you remove an imposition plan it disappears from the Imposition Plans pane of the **Signatures** view from the **Separations** view and from the **Storage** view. Any references to it are deleted from the database.

Any input files pages, and page sets associated with the imposition plan are not deleted; they continue to appear in Job Manager.

Destroying

You destroy an imposition plan using the **Destroy Imposition** menu item.

While **Remove Imposition** removes only the imposition plan from the job (and not associated pages or page sets), **Destroy Imposition**

destroys the imposition plan as well as its associated input files, pages, and page sets. Destroying an imposition plan enables you to remove a job's files while retaining its settings, such as the image search path. Once an imposition plan is destroyed, you cannot retrieve it or its associated files. Therefore, if you think that you might need the job's input files, pages, or page sets again, consider removing the imposition plan rather than destroying it.

When you destroy an imposition plan it disappears from the Imposition Plans pane of the **Signatures** view from the **Separations** view and from the **Storage** view. Any references to it are deleted from the database.

As well, any page set linked to the imposition plan, pages assigned to the imposition plan, and input files from which those pages originated disappear from the **Pages**, **Signatures**, and **Storage** views of Job Manager, and any references to those files are deleted from the database. Any pages that were assigned to the imposition plan are also removed from the job folder. Any input files from which those pages originated are removed from their original input volume.

Note: If you try to destroy an imposition plan but another imposition plan in the same job is using the same input files, pages, or page sets, the system will not destroy them.

Importing impositions

1. From the **File** menu, select **Import Imposition**.
2. In the Import Imposition dialog box, in **Select a file to use for the imposition**, browse to and select the imposition plan that you want to import.
 - For a Preps imposition, select **ImpositionName.pjtf**. You can also select **ImpositionName.jdf** and **ImpositionName.job**.
 - For a Pandora imposition, select **ImpositionName.in.jt**.

Imposition and marks files are originally stored in <job folder> \TransientLayouts\<client computer>. They may have been moved to another location on a mounted volume. If there is a marks file, it must be in the same folder as the imposition file or the import will fail.

3. Click ▸ to expand the **Options** section.
4. Modify the **Imposition Name** if desired.
5. Choose the page set.

| If using | Do this |
|----------|--|
| Pandora | Select Create New Page Set to create a page set based on the imposition in Pandora. |

| If using | Do this |
|----------|--|
| Preps | Select Create New Page Set to create a page set based on the run list in Preps. |
| | Select Use Existing Page Set to link an existing page set to the imposition. |

If you select:

- **Create New Page Set**, specify the page set name, prefix, and number of pages.
- **Use Existing Page Set**, select the page set from the list. Only those page sets with the same number of page positions as the imposition being imported are available.

Note: These settings override the import process template settings.

6. Click **Import**.

The imposition plan appears in the **Signatures, Separations, and Storage** views of Job Manager.

Importing a populated job ticket from Preps

1. In Prinergy Workshop, create a job.
2. In Job Manager, import an imposition from Preps.
The following items are imported from the Preps job ticket to the Prinergy job:

- Input files referenced in the job ticket are added to the job.
- If the job ticket contains products and parts, these are imported into the job, and are displayed in the **Product/Part** column in the **Pages** view and **Signatures** view.
- If pages were assigned in the Preps job ticket, the **Run List** column in Workshop displays the Preps run list and this information is mapped to the page set position in Prinergy.

Note: If pages were not assigned in the Preps job ticket, you can process the files using a refine process template with the **Automated Page Assignment (APA)** option turned on in the **Impose** section. Based on the instructions in the APA file, Prinergy assigns the refined pages to the page set positions and the geometry to the pages.

Updating imposition plans

Update your imposition instead of having to manually re-import your modified imposition.

When you've made changes to an imposition that do not affect the page assignment, use **Update Imposition**. For example, if you changed a mark in an imposition, use **Update Imposition** to bring in the changes without having to reassign the pages.

1. In the **Signatures** view, select the imposition that you want to update, and right-click to open the context menu.
2. Click **Update Imposition**.
3. In the Update Imposition dialog box, in **Select a file to use for the imposition**, browse to and select the imposition plan that you want to update.
 - For a Preps imposition, select **ImpositionName.pjtf**. You can also select **ImpositionName.jdf** and **ImpositionName.job**.
 - For a Pandora imposition, select **ImpositionName.in.jt**.

Imposition and marks files are originally stored in <job folder> \TransientLayouts\<client computer>. They may have been moved to another location on a mounted volume. If there is a marks file, it must be in the same folder as the imposition file or the import will fail.

4. Modify the **Imposition Name** if desired.
5. Check to ensure the page set is correct.
6. Click **Update**.
7. In the Start Process dialog box, check to ensure the import settings are correct, and click **OK**.

Removing imposition plans

Removing an imposition plan does not delete its associated page sets, pages, and input files.

The imposition plan disappears from the **Signatures**, **Separations**, and **Storage** views of Job Manager and references to the files are deleted from the database.

1. In the Imposition Plans pane of the **Signatures** or **Separations** view of Job Manager, select the imposition plan that you want to remove.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Remove Imposition**.
3. If prompted to confirm, click **Continue**.

Destroying imposition plans

Important: Only destroy an imposition plan when you are certain you will never need it again. When you destroy an imposition plan, Prinergy permanently

removes the imposition plan, page sets, sub pages, and input files associated with the imposition plan. All references to the files are deleted from the database.

1. In the Imposition Plans pane of the **Signatures** or **Separations** view of Job Manager, select the imposition plan that you want to destroy.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Destroy Imposition**.

The **Destroy Imposition** dialog box appears, prompting you to confirm the deletion.

3. In the **User Name** box, type your user name.
4. In the **Password** box, type your password.
5. Click **Destroy**.

Preserving cutting data from Preps

Use this procedure to preserve cutting data in a Preps imposition so that the data is available for a downstream cutting system.

1. From a Preps Pro job, print a **PJTF** with the **Embed CIP3 Cutting Data** option selected in the Print dialog box.
2. Import the PJTF into a Prinergy job.
3. When outputting to final output, in the **Press Interface** box of the **PrintLink** section, select **Heidelberg CPC32 Version 2.0**.

A PPF file is created in the folder as specified in the process template.

Next: Add this PPF file to your cutting software.

Import process template (impositions)

This topic applies only when you are importing impositions. If you are importing a job, see [Import process template \(jobs\)](#) on page 870.

Two types of process templates are available for importing: **ImportAll** and **ImportJobIncremental**. To import impositions use the **ImportAll** process template.

Import section



Select this check box to enable the **Import** section of the import process template.

It determines how Prinergy imports impositions, exported jobs, and exported job files.

JTP

Select a JTP to use for importing.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

If Page Set Already Exists

Determines what happens if a page set with the same name already exists.

Note: When importing an imposition plan via a hot folder, choose any option except **Keep existing page set and imposition**.

The options are:

- **Fail import:** Stops the import process.
- **Delete existing page set and imposition:** Replaces the existing page set and imposition with the page set and imposition being imported.
- **Create alternate page set and imposition:** Creates a new page set and links it to the imposition plan, without affecting the existing page set or its assignments. This is the default in the **ImportAll** process template.
- **Keep existing page set and create new imposition:** Retains the original page set and links it to the new imposition. The imported and existing sets must have the same number of positions. Selecting this option enables the check boxes in the **Page Sets Options** area of the import process template.
- **Keep existing page set and imposition:** Retains the existing page set and imposition. The imported and existing sets must have the same number of positions. This is the default in the **ImportJobIncremental** process template. Selecting this option enables the check boxes in the **Page Sets Options** area of the import process template.

Page Set Options

A set of check boxes that specify how to handle page assignments in an existing page set when the new imposition is linked to that page set. The check boxes are:

- **Existing assignments replaced by new assignments:** Prinergy replaces the old page assignments with the new page assignments in the imported file. In the **ImportIncremental** process template, this check box is selected by default.
- **Existing assignments replaced by new unassignments:** Prinergy removes page assignments from pages that are not assigned (blank) in the imported file. When this check box is

selected, the other two check boxes in **Page Set Options** are automatically selected.

- **Existing unassigned replaced by new assignment:** Prinergy retains existing assignments and applies any new assignments from the imported job or populated PJTF to any unassigned positions in the existing page set. This check box is always selected.

The check boxes are available only if the **If Page Set Already Exists** list is set to either **Keep existing page set and create new imposition** or **Keep existing page set and imposition**.

These check boxes are especially important when you want to manually assign pages to a page set and then link the page set to multiple imposition plans.

Set Initial Separations After Imposition Import

In the imposition software, you may inadvertently add marks that contain separations that are not present in the content of the refined pages.

- Select this check box when you want Prinergy to ignore the additional separations in the marks.
- Clear this check box when you want Prinergy to show the additional colors in the marks.

Important: Clear this check box if you are doing color mapping in the imposition software. Otherwise, Prinergy may ignore your color mapping changes.

Overwrite Existing Automated Page Assignment File

Select this check box if you want Prinergy to overwrite the existing APA file and use the assignments specified in the job you are importing.

Continue Job Import if CRC Error Found

Select this check box when you want Prinergy to skip any files with CRC errors without failing the import. The names of the files with errors are logged in the **History** view, so you can correct and reimport these files into the job.

Do Auto Page Assignment After Unpopulated Imposition Import

Select this check box when you want Prinergy to perform APA assignment and allow pages to be automatically assigned

whether they have been refined before or after an imposition import.

Important: Do not select this check box unless you have an APA file with the assignments that you want applied to the selected page set. Any existing assignments are deleted if you have an empty or invalid APA file and this check box is selected.

If you clear this check box, pages can NOT be automatically assigned if they have been processed before an unpopulated imposition import (or before a page set is created).

Center Pages in Imposition

(For imposition imports only)

Specify the placement of each PDF page trim box (or media box) within its assigned imposition trim box during the job import.

The options are:

- **Honor Existing**—Preserves the existing placement of each PDF page (centered or not centered) when the job is imported.
- **Centered**— Each PDF page trim box is centered within its imposition trim box. You can then reassign pages to different positions without worrying about the image shifts caused by different trim box sizes on different PDF pages.
- **Not Centered**—Each PDF page trim box is positioned in the lower-left corner of its imposition trim box.

Signature ID Code area

Template

Type a series of tags such as %jobname<n>%
%imposition<n>%%version<n>%%signature<n>%
%numsections%.

This overrides the default settings specified in Administrator.

Number of sections per signatures in one imposition

Type the total number of sections in each signature. For example, if you import an imposition with five signatures and signatures 2 and 5 each contains two sections, enter 1,2,1,1,2.

This overrides the default settings specified in Administrator.

Normalize for PDF Marks File section



Select this check box to enable the **Normalize for PDF Marks Files** section of the import process template, which determines how Prinergy normalizes PDF marks files.

JTP

Select the job ticket processor you want to use for normalizing the marks files.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Remove Font XUIDs

XUID stands for extended unique ID, which is a font characteristic introduced with Normalizer 6.

Select this check box to remove font XUIDs if you are refining files that may be exported and ripped on systems that use the 3011 RIP (Prinergy 2.2.1.10 or earlier) or other older RIPs.

If left unchecked, the older RIP may crash in some circumstances.

Normalize for PostScript Marks Files section



Select this check box to enable the **Normalize for PostScript Marks Files** section of the import process template, which determines how Prinergy normalizes PostScript marks files.

JTP

Select the job ticket processor you want to use for normalizing the marks files.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Images

Do OPI Image Replacement

Select this check box to enable OPI, which replaces OPI comments with images from the defined search paths. Images can reside on any Windows NT server accessible on the network.

Note: Image search paths do not search subfolders, so be sure to add each subfolder specifically.

Fail on Missing Images

This check box applies only when OPI can't locate an image for the input file. You can select or clear this check box independently of the **Do OPI Image Replacement** check box.

Select this check box if you want Prinergy to fail the normalize process and not produce a PDF page.

Clear this check box if you want Prinergy to continue producing the PDF file with a missing image.

In either case Prinergy displays an error message or icon (▲) in these places in Job Manager:

- In the Active Processes pane.
- In the Process Info dialog box.
- On the **History** view.

Low Resolution Image Handling

Determines what Prinergy does when images are lower than the resolutions specified in the **Of Contone Resolution Below** and the **Of Bitmap Resolution Below**. The options are:

- **Ignore low resolution images**-Does not display warning message and continues processing.
- **Warn for low resolution images**-Displays a warning message or icon (▲), but continues processing.
- **Fail on low resolution images**- Stops processing and displays a warning message or icon (▲). Prinergy produces a PDF covered by a large, black X.

Of Contone Resolution Below

Prinergy handles contone images with resolutions below this value with the action specified for low-resolution images in the **Low Resolution Image Handling** list.

This box is not available if **Low Resolution Image Handling** is set to **Ignore low resolution images**.

Of Bitmap Resolution Below

Prinergy handles bitmap images with resolutions below this value with the action specified for low-resolution images in the **Low Resolution Image Handling** list.

This box is not available if **Low Resolution Image Handling** is set to **Ignore low resolution images**.

Fonts

Remove Font XUIDs

XUID stands for extended unique ID, which is a font characteristic introduced with Normalizer 6.

Select this check box to remove font XUIDs if you are refining files that may be exported and ripped on systems that use the 3011 RIP (Prinerger 2.2.1.10 or earlier) or other older RIPs.

If left unchecked, the older RIP may crash in some circumstances.

Optimize for PostScript Marks Files section



Select this check box to enable the **Optimize for PostScript Marks Files** section of the import process template, which determines how Prinerger optimizes PostScript marks files.

JTP

Select a job ticket processor (JTP) to use for optimizing PostScript marks files.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinerger Administrator.

Color Images

Resample

Select this check box to downsample images with a resolution above the value in the **If Above** box to the value set in the **Down to** box.

If you select the check box, select type of downsampling in the list. The options are:

- **Average** - Provides faster but less accurate downsampling.
- **Bicubic** - Provides slower but more accurate downsampling.

The **Resample** check box under **Color Images** applies only to color images. The **Resample** check box under **Grayscale Images** applies only to grayscale images.

Down to

Type the lowest resolution to which Prinerger downsamples images. The recommended setting is double the lpi value. For example, 400 ppi for 200 lpi, 300 ppi for 150 lpi, 170 ppi for 85 lpi.

The **Down to** box in the **Color Images** area applies to color images. The **Down to** box in the **Grayscale Images** area applies to grayscale images.

Note: The **Down to** and the **if Above** options are linked by ratio. This ratio is stored as an integer in each process template. When you open a process template, Prinergy calculates the **if Above** value from the **Down to** value and the stored ratio. When you change the **if Above** value, the **Down to** value stays the same, but the system rounds the **if Above** value to the nearest integer, according to the ratio between the two options.

if Above

Type the minimum resolution an image must be for Prinergy to downsample it.

The **if Above** box under **Color Images** applies to color images. The **if Above** box under **Grayscale Images** applies to grayscale images.

Note: The **Down to** and the **if Above** options are linked by ratio. This ratio is stored as an integer in each process template. When you open a process template, Prinergy calculates the **if Above** value from the **Down to** value and the stored ratio. When you change the **if Above** value, the **Down to** value stays the same, but the system rounds the **if Above** value to the nearest integer, according to the ratio between the two options.

Compression

Select a compression format for compressing images. The options are:

- **None**-Disables image compression.
- **JPEG (Lossy)**-Compresses images using a JPEG format.
- **ZIP (Lossless)**-Compresses images using the ZIP format.

The **Compression** list under **Color Images** applies to color images. The **Compression** list under **Grayscale Images** applies to grayscale images.

Quality

Applies only if the **Compression** list is set to **JPEG (Lossy)**.

Select a level of compression. The compression level decreases as the quality level increases.

The **Quality** list under **Color Images** applies to color images. The **Quality** list under **Grayscale Images** applies to grayscale images.

Grayscale Images

Resample

Select this check box to downsample images with a resolution above the value in the **If Above** box to the value set in the **Down to** box.

If you select the check box, select type of downsampling in the list. The options are:

- **Average**-Provides faster but less accurate downsampling.
- **Bicubic**-Provides slower but more accurate downsampling.

The **Resample** check box under **Color Images** applies only to color images. The **Resample** check box under **Grayscale Images** applies only to grayscale images.

Down to

Type the lowest resolution to which Prinergy downsamples images. The recommended setting is double the lpi value. For example, 400 ppi for 200 lpi, 300 ppi for 150 lpi, 170 ppi for 85 lpi.

The **Down to** box in the **Color Images** area applies to color images. The **Down to** box in the **Grayscale Images** area applies to grayscale images.

Note: The **Down to** and the **if Above** options are linked by ratio. This ratio is stored as an integer in each process template. When you open a process template, Prinergy calculates the **if Above** value from the **Down to** value and the stored ratio. When you change the **if Above** value, the **Down to** value stays the same, but the system rounds the **if Above** value to the nearest integer, according to the ratio between the two options.

if Above

Type the minimum resolution an image must be for Prinergy to downsample it.

The **if Above** box under **Color Images** applies to color images. The **if Above** box under **Grayscale Images** applies to grayscale images.

Note: The **Down to** and the **if Above** options are linked by ratio. This ratio is stored as an integer in each process template. When you open a process template, Prinergy calculates the **if Above** value from the **Down to** value and the stored ratio. When you change the **if Above** value, the **Down to** value stays the same, but the system rounds the **if Above** value to the nearest integer, according to the ratio between the two options.

Compression

Select a compression format for compressing images. The options are:

- **None**-Disables image compression.
- **JPEG (Lossy)**-Compresses images using a JPEG format.
- **ZIP (Lossless)**-Compresses images using the ZIP format.

The **Compression** list under **Color Images** applies to color images. The **Compression** list under **Grayscale Images** applies to grayscale images.

Quality

Applies only if the **Compression** list is set to **JPEG (Lossy)**.

Select a level of compression. The compression level decreases as the quality level increases.

The **Quality** list under **Color Images** applies to color images. The **Quality** list under **Grayscale Images** applies to grayscale images.

Import Raw Imposition Files section

Profile

Select **Default** if you use Preps Integration and you want to import raw imposition files, which include:

- JDF stripping parameters (.jdf or .xml)
- Preps .job files (from Preps or Kodak UpFront software)

Do not select **PrepPrinergy**. This option is used by the internal Preps integration processes.

Device

Select the final output device on which this output is eventually to be printed.

Output Signatures

All or Partial

Select **All** to import all signatures in the imposition, or select **Partial** to import only some of the signatures in the imposition.

If you are importing only some of the signatures complete the remaining controls in the **Output Signatures** box.

Range

Type the range of signatures that you want to import.

Use a dash to indicate a range of webs; follow each web range or individual web with a comma. For example, 1-7, 9, 12-14.

Sides

Select to import the **Front**, **Back**, or **Front and Back** of the selected objects.

For example if you are printing signatures and select **Front**, this control allows you to print all the front sides of the specified signatures.

If you are printing webs and select **Front**, this control allows you to print all the front sides of the specified webs.

Webs

Select **All** to import all webs or select **Range** to import only some of the webs.

If you are importing only some of the webs type the range of webs that you want to import in the **Range** box. Use a dash to indicate a range of webs; follow each web range or individual web with a comma. For example, 1-7, 9, 12-14.

Destroy Imposition dialog box

User Name

Type your user name for your system account.

Password

Type the password for your system account.

Import Imposition dialog box

Select a file to use for the imposition

Use this box to locate and select the imposition plan that you want to import.

Information about the selected imposition plan appears in the right pane of the dialog box.

Files of Type

Select an option to filter the files that are displayed in the **Select a file to use for the imposition** section by a specific file type. Only files of the selected type are displayed.

Options are:

- All Eligible Files
- All Files
- **Portable Job Ticket File** (JT or PJTF)
- **Job Definition File** (JDF or XML)

By default, **All Eligible Files** is selected. An eligible file is any file of the .pjtf, .icf, or .job type.

Show Hidden Files

Select this option to display hidden files such as system files, in the Select a file to use for the imposition section.

The default selection of this option can be set in the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Volumes

Displays accessible input volumes as defined in Administration Console. If the input volume that you want does not appear, you must add it to Administrator.

Job Folder

Opens the job folder for the current job.

Import

This button appears as **Open** when an input volume or folder is selected. Click this button to open the selected volume or folder.

This button appears as **Import** once an eligible imposition plan has been selected. Click this button to import the selected imposition plan.

Options

Select

Click this button to open the Choose Process Template dialog box, where you can change the import process template that controls the current import.

Imposition Name

Displays the name of the imposition plan. You can change the name as desired. The maximum length for the name is 260 characters.

Note: If you are importing an imposition plan with the same name as one that is already part of the job, you can either type a unique name or allow Prinergy to automatically add a version number to the imposition name.

Create New Page Set

Automatically creates a page set, based on information in the imposition plan being imported, and links the page set to the imposition plan that Prinergy generates from the imposition plan. By default, the page set is given the same name as the imposition plan, although you can change the name in the **Name** box.

Name

Displays the name of the page set. You can change the name as desired.

This option is available only when you select **Create New Page Set**.

Prefix

Displays the letter that will be used to identify the page positions in the new page set. You can change the prefix by typing up to five alphanumeric characters. The prefix must not end with a number.

This option is available only when you select **Create New Page Set**.

From

Displays the first page set position number. You can change the number as desired.

This option is available only when you select **Create New Page Set**.

To

Displays the last page set position number. You can change the number as desired.

This option is available only when you select **Create New Page Set**.

Note: The total number of page set positions must equal the number of pages in the imposition.

Use Existing Page Set

Links the imposition plan being imported to an existing page set in the job instead of creating a new page set. Select this option, and from the list, select an existing page set to which the imposition plan will be linked. Only page sets that contain the same number of page positions as the imposition plan being imported are available for selection.

This option is available only when the job contains an existing page set.

Note: When you select this option, the page assignments in the imposition plan being imported will overwrite the page assignments in the existing page set. If you do not want to overwrite the page set assignments, select **Create New Page Set** instead.

Page geometry

About page geometry

You can add or modify page geometry settings in three ways:

- **Using your layout software**—The system automatically applies offsets from registration marks included in PostScript generated from Adobe PageMaker and QuarkXPress files.
- **In Prinergy using the Set Page Geometry dialog box** —When you know the measurements you want to apply, use the Set Page Geometry dialog box to control trim size, offset, scale, and orientation for your PDF pages.
- **In Prinergy using the Geometry Editor**—Prinergy includes a plug-in to Adobe Acrobat that lets you visually set the trim size for a page. Following are effective ways to use this plug-in:
 - If your input files are PDF, you can set the trim size before you add the PDF files to a job. When you refine the PDF input files, the system retains the trim size. Display the numerical trim size in the Set Page Geometry dialog box .
 - For refined files, use the plug-in as a trim box viewer and editor.

For information about Geometry Editor, see the Geometry Editor documentation.

Tip: To quickly apply a trim size to multiple files, visually set the trim size in the Geometry Editor, and note the measurements. Then select all the pages you want

to set to the same trim size and use the Set Page Geometry dialog box to set the trim size for all selected pages.

If you modify the geometry on refined PDF pages, you must refine the PDF page so that Prinergy recognizes the changes. When you refine a PDF page, select a refine process template in which only the Normalize section is enabled.

Using addition and subtraction when setting page geometry

You can do simple addition and subtraction in the **Trim Size**, **Offset**, and **Scale** boxes of the Set Page Geometry dialog box.

This topic gives the syntax for addition and subtraction expressions and examples of valid entries.

Note: You cannot do addition and subtraction in the Geometry Editor plug-in.

Syntax

The basic syntax of a valid entry is:

value [unit of measure] [+ / - value [unit of measure]]

Square brackets indicate optional entries. Units of measure are optional; addition and subtraction are optional.

You can repeat **[+ / - value [unit of measure]]** as often as you like.

You can mix units of measure in expressions in the **Trim Size** and **Offset** boxes.

For the **Scale** box, % is the only valid unit.

Examples:

You can make any of the following entries in the **Trim Size** or **Offset** boxes:

23.5 + 15

25 pt - 2 pt

243 pt + 1.5 in - 7

You can make any of the following entries in the **Scale** box:

23 + 15

25 % - 2 %

25 + 5 % - 4

General rules

You can enter any number of digits after the decimal in the **Trim Size** and **Offset** boxes. Values are rounded to three digits after the decimal. For example, if you enter 1.2345, it is rounded to 1.235.

Trim Size must be greater than or equal to 0.011 pt.

You can mix units of measure in an expression in the **Trim Size** and **Offset** boxes, for example 3 in + 2 cm. The following unit entries are valid: pt, pts, mm, cm, in, inch, or inches. If you don't specify any units, the system applies the unit set in the Prinerger Workshop Preferences dialog box to all values.

If some but not all units are specified, the system reads from left to right to find the first value with a unit. The system applies that unit to all preceding values and to all subsequent values without a unit until the next value with a specified unit. The system applies that unit to all subsequent values without a specified unit until the next value with a specified unit, and so on. The system interprets the units when you press tab. See the examples in the table below.

For the **Scale** box, % is the only valid unit.

The system ignores all spaces in expressions.

Trim size and offset: interpreting units of measure

For **Trim Size** and **Offset** boxes, the following table shows valid entries and how the system interprets them in cases where different units were entered or where units are missing. The system interprets units when you press Tab. When you press **OK** then redisplay the Set Page Geometry dialog box all values will have the unit of measure set in the Prinerger Workshop Preferences dialog box and the change you entered will be incorporated.

| Trim Size or Offset entry | After you press Tab (e.g. Preferences unit is inches) | After you press OK and redisplay (e.g. Preferences unit is inches) |
|---------------------------|---|---|
| 23.5 + 15 | The unit of measure specified in Workshop Preferences is applied to all values, for example, 1.25in + 2.5in | 38.5 in |
| 25 pt - 2 pt | no change | 0.319 in |
| 243 pt + 1.575 in | no change | 3.375 in |
| 23 + 15pt - 20 | 23pt +15pt - 20pt | 0.25 in |
| 23pt + 15 - 20 | 23pt +15pt - 20pt | 0.25 in |
| 23 + 15 - 20pt | 23pt +15pt - 20pt | 0.25 in |
| 23pt + 15 - 10in + 12 | 23pt + 15pt - 10in + 12in | 2.528 in |
| 23 + 15pt - 10 + 12.25in | 23pt + 15pt - 10pt + 12.25in | 12.639 in |
| 23.554343pts | 23.554pt | 0.327 in |

What Happens When You Press Tab or OK

When you press Tab:

- The system displays an error message if either the syntax or the resulting value is invalid. **Trim Size** must be greater than or equal to 0.011 pt; **Scale** value must be greater than 0.
- Values in the **Trim Size** or **Offset** boxes are rounded to three digits after the decimal.
- Units are interpreted according to the rules described above. Units are changed to the standard, for example, pts to pt, and inch or inches to in.

When you press **OK**:

- The system displays an error message if either the syntax or the resulting value is invalid. **Trim Size** must be greater than or equal to 0.011 pt; **Scale** value must be greater than 0.
- If they weren't already rounded, values in the **Trim Size** or **Offset** boxes are rounded to three digits after the decimal.
- If you redisplay the Set Page Geometry dialog box after pressing **OK**, the updated values appear and all values have the Workshop Preferences unit of measure.

Making Entries for Mixed Geometry Pages

If you select more than one PDF page in the Pages pane in Job Manager and the pages have different geometry values, [mixed] appears in the **Trim Size**, **Offset**, or **Scale** boxes in the Set Page Geometry dialog box.

Adding and subtracting works slightly differently for mixed pages.

To set geometry for mixed pages perform one of the following actions:

- Type a single value on top of the [mixed]. That value will be applied to all pages.
- Type an addition or subtraction expression on top of the [mixed]. The amount will be added to or subtracted from the existing values of the selected pages.

Mixed Geometry Pages: Interpreting Unit of Measure

For **Trim Size** and **Offset** boxes, the following table shows valid entries for mixed pages. It also shows how the system interprets them in cases where different units were entered or where units are missing. The system interprets the unit when you press tab.

The values after [mixed] for which no unit was entered will be assigned the unit specified in Prinerity Workshop Preferences dialog box, unless a different unit of measure is specified near the [mixed].

| Trim Size or Offset Entry | After You Press Tab (For example, Workshop Preferences unit is inches) | After You Press OK and Redisplay (for example, Workshop Preferences unit is inches) |
|---------------------------------|--|--|
| [mixed] + 23 + 15.5 | The unit of measure specified in Workshop Preferences is applied to all values, for example, [mixed] + 23in + 15.5in | [mixed] |
| [mixed] + 25 pt - 2 pt | No change | [mixed] |
| [mixed] - 243 pt + 1.525 in | No change | [mixed] |
| [mixed] - 23 + 15pt - 20 | [mixed] - 23in + 15pt - 20pt | [mixed] |
| [mixed] + 23pt + 15 - 20 | [mixed] - 23pt + 15pt - 20pt | [mixed] |
| [mixed] - 23 + 15pt - 20 + 12in | [mixed] - 23in + 15pt - 20pt + 12in | [mixed] |
| [mixed] mm - 23 + 15 + 72pt | [mixed] - 23mm + 15mm + 72pt | [mixed] |

Example: page offset

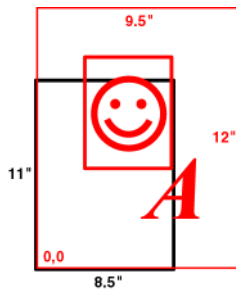


Figure 5: Animation Showing the Effect of the Offset Value

When **Offset X** and **Y** are set to **-0.5 in**, the page (red) is repositioned. The trim box (black) does not move.

Example: page geometry order of operations

You can apply three geometry operations can be applied to PDF pages. If all three operations are to be applied, the order in which the operations are performed is offsets, scaling, and orientation/rotation, as illustrated here:

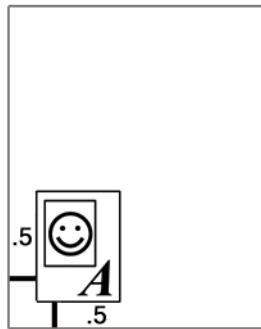
1. Offsets are applied first.

For example here a page is offset 1 inch in both x and y directions.



2. Scaling is next, including the same offset amounts as above.

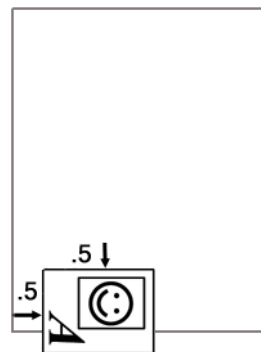
The following page is scaled by 50 percent. The scaling is applied to both the page and the offset amounts. The offsets are now 0.5 inches.



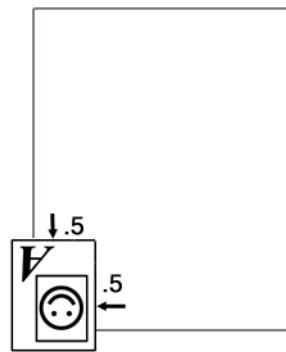
3. Rotation is last, including the same offset and scale as above.

The following rotation is applied around the lower-left corner of the page after the offset and scaling. This means the rotation happens 0.5 inches down and left from the original page corner. Thus the original content can actually end up imaging outside the new page boundary as shown in the diagram.

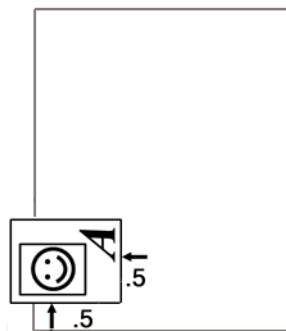
90 degrees CW



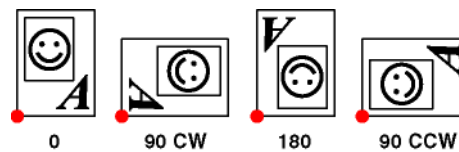
180 degrees



90 degrees CCW



Example: page orientation



The **Orientation** value in the Set Page Geometry Dialog Box rotates and shifts the page so the lower-left corner is always in the same position.

Setting page geometry

1. Select the **Pages** view or **Signatures** view.
2. In the Pages pane, select one or more pages.
3. From the **Edit** menu, select **Set Page Geometry**.
4. In the Set Page Geometry dialog box, enter the desired values.
 - If geometry settings were included in Adobe InDesign or QuarkXPress input files, those values appear in the dialog box.
 - If no geometry settings exist, the dialog box displays default values.

Note: You can enter simple addition and subtraction expressions.

5. Click **OK**.

Set Page Geometry dialog box

Trim Size

Sets the horizontal (X) and vertical (Y measurements for the trim box).

The trim box which is usually displayed as a dotted line, appears on a proof if the **Draw Trim & Bleed Lines** check box is selected on the loose page output process template.

If the trim box appears as other than a dotted line, it may have been set differently for your system.

You can enter a decimal amount followed by a unit, for example, 15.2 inches. You can also enter simple addition and subtraction expressions, for example:

23 + 15 pt

25 pt - 2 pt

243 pt + 1.5 in

Valid units are pt, pts, mm, cm, in, inch, or inches. You can mix different units. If no units are entered, the unit from Workshop Preferences dialog box is used. Values are rounded to three digits after the decimal point.

Offset

Horizontal and vertical offsets position the page in relation to the lower-left corner of the trim box.

If the offset is set to 0, 0 (X, Y, the lower-left corner of the trim box and page content are in the same position. Negative X and Y offsets reposition the page content down and to the left.

You can enter a decimal amount, followed by a unit, for example, 15.2 inches, or simple addition and subtraction expressions. For example:

23 + 15 pt

25 pt - 2 pt

243 pt + 1.5 in.

Note: The order of geometry operations is:

1. Offsets
2. Scaling
3. Orientation

If entries are made for all three operations, offsets are applied before scaling and orientation.

Scale

Positive number indicating the horizontal (X) and vertical (Y) scaling percentage to apply).

Scaling is performed after offsets have been applied, but before orientation.

Orientation

Page content is rotated and shifted so the lower-left corner is positioned at the original point.

Select **0 90 CW** (clockwise), **180**, or **90 CCW** (counterclockwise).

Orientation is performed after offsets and scaling have been applied.

Note: You can use addition and subtraction for Trim Size, Offset, and Scale settings.

Centering pages

About centering pages

The **Center Page** menu item centers a refined page within its imposition trim box. It matches the center of the page to the center of the imposition trim box. You can then use Prinergy Workshop to reassign pages to different positions in the imposition, and not experience image shifts because the trim or media box sizes differ from page to page.

The center of the page is calculated either from the page's trim box or media box depending on the information available:

- If the refined page includes both trim box and media box information then the trim box is used to center the page.
- If the refined page includes only media box information then the media box is used to center the page.

You can use the **Center Page** menu item to center one or more pages. You can easily return to the original page offsets using the **Use Page Offsets** menu item.

By default, pages are positioned in the imposition trim box by the lower-left corner of the page's trim or media box, rather than by the center of the page.

Note: When you import an imposition, you can indicate whether the pages in the imported imposition should be centered. If you select **Centered**, all pages will be centered. If you then unassign a page and replace it with another page, the replacement page will also be centered. You can work with the **Use Page Offsets**, and **Center Page** menu items to modify their placement as required.

Centering pages

1. In the Imposition Plans pane of the **Signatures** view, select the pages that you want to center.
2. From the **Edit** menu, select **Center Page**.
3. To see the results of the change, ensure that the **Center Page**, **Offset**, and **Trim Size** columns are visible in the **Imposition Plans** pane of the **Signatures** view.

For pages that were centered:

- The **Center Page** column now displays **Centered**.
- The **Offset** column in the Imposition Plans pane of the **Signatures** view now displays the centered offset, which is the difference between the PDF page's media box and the imposition trim box.

For pages that were not centered:

- The **Center Page** column now displays **Not Centered**.
- The **Offset** column in the Imposition Plans pane is the same as the offset in the **Pages** pane of the **Signatures** view, which is the difference between the PDF page's media box and the page trim box.

Returning centered pages to their original offsets

1. In the Imposition Plans pane of the **Signatures** view, select the pages that you want to return to the original page offsets.
2. From the **Edit** menu, select **Use Page Offsets**.

The **Offset** column in the Imposition Plans pane displays the original page offsets and the pages are no longer centered. The values in the **Pages** pane do not change.

Automated Page Assignment (APA)

About Automated Page Assignment

Automated Page Assignment (APA) is a feature that automatically assigns processed pages to the page set positions of an imposition plan. It can also automatically assign geometry to pages. In some cases, it automatically creates page sets.

How it works

APA uses a file (with the extension .apa) to map the page positions of an imposition plan to the file names of the pages that will be assigned to those positions.

When you import an imposition plan into a job, Prinergy compares the file names of the pages in the APA file to the file names of actual processed pages in the job. If the file names match, Prinergy automatically assigns the pages to the correct page positions of the imposition plan.

After using APA if you manually assign and unassign pages, the APA file is not updated with your changes. You can use APA files with unpopulated imposition plans, populated impositions plans, and Page Assigner files.

Creating APA Files Manually for Unpopulated Imposition Plans

You create or import an unpopulated imposition, and then create an APA file directly in the APA Editor, and then import the unpopulated imposition. Prinergy automatically assigns the pages to the imposition plan when you process the pages. Using this method, you can create one generic imposition plan and reuse it in many Prinergy jobs, rather than having to create a unique imposition plan for every job.

To create an unpopulated imposition in Preps assign blank pages to the run list. To create an unpopulated imposition in Pandora do one of the following:

- Place a dummy PDF (with no content) in the Pandora imposition.

To make the dummy PDF, create a simple box in Illustrator or other graphics software, and save it as a PostScript file. Process the dummy PostScript file in Prinergy Workshop into a PDF, open Pandora, and place the dummy PDF. Save the imposition.

or

- Exclude the pages when exporting a job.

Export a Prinergy job that includes the imposition you want, and in the export process template, clear **Include Pages in Job Exports**. Create a new job and import the compressed file.

Importing Populated Imposition Plans

You can create a populated imposition plan in Preps and import it into Prinergy Workshop.

Prinergy creates an APA file based on the page assignments in the imposition plan. Each time you import the imposition plan into the job, Prinergy adds the page assignment information to the APA file and

increments the file name to the next version. For example, **Job.apa**, **Job.v1.apa**, **Job.v2.apa**, and so on. You can use the APA Editor to modify the APA file to change placeholder names or to use wild cards.

Using this method, you can change the pages without having to go back to Preps to modify the original imposition.

About the names and location of APA files

Store APA files in the `Control` folder of the job folder. A `Job.apa` file is automatically created in the `Control` folder in the job folder of each new job.

The only valid APA filenames are `Job.apa`, `Job.v1.apa`, `Job.v2.apa`, `Job.v3.apa`, and so on.

The first or only APA file for a job should be named `Job.apa` (the `J` must be upper-case). To store more than one APA file for a job, include a version number in the filename, for example, `Job.v1.apa`, `Job.v2.apa`, and so on. APA uses the file with the most recent date and time, rather than a file with a particular version number.

About geometry assignments

To create an instruction for automatic geometry assignment, add a row in the **Geometry Assignments** tab, and then make an entry in each column in the row. Each row creates one line in the APA file.

For example the following row assigns page geometry settings to the refined page named `Cover.p1.pdf`.

| Refined file name | Offset X | Offset Y | Trim size X | Trim size Y | Scale X | Scale Y | Orientation |
|-------------------|----------|----------|-------------|-------------|---------|---------|-------------|
| Cover.p1.pdf | -36 pt | -36 pt | 612.0 pt | 792.0 pt | 100% | 100% | 0 |

You can explicitly name the refined filename or use wild cards.

Using geometry settings from the input file

You can assign geometry from one of two sources:

- From parameters set in the APA file.
- From the page. To use this method, enter `Mixed` in the column for that parameter in the **Geometry Assignments** view, such as offsets, scaling, trim, or orientation.

Note: Some input files may not contain offsets. For example, DCS/EPS files will not contain offsets. PostScript files generated from a native software application using the Prinergy Refiner PPD will always contain offsets.

Unit of measure conversion

For **Offset X**, **Offset Y**, **Trim Size X**, **Trim Size Y**:

- On the **Geometry Assignments** tab, you can enter points, millimeters, centimeters, or inches. Valid unit entries are: pt, pts, mm, cm, in, inch, or inches.
 - If you don't enter a unit of measure, Prinerger assumes the unit is the unit set in the Prinerger Workshop Preferences dialog box.
 - If you do enter a unit of measure Prinerger converts it to the unit of measure set in Prinerger Workshop Preferences dialog box. For example, if your Workshop Preferences measurement unit is inch and you enter 72 pt, Prinerger converts it to **1 in**.
- On the **Raw APA File** tab, the unit of measure is always points.


Example 1: Pattern matching

This example shows the use of pattern matching.

The input files, refined files, and desired geometry assignments are:

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Input files | Book.pdf |
| Refined files | Book.p1.pdf, Book.p2.pdf, Book.p3.pdf |
| Desired geometry assignments | Set the geometry for the pages. Set Offset X and Offset Y to -36 points, Trim X to 612 points, and Trim Y to 792 points. Scaling is 100% and there is no change in orientation. |

In the **Geometry Assignments** view, the instruction is:

| Refined file name | Offset X | Offset Y | Trim size X | Trim size Y | Scale X | Scale Y | Orientation |
|--|----------|----------|-------------|-------------|---------|---------|-------------|
|  p1.pdf | -36 pt | -36 pt | 612.0 pt | 792.0 pt | 100% | 100% | 0 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instruction is:



```
GEOM= "[$.]p[#].pdf" -36.0 -36.0 612.0 792.0 110
```

Example 2: Pattern matching and assigning geometry from input files

This example shows the use of pattern matching and assigning geometry from input files.

This example is has the same input files, refined files, and desired geometry assignments as in Example 1, except it uses the trim size from the input files.

In the **Geometry Assignments** view, the instruction is:


| Refined file name | Offset X | Offset Y | Trim size X | Trim size Y | Scale X | Scale Y | Orientation |
|---|----------|----------|-------------|-------------|---------|---------|-------------|
|  .p  .pdf | -.5 in | -.5 in | Mixed | Mixed | 100% | 100% | 0 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instruction is:

```
GEOM= "[$.p[#].pdf" -36.0 -36.0 [ ] [ ] 1 1 0
```

Legend



Match Letters

Match letters (a-z A-Z) in the page filename. For example .p1.pdf matches filenames Book.p1.pdf, Front matter.p1.pdf, and JobXYZ.p1.pdf.

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.



Match Digits



Match numbers (0-9) in the page filename. For example .p.pdf matches filenames 12345.p1.pdf, 05282003.p2.pdf, and 01.p165.pdf..

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.

Match Either

Match letters or numbers (a-z A-Z, 0-9) in the page filename. For example .p.pdf matches filenames 12345.p1.pdf, ABCDE.p2.pdf, Book cover99.p76.pdf, Book052803.p205.pdf.

Note: .p.pdf matches the same filenames.

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.

This Position

Indicates that this part of the page name is the same as the page position to which the page will be assigned.

For example if you enter Book.p1.pdf, a matching wild card (*) is inserted in the **Position** column. Book.p1.pdf is assigned to position 1, Book.p2.pdf is assigned to position 2, and so on.

This Page Set

Indicates that this part of the page name is the same as the name of the page set or page set prefix to which the page will be assigned.

For example if you enter *.p1.pdf, a matching wild card (*) is inserted in the Page Set Name/Prefix column. Book.p1.pdf would be assigned to the Book page set.

All Page Sets

Assigns the page to the designated page position in all sets in the job.

See also:

[About wild cards and pattern matching in APA](#) on page 398

[Workshop Preferences dialog box](#) on page 1036

Examples: APA page assignment

This topic shows APA page assignment examples in the **Page Assignments** and **Raw APA File** views of the APA Editor.

For examples of using page position wild cards, see About Page Set Position Wild Cards in APA.

Example 1: Using explicit page and page set assignments

This example shows the use of explicit page names, page set names, and page positions.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Input file | Book.ps |
| Pages | Book.p1.pdf, Book.p2.pdf, Book.p3.pdf |
| Desired page assignments | Book.p1.pdf to Book-8up page set, position 1, layer 1 Book.p2.pdf to Book-8up page set, position 2, layer 1 Book.p3.pdf to Book-8up page set, position 3, layer 1 |

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|--------------------------|----------|-------|
| Book.p1.pdf | Book-8up | 1 | 1 |

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|--------------------------|----------|-------|
| Book.p2.pdf | Book-8up | 2 | 1 |
| Book.p3.pdf | Book-8up | 3 | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

ASSIGN= "Book.p1.pdf" Book-8up 1 1

ASSIGN= "Book.p1.pdf" Book-8up 2 1

ASSIGN= "Book.p1.pdf" Book-8up 3 1

Example 2: Using a wild card (*) to name all page sets

This example shows the use of a wild card to assign a page to all page sets.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Input files: | Book.ps |
| Refined pages: | Book.p1.pdf, Book.p2.pdf, Book.p3.pdf ... |
| Desired page assignments: | Book.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 1, layer 1 Book.p2.pdf to all page sets, position 2, layer 1 Book.p3.pdf to all page sets, position 3, layer 1 |

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|--------------------------|----------|-------|
| Book.p1.pdf | * | 1 | 1 |
| Book.p1.pdf | * | 2 | 1 |
| Book.p31.pdf | * | 3 | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

ASSIGN= "Book.p1.pdf" "*" 1 1

ASSIGN= "Book.p1.pdf" "*" 2 1

ASSIGN= "Book.p1.pdf" "*" 3 1

Example 3: Using pattern matching

This example shows the use of a wild card as a back reference to the page position.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|--------------------|---------|
| Input files | Book.ps |
|--------------------|---------|

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Refined pages | Book.p1.pdf, Book.p2.pdf, Book.p3.pdf |
| Desired page assignments | Book.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 1, layer 1. Book.p2.pdf to all page sets, position 2, layer 1. Book.p3.pdf to all page sets, position 3, layer 1. |

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|--------------------------|----------|-------|
| Book.p1.pdf | * | 1 | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

```
ASSIGN="Book.p[#PgPosition]" "*" [#PgPosition] 1
```

Example 4: Assigning a two-page reader spread and pattern matching

This example shows the assignment of pages from a two-page reader spread input file to page positions.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Input files | Book_005_006.ps, Book_007_008.ps |
| Refined pages | Book_005_006.p1.pdf, Book_005_006.p2.pdf, Book_007_008.p1.pdf, Book_007_008.p2.pdf |
| Desired page assignments | Book_005_006.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 5, layer 1. Book_005_006.p2.pdf to all page sets, position 6, layer 1. Book_007_008.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 7, layer 1. Book_007_008.p2.pdf to all page sets, position 8, layer 1. |

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|---------------------|--------------------------|----------|-------|
| Book_005_006.p1.pdf | * | 5 | 1 |
| Book_005_006.p2.pdf | * | 6 | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

```
ASSIGN= "[$_]_ [#PgPosition]_ [#].p1.pdf" "*" [#PgPosition] 1
```

```
ASSIGN= "[$_]_ [#]_ [#PgPosition].p2.pdf" "*" [#PgPosition] 1
```





Example 5: Using pattern matching and multiple conditions

This example shows the use of pattern matching and multiple conditions.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Input files | Book_001.pdf, Book_002.pdf, 005_Book.pdf, 006_Book.pdf |
| Refined pages | Book_001.p1.pdf, Book_002.p1.pdf, 005_Book.p1.pdf, 006_Book.p1.pdf |
| Desired page assignments | Book_001.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 1, layer 1. Book_002.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 2, layer 1. 005_Book.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 5, layer 1. 006_Book.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 6, layer 1. |

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|---|--------------------------|---|-------|
|  .p1.pdf | * |  | 1 |
|  .p1.pdf | * |  | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

ASSIGN= "[\$_]_ [#PgPosition].p1.pdf" "*" [#PgPosition] 1

ASSIGN= "[#PgPosition]_[\$].p1.pdf" "*" [#PgPosition] 1



Example 6: Using pattern matching and specifying the number of characters to be matched

This example shows the use of pattern matching and specification of the number of characters to be matched.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Input files | BookA001.pdf, BookB002.pdf, BookC003.pdf |
| Refined pages | BookA001.p1.pdf, BookB002.p1.pdf, BookC003.p1.pdf |
| Desired page assignments | BookA001.p1.pdf to all page sets at position 1, layer 1. BookB002.p1.pdf to all page sets at position 2, layer 1. BookC003.p1.pdf to all page sets at position 3, layer 1 |




In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|---|--------------------------|---|-------|
|  .p1.pdf | * |  | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

ASSIGN= "[%][#PgPosition].p1.pdf" "*" [#PgPosition] 1

Alternatively, you could use these instructions:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|---|---|---|-------|
|  .p1.pdf |  |  | 1 |

Note: For this instruction to work, you must specify the number of characters to be matched by the first wild card. If you don't, the editor will display the second icon in yellow, to indicate that there is an error. To specify the number of characters to be matched, enter **[\$:5]** in the **Refined Filename** column before adding the rest of the page name. Or, go to the **Raw APA File** view and add **:5** (colon, then a 5) to the **[\$]** wild card. It should appear as shown in the ASSIGN statement below. The editor will change your entry to an icon that specifies that five characters are to be matched. To verify this, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.

The alternative instructions in the **Raw APA File** view are:

ASSIGN= "[\$:5][#PgPosition].p1.pdf" "*" [#PgPosition] 1

Example 7: Using math expressions to determine page set position

This example shows the use of math expressions in the APA file.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Input files | 1_frontcovers.pdf, 2_intro.pdf, 3_chpt_1.pdf, 4_chpt_2.pdf, 5_chpt_3.pdf, 6_chpt_4.pdf, 7_appendix.pdf |
| Refined pages | 1_frontcovers.p1.pdf to 1_frontcovers.p10.pdf 2_intro.p1.pdf ... 2_intro.p38.pdf 3_chpt_1.p1.pdf ... 3_chpt_1.p516.pdf 4_chpt_2.p1.pdf ... 4_chpt_2.p8.pdf 5_chpt_3.p1.pdf ... 5_chpt_3.p30.pdf 6_chpt_4.p1.pdf ... 6_chpt_4.p8.pdf 7_appendix.p1.pdf |

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Desired page assignments | <p>The 10 pages from the 1_frontcovers file assigned to page positions one to 10.</p> <p>The 38 pages from the 2_intro file assigned to page positions 11 to 49.</p> <p>The 516 pages from the 3_chpt_1 file assigned to page positions 50 to 566.</p> <p>The 8 pages from the 4_chpt_2 file assigned to page positions 567 to 575.</p> <p>The 30 pages from the 5_chpt_3 file assigned to page positions 576 to 606.</p> <p>The 8 pages from the 6_chpt_4 file assigned to page positions 607 to 615.</p> <p>The pages from the 7_appendix file assigned to page positions from 616 on.</p> |
|---------------------------------|--|

This example includes all the page assignment statements for a book that consists of seven files. The page position is calculated using the page number from the refined page name plus the number of pages in each of the preceding files.

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-------|
| 1_frontcovers.p[PDF icon].pdf | [PDF icon] | [PDF icon] | 1 |
| 2_intro.p[PDF icon].pdf | [PDF icon] | [PDF icon]+10 | 1 |
| 3_chpt_1.p[PDF icon].pdf | [PDF icon] | [PDF icon]+10+38 | 1 |
| 4_chpt_2.p[PDF icon].pdf | [PDF icon] | [PDF icon]+10+38+516 | 1 |
| 5_chpt_3.p[PDF icon].pdf | [PDF icon] | [PDF icon]+10+38+516+8 | 1 |
| 6_chpt_4.p[PDF icon].pdf | [PDF icon] | [PDF icon]+10+38+516+8+30 | 1 |
| 7_appendix.p[PDF icon].pdf | [PDF icon] | [PDF icon]+10+38+516+8+30+8 | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

```


ASSIGN= "1_frontcovers.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition] 1
ASSIGN= "2_intro.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition]+10 1
ASSIGN= "3_chpt_1.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition]+10+38 1
ASSIGN= "4_chpt_2.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition]
+10+38+516 1
ASSIGN= "5_chpt_3.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition]
+10+38+516+8 1
ASSIGN= "6_chpt_4.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition]
+10+38+516+8+30 1

```

ASSIGN= "7_appendix.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition]
+10+38+516+8+30+8 1

Legend



Match Letters

Match letters (a-z A-Z) in the page filename. For example .p1.pdf matches filenames Book.p1.pdf, Front matter.p1.pdf, and JobXYZ.p1.pdf.

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.



Match Digits

Match numbers (0-9) in the page filename. For example .p .pdf matches filenames 12345.p1.pdf, 05282003.p2.pdf, and 01.p165.pdf..

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.

Match Either

Match letters or numbers (a-z A-Z, 0-9) in the page filename. For example .p .pdf matches filenames 12345.p1.pdf, ABCDE.p2.pdf, Book cover99.p76.pdf, Book052803.p205.pdf.



Note: .p .pdf matches the same filenames.

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.



This Position

Indicates that this part of the page name is the same as the page position to which the page will be assigned.

For example if you enter Book.p.pdf, a matching wild card () is inserted in the **Position** column. Book.p1.pdf is assigned to position 1, Book.p2.pdf is assigned to position 2, and so on.

This Page Set

Indicates that this part of the page name is the same as the name of the page set or page set prefix to which the page will be assigned.













For example if you enter .p1.pdf, a matching wild card () is inserted in the Page Set Name/Prefix column. Book.p1.pdf would be assigned to the Book page set.

All Page Sets


Assigns the page to the designated page position in all sets in the job.

About rules for APA





- Page assignment and geometry assignment instructions are independent. You can use either or both in an APA file.
- In each page assignment instruction, you can use either the page set name or the page set prefix name.
- To express page names, you can either specify them explicitly or use wild cards and pattern matching. For example:

| Refined file name | Explanation |
|---|---|
| Front.p1.pdf | Names the page explicitly. |
|  .p2.pdf |  wild card matches letters in the page name. |
|  .p   .pdf |  wild card matches letters, then  wild card matches numbers in the page name. |
|  .p   .pdf |  wild card matches either letters or numbers.  wild card matches the page number and uses it as a back reference to the page position. |



- To assign a page to the same position in every page set use a wild card for the page set name/prefix. For example:

| Refined file name | Page set name/prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|---|----------|-------|
| Book.p1.pdf |  | 1 | 1 |

- To make a back reference to the page set name page set prefix, position number, or layer number, use a pattern in the page name. For example:

| Refined file name | Page set name/prefix | Position | Layer |
|---|---|---|-------|
|  .p1.pdf |  | 1 | 1 |
| Page.p  .pdf | pageset1 |  | 1 |

- To indicate page position use simple addition and subtraction expressions. For example:

| Refined file name | Page set name/prefix | Position | Layer |
|--|----------------------|--|-------|
| Cover.p  .pdf | 8-up |  + 25 | 1 |

- To assign one page to several positions, use the All Positions (*), Contiguous (..), and Noncontiguous (,) page position wild cards. You must type these wild card characters using your keyboard; no buttons are available. For example:

| Refined file name | Page set name/prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|--------------------------|------------|-------|
| 6x9Page.p1.pdf | OneFileToAllPgPostitions | * | 1 |
| 4x5Page.p1.pdf | OneFileToContigRange | 1..5 | 1 |
| 4x10Page.p1.pdf | OneFileToNonContigRange | 5,10,20,30 | 1 |


- To use a geometry setting from the input file, include Mixed for that column in the Geometry Assignments view in the APA Editor. In a raw APA file, include empty square brackets [] for that parameter in the GEOM= statement.

| | |
|--------------------|-------------|
| File Name | file.p1.pdf |
| Offset X | -36 pt |
| Offset Y | -36 pt |
| Trim Size X | Mixed |
| Trim Size Y | Mixed |
| ScaleX | 1 |
| ScaleY | 1 |
| Orientation | 0 |

- Layer number is relevant only for versioning jobs. The base layer is layer 1. For non-versioning jobs, type **1**.
- Avoid using the characters *, %, #, and \$ in filenames. Those are wild card characters in APA text file syntax.

Legend



Match Letters

Match letters (a-z A-Z) in the page filename. For example .p1.pdf matches filenames Book.p1.pdf, Front matter.p1.pdf, and JobXYZ.p1.pdf.

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.



Match Digits

Match numbers (0-9) in the page filename. For example .p .pdf matches filenames 12345.p1.pdf, 05282003.p2.pdf, and 01.p165.pdf..

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.

Match Either

Match letters or numbers (a-z A-Z, 0-9) in the page filename. For example .p .pdf matches filenames 12345.p1.pdf, ABCDE.p2.pdf, Book cover99.p76.pdf, Book052803.p205.pdf.



Note: .p .pdf matches the same filenames.

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.



This Position

Indicates that this part of the page name is the same as the page position to which the page will be assigned.

For example if you enter Book.p .pdf, a matching wild card () is inserted in the **Position** column. Book.p1.pdf is assigned to position 1, Book.p2.pdf is assigned to position 2, and so on.

This Page Set

Indicates that this part of the page name is the same as the name of the page set or page set prefix to which the page will be assigned.

For example if you enter .p1.pdf, a matching wild card () is inserted in the Page Set Name/Prefix column. Book.p1.pdf would be assigned to the Book page set.

All Page Sets

Assigns the page to the designated page position in all sets in the job.

About adding and subtracting page positions in APA

You can specify a page number offset in an APA file. You can enter simple addition (+) and subtraction (-) expressions in page assignment instructions in APA files.

Math expressions are valid with or without spaces.

Note: Geometry assignments do not support addition and subtraction.

In the **Page Assignments** view, page offsets look like this:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|--------------------------|-----------|-------|
| Page.p[].pdf | Pageset1 | | 1 |
| Page.p[].pdf | Pageset1 | - 50 | 1 |
| Page.p[].pdf | Pageset1 | + 50 + 30 | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the same instructions are:

ASSIGN= "Page.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "Pageset1" [#PgPosition] 1

ASSIGN= "Page.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "Pageset1" [#PgPosition] 1

ASSIGN= "Page.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "Pageset1" [#PgPosition] + 50 + 30 1

Example 1

This example includes all the page assignment statements for a book that consists of seven files. The page position is calculated using the page number from the page name plus the number of pages in each of the preceding files.

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|-------|
| 1_frontcovers.p[].pdf | | | 1 |
| 2_intro.p[].pdf | | +10 | 1 |
| 3_chpt_1.p[].pdf | | +10+38 | 1 |
| 4_chpt_2.p[].pdf | | +10+38+516 | 1 |
| 5_chpt_3.p[].pdf | | +10+38+516+8 | 1 |
| 6_chpt_4.p[].pdf | | +10+38+516+8+30 | 1 |
| 7_appendix.p[].pdf | | +10+38+516+8+30+8 | 1 |

The 10 pages from the 1_frontcovers file are assigned to page positions one to 10.

The 38 pages from the 2_intro file are assigned to page positions 11 to 48.

The 516 pages from the 3_chpt_1 file are assigned to page positions 49 to 565.

The 8 pages from the 4_chpt_2 file are assigned to page positions 566 to 574.

The 30 pages from the 5_chpt_3 file are assigned to page positions 575 to 605.

The 8 pages from the 6_chpt_4 file are assigned to page positions 606 to 614.

The pages from the 7_appendix file are assigned to page positions from 616 on.

Example 2

This example includes page assignments for a book that includes the starting page number in the page names. For example, Page_28_56.p1.pdf has a starting page number of 28.

The page position can be calculated by adding the starting page number (for example 01 or 28) and the page number (for example 1 from P1, 2 from P2, 3 from P3, and so on), then subtracting 1. For example, for page name Page_28_56.p3.pdf, the page position would be $28 + 3 - 1 = 30$.

Refined filenames are as follows:

Page_01_27.p1.pdf

Page_01_27.p2.pdf

Page_01_27.p3.pdf

... Page_01_27.p27.pdf

Page_28_56.p1.pdf

Page_28_56.p2.pdf

Page_28_56.p3.pdf







... Page_28_56.p56.pdf


In the **Raw APA File** view the instructions to assign the pages would be:

**ASSIGN= [\$_][#Start]_[\$_].p[#PgPosition].pdf "*" [#Start]+
[#PgPosition] -1 1**

One way to add the instruction in the APA Editor is to type the ASSIGN= statement in the **Raw APA File** view. If you do that the wild cards will be correctly named. Alternatively, you can start entering it in the **Page Assignments** view and make any required additions or changes in the **Raw APA File** view.

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instruction will look like:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|---|---|---|-------|
|   _p  .pdf |  |  +  -1 | 1 |

If you typed the ASSIGN statement in the **Raw APA File** view, the  wild cards have the names **Start** and **PgPosition**. You can check the wild card names by moving the cursor over the wild card icons.

When the APA instruction is executed, the resulting page assignments will be:

Page_01_27.p1.pdf is assigned to page position 1.

Page_01_27.p2.pdf is assigned to page position 2.

Page_01_27.p3.pdf is assigned to page position 3.

... Page_01_27.p27.pdf is assigned to page position 27.

Page_28_56.p1.pdf is assigned to page position $28 + 1 - 1 = 28$.


Page_28_56.p1.pdf is assigned to page position $28 + 2 - 1 = 29$.

Page_28_56.p1.pdf is assigned to page position $28 + 3 - 1 = 30$.

... Page_28_56.p56.pdf is assigned to page position $28 + 56 - 1 = 83$.

Legend



Match Letters

Match letters (a-z A-Z) in the page filename. For example .p1.pdf matches filenames Book.p1.pdf, Front matter.p1.pdf, and JobXYZ.p1.pdf.

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.



Match Digits

Match numbers (0-9) in the page filename. For example .p .pdf matches filenames 12345.p1.pdf, 05282003.p2.pdf, and 01.p165.pdf..

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.

Match Either

Match letters or numbers (a-z A-Z, 0-9) in the page filename. For example .p .pdf matches filenames 12345.p1.pdf, ABCDE.p2.pdf, Book cover99.p76.pdf, Book052803.p205.pdf.



Note: .p .pdf matches the same filenames.

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.



This Position

Indicates that this part of the page name is the same as the page position to which the page will be assigned.

For example if you enter Book.p.pdf, a matching wild card () is inserted in the **Position** column. Book.p1.pdf is assigned to position 1, Book.p2.pdf is assigned to position 2, and so on.

This Page Set

Indicates that this part of the page name is the same as the name of the page set or page set prefix to which the page will be assigned.

For example if you enter .p1.pdf, a matching wild card () is inserted in the Page Set Name/Prefix column. Book.p1.pdf would be assigned to the Book page set.

All Page Sets

Assigns the page to the designated page position in all sets in the job.

About wild cards and pattern matching in APA




You can reduce the number of instructions in the APA file by using wild cards and pattern matching.

Wild cards take advantage of similarities in page names. Without wild cards, you must include a line for each page that you want to assign. You must also include a line for each page to which you want to assign geometry settings.

To enter wild cards, use the buttons in the **Insert Wild cards** area. All of the buttons are described below.


Note: If you are creating an APA file in a text editor or on the **Raw APA File** tab, see About Wild Cards in Raw APA.


Matching letters and digits

Use the Match Letters button , Match Digits button , or the Match Either button  to match alphabetic characters, numbers, or both.

After inserting the wild cards, you can enter the number of characters that you want the wild card to match. To verify the number of characters to be matched, move the cursor over the icon and checking the length that is listed.


Assigning to all page sets



Use the **All Page Sets** button  to assign one or more designated pages to all page sets in the job. For example:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|---|----------|-------|
| Job12345.p1.pdf |  | 1 | 1 |

The above example assigns Job12345.p1.pdf to layer 1 of the first position for all page sets in the job.





Back references to page set position

Use the **This Position** button  to use the page number in the page name as a back reference to the page position. For example:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|---|--------------------------|--|-------|
| Page.p  .pdf | pageset1 |  | 1 |

For example, you have refined filenames Page.p1.pdf, Page.p2.pdf, Page.p3.pdf. You can use the page number (1, 2, 3, and so on) as a back reference to the page position. The system will assign Page.p1.pdf to page position 1, Page.p2.pdf to position 2, Page.p3.pdf to position 3, and so on.





You can use simple addition and subtraction expressions in the back references to positions. For example:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|---|--------------------------|---|-------|
| Chapter1.p  .pdf | 8-up |  | 1 |
| Chapter2.p  .pdf | 8-up |  + 25 | 1 |

The above instructions use the page number as a back reference to the page position. Chapter 1 has 25 pages. An offset of 25 is used to determine the page assignments for Chapter 2.

Back references to page set name

Use the **This Page Set** button .

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|---|---|--|-------|
|  .p  .pdf |  |  | 1 |

For example, you have page sets called Cover and Inside. You have refined page names Cover.p1.pdf, Cover.p2.pdf, Cover.p3.pdf, Inside.p1.pdf, Inside.p2.pdf, and Inside.p3.pdf. Replace the first part of

the page name with a **This Page Set** icon. (Add the second icon using the **This Position** button.)

The system will assign:

Cover.p1.pdf to position 1 of the Cover page set

Cover.p2.pdf to position 2 of the Cover page set

Cover.p3.pdf to position 3 of the Cover page set


Inside.p1.pdf to position 1 of the Inside page set

Inside.p2.pdf to position 2 of the Inside page set

Inside.p3.pdf to position 3 of the Inside page set

Legend



Match Letters

Match letters (a-z A-Z) in the page filename. For example .p1.pdf matches filenames Book.p1.pdf, Front matter.p1.pdf, and JobXYZ.p1.pdf.

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.



Match Digits

Match numbers (0-9) in the page filename. For example .p .pdf matches filenames 12345.p1.pdf, 05282003.p2.pdf, and 01.p165.pdf..

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.

Match Either

Match letters or numbers (a-z A-Z, 0-9) in the page filename. For example .p .pdf matches filenames 12345.p1.pdf, ABCDE.p2.pdf, Book cover99.p76.pdf, Book052803.p205.pdf.



Note: .p .pdf matches the same filenames.

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.



This Position

Indicates that this part of the page name is the same as the page position to which the page will be assigned.

For example if you enter Book.p.pdf, a matching wild card () is inserted in the **Position** column. Book.p1.pdf is assigned to position 1, Book.p2.pdf is assigned to position 2, and so on.

This Page Set

Indicates that this part of the page name is the same as the name of the page set or page set prefix to which the page will be assigned.

For example if you enter .p1.pdf, a matching wild card () is inserted in the Page Set Name/Prefix column. Book.p1.pdf would be assigned to the Book page set.

All Page Sets

Assigns the page to the designated page position in all sets in the job.

About page set position wild cards in APA

You can assign one page to selected page set positions using page position wild cards. This is particularly useful for folding carton, flexible packaging, or tag and label printers.

You can assign one page to any of the following:

| To assign one page to | Use this wild card |
|--|--|
| All positions | All Positions (*) |
| A contiguous range of positions | Contiguous (..) |
| A noncontiguous range of positions | Noncontiguous (,) |
| Both a contiguous and noncontiguous range of positions | Any combination of the Contiguous (..) and Noncontiguous (,) |

Entering page set position wild cards

As with other wild cards, you can enter these wild cards using either the **Page Assignments** tab or the **Raw APA File** tab in the APA Editor, or a text editor.

If you enter the wild cards on the **Page Assignments** tab of the APA Editor:

- Use the **Position** column.
- Type the wild cards using the keyboard. There are no buttons for these wild cards.
- When you enter a range, do not put spaces between the numbers and the wild cards.

If you are creating an APA file on the **Raw APA File** tab of the APA Editor or in a text editor:

- Type an asterisk for the page set argument.

Syntax: **ASSIGN= "page_name" "*" position_number 1**

Example: **ASSIGN= "book.p1.pdf" "*" 11**

This statement assigns the page named **book.p1.pdf** to the first layer of the first position number in every page set in the job.

Example 1A: Assigning one page to all page set positions

This example shows the use of the All Positions page set position wild card (*) to assign one page to all page set positions.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Input file | 6x9Page.ps |
| Refined pages | 6x9Page.p1.pdf |
| Desired page assignments | 6x9Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToAllPgPositions page set, position 1, layer 1 6x9Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToAllPgPositions page set, position 2, layer 1 6x9Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToAllPgPositions page set, position 3, layer 1 ... |

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|-------------------------|----------|-------|
| 6x9Page.p1.pdf | OneFileToAllPgPositions | * | 1 |

Note: The All Positions page set position wild card (*) in the **Position** column refers to the asterisk character on your keyboard, not the APA All Page Sets wild card (⌘).

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

!APA 1.0

ASSIGN= "6x9Page.p1.pdf" "OneFileToAllPgPositions" * 1

Example 1B: Assigning one page to all page set positions in all page sets

This example shows the use of the All Positions page set position wild card (*) to assign one page to all page set positions in all page sets.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Input file | 6x9Page.ps |
| Refined pages | 6x9Page.p1.pdf |
| Desired page assignments | 6x9Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 1, layer 1 6x9Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 2, layer 1 6x9Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 3, layer 1 ... |

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|--------------------------|----------|-------|
| 6x9Page.p1.pdf | ⌘ | * | 1 |

Note: The All Positions page set position wild card (*) in the Position column refers to the asterisk character on your keyboard, not the APA All Page Sets wild card (⌘).

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

```
!APA 1.0
```

```
ASSIGN= "6x9Page.p1.pdf" "*" * 1
```

Example 2A: Assigning one page to a contiguous range of page set positions

This example shows the use of the Contiguous page position wild card (..) to assign one page to a contiguous range of page set positions.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Input file | 4x5Page.ps |
| Refined pages | 4x5Page.p1.pdf |
| Desired page assignments | 4x5Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToContigRange page set, position 1, layer 1 4x5Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToContigRange page set, position 2, layer 1 4x5Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToContigRange page set, position 3, layer 1 4x5Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToContigRange page set, position 4, layer 1 4x5Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToContigRange page set, position 5, layer 1 |

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|--------------------------|----------|-------|
| 4x5Page.p1.pdf | OneFileToContigRange | 1..5 | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

!APA 1.0

ASSIGN= "4x5Page.p1.pdf" "OneFileToContigRange" 1..5 1


Example 2B: Assigning one page to a contiguous range of page set positions in all page sets

This example shows the use of the Contiguous page position wild card (..) to assign one page to a contiguous range of page set positions in all page sets.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Input file | 4x5Page.ps |
| Refined pages | 4x5Page.p1.pdf |
| Desired page assignments | <p>4x5Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 1, layer 1</p> <p>4x5Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 2, layer 1</p> <p>4x5Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 3, layer 1</p> <p>4x5Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 4, layer 1</p> <p>4x5Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 5, layer 1</p> <p>4x5Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 25, layer 1</p> <p>4x5Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 26, layer 1</p> <p>4x5Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 27, layer 1</p> <p>4x5Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 28, layer 1</p> <p>4x5Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 29, layer 1</p> <p>4x5Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 30, layer 1</p> |

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|---|-------------|-------|
| 4x5Page.p1.pdf |  | 1..5,25..30 | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

!APA 1.0

ASSIGN= "4x5Page.p1.pdf" "*" 1..5,25..30 1

Example 3A: Assigning one page to a noncontiguous range of page set positions

This example shows the use of the Noncontiguous page set position wild card (,) to assign one page to a noncontiguous range of page set positions.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Input file | 4x6Page.ps |
| Refined pages | 4x6Page.p1.pdf |
| Desired page assignments | 4x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToNonContigRange page set position 5, layer 1 4x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToNonContigRange page set, position 10, layer 1 4x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToNonContigRange page set, position 20, layer 1 4x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToNonContigRange page set, position 30, layer 1 4x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToNonContigRange page set, position 40, layer 1 4x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToNonContigRange page set, position 50, layer 1 |

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------|-------|
| 4x6Page.p1.pdf | OneFileToNonContigRange | 5,10,20,30,40,50 | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

!APA 1.0

ASSIGN= "4x6Page.p1.pdf" "OneFileToNonContigRange"
5,10,20,30,40,50 1

Example 3B: Assigning one page to a noncontiguous range of page set positions in all page sets


This example shows the use of the Noncontiguous page set position wild card (,) to assign one page to a noncontiguous range of page set positions in all page sets.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|----------------------|----------------|
| Input file | 4x6Page.ps |
| Refined pages | 4x6Page.p1.pdf |

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Desired page assignments | 4x6Page.p1.pdf to all page sets position 5, layer 1 4x6Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 10, layer 1 4x6Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 20, layer 1 4x6Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 30, layer 1 4x6Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 40, layer 1 4x6Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 50, layer 1 |
|---------------------------------|--|

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|---|------------------|-------|
| 4x6Page.p1.pdf |  | 5,10,20,30,40,50 | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

!APA 1.0

ASSIGN= "4x6Page.p1.pdf" "*" 5,10,20,30,40,50 1

Example 4A: Assigning one page to both a contiguous and noncontiguous range of page set positions

This example shows the use of the Contiguous (..) and Noncontiguous (,) page set position wild cards to assign one page to both a contiguous and noncontiguous range of page set positions.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Input file | 4x10Page.ps |
| Refined pages | 4x10Page.p1.pdf |
| Desired page assignments | 4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set position 5, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 6, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 7, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 8, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 9, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 10, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 17, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 21, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 27, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 30, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 31, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 32, layer 1 |

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-------|
| 4x10Page.p1.pdf | OneFileToBothRanges | 5..10,17,21,27,30..32 | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

!APA 1.0

ASSIGN= "4x10Page.p1.pdf" "OneFileToBothRanges"
5..10,17,21,27,30..32 1

Example 4B: Assigning two pages to both a contiguous and noncontiguous range of page set positions

This example shows the use of the Contiguous (..) and Noncontiguous (,) page set position wild cards to assign two pages to both a contiguous and noncontiguous range of page set positions.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Input files | 4x10Page.ps 5x6Page.ps |
| Refined pages | 4x10Page.p1.pdf 5x6Page.p1.pdf |

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Desired page assignments | <p>4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 5, layer 1</p> <p>4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 6, layer 1</p> <p>4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 7, layer 1</p> <p>4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 8, layer 1</p> <p>4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 9, layer 1</p> <p>4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 10, layer 1</p> <p>4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 17, layer 1</p> <p>4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 21, layer 1</p> <p>4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 27, layer 1</p> <p>4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 30, layer 1</p> <p>4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 31, layer 1</p> <p>4x10Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 32, layer 1</p> <p>5x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 11, layer 1</p> <p>5x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 12, layer 1</p> <p>5x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 13, layer 1</p> <p>5x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 14, layer 1</p> <p>5x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 15, layer 1</p> <p>5x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 16, layer 1</p> <p>5x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 18, layer 1</p> <p>5x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 19, layer 1</p> <p>5x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 20, layer 1</p> <p>5x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 25, layer 1</p> <p>5x6Page.p1.pdf to OneFileToBothRanges page set, position 29, layer 1</p> |
|---------------------------------|---|

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/ prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|-------|
| 4x10Page.p1.pdf | OneFileToBothRanges | 5..10,17,21,27,30..32 | 1 |
| 5x6Page.p1.pdf | OneFileToBothRanges | 11..16,18..20,25,29 | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

!APA 1.0

**ASSIGN= "4x10Page.p1.pdf" "OneFileToBothRanges"
5..10,17,21,27,30..32 1**

**ASSIGN= "5x6Page.p1.pdf" "OneFileToBothRanges"
11..16,18..20,25,29 1**


Example 4C: Assigning one page to both a contiguous and noncontiguous range of page set positions in all page sets

This example shows the use of the Contiguous (..) and Noncontiguous (,) page set position wild cards to assign one page to both a contiguous and noncontiguous range of page set positions in all page sets.

The input files, refined pages, and desired page assignments are:

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Input file | 4x10Page.ps |
| Refined pages | 4x10Page.p1.pdf |
| Desired page assignments | 4x10Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 5, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 6, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 7, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 8, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 9, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 10, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 17, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 21, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 27, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 30, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 31, layer 1 4x10Page.p1.pdf to all page sets, position 32, layer 1 |

In the **Page Assignments** view, the instructions are:

| Refined file name | Page set name/prefix | Position | Layer |
|-------------------|---|-----------------------|-------|
| 4x10Page.p1.pdf |  | 5..10,17,21,27,30..32 | 1 |

In the **Raw APA File** view, the instructions are:

```
!APA 1.0
```

```
ASSIGN= "4x10Page.p1.pdf" "*" 5..10,17,21,27,30..32 1
```

About creating raw APA

If you are creating an APA file in a text file or in the **Raw APA File** view of the APA Editor, the syntax must conform to some basic rules.

APA syntax in text files

When creating an APA file:

- Start the file with the header **!APA 1.0**.

- Use exclamation marks to add comments to the file. APA ignores the entire contents of any line that begins with an exclamation mark.
- In each statement, do the following:
 - Separate the identifier (**ASSIGN=** or **GEOM=**) and the first parameter with tabs and spaces.
 - Use double quotes to enclose parameters contain blanks. (Parameters are listed below.) Even if you do not use blanks, we recommend that you enclose most parameters in double quotes.
 - Separate parameters with tabs and spaces.
 - End the line with CR-LF (DOS), CR (Mac OS), or LF (The Open Group UNIX). You can use a mixture of these characters in the same APA file.

ASSIGN statement

The ASSIGN statement contains instructions for assigning pages to page positions. You can use either page set name or page set prefix in the ASSIGN statement.

!APA 1.0

! This is a comment line.

ASSIGN= page_name page_set_name position_number layer_number

The following table describes the parameters in the ASSIGN statement.

| Parameters | Description |
|--|--|
| page_name | Name of the refined file, for example, "Book.p1.pdf" . Either name the page explicitly or use wild cards and pattern matching. |
| page_set_name Or page_set_prefix | You can use either the name or the prefix. Name of a page set in the job for example, "Book-8up" or "pageset1". Name of a page set prefix in the job for example "p", "q", "r". You can: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Name the prefix explicitly. • Use a wild card ("*") to assign the page to the designated position in all page sets. • Name a pattern in the page name then use it as a back reference to the page set name or page set prefix. |

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| position_number | <p>Position to which the page should be assigned in the page set for example, 1, 2, 3.</p> <p>You can:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Name the position number explicitly. Name a pattern in the page name then use it as a back reference to the position number. <p>You can enter simple addition and subtraction expressions for the position number. For example:</p> <p>ASSIGN= "Page.p[#PgPos]" "p" [#PgPos]+25 1</p> |
| layer_number | <p>Number of the layer to which the page should be assigned for example, 1, 2, 3. The base layer is 1. This value is relevant only in versioning jobs. For non-versioning jobs, use 1.</p> |

GEOM statement

The GEOM statement assigns geometry settings to pages.

!APA 1.0

! This is a comment line.

GEOM= page_name offsetX offsetY trimX trimY scaleX scaleY
orientation

The following table describes the parameters in the GEOM statement.

| Parameters | Description |
|-------------|--|
| page_name | <p>Name of the refined file, for example, "Book.p1.pdf" .</p> <p>You can name it explicitly or use wild cards and pattern matching.</p> |
| offsetX | <p>Positions the content horizontally in relation to the lower-left corner of the trim box for the position. A negative number repositions the content to the left of the lower-left corner. The offset is measured in points.</p> |
| offsetY | <p>Positions the content vertically in relation to the lower-left corner of the trim box for the position. A negative value repositions the content down from the lower-left corner. The offset is measured in points.</p> |
| trimX | X (horizontal) trim size in points |
| trimY | Y (vertical) trim size in points |
| scaleX | Horizontal scaling relative to 1.0. 1.0 = 100%, .5 = 50%, ... |
| scaleY | Vertical scaling relative to 1.0. 1.0 = 100%, .5 = 50%, ... |
| orientation | <p>Number of degrees that the image should be rotated. Must be 0 (no rotation), 90 CW (clockwise), 180, 90 CCW (counter-clockwise, or mixed (retain the original orientation from the PDF).</p> |

About wild cards in raw APA

You can use wild cards and pattern matching when you create an APA file in a text file or in the **Raw APA File** view of the APA Editor.

The wild cards to match page names are:

- * or % match letters (A-Z, a-z)

| Example | Matches |
|-------------------|--|
| "*.p1.pdf" | book.p1.pdf, brochure.p1.pdf, and so on. |
| Or "%].p1.pdf" | If enclosed in quotation marks matches book cover.p1.pdf, Acme brochure.p1.pdf, and so on. |

- [#] matches numbers (0-9)

| Example | Matches |
|--------------------|---|
| "Book.p[#].pdf" | Book.p1.pdf, book.p2.pdf, book.p3.pdf, and so on. |
| or [#].p[#].pdf | 19823.p1.pdf, 9800.p1.pdf, 20030131.p1.pdf |

- [\$] matches letters or numbers (A-Z, a-z, 0-9)

| Example | Matches |
|---------------|--|
| "[\$].p1.pdf" | book.p1.pdf, brochure.p1.pdf, 12345.p1.pdf, abc010103.p1.pdf, and so on. |

- Adding a colon after #, %, or \$ and then a number matches an exact number of characters to the wild card

| Example | Matches |
|--------------------|---|
| "[\$:6][#].p1.pdf" | BookA01.p1.pdf BookB02.p1.pdf, BookC03.p1.pdf, and so on. |

Note: "\$:5][#].p1.pdf" would give the same results because APA ignores the zero.

Pattern matches can also be named and then used as a back reference to the page set name, page set prefix, position number, and layer number.

About named patterns as back references in raw APA

You can create named patterns as back references when you create an APA file in a text file or in the **Raw APA File** view of the APA Editor.

You can name a pattern and use the pattern as a back reference to another parameter, including a:

- Page set name
- Page set prefix
- Position number
- Layer number

To name a pattern, include a name after the wild card and within the square brackets, for example [#PagePosition] or [%Prefix]. You can use any name you want, but it can be helpful to those reading the APA file if the name identifies or relates to the information contained in the pattern (that is page position, page set name, page set prefix, or layer number) .

For example, "Book.p[#].pdf" could be used in the APA file to refer to the page names Book.p1.pdf, Book.p2.pdf, Book.p3.pdf, and so on. The numbers 1, 2, 3, and so on in the page names may correspond to the page position numbers to which the pages will be assigned in the page set (that is, Book.p1.pdf is assigned to page position number 1, Book.p2.pdf is assigned to page position number 2, and so on). The pattern can be named, for example [#PagePosition], and the named pattern can be used as a back reference to the position number in the ASSIGN statement.

Note: The APA Editor always uses [#PagePosition] to name a pattern used as a back reference to the position number.

To use a named pattern as a back reference, use the pattern in place of the relevant parameter in the ASSIGN statement. Remove any character-count specifiers—for example, if the named pattern is [%Prefix:2], the back reference is [%Prefix].

For example, this ASSIGN statement assigns all pages that match the pattern to the corresponding page position in the page set named Book-8up, that is, Book.p1.pdf to position 1, Book.p2.pdf to position 2, and so on.

```
ASSIGN= "Book.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "Book-8up" [#PgPosition] 1
```

For example, this ASSIGN statement assigns all pages that match the pattern to the corresponding page position in the corresponding page set, for example, Inside.p1.pdf to position 1 in the Inside page set, Inside.p2.pdf to position 2 in the Inside page set, Cover.p1.pdf to position 1 in the Cover page set, Cover.p2.pdf to position 2 in the Cover page set, and so on.

```
ASSIGN= "[$PageSet]-P[#PgPosition].p"
"[$PageSet].p[#PgPosition].pdf" "[$PageSet]" [#PgPosition] 1
```

Adding and subtracting with named patterns and back references

In many cases it is convenient to be able to specify a page number offset in an APA file. Both addition (+) and subtraction (-) are supported.

The following are all valid ASSIGN statements:

```
ASSIGN= "Page.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition] 1
```

```
ASSIGN= "Page.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition] - 50 1
```

```
ASSIGN= "Page.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition] + 50 + 30 1
```

```
ASSIGN= "Page[#Num].p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#Num] +
[#PgPosition] + 50 1
```

The rules are:

- Pattern-matching must use the # character.
- Math expressions are valid with or without spaces.

For example the following two expressions are treated the same:

[#Num]-24

[#Num] - 24

- Math operations are not supported for the GEOM statement.

This example include all page assignments for a book consisting of seven files. The page position is calculated using the page number from the page name ([#PgPosition]) plus the number of pages in each of the preceding files.

```
ASSIGN= "1_frontcovers.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition] 1
```

```
ASSIGN= "2_intro.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition]+10 1
```

```
ASSIGN= "3_chpt_1.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition]+10+38 1
```

```
ASSIGN= "4_chpt_2.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition]
+10+38+516 1
```

```
ASSIGN= "5_chpt_3.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition]
+10+38+516+8 1
```

```
ASSIGN= "6_chpt_4.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition]
+10+38+516+8+30 1
```

```
ASSIGN= "7_appendix.p[#PgPosition].pdf" "*" [#PgPosition]
+10+38+516+8+30+8 1
```

The 10 pages from the 1_frontcovers file are assigned to page positions one to 10.

The 38 pages from the 2_intro file are assigned to page positions 11 to 49.

The 516 pages from the 3_chpt_1 file are assigned to page positions 50 to 566.

The 8 pages from the 4_chpt_2 file are assigned to page positions 567 to 575.

The 30 pages from the 5_chpt_3 file are assigned to page positions 576 to 606.

The 8 pages from the 6_chpt_4 file are assigned to page positions 607 to 615.

The pages from the 7_appendix file are assigned to page positions 616 on.

This example includes page assignments for a book that includes the starting page number in its page names. The page position is calculated by adding the starting page number [#Start] and the page number from the page name [#PgPosition] and then subtracting 1.

Page names are as follows:

Page_01_27.p1.pdf ... Page_01_27.p27.pdf

Page_28_56.p1.pdf ... Page_28_56.p56.pdf

ASSIGN= [\$_][#Start]_[\$_].p[#PgPosition].pdf "*" [#Start]+
[#PgPosition] -1 1

Page_01_27.p1.pdf assigned to page position 1.

Page_01_27.p2.pdf assigned to page position 2...

...Page_01_27.p27.pdf assigned to page position 27.

Page_28_56.p1.pdf assigned to page position $28 + 1 - 1 = 28$.

Page_28_56.p1.pdf assigned to page position $28 + 2 - 1 = 29$.

Page_28_56.p1.pdf assigned to page position $28 + 3 - 1 = 30$...

...Page_28_56.p56.pdf assigned to page position $28 + 56 - 1 = 83$.

Creating or editing APA files in the APA editor

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Automated Page Assignment Editor**.
2. If you want to edit an existing APA file, from the **File** menu, select **Open APA File**. In the Open APA File dialog box, browse to and select the APA file that you want to open, and then click **Open**.
3. In the APA Editor, perform one of the following actions:
 - On the Page Assignments tab, add instructions.
For each instruction, click **Add** and then type values in each column of the row or accept the default values. For information about the columns, see *Automated Page Assignment Editor*.
 - Click the **Geometry Assignments** tab, and add instructions.

For each instruction, click **Add** and then type values in each column of the row or accept the default values. For information about the columns, see Automated Page Assignment Editor.

- If you know and want to use APA file syntax, click the **Page Assignments** tab. Either enter the syntax directly and the APA Editor will interpret your entries, or type ASSIGN statements directly in the **Raw APA File** view.
4. From the **Edit** menu, select **Simplify Duplicate Rows**.
The APA Editor removes:
 - Any row that performs the same page assignment as any other row.
 - Any explicit instructions that are covered by new wild card instructions.
 5. From the **File** menu, select **Save APA File as**.
 6. In the Save APA File As dialog box, browse to and select the `Control` folder of the job folder to which you want to apply the APA file.
 7. In the Save APA File As dialog box, type a name for the APA file.
Valid filenames are `Job.apa`, `Job.v1.apa`, `Job.v2.apa`, and so on.
Each time you save using the **Save APA File** menu option, the system saves a new version and increments the version number in the file name.
 8. Click **Save**.
 9. Enable APA in a process template.

Creating or editing APA files in a text editor

1. Open a text editor.
Use an editor that supports Unicode or ASCII coding, for example, Windows Notepad or WordPad on a Windows-based computer or BBEdit on a Macintosh computer.
2. In the first line of the file, type `!APA 1.0`.
3. Type one or more statements, following the guidelines in Creating Raw APA.
4. If you want to enter a comment, start the line with an exclamation mark.
5. Save the file with an APA filename.
Valid filenames are `Job.apa`, `Job.v1.apa`, `Job.v2.apa`, and so on.
6. Locate the file in the `Control` folder of the job folders.
7. Enable APA in a process template.

Enable APA in process templates

You can enable APA at one of two stages of the workflow.

- Change the refine process template by enabling the **Impose** section and selecting one of the **Automated Page Assignment** options in it.

You can do this in many ways, including:

- Creating a new refine process template and enabling APA in it.
- Temporarily changing an existing refine process template by editing it from the Start Process dialog box and enabling APA.
- Permanently changing an existing refine process template by enabling APA.
- Change the Import process template by selecting **Do Auto Page Assignment After Unpopulated Imposition Import** while you import an imposition.



CAUTION: Do not select this check box unless you have an APA file with the assignments that you want applied to the selected page set. Otherwise, existing assignments are deleted. When you select this check box, Prinergy also automatically assign pages that were refined before an imposition import (before a page set is created).

See also:

[Creating process templates](#) on page [185](#)

[Modifying process templates](#) on page [187](#)

[Temporarily modifying process templates](#) on page [187](#)

[Refine process template](#) on page [201](#)

[Importing impositions](#) on page [355](#)

Automated Page Assignment Editor

Page Assignments

Use this tab to create instructions that assign pages to the page positions of a page set and imposition plan. Add a row and then make entries in all columns for the row. Each row creates one line in the APA file.

Additions or changes made in this view are automatically displayed in the other views, and vice versa.

You can explicitly name the page filename, page set name/prefix name, page set position, and layer, or use wild cards.

Refined Filename

Name of the refined file to which you want to assign geometry.

You can state the filename explicitly for example, `Book.p1.pdf`, or use wild cards.

Page Set Name/Prefix

The name of the page set or page set prefix to which you want to assign pages.



You can state the page set name or page set prefix name explicitly—for example **8PageLayout** (page set name) or **p, q, r** (page set prefix name)—or you can use wild cards.

You can use this button to assign a page to the same page position in all page sets.

Position

The page position of the page set to which the page will be assigned. You can state the page position explicitly—for example, **1, 2, 3**—or you can use a wild card.

You can also enter simple addition and subtraction expressions in the **Position** column, for example:

- Refined Filename: Page.p.pdf
- Page Set Name/Prefix: p
- Page Set Position:  + 50
- Layer: 1

You can also assign one page to several page set positions using the following page position wild cards:

- All Positions (*): Assigns one page to all page set positions.
- Contiguous (..): Assigns one page to a contiguous range of page set positions.
- Noncontiguous (,): Assigns one page to a noncontiguous range of page set positions.

Note: There are no buttons for the page position wild cards. Use your keyboard to type the wild card character.

Layer

The layer of the page position to which the page will be assigned for example, **1, 2, 3**.

The layer number is relevant only in versioning jobs. The base layer is 1. Use **1** as the layer number for non-versioning jobs.

Move Rows

The **Add** button adds a new row below the currently selected row.

The **Remove** button removes the currently selected row


The **Move Down** button moves the currently selected row down in the list.

The **Move Up** button moves the currently selected row up in the list.

Insert Wild Cards

Use the buttons in this area to create wild cards that assign settings to multiple files instead of explicitly naming each file.



Match Letters

Match letters (a-z A-Z in the page filename. For example .p1.pdf matches filenames Book.p1.pdf, Front matter.p1.pdf, and JobXYZ.p1.pdf.

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.



Match Digits



Match numbers (0-9) in the page filename. For example .p .pdf matches filenames 12345.p1.pdf, 05282003.p2.pdf, and 01.p165.pdf.

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.

Match Either

Match letters or numbers (a-z A-Z, 0-9) in the page filename. For example .p .pdf matches filenames 12345.p1.pdf, ABCDE.p2.pdf, Book cover99.p76.pdf, Book052803.p205.pdf.

Note: .p .pdf matches the same filenames. You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.

This Position

Indicates that this part of the page name is the same as the page position to which the page will be assigned.

For example if you enter Book.p.pdf, a matching wild card (*) is inserted in the **Position** column. Book.p1.pdf is assigned to position 1, Book.p2.pdf is assigned to position 2, and so on.

This Page Set

Indicates that this part of the page name is the same as the name of the page set or page set prefix to which the page will be assigned.

For example if you enter *.p1.pdf, a matching wild card (*) is inserted in the Page Set Name/Prefix column. Book.p1.pdf would be assigned to the Book page set.

All Page Sets

Assigns the page to the designated page position in all sets in the job.

Geometry Assignment

Use this tab to create a geometry assignment instruction. Add a row and then make an entry in each column in the row. Each row creates one line in the APA file.

For example the following row assigns page geometry settings to the refined page named Cover.p1.pdf.

| Refined Filename | Offset X | Offset Y | Trim Size X | Trim Size Y | Scale X | Scale Y | Orientation |
|------------------|----------|----------|-------------|-------------|---------|---------|-------------|
| Cover.p1.pdf | -36 pt | -36 pt | 612.0 pt | 792.0 pt | 100% | 100% | 0 |

Additions or changes made in this view are automatically displayed in the other views, and vice versa.

Refined Filename

Name of the refined file to which you want to assign geometry.

You can state the filename explicitly for example, Book.p1.pdf, or use wild cards.

Offset X

Position of the PDF page horizontally in relation to the lower-left corner of the trim box for the imposition page position.

A negative Offset X repositions the page content to the left of the lower-left corner.

Enter Mixed to retain the original Offset X from the PDF page).

Offset Y

Position of the PDF page vertically in relation to the lower-left corner of the trim box for the imposition page position.

A negative Offset Y repositions the page content below the lower-left corner.

Enter Mixed to retain the original Offset Y from the PDF page).

Trim Size X

X (horizontal) trim size.

Mixed, which is the default, retains the original Trim Size X from the PDF.

Trim Size Y

Y (vertical) trim size.

Mixed, which is the default, retains the original Trim Size Y from the PDF.

Scale X

Horizontal scaling, as a percentage.

Enter Mixed to retain the original Scale X from the PDF.

Scale Y

Vertical scaling, as a percentage.

Enter Mixed to retain the original Scale Y from the PDF.

Orientation

Number of degrees to rotate the page. Select one of the following options:

- 0 (no rotation)
- 90 CW (clockwise)
- 180
- 90 CCW (counter-clockwise)
- Mixed

Mixed retains the original Orientation from the PDF.

Move Rows

The **Add** button adds a new row below the currently selected row.

The **Remove** button removes the currently selected row


The **Move Down** button moves the currently selected row down in the list.

The **Move Up** button moves the currently selected row up in the list.

Insert Wild Cards

Use the buttons in this area to create wild cards that assign settings to multiple files instead of explicitly naming each file.



Match Letters

Match letters (a-z A-Z in the page filename. For example .p1.pdf matches filenames Book.p1.pdf, Front matter.p1.pdf, and JobXYZ.p1.pdf.

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.



Match Digits



Match numbers (0-9) in the page filename. For example .p .pdf matches filenames 12345.p1.pdf, 05282003.p2.pdf, and 01.p165.pdf.

You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.

Match Either

Match letters or numbers (a-z A-Z, 0-9) in the page filename. For example .p .pdf matches filenames 12345.p1.pdf, ABCDE.p2.pdf, Book cover99.p76.pdf, Book052803.p205.pdf.

Note: .p .pdf matches the same filenames. You can also specify the number of characters that this wild card will match.

To verify the number of characters that will be matched, move the cursor over the icon and check the length that is listed.

Raw APA File

Displays the APA file as it would appear if you opened it in a text editor. You can also use this view to copy or paste portions of other APA files. The instructions that appear in this view are written to an .apa file in the `Control` folder of the job folder.

Additions or changes made in this view are automatically displayed in the other views, and vice versa.

Open APA File dialog box

Unlabeled list and results area

Selecting an item in the list at the top left of the dialog box displays that item's contents in the box below.

When you select:

- **Volumes**, the volumes in your system appear
- A volume name, folders at the root of the selected volume appear
- A folder name, files within the folder appear

The path of the displayed item in the list appears in reverse order, for example, folder name followed by volume name.

Show Hidden Files

Select this check box to include hidden files, such as system files, in the results.

You can set the default selection of this check box on the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Volumes

Displays all volumes in the Prinergy system.

Job Folder

Opens the job folder for the current job.

Save APA File as dialog box

Unlabeled list and results area

Selecting an item in the list at the top left of the dialog box displays that item's contents in the box below.

When you select:

- **Volumes**, the volumes in your system appear
- A volume name, folders at the root of the selected volume appear
- A folder name, files within the folder appear

The path of the displayed item in the list appears in reverse order, for example, folder name followed by volume name.

Show Hidden Files

Select this check box to include hidden files, such as system files, in the results.

You can set the default selection of this check box on the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Save APA File as

Saves a new APA file to the location that you specify with a file name that you specify.

APA files must be stored in the <job folder>\Control folder for the job to which you want to apply the APA files.

The only valid file names are **Job.apa**, **Job.v1.apa**, **Job.v2.apa**, **Job.v3.apa**, and so on.

Volumes

Displays all volumes in the Prinergy system.

Job Folder

Opens the job folder for the current job.

Menus in Automated Page Assignment Editor

Workshop menu in APA Editor

Note: This menu is available only when running Prinergy Workshop on a Macintosh client.

About Prinergy Workshop

Displays information about Prinergy Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the server name.

Preferences

Use to view and modify Prinergy Workshop preferences. When you select this menu item, the Workshop Preferences dialog box appears.

Note: On a Windows client, this menu item appears under the **Edit** menu. On a Macintosh client, it appears under the **Workshop** menu.

Quit / Quit Prinergy Workshop

Quits Prinergy Workshop. Any open Prinergy Workshop windows are closed.

File menu in APA Editor

New APA File

Removes the APA file that you are currently working on and creates a new APA file.

Important: If you want to save your work to an open APA file you must do so before selecting **New APA File**.

Open APA File

Opens an existing APA File.

When you select **Open APA File**, the Open APA file dialog box appears. From there, you can browse to and select the APA file that you want to open, and then click **Open**.

Save APA File

Saves the open APA file in its current location and increments the filename by one version. For example **Job.v1.apa**, **Job.v2.apa**, and so on.

Save APA File as

Saves a new APA file to the location that you specify with a file name that you specify.

APA files must be stored in the <job folder>\Control folder for the job to which you want to apply the APA files.

The only valid file names are **Job.apa**, **Job.v1.apa**, **Job.v2.apa**, **Job.v3.apa**, and so on.

Close Window

Closes the current window, but does not quit Prinergy Workshop.

Edit menu in APA Editor

Cut

This menu item is unavailable.

Copy

This menu item is unavailable.

Paste

This menu item is unavailable.

Cut Rows

Select one or more rows then use **Cut Rows** to remove the rows.

Copy Rows

Select one or more rows then use **Copy Rows** to copy the rows.

Paste Rows

Select **Paste Rows** to paste one or more rows that were previously copied or cut.

Insert Blank Row

Select **Insert Blank Row** to add a blank row below the current row.

Delete Rows

Select one or more rows then use **Delete Rows** to remove the rows.

Simplify Duplicate Rows

Select **Simplify Duplicate Rows** to remove an instruction that performs the same assignment as another instruction. For example, if you add an instruction with wild cards, select **Simplify Duplicate Rows** to remove any instructions with explicit names that are now covered by the wild card instruction. Any instruction that remains after the rows are simplified performs a different assignment than any other remaining instruction.

Select All (unavailable)

View menu in APA Editor

Refresh

Updates the contents of the current window.

Tools menu in APA Editor

Change User

Displays the Connect to Server dialog box where you can log in as another user without quitting Prinergy Workshop.

This menu item appears only if you have Kodak Prinergy Business Link software connected to the Prinergy system.

Job Finder

Opens Job Finder.

If you are already in Job Finder, this menu item is unavailable.

Destroy History Entries

In the **History** view, select one or more history entries and then use **Destroy History Entries** to delete the selected entries.

Process Template Editor

Launches **Process Template Editor**, where you can create and modify process templates.

Automated Page Assignment Editor

Starts the **Automated Page Assignment Editor**, which you use to create and check APA files.

Queue Manager

Launches **Queue Manager**, where you can view the Job Ticket Processors (JTPs) and process types.

Media Manager

Launches **Media Manager**, where you can manage your archive tapes and disk volumes.

System History

Launches **System History**, which displays the detailed history of all the activity occurring outside of job context (such as jobs and groups that were created or destroyed), as well as job archive, purge, and retrieve history.

Smart Hot Folder Manager

Launches the Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box, where you can add, edit and delete smart hot folders.

Configure Imposition Application

Displays the Configure Imposition Applications dialog box, where you can identify the location of imposition software that you want to integrate with Prinergy Workshop.

Start Imposition Application

Displays the Start Imposition Application dialog box, where you choose which imposition software to start. You create this list of imposition applications with the Configure Imposition Application tool from the **Tools** menu. If an application requires a license and is licensed, it appears in bold.

Color Editor

Launches **Color Editor**, where you can create color recipes for all jobs.

Color Space Editor

Launches **Color Space Editor**, where you can create and edit color spaces.

Font Converter

Launches **Font Converter**, where you can convert font files into PFA (Printer Font ASCII) format, which Prinergy requires to correctly process fonts.

Preflight Profile Manager

Launches **Preflight Profile Manager**, where you can, during the refine process, evaluate PDFs to detect problems that may affect processing in a publishing or prepress workflow.

Digital Print Administration Console

Launches the Digital Print Administrator, where you can add and configure a digital print application that Prinergy can launch to print PDFs.

Rule Set Manager

Opens the Rule Set Manager, where you can create and edit rule sets. The Rule Set Manager also lets you organize rule sets into groups.

Activate Rule Set in Selected Jobs

Opens the **Select Rule Set** dialog box, where you can activate rule sets for one or more jobs.

Help menu in APA Editor

Online help

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy online help.

On *<current window or view>*

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy Workshop user guide, open to the topic for the currently selected window or view.

Quick Start Guide

Starts Adobe Acrobat and displays a PDF file of the *Prinergy Connect Quick Start Guide*

eCentral Online Support

Starts your Web browser and displays the eCentral portal at <https://ecentral.kodak.com/>.

Visit graphics.kodak.com

Starts your Web browser and displays the Kodak Web site at <http://graphics.kodak.com/default.htm>.

About Prinerger Workshop

Displays information about Prinerger Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the Prinerger server name.

Note: This menu item appears on the **Help** menu only when you are running Prinerger Workshop on a Windows-based client computer. On a Macintosh client computer, the menu item **About Workshop** appears on the **Workshop** menu.

Keyboard shortcuts in APA Editor

| Macintosh Keyboard Shortcut | Windows Keyboard Shortcut | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| ⌘ + A | Ctrl + A | Select all. |
| ⌘ + C | Ctrl + C | Copy selection. |
| ⌘ + Shift + C | CTRL+ Shift+ C | Copy entire line. |
| ⌘ + D | Ctrl + D | Delete rows. |
| ⌘ + I | Ctrl + I | Insert blank row. |
| ⌘ + N | Ctrl + N | New APA file. |
| ⌘ + O | Ctrl + O | Open APA file. |
| ⌘ + R | Ctrl + R | Refresh the view. |
| ⌘ + S | Ctrl + S | Save APA file. |
| ⌘ + V | Ctrl + V | Paste selection. |
| ⌘ + Shift + V | CTRL+ Shift+ V | Paste entire line. |
| ⌘ + W | Ctrl + W | Close window. |
| ⌘ + X | Ctrl + X | Cut selection. |
| ⌘ + Shift + X | Ctrl + Shift + X | Cut entire row. |

Ganging

Gang pages or impositions from different jobs to save makeready, plate, setup, and washup costs. Ganging is the act of combining pages from different jobs or impositions onto one press sheet.

If you use Kodak Preps imposition software, take advantage of page aliasing to help you manage ganged pages.

Identifying source pages and page aliases

If you use Preps to gang Prinergy pages, page aliases--instead of copies--are created in the ganged job to help you manage changes.

Page aliases are links that are created from the original page to the ganged job. Page aliases provide many benefits over copies, and are automatically created when the populated imposition is imported into Prinergy from Preps.

Benefits of page aliases

Page aliases provide the following benefits:

- Page aliases save file space because pages are not duplicated.
- Page edits are easily managed--for example:
 - If a page's contents are updated, when output, the alias automatically picks up the latest updates of the original. There's no need to duplicate the updated content to the alias.

Note: This benefit applies to simple updates only—for example, text changes. Some changes, such as changes to the number of inks or geometry changes, may invalidate the existing ganged imposition. In this case, you will likely need to rebuild the ganged imposition.

- If the approval status of a page changes, it is reflected in both locations.
- If the page geometry of a page changes, it is reflected in both locations.
- History entries about ganged pages are logged in both the source job and the ganged job.
- The percentage of the media used by each source job is automatically calculated and listed in the history entries. Note that the percentage is calculated on the basis of the number of pages on the sheet, not on the surface area of the pages.

Note: A detailed report of ganged material usage by source job is available with Prinergy Business Link software.

- On refine, each page is tagged so that if you copy it to a different location before ganging it, the source job and source page can still


be identified when it is imported into Prinergy in a ganged imposition.

- Custom fields can be added to page aliases. Adding a custom field to a source page adds the custom field to the alias. Adding a custom field to an alias adds the custom field to the source page.


Note: Making changes to a page alias, such as re-refining or changing page geometry, also affects the original page.

Identifying page aliases

In the source job, identify:

- Source pages by the  icon
- The page aliases for a selected source page in the Get Info dialog box, in the **Jobs with alias of page** list

In the ganged job, identify:

- Page aliases by the  icon
- The source job of a selected page alias in either of the following locations:
 - In the **Pages** view, in the **Pages** pane, in the **Source Job** column
 - The Get Info dialog box, in the **Source Job** list

Limitations

Page aliases are not available for:

- **Pages that are re-refined after ganging**—If you re-refine a page after it has been ganged, but before the ganged imposition has been imported, the ganged imposition will fail to import into Prinergy. Therefore, ensure that page content is stable before ganging.

Note: Some changes, such as changes to the number of inks or geometry changes, may invalidate the existing ganged imposition. In this case, you will likely need to rebuild the ganged imposition.

- **Job archive, purge or retrieve**—If you archive a ganged job, the original PDF pages are copied and archived. If the ganged job is retrieved, the pages are not linked to the original job.
- **Job export**—If you export a ganged job, the original PDF pages are copied and exported.
- **Versioned jobs**—If you gang versioned pages, the original PDF pages are placed in the imposition.
- **Copy job (to another server)**—When a ganged job is copied to the same server, page aliases are maintained. However, if a ganged job is copied to another server, the original PDF pages are copied and added to the job.
- **Other imposition software**—If you use imposition software other than Preps to gang pages, page aliases may not be created. Using

non-Preps software to build ganged jobs and aliases has not been tested. The pages assigned to the impositions may be registered as input files, and may require refining.

- **Impositions populated within Prinergy**—If, without using Preps, you add more than one instance of a page to an imposition within Prinergy, the pages are duplicated in the imposition.

Note: Prinergy now allows aliases and source pages to have different file names. This enables you to take a copy of the PDF from the subpages folder and put it in another folder, give the copy a new name, and create a layout job ticket that references the renamed copy.

Ganging with page aliases

Page aliases are automatically created when you assemble with Preps Ganging and import a ganged job into Prinergy using these steps.

Requirements:

For this procedure, using Preps 6.0 imposition software or later is preferred. Preps versions 5 and earlier lower are no longer tested or supported.

Important: Do not gang pages until the content is stable. If you rerefine a page after it has already been ganged in Preps, the ganged layout is not imported into Prinergy.

1. Start Preps Ganging.
2. Place refined pages into Preps Ganging. All refined pages contain a hidden identification tag inserted on refine. You can place pages using any of the following methods:
 - Drag the pages from Job Manager to Preps Ganging.
 - Drag the files from the `System\Subpages` folder for the job to Preps Ganging.
 - Copy the files from the `System\Subpages` folder for the job to another location on the job volume (for example, a staging folder for gang jobs), either manually or using RBA. In Preps Ganging, locate and add the files.
3. After you finish placing pages in the ganged imposition, print the imposition to PJTF.
4. Import the populated imposition into a Prinergy job.

You can create a job specifically for the ganged imposition or use an existing Prinergy job. If you use an existing Prinergy job, the pages must have been refined in Prinergy 5 or later.

The import process template must have the **Set Initial Separations** option selected, so that the separations are properly assigned to the incoming imposition.

A page alias is created in the ganged layout for each tag that matches that of an existing page.

12

Outputs

Generating loose page output

Follow the instructions in Starting a Process and choose a loose page output process template.

Tip:

- You can select pages in the **Pages** view or the **Signatures** view. Pages can be assigned or unassigned. An imposition plan does not need to be added to the job.
- Pages are sent to the proofing device in the order that they are selected.
- When the selected pages are assigned to a page set, and the page set is linked to an imposition plan, the loose page output includes the imposition plan's trim and bleed lines if they are configured in the process template.

Loose Page Output process template

At the top of the dialog box is the **Output To** list, which you use to select the file format suitable for the output device you select in the **Device** section. The file format selection determines the availability of some options in this process template. For this reason, you should select an output format before you set the other options in the process template.

Copydot section of the Loose Page Output process template

This process template section defines how Prinergy handles copydot files during loose page output.

When you enable the **Copydot** section, the system automatically converts copydot images for optimal quality on your output device during output. Only disable the **Copydot** section for one or more of the following reasons:

- Your pages lack copydot images.
- You are outputting at your target device resolution.
- You don't need high-quality copydot images in your loose page output.

JTP

Select a job ticket processor (JTP) to use for copydot files.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Resample

Enables resampling of copydot files to the resolution required by the output device. The availability of this option is controlled by the device you select in the **Output To** list at the top of the final output process template dialog box.

Select the **Resample** check box to enable resampling of copydot files. Prinergy resamples copydot files to the resolution required by the output device you select in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Clear the **Resample** check box to disable resampling.

Note: You can resample copydot images during another step in the process—refine, loose page output, or final output.

Descreen

Enables descreening of copydot files for contone output devices. The availability of this option is controlled by the device you select in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template. This option becomes available only for 8-bit final output devices.

Select the **Descreen** check box to enable descreening.

Clear the **Descreen** check box to disable descreening.

Calibration Curve

Specifies a calibration curve from Kodak Harmony tonal calibration software for the copydot files.

From the **Calibration Curve** box, select the calibration curve you want Prinergy to use for copydot files.

Select **%%NONE%%** to disable this feature.

ColorFlow section of the Loose Page Output process template

The **ColorFlow** section of the loose page output process template defines how Prinergy applies ColorFlow settings during loose page output .

When you configure the ColorFlow settings in an output process template, you select the device, device condition, and plate line, but not a color setup. The color setup used is the one that was assigned to the pages when they were refined—that is, either the color setup specified in the refine process template that was used or the job's default color setup. The color setup that is used during output processing is the color setup specified for each page in the **Color Setup** column in the **Pages** pane.



WARNING: Output will fail if the color setup does not match the color setup assigned during refine, unless the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** option is enabled.

It is possible to select from four modes for output to halftone devices or files. These modes control the curves that are applied upon output.

Print Production

This halftone output mode reflects the standard operation of Prinergy and ColorFlow for production. When this option is selected, curves are applied to each output separation, as described next:

- The *print calibration curve* for the separation, determined by the selections from the **Snapshot**, **Device**, and **Device Condition** lists, and possibly modified at run time by the settings in the Tonal Control dialog box, is applied to separation input tints.
- The *plate calibration curve*, determined by the selections from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, is applied to the separation tints modified by the print calibration curve.

Note: If **None** is selected from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, the plate calibration curve is linear (has no effect).

This option is not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Print Characterization

This halftone output mode is used to print and measure the response of a print device. When this option is selected, curves are applied to each output separation as follows:

- The *device curve* for the separation, determined by the selections from the **Snapshot**, **Device**, and **Device Condition** lists, with no modifications from the Tonal Control dialog box, is applied to separation input tints.
- The *plate calibration curve*, determined by the selections from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, is applied to the separation tints modified by the print calibration curve.

Note: If **None** is selected from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, the plate calibration curve is linear (has no effect).

When this option is selected, the **Device** list contains all curved print devices in the selected snapshot, and the **Device Condition** list contains all ColorFlow device conditions in the selected snapshot that use the selected device. If the selected device condition uses a plate setup, the **Plate Setup** list displays

this plate setup, and the **Plate Line** list contains all ColorFlow plate lines controlled by the plate setup in the selected snapshot.

When this option is selected, the **Color Setup** list is not available.

This option is not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Plate Verification

This halftone output mode is used to verify the linear response of plates produced by a particular plate line (consisting of the computer-to-plate device, plate processor setup, and chemistry), with a selected screening system. When this option is selected, the following results occur:

- Only the *plate calibration curve*, determined by the selections from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, is applied to input tints of all separations.
- No print calibration curve is applied.

When this option is selected, the **Plate Setup** list contains all ColorFlow plate setups in the selected snapshot, and the **Plate Line** list contains all ColorFlow plate lines controlled by the selected plate setup in the selected snapshot.

When this option is selected, the **Color Setup**, **Device**, and **Device Condition** lists are not available.

This option is not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Plate Characterization

This halftone output mode supports imaging and measuring the uncalibrated (or intrinsic) response of a plating line, such that a plate linearization curve can be computed. When this option is selected, no calibration curves are applied to input tints of any separations.

When this option is selected, none of the lists in the **ColorFlow** section are available.

This option is not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch

This check box enables the job to run when the selected color setup differs from the color setup assigned by the refine process, or if the color setup has not been defined. Note that

when this feature is enabled, output could be significantly different.

To use this feature, it is recommended to select an approved color setup listed in the snapshot or by ID number. This will ensure that the list of devices and device conditions are filtered to include only those available in the selected color setup. Then, the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** check box can be selected and output will succeed with a warning message.

To output refined pages with no color setup assigned to them, you can select the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** setting.

The list of devices and device conditions is unfiltered when **<Job_Color_Setup>** is selected. Note that this may cause output to fail, if the device and device condition selected are not in the job color setup. A message will be logged in the process history, and you will need to either select a device and device condition used in the job color setup or use the recommended solution, as described above.

When **<Color_Setup_Assigned_by_Refine>** is selected, the list of devices and device conditions is also unfiltered, and the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** check box is grayed out and cannot be used. Note that this is the default color setup setting for all process templates that were upgraded from Prinergy Connect 5.1.

Snapshot

A ColorFlow snapshot captures the state of the entire color database, making its elements available to the workflow and providing a convenient backup. The snapshot feature makes it unnecessary for you to manually save and name multiple versions of your color control elements after adjusting them. At any time, you can easily roll back (revert) to the state of a previous snapshot in the ColorFlow software. If you roll back to a previous snapshot, ColorFlow behaves as if changes after that snapshot never happened.

When you have completed your work in ColorFlow to a certain level and you are satisfied with the elements in color setups, you will mark a snapshot as *approved*. By default in Prinergy Connect, the currently approved snapshot is used. Only one snapshot can be in the approved state at any time.

This list is not available if the **Plate Characterization** option is selected.

Color Setup

This list displays the names of all color setups in the selected snapshot. At the top of the list is **Color setups assigned by Refine**, followed by **Job color setup**.

This list is available only if the **Print Calibration** mode is selected.

Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch

This check box enables the job to run when the selected color setup differs from the color setup assigned by the refine process, or if the color setup has not been defined. Note that when this feature is enabled, output could be significantly different.

To use this feature, it is recommended to select an approved color setup listed in the snapshot or by ID number. This will ensure that the list of devices and device conditions are filtered to include only those available in the selected color setup. Then, the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** check box can be selected and output will succeed with a warning message.

To output refined pages with no color setup assigned to them, you can select the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** setting.

The list of devices and device conditions is unfiltered when **<Job_Color_Setup>** is selected. Note that this may cause output to fail, if the device and device condition selected are not in the job color setup. A message will be logged in the process history, and you will need to either select a device and device condition used in the job color setup or use the recommended solution, as described above.

When **<Color_Setup_Assigned_by_Refine>** is selected, the list of devices and device conditions is also unfiltered, and the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** check box is grayed out and cannot be used. Note that this is the default color setup setting for all process templates that were upgraded from Prinergy Connect 5.1.

Device

An individual occurrence of a physical device that captures or produces an image. Devices have a type and customer-specified properties, such as a name and location in the plant. Because the declaration of a device does not include its operating conditions—such as ink selection, type of screening, and paper—you cannot measure the color response of a device on its own.

When a process template is configured for halftone (screened) output processes, this list displays the names of all curved devices used in PCO (primary color output) or SCO (secondary color output) device conditions in the selected color setup and snapshot. Curved print devices are those with the following device types:

- Offset press—for example, sheetfed, heatset web, coldset web
- Digital press—for example, Versamark
- Digital halftone proofer—for example, Kodak Approval, Trendsetter Spectrum

When a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output, this list displays the names of all non-curved devices used in PCO or SCO device conditions in the selected color setup and snapshot. Non-curved devices are those with the following device types:

- Digital press—for example, Nexpress
- Inkjet proofer—for example, Kodak Matchprint Inkjet, Kodak Veris
- CMYK reference

This list is not available if the **Plate Verification** or **Plate Characterization** option is selected.

Device Condition

A combination of a device and the operating conditions in which the device captures or produces an image. A device condition has a known color response. Device conditions can be divided into groups such as print conditions (press and proofer devices), capture conditions (scanner and camera devices), and reference print conditions (industry specifications). A device condition can include more than one device. If all the devices are the same device type, they use the same consumables and operational settings, and they can be calibrated to yield the same color response.

When a specific color setup is selected, this list contains all ColorFlow device conditions that use the selected device and are used in the PCO or an SCO of the selected color setup and snapshot.

This list is not available if the **Plate Verification** or **Plate Characterization** option is selected.

Plate Setup

If the selected device condition uses a plate setup in the selected snapshot, this plate setup is displayed here. Otherwise, this list displays **None**.

This list is not available if the **Plate Characterization** option is selected. It is also not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Plate Line

You establish the behavior of a particular plate, screening, and plating line by plating a tint ramp, manually measuring the resulting dot area on the plate, and entering the values in the Plate Setups dialog box in the ColorFlow software.

A ColorFlow plate line is associated with only one plate setup. In your shop, you may use a platesetter and chemistry to process several different screenings. To model this, in ColorFlow, create similar plate lines in the other plate setups. You can name them to match the equipment in your plant. You may want to create several plate lines to indicate when chemistry changes occur. For example, if you routinely change solutions on Mondays, you might create different ColorFlow plate lines for Monday, Wednesday, and Friday.

If the **Plate Setup** list displays a plate setup, the **Plate Line** list contains all ColorFlow plate lines controlled by the plate setup in the selected snapshot. If the **Plate Setup** list displays **None**, the **Plate Line** list also displays **None**.

This list is not available if the **Plate Characterization** option is selected. It is also not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

ColorConvert section of the Loose Page Output process template

This process template section defines how Prinergy handles color converting during loose page output.

Color converting, as part of loose page output, transforms the color description of colored objects in a PDF page to the appropriate final output color space, and then to the appropriate color space of the loose page output device. As a result, the loose page output simulates the intended final output.

JTP

Select the job ticket processor (JTP) to use for color conversion.

You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Match Colors

Match Colors in Page Content

Enables the Color Matcher to match hues in the page content for proofing. In other words, it enables color matching as it was done in Prinergy 1.1 (as opposed to using the Color Matcher to affect the L*a*b* spot color recipes).

Select this check box to enable this feature; clear the check box to disable this feature.

When you enable this feature, you can set the **Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile** option.

Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile

Select **Exactly as Applied During Refining** to use the same profile that was used during the refine process. If the file was not color converted during refining, or the profile is missing, an error is displayed.

Select **As Defined Below, if Not Set in Refining** to use the same profile that was used during the refine process, if the file was color converted during refining. If the file was not color converted during refining, the profile defined in the **Input Device Conditions** box will be used.

Select **Exactly as Defined Below** to use the profile selected in the **Input Device Conditions** box.

Input Device Conditions

Available when **Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile** is set to **As Defined Below, if not set in Refining** or **Exactly as Defined Below**.

From the list, select **Browse** to locate the appropriate profile file for final output.

Rendering Intent

Select **Relative Colorimetric** if the proofing paper is similar to the paper that will be used during final output.

Select **Absolute Colorimetric** to simulate the color of the paper that will be used during final output.

Select **PDF** to use the rendering intent specified in the PDF file when output by the creative software during final output.

Select **Perceptual** to use rendering that uses gamut compression and produces less saturated colors during final output.

Select **Saturation** to make sure colors are represented in a way that preserves or emphasizes saturation during final output.

Retain CMYK Black

Preserves black in images and graphics that are defined in CMYK or RGB color space. For ICC-based color matching engines, CMYK images and graphics get transformed from CMYK to L*a*b* and back to CMYK color in order to perform color matching. In going from CMYK (four components) to L*a*b* (three components) and back again, the black (K) channel separation information (UCR/GCR) has in the past been destroyed. Selecting this check box instructs the Color Matcher to preserve the black generation information from the source color space. As a result, the amount of black relative to CMY in the images and graphics stays about the same. The purpose of this feature is to help preserve the visual weight of images and graphics.

Note: When you enable this feature, Color Matcher requires some additional processing time because of the extra calculations involved.

Overprint Handling (CPU Intensive)

(See [About overprint handling](#) on page 257)

Select to prevent overprinting objects from generating unintended knockouts.

If you are converting spots to process for a proof, or if you are color-matching one CMYK space to another CMYK space for a proof, you probably need to apply overprint handling, even if you applied it during refine.

To use overprint handling, you must:

1. In the **ColorConvert** section, select:
 - The **Color Matcher JTP**
 - The **Match Colors in Page Content** check box
 - The **Overprint Handling** check box
2. Choose between raster and vector overprint handling in the **Methods** list.

Note: The raster option is available only when **Shades=256** is selected in the **Render** section of the process template.

Method

Choose to use vector or raster overprint handling for this output process.

Select **Raster** when outputting to low-resolution contone proofers (for example, Veris digital proofer or Matchprint Inkjet proofer).

Note: To use raster overprint handling, you must select, in the **Render** section of the process template, **Shades=256**.

Additional factors to consider:

- Raster overprint handling can be applied only to continuous tone data
- Raster overprint handling occurs after the RIP
- Raster processing time increases exponentially as the resolution increases
- Raster overprint handling eliminates all overprints

Select **Vector** when outputting to halftone (screen) proofers (for example, the Spectrum device), or to high-resolution contone proofers.

Additional factors to consider:

- Vector overprint handling occurs before the RIP
- Depending on the complexity of the file, vector overprint handling could take longer than raster overprint handling.
- Vector overprint handling does not eliminate all overprints. In objects where overprinting does not have an effect on the output, the objects retain an overprint status. For example, if you set black to overprint, but one black object is not placed on top of another object, this black object is, after overprint handling, still an overprinting object.

Preserve Traps

Select this check box to preserve existing Kodak traps when vector overprint handling is used.

Note: When existing traps are preserved, you cannot remove them in later processing. You must remove the traps in the original file. Traps are color-managed as regular objects.

Process CEPS Data

Select this check box to enable spot color mapping and color matching of CEPS data.

For further information, see the CEPS Conversion Section and the Normalize Section of the Refine Process Template.

Process Marks

Select this check box when you want to apply color management to your marks file. Depending on the type of mark, it may be necessary to enable **Overprint Handling** to appropriately convert the mark and apply the necessary color transformation.

Note: When **Process Marks** is checked, both sheet marks and page marks are color managed.

Color match 1-bit images

Select this check box to color match 1-bit images. One-bit images are images that represent two tones, typically black and white. The pixel is either a 0 or a 1 value. Examples are copydot images.

Note: This feature will convert 1-bit images to 8-bit images. This causes pages to become larger and to render more slowly. Turn off this feature if you do not require color matching of 1-bit images, or if the feature causes unacceptable performance degradation. (For example, copydot files take a very long time to refine and render.)

This feature is available when **Match Colors in Page Content** is selected.

Device Condition

Enables the ICC profile for a proofing device. The ICC profile characterizes the way the proofing device prints.

Enable this feature by selecting a profile in the **Device Condition** box. A profile should always be present because the Color Matcher needs it for mapping spots and other tasks.

Source of Color Recipes

Extract Recipe from the File

Select to use the color recipes embedded in the file.

Lookup Recipe in Color Database

Select to use the color libraries selected in this process template.

Color Libraries

From the **Selectable** list, select the color libraries you want Printrun to search for color recipes, and click **Add**.

Arrange the color libraries in the **Selected** list in the order that you want Prinergy to search. Use the **Move Up** and **Move Down** buttons.

Note: Ensure that you select color libraries with color spaces that are compatible with the **Proof Process Profile**.

Use Recipe from File if not found in Color Database

Select this check box to use color recipes embedded in the file if Prinergy does not find the colors in the selected color libraries.

Layout section of the Loose Page Output process template

This process template section defines how Prinergy places the pages on the output media during loose page output.

Media

Media Configuration

This option becomes available when you select Kodak Proofers in the **Output To** list.

Specifies the type of paper you're using in the Kodak proofing device. Select a paper type from the list.

Thickness

This option becomes available when you select an Epson device in the **Output To** list.

Type the thickness of the paper you are using in the **Thickness** box, and then select a unit of measurement.

Layout for Kodak Proofers

Select a template to control how multiple pages are arranged on a single proof.

This box is available only for those proofers that are connected via Kodak Proofing Software (KPS).

For more information, see the Kodak proofer documentation.

Name

Available when a vendor's device has been defined through the Prinergy Administrator. Available options are determined by the device.

Size

Determines the size of the media to which you will output the final files.

Select **Digital** to generate an output file, for example, a file for Virtual Proofing System software. When you select **Digital**, the **Min Width**, **Min Height**, **Max Width**, **Max Height**, and **Layout is 90° Different Than Media** boxes are unavailable.

Select **Cut sheet**, **Roll fed**, or **Roll fed (transverse)**, depending on the media being used.

Min Width

Sets the minimum width for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

Min Height

Sets the minimum height for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

For cut sheet, enter the sheet height. For roll fed, enter the height of the smallest proof you want to make on the device.

Max Width

Sets the maximum width for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

Max Height

Sets the maximum height for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

Duplexing

This option is available for composite files; it is unavailable for separated files.

Specifies the type of duplexing.

From the **Duplexing** box, select **Turn** or **Tumble** to enable this feature. Select **None** to disable duplexing.

Front Shift and Back Shift

The **Front Shift Along Width...Along Height** and **Back Shift Along Width...Along Height** options give finer adjustment when aligning two-sided proofs than with **Center Along Width/Height**. Use these measurements to shift and align front and back pages along their turn or tumble axes, depending on the page or imposition orientation (portrait or landscape).

These options are available only when **Duplexing** has been set to **Turn** or **Tumble**.

You can specify the shift in points, inches, centimeters, or millimeters.

Layout is 90° Different Than Media

Available when you select **Cut Sheet** or **Roll Fed** from the **Size** box. This option is unavailable when you select **Digital** from the **Size** box or when you select the **Reduce to Fit Media** check box.

Select this check box when the orientation of data is at a 90° angle to the orientation of the media (for example, you are trying to output a landscape layout to a portrait device). You must also select either **Auto clockwise** or **Auto counterclockwise** in the **Orientation** box.

Note: This option is not available when you select **Veris/Matchprint Inkjet** in the **Output To** list at the top of the pane.

Center and crop page to media size

Select this check box when the sheet size of the device is smaller than the media box of the PDF page.

PDF Box to Use

Select the **Trim Box** or the **Media Box** to use as the area of output content.

For example, selecting the trim box produces trimmed output, that is, output without bleeds or registration marks.

Placement

Type

Select the type of placement.

When you select **Top Left to Bottom Right** placement the **N-up** option button is selected and the **Number of Pages Across** option becomes available.

When you select **Page Set Booklet**, the **2x1** option button is selected and the **Vertical Gutter Width** option becomes available

Style

Determines how many pages Prinergy places on each sheet.

- Select **Auto Fit** to let the system determine the best layout, depending on the files submitted.
- Select **2x1** to specify two pages across and one page down.
- Select **1x2** to specify one page across and two pages down.
- Select **N-up** to specify the number of pages across and down.

Number of Pages Across

Available when **N-up** is selected in the **Style** box.

Determines the number of pages to place horizontally on each sheet.

Down

Available when **N-up** is selected in the **Style** box.

Determines the number of pages to place vertically on each sheet.

Vertical Gutter Width

Available when **Auto Fit** is selected in the **Style** box or **N-up** is selected in the **Style** box and the **Number of Pages Across** box contains a value greater than 1.

Determines the minimum space allowed, in the selected unit of measure, for vertical gutters when automatically fitting pages on a sheet. This value may be reduced if the **Reduce Gutters if Required** check box is selected.

Horizontal Gutter Height

Available when **Auto Fit** is selected in the **Style** box, or **N-up** is selected in the **Style** box and the **Down** box contains a value greater than 1.

Determines the minimum space allowed, in the selected unit of measure, for horizontal gutters when automatically fitting pages on a sheet. This value may be reduced if the **Reduce Gutters if Required** check box is selected (see below).

Orientation

(See [Example: orientation](#) on page 653)

Rotates an entire imposition as a unit.

Select **Auto clockwise** to automatically rotate an image clockwise when rotating would result in a better fit.

Select **Auto counterclockwise** to automatically rotate an image counter-clockwise when rotating would result in a better fit.

Note: Loose page proofs do not have an imposition plan. When you identify the media (in the **Media** area), an imposition plan is assumed that is always equal to the media, and thus is the best fit. Therefore, selecting **Auto clockwise** or **Auto counterclockwise** will have no effect unless the **Layout is 90° Different than Media** check box is also selected. When this check box is selected, the assumed imposition is rotated by 90°, which matches the layout but does not match the media. The layout is then automatically rotated (clockwise or counterclockwise) to result in a better fit to the media. Select **0°**, **90°**, **180°**, or **270°** to rotate an image the specified amount in a clockwise direction.

Scaling

Scale Vector

Applies scaling to the layout prior to screening the file. The scaling is based on vector data (PDF data).

Apply Scaling from Layout

Select to use the scaling specified in the original layout application, for example, Pandora.

Note: This feature is not compatible with Preps.

Custom

Enter scaling percentages for the **Along Width** and **Along Height** directions.

Fit to Media Size

If the specified layout produces an image too large for the media, the image is scaled to fit.

You cannot see the scaling percentage. Select this check box only when a proof scaled to an unspecified reduction is acceptable.

Non-Printable Margin

If the **Fit to Media Size** option was selected, you can identify the non-printable margins that should be taken into account when determining scaled layouts.

Specify left, right, top, and bottom non-printable margins appropriate to the output device and media, in the selected unit of measure.

Scale Raster

Applies raster scaling to the layout. Raster scaling is an optional feature that will allow you to apply distortion after the files are screened.

Raster scaling is recommended for prescreened files (copydot) or files that contain 1-bit TIFF images, since the prescreened bitmap data cannot be properly scaled with vector scaling (could generate artifacts).

Clear this check box to disable this feature.

Apply Scaling from Layout

Select to use the scaling specified in the original layout application, for example, Pandora.

Note: This feature is not compatible with Preps.

Custom

Enter scaling percentages for the **Along Width** and **Along Height** directions.

Spacing

Add Extra Horizontal Space

(See [Example: add extra horizontal space](#) on page 654)

Determines where unused horizontal space should be positioned.

- Select **Right margin only** to position unused space at the right margin, allowing for excess to be easily cut off.
- Select **Evenly to both margins** to divide unused space evenly between the right and left margins.
- Select **Evenly to all gutters and margins** to divide unused space evenly between the vertical gutters and right and left margins.

Add Extra Vertical Space

(See [Example: add extra vertical space](#) on page 653)

Determines where unused vertical space should be positioned.

- Select **Bottom margin only** to position unused space at the bottom margin, allowing for excess to be easily cut off.
- Select **Evenly to both margins** to divide unused space evenly between the top and bottom margins.
- Select **Evenly to all gutters and margins** to divide unused space evenly between the horizontal gutters and top and bottom margins.

Reduce Gutters if Required

Allows gutter values (set in the **Horizontal Gutter Height** and **Vertical Gutter Width** boxes in the **Placement** section) to be reduced if required to fit pages. If selected, gutters will be reduced only to the values set in the **Min Horizontal Gutter Height** and **Min Vertical Gutter Width** boxes.

Min Vertical Gutter Width

Available if the **Reduce Gutters if Required** check box is selected, **N-up** is selected in the **Style** box, and the **Down** box contains a value greater than 1.

Vertical gutters are not reduced below this value.

Min Horizontal Gutter Height

Available if the **Reduce Gutters if Required** check box is selected, **N-up** is selected in the **Style** box, and the **Number of Pages Across** box contains a value greater than 1.

Horizontal gutters are not reduced below this value.

Preview

(See [About previewing loose page output](#) on page 752)

Displays the Imposition Preview dialog box, which graphically displays how the PDF pages will fit on the selected media. It is based on the settings in the **Layout** section of the Loose Page Output process template and the page size you specify in the **Assumed Page Size** option in the Imposition Preview dialog box.

When you change the options in the **Layout** section of the Loose Page Output process template, the Imposition Preview dialog box is automatically updated.

Note: You must specify a page size for the **Assumed Page Size** option in the Imposition Preview dialog box for the graphic in the dialog box to correctly display.

Render section of the Loose Page Output process template

This process template section determines the output resolution and how the system handles spot colors during loose page output.

JTP

Select the job ticket processor (JTP) to use for rendering.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Device Resolutions

This list is available when an output device format is selected in the **Output To** list.

Select a resolution for the selected device in the list.

Resolution X

Available when the **Device Resolutions** box is unavailable.

Type a resolution value.

Resolution Y

Available when the **Device Resolutions** box is unavailable and mixed resolution values are allowed for the output format selected in the **Output To** list.

Type a resolution value.

Color Model

Select the process color model to use for output.

The list of values varies, depending on the output format selected in the **Output To** list.

Shades

To set the number of shades of gray to output, select **1** for screened data or **256** for continuous tone data. When **1** is selected, the **Calibration & Screening** section of the refine process template is available for input.

The list of values varies, depending on the output format selected in the **Output To** list and the color model selected in the **Color Model** list.

Do Separations

Available when the output format selected in the **Output To** list supports separated output and **DeviceCMYK** is selected in the **Color Model** options.

Select if you want Prinergy to output separations. Clear this check box if you want Prinergy to output a single composite file.

Spot Color Handling

Determines how spot colors should be handled on loose page output.

The list of values varies, depending on the output format selected from the **Output To** list.

- Select **Convert to process** to convert spot colors to process colors.

Note: When **Convert to process** is selected, **Vector Overprint Handling** (in the ColorConvert section) is automatically turned on to ensure the correct appearance of any overprinting spot colors.

- Select **Output separately** to preserve spot colors on output.
- Select **Don't output** to suppress output of spot colors.

Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots

This check box is available when **Output Separations Handling** is set to **Convert separations to process**.

If the input files contain overprinted spot colors, the Color Combiner, which is a plug-in to the renderer, will combine the layers and output the overprinted colors correctly.

When this check box is cleared, the renderer handles the conversion of spot colors to process colors if the following conditions exist:

- Input files are composite.
- All spot colors are set to opaque in the color database. (If a spot color is not in the color database, opaque is assumed.)

If the above conditions are not met, the Color Combiner will be used, even if the **Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box is cleared.

We recommend that you always select this check box.

See [About Color Combiner](#) on page [805](#).

Dielines Overprint Other Content

This check box is cleared and unavailable if the **Do Separations** check box is cleared and unavailable.

Select this check box to specify whether die lines overprint other content. Clear this check box if you do not want die lines to overprint other content.

The **Dielines Overprint Other Content** check box is available for the following outputs:

- DCS Raster
- Kodak Approval TIFF
- LQS TIFF
- VPS
- Windows Bitmap

Anti-Aliasing

Select this check box to enable anti-aliasing, and then in the **at Ratio** list, specify a ratio for anti-aliasing.

Anti-aliasing is a technique of improving the appearance of output by minimizing the "stair step" effect on rasterized output. It does so by rendering to a higher resolution than the intended output, and then downsampling to the intended output. This generates "averaged" pixels which softens the "stair step" effect on low-resolution output. The ratio value for anti-aliasing refers to the factor used to determine the intermediate resolution. A higher ratio results in higher quality, but can have an effect on output speed. For example, if the output is a 300 DPI 8-bit TIFF, and the anti-alias ratio is 4, Prinergy will render an intermediate output at 1200 DPI (4 x 300 DPI), and then downsample to the user-requested 300 DPI. Anti-aliasing is only available for 8-bit (256 shade) output.

Fail if font problems detected

Select this check box to fail the output process if a file has missing fonts.

Note: This feature is not available for vector outputs (PDF, PS2, PS3, EPS, DCS Vector, PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, CT/LW, and DELTA).

Ignore Embedded Fonts in Marks Files

Select this check box if you want Prinergy to ignore embedded fonts in a marks file and to look for the fonts in the `system fonts` folder.

Important: You must install the fonts in `%ServerName%\%AraxiHome%\AdobeExtreme\bin\fonts`, or the output will fail.

Convert Text to Paths

This check box converts fonts to outlines before a file is RIPed.

This option was added in Prinergy 3.0 when the CPSI 3016 RIP was included with Prinergy. This option helped situations where the 3016 RIP failed to process the fonts on certain jobs.

This option has limited usefulness now, but is included as a potential workaround in rare cases where fonts are not rendered correctly by the RIP. It is not recommended that you enable this on a permanent basis. When using this option for specific jobs, it is recommended that you ensure that both proofs and plates are output with this option.

Note that when you select the **Convert Text to Paths** check box, you will have text appear fatter on low-resolution proof output. You can overcome this appearance problem by either:

- Rendering to a higher resolution, if rendering to 1-bit output, such as Virtual Proofing System
- Using anti-aliasing, if rendering to contone output

Note: This check box is only available for raster output formats (.VPS, .TIFF, and so on).

Overlay Versioned Content

This check box applies to Layered PDF Versioning. For information, see the *Prinergy Layered PDF Versioning User Guide*.

Versioning Proof Mapping Color

This box applies to Layered PDF Versioning. For information, see the *Prinergy Layered PDF Versioning User Guide*.

Kodak Approval

Densities

Type an integer between -22 and +22.

For more information, see your Approval documentation.

CT/LW

CT Resolution

Type a resolution value in dots per inch (dpi) for the continuous tone (CW) files created during refine.

Note: 304.8 dpi = 12 dpm

LW Resolution

Type a resolution value in dots per inch (dpi) for the line work (LW) files created during refine.

Note: 2032.0 dpi = 80 dpm

Border Handling

Select the resolution at which the borders of overlapping images are rendered.

- **Borders to CT**—Render borders at the resolution specified in the **CT Resolution** box. If two images overlap, the transition from one continuous tone (CT) image to the next may appear jagged.
- **Borders to LW**—Render borders at the resolution specified in the **LW Resolution** box. This improves the resolution of the overlap area, but increases process time and size of the output file.
- **Borders to Smart Edge**—Improves the appearance of CT to CT borders and ensures that the number of line work (LW) colors is not increased.

Output Kind

Select the format to which you want to output. You can output: **CT/LW Job Only**, **TIFF/IT Job Only**, or **CT/LW and TIFF/IT Jobs**.

Force Vignette to CT

Select to convert gradations to the continuous tone (CT) layer. Also, gradations created as Post Script Level 2 are converted to Post Script 3 to obtain high quality gradations when converted to CT data.

Converting to CT results in less banding and better quality images than converting to line work (LW). Converting to CT also adds noise to the resulting CTs, creating a smoother image.

Note: If you clear this check box, some vignettes are still converted to CT data (for example, Post Script Level 2 gradations).

Force LW Vignette to CT

Select to convert to the continuous tone (CT) layer, the vignettes (gradations and blends) that AVR (Automatic Vignette Recognition) identifies.

AVR recognizes a vignette as an image with a color difference (C,M,Y, or K) of 6% or less.

An output file in which blends are converted to CT is smaller than an output file in which blends are converted to line work (LW).

Screen Grabs

Select the resolution at which you want screen captures to be rendered.

- **Grabs to CT**—Renders screen captures at the resolution specified in the **CT Resolution** box.
- **Grabs to LW**—Renders screen captures at the resolution specified in the **LW Resolution** box.

CT Type

Select the CT (continuous tone) type you want to output.

- **NativeCT**—Renders CT to the Kodak native (Whisper) CT format. This format supports up to 4 separations CMYK, and up to 256 shades/separation.

Note: A **CT Native** file is given a .ct extension.

- **HandshakeCT**—Renders CT to the Kodak CT Handshake format. This format supports up to 4 separations CMYK, and up to 256 shades/separation.

Note: A **CT Handshake** file is given a .ch extension.

- **NewCT**—Renders CT to the Kodak extended CT format which supports spot colors, and up to 32 separations, and up to 256 shades/separation.

Note: A **New CT** file is given a .nct extension.

LW Type

Select the LW (line work) type you want to output.

- **NativeLW**—Renders LW to the Kodak native (Whisper) LW format. This format supports up to 4 separations CMYK, and up to 248 colors.

Note: A **Native LW** file is given a .lw extension.

- **HandshakeLW**—Renders LW to the Handshake LW format. This format supports up to 4 separations CMYK, and up to 248 colors.

Note: A **Handshake LW** file is given a .lh extension.

- **NewLW**—Renders LW to the Kodak extended LW format. This format supports up to 32 separations CMYK, and up to 64,000 colors.

Note: A **New LW** file is given a .nlw extension.

Make CT same size as Linework file

Select this check box to insert 1-pixel DeviceCMYK CT images in the upper-left and lower-right corners of the media box of the PDF pages. The resulting CT layer:

- Is the same size as the LW layer
- Has all DeviceCMYK process colorants

This check box applies only when both:

- **Output To** at the top of the process template is set to **CT/LW (CTLWOutput)**
- **Output Kind** in the CT/LW area of the Render section is set to either **TIFF/IT Job Only** or **CT/LW and TIFF/IT Jobs**

TIFF/IT Suffix

TIFF/IT FP

When outputting to TIFF/IT, you can specify the file name ending for the final page (FP) file. Type the file name suffix, which can include characters before the extension. For example, _FP.tif

TIFF/IT CT

When outputting to TIFF/IT, you can specify the file name ending for the continuous tone (CT) file. Type the file name suffix, which can include characters before the extension. For example, _CT.tif

TIFF/IT LW

When outputting to TIFF/IT, you can specify the file name ending for the line work (LW) file. Type the file name suffix, which can include characters before the extension. For example, _LW.tif

TIFF/IT HC

When outputting to TIFF/IT, you can specify the file name ending for the high-resolution contone (HC) file. Type the file name suffix, which can include characters before the extension. For example, _HC.tif

Note: High-resolution contone (HC) files are line work files with more than 256 colors.

Calibration and Screening section of the loose page output process template

This process template section provides calibration and screening file information during loose page output.

These options are available when you select **1** in the **Shades** option, in the **Render** section of the process template.

Calibration

Plate Curve

Select **None** if you do not want to apply plate linearization curves to your output. This option is set to **None** by default.

To apply a plate curve to your output, select the curve in the list.

You must select a plate curve in the Prinergy process template, even when **Print Curve (Calibration)** is set to **Auto**.

Note: Plate curves are always applied to page, sheet, and imposition marks. Select **None** if you do not want curves applied to marks.

Print Curve (Calibration)

Select **None** if you do not want to apply print dot gain compensation curves to your output.

To apply a print calibration curve to your output, select the curve in the list.

Select **Auto** to automatically select the most appropriate curve. Depending on the **Screening Method** selected, the Harmony software determines the curve to use, based on dot shape and screen frequency data from your job or the process template. Harmony looks in the following locations in the process template:

- **Dot Shape** and **Screen Ruling** boxes
- **Screen Frequency** box
- **Harmony Medium** box
- In the **Render** section, the **Device Resolutions** box (or **Resolution X** and **Resolution Y** boxes)

If you assign a calibration curve in the Prinergy DotShop software for use on a mark, you must select the **Keep DotShop Settings** or **Use Document's Screening, if Present** screening mode.

Note: To control the application of the selected print curve for an individual page, sheet, or imposition mark, select the **Calibrate** check box

in the **Marks** section of the process template. This allows you to apply print curves to imposition content without applying print curves to marks.

Harmony Medium

Available when you select **Auto** in the **Print Curve (Calibration)** list, it lists the Harmony media that are defined in your Harmony curve database. If the **Harmony Medium** list is available but the list is empty, no Harmony media are defined. The selected Harmony media is used to identify an appropriate calibration curve.

Select a Harmony media in the list.

Minimum Dot Size

Type the lowest tint percentage, with up to one decimal place, at which dots will be imaged—for example, 10% or 10.5%. This feature is available only if you specified a plate or print curve.

You can use this feature to remove scum dots on flexo plates.

Screening Mode

(See also the topic about document screening in this guide.)

- Select **Override all Screening** to use the screening specified in the process template. This option ignores any screening specified in the source PDF file or the Prinergy DotShop software.
- Select **Keep DotShop Settings** to use the screening specified in the DotShop software, when available. For pages that are not modified in DotShop, the screening specified in the process template is used.
- Select **Use Document's Screening, if Present** to use the screening specified in the source PDF file.

This option also uses the screening specified in DotShop, when available. For pages containing no screening information, the screening specified in the process template is used.

You can use one or more of the **Angles**, **Frequencies**, and **Dot Shapes** settings specified on the page and allow the process template to determine the parameters that you did not specify.

Note: If Prinergy does not support the screen angles in the source PDF file, the nearest supported angle is used.

Note: This option offers the greatest risk of poor results, because screen angles identified in the source PDF file may not be suitable for the output device.

Screen Type and Screen System

(See also the topics about screen types and screen systems.)

Screen Type lists the following default screening information:

- **Maxtone** screen types are based on the Prinergy AM (conventional or rational tangent) screening technology.
 - The **Maxtone CX** screen type is configurable. To configure the size of highlights and shadow dots, type values in the **Dot Width Highlights** and **Shadows** boxes.
 - The **Maxtone NX** screen type is also configurable. To configure the size of highlights and shadow dots, select values from the **Dot Size Highlights** and **Shadows** lists.

Note: It is also possible to select the dot size for the highlights and shadows using DotShop Composer. Kodak Maxtone NX works on the entire page, so all objects defined with Maxtone NX must have dots of the same size. If there are multiple dot sizes selected, the output process will fail.
 - **Maxtone IS** screen types are used for seamless sleeve and cylinder output device applications. If you select **Maxtone IS**, the resolution set in the **Render** section of the process template must be identical to the resolution in the IS screen system. Most IS screen systems are predefined in the IS screen set and cannot be modified in the process template. For information about defining IS screen sets, see the *Prinergy System Administration Guide*.

To see how items in the list of IS screen systems can be hidden, see the topic about hiding IS screen sets.
 - **Maxtone IS CX** screen types are used for seamless sleeve and cylinder output device applications, but they are configurable. If you select **Maxtone IS CX**, the resolution set in the **Render** section of the process template must be identical to the resolution in the IS screen set.
- **Staccato** identifies the Kodak Staccato stochastic screening family.
 - The **Staccato NX** screen type is configurable. To configure the size of highlights and shadow dots, type a value in the **Dot Size Highlights > Shadows** box.

Select a screen system for the format selected in the **Output To** list.

Dot Shape

(See also the topic about dot shapes.)

Select a dot shape in the list.

The list of available dot shapes varies, depending on the screen system selected in the **Screen System** list.

Device Resolutions

Displays the values set in the **Resolution X** and **Resolution Y** boxes in the **Render** section of the process template.

Screen Ruling

Available when **Maxtone**, **Maxtone CX**, or **Maxtone NX** is selected in the **Screen System** list.

The list of available screen rulings varies, depending on the setting in the **Screen System**, **Device Resolutions**, and **Output To** lists.

If you select an **IS** screen set, you cannot change the **Screen Ruling** value.

Feature Size

Available when **Staccato**, **Staccato CX**, or **Staccato NX** is selected in the **Screen System** list.

Select the most appropriate feature size (in microns or pixels) for the screen system. A smaller number produces finer-grained output.

The list of available feature sizes varies, depending on the setting in the **Screen System**, **Device Resolutions**, and **Output To** lists.

Note: The **Staccato** feature sizes denote a dot size somewhere between the actual highlight and the midtone dot size.

Note: The **Staccato CX** or **NX** (first order) feature size denotes the exact dot size of the highlight and quarter tone dots. Resolution is factored into the **Staccato CX** or **NX** (first order) dot size calculations.

Note: **Staccato** feature sizes listed as <##>.1 indicate a first-order screen, where <##> is the approximate dot size of the highlight and quarter tone dots.

Midtone Frequency

Available when **Staccato CX** or **Staccato NX** is selected in the **Screen Type** and **Screen System** lists.

Select a **Staccato CX/NX** midtone frequency in the list. A larger number indicates a finer dot structure.

Midtone frequency is an accurate measure of the number of dot structures per inch in the midtones of Staccato CX/NX screens. Frequency is expressed in lines per inch (lpi) and is a useful metric with AM and FM screens when assessing qualitative, lithographic, and imaging behavior. Staccato CX/NX midtone frequency is comparable to Maxtone and Maxtone CX/NX screen ruling.

Values in this box are governed by resolution and licensing. For a complete list of the available Staccato CX midtone frequencies and dot widths, including configurations that match Staccato screen type feature sizes, see the section about document screening, in this guide.

Screen Color

In the **Screen Color** and **at Angle** boxes, perform the following tasks:

- Set screening for colors other than the four process colors
- Swap the process color screens within screen systems
- Assign a screen to the "Default" color. This screen will be used for any color that doesn't have its own screening value in the output process template or color database.

The screen angles associated with each process color in the **at Angle** box vary, depending on the setting in the **Screen System** and **Dot Shape** lists.

To assign a screen to a color in the **Screen Color** box, type the name of a spot color, or type `Default` to select the default screen angle. Use the correct capitalization and spacing in color names.

Note: To swap two screens (for example, magenta for black), modify the entries for both colors. In this example, modify the setting in the **at Angle** box for magenta to use the black screen, and modify the setting in the **at Angle** box for black to use the magenta screen.

Default Spot Color Handling

Determines how Prinergy assigns screen angles to spot colors that do not have screen angles assigned in the **Screen Color** and **at Angle** boxes or in the Color Editor.

To choose C, M, Y, or K as the default color screen angle, select **Screen as**. To cycle through the available color screen angles, select **Cycle Through Screen Angles**.

Screen as

To assign a different default spot color screen angle, select a color in the list.

For IS screening, Prinergy cannot assign the **Others** angle as the default spot color angle.

Cycle Through Screen Angles

Select this option to assign default spot color screen angles cyclically to the available process colors, in CMYK order. Prinergy does not assign process colors that have already been used to screen a spot color.

If **Staccato Extended** is selected in the **Screen System** list, the list of screens cycles from **Screen #1** through to **Screen #10**.

For IS screening, Prinergy cannot cycle through angles other than CMYK.

Do not increase yellow ruling

To reduce moiré, the AM screening algorithm provides yellow screen frequencies (lpi) that are up to 14% higher than the cyan, magenta, and black screens. If you want a Y screen that is more similar to the Y screen in Prinergy 2.2 and earlier, select this check box. It limits yellow screen frequencies to between -4% and 4% of the ruling of the C, M, and K screens. For example, if the C, M, and K screens are at 150 lpi, this check box limits the screening algorithm to providing a Y screen between 144 lpi and 156 lpi.

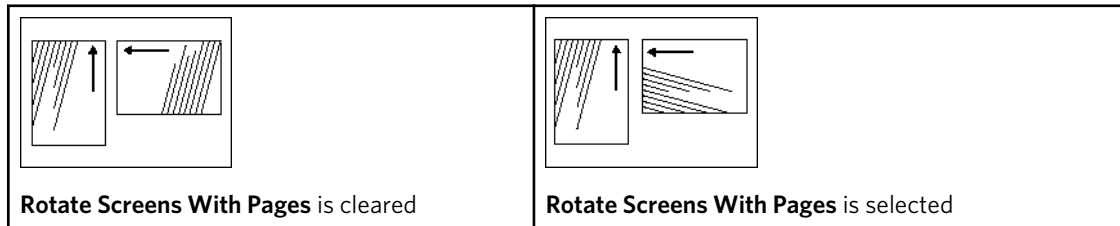
This setting does not affect the yellow frequency of an IS screen set. To change the yellow frequency of an IS screen set, use the IS Screen Set Editor.

Rotate Screens With Pages

Select to rotate screens with reader orientation for each page in an imposition.

When some pages are rotated 90°, rotating screens with the pages allows all pages to be screened at the same angle.

Screens are only rotated at 90° so pages that are oriented at other angles are not affected. The result of rotating screens is apparent when you screen with dot shapes that are not rotationally symmetric, such as Elliptical and Line.

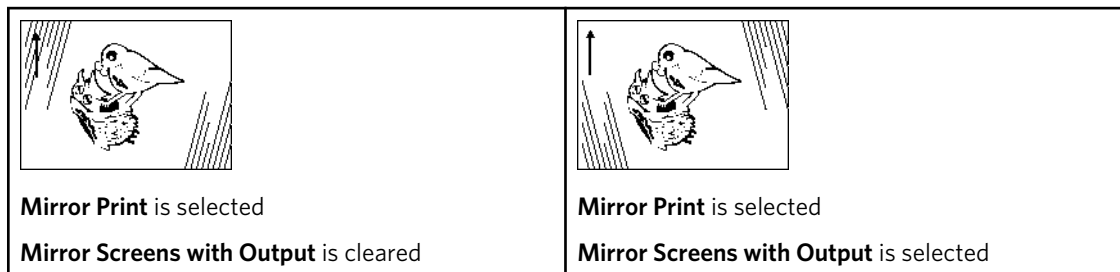


Mirror Screens with Output

Select to mirror screens so they are consistent across all devices (for output devices that have intrinsically mirrored output).

Note: This will affect the screen angle rotation on the printed page and should be used only for compatibility with legacy printing.

When the **Mirror Screens with Output** check box is selected, selecting the **Mirror Print** check box in the **Device** section of the process template causes screen angles to become mirrored with the output. This is useful for some printing processes that require mirrored film or plates, to ensure consistency of screen angles with digital dot proofs.



Note: If **Round** is selected in the **Dot Shape** list, the **Rotate Screens With Pages** and **Mirror Screens With Output** selections don't affect output.

Set Halftone Phase for each Page

Select to have the renderer reset the origin of the halftone screen for each page on an imposition.

When selected, this option ensures that each page on an imposition has the same bitmap pattern.

This is useful for a label printer who wants each label on the imposition to be identical. A difference in the halftone screen origin for each label can sometimes show up as a visible difference at the edges of the labels.

Screen Solids

Applies a screening pattern to solid areas in order to better absorb excess ink. This screening feature results in cleaner printing of solid areas.

Screen solids can also be effective in reducing ink consumption during proofing.

In the **as** box, type a value between 0% and 99.8% to indicate the percentage at which you want to screen all objects with solid (100%) tint.

Maxtone CX Dot Width

Note: This option is not available when **Maxtone** or **Staccato** is selected in the **Screen Types** list.

Highlights

Type the size (in microns) of the Maxtone dot for highlights.

Shadows

Type the size (in microns) of the Maxtone reverse dot for shadows.

Highlights

Type the size (in microns) of the Maxtone dot for highlights.

Shadows

Type the size (in microns) of the Maxtone reverse dot for shadows.

HyperFlex

Screening technology that allows for smaller dots and/or graphic elements to be held on flexo plates during UV exposure of a plate.

For more information about HyperFlex, see the *Prinergy Advanced Flexo User Guide*.

HyperFlex Classic

When imaging on flexo plates, select to enhance Maxtone dots with HyperFlex Classic technology.

Note: Kodak Hyperflex Classic is not intended for offset use.

In the extreme highlight areas, Maxtone simulates FM screening by randomly removing dots from the AM grid.

HyperFlex Classic helps to support and strengthen Maxtone by placing light valves where dots have been removed.

Pixels

Type the HyperFlex dot size in pixels.

To determine the proper HyperFlex dot size, you must perform a series of flexo exposure tests. For more information, see the *Prinergy Advanced Flexo Implementation User Guide*.

HyperFlex Advanced

In flexo applications, select to use HyperFlex Advanced with Maxtone, Maxtone CX, Maxtone NX, Maxtone IS, Maxtone IS CX, and Staccato NX screen types.

Note: Hyperflex Advanced is not intended for offset use.

HyperFlex Advanced places light valves around halftone dots to strengthen and support individual dots.

Size

Type the size of the light valve in pixels. The minimum value is 1 and the maximum value is 16.

As feathering (a reduction in HyperFlex size as tone value increases) is being applied, this value specifies the starting size of the light valve. The light valve size is scaled back, in a linear fashion, to zero (at the tint percentage specified in the **Limit** box).

Distance: Start/End

Enter the distance between the center of the light valve and the center of the dot.

Suggested settings—Enter the same values in the **Start** and **End** boxes, and use a larger value than you enter in the **Merge Distance** box. For example, type 2 in both the **Start** and **End** boxes, and type 1 in the **Merge Distance** box. This positions the light valves equidistant between adjacent halftone dots.

If you are not using the suggested settings, in the **Start** box, type the distance from the light valve to the center of the smallest halftone dot. In the **End** box, type the distance (in pixels) from the light valve to the center of the largest dot, as specified in the **Limit** box.

Merge Distance

Enter a value that determines where the light valves will be positioned in relation to the halftone dots.

Suggested settings—Enter the same values in the **Start** and **End** boxes. Enter a smaller value in the **Merge Distance** box than you entered in the **Start** and **End** boxes. For example, type 2 in both the **Start** and **End** boxes, and type 1 in the **Merge Distance** box. This positions the light valves equidistant between adjacent halftone dots.

Limit

Type the tint percentage above which HyperFlex Advanced will no longer be applied. The general recommendation is to set the **Limit** between 20% and 50%.

DigiCap

Kodak DigiCap is screening software for digital photopolymer (flexo) media that improves the transfer of ink in solid areas, using small reverse dots (a tint).

Set the DigiCap texture by specifying the size of the reverse dots and the tint percentage. In the **Texture with** boxes, type the length and width of the reverse dots. The maximum size is 10 pixels by 10 pixels.

In the **as** box, type the tint percentage. For example, a 92% tint creates an area with 8% coverage of reverse dots.

To determine the proper DigiCap feature size and percentage, you must perform a print test containing multiple combinations of coarseness levels and tint percentages. You cannot determine the feature size or percentage without comprehensive press tests. For more information, see the *Prinergy Advanced Flexo Implementation User Guide*.

In the **Keepaway** box, type the distance (in pixels) between the edge of elements to which DigiCap texturizing should not be applied and the start of DigiCap texturizing.

See also:

[About document screening](#) on page 637

[About dot shapes](#) on page 638

[Screen types](#) on page 641

[About screen systems](#) on page 643

[Setting up Maxtone screens](#) on page 663

[Setting up Staccato screens](#) on page 664

[Creating and editing IS screen sets](#) on page 665

[Hiding IS screen sets](#) on page 668

Processed File Options section of the Loose Page Output process template

This process template section identifies the file naming parameters during loose page output.

Prinerger-defined File Naming

Use Prinerger-defined File Naming

Select to use the default file naming convention for output files.

Maximum Characters for File Name

Type the maximum number of characters for the page name part of the file name.

Note: If you select **Respect Mac Filenames**, the maximum number is 17.

Respect Macintosh Filenames

Select to shorten Prinerger file names to 31 or fewer characters, because Macintosh file names are restricted to a length of 31 characters.

For loose page output, the Prinerger file name consists of:

- 18 characters for the page name (including the period that separates the page name and extensions)
- 13 characters for surface, version, and color extension (including periods).

For example, **thisisthepagename.1A.vers.M.VPS**.

When you select this check box, Prinerger shortens the first name part of the file name to the number of characters that you specify in the **Maximum Characters for File Name** box.

When you select this check box, spot colors are represented in the file name by an index number.

When you clear this check box, the full spot color name is added to the output file name, with PANTONE abbreviated to PMS, and the CVC or CV suffix removed.

Overwrite Existing Files with Same Name

(See [About outputting to a file](#) on page 661)

Select if you want to use the newer files when multiple files have the same name.

Available when **Job-Relative File** is selected in the **Output Type** box.

Custom File Naming

Use Custom File Naming

Select this check box if you want to specify the output file names.

Notes: If you select this check box:

- And if you want to respect Macintosh file names, you must restrict each tag in the **Filename Template** box, so that the longest possible file name is 31 characters or less.
- **Overwrite Existing File with Same Name** is selected. If you want to generate and keep iterations of a file, include a `%version%` tag in the **Filename Template** box.

Filename Template

(See [About custom file naming](#) on page 657)

Type the file name format for the output files.

Controlfile Filename Template

If outputting to a format which requires a control (master) file, type the file name format for the control file.

Use Full Spot Color Names

Select this check box if you want to use the spot color names in the output file names (instead of numbers which are derived from the spot color order).

Note: To use this check box, you must include the `%color%` tag in the **Filename Template**.

PDF File Name

If printing to PDF, the PDF file name is based on the job name by default. To modify the PDF file name, type the file name you want in the box.

File Format section of the Loose Page Output process template

This process template section identifies the format and compression settings of the output files during loose page output.

Include Images as

If printing to PDF, select **Original** to output the original images in the output file.

Select **Low Resolution** to output low-resolution versions of the images in the output file.

Compression

(See [About outputting to a file](#) on page 661)

The compression options that are available vary depending on the output format selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template. The following compression options are available:

- **None**—Select if you do not want to compress files
- **CCITTG3**—Not available if outputting to a non-screened format
- **CCITTG4**—Not available if outputting to a non-screened format
- **LZW**
- **RLE**
- **ZIP**—Select if you use Kodak Staccato screening software

Note: Compression methods **CCITTG3** and **CCITTG4** are unavailable if the **Always use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box is selected in the **Render** section of the process template or if any Staccato screening system is selected in the **Screen System** box in the **Calibration & Screening** section.

Quality

The quality control option is available only if the **Output To** list is set to **JPEG**.

Prinergy provides five JPEG compression quality options ranging from **maximum** quality (the least compression and the smallest loss of data) to **minimum** quality (the most compression and the greatest loss of data).

- **Maximum**
- **High**
- **Medium**

- **Low**
- **Minimum**

The lower the quality of JPEG compression, the smaller the file size, but the greater the chance of noticeable blockiness in certain areas of the image. You should experiment with JPEG compression levels to see what amount of image degradation is acceptable for your purposes.

Advanced TIFF Tags

(See [About advanced TIFF tags](#) on page 650)

Select to add advanced TIFF tags to output files.

Note: Unless you are outputting to Virtual Proofing System 2.0 or Copydot Toolkit software, we do not recommend selecting this option because some devices that do not recognize advanced TIFF tags may reject the entire file.

Available when a TIFF or Virtual Proofing System format is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Use Custom TIFF Title Tag

Select the check box and type a custom name in the box to create custom title tags in the TIFF file. This feature replaces the need to manually edit the TIFF file.

Use this feature when sending Virtual Proofing System files through Digital Blueline to merge separations from different signatures.

Note: In the box, you can include variables such as %job% and %signature%.

DCS File Format

Select **Single File** to generate one pre-separated DCS file—that is, one file that contains all the pre-separated colors. The file name will be, for example: <PDF filename>.p00n.eps.

Select **Multiple Files** to generate a DCS file set—that is, one file for each color separation, plus a master file for the set. The file names will be, for example:

<PDF filename>.p00n.dcs.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.C.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.M.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.Y.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.K.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.1.eps

Available when **DCS** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

EPS Data

Select the encoding method to use for EPS data.

Available when **EPS Raster** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

DCS Data

Select the encoding method to be used for DCS output.

Available when **DCS** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

EPS Compression

Select the compression method to use for EPS output, or **None** if you do not want to compress EPS files.

Available when **EPS Raster** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

DCS Compression

Select the compression method to be used for DCS output, or select **None** if you do not want to compress the DCS file.

Available when **DCS** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Add TIFF Preview to DCS Master File

Select to add a preview file to the master file for a DCS-2 multiple file set. You can view the preview file in software such as Preps and QuarkXPress.

Specify a resolution for the preview file in the **at Resolution** box.

Available in the Loose Page Output and Imposition Output process templates when **EPS vector** or **DCS** (raster or vector) is selected in the **Output To** list. Available in the Final Output process template when **DCS raster** is selected in the **Output To** list.

Always use custom Large TIFF format

This check box is available only when the file output type is set to **TIFF**. By default, this option is disabled.

Select this check box to create a JDF file that links multiple large TIFF files (less than 4 GB). This set of files represents a single plate.

Document Format

Select **Multi Page** to generate one output file for the entire range of selected surfaces or **Single Page** to generate one file for each surface.

Available in the Loose Page Output and Imposition Output process templates when a vector output (except DCS) is selected in the **Output To** list. Available in the Final Output process template when **PS3 (PostScriptOut)** is selected in the **Output To** list.

Single Page is not recommended for digital printers.

Vector Output Options

Output Format

Select **Composite** or **Separated** output. The selection determines whether or not conversion is required based on the input file format. Select **Automatic** to generate files in the same format (composite or separated) as the input files.

Note: Separated PDF/X-1a:2001 and composite DCS-2 are not supported.

Note: Spot color handling (omission, mapping, and converting) in the Color Separations dialog box is not supported for composite vector output.

Note: The **Automatic** option is available when vector output (except DCS) is selected from the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Render Shadings

Select to render PostScript 3 vector objects with Level 3 smooth shades to produce rasterized contone objects in order to meet the PostScript Level 2 standard. Target workflows may process rasterized objects faster than vector ones, but there may be some quality degradation for subtle shadings that extend over long distances.

Specify a resolution for the rendered shadings in the **at Resolution** box.

Available when **DCS**, **PS2**, **PS3**, or **PDF** is selected in the **Output To** list.

Font Outlining

Select to replace all text objects with vector objects in output pages.

This is available to DCS, PDF, and separated PostScript vector output formats. It is useful for eliminating font formats that certain RIPs may not be able to process. Text output in this way cannot be edited and when previewed in Adobe Acrobat, will look bolder than the original text due to loss of font hinting for low-resolution monitors.

Delete Traps

Select to remove any Prinergy-generated traps from PDF, PostScript Level 2, and DCS-2 output files.

Trapping-generated overprints remain in the files.

Apply Geometry

Select to apply geometry settings to PDF, PostScript Level 2, and DCS-2 output files.

You can set the geometry for a page (offset scale, orientation) in the Set Page Geometry dialog box.

If this check box is selected, the geometry is applied to the output file. To access the Set Page Geometry dialog box, from the **Edit** menu, select **Set Page Geometry**.

Simulate overprints (CMYK only)

Select to replace overprint intersections with an opaque object.

This creates a page that maintains its integrity on output, even if a downstream publisher or printer configures their workflow to override overprints.

Preserve PDF Layers

Applies to the Layered PDF Versioning feature. For more information, see the Layered PDF Versioning user guide.

Send PostScript duplexing commands

Select to print on both sides of the media. Assuming a portrait sheet orientation, select **Turn** print pages side to side by flipping on the long edge. Select **Tumble** to print both sides by flipping on the short edge.

This option simply adds the duplex command to the PostScript output. The consuming device may not support this command.

Create Preflight Report, If Available

Select this option to create a preflight report, if you already have a preflight profile set up and you have set the options on the Refine process template, PDF Preflight panel.

Output Intent

Use this area to specify an ICC profile or named print condition in the Output Intents section of the PDF/X file that you are generating.

A named print condition is a documented printing situation with a defined relationship between input data and the colorimetry of the printed image. Typically, named print conditions are registered with an organization such as the ICC.

Perform one of the following actions:

- To specify an ICC profile, select the **Profile** check box, and specify the path of a profile.
- To specify a named print condition, select the **Name** check box, and select a print condition from the list.
- To use the ICC profile specified in the **ColorConvert** section for PDF/X generation, click the **Use ColorConvert Destination profile** check box.

Note: Match Colors in Page Content in the **ColorConvert** section must be selected.

This area is available only when a **PDF/X** format is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Device section of the Loose Page Output process template

This process template section identifies device-related parameters for the output during loose page output.

Output Type

Select **Absolute File or Printer** to enter the path for a specific network device or file location.

Select **Job-Relative File** to enter a path that is relative to the location of the job folder.

Note: The default is **Job-relative file** and the **Device Path** box default is %JOB%.

Typing a path for a network device in the **Device Path** box automatically sets the **Output Type** to **Absolute File or Printer**.

Submit as Multiple Print Jobs

Select to submit a separate job for each surface that is output.

Available when **Absolute File or Printer** is selected as the **Output Type** or when the **Delta** option in the **Render** section is enabled.

Device Path

The default setting depends on the value selected as the **Output Type**.

- If **Output Type** is **Absolute File or Printer**, the default is **Clear**. Type the name of a Windows NT network output device using the UNC (Universal Naming Convention) path. Or you can click **Browse** to select a file location.
- If **Output Type** is **Job-Relative File**, the default is **%JOB %Proofs**. The default value places the output in the **Proofs** folder of the job that creates the process. You can change the **Proofs** folder to any subfolder found in a job folder.

You can also include the following marks in the Device Path box:

- \$[jobname;n]
- \$[ProcessPlanName;n]

Note: Replace the n in the marks name with a number between one and 99 to specify how many characters from the associated mark to include in the mark.

For example, %JOB%Proofs\[jobname;6] for **MyJobName** becomes %JOB%Proofs\MyJobN.

Mirror Print

Select to output media with the emulsion side down.

Negative Print

Select to output a negative image.

Cut Media

Select when you want the device to automatically cut the media.

Available when a device with a media cutting system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Load Media

Select when you want the device to automatically load the media.

Available when a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Unload Media

Select when you want the device to automatically unload media.

Available when a format for a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Manually

Select when you want the device to prompt the operator to load the device manually.

Available when a format for a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Media Unload Mode

Select the mode for unloading media.

Available when a format for a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list. See your device's documentation for more information.

HPRTL Device

If you have a Hewlett-Packard device, select **HP**.

If you have the Kodak Iris 43WIDE device, select **Iris/Mutoh**.

HPRTL is a raster file format developed by Hewlett-Packard and used by a number of device manufacturers.

Available when HPRTL is selected in the **Output To** list.

Proofer Name

Dynamically lists all of the proofers discovered on the network. Type or select the name of the particular proofer to which you want to send the proof.

The name may include both the proofing controller's name and the proofer name in a ControllerName/ProoferName format.

Available when **Veris/Matchprint Inkjet** is selected in the **Output To** list. For more information about proofers, see the proofer documentation.

Proofer Model

A read-only box that describes the type of proofer selected in the **Proofer Name** list.

Number of Proofs

Type the number of copies that you want printed.

This box applies only when **Output To** is set to **Veris/MatchPrint Inkjet**.

Include JDF for Digital Print section of the Loose Page Output process template

Enable this section if you are generating PDFs to a digital printer and you want to use a JDF file to communicate with the printer.

The **Include JDF for Digital Print** section is available only when the **Output To** list is set to either **PDF (Vector output)**, **PDF Raster**, or **TIFF**.

Job Settings

Number of Copies

Type the number of copies to be printed.

Job Name

(See [About custom file naming](#) on page 657)

Determines the job name that is sent from Prinergy to the digital printer using standard Prinergy placeholders. The default **%job%** displays the job name as specified in Prinergy.

Device Selection

Select a Device Type

From the **Select a Device Type** list, select a digital printer controller.

The selection you make affects the options that are available in the **Select JDF Templates**, **Media Selection**, **Media Handling**, and **Device Specific Settings**.

Send Files to Printer using

Select **Network Copy** or **HTTP Protocol** to determine how the content file is referenced in the JDF file that is copied to the hot folder on the digital printer.

PDF Path

Type the path to the folder where Prinergy creates the PDF for the printer to output. You can also click **Browse** and locate the folder.

If you are sending these files to a hot folder, this path must not be the one specified in the **JDF Path** box. The JDF specification requires that only the JDF files be dropped into a JDF-enabled hot folder.

PDF File Name

(See [About custom file naming](#) on page 657)

Type the file name of the PDF file that Prinergy generates. Use standard Prinergy placeholders, such as %JOBNAME%.
%extension%.

JDF Path

Type the path to the folder where Prinergy will create the JDF file. You can also click **Browse** and locate the folder.

If you are sending files to a hot folder, this path must be the hot folder for the digital printer. It cannot be the same folder specified in the **PDF Path** box. The JDF specification requires that only the JDF files be dropped into a JDF-enabled hot folder.

JDF File Name

(See [About custom file naming](#) on page 657)

Type the file name of the JDF file that Prinergy generates. Use standard Prinergy placeholders, such as %JOBNAME%.jdf.

Select JDF Templates

Select Named Features

Use this field only as instructed by the *Prinergy Digital Print Installation and Configuration Guide*.

If necessary, enter JDF parameters for Prinergy to send in the JDF file to the digital print controller. Typically, these parameters are specific to the digital print controller. Not all digital print controllers require or support this option. The parameters are not visible in Prinergy.

Select JDF File

Click the **Browse** button to locate the appropriate template. If you do not specify a template, the default template is used.

Media Selection

Use Default Media Handling

Select this option to use the default options displayed. Otherwise, click **Use Selected Media Handling** to customize the settings.

Use Selected Media

Select this option to customize weight, size, and other aspects of the media.

Weight

Type the weight of the paper stock that the job is to be printed on. If the paper set on the printer has a range of weights (e.g. 81-105 gsm), any number within that range matches.

Color

Select the color of the paper stock that the job is to be printed on.

If you select **None**, Prinergy does not send color information to the digital printer.

Coatings

Select a coating such as **Glossy** or **Satin** to indicate that the paper stock is coated, or select **None** to indicate that the paper stock is uncoated.

Size

Select the size of the paper stock that the job is to be printed on. Choose from:

- **Letter, Legal, A4**, and other standard paper sizes.
If you select one of these sizes, you can use the Width and Height boxes to modify the default measurements of the paper.
- **Automatic**—The size is set to the size of the pages or surfaces.
- **None**—The size is set to the size of the default paper defined by the printer queue.
- **Custom**—Use the Width and Height boxes to specify the measurements.

This option affects only the paper size that the digital printer uses. It does not affect the PDF that Prinergy sends to the digital printer. To change the size of the PDF sent by Prinergy, use the **Layout** section of the Imposition Output process template.

Typically the paper size matches the size of the page or surface. If the paper size does not match the page or surface size, most

digital printers can scale, center, shift, and impose the PDFs onto the paper.

Width

Type the width of the paper stock that the job is to be printed on. If the paper set on the printer has a range of widths, any number within that range matches.

Height

Type the height of the paper stock that the job is to be printed on. If the paper set on the printer has a range of heights, any number within that range matches.

Media Handling

Use Default Media Handling

Select this option to use the default options displayed. Otherwise, click **Use Selected Media Handling** to customize the settings.

Use Selected Media Handling

Select this option to customize duplexing and collation settings.

Duplexing

Select an item that controls whether the printer prints on both sides of the paper. Choose from:

- **SingleSided**—Print only on one side of the paper.
- **Turn**—Print two-sided head-to-head (flip on the paper's long side or the Y-axis of the paper in portrait orientation)
- **Tumble**—Print two-sided head-to-toe (flip on the paper's short side or X-axis of the paper in landscape orientation)

Collation

Select either **Sheet** or **None** to control whether the printer collates the output.

Device Specific Settings

Device Name

Type the name of the digital printer or the print server. For example, type `Spire01`.

Queue

Type the name of the print queue. For example, type `ProcessStore`.

Device Type

Type the type and version of the digital printer to assist Xerox FreeFlow Print Manager in translating the JDF. For example, type `DC8000_SPIRE1.0`.

Protocol

Type the name of the print protocol that the digital printer uses. Xerox FreeFlow Print Manager translates the JDF into this print protocol. For example, type `SPIREPR`.

Job Spec

Type the name of a pre-defined workflow.

This box applies only when you have selected an HP device.

Marks section in the Loose Page Output process template

This process template section determines how marks are handled during loose page output.

Extra Margin for Marks and Bleed

When calculating the position of pages, additional space is included for marks and the bleed, if indicated.

Provide margin values for **Left**, **Right**, **Top**, and **Bottom** margins, in the selected unit of measure.

Bleed for Unassigned Pages

Prints a bleed line when proofing PDF pages that have not yet been assigned to a position of an imposition plan. When assigned pages are proofed, the bleed lines are taken from the imposition plan.

Provide values for **Left**, **Right**, **Top**, and **Bottom** in the selected unit of measure.

Crop Distance Beyond Bleed for Pages

Creates an additional margin beyond the bleed marks to allow output of the software information that is positioned outside the bleed.

Provide values for **Left**, **Right**, **Top**, and **Bottom**, in the selected unit of measure.

This value, and any value that extends the crop beyond the page size, allows the entire page image to be output (up to the page size defined by other layout measurements).

A negative value moves the crop inside the bleed by the specified amount.

If the pages are assigned to page positions linked to an imposition plan, this value is added to the bounding box defined on the imposition plan. If the assigned page positions are linked to multiple imposition plans, the largest bounding box is calculated and this value is added to the calculated measurement.

Default Marks Font

Prinerger can populate variable marks with double-byte characters such as those found in Japanese, Chinese, and Korean.

Here's an example of how you could use the feature:

1. Create a Preps imposition file that includes a variable mark, such as \$ [PageName] .
2. In Prinerger, in the **Default Marks Font** box in the **Marks** section of the imposition output process template, type the exact name of the double-byte font that can be used in case the variable mark's original font was not a double-byte font. The font must reside either in a Prinerger-aware font folder or in the job's font search path.
3. Submit the imposition file to Prinerger.

If the imposition file contains a page name with double-byte fonts, Prinerger outputs the file with these characters.

Sheet Marks

Identify the name and location of a PDF file containing sheet marks (for example variable marks, logo, and signoff line). Click **Browse** to locate and select a file.

Calibrate

When this check box is selected, the plate curve and print curve are applied to the mark. The curves applied are the ones selected in the **Plate Curve** list and **Print Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template.

When this check box is cleared, only the plate curve is applied. To prevent the application of the plate curve to a mark, select **%None%** in the **Plate Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template.

Locate Sheet Marks Adjacent to

(See [Sheet marks options explained](#) on page 695 and [Sheet marks on final output](#) on page 691.)

Select **Left**, **Right**, **Bottom**, or **Top** to determine on which edge of the paper or plate a sheet mark is placed.

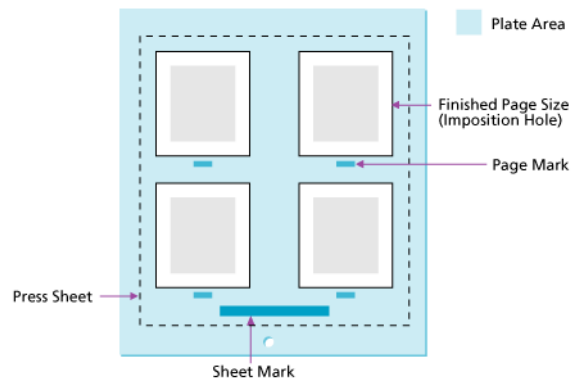
The default setting is **Bottom**.

at Distance

(See [Calculating the at distance value on final output](#) on page 692.)

Determines where, relative to the edge, the mark is placed:

- Sheet marks are placed relative to the plate edge. Depending on the distance you type, you can place the sheet mark on the press sheet or on the plate.
- Page marks are placed relative to the finished page size (the imposition hole).



Justified

Select **Left**, **Center**, or **Right** to determine the justification for the sheet mark.

The default value is **Center**.

Page Marks

Identify the name and location of a PDF file containing page marks. Click **Browse** to locate and select a file.

You may need to provide space for page marks by increasing gutter measurements.

The variable mark **\$(PagePositionNumber)** or **\$(PPN)** can be used to verify that the pages are in the correct page set positions in the imposition.

Calibrate

When this check box is selected, the plate curve and print curve are applied to the mark. The curves applied are the ones selected in the **Plate Curve** list and **Print Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template. When this check box is cleared, only the plate curve is applied.

To prevent the application of the plate curve to a mark, select **%None%** in the **Plate Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template.

Locate Page Marks Adjacent to

Select where to place the page marks in relation to the page's trim box.

When you select **Right** or **Left**, the page marks rotate as follows:

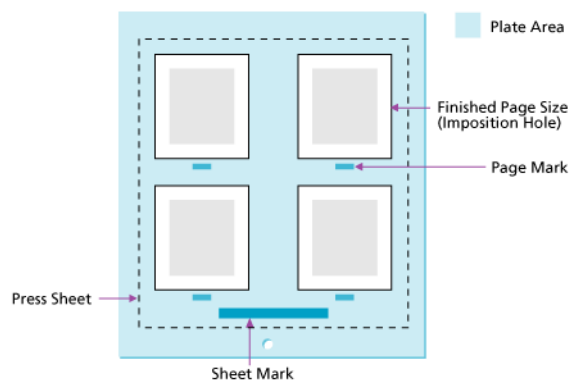
- **Left**—rotates the mark 90° counterclockwise
- **Right**—rotates the mark 90° clockwise
- **Bottom**—no rotation
- **Top**—no rotation

at Distance

(See [Calculating the at distance value on final output](#) on page 692.)

Determines where, relative to the edge, the mark is placed:

- Sheet marks are placed relative to the plate edge. Depending on the distance you type, you can place the sheet mark on the press sheet or on the plate.
- Page marks are placed relative to the finished page size (the imposition hole).



Draw Trim and Bleed Marks

Determines where, in relation to each page, trim and bleed marks should be placed. Trim and bleed marks are created in registration color and are 0.25 points in weight. Bleed marks are

solid lines; trim marks are dashed lines. Trim marks are drawn according to the option selected:

None

Trim and bleed marks are not drawn.

On Content

Trim and bleed marks are drawn on the content (complete trim marks are drawn on the proof).

Outside Content

Trim and bleed marks do not extend to the content (only the four corners appear on the proof).

Note: In order to print bleed lines on loose page output, the page must be assigned to a page set that is linked to an imposition plan. The bleed lines are taken from the imposition plan.

Safe Protect Box

The safe protect box enables you to print proofing lines within the trim box (or media box) on a proof to check that the page content is within the page margins. The safe protect box is drawn on the proof inside the trim or media box.

This feature is available in the loose page output and imposition output process templates when the **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks** option is set to **On Content** or **Outside Content**.

Note: If you select **Output To Virtual Proof**, you can select the **Safe Protect Box** check box even if you select **None** for **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks**. In this case, you can view the safe protect box in the Virtual Proofing System software. The safe protect box is not printed on the proof.

Select the **Safe Protect Box** check box and in each of the **Left**, **Right**, **Top**, and **Bottom** boxes, type the distance from the trim or media box that you want the safe protect lines to appear. You can type different numbers in each of the four sides.

When calculating where to place the safe protect lines, note that Prinergy measures from various starting points as shown in the following table.

| Proof | Safe protect box is measured from this location |
|--------------|--|
| Imposition | The imposition hole trim box |

| | |
|------------|--|
| Loose page | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The PDF page trim box—if the PDF page includes trim • The PDF page media box—if the PDF page does not include trim <p>If a PDF page includes trim, it appears in the Trim Size column in the Pages pane of the Pages view.</p> <p>Note: If the PDF page does not include trim, you can define it using the Prinerger Geometry Editor plug-in for Adobe Acrobat. After the trim is defined, refine the page again.</p> |
|------------|--|

The lines of the safe protect box are drawn according to the option selected for trim and bleed marks:

- If you selected **Outside Content**, only the four corners of the safe protect box appear on the proof.
- If you selected **On Content**, the complete box is drawn on the proof.

Note: If you entered information for **Trim Adjustment**, the **Safe Protect Box** dimensions are calculated based on the **Trim Adjustment** dimensions.

Trim Adjustment

If you are using pages that have no trim or an incorrect trim box, in the **Trim Adjustment** area, type the distance from the edge of the page that you want trim lines to appear in each of the **Left**, **Right**, **Top**, and **Bottom** boxes.

You can type different numbers in each of the four sides.

Trim Adjustment is available only when you select **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks**, and **On Content** or **Outside Content**.

Note: If you enter information for **Trim Adjustment**, the **Safe Protect Box** dimensions are calculated based on the **Trim Adjustment** dimensions.

Locate Crop Mark of Length

Available if **On Content** or **Outside Content** is selected in the **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks** box.

Determines the length of the crop marks to be drawn, in the selected unit of measure.

The **at Distance** box determines how far away from content to draw the crop mark.

at Distance

Available when **On Content** or **Outside Content** is selected in the **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks** box.

Determines how far away from content to draw the crop mark.

Unit Used for Variable Marks

Select the unit you want to use to measure variable marks—inch, cm (centimeter), mm (millimeter), or pts (points).

Slugline

A slugline mark is a text or variable mark that you place on loose page, imposition, or final output. Instead of using **Sheet Marks** or **Page Marks**, you can use **Slugline** to quickly place a slugline mark.

A slugline mark does not need a PDF file, so you can easily place a mark without creating a PDF file. However, a slugline mark is just a line of text or a variable mark. You can only specify the text size.

- In the **Slugline mark** box, type the text or variable mark.
- In the **Text size** box, type the font size for the mark.
- In **Place on media**, specify the distance **from left** and **from bottom**.

Note: If you are using a variable mark in your slugline, the `_offset` and `_replace` parameters, and any page-oriented variables parameters, are not currently supported.

Generating imposition outputs

Follow the instructions in Starting a Process and choose an imposition output process template.

Tip: You can select signatures or surfaces in the **Signatures** view. Pages must be assigned to a page set that is linked to an imposition plan.

See also:

[Starting processes](#) on page [171](#)

[Imposition Output process template](#) on page [489](#)

Imposition Output process template

At the top of the dialog box is the **Output To** list, which you use to select the file format suitable for the output device you select in the **Device** section. The file format selection determines the availability of some options in this process template. For this reason, you should select an output format before you set the other options in the process template.

Copydot section of the Imposition Output process template

This process template section defines how Prinergy handles copydot files during imposition output.

When you enable the **Copydot** section, the system automatically converts copydot images for optimal quality on your output device during output. Only disable the **Copydot** section for one or more of the following reasons:

- Your pages lack copydot images.
- You are outputting at your target device resolution.
- You don't need high-quality copydot images in your imposition output.

JTP

Select a job ticket processor (JTP) to use for copydot files.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Resample

Enables resampling of copydot files to the resolution required by the output device. The availability of this option is controlled by the device you select in the **Output To** list at the top of the final output process template dialog box.

Select the **Resample** check box to enable resampling of copydot files. Prinergy resamples copydot files to the resolution required by the output device you select in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Clear the **Resample** check box to disable resampling.

Note: You can resample copydot images during another step in the process—refine, loose page output, or final output.

Descreen

Enables descreening of copydot files for contone output devices. The availability of this option is controlled by the device you select in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template. This option becomes available only for 8-bit final output devices.

Select the **Descreen** check box to enable descreening.

Clear the **Descreen** check box to disable descreening.

Calibration Curve

Specifies a calibration curve from Harmony tonal calibration software for the copydot files.

From the **Calibration Curve** box, select the calibration curve you want Prinergy to use for copydot files.

Select **%%NONE%%** to disable this feature.

ColorFlow section of the Imposition Output process template

The **ColorFlow** section of the imposition output process template defines how Prinergy applies ColorFlow settings during imposition output .

When you configure the ColorFlow settings in an output process template, you select the device, device condition, and plate line, but not a color setup. The color setup used is the one that was assigned to the pages when they were refined—that is, either the color setup specified in the refine process template that was used or the job's default color setup. The color setup that is used during output processing is the color setup specified for each page in the **Color Setup** column in the **Pages** pane.



WARNING: Output will fail if the color setup does not match the color setup assigned during refine, unless the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** option is enabled.

It is possible to select from four modes for output to halftone devices or files. These modes control the curves that are applied upon output.

Print Production

This halftone output mode reflects the standard operation of Prinergy and ColorFlow for production. When this option is selected, curves are applied to each output separation, as described next:

- The *print calibration curve* for the separation, determined by the selections from the **Snapshot**, **Device**, and **Device Condition** lists, and possibly modified at run time by the settings in the Tonal Control dialog box, is applied to separation input tints.
- The *plate calibration curve*, determined by the selections from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, is applied to the separation tints modified by the print calibration curve.

Note: If **None** is selected from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, the plate calibration curve is linear (has no effect).

This option is not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Print Characterization

This halftone output mode is used to print and measure the response of a print device. When this option is selected, curves are applied to each output separation as follows:

- The *device curve* for the separation, determined by the selections from the **Snapshot**, **Device**, and **Device Condition** lists, with no modifications from the Tonal Control dialog box, is applied to separation input tints.
- The *plate calibration curve*, determined by the selections from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, is applied to the separation tints modified by the print calibration curve.

Note: If **None** is selected from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, the plate calibration curve is linear (has no effect).

When this option is selected, the **Device** list contains all curved print devices in the selected snapshot, and the **Device Condition** list contains all ColorFlow device conditions in the selected snapshot that use the selected device. If the selected device condition uses a plate setup, the **Plate Setup** list displays this plate setup, and the **Plate Line** list contains all ColorFlow plate lines controlled by the plate setup in the selected snapshot.

When this option is selected, the **Color Setup** list is not available.

This option is not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Plate Verification

This halftone output mode is used to verify the linear response of plates produced by a particular plate line (consisting of the computer-to-plate device, plate processor setup, and chemistry), with a selected screening system. When this option is selected, the following results occur:

- Only the *plate calibration curve*, determined by the selections from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, is applied to input tints of all separations.
- No print calibration curve is applied.

When this option is selected, the **Plate Setup** list contains all ColorFlow plate setups in the selected snapshot, and the **Plate**

Line list contains all ColorFlow plate lines controlled by the selected plate setup in the selected snapshot.

When this option is selected, the **Color Setup**, **Device**, and **Device Condition** lists are not available.

This option is not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Plate Characterization

This halftone output mode supports imaging and measuring the uncalibrated (or intrinsic) response of a plating line, such that a plate linearization curve can be computed. When this option is selected, no calibration curves are applied to input tints of any separations.

When this option is selected, none of the lists in the **ColorFlow** section are available.

This option is not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch

This check box enables the job to run when the selected color setup differs from the color setup assigned by the refine process, or if the color setup has not been defined. Note that when this feature is enabled, output could be significantly different.

To use this feature, it is recommended to select an approved color setup listed in the snapshot or by ID number. This will ensure that the list of devices and device conditions are filtered to include only those available in the selected color setup. Then, the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** check box can be selected and output will succeed with a warning message.

To output refined pages with no color setup assigned to them, you can select the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** setting.

The list of devices and device conditions is unfiltered when **<Job_Color_Setup>** is selected. Note that this may cause output to fail, if the device and device condition selected are not in the job color setup. A message will be logged in the process history, and you will need to either select a device and device condition used in the job color setup or use the recommended solution, as described above.

When **<Color_Setup_Assigned_by_Refine>** is selected, the list of devices and device conditions is also unfiltered, and the

Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch check box is grayed out and cannot be used. Note that this is the default color setup setting for all process templates that were upgraded from Prinergy Connect 5.1.

Snapshot

A ColorFlow snapshot captures the state of the entire color database, making its elements available to the workflow and providing a convenient backup. The snapshot feature makes it unnecessary for you to manually save and name multiple versions of your color control elements after adjusting them. At any time, you can easily roll back (revert) to the state of a previous snapshot in the ColorFlow software. If you roll back to a previous snapshot, ColorFlow behaves as if changes after that snapshot never happened.

When you have completed your work in ColorFlow to a certain level and you are satisfied with the elements in color setups, you will mark a snapshot as *approved*. By default in Prinergy Connect, the currently approved snapshot is used. Only one snapshot can be in the approved state at any time.

This list is not available if the **Plate Characterization** option is selected.

Color Setup

This list displays the names of all color setups in the selected snapshot. At the top of the list is **Color setups assigned by Refine**, followed by **Job color setup**.

This list is available only if the **Print Calibration** mode is selected.

Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch

This check box enables the job to run when the selected color setup differs from the color setup assigned by the refine process, or if the color setup has not been defined. Note that when this feature is enabled, output could be significantly different.

To use this feature, it is recommended to select an approved color setup listed in the snapshot or by ID number. This will ensure that the list of devices and device conditions are filtered to include only those available in the selected color setup. Then, the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** check box can be selected and output will succeed with a warning message.

To output refined pages with no color setup assigned to them, you can select the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** setting.

The list of devices and device conditions is unfiltered when **<Job_Color_Setup>** is selected. Note that this may cause output to fail, if the device and device condition selected are not in the job color setup. A message will be logged in the process history, and you will need to either select a device and device condition used in the job color setup or use the recommended solution, as described above.

When **<Color_Setup_Assigned_by_Refine>** is selected, the list of devices and device conditions is also unfiltered, and the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** check box is grayed out and cannot be used. Note that this is the default color setup setting for all process templates that were upgraded from Prinergy Connect 5.1.

Device

An individual occurrence of a physical device that captures or produces an image. Devices have a type and customer-specified properties, such as a name and location in the plant. Because the declaration of a device does not include its operating conditions—such as ink selection, type of screening, and paper—you cannot measure the color response of a device on its own.

When a process template is configured for halftone (screened) output processes, this list displays the names of all curved devices used in PCO (primary color output) or SCO (secondary color output) device conditions in the selected color setup and snapshot. Curved print devices are those with the following device types:

- Offset press—for example, sheetfed, heatset web, coldset web
- Digital press—for example, Versamark
- Digital halftone proofer—for example, Kodak Approval, Trendsetter Spectrum

When a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output, this list displays the names of all non-curved devices used in PCO or SCO device conditions in the selected color setup and snapshot. Non-curved devices are those with the following device types:

- Digital press—for example, Nexpress
- Inkjet proofer—for example, Matchprint Inkjet, Kodak Veris
- CMYK reference

This list is not available if the **Plate Verification** or **Plate Characterization** option is selected.

Device Condition

A combination of a device and the operating conditions in which the device captures or produces an image. A device condition has a known color response. Device conditions can be divided into groups such as print conditions (press and proofer devices), capture conditions (scanner and camera devices), and reference print conditions (industry specifications). A device condition can include more than one device. If all the devices are the same device type, they use the same consumables and operational settings, and they can be calibrated to yield the same color response.

When a specific color setup is selected, this list contains all ColorFlow device conditions that use the selected device and are used in the PCO or an SCO of the selected color setup and snapshot.

This list is not available if the **Plate Verification** or **Plate Characterization** option is selected.

Plate Setup

If the selected device condition uses a plate setup in the selected snapshot, this plate setup is displayed here. Otherwise, this list displays **None**.

This list is not available if the **Plate Characterization** option is selected. It is also not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Plate Line

You establish the behavior of a particular plate, screening, and plating line by plating a tint ramp, manually measuring the resulting dot area on the plate, and entering the values in the Plate Setups dialog box in the ColorFlow software.

A ColorFlow plate line is associated with only one plate setup. In your shop, you may use a platesetter and chemistry to process several different screenings. To model this, in ColorFlow, create similar plate lines in the other plate setups. You can name them to match the equipment in your plant. You may want to create several plate lines to indicate when chemistry changes occur. For example, if you routinely change

solutions on Mondays, you might create different ColorFlow plate lines for Monday, Wednesday, and Friday.

If the **Plate Setup** list displays a plate setup, the **Plate Line** list contains all ColorFlow plate lines controlled by the plate setup in the selected snapshot. If the **Plate Setup** list displays **None**, the **Plate Line** list also displays **None**.

This list is not available if the **Plate Characterization** option is selected. It is also not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

ColorConvert section of the Imposition Output process template

This process template section defines how Prinergy handles color converting during imposition output.

Color converting, as part of imposition output, transforms the color description of colored objects in a PDF page to the appropriate final output color space, and then to the appropriate color space of the imposition output device. As a result, the imposition output simulates the intended final output.

JTP

Select the job ticket processor (JTP) to use for color conversion.

You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Match Colors

Match Colors in Page Content

Enables the Color Matcher to match hues in the page content for proofing. In other words, it enables color matching as it was done in Prinergy 1.1 (as opposed to using the Color Matcher to affect the L*a*b* spot color recipes).

Select this check box to enable this feature; clear the check box to disable this feature.

When you enable this feature, you can set the **Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile** option.

Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile

Select **Exactly as Applied During Refining** to use the same profile that was used during the refine process. If the file was not color converted during refining, or the profile is missing, an error is displayed.

Select **As Defined Below, if Not Set in Refining** to use the same profile that was used during the refine process, if the file was color converted during refining. If the file was not color converted during refining, the profile defined in the **Input Device Conditions** box will be used.

Select **Exactly as Defined Below** to use the profile selected in the **Input Device Conditions** box.

Input Device Conditions

Available when **Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile** is set to **As Defined Below, if not set in Refining** or **Exactly as Defined Below**.

From the list, select **Browse** to locate the appropriate profile file for final output.

Rendering Intent

Select **Relative Colorimetric** if the proofing paper is similar to the paper that will be used during final output.

Select **Absolute Colorimetric** to simulate the color of the paper that will be used during final output.

Select **PDF** to use the rendering intent specified in the PDF file when output by the creative software during final output.

Select **Perceptual** to use rendering that uses gamut compression and produces less saturated colors during final output.

Select **Saturation** to make sure colors are represented in a way that preserves or emphasizes saturation during final output.

Retain CMYK Black

Preserves black in images and graphics that are defined in CMYK or RGB color space. For ICC-based color matching engines, CMYK images and graphics get transformed from CMYK to L*a*b* and back to CMYK color in order to perform color matching. In going from CMYK (four components) to L*a*b* (three components) and back again, the black (K) channel separation information (UCR/GCR) has in the past been destroyed. Selecting this check box instructs the Color Matcher to preserve the black generation information from the source color space. As a result, the amount of black relative to CMY in the images and graphics stays about the same. The purpose of this feature is to help preserve the visual weight of images and graphics.

Note: When you enable this feature, Color Matcher requires some additional processing time because of the extra calculations involved.

Overprint Handling (CPU Intensive)

(See [About overprint handling](#) on page 257)

Select to prevent overprinting objects from generating unintended knockouts.

If you are converting spots to process for a proof, or if you are color-matching one CMYK space to another CMYK space for a proof, you probably need to apply overprint handling, even if you applied it during refine.

To use overprint handling, you must:

1. In the **ColorConvert** section, select:
 - The **Color Matcher JTP**
 - The **Match Colors in Page Content** check box
 - The **Overprint Handling** check box
2. Choose between raster and vector overprint handling in the **Methods** list.

Note: The raster option is available only when **Shades=256** is selected in the **Render** section of the process template.

Method

Choose to use vector or raster overprint handling for this output process.

Select **Raster** when outputting to low-resolution contone proofers (for example, Veris digital proofer or Matchprint Inkjet proofer).

Note: To use raster overprint handling, you must select, in the **Render** section of the process template, **Shades=256**.

Additional factors to consider:

- Raster overprint handling can be applied only to continuous tone data
- Raster overprint handling occurs after the RIP
- Raster processing time increases exponentially as the resolution increases
- Raster overprint handling eliminates all overprints

Select **Vector** when outputting to halftone (screen) proofers (for example, the Spectrum device), or to high-resolution contone proofers.

Additional factors to consider:

- Vector overprint handling occurs before the RIP
- Depending on the complexity of the file, vector overprint handling could take longer than raster overprint handling.
- Vector overprint handling does not eliminate all overprints. In objects where overprinting does not have an effect on the output, the objects retain an overprint status. For example, if you set black to overprint, but one black object is not placed on top of another object, this black object is, after overprint handling, still an overprinting object.

Preserve Traps

Select this check box to preserve existing Kodak traps when vector overprint handling is used.

Note: When existing traps are preserved, you cannot remove them in later processing. You must remove the traps in the original file. Traps are color-managed as regular objects.

Process CEPS Data

Select this check box to enable spot color mapping and color matching of CEPS data.

For further information, see the CEPS Conversion Section and the Normalize Section of the Refine Process Template.

Process Marks

Select this check box when you want to apply color management to your marks file. Depending on the type of mark, it may be necessary to enable **Overprint Handling** to appropriately convert the mark and apply the necessary color transformation.

Note: When **Process Marks** is checked, both sheet marks and page marks are color managed.

Color match 1-bit images

Select this check box to color match 1-bit images. One-bit images are images that represent two tones, typically black and white. The pixel is either a 0 or a 1 value. Examples are copydot images.

Note: This feature will convert 1-bit images to 8-bit images. This causes pages to become larger and to render more slowly. Turn off this feature if you do not require color matching of 1-bit images, or if the feature causes unacceptable performance degradation. (For example, copydot files take a very long time to refine and render.)

This feature is available when **Match Colors in Page Content** is selected.

Device Condition

Enables the ICC profile for a proofing device. The ICC profile characterizes the way the proofing device prints.

Enable this feature by selecting a profile in the **Device Condition** box. A profile should always be present because the Color Matcher needs it for mapping spots and other tasks.

Source of Color Recipes

Extract Recipe from the File

Select to use the color recipes embedded in the file.

Lookup Recipe in Color Database

Select to use the color libraries selected in this process template.

Color Libraries

From the **Selectable** list, select the color libraries you want Prinergy to search for color recipes, and click **Add**.

Arrange the color libraries in the **Selected** list in the order that you want Prinergy to search. Use the **Move Up** and **Move Down** buttons.

Note: Ensure that you select color libraries with color spaces that are compatible with the **Proof Process Profile**.

Use Recipe from File if not found in Color Database

Select this check box to use color recipes embedded in the file if Prinergy does not find the colors in the selected color libraries.

Layout section of the Imposition Output process template

This process template section defines how Prinergy places the pages on the output media during imposition output.

Media

Media Configuration

This option becomes available when you select Kodak Proofers in the **Output To** list.

Specifies the type of paper you're using in the Kodak proofing device. Select a paper type from the list.

Thickness

This option becomes available when you select an Epson device in the **Output To** list.

Type the thickness of the paper you are using in the **Thickness** box, and then select a unit of measurement.

Layout for Kodak Proofers

Select a template to control how multiple pages are arranged on a single proof.

This box is available only for those proofers that are connected via Kodak Proofing Software (KPS).

For more information, see the Kodak proofer documentation.

Name

Available when a vendor's device has been defined through the Prinergy Administrator. Available options are determined by the device.

Size

Determines the size of the media to which you will output the final files.

Select **Digital** to generate an output file, for example, a file for Virtual Proofing System software. When you select **Digital**, the **Min Width**, **Min Height**, **Max Width**, **Max Height**, and **Layout is 90° Different Than Media** boxes are unavailable.

Select **Cut sheet**, **Roll fed**, or **Roll fed (transverse)**, depending on the media being used.

Min Width

Sets the minimum width for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

Min Height

Sets the minimum height for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

For cut sheet, enter the sheet height. For roll fed, enter the height of the smallest proof you want to make on the device.

Max Width

Sets the maximum width for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

Max Height

Sets the maximum height for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

Duplexing

This option is available for composite files; it is unavailable for separated files.

Specifies the type of duplexing.

From the **Duplexing** box, select **Turn** or **Tumble** to enable this feature. Select **None** to disable duplexing.

Front Shift and Back Shift

The **Front Shift Along Width...Along Height** and **Back Shift Along Width...Along Height** options give finer adjustment when aligning two-sided proofs than with **Center Along Width/Height**. Use these measurements to shift and align front and back pages along their turn or tumble axes, depending on the page or imposition orientation (portrait or landscape).

These options are available only when **Duplexing** has been set to **Turn** or **Tumble**.

You can specify the shift in points, inches, centimeters, or millimeters.

Placement

Orientation

(See [Example: orientation](#) on page 653)

Rotates an entire imposition as a unit.

Select **Auto clockwise** to automatically rotate an image clockwise when rotating would result in a better fit.

Select **Auto counterclockwise** to automatically rotate an image counter-clockwise when rotating would result in a better fit.

Center Along Width

Centers the imposition plan along the horizontal axis of the media.

Center Along Height

Centers the imposition plan along the vertical axis of the media.

Shift Along Width

(See [Example: shifting images horizontally and vertically](#) on page 654)

Available if the **Center Along Width** check box is cleared.

Shifts the imposition plan from the left edge of the media along the horizontal axis.

Shift Along Height

(See [Example: shifting images horizontally and vertically](#) on page 654)

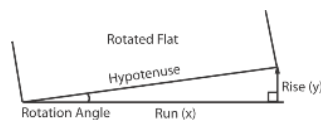
Available if the **Center Along Height** check box is cleared.

Shifts the imposition plan from the bottom edge of the media along the vertical axis.

Flat Rotation

Makes a small angle rotation of the flat or output image. Also called plate cocking. Derive the **(0.0)** percentage value, or gradient, in one of two ways:

- Physically measure the first occurrence of a rotation to find the gradient that you can then apply for all jobs that use that rotation
- Convert a given angle into its gradient



To measure for a gradient:

- Formula: $\text{gradient} = \text{rise}/\text{run} \times 100$ where:
- Rise: (y-axis) measure the distance between where the flat's rotating corner started and where it must be moved as a straight line that meets the x-axis at a 90° angle. Example: 2 units
- Run: (x-axis) measure the distance along the x-axis from the non-rotated corner of the flat to the point where the vertical line transects the x-axis at a right angle. Example: 90 units
- Calculation: $2/90 \times 100 = 2.2$
- The maximum percentage value is 3.1.

To convert an angle to a gradient:

- Formula: gradient = tangent of the angle of rotation x 100
- Calculation using a scientific calculator and an angle of 0.5°:
- $0.5^\circ + \text{Tan}(\text{gent}) \text{ key} = 0.008 \times 100 = 0.8$
- The maximum angle of rotation is 1.78°.

Note: To convert a gradient to an angle, enter the gradient into the calculator and apply the inverse tangent function. Example: 2.2% is entered as $0.022 + \text{Inv}(\text{erse}) \text{ key} + \text{Tan key} = 1.26^\circ$.

- Indicate whether the rotation is to be **clockwise** or **counterclockwise**.

Note: The process template does not let you select flat rotation and web growth at the same time. However, when web growth is applied, flat rotation can be specified in the web growth profile.

Punch Setting

Available when a format for an imagesetter that has an automatic punching system (for example, Heidelberg Herkules) is selected in the **Output To** list.

Select a punch type. For more information about punch types, see your device documentation.

Scaling

Scale Vector

Applies scaling to the layout prior to screening the file. The scaling is based on vector data (PDF data).

Apply Scaling from Layout

Select to use the scaling specified in the original layout application, for example, Pandora.

Note: This feature is not compatible with Preps.

Custom

Enter scaling percentages for the **Along Width** and **Along Height** directions.

Fit to Media Size

If the specified layout produces an image too large for the media, the image is scaled to fit.

You cannot see the scaling percentage. Select this check box only when a proof scaled to an unspecified reduction is acceptable.

Non-Printable Margin

If the **Fit to Media Size** option was selected, you can identify the non-printable margins that should be taken into account when determining scaled layouts.

Specify left, right, top, and bottom non-printable margins appropriate to the output device and media, in the selected unit of measure.

Scale Raster

Applies raster scaling to the layout. Raster scaling is an optional feature that will allow you to apply distortion after the files are screened.

Raster scaling is recommended for prescreened files (copydot) or files that contain 1-bit TIFF images, since the prescreened bitmap data cannot be properly scaled with vector scaling (could generate artifacts).

Clear this check box to disable this feature.

Apply Scaling from Layout

Select to use the scaling specified in the original layout application, for example, Pandora.

Note: This feature is not compatible with Preps.

Custom

Enter scaling percentages for the **Along Width** and **Along Height** directions.

Assign Web Growth Profile, if Available

(See [Example: web growth profile](#) on page [730](#) and [Applying and removing a web growth profile](#) on page [739](#))

Enables the system to digitally compensate for distortion on press using a web growth profile file (<file name>.wgp) and a tower color file (**ColorTowerMap.txt**).

Web growth scaling can be used in situations where each plate must be scaled by a different (or identical) factor.

Select the **Use Web Growth Profile** option to enable this feature. Then do one of the following:

- Select **Use profiles assigned in Job Manager only**. If a profile is not assigned in Job Manager, no web growth profile will be applied.
- Select **Default Profile** and either type or browse to select a profile that will be used for all sheets when this process template is used.

Note: Web growth profiles can be assigned in Job Manager or in Process Template Editor. If a web growth profile is specified for a job in Job Manager, this overrides any web growth profile that is assigned here, unless you also select the **Override profiles assigned in Job Manager** check box.

- Select **Assign Profile to Sheet** to select a profile for each individual sheet. This feature is useful when, for example, you need different profiles for the left and right webs of a multi-web run. A "sheet" in the **Assign Profile to Sheet list box** refers to two surfaces printed on two sides of the same substrate. For example, a multi-web layout consisting of a single signature with two webs would map Sheet 1 to Signature 1 sides A and B, and map Sheet 2 to Signature 1 sides C and D. If there were a second signature, then Sheet 3 would map to Signature 2 sides A and B, and Sheet 4 would map to Signature 2 sides C and D.

Note: If a web growth profile is specified for a job in Job Manager, this overrides any web growth profiles that are assigned here, unless you also select the **Override profiles assigned in Job Manager** check box.

Signature Booklet

Enable Signature Booklet

Signature Booklet (digital blueline proofing) enables you to create a 1-up or 2-up reader-order proof of the page set positions—from an imposition plan layout.

A signature booklet is similar to a digital blueline, except that each page is refined separately and then compiled.

Document Binding

This list becomes available when you select **2-up** from the **Type** list.

Select how the signature booklet will be bound: **Left**, **Right**, **Top**, or **Bottom**.

Type

Select how many pages will output on the sheet:

- To output two PDF pages per sheet (one front and one back) in reader order by signature, select **1-up**
- To output four PDF pages per sheet (two front and two back) in reader order by signature, select **2-up**

Use... with offset

Determines how much of the area around the page's bleed or trim box to include when printing. You can increase the offset amount to see the bleed area, gutters, imposition and page marks, and parts of neighboring imposed pages. Be sure the output sheet is large enough to accommodate both the pages and the bleed or trim offset amount.

- To print with only the final bleed or trim, type **0.0**
- To image content outside the page's bleed or trim box, type a positive value and select a measurement from the list. The offset amount you choose depends on the size of the gutter, but typically 6 to 13 mm (0.25 to 0.5 inches) is sufficient.

Duplex Offsets

This option applies only if you are outputting to a duplexing laser printer.

Adjust for the mechanical misalignment in the laser printer's duplexing unit. There are alignment test targets that you can run that directly measure how far off the front and back are from center. Use the **Front Shift Along Width** and **Along Height** and **Back Shift Along Width** and **Along Height** values to compensate for any misalignments. Select the units of measure in the list.

Page Marks

Identify the name and location of a PDF file containing page marks. Click **Browse** to locate and select a file.

You may need to provide space for page marks by increasing gutter measurements.

The variable mark **#[PagePositionNumber]** or **#[PPN]** can be used to verify that the pages are in the correct page set positions in the imposition.

Calibrate

When this check box is selected, the plate curve and print curve are applied to the mark. The curves applied are the ones

selected in the **Plate Curve** list and **Print Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template. When this check box is cleared, only the plate curve is applied. To prevent the application of the plate curve to a mark, select **%None%** in the **Plate Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template.

Locate Page Marks Adjacent to

Select where to place the page marks in relation to the page's trim box.

When you select **Right** or **Left**, the page marks rotate as follows:

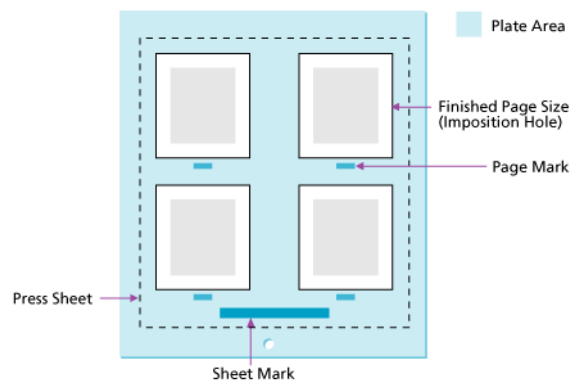
- **Left**—rotates the mark 90° counterclockwise
- **Right**—rotates the mark 90° clockwise
- **Bottom**—no rotation
- **Top**—no rotation

at Distance

(See [Calculating the at distance value on final output](#) on page 692.)

Determines where, relative to the edge, the mark is placed:

- Sheet marks are placed relative to the plate edge. Depending on the distance you type, you can place the sheet mark on the press sheet or on the plate.
- Page marks are placed relative to the finished page size (the imposition hole).



Render section of the Imposition Output process template

This process template section determines the output resolution and how the system handles spot colors during imposition output.

JTP

Select the job ticket processor (JTP) to use for rendering.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Device Resolutions

This list is available when an output device format is selected in the **Output To** list.

Select a resolution for the selected device in the list.

Resolution X

Available when the **Device Resolutions** box is unavailable.

Type a resolution value.

Resolution Y

Available when the **Device Resolutions** box is unavailable and mixed resolution values are allowed for the output format selected in the **Output To** list.

Type a resolution value.

Color Model

Select the process color model to use for output.

The list of values varies, depending on the output format selected in the **Output To** list.

Shades

To set the number of shades of gray to output, select **1** for screened data or **256** for continuous tone data. When **1** is selected, the **Calibration & Screening** section of the refine process template is available for input.

The list of values varies, depending on the output format selected in the **Output To** list and the color model selected in the **Color Model** list.

Do Separations

Available when the output format selected in the **Output To** list supports separated output and **DeviceCMYK** is selected in the **Color Model** options.

Select if you want Prinergy to output separations. Clear this check box if you want Prinergy to output a single composite file.

Output Separations Handling

Determines how separations should be handled during imposition output.

The list of values varies, depending on the output format selected in the **Output To** list.

- Select **Convert separations to process** if you want spot colors converted to process colors.

Note: When **Convert separations to process** is selected, Vector **Overprint Handling** (in the ColorConvert section) is automatically turned on to ensure the correct appearance of any overprinting spot colors.

- Select **Output all separations** to preserve spot colors on output.

Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots

This check box is available when **Output Separations Handling** is set to **Convert separations to process**.

If the input files contain overprinted spot colors, the Color Combiner, which is a plug-in to the renderer, will combine the layers and output the overprinted colors correctly.

When this check box is cleared, the renderer handles the conversion of spot colors to process colors if the following conditions exist:

- Input files are composite.
- All spot colors are set to opaque in the color database. (If a spot color is not in the color database, opaque is assumed.)

If the above conditions are not met, the Color Combiner will be used, even if the **Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box is cleared.

We recommend that you always select this check box.

See [About Color Combiner](#) on page [805](#).

Dielines Overprint Other Content

This check box is cleared and unavailable if the **Do Separations** check box is cleared and unavailable.

Select this check box to specify whether die lines overprint other content. Clear this check box if you do not want die lines to overprint other content.

The **Dielines Overprint Other Content** check box is available for the following outputs:

- DCS Raster
- Kodak Approval TIFF
- LQS TIFF
- VPS
- Windows Bitmap

Anti-Aliasing

Select this check box to enable anti-aliasing, and then in the **at Ratio** list, specify a ratio for anti-aliasing.

Anti-aliasing is a technique of improving the appearance of output by minimizing the "stair step" effect on rasterized output. It does so by rendering to a higher resolution than the intended output, and then downsampling to the intended output. This generates "averaged" pixels which softens the "stair step" effect on low-resolution output. The ratio value for anti-aliasing refers to the factor used to determine the intermediate resolution. A higher ratio results in higher quality, but can have an effect on output speed. For example, if the output is a 300 DPI 8-bit TIFF, and the anti-alias ratio is 4, Prinergy will render an intermediate output at 1200 DPI (4 x 300 DPI), and then downsample to the user-requested 300 DPI. Anti-aliasing is only available for 8-bit (256 shade) output.

Fail if font problems detected

Select this check box to fail the output process if a file has missing fonts.

Note: This feature is not available for vector outputs (PDF, PS2, PS3, EPS, DCS Vector, PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, CT/LW, and DELTA).

Ignore Embedded Fonts in Marks Files

Select this check box if you want Prinergy to ignore embedded fonts in a marks file and to look for the fonts in the `system fonts` folder.

Important: You must install the fonts in `%ServerName%\%AraxiHome%\AdobeExtreme\bin\fonts`, or the output will fail.

Convert Text to Paths

This check box converts fonts to outlines before a file is RIPed.

This option was added in Prinergy 3.0 when the CPSI 3016 RIP was included with Prinergy. This option helped situations where the 3016 RIP failed to process the fonts on certain jobs.

This option has limited usefulness now, but is included as a potential workaround in rare cases where fonts are not rendered correctly by the RIP. It is not recommended that you enable this on a permanent basis. When using this option for specific jobs, it is recommended that you ensure that both proofs and plates are output with this option.

Note that when you select the **Convert Text to Paths** check box, you will have text appear fatter on low-resolution proof output. You can overcome this appearance problem by either:

- Rendering to a higher resolution, if rendering to 1-bit output, such as Virtual Proofing System
- Using anti-aliasing, if rendering to contone output

Note: This check box is only available for raster output formats (.VPS, .TIFF, and so on).

Overlay Versioned Content

This check box applies to Layered PDF Versioning. For information, see the *Prinergy Layered PDF Versioning User Guide*.

Versioning Proof Mapping Color

This box applies to Layered PDF Versioning. For information, see the *Prinergy Layered PDF Versioning User Guide*.

Kodak Approval

Densities

Type an integer between -22 and +22.

For more information, see your Approval documentation.

Calibration and Screening section of the imposition output process template

This process template section provides calibration and screening file information during imposition output.

These options are available when you select **1** in the **Shades** option, in the **Render** section of the process template.

Calibration

Plate Curve

Select **None** if you do not want to apply plate linearization curves to your output. This option is set to **None** by default.

To apply a plate curve to your output, select the curve in the list.

You must select a plate curve in the Prinergy process template, even when **Print Curve (Calibration)** is set to **Auto**.

Note: Plate curves are always applied to page, sheet, and imposition marks. Select **None** if you do not want curves applied to marks.

Print Curve (Calibration)

Select **None** if you do not want to apply print dot gain compensation curves to your output.

To apply a print calibration curve to your output, select the curve in the list.

Select **Auto** to automatically select the most appropriate curve. Depending on the **Screening Method** selected, the Harmony software determines the curve to use, based on dot shape and screen frequency data from your job or the process template. Harmony looks in the following locations in the process template:

- **Dot Shape** and **Screen Ruling** boxes
- **Screen Frequency** box
- **Harmony Medium** box
- In the **Render** section, the **Device Resolutions** box (or **Resolution X** and **Resolution Y** boxes)

If you assign a calibration curve in the Prinergy DotShop software for use on a mark, you must select the **Keep DotShop Settings** or **Use Document's Screening, if Present** screening mode.

Note: To control the application of the selected print curve for an individual page, sheet, or imposition mark, select the **Calibrate** check box in the **Marks** section of the process template. This allows you to apply print curves to imposition content without applying print curves to marks.

Harmony Medium

Available when you select **Auto** in the **Print Curve (Calibration)** list, it lists the Harmony media that are defined in your Harmony curve database. If the **Harmony Medium** list is available but the list is empty, no Harmony media are defined. The selected Harmony media is used to identify an appropriate calibration curve.

Select a Harmony media in the list.

Minimum Dot Size

Type the lowest tint percentage, with up to one decimal place, at which dots will be imaged—for example, 10% or 10.5%. This feature is available only if you specified a plate or print curve.

You can use this feature to remove scum dots on flexo plates.

Screening Mode

(See also the topic about document screening in this guide.)

- Select **Override all Screening** to use the screening specified in the process template. This option ignores any screening specified in the source PDF file or the Prinergy DotShop software.
- Select **Keep DotShop Settings** to use the screening specified in the DotShop software, when available. For pages that are not modified in DotShop, the screening specified in the process template is used.
- Select **Use Document's Screening, if Present** to use the screening specified in the source PDF file.

This option also uses the screening specified in DotShop, when available. For pages containing no screening information, the screening specified in the process template is used.

You can use one or more of the **Angles**, **Frequencies**, and **Dot Shapes** settings specified on the page and allow the process template to determine the parameters that you did not specify.

Note: If Prinergy does not support the screen angles in the source PDF file, the nearest supported angle is used.

Note: This option offers the greatest risk of poor results, because screen angles identified in the source PDF file may not be suitable for the output device.

Screen Type and Screen System

(See also the topics about screen types and screen systems.)

Screen Type lists the following default screening information:

- **Maxtone** screen types are based on the Prinergy AM (conventional or rational tangent) screening technology.
 - The **Maxtone CX** screen type is configurable. To configure the size of highlights and shadow dots, type values in the **Dot Width Highlights** and **Shadows** boxes.
 - The **Maxtone NX** screen type is also configurable. To configure the size of highlights and shadow dots, select values from the **Dot Size Highlights** and **Shadows** lists.

Note: It is also possible to select the dot size for the highlights and shadows using DotShop Composer. Maxtone NX works on the entire page, so all objects defined with Maxtone NX must have dots of the same size. If there are multiple dot sizes selected, the output process will fail.

- **Maxtone IS** screen types are used for seamless sleeve and cylinder output device applications. If you select **Maxtone IS**, the resolution set in the **Render** section of the process template must be identical to the resolution in the IS screen system. Most IS screen systems are predefined in the IS screen set and cannot be modified in the process template. For information about defining IS screen sets, see the *Prinergy System Administration Guide*.
To see how items in the list of IS screen systems can be hidden, see the topic about hiding IS screen sets.
- **Maxtone IS CX** screen types are used for seamless sleeve and cylinder output device applications, but they are configurable. If you select **Maxtone IS CX**, the resolution set in the **Render** section of the process template must be identical to the resolution in the IS screen set.
- **Staccato** identifies the Staccato stochastic screening family.
 - The **Staccato NX** screen type is configurable. To configure the size of highlights and shadow dots, type a value in the **Dot Size Highlights > Shadows** box.

Select a screen system for the format selected in the **Output To** list.

Dot Shape

(See also the topic about dot shapes.)

Select a dot shape in the list.

The list of available dot shapes varies, depending on the screen system selected in the **Screen System** list.

Device Resolutions

Displays the values set in the **Resolution X** and **Resolution Y** boxes in the **Render** section of the process template.

Screen Ruling

Available when **Maxtone**, **Maxtone CX**, or **Maxtone NX** is selected in the **Screen System** list.

The list of available screen rulings varies, depending on the setting in the **Screen System**, **Device Resolutions**, and **Output To** lists.

If you select an **IS** screen set, you cannot change the **Screen Ruling** value.

Feature Size

Available when **Staccato**, **Staccato CX**, or **Staccato NX** is selected in the **Screen System** list.

Select the most appropriate feature size (in microns or pixels) for the screen system. A smaller number produces finer-grained output.

The list of available feature sizes varies, depending on the setting in the **Screen System**, **Device Resolutions**, and **Output To** lists.

Note: The **Staccato** feature sizes denote a dot size somewhere between the actual highlight and the midtone dot size.

Note: The **Staccato CX** or **NX** (first order) feature size denotes the exact dot size of the highlight and quarter tone dots. Resolution is factored into the **Staccato CX** or **NX** (first order) dot size calculations.

Note: **Staccato** feature sizes listed as <##>.1 indicate a first-order screen, where <##> is the approximate dot size of the highlight and quarter tone dots.

Midtone Frequency

Available when **Staccato CX** or **Staccato NX** is selected in the **Screen Type** and **Screen System** lists.

Select a **Staccato CX/NX** midtone frequency in the list. A larger number indicates a finer dot structure.

Midtone frequency is an accurate measure of the number of dot structures per inch in the midtones of **Staccato CX/NX** screens. Frequency is expressed in lines per inch (lpi) and is a useful metric with **AM** and **FM** screens when assessing qualitative, lithographic, and imaging behavior. **Staccato CX/NX** midtone frequency is comparable to **Maxtone** and **Maxtone CX/NX** screen ruling.

Values in this box are governed by resolution and licensing. For a complete list of the available Staccato CX midtone frequencies and dot widths, including configurations that match Staccato screen type feature sizes, see the section about document screening, in this guide.

Screen Color

In the **Screen Color** and **at Angle** boxes, perform the following tasks:

- Set screening for colors other than the four process colors
- Swap the process color screens within screen systems
- Assign a screen to the "Default" color. This screen will be used for any color that doesn't have its own screening value in the output process template or color database.

The screen angles associated with each process color in the **at Angle** box vary, depending on the setting in the **Screen System** and **Dot Shape** lists.

To assign a screen to a color in the **Screen Color** box, type the name of a spot color, or type `Default` to select the default screen angle. Use the correct capitalization and spacing in color names.

Note: To swap two screens (for example, magenta for black), modify the entries for both colors. In this example, modify the setting in the **at Angle** box for magenta to use the black screen, and modify the setting in the **at Angle** box for black to use the magenta screen.

Default Spot Color Handling

Determines how Prinergy assigns screen angles to spot colors that do not have screen angles assigned in the **Screen Color** and **at Angle** boxes or in the Color Editor.

To choose C, M, Y, or K as the default color screen angle, select **Screen as**. To cycle through the available color screen angles, select **Cycle Through Screen Angles**.

Screen as

To assign a different default spot color screen angle, select a color in the list.

For IS screening, Prinergy cannot assign the **Others** angle as the default spot color angle.

Cycle Through Screen Angles

Select this option to assign default spot color screen angles cyclically to the available process colors, in CMYK order.

Prinerger does not assign process colors that have already been used to screen a spot color.

If **Staccato Extended** is selected in the **Screen System** list, the list of screens cycles from **Screen #1** through to **Screen #10**.

For IS screening, Prinerger cannot cycle through angles other than CMYK.

Do not increase yellow ruling

To reduce moiré, the AM screening algorithm provides yellow screen frequencies (lpi) that are up to 14% higher than the cyan, magenta, and black screens. If you want a Y screen that is more similar to the Y screen in Prinerger 2.2 and earlier, select this check box. It limits yellow screen frequencies to between -4% and 4% of the ruling of the C, M, and K screens. For example, if the C, M, and K screens are at 150 lpi, this check box limits the screening algorithm to providing a Y screen between 144 lpi and 156 lpi.

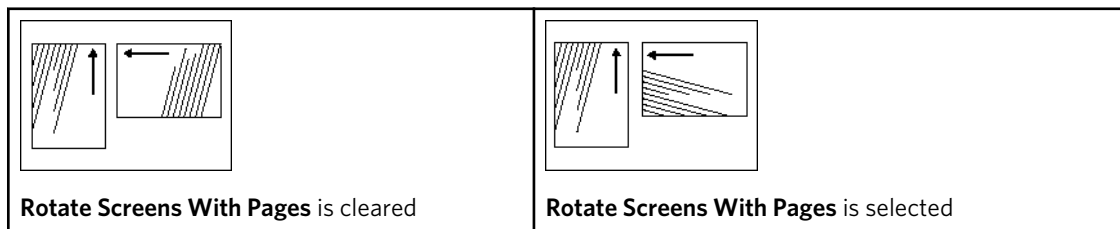
This setting does not affect the yellow frequency of an IS screen set. To change the yellow frequency of an IS screen set, use the IS Screen Set Editor.

Rotate Screens With Pages

Select to rotate screens with reader orientation for each page in an imposition.

When some pages are rotated 90°, rotating screens with the pages allows all pages to be screened at the same angle.

Screens are only rotated at 90° so pages that are oriented at other angles are not affected. The result of rotating screens is apparent when you screen with dot shapes that are not rotationally symmetric, such as Elliptical and Line.

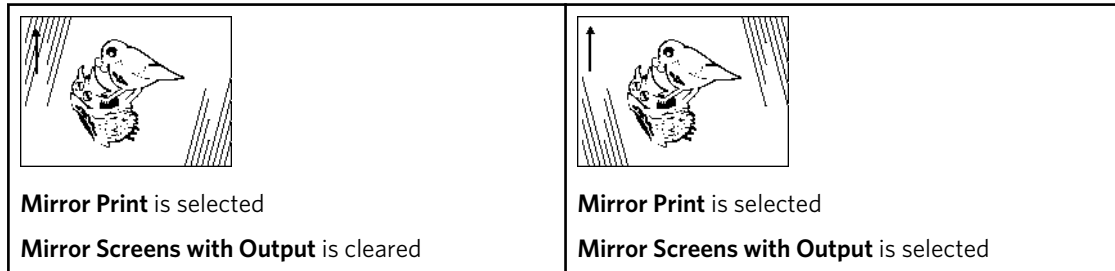


Mirror Screens with Output

Select to mirror screens so they are consistent across all devices (for output devices that have intrinsically mirrored output).

Note: This will affect the screen angle rotation on the printed page and should be used only for compatibility with legacy printing.

When the **Mirror Screens with Output** check box is selected, selecting the **Mirror Print** check box in the **Device** section of the process template causes screen angles to become mirrored with the output. This is useful for some printing processes that require mirrored film or plates, to ensure consistency of screen angles with digital dot proofs.



Note: If **Round** is selected in the **Dot Shape** list, the **Rotate Screens With Pages** and **Mirror Screens With Output** selections don't affect output.

Set Halftone Phase for each Page

Select to have the renderer reset the origin of the halftone screen for each page on an imposition.

When selected, this option ensures that each page on an imposition has the same bitmap pattern.

This is useful for a label printer who wants each label on the imposition to be identical. A difference in the halftone screen origin for each label can sometimes show up as a visible difference at the edges of the labels.

Screen Solids

Applies a screening pattern to solid areas in order to better absorb excess ink. This screening feature results in cleaner printing of solid areas.

Screen solids can also be effective in reducing ink consumption during proofing.

In the **as** box, type a value between 0% and 99.8% to indicate the percentage at which you want to screen all objects with solid (100%) tint.

Maxtone CX Dot Width

Note: This option is not available when **Maxtone** or **Staccato** is selected in the **Screen Types** list.

Highlights

Type the size (in microns) of the Maxtone dot for highlights.

Shadows

Type the size (in microns) of the Maxtone reverse dot for shadows.

Highlights

Type the size (in microns) of the Maxtone dot for highlights.

Shadows

Type the size (in microns) of the Maxtone reverse dot for shadows.

HyperFlex

Screening technology that allows for smaller dots and/or graphic elements to be held on flexo plates during UV exposure of a plate.

For more information about HyperFlex, see the *Prinergy Advanced Flexo User Guide*.

HyperFlex Classic

When imaging on flexo plates, select to enhance Maxtone dots with HyperFlex Classic technology.

Note: Hyperflex Classic is not intended for offset use.

In the extreme highlight areas, Maxtone simulates FM screening by randomly removing dots from the AM grid. HyperFlex Classic helps to support and strengthen Maxtone by placing light valves where dots have been removed.

Pixels

Type the HyperFlex dot size in pixels.

To determine the proper HyperFlex dot size, you must perform a series of flexo exposure tests. For more information, see the *Prinergy Advanced Flexo Implementation User Guide*.

HyperFlex Advanced

In flexo applications, select to use HyperFlex Advanced with Maxtone, Maxtone CX, Maxtone NX, Maxtone IS, Maxtone IS CX, and Staccato NX screen types.

Note: Hyperflex Advanced is not intended for offset use.

HyperFlex Advanced places light valves around halftone dots to strengthen and support individual dots.

Size

Type the size of the light valve in pixels. The minimum value is 1 and the maximum value is 16.

As feathering (a reduction in HyperFlex size as tone value increases) is being applied, this value specifies the starting size of the light valve. The light valve size is scaled back, in a linear fashion, to zero (at the tint percentage specified in the **Limit** box).

Distance: Start/End

Enter the distance between the center of the light valve and the center of the dot.

Suggested settings—Enter the same values in the **Start** and **End** boxes, and use a larger value than you enter in the **Merge Distance** box. For example, type 2 in both the **Start** and **End** boxes, and type 1 in the **Merge Distance** box. This positions the light valves equidistant between adjacent halftone dots.

If you are not using the suggested settings, in the **Start** box, type the distance from the light valve to the center of the smallest halftone dot. In the **End** box, type the distance (in pixels) from the light valve to the center of the largest dot, as specified in the **Limit** box.

Merge Distance

Enter a value that determines where the light valves will be positioned in relation to the halftone dots.

Suggested settings—Enter the same values in the **Start** and **End** boxes. Enter a smaller value in the **Merge Distance** box than you entered in the **Start** and **End** boxes. For example, type 2 in both the **Start** and **End** boxes, and type 1 in the **Merge Distance** box. This positions the light valves equidistant between adjacent halftone dots.

Limit

Type the tint percentage above which HyperFlex Advanced will no longer be applied. The general recommendation is to set the **Limit** between 20% and 50%.

DigiCap

DigiCap is screening software for digital photopolymer (flexo) media that improves the transfer of ink in solid areas, using small reverse dots (a tint).

Set the DigiCap texture by specifying the size of the reverse dots and the tint percentage. In the **Texture with** boxes, type the length and width of the reverse dots. The maximum size is 10 pixels by 10 pixels.

In the **as** box, type the tint percentage. For example, a 92% tint creates an area with 8% coverage of reverse dots.

To determine the proper DigiCap feature size and percentage, you must perform a print test containing multiple combinations of coarseness levels and tint percentages. You cannot determine the feature size or percentage without comprehensive press tests. For more information, see the *Prinergy Advanced Flexo Implementation User Guide*.

In the **Keepaway** box, type the distance (in pixels) between the edge of elements to which DigiCap texturizing should not be applied and the start of DigiCap texturizing.

See also:

[About document screening](#) on page [637](#)

[About dot shapes](#) on page [638](#)

[Screen types](#) on page [641](#)

[About screen systems](#) on page [643](#)

[Setting up Maxtone screens](#) on page [663](#)

[Setting up Staccato screens](#) on page [664](#)

[Creating and editing IS screen sets](#) on page [665](#)

[Hiding IS screen sets](#) on page [668](#)

Processed File Options section of the Imposition Output process template

This process template section identifies the file naming parameters during imposition output.

Prinerger-defined File Naming

Use Prinerger-defined File Naming

Select to use the default file naming convention for output files.

Maximum Characters from Job Name

Type the maximum number of characters for the job name part of the file name.

Note: Share a maximum of 18 characters between the **Maximum Characters From Job Name** box and the **From Imposition Template Name** box.

From Imposition Template Name

Type the maximum number of characters for the imposition template name part of the file name.

Note: Share a maximum of 18 characters between the **Maximum Characters From Job Name** box and the **From Imposition Template Name** box.

Respect Mac Filenames

Select to shorten Prinerger file names to 31 characters or less, because Macintosh file names are restricted to a length of 31 characters.

For imposition output and final output, the Prinerger file name consists of:

- 18 characters for the job name and imposition name (including periods)
- 13 characters for surface, version, and color extensions (including the periods that separate each item)

For example, **jobname.imposname.1A.vers.M.VPS**.

When you select this check box, Prinerger shortens the first part of the file name. You specify the maximum number of characters for the job name in the **Maximum Characters From Job Name** box. You specify the maximum number of characters for the imposition name in the **From Imposition Template Name** box.

When the **Respect Mac Filenames** check box is selected, spot colors are represented in the file name by an index number.

When the **Respect Mac Filenames** check box is cleared, the full spot color name is added to the output file name, with the word PANTONE abbreviated to PMS, and the CVC or CV suffix removed.

Overwrite Existing Files with Same Name

(See [About outputting to a file](#) on page 661)

Select if you want to use the newer files when multiple files have the same name.

Available when **Job-Relative File** is selected in the **Output Type** box.

Custom File Naming

Use Custom File Naming

Select this check box if you want to specify the output file names.

Notes: If you select this check box:

- And if you want to respect Macintosh file names, you must restrict each tag in the **Filename Template** box, so that the longest possible file name is 31 characters or less.
- **Overwrite Existing File with Same Name** is selected. If you want to generate and keep iterations of a file, include a `%version%` tag in the **Filename Template** box.

Filename Template

(See [About custom file naming](#) on page 657)

Type the file name format for the output files.

Controlfile Filename Template

If outputting to a format which requires a control (master) file, type the file name format for the control file.

Use Full Spot Color Names

Select this check box if you want to use the spot color names in the output file names (instead of numbers which are derived from the spot color order).

Note: To use this check box, you must include the `%color%` tag in the **Filename Template**.

PrintConsole Session Naming

Custom session naming

Information not yet available.

File Format section of the Imposition Output process template

This process template section identifies the format and compression settings of the output files during imposition output.

Include Images as

If printing to PDF, select **Original** to output the original images in the output file.

Select **Low Resolution** to output low-resolution versions of the images in the output file.

Compression

(See [About outputting to a file](#) on page 661)

The compression options that are available vary depending on the output format selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template. The following compression options are available:

- **None**—Select if you do not want to compress files
- **CCITTG3**—Not available if outputting to a non-screened format
- **CCITTG4**—Not available if outputting to a non-screened format
- **LZW**
- **RLE**
- **ZIP**—Select if you use Kodak Staccato screening software

Note: Compression methods **CCITTG3** and **CCITTG4** are unavailable if the **Always use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box is selected in the **Render** section of the process template or if any Staccato screening system is selected in the **Screen System** box in the **Calibration & Screening** section.

Quality

The quality control option is available only if the **Output To** list is set to **JPEG**.

Prinergy provides five JPEG compression quality options ranging from **maximum** quality (the least compression and the

smallest loss of data) to **minimum** quality (the most compression and the greatest loss of data).

- **Maximum**
- **High**
- **Medium**
- **Low**
- **Minimum**

The lower the quality of JPEG compression, the smaller the file size, but the greater the chance of noticeable blockiness in certain areas of the image. You should experiment with JPEG compression levels to see what amount of image degradation is acceptable for your purposes.

Advanced TIFF Tags

(See [About advanced TIFF tags](#) on page 650)

Select to add advanced TIFF tags to output files.

Note: Unless you are outputting to Virtual Proofing System 2.0 or Copydot Toolkit software, we do not recommend selecting this option because some devices that do not recognize advanced TIFF tags may reject the entire file.

Available when a TIFF or Virtual Proofing System format is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Use Custom TIFF Title Tag

Select the check box and type a custom name in the box to create custom title tags in the TIFF file. This feature replaces the need to manually edit the TIFF file.

Use this feature when sending Virtual Proofing System files through Digital Blueline to merge separations from different signatures.

Note: In the box, you can include variables such as %job% and %signature%.

DCS File Format

Select **Single File** to generate one pre-separated DCS file—that is, one file that contains all the pre-separated colors. The file name will be, for example: <PDF filename>.p00n.eps.

Select **Multiple Files** to generate a DCS file set—that is, one file for each color separation, plus a master file for the set. The file names will be, for example:

<PDF filename>.p00n.dcs.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.C.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.M.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.Y.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.K.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.1.eps

Available when **DCS** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

EPS Data

Select the encoding method to use for EPS data.

Available when **EPS Raster** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

DCS Data

Select the encoding method to be used for DCS output.

Available when **DCS** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

EPS Compression

Select the compression method to use for EPS output, or **None** if you do not want to compress EPS files.

Available when **EPS Raster** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

DCS Compression

Select the compression method to be used for DCS output, or select **None** if you do not want to compress the DCS file.

Available when **DCS** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Add TIFF Preview to DCS Master File

Select to add a preview file to the master file for a DCS-2 multiple file set. You can view the preview file in software such as Preps and QuarkXPress.

Specify a resolution for the preview file in the **at Resolution** box.

Available in the Loose Page Output and Imposition Output process templates when **EPS vector** or **DCS** (raster or vector) is selected in the **Output To** list. Available in the Final Output process template when **DCS raster** is selected in the **Output To** list.

Always use custom Large TIFF format

This check box is available only when the file output type is set to **TIFF**. By default, this option is disabled.

Select this check box to create a JDF file that links multiple large TIFF files (less than 4 GB). This set of files represents a single plate.

Document Format

Select **Multi Page** to generate one output file for the entire range of selected surfaces or **Single Page** to generate one file for each surface.

Available in the Loose Page Output and Imposition Output process templates when a vector output (except DCS) is selected in the **Output To** list. Available in the Final Output process template when **PS3 (PostScriptOut)** is selected in the **Output To** list.

Single Page is not recommended for digital printers.

Vector Output Options

Output Format

Select **Composite** or **Separated** output. The selection determines whether or not conversion is required based on the input file format. Select **Automatic** to generate files in the same format (composite or separated) as the input files.

Note: Separated PDF/X-1a:2001 and composite DCS-2 are not supported.

Note: Spot color handling (omission, mapping, and converting) in the Color Separations dialog box is not supported for composite vector output.

Note: The **Automatic** option is available when vector output (except DCS) is selected from the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Render Shadings

Select to render PostScript 3 vector objects with Level 3 smooth shades to produce rasterized contone objects in order to meet the PostScript Level 2 standard. Target workflows may process rasterized objects faster than vector ones, but there may be some quality degradation for subtle shadings that extend over long distances.

Specify a resolution for the rendered shadings in the **at Resolution** box.

Available when **DCS**, **PS2**, **PS3**, or **PDF** is selected in the **Output To** list.

Font Outlining

Select to replace all text objects with vector objects in output pages.

This is available to DCS, PDF, and separated PostScript vector output formats. It is useful for eliminating font formats that certain RIPs may not be able to process. Text output in this way cannot be edited and when previewed in Adobe Acrobat, will look bolder than the original text due to loss of font hinting for low-resolution monitors.

Delete Traps

Select to remove any Prinergy-generated traps from PDF, PostScript Level 2, and DCS-2 output files.

Trapping-generated overprints remain in the files.

Apply Geometry

Select to apply geometry settings to PDF, PostScript Level 2, and DCS-2 output files.

You can set the geometry for a page (offset scale, orientation) in the Set Page Geometry dialog box.

If this check box is selected, the geometry is applied to the output file. To access the Set Page Geometry dialog box, from the **Edit** menu, select **Set Page Geometry**.

Simulate overprints (CMYK only)

Select to replace overprint intersections with an opaque object.

This creates a page that maintains its integrity on output, even if a downstream publisher or printer configures their workflow to override overprints.

Preserve PDF Layers

Applies to the Layered PDF Versioning feature. For more information, see the Layered PDF Versioning user guide.

Send PostScript duplexing commands

Select to print on both sides of the media. Assuming a portrait sheet orientation, select **Turn** print pages side to side by flipping on the long edge. Select **Tumble** to print both sides by flipping on the short edge.

This option simply adds the duplex command to the PostScript output. The consuming device may not support this command.

Create Preflight Report, If Available

Select this option to create a preflight report, if you already have a preflight profile set up and you have set the options on the Refine process template, PDF Preflight panel.

Output Intent

Use this area to specify an ICC profile or named print condition in the Output Intents section of the PDF/X file that you are generating.

A named print condition is a documented printing situation with a defined relationship between input data and the colorimetry of the printed image. Typically, named print conditions are registered with an organization such as the ICC.

Perform one of the following actions:

- To specify an ICC profile, select the **Profile** check box, and specify the path of a profile.
- To specify a named print condition, select the **Name** check box, and select a print condition from the list.
- To use the ICC profile specified in the **ColorConvert** section for PDF/X generation, click the **Use ColorConvert Destination profile** check box.

Note: Match Colors in Page Content in the **ColorConvert** section must be selected.

This area is available only when a **PDF/X** format is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Device section of the Imposition Output process template

This process template section identifies device-related parameters for the output during imposition output.

Output Type

Select **Absolute File or Printer** to enter the path for a specific network device or file location.

Select **Job-Relative File** to enter a path that is relative to the location of the job folder.

Note: The default is **Job-relative file** and the **Device Path** box default is %JOB%.

Typing a path for a network device in the **Device Path** box automatically sets the **Output Type** to **Absolute File or Printer**.

Submit as Multiple Print Jobs

Select to submit a separate job for each surface that is output.

Available when **Absolute File or Printer** is selected as the **Output Type** or when the **Delta** option in the **Render** section is enabled.

Device Path

The default setting depends on the value selected as the **Output Type**.

- If **Output Type** is **Absolute File or Printer**, the default is **Clear**. Type the name of a Windows NT network output device using the UNC (Universal Naming Convention) path. Or you can click **Browse** to select a file location.
- If **Output Type** is **Job-Relative File**, the default is **%JOB %Proofs**. The default value places the output in the **Proofs** folder of the job that creates the process. You can change the **Proofs** folder to any subfolder found in a job folder.

You can also include the following marks in the Device Path box:

- \$[jobname;n]
- \$[ProcessPlanName;n]
- \$[ImpPlanName;n]

Note: Replace the n in the marks name with a number between one and 99 to specify how many characters from the associated mark to include in the mark. For example, %JOB%Proofs\[jobname;6] for **MyJobName** becomes %JOB%Proofs\MyJobN.

Output Blank Surfaces for Duplexing and Collating

Select when you want to output an imposition that is supposed to have blank surfaces, that is, surfaces with no separations; so that duplexing or collating will be correct.

Mirror Print

Select to output media with the emulsion side down.

Negative Print

Select to output a negative image.

Cut Media

Select when you want the device to automatically cut the media.

Available when a device with a media cutting system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Load Media

Select when you want the device to automatically load the media.

Available when a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Unload Media

Select when you want the device to automatically unload media.

Available when a format for a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Manually

Select when you want the device to prompt the operator to load the device manually.

Available when a format for a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Media Unload Mode

Select the mode for unloading media.

Available when a format for a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list. See your device's documentation for more information.

HPRTL Device

If you have a Hewlett-Packard device, select **HP**.

If you have the Iris 43WIDE device, select **Iris/Mutoh**.

HPRTL is a raster file format developed by Hewlett-Packard and used by a number of device manufacturers.

Available when HPRTL is selected in the **Output To** list.

Proofer Name

Dynamically lists all of the proofers discovered on the network. Type or select the name of the particular proofer to which you want to send the proof.

The name may include both the proofing controller's name and the proofer name in a ControllerName/ProoferName format.

Available when **Veris/Matchprint Inkjet** is selected in the **Output To** list. For more information about proofers, see the proofer documentation.

Proofer Model

A read-only box that describes the type of proofer selected in the **Proofer Name** list.

Number of Proofs

Type the number of copies that you want printed.

This box applies only when **Output To** is set to **Veris/MatchPrint Inkjet**.

Include JDF for Digital Print section of the Imposition Output process template

Enable this section if you are generating to a digital printer.

When this check box is selected:

- Prinergy merges all of the generated signatures and surfaces into a single file before sending to the digital printer.

If this check box is cleared, Prinergy sends each individual surface or signature to the printer as a separate file.

- You can use a JDF file to communicate with the digital printer.

The **Include JDF for Digital Print** section is available only when the **Output To** list is set to a PDF type, including either **PDF (Vector output)**, **PDF Raster**, or **TIFF**.

Job Settings

Number of Copies

Type the number of copies to be printed.

Job Name

(See [About custom file naming](#) on page 657)

Determines the job name that is sent from Prinergy to the digital printer using standard Prinergy placeholders. The default **%job%** displays the job name as specified in Prinergy.

Device Selection

Select a Device Type

From the **Select a Device Type** list, select a digital printer controller.

The selection you make affects the options that are available in the **Select JDF Templates, Media Selection, Media Handling,** and **Device Specific Settings.**

Send Files to Printer using

Select **Network Copy** or **HTTP Protocol** to determine how the content file is referenced in the JDF file that is copied to the hot folder on the digital printer.

PDF Path

Type the path to the folder where Prinergy creates the PDF for the printer to output. You can also click **Browse** and locate the folder.

If you are sending these files to a hot folder, this path must not be the one specified in the **JDF Path** box. The JDF specification requires that only the JDF files be dropped into a JDF-enabled hot folder.

PDF File Name

(See [About custom file naming](#) on page 657)

Type the file name of the PDF file that Prinergy generates. Use standard Prinergy placeholders, such as %JOBNAME%.
%extension%.

JDF Path

Type the path to the folder where Prinergy will create the JDF file. You can also click **Browse** and locate the folder.

If you are sending files to a hot folder, this path must be the hot folder for the digital printer. It cannot be the same folder specified in the **PDF Path** box. The JDF specification requires that only the JDF files be dropped into a JDF-enabled hot folder.

JDF File Name

(See [About custom file naming](#) on page 657)

Type the file name of the JDF file that Prinergy generates. Use standard Prinergy placeholders, such as %JOBNAME%.jdf.

Select JDF Templates

Select Named Features

Use this field only as instructed by the *Prinerger Digital Print Installation and Configuration Guide*.

If necessary, enter JDF parameters for Prinerger to send in the JDF file to the digital print controller. Typically, these parameters are specific to the digital print controller. Not all digital print controllers require or support this option. The parameters are not visible in Prinerger.

Select JDF File

Click the **Browse** button to locate the appropriate template. If you do not specify a template, the default template is used.

Media Selection

Use Default Media Selection

Select this option to use the default options displayed. Otherwise, click **Use Selected Media** to customize the settings.

Use Selected Media

Select this option to customize weight, size, and other aspects of the media.

Weight

Type the weight of the paper stock that the job is to be printed on. If the paper set on the printer has a range of weights (e.g. 81-105 gsm), any number within that range matches.

Color

Select the color of the paper stock that the job is to be printed on.

If you select **None**, Prinerger does not send color information to the digital printer.

Coatings

Select a coating such as **Glossy** or **Satin** to indicate that the paper stock is coated, or select **None** to indicate that the paper stock is uncoated.

Size

Select the size of the paper stock that the job is to be printed on. Choose from:

- **Letter, Legal, A4**, and other standard paper sizes.

If you select one of these sizes, you can use the Width and Height boxes to modify the default measurements of the paper.

- **Automatic**—The size is set to the size of the pages or surfaces.
- **None**—The size is set to the size of the default paper defined by the printer queue.
- **Custom**—Use the Width and Height boxes to specify the measurements.

This option affects only the paper size that the digital printer uses. It does not affect the PDF that Prinergy sends to the digital printer. To change the size of the PDF sent by Prinergy, use the **Layout** section of the Imposition Output process template.

Typically the paper size matches the size of the page or surface. If the paper size does not match the page or surface size, most digital printers can scale, center, shift, and impose the PDFs onto the paper.

Width

Type the width of the paper stock that the job is to be printed on. If the paper set on the printer has a range of widths, any number within that range matches.

Height

Type the height of the paper stock that the job is to be printed on. If the paper set on the printer has a range of heights, any number within that range matches.

Media Handling

Use Default Media Handling

Select this option to use the default options displayed. Otherwise, click **Use Selected Media Handling** to customize the settings.

Use Selected Media Handling

Select this option to customize duplexing and collation settings.

Duplexing

Select an item that controls whether the printer prints on both sides of the paper. Choose from:

- **SingleSided**—Print only on one side of the paper.
- **Turn**—Print two-sided head-to-head (flip on the paper's long side or the Y-axis of the paper in portrait orientation)
- **Tumble**—Print two-sided head-to-toe (flip on the paper's short side or X-axis of the paper in landscape orientation)

Collation

Select either **Sheet** or **None** to control whether the printer collates the output.

Device Specific Settings

Device Name

Type the name of the digital printer or the print server. For example, type `Spire01`.

Queue

Type the name of the print queue. For example, type `ProcessStore`.

Device Type

Type the type and version of the digital printer to assist Xerox FreeFlow Print Manager in translating the JDF. For example, type `DC8000_SPIRE1.0`.

Protocol

Type the name of the print protocol that the digital printer uses. Xerox FreeFlow Print Manager translates the JDF into this print protocol. For example, type `SPIREPR`.

Job Spec

Type the name of a pre-defined workflow.

This box applies only when you have selected an HP device.

Marks section in the imposition output process template

This process template section determines how marks are handled during imposition output.

Sheet Marks

Identify the name and location of a PDF file containing sheet marks (for example variable marks, logo, and signoff line). Click **Browse** to locate and select a file.

Calibrate

When this check box is selected, the plate curve and print curve are applied to the mark. The curves applied are the ones selected in the **Plate Curve** list and **Print Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template. When this check box is cleared, only the plate curve is applied. To prevent the application of the plate curve to a mark, select **%None%** in the **Plate Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template.

Locate Sheet Marks Adjacent to

(See [Sheet marks options explained](#) on page 695 and [Sheet marks on final output](#) on page 691.)

Select **Left**, **Right**, **Bottom**, or **Top** to determine on which edge of the paper or plate a sheet mark is placed.

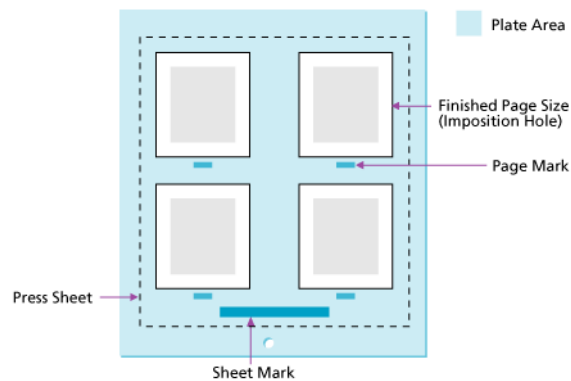
The default setting is **Bottom**.

at Distance

(See [Calculating the at distance value on final output](#) on page 692.)

Determines where, relative to the edge, the mark is placed:

- Sheet marks are placed relative to the plate edge. Depending on the distance you type, you can place the sheet mark on the press sheet or on the plate.
- Page marks are placed relative to the finished page size (the imposition hole).



Justified

Select **Left**, **Center**, or **Right** to determine the justification for the sheet mark.

The default value is **Center**.

Draw Trim and Bleed Marks

Determines where, in relation to each page, trim and bleed marks should be placed. Trim and bleed marks are created in registration color and are 0.25 points in weight. Bleed marks are solid lines; trim marks are dashed lines. Trim marks are drawn according to the option selected:

None

Trim and bleed marks are not drawn.

On Content

Trim and bleed marks are drawn on the content (complete trim marks are drawn on the proof).

Outside Content

Trim and bleed marks do not extend to the content (only the four corners appear on the proof).

Note: In order to print bleed lines on loose page output, the page must be assigned to a page set that is linked to an imposition plan. The bleed lines are taken from the imposition plan.

Safe Protect Box

The safe protect box enables you to print proofing lines within the trim box (or media box) on a proof to check that the page content is within the page margins. The safe protect box is drawn on the proof inside the trim or media box.

This feature is available in the loose page output and imposition output process templates when the **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks** option is set to **On Content** or **Outside Content**.

Note: If you select **Output To Virtual Proof**, you can select the **Safe Protect Box** check box even if you select **None** for **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks**. In this case, you can view the safe protect box in the Virtual Proofing System software. The safe protect box is not printed on the proof.

Select the **Safe Protect Box** check box and in each of the **Left**, **Right**, **Top**, and **Bottom** boxes, type the distance from the trim or media box that you want the safe protect lines to appear. You can type different numbers in each of the four sides.

When calculating where to place the safe protect lines, note that Prinergy measures from various starting points as shown in the following table.

| Proof | Safe protect box is measured from this location |
|------------|---|
| Imposition | The imposition hole trim box |

| | |
|------------|---|
| Loose page | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The PDF page trim box—if the PDF page includes trim • The PDF page media box—if the PDF page does not include trim <p>If a PDF page includes trim, it appears in the Trim Size column in the Pages pane of the Pages view.</p> <p>Note: If the PDF page does not include trim, you can define it using the Prinergy Geometry Editor plug-in for Adobe Acrobat. After the trim is defined, refine the page again.</p> |
|------------|---|

The lines of the safe protect box are drawn according to the option selected for trim and bleed marks:

- If you selected **Outside Content**, only the four corners of the safe protect box appear on the proof.
- If you selected **On Content**, the complete box is drawn on the proof.

Note: If you entered information for **Trim Adjustment**, the **Safe Protect Box** dimensions are calculated based on the **Trim Adjustment** dimensions.

Trim Adjustment

If you are using pages that have no trim or an incorrect trim box, in the **Trim Adjustment** area, type the distance from the edge of the page that you want trim lines to appear in each of the **Left**, **Right**, **Top**, and **Bottom** boxes.

You can type different numbers in each of the four sides.

Trim Adjustment is available only when you select **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks**, and **On Content** or **Outside Content**.

Note: If you enter information for **Trim Adjustment**, the **Safe Protect Box** dimensions are calculated based on the **Trim Adjustment** dimensions.

Locate Crop Mark of Length

Available if **On Content** or **Outside Content** is selected in the **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks** box.

Determines the length of the crop marks to be drawn, in the selected unit of measure.

The **at Distance** box determines how far away from content to draw the crop mark.

at Distance

Available when **On Content** or **Outside Content** is selected in the **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks** box.

Determines how far away from content to draw the crop mark.

Unit Used for Variable Marks

Select the unit you want to use to measure variable marks—inch, cm (centimeter), mm (millimeter), or pts (points).

Imposition Marks Calibration

Select one of the following options to determine how imposition marks are calibrated.

Calibrate

The plate curve and print curve are applied to the imposition mark. The curves applied are the ones selected in the **Plate and Print Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template.

Do Not Calibrate

Only the plate curve is applied.

Honor Calibration in Imposition

The plate and print curves are applied in a similar manner, according to whether calibration for the mark is enabled or disabled in the imposition software. To prevent the application of the plate curve to a mark, select **%%None%%** in the **Plate Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template. This applies to Preps 5.2 and later; however, Preps 6.0 and later is required in order to edit Prinergy impositions.

Show Press Sheet/Show Plate Edge

Select one or both check boxes to show the location of the press sheet from the plate edge on imposed proofs. The defaults are set to OFF.

Default Marks Font

Prinergy can populate variable marks with double-byte characters such as those used for the Japanese, Chinese, and Korean languages.

Here's an example of how you could use the feature:

1. Create a Preps imposition file that includes a variable mark, such as \$ [PageName].
2. In Prinergy, in the **Default Marks Font** box in the **Marks** section of the imposition output process template, type the exact name of the double-byte font that can be used in case

the variable mark's original font was not a double-byte font. The font must reside either in a Prinergy-aware font folder or in the job's font search path.

3. Submit the imposition file to Prinergy.

If the imposition file contains a page name with double-byte fonts, Prinergy outputs the file with these characters.

Slugline

A slugline mark is a text or variable mark that you place on loose page, imposition, or final output. Instead of using **Sheet Marks** or **Page Marks**, you can use **Slugline** to quickly place a slugline mark.

A slugline mark does not need a PDF file, so you can easily place a mark without creating a PDF file. However, a slugline mark is just a line of text or a variable mark. You can only specify the text size.

- In the **Slugline mark** box, type the text or variable mark.
- In the **Text size** box, type the font size for the mark.
- In **Place on media**, specify the distance **from left** and **from bottom**.

Note: If you are using a variable mark in your slugline, the `_offset` and `_replace` parameters, and any page-oriented variables parameters, are not currently supported.

Generating final output

Follow the instructions in Starting a Process and choose a final output process template.

Tip:

- Before making plates or film, prepare imposition output and, optionally, approve all proofs.
- Select signatures in the **Signatures** view.

See also:

[Selecting items in Job Manager](#) on page [30](#)

[Starting processes](#) on page [171](#)

[Final Output process template](#) on page [544](#)

Final Output process template

At the top of the dialog box is the **Output To** list, which you use to select the file format suitable for the output device you select in the **Device** section. The file format selection determines the availability of some options in the process template. For this reason, you should select an output format before you set the other options in the process template.

Copydot section of the Final Output process template

This process template section defines how Prinergy handles copydot files during final output.

When you enable the **Copydot** section, the system automatically converts copydot images for optimal quality on your output device during output. Only disable the **Copydot** section for one or more of the following reasons:

- Your pages lack copydot images.
- You are outputting at your target device resolution.

JTP

Select a job ticket processor (JTP) to use for copydot files.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Resample

Enables resampling of copydot files to the resolution required by the output device. The availability of this option is controlled by the device you select in the **Output To** list at the top of the final output process template dialog box.

Select the **Resample** check box to enable resampling of copydot files. Prinergy resamples copydot files to the resolution required by the output device you select in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Clear the **Resample** check box to disable resampling.

Note: You can resample copydot images during another step in the process—refine, loose page output, or final output.

Descreen

Enables descreening of copydot files for contone output devices. The availability of this option is controlled by the device you select in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template. This option becomes available only for 8-bit final output devices.

Select the **Descreen** check box to enable descreening.

Clear the **Descreen** check box to disable descreening.

Calibration Curve

Specifies a calibration curve from Harmony tonal calibration software for the copydot files.

From the **Calibration Curve** box, select the calibration curve you want Prinergy to use for copydot files.

Select **%%NONE%%** to disable this feature.

ColorFlow section of the final output process template

The **ColorFlow** section of the final output process template defines how Prinergy applies ColorFlow settings during final output.

When you configure the ColorFlow settings in an output process template, you select the device, device condition, and plate line, but not a color setup. The color setup used is the one that was assigned to the pages when they were refined—that is, either the color setup specified in the refine process template that was used or the job's default color setup. The color setup that is used during output processing is the color setup specified for each page in the **Color Setup** column in the **Pages** pane.



WARNING: Output will fail if the color setup does not match the color setup assigned during refine, unless the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** option is enabled.

It is possible to select from four modes for output to halftone devices or files. These modes control the curves that are applied upon output.

Print Production

This halftone output mode reflects the standard operation of Prinergy and ColorFlow for production. When this option is selected, curves are applied to each output separation, as described next:

- The *print calibration curve* for the separation, determined by the selections from the **Snapshot**, **Device**, and **Device Condition** lists, and possibly modified at run time by the settings in the Tonal Control dialog box, is applied to separation input tints.
- The *plate calibration curve*, determined by the selections from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, is applied to the separation tints modified by the print calibration curve.

Note: If **None** is selected from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, the plate calibration curve is linear (has no effect).

This option is not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Print Characterization

This halftone output mode is used to print and measure the response of a print device. When this option is selected, curves are applied to each output separation as follows:

- The *device curve* for the separation, determined by the selections from the **Snapshot**, **Device**, and **Device Condition** lists, with no modifications from the Tonal Control dialog box, is applied to separation input tints.
- The *plate calibration curve*, determined by the selections from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, is applied to the separation tints modified by the print calibration curve.

Note: If **None** is selected from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, the plate calibration curve is linear (has no effect).

When this option is selected, the **Device** list contains all curved print devices in the selected snapshot, and the **Device Condition** list contains all ColorFlow device conditions in the selected snapshot that use the selected device. If the selected device condition uses a plate setup, the **Plate Setup** list displays this plate setup, and the **Plate Line** list contains all ColorFlow plate lines controlled by the plate setup in the selected snapshot.

When this option is selected, the **Color Setup** list is not available.

This option is not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Plate Verification

This halftone output mode is used to verify the linear response of plates produced by a particular plate line (consisting of the computer-to-plate device, plate processor setup, and chemistry), with a selected screening system. When this option is selected, the following results occur:

- Only the *plate calibration curve*, determined by the selections from the **Plate Setup** and **Plate Line** lists, is applied to input tints of all separations.
- No print calibration curve is applied.

When this option is selected, the **Plate Setup** list contains all ColorFlow plate setups in the selected snapshot, and the **Plate**

Line list contains all ColorFlow plate lines controlled by the selected plate setup in the selected snapshot.

When this option is selected, the **Color Setup, Device,** and **Device Condition** lists are not available.

This option is not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Plate Characterization

This halftone output mode supports imaging and measuring the uncalibrated (or intrinsic) response of a plating line, such that a plate linearization curve can be computed. When this option is selected, no calibration curves are applied to input tints of any separations.

When this option is selected, none of the lists in the **ColorFlow** section are available.

This option is not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch

This check box enables the job to run when the selected color setup differs from the color setup assigned by the refine process, or if the color setup has not been defined. Note that when this feature is enabled, output could be significantly different.

To use this feature, it is recommended to select an approved color setup listed in the snapshot or by ID number. This will ensure that the list of devices and device conditions are filtered to include only those available in the selected color setup. Then, the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** check box can be selected and output will succeed with a warning message.

To output refined pages with no color setup assigned to them, you can select the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** setting.

The list of devices and device conditions is unfiltered when **<Job_Color_Setup>** is selected. Note that this may cause output to fail, if the device and device condition selected are not in the job color setup. A message will be logged in the process history, and you will need to either select a device and device condition used in the job color setup or use the recommended solution, as described above.

When **<Color_Setup_Assigned_by_Refine>** is selected, the list of devices and device conditions is also unfiltered, and the

Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch check box is grayed out and cannot be used. Note that this is the default color setup setting for all process templates that were upgraded from Prinergy Connect 5.1.

Snapshot

A ColorFlow snapshot captures the state of the entire color database, making its elements available to the workflow and providing a convenient backup. The snapshot feature makes it unnecessary for you to manually save and name multiple versions of your color control elements after adjusting them. At any time, you can easily roll back (revert) to the state of a previous snapshot in the ColorFlow software. If you roll back to a previous snapshot, ColorFlow behaves as if changes after that snapshot never happened.

When you have completed your work in ColorFlow to a certain level and you are satisfied with the elements in color setups, you will mark a snapshot as *approved*. By default in Prinergy Connect, the currently approved snapshot is used. Only one snapshot can be in the approved state at any time.

This list is not available if the **Plate Characterization** option is selected.

Color Setup

This list displays the names of all color setups in the selected snapshot. At the top of the list is **Color setups assigned by Refine**, followed by **Job color setup**.

This list is available only if the **Print Production** mode is selected.

Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch

This check box enables the job to run when the selected color setup differs from the color setup assigned by the refine process, or if the color setup has not been defined. Note that when this feature is enabled, output could be significantly different.

To use this feature, it is recommended to select an approved color setup listed in the snapshot or by ID number. This will ensure that the list of devices and device conditions are filtered to include only those available in the selected color setup. Then, the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** check box can be selected and output will succeed with a warning message.

To output refined pages with no color setup assigned to them, you can select the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** setting.

The list of devices and device conditions is unfiltered when **<Job_Color_Setup>** is selected. Note that this may cause output to fail, if the device and device condition selected are not in the job color setup. A message will be logged in the process history, and you will need to either select a device and device condition used in the job color setup or use the recommended solution, as described above.

When **<Color_Setup_Assigned_by_Refine>** is selected, the list of devices and device conditions is also unfiltered, and the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** check box is grayed out and cannot be used. Note that this is the default color setup setting for all process templates that were upgraded from Prinergy Connect 5.1.

Device

An individual occurrence of a physical device that captures or produces an image. Devices have a type and customer-specified properties, such as a name and location in the plant. Because the declaration of a device does not include its operating conditions—such as ink selection, type of screening, and paper—you cannot measure the color response of a device on its own.

When a process template is configured for halftone (screened) output processes, this list displays the names of all curved devices used in PCO (primary color output) or SCO (secondary color output) device conditions in the selected color setup and snapshot. Curved print devices are those with the following device types:

- Offset press—for example, sheetfed, heatset web, coldset web
- Digital press—for example, Versamark
- Digital halftone proofer—for example, Kodak Approval, Trendsetter Spectrum

When a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output, this list displays the names of all non-curved devices used in PCO or SCO device conditions in the selected color setup and snapshot. Non-curved devices are those with the following device types:

- Digital press—for example, Nexpress
- Inkjet proofer—for example, Matchprint Inkjet, Kodak Veris
- CMYK reference

This list is not available if the **Plate Verification** or **Plate Characterization** option is selected.

Device Condition

A combination of a device and the operating conditions in which the device captures or produces an image. A device condition has a known color response. Device conditions can be divided into groups such as print conditions (press and proofer devices), capture conditions (scanner and camera devices), and reference print conditions (industry specifications). A device condition can include more than one device. If all the devices are the same device type, they use the same consumables and operational settings, and they can be calibrated to yield the same color response.

When a specific color setup is selected, this list contains all ColorFlow device conditions that use the selected device and are used in the PCO or an SCO of the selected color setup and snapshot.

This list is not available if the **Plate Verification** or **Plate Characterization** option is selected.

Plate Setup

If the selected device condition uses a plate setup in the selected snapshot, this plate setup is displayed here. Otherwise, this list displays **None**.

This list is not available if the **Plate Characterization** option is selected. It is also not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

Plate Line

You establish the behavior of a particular plate, screening, and plating line by plating a tint ramp, manually measuring the resulting dot area on the plate, and entering the values in the Plate Setups dialog box in the ColorFlow software.

A ColorFlow plate line is associated with only one plate setup. In your shop, you may use a platesetter and chemistry to process several different screenings. To model this, in ColorFlow, create similar plate lines in the other plate setups. You can name them to match the equipment in your plant. You may want to create several plate lines to indicate when chemistry changes occur. For example, if you routinely change

solutions on Mondays, you might create different ColorFlow plate lines for Monday, Wednesday, and Friday.

If the **Plate Setup** list displays a plate setup, the **Plate Line** list contains all ColorFlow plate lines controlled by the plate setup in the selected snapshot. If the **Plate Setup** list displays **None**, the **Plate Line** list also displays **None**.

This list is not available if the **Plate Characterization** option is selected. It is also not available when a process template is configured for continuous-tone (non-screened) output.

ColorConvert section of the Final Output process template

This process template section defines how Prinergy handles color converting during final output.

This section is useful if:

- The device that is actually used for final output is different than the final output device that was identified during the refine or proof process
- **ColorConvert** was not enabled during the refine or proof process. For example, in a late-binding workflow, operators do not alter the original color information in the files until the output stage.

JTP

Select the job ticket processor (JTP) to use for color conversion.

You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Match Colors

Match Colors in Page Content

Enables the Color Matcher to match hues in the page content for proofing. In other words, it enables color matching as it was done in Prinergy 1.1 (as opposed to using the Color Matcher to affect the L*a*b* spot color recipes).

Select this check box to enable this feature; clear the check box to disable this feature.

When you enable this feature, you can set the **Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile** option.

Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile

Select **Exactly as Applied During Refining** to use the same profile that was used during the refine process. If the file was

not color converted during refining, or the profile is missing, an error is displayed.

Select **As Defined Below, if Not Set in Refining** to use the same profile that was used during the refine process, if the file was color converted during refining. If the file was not color converted during refining, the profile defined in the **Input Device Conditions** box will be used.

Select **Exactly as Defined Below** to use the profile selected in the **Input Device Conditions** box.

Input Device Conditions

Available when **Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile** is set to **As Defined Below, if not set in Refining** or **Exactly as Defined Below**.

From the list, select **Browse** to locate the appropriate profile file for final output.

Rendering Intent

Select **Relative Colorimetric** if the proofing paper is similar to the paper that will be used during final output.

Select **Absolute Colorimetric** to simulate the color of the paper that will be used during final output.

Select **PDF** to use the rendering intent specified in the PDF file when output by the creative software during final output.

Select **Perceptual** to use rendering that uses gamut compression and produces less saturated colors during final output.

Select **Saturation** to make sure colors are represented in a way that preserves or emphasizes saturation during final output.

Retain CMYK Black

Preserves black in images and graphics that are defined in CMYK or RGB color space. For ICC-based color matching engines, CMYK images and graphics get transformed from CMYK to L*a*b* and back to CMYK color in order to perform color matching. In going from CMYK (four components) to L*a*b* (three components) and back again, the black (K) channel separation information (UCR/GCR) has in the past been destroyed. Selecting this check box instructs the Color Matcher to preserve the black generation information from the source color space. As a result, the amount of black relative to CMY in the images and graphics stays about the same. The

purpose of this feature is to help preserve the visual weight of images and graphics.

Note: When you enable this feature, Color Matcher requires some additional processing time because of the extra calculations involved.

Overprint Handling (CPU Intensive)

(See [About overprint handling](#) on page 257)

Select to prevent overprinting objects from generating unintended knockouts.

If you are converting spots to process for a proof, or if you are color-matching one CMYK space to another CMYK space for a proof, you probably need to apply overprint handling, even if you applied it during refine.

To use overprint handling, you must:

1. In the **ColorConvert** section, select:
 - The **Color Matcher** JTP
 - The **Match Colors in Page Content** check box
 - The **Overprint Handling** check box
2. Choose between raster and vector overprint handling in the **Methods** list.

Note: The raster option is available only when **Shades=256** is selected in the **Render** section of the process template.

Method

Choose to use vector or raster overprint handling for this output process.

Select **Raster** when outputting to low-resolution contone proofers (for example, Veris digital proofer or Matchprint Inkjet proofer).

Note: To use raster overprint handling, you must select, in the **Render** section of the process template, **Shades=256**.

Additional factors to consider:

- Raster overprint handling can be applied only to continuous tone data
- Raster overprint handling occurs after the RIP
- Raster processing time increases exponentially as the resolution increases
- Raster overprint handling eliminates all overprints

Select **Vector** when outputting to halftone (screen) proofers (for example, the Spectrum device), or to high-resolution contone proofers.

Additional factors to consider:

- Vector overprint handling occurs before the RIP
- Depending on the complexity of the file, vector overprint handling could take longer than raster overprint handling.
- Vector overprint handling does not eliminate all overprints. In objects where overprinting does not have an effect on the output, the objects retain an overprint status. For example, if you set black to overprint, but one black object is not placed on top of another object, this black object is, after overprint handling, still an overprinting object.

Preserve Traps

Select this check box to preserve existing Kodak traps when vector overprint handling is used.

Note: When existing traps are preserved, you cannot remove them in later processing. You must remove the traps in the original file. Traps are color-managed as regular objects.

Process CEPS Data

Select this check box to enable spot color mapping and color matching of CEPS data.

For further information, see the CEPS Conversion Section and the Normalize Section of the Refine Process Template.

Process Marks

Select this check box when you want to apply color management to your marks file. Depending on the type of mark, it may be necessary to enable **Overprint Handling** to appropriately convert the mark and apply the necessary color transformation.

Note: When **Process Marks** is checked, both sheet marks and page marks are color managed.

Color match 1-bit images

Select this check box to color match 1-bit images. One-bit images are images that represent two tones, typically black and white. The pixel is either a 0 or a 1 value. Examples are copydot images.

Note: This feature will convert 1-bit images to 8-bit images. This causes pages to become larger and to render more slowly. Turn off this feature if

you do not require color matching of 1-bit images, or if the feature causes unacceptable performance degradation. (For example, copydot files take a very long time to refine and render.)

This feature is available when **Match Colors in Page Content** is selected.

Process (Destination) Profile

Enables the ICC profile for a proofing device. The ICC profile characterizes the way the proofing device prints.

Enable this feature by selecting a profile in the **Process (Destination) Profile** box. Leave this box blank to disable the feature.

Source of Color Recipes

Extract Recipe from the File

Select to use the color recipes embedded in the file.

Lookup Recipe in Color Database

Select to use the color libraries selected in this process template.

Color Libraries

Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots

Available when a proof output format is selected in the **Output To** list (not available for final output).

If the input files contain overprinted spot colors, the Color Combiner, which is a plug-in to the renderer, combines the layers and outputs the overprinted colors correctly.

When cleared, the renderer handles the conversion of spot colors to process colors if the following conditions exist:

- input files are composite
- all spot colors are set to Opaque in the color database (if the spot color is not in the color database, Opaque is assumed)

If the above conditions are not met, the Color Combiner will be used even if the **Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** is cleared.

Recommended setting: Selected.

This check box appears in both the **Render** section and the **ColorConvert** section. Changing it in one place changes it in the other.

Selectable and Selected

From the **Selectable** list, select the color libraries that you want Prinergy to search for color recipes, and click **Add**.

Arrange the color libraries in the **Selected** box in the order (descending) that you want them to be searched. Use the **Move Up** and **Move Down** buttons.

Note: Ensure that you select color libraries with color spaces that are compatible with the **Final Output Process Profile** box of the **Spot Color Handling** section of the refine process template.

Use Recipe from File if not found in Color Database

Select this check box to use color recipes embedded in the file if Prinergy does not find the colors in the selected color libraries.

Layout section of the Final Output process template

This process template section defines how Prinergy places the pages on the output media during final output.

Media

Paper

This option becomes available when you select Kodak Proofer in the **Output To** list.

Specifies the type of paper you're using in the Kodak proofing device. Select a paper type from the list.

Thickness

This option becomes available when you select an Epson device in the **Output To** list.

Type the thickness of the paper you are using in the **Thickness** box, and then select a unit of measurement.

Media Registration

When using the Kodak Magnus VLF platesetter, select a media registration which is a collection of several registration settings, such as punch and registration camera settings, for your requirements. When you select a media size, a list of compatible registrations becomes available. Setting registration

in Prinergy means that you do not have to set up registration parameters each time you load a plate.

Media registrations, which are set up for specific presses and can apply to a single plate size or a range of plate sizes, are created in Print Console.

Name

Available when a vendor's device has been defined through the Prinergy Administrator. Available options are determined by the device.

Size

Determines the size of the media to which you will output the final files.

Select **Digital** to generate an output file, for example, a file for Virtual Proofing System software. When you select **Digital**, the **Min Width**, **Min Height**, **Max Width**, **Max Height**, and **Layout is 90° Different Than Media** boxes are unavailable.

Select **Cut sheet**, **Roll fed**, or **Roll fed (transverse)**, depending on the media being used.

Min Width

Sets the minimum width for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

Min Height

Sets the minimum height for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

For cut sheet, enter the sheet height. For roll fed, enter the height of the smallest proof you want to make on the device.

Max Width

Sets the maximum width for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

Max Height

Sets the maximum height for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

Duplexing

This option is available for composite files; it is unavailable for separated files.

Specifies the type of duplexing.

From the **Duplexing** box, select **Turn** or **Tumble** to enable this feature. Select **None** to disable duplexing.

Front Shift and Back Shift

The **Front Shift Along Width...Along Height** and **Back Shift Along Width...Along Height** options give finer adjustment when aligning two-sided proofs than with **Center Along Width/Height**. Use these measurements to shift and align front and back pages along their turn or tumble axes, depending on the page or imposition orientation (portrait or landscape).

These options are available only when **Duplexing** has been set to **Turn** or **Tumble**.

You can specify the shift in points, inches, centimeters, or millimeters.

Placement

Orientation

(See [Example: orientation](#) on page 653)

Rotates an entire imposition as a unit.

Select **Auto clockwise** to automatically rotate an image clockwise when rotating would result in a better fit.

Select **Auto counterclockwise** to automatically rotate an image counter-clockwise when rotating would result in a better fit.

Center Along Width

Centers the imposition plan along the horizontal axis of the media.

Center Along Height

Centers the imposition plan along the vertical axis of the media.

Shift Along Width

(See [Example: shifting images horizontally and vertically](#) on page 654)

Available if the **Center Along Width** check box is cleared.

Shifts the imposition plan from the left edge of the media along the horizontal axis.

Shift Along Height

(See [Example: shifting images horizontally and vertically](#) on page 654)

Available if the **Center Along Height** check box is cleared.

Shifts the imposition plan from the bottom edge of the media along the vertical axis.

Scale Shift Amounts

Automatically adjusts placement based on scaling.

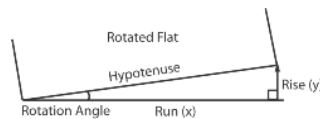
If the **Scale Shift Amounts** check box is cleared, placement is not adjusted when scaling is applied.

By default the **Scale Shift Amounts** check box is selected.

Flat Rotation

Makes a small angle rotation of the flat or output image. Also called plate cocking. Derive the **(0.0)** percentage value, or gradient, in one of two ways:

- Physically measure the first occurrence of a rotation to find the gradient that you can then apply for all jobs that use that rotation
- Convert a given angle into its gradient



To measure for a gradient:

- Formula: $\text{gradient} = \text{rise}/\text{run} \times 100$ where:
- Rise: (y-axis) measure the distance between where the flat's rotating corner started and where it must be moved as a straight line that meets the x-axis at a 90° angle. Example: 2 units
- Run: (x-axis) measure the distance along the x-axis from the non-rotated corner of the flat to the point where the vertical line transects the x-axis at a right angle. Example: 90 units
- Calculation: $2/90 \times 100 = 2.2$
- The maximum percentage value is 3.1.

To convert an angle to a gradient:

- Formula: $\text{gradient} = \text{tangent of the angle of rotation} \times 100$
- Calculation using a scientific calculator and an angle of 0.5° :
- $0.5^\circ + \text{Tan}(\text{gent}) \text{ key} = 0.008 \times 100 = 0.8$
- The maximum angle of rotation is 1.78° .

Note: To convert a gradient to an angle, enter the gradient into the calculator and apply the inverse tangent function. Example: 2.2% is entered as $0.022 + \text{Inv}(\text{erse}) \text{ key} + \text{Tan key} = 1.26^\circ$.

- Indicate whether the rotation is to be **clockwise** or **counterclockwise**.

Note: The process template does not let you select flat rotation and web growth at the same time. However, when web growth is applied, flat rotation can be specified in the web growth profile.

Punch Setting

Available when a format for an imagesetter that has an automatic punching system (for example, Herkules) is selected in the **Output To** list.

Select a punch type. For more information about punch types, see your device documentation.

Scaling

Scale Vector

Applies scaling to the layout prior to screening the file. The scaling is based on vector data (PDF data).

Apply Scaling from Layout

Select to use the scaling specified in the original layout application, for example, Pandora.

Note: This feature is not compatible with Preps.

Custom

Enter scaling percentages for the **Along Width** and **Along Height** directions.

Fit to Media Size

If the specified layout produces an image too large for the media, the image is scaled to fit.

You cannot see the scaling percentage. Select this check box only when a proof scaled to an unspecified reduction is acceptable.

Non-Printable Margin

If the **Fit to Media Size** option was selected, you can identify the non-printable margins that should be taken into account when determining scaled layouts.

Specify left, right, top, and bottom non-printable margins appropriate to the output device and media, in the selected unit of measure.

Scale Raster

Applies raster scaling to the layout. Raster scaling is an optional feature that will allow you to apply distortion after the files are screened.

Raster scaling is recommended for prescreened files (copydot) or files that contain 1-bit TIFF images, since the prescreened bitmap data cannot be properly scaled with vector scaling (could generate artifacts).

Clear this check box to disable this feature.

Apply Scaling from Layout

Select to use the scaling specified in the original layout application, for example, Pandora.

Note: This feature is not compatible with Preps.

Custom

Enter scaling percentages for the **Along Width** and **Along Height** directions.

Assign Web Growth Profile, if Available

(See [Example: web growth profile](#) on page 730 and [Applying and removing a web growth profile](#) on page 739)

Enables the system to digitally compensate for distortion on press using a web growth profile file (<file name>.wgp) and a tower color file (**ColorTowerMap.txt**).

Web growth scaling can be used in situations where each plate must be scaled by a different (or identical) factor.

Select the **Use Web Growth Profile** option to enable this feature. Then do one of the following:

- Select **Use profiles assigned in Job Manager only**. If a profile is not assigned in Job Manager, no web growth profile will be applied.
- Select **Default Profile** and either type or browse to select a profile that will be used for all sheets when this process template is used.

Note: Web growth profiles can be assigned in Job Manager or in Process Template Editor. If a web growth profile is specified for a job in Job Manager, this overrides any web growth profile that is assigned here, unless you also select the **Override profiles assigned in Job Manager** check box.

- Select **Assign Profile to Sheet** to select a profile for each individual sheet. This feature is useful when, for example, you need different profiles for the left and right webs of a

multi-web run. A "sheet" in the **Assign Profile to Sheet list box** refers to two surfaces printed on two sides of the same substrate. For example, a multi-web layout consisting of a single signature with two webs would map Sheet 1 to Signature 1 sides A and B, and map Sheet 2 to Signature 1 sides C and D. If there were a second signature, then Sheet 3 would map to Signature 2 sides A and B, and Sheet 4 would map to Signature 2 sides C and D.

Note: If a web growth profile is specified for a job in Job Manager, this overrides any web growth profiles that are assigned here, unless you also select the **Override profiles assigned in Job Manager** check box.

Render section of the Final Output process template

This process template section determines the output resolution and how the system handles spot colors during final output.

JTP

Select the job ticket processor (JTP) to use for rendering.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Device Resolutions

This list is available when an output device format is selected in the **Output To** list.

Select a resolution for the selected device in the list.

Resolution X

Available when the **Device Resolutions** box is unavailable.

Type a resolution value.

Resolution Y

Available when the **Device Resolutions** box is unavailable and mixed resolution values are allowed for the output format selected in the **Output To** list.

Type a resolution value.

Color Model

Select the process color model to use for output.

The list of values varies, depending on the output format selected in the **Output To** list.

Shades

To set the number of shades of gray to output, select **1** for screened data or **256** for continuous tone data. When **1** is selected, the **Calibration & Screening** section of the refine process template is available for input.

The list of values varies, depending on the output format selected in the **Output To** list and the color model selected in the **Color Model** list.

Do Separations

Available when the output format selected in the **Output To** list supports separated output and **DeviceCMYK** is selected in the **Color Model** options.

Select if you want Prinergy to output separations. Clear this check box if you want Prinergy to output a single composite file.

Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots

Available when a proof output format is selected in the **Output To** list (not available for final output).

If the input files contain overprinted spot colors, the Color Combiner, which is a plug-in to the renderer, combines the layers and outputs the overprinted colors correctly.

When cleared, the renderer handles the conversion of spot colors to process colors if the following conditions exist:

- input files are composite
- all spot colors are set to Opaque in the color database (if the spot color is not in the color database, Opaque is assumed)

If the above conditions are not met, the Color Combiner will be used even if the **Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** is cleared.

Recommended setting: Selected.

This check box appears in both the **Render** section and the **ColorConvert** section. Changing it in one place changes it in the other.

Anti-Aliasing

Select this check box to enable anti-aliasing, and then in the **at Ratio** list, specify a ratio for anti-aliasing.

Anti-aliasing is a technique of improving the appearance of output by minimizing the "stair step" effect on rasterized output. It does so by rendering to a higher resolution than the

intended output, and then downsampling to the intended output. This generates "averaged" pixels which softens the "stair step" effect on low-resolution output. The ratio value for anti-aliasing refers to the factor used to determine the intermediate resolution. A higher ratio results in higher quality, but can have an effect on output speed. For example, if the output is a 300 DPI 8-bit TIFF, and the anti-alias ratio is 4, Prinergy will render an intermediate output at 1200 DPI (4 x 300 DPI), and then downsample to the user-requested 300 DPI. Anti-aliasing is only available for 8-bit (256 shade) output.

Fail if font problems detected

Select this check box to fail the output process if a file has missing fonts.

Note: This feature is not available for vector outputs (PDF, PS2, PS3, EPS, DCS Vector, PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, CT/LW, and DELTA).

Ignore Embedded Fonts in Marks Files

Select this check box if you want Prinergy to ignore embedded fonts in a marks file and to look for the fonts in the `system fonts` folder.

Important: You must install the fonts in `%ServerName%\%AraxiHome%\AdobeExtreme\bin\fonts`, or the output will fail.

Convert Text to Paths

This check box converts fonts to outlines before a file is RIPed.

This option was added in Prinergy 3.0 when the CPSI 3016 RIP was included with Prinergy. This option helped situations where the 3016 RIP failed to process the fonts on certain jobs.

This option has limited usefulness now, but is included as a potential workaround in rare cases where fonts are not rendered correctly by the RIP. It is not recommended that you enable this on a permanent basis. When using this option for specific jobs, it is recommended that you ensure that both proofs and plates are output with this option.

Note that when you select the **Convert Text to Paths** check box, you will have text appear fatter on low-resolution proof output. You can overcome this appearance problem by either:

- Rendering to a higher resolution, if rendering to 1-bit output, such as Virtual Proofing System
- Using anti-aliasing, if rendering to contone output

Note: This check box is only available for raster output formats (.VPS, .TIFF, and so on).

Calibration and Screening section of the Final Output process template

This process template section provides calibration and screening file information during final output.

These options are available when you select **1** in the **Shades** option, in the **Render** section of the process template.

Calibration

Plate Curve

Select **None** if you do not want to apply plate linearization curves to your output. This option is set to **None** by default.

To apply a plate curve to your output, select the curve in the list.

You must select a plate curve in the Prinergy process template, even when **Print Curve (Calibration)** is set to **Auto**.

Note: Plate curves are always applied to page, sheet, and imposition marks. Select **None** if you do not want curves applied to marks.

Print Curve (Calibration)

Select **None** if you do not want to apply print dot gain compensation curves to your output.

To apply a print calibration curve to your output, select the curve in the list.

Select **Auto** to automatically select the most appropriate curve. Depending on the **Screening Method** selected, the Harmony software determines the curve to use, based on dot shape and screen frequency data from your job or the process template. Harmony looks in the following locations in the process template:

- **Dot Shape** and **Screen Ruling** boxes
- **Screen Frequency** box
- **Harmony Medium** box
- In the **Render** section, the **Device Resolutions** box (or **Resolution X** and **Resolution Y** boxes)

If you assign a calibration curve in the Prinergy DotShop software for use on a mark, you must select the **Keep DotShop**

Settings or **Use Document's Screening, if Present** screening mode.

Note: To control the application of the selected print curve for an individual page, sheet, or imposition mark, select the **Calibrate** check box in the **Marks** section of the process template. This allows you to apply print curves to imposition content without applying print curves to marks.

Harmony Medium

Available when you select **Auto** in the **Print Curve (Calibration)** list, it lists the Harmony media that are defined in your Harmony curve database. If the **Harmony Medium** list is available but the list is empty, no Harmony media are defined. The selected Harmony media is used to identify an appropriate calibration curve.

Select a Harmony media in the list.

Minimum Dot Size

Type the lowest tint percentage, with up to one decimal place, at which dots will be imaged—for example, 10% or 10.5%. This feature is available only if you specified a plate or print curve.

You can use this feature to remove scum dots on flexo plates.

Screening Mode

(See also the topic about document screening in this guide.)

- Select **Override all Screening** to use the screening specified in the process template. This option ignores any screening specified in the source PDF file or the Prinergy DotShop software.
- Select **Keep DotShop Settings** to use the screening specified in the DotShop software, when available. For pages that are not modified in DotShop, the screening specified in the process template is used.
- Select **Use Document's Screening, if Present** to use the screening specified in the source PDF file.

This option also uses the screening specified in DotShop, when available. For pages containing no screening information, the screening specified in the process template is used.

You can use one or more of the **Angles**, **Frequencies**, and **Dot Shapes** settings specified on the page and allow the process template to determine the parameters that you did not specify.

Note: If Prinergy does not support the screen angles in the source PDF file, the nearest supported angle is used.

Note: This option offers the greatest risk of poor results, because screen angles identified in the source PDF file may not be suitable for the output device.

Screen Type and Screen System

(See also the topics about screen types and screen systems.)

Screen Type lists the following default screening information:

- **Maxtone** screen types are based on the Prinergy AM (conventional or rational tangent) screening technology.
 - The **Maxtone CX** screen type is configurable. To configure the size of highlights and shadow dots, type values in the **Dot Width Highlights** and **Shadows** boxes.
 - The **Maxtone NX** screen type is also configurable. To configure the size of highlights and shadow dots, select values from the **Dot Size Highlights** and **Shadows** lists.

Note: It is also possible to select the dot size for the highlights and shadows using DotShop Composer. Maxtone NX works on the entire page, so all objects defined with Maxtone NX must have dots of the same size. If there are multiple dot sizes selected, the output process will fail.

- **Maxtone IS** screen types are used for seamless sleeve and cylinder output device applications. If you select **Maxtone IS**, the resolution set in the **Render** section of the process template must be identical to the resolution in the IS screen system. Most IS screen systems are predefined in the IS screen set and cannot be modified in the process template. For information about defining IS screen sets, see the *Prinergy System Administration Guide*.
To see how items in the list of IS screen systems can be hidden, see the topic about hiding IS screen sets.
- **Maxtone IS CX** screen types are used for seamless sleeve and cylinder output device applications, but they are configurable. If you select **Maxtone IS CX**, the resolution set in the **Render** section of the process template must be identical to the resolution in the IS screen set.
- **Staccato** identifies the Staccato stochastic screening family.
 - The **Staccato NX** screen type is configurable. To configure the size of highlights and shadow dots, type a value in the **Dot Size Highlights > Shadows** box.

Select a screen system for the format selected in the **Output To** list.

Dot Shape

(See also the topic about dot shapes.)

Select a dot shape in the list.

The list of available dot shapes varies, depending on the screen system selected in the **Screen System** list.

Device Resolutions

Displays the values set in the **Resolution X** and **Resolution Y** boxes in the **Render** section of the process template.

Screen Ruling

Available when **Maxtone**, **Maxtone CX**, or **Maxtone NX** is selected in the **Screen System** list.

The list of available screen rulings varies, depending on the setting in the **Screen System**, **Device Resolutions**, and **Output To** lists.

If you select an **IS** screen set, you cannot change the **Screen Ruling** value.

Feature Size

Available when **Staccato**, **Staccato CX**, or **Staccato NX** is selected in the **Screen System** list.

Select the most appropriate feature size (in microns or pixels) for the screen system. A smaller number produces finer-grained output.

The list of available feature sizes varies, depending on the setting in the **Screen System**, **Device Resolutions**, and **Output To** lists.

Note: The **Staccato** feature sizes denote a dot size somewhere between the actual highlight and the midtone dot size.

Note: The **Staccato CX** or **NX** (first order) feature size denotes the exact dot size of the highlight and quarter tone dots. Resolution is factored into the **Staccato CX** or **NX** (first order) dot size calculations.

Note: **Staccato** feature sizes listed as <##>.1 indicate a first-order screen, where <##> is the approximate dot size of the highlight and quarter tone dots.

Midtone Frequency

Available when **Staccato CX** or **Staccato NX** is selected in the **Screen Type** and **Screen System** lists.

Select a Staccato CX/NX midtone frequency in the list. A larger number indicates a finer dot structure.

Midtone frequency is an accurate measure of the number of dot structures per inch in the midtones of Staccato CX/NX screens. Frequency is expressed in lines per inch (lpi) and is a useful metric with AM and FM screens when assessing qualitative, lithographic, and imaging behavior. Staccato CX/NX midtone frequency is comparable to Maxtone and Maxtone CX/NX screen ruling.

Values in this box are governed by resolution and licensing. For a complete list of the available Staccato CX midtone frequencies and dot widths, including configurations that match Staccato screen type feature sizes, see the section about document screening, in this guide.

Screen Color

In the **Screen Color** and **at Angle** boxes, perform the following tasks:

- Set screening for colors other than the four process colors
- Swap the process color screens within screen systems
- Assign a screen to the "Default" color. This screen will be used for any color that doesn't have its own screening value in the output process template or color database.

The screen angles associated with each process color in the **at Angle** box vary, depending on the setting in the **Screen System** and **Dot Shape** lists.

To assign a screen to a color in the **Screen Color** box, type the name of a spot color, or type `Default` to select the default screen angle. Use the correct capitalization and spacing in color names.

Note: To swap two screens (for example, magenta for black), modify the entries for both colors. In this example, modify the setting in the **at Angle** box for magenta to use the black screen, and modify the setting in the **at Angle** box for black to use the magenta screen.

Default Spot Color Handling

Determines how Prinergy assigns screen angles to spot colors that do not have screen angles assigned in the **Screen Color** and **at Angle** boxes or in the Color Editor.

To choose C, M, Y, or K as the default color screen angle, select **Screen as**. To cycle through the available color screen angles, select **Cycle Through Screen Angles**.

Screen as

To assign a different default spot color screen angle, select a color in the list.

For IS screening, Prinergy cannot assign the **Others** angle as the default spot color angle.

Cycle Through Screen Angles

Select this option to assign default spot color screen angles cyclically to the available process colors, in CMYK order. Prinergy does not assign process colors that have already been used to screen a spot color.

If **Staccato Extended** is selected in the **Screen System** list, the list of screens cycles from **Screen #1** through to **Screen #10**.

For IS screening, Prinergy cannot cycle through angles other than CMYK.

Do not increase yellow ruling

To reduce moiré, the AM screening algorithm provides yellow screen frequencies (lpi) that are up to 14% higher than the cyan, magenta, and black screens. If you want a Y screen that is more similar to the Y screen in Prinergy 2.2 and earlier, select this check box. It limits yellow screen frequencies to between -4% and 4% of the ruling of the C, M, and K screens. For example, if the C, M, and K screens are at 150 lpi, this check box limits the screening algorithm to providing a Y screen between 144 lpi and 156 lpi.

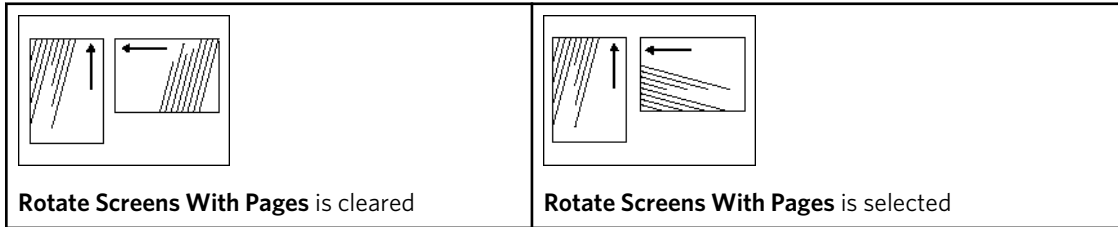
This setting does not affect the yellow frequency of an IS screen set. To change the yellow frequency of an IS screen set, use the IS Screen Set Editor.

Rotate Screens With Pages

Select to rotate screens with reader orientation for each page in an imposition.

When some pages are rotated 90°, rotating screens with the pages allows all pages to be screened at the same angle.

Screens are only rotated at 90° so pages that are oriented at other angles are not affected. The result of rotating screens is apparent when you screen with dot shapes that are not rotationally symmetric, such as Elliptical and Line.

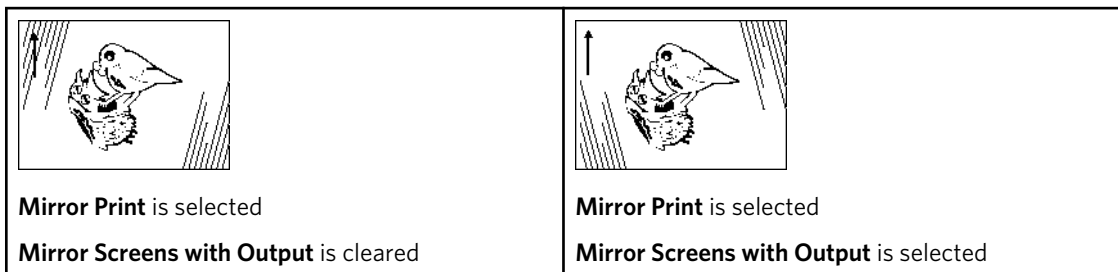


Mirror Screens with Output

Select to mirror screens so they are consistent across all devices (for output devices that have intrinsically mirrored output).

Note: This will affect the screen angle rotation on the printed page and should be used only for compatibility with legacy printing.

When the **Mirror Screens with Output** check box is selected, selecting the **Mirror Print** check box in the **Device** section of the process template causes screen angles to become mirrored with the output. This is useful for some printing processes that require mirrored film or plates, to ensure consistency of screen angles with digital dot proofs.



Note: If **Round** is selected in the **Dot Shape** list, the **Rotate Screens With Pages** and **Mirror Screens With Output** selections don't affect output.

Set Halftone Phase for each Page

Select to have the renderer reset the origin of the halftone screen for each page on an imposition.

When selected, this option ensures that each page on an imposition has the same bitmap pattern.

This is useful for a label printer who wants each label on the imposition to be identical. A difference in the halftone screen origin for each label can sometimes show up as a visible difference at the edges of the labels.

Screen Solids

Applies a screening pattern to solid areas in order to better absorb excess ink. This screening feature results in cleaner printing of solid areas.

Screen solids can also be effective in reducing ink consumption during proofing.

In the **as** box, type a value between 0% and 99.8% to indicate the percentage at which you want to screen all objects with solid (100%) tint.

Maxtone CX Dot Width

Note: This option is not available when **Maxtone** or **Staccato** is selected in the **Screen Types** list.

Highlights

Type the size (in microns) of the Maxtone dot for highlights.

Shadows

Type the size (in microns) of the Maxtone reverse dot for shadows.

Highlights

Type the size (in microns) of the Maxtone dot for highlights.

Shadows

Type the size (in microns) of the Maxtone reverse dot for shadows.

HyperFlex

Screening technology that allows for smaller dots and/or graphic elements to be held on flexo plates during UV exposure of a plate.

For more information about HyperFlex, see the *Prinergy Advanced Flexo User Guide*.

HyperFlex Classic

When imaging on flexo plates, select to enhance Maxtone dots with HyperFlex Classic technology.

Note: Hyperflex Classic is not intended for offset use.

In the extreme highlight areas, Maxtone simulates FM screening by randomly removing dots from the AM grid.

HyperFlex Classic helps to support and strengthen Maxtone by placing light valves where dots have been removed.

Pixels

Type the HyperFlex dot size in pixels.

To determine the proper HyperFlex dot size, you must perform a series of flexo exposure tests. For more information, see the *Prinergy Advanced Flexo Implementation User Guide*.

HyperFlex Advanced

In flexo applications, select to use HyperFlex Advanced with Maxtone, Maxtone CX, Maxtone NX, Maxtone IS, Maxtone IS CX, and Staccato NX screen types.

Note: Hyperflex Advanced is not intended for offset use.

HyperFlex Advanced places light valves around halftone dots to strengthen and support individual dots.

Size

Type the size of the light valve in pixels. The minimum value is 1 and the maximum value is 16.

As feathering (a reduction in HyperFlex size as tone value increases) is being applied, this value specifies the starting size of the light valve. The light valve size is scaled back, in a linear fashion, to zero (at the tint percentage specified in the **Limit** box).

Distance: Start/End

Enter the distance between the center of the light valve and the center of the dot.

Suggested settings—Enter the same values in the **Start** and **End** boxes, and use a larger value than you enter in the **Merge Distance** box. For example, type 2 in both the **Start** and **End** boxes, and type 1 in the **Merge Distance** box. This positions the light valves equidistant between adjacent halftone dots.

If you are not using the suggested settings, in the **Start** box, type the distance from the light valve to the center of the smallest halftone dot. In the **End** box, type the distance (in pixels) from the light valve to the center of the largest dot, as specified in the **Limit** box.

Merge Distance

Enter a value that determines where the light valves will be positioned in relation to the halftone dots.

Suggested settings—Enter the same values in the **Start** and **End** boxes. Enter a smaller value in the **Merge Distance** box than you entered in the **Start** and **End** boxes. For example, type 2 in both the **Start** and **End** boxes, and type 1 in the **Merge Distance** box. This positions the light valves equidistant between adjacent halftone dots.

Limit

Type the tint percentage above which HyperFlex Advanced will no longer be applied. The general recommendation is to set the **Limit** between 20% and 50%.

DigiCap

DigiCap is screening software for digital photopolymer (flexo) media that improves the transfer of ink in solid areas, using small reverse dots (a tint).

Set the DigiCap texture by specifying the size of the reverse dots and the tint percentage. In the **Texture with** boxes, type the length and width of the reverse dots. The maximum size is 10 pixels by 10 pixels.

In the **as** box, type the tint percentage. For example, a 92% tint creates an area with 8% coverage of reverse dots.

To determine the proper DigiCap feature size and percentage, you must perform a print test containing multiple combinations of coarseness levels and tint percentages. You cannot determine the feature size or percentage without comprehensive press tests. For more information, see the *Prinergy Advanced Flexo Implementation User Guide*.

In the **Keepaway** box, type the distance (in pixels) between the edge of elements to which DigiCap texturizing should not be applied and the start of DigiCap texturizing.

See also:

[About document screening](#) on page [637](#)

[About dot shapes](#) on page [638](#)

[Screen types](#) on page [641](#)

[About screen systems](#) on page [643](#)

[Setting up Maxtone screens](#) on page [663](#)

[Setting up Staccato screens](#) on page [664](#)

[Creating and editing IS screen sets](#) on page [665](#)

[Hiding IS screen sets](#) on page [668](#)

PrintLink section of the Final Output process template

This process template section defines how Prinergy creates PPF (Print Production Format) files during final output.

When the **PrintLink** section is enabled, Prinergy generates PPF files and ink reports when you initiate this process template.

Note: You can generate PPF files without creating plates or film. To generate only PPF files, on the final output process template, clear the check box on the **Device** horizontal bar, and select the check box on the **PrintLink** horizontal bar.

Preview Resolution

Defines the resolution for the plate preview that appears on the press console viewing station. Select one of the following resolutions in the list:

- **Low** resolution is approximately 12.5 ppi, which gives good preview images.
- **Medium** resolution is approximately 25 ppi, which gives a sharper preview image with more detail.
- **High** resolution is approximately 50 ppi, which gives the sharpest available preview image with the most detail.
- **Very High** resolution is up to 100 ppi, which gives the sharpest available preview image with the most detail, depending on the plate output resolution.

Note: Higher resolutions give better quality preview images, but they dramatically increase the preview image file size.

Output Type

Select one of the following options:

- **Absolute File**, and then type the path to a specific network device or file in the **Put Files in Directory** box—or click **Browse** and locate the network device or file.
- **Job-Relative File**. A **%Job%** variable appears in the **Put Files in Directory** box, indicating that Prinergy will place PPF files in the job folder. To specify a specific location in the job folder, expand the path.

Note: If you enter a path for a network device in the **Put Files in Directory** box, Prinergy automatically changes the **Output Type** option to **Absolute File**, if it is not selected.

Put Files in Directory

Specifies where Prinergy places the PPF files that it generates. Select a directory on a PPF file reader workstation.

Important: Ensure the destination directory that you select has enough space for PPF files generated by the PrintLink digital ink-profiling software.

Rotation from CTP to Press

Adds rotation information to PPF files. Select **0°**, **90°**, **180°**, **270°** to rotate the plate the specified amount in a clockwise direction.

Note: This option is set during Prinergy installation. Before you change this option, contact a service representative.

File Generation Mode

Determines the format of the PPF files. Select one of the following options in the list:

- **One file per sheet** to generate a combined PPF file that contains information for the entire press sheet.
- **One file per surface** to generate a combined PPF file that contains information for an entire surface.
- **One file per separation** to generate a separated PPF file—that is, PrintLink generates a PPF file for each separation.

Press Interface

Specifies the press interface for which the PPF files are intended. Select a specific type of press interface if you're using one of the press interfaces listed; otherwise select **Generic Press Interface**. If you selected **Generic Press Interface**, go to the **Press Interface Configuration File** box to select a configuration file. Note the number of divisions for the following manual **Press Interface** options:

| Press Interface option | Number of divisions |
|------------------------|--|
| Manual | 100 divisions (0 to 100) |
| ManualHeidelberg | 16 divisions, each with 16 subdivisions (1 to 16 : 1 to 16). For example, 50% is 8:16. |
| ManualHeidelberg1 | 24 divisions, each with 20 subdivisions (1 to 24 : 1 to 20) |
| ManualManroland | 254 divisions (0 to 254) |
| ManualManRoland1 | 24 divisions (1 to 24) |

Number of Ink Key Zones

Type the number of ink key zones.

Press Width

Press width should be set to the zone size multiplied by the number of ink zones. For more information about zone sizes, see the press manufacturer documentation.

Press Height

Type the maximum height that is printable on the press. For more information, see the press manufacturer documentation.

The ink key calculations are based on the PrintLink Preview Resolution. A resolution of approximately 2 ppm or 50 ppi is required for accuracy (for a render resolution of 2400 dpi). The Preview Resolution inside the PrintLink file is calculated according to a down sample factor, which is dependent on the render resolution and the PrintLink Preview Resolution selected. For more information, see the documentation about Preview Resolution.

Send Files Using FTP

Enables Prinergy to send PPF files via FTP (file transfer protocol) to a PPF file reader workstation. Use this option for PPF file reader workstations that are not running Windows, such as a Heidelberg PPG (Prepress Gateway). Select the **Send Files Using FTP** check box to enable this option; clear the check box to disable this option.

FTP Address

Type the FTP address of the PPF file reader workstation to which you want PrintLink to FTP the PPF files.

FTP Logon Name

Type the FTP logon name.

FTP Password

Type the FTP password.

Delete Files After FTP Completes

Deletes PPF files from Prinergy after they are successfully FTPed to the PPF file reader workstation. Select the **Delete Files After FTP Completes** check box to enable this feature; clear the check box to disable this feature.

Use Custom File Naming

Select this check box if you want to specify the output file names.

Notes: If you select this check box:

- And if you want to respect Macintosh file names, you must restrict each tag in the **Filename Template** box, so that the longest possible file name is 31 characters or less.
- **Overwrite Existing File with Same Name** is selected. If you want to generate and keep iterations of a file, include a `%version%` tag in the **Filename Template** box.

Filename Template

Type the file name format for the output files.

Notes: If you want to name the PPF file with values taken from JDF file, delete the variables that appear by default in the **Filename Template** box and enter the following:

- `%SignatureJDFName%`
- `%SheetJDFName%`

Press Interface Configuration File

(See [Customizable tags in the PrintLink PPF file](#) on page 747)

Tells Prinergy where the PrintLink configuration file is located. Click **Browse** to locate and select the configuration file.

The PrintLink configuration file enables you to customize the CIP3 tags and to modify default press interface settings in PPF files.

Processed Files section of the Final Output process template

This process template section identifies the file naming parameters during final output.

Prinergy-defined File Naming

Use Prinergy-defined File Naming

Select to use the default file naming convention for output files.

Maximum Characters from Job Name

Type the maximum number of characters for the job name part of the file name.

Note: Share a maximum of 18 characters between the **Maximum Characters From Job Name** box and the **From Imposition Template Name** box.

From Imposition Template Name

Type the maximum number of characters for the imposition template name part of the file name.

Note: Share a maximum of 18 characters between the **Maximum Characters From Job Name** box and the **From Imposition Template Name** box.

Respect Mac Filenames

Select to shorten Prinergy file names to 31 characters or less, because Macintosh file names are restricted to a length of 31 characters.

For imposition output and final output, the Prinergy file name consists of:

- 18 characters for the job name and imposition name (including periods)
- 13 characters for surface, version, and color extensions (including the periods that separate each item)

For example, **jobname.imposname.1A.vers.M.VPS**.

When you select this check box, Prinergy shortens the first part of the file name. You specify the maximum number of characters for the job name in the **Maximum Characters From Job Name** box. You specify the maximum number of characters for the imposition name in the **From Imposition Template Name** box.

When the **Respect Mac Filenames** check box is selected, spot colors are represented in the file name by an index number.

When the **Respect Mac Filenames** check box is cleared, the full spot color name is added to the output file name, with the word PANTONE abbreviated to PMS, and the CVC or CV suffix removed.

Overwrite Existing Files with Same Name

(See [About outputting to a file](#) on page 661)

Select if you want to use the newer files when multiple files have the same name.

Available when **Job-Relative File** is selected in the **Output Type** box.

Custom File Naming

Use Custom File Naming

Select this check box if you want to specify the output file names.

Notes: If you select this check box:

- And if you want to respect Macintosh file names, you must restrict each tag in the **Filename Template** box, so that the longest possible file name is 31 characters or less.
- **Overwrite Existing File with Same Name** is selected. If you want to generate and keep iterations of a file, include a `%version%` tag in the **Filename Template** box.

Filename Template

(See [About custom file naming](#) on page 657)

Type the file name format for the output files.

Controlfile Filename Template

If outputting to a format which requires a control (master) file, type the file name format for the control file.

Use Full Spot Color Names

Select this check box if you want to use the spot color names in the output file names (instead of numbers which are derived from the spot color order).

Note: To use this check box, you must include the `%color%` tag in the **Filename Template**.

PrintConsole Session Naming

Custom session naming

Information not yet available.

Device section of the Final Output process template

This process template section identifies device-related parameters for the output during final output.

Output Type

Select **Absolute File or Printer** to enter the path for a specific network device or file location.

Select **Job-Relative File** to enter a path that is relative to the location of the job folder.

Note: The default is **Job-relative file** and the **Device Path** box default is %JOB%.

Typing a path for a network device in the **Device Path** box automatically sets the **Output Type** to **Absolute File or Printer**.

Submit as Multiple Print Jobs

Select to submit a separate job for each surface that is output.

Available when **Absolute File or Printer** is selected as the **Output Type** or when the **Delta** option in the **Render** section is enabled.

Device Path

The default setting depends on the value selected as the **Output Type**.

- If **Output Type** is **Absolute File or Printer**, type the name of a Windows NT network output device using the UNC (Universal Naming Convention) path. Or you can click **Browse** to select a file location.
- If **Output Type** is **Job-Relative File**, the default is **%JOB %Proofs**. The default value places the output in the **Proofs** folder of the job that creates the process. You can change the **Proofs** folder to any subfolder found in a job folder.

Output Blank Surfaces for Duplexing and Collating

Select when you want to output an imposition that is supposed to have blank surfaces, that is, surfaces with no separations; so that duplexing or collating will be correct.

Mirror Print

Select to output media with the emulsion side down.

Negative Print

Select to output a negative image.

Cut Media

Select when you want the device to automatically cut the media.

Available when a device with a media cutting system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Load Media

Select when you want the device to automatically load the media.

Available when a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Unload Media

Select when you want the device to automatically unload media.

Available when a format for a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Manually

Select when you want the device to prompt the operator to load the device manually.

Available when a format for a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Media Unload Mode

Select the mode for unloading media.

Available when a format for a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list. See your device's documentation for more information.

HPRTL Device

If you have a Hewlett-Packard device, select **HP**.

If you have the Iris 43WIDE device, select **Iris/Mutoh**.

HPRTL is a raster file format developed by Hewlett-Packard and used by a number of device manufacturers.

Available when HPRTL is selected in the **Output To** list.

Variable Mainscan Imaging

This area applies only when the final output device is a Kodak device with the Variable Mainscan Resolution (VRM) option.

The VRM option adjusts the pixel resolution of the output device in the mainscan (around-the-drum) direction to align the pixel boundaries to the frequency of the lenticular lens boundaries.

To image with the VRM option, select the **Enable Variable Mainscan Imaging** check box, and then do one of the following actions:

- If the TIFF file is already refined at a specific VMR resolution (for example, 2423 dpi in mainscan x 2400 dpi in subscan) that matches the lens pitch frequency, select **Image at rendered resolution**.

The resolution is specified in the **Render** section of the process template.

Note: This method only supports integers. For more precise resolutions, select **Image at** and specify the desired mainscan resolution.

- If the mainscan resolution of the file needs to be further adjusted, select **Image at** and specify the desired mainscan resolution up to three decimal places.

You can enter any resolution that is within 3.2 percent (plus or minus) of the rendered resolution. For example, you can image a 2400 dpi TIFF file at 2423.765 dpi in the mainscan direction.

In all instances, the subscan (along-the-drum) resolution remains unaffected.

File Format section of the Final Output process template

This process template section identifies the format and compression settings of the output files during final output.

Include Images as

If printing to PDF, select **Original** to output the original images in the output file.

Select **Low Resolution** to output low-resolution versions of the images in the output file.

Compression

(See [About outputting to a file](#) on page 661)

The compression options that are available vary depending on the output format selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template. The following compression options are available:

- **None**—Select if you do not want to compress files
- **CCITTG3**—Not available if outputting to a non-screened format
- **CCITTG4**—Not available if outputting to a non-screened format
- **LZW**
- **RLE**
- **ZIP**—Select if you use Kodak Staccato screening software

Note: Compression methods **CCITTG3** and **CCITTG4** are unavailable if the **Always use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box is selected

in the **Render** section of the process template or if any Staccato screening system is selected in the **Screen System** box in the **Calibration & Screening** section.

Quality

The quality control option is available only if the **Output To** list is set to **JPEG**.

Prinergy provides five JPEG compression quality options ranging from **maximum** quality (the least compression and the smallest loss of data) to **minimum** quality (the most compression and the greatest loss of data).

- **Maximum**
- **High**
- **Medium**
- **Low**
- **Minimum**

The lower the quality of JPEG compression, the smaller the file size, but the greater the chance of noticeable blockiness in certain areas of the image. You should experiment with JPEG compression levels to see what amount of image degradation is acceptable for your purposes.

Advanced TIFF Tags

(See [About advanced TIFF tags](#) on page 650)

Select to add advanced TIFF tags to output files.

Note: Unless you are outputting to Virtual Proofing System 2.0 or Copydot Toolkit software, we do not recommend selecting this option because some devices that do not recognize advanced TIFF tags may reject the entire file.

Available when a TIFF or Virtual Proofing System format is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Use Custom TIFF Title Tag

Select the check box and type a custom name in the box to create custom title tags in the TIFF file. This feature replaces the need to manually edit the TIFF file.

Use this feature when sending Virtual Proofing System files through Digital Blueline to merge separations from different signatures.

Note: In the box, you can include variables such as %job% and %signature%.

DCS File Format

Select **Single File** to generate one pre-separated DCS file—that is, one file that contains all the pre-separated colors. The file name will be, for example: <PDF filename>.p00n.eps.

Select **Multiple Files** to generate a DCS file set—that is, one file for each color separation, plus a master file for the set. The file names will be, for example:

<PDF filename>.p00n.dcs.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.C.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.M.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.Y.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.K.eps

<PDF filename>.p00n.1.eps

Available when **DCS** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

EPS Data

Select the encoding method to use for EPS data.

Available when **EPS Raster** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

DCS Data

Select the encoding method to be used for DCS output.

Available when **DCS** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

EPS Compression

Select the compression method to use for EPS output, or **None** if you do not want to compress EPS files.

Available when **EPS Raster** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

DCS Compression

Select the compression method to be used for DCS output, or select **None** if you do not want to compress the DCS file.

Available when **DCS** is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Add TIFF Preview to DCS Master File

Select to add a preview file to the master file for a DCS-2 multiple file set. You can view the preview file in software such as Preps and QuarkXPress.

Specify a resolution for the preview file in the **at Resolution** box.

Available in the Loose Page Output and Imposition Output process templates when **EPS vector** or **DCS** (raster or vector) is selected in the **Output To** list. Available in the Final Output process template when **DCS raster** is selected in the **Output To** list.

Always use custom Large TIFF format

This check box is available only when the file output type is set to **TIFF**. By default, this option is disabled.

Select this check box to create a JDF file that links multiple large TIFF files (less than 4 GB). This set of files represents a single plate.

Document Format

Select **Multi Page** to generate one output file for the entire range of selected surfaces or **Single Page** to generate one file for each surface.

Available in the Loose Page Output and Imposition Output process templates when a vector output (except DCS) is selected in the **Output To** list. Available in the Final Output process template when **PS3 (PostScriptOut)** is selected in the **Output To** list.

Single Page is not recommended for digital printers.

Vector Output Options

Output Format

Select **Composite** or **Separated** output. The selection determines whether or not conversion is required based on the input file format. Select **Automatic** to generate files in the same format (composite or separated) as the input files.

Note: Separated PDF/X-1a:2001 and composite DCS-2 are not supported.

Note: Spot color handling (omission, mapping, and converting) in the Color Separations dialog box is not supported for composite vector output.

Note: The **Automatic** option is available when vector output (except DCS) is selected from the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Render Shadings

Select to render PostScript 3 vector objects with Level 3 smooth shades to produce rasterized contone objects in order to meet the PostScript Level 2 standard. Target workflows may process rasterized objects faster than vector ones, but there may be some quality degradation for subtle shadings that extend over long distances.

Specify a resolution for the rendered shadings in the **at Resolution** box.

Available when **DCS, PS2, PS3, or PDF** is selected in the **Output To** list.

Font Outlining

Select to replace all text objects with vector objects in output pages.

This is available to DCS, PDF, and separated PostScript vector output formats. It is useful for eliminating font formats that certain RIPs may not be able to process. Text output in this way cannot be edited and when previewed in Adobe Acrobat, will look bolder than the original text due to loss of font hinting for low-resolution monitors.

Delete Traps

Select to remove any Prinergy-generated traps from PDF, PostScript Level 2, and DCS-2 output files.

Trapping-generated overprints remain in the files.

Simulate overprints (CMYK only)

Select to replace overprint intersections with an opaque object.

This creates a page that maintains its integrity on output, even if a downstream publisher or printer configures their workflow to override overprints.

Send PostScript duplexing commands

Select to print on both sides of the media. Assuming a portrait sheet orientation, select **Turn** print pages side to side by flipping on the long edge. Select **Tumble** to print both sides by flipping on the short edge.

This option simply adds the duplex command to the PostScript output. The consuming device may not support this command.

Output Intent

Use this area to specify an ICC profile or named print condition in the Output Intents section of the PDF/X file that you are generating.

A named print condition is a documented printing situation with a defined relationship between input data and the colorimetry of the printed image. Typically, named print conditions are registered with an organization such as the ICC.

Perform one of the following actions:

- To specify an ICC profile, select the **Profile** check box, and specify the path of a profile.
- To specify a named print condition, select the **Name** check box, and select a print condition from the list.
- To use the ICC profile specified in the **ColorConvert** section for PDF/X generation, click the **Use ColorConvert Destination profile** check box.

Note: **Match Colors in Page Content** in the **ColorConvert** section must be selected.

This area is available only when a **PDF/X** format is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Marks section in the Final Output process template

This process template section determines how marks are handled during final output.

Sheet Marks

Identify the name and location of a PDF file containing sheet marks (for example variable marks, logo, and signoff line). Click **Browse** to locate and select a file.

Calibrate

When this check box is selected, the plate curve and print curve are applied to the mark. The curves applied are the ones selected in the **Plate Curve** list and **Print Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template. When this check box is cleared, only the plate curve is applied. To prevent the application of the plate curve to a mark, select **%None%** in the **Plate Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template.

Locate Sheet Marks Adjacent to

(See [Sheet marks options explained](#) on page 695 and [Sheet marks on final output](#) on page 691.)

Select **Left**, **Right**, **Bottom**, or **Top** to determine on which edge of the paper or plate a sheet mark is placed.

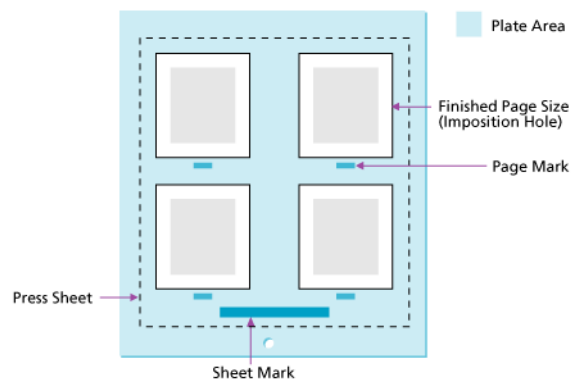
The default setting is **Bottom**.

at Distance

(See [Calculating the at distance value on final output](#) on page 692.)

Determines where, relative to the edge, the mark is placed:

- Sheet marks are placed relative to the plate edge. Depending on the distance you type, you can place the sheet mark on the press sheet or on the plate.
- Page marks are placed relative to the finished page size (the imposition hole).



Justified

Select **Left**, **Center**, or **Right** to determine the justification for the sheet mark.

The default value is **Center**.

Unit Used for Variable Marks

Select the unit you want to use to measure variable marks—inch, cm (centimeter), mm (millimeter), or pts (points).

Imposition Marks Calibration

Select one of the following options to determine how imposition marks are calibrated.

Calibrate

The plate curve and print curve are applied to the imposition mark. The curves applied are the ones selected in the **Plate and Print Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template.

Do Not Calibrate

Only the plate curve is applied.

Honor Calibration in Imposition

The plate and print curves are applied in a similar manner, according to whether calibration for the mark is enabled or disabled in the imposition software. To prevent the application of the plate curve to a mark, select **%%None%%** in the **Plate Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template. This applies to Preps 5.2 and later; however, Preps 6.0 and later is required in order to edit Prinergy impositions.

Default Marks Font

Prinergy can populate variable marks with double-byte characters such as those found in Japanese, Chinese, and Korean.

Here's an example of how you could use the feature:

1. Create a Preps imposition file that includes a variable mark, such as \$ [PageName] .
2. In Prinergy, in the **Default Marks Font** box in the **Marks** section of the imposition output process template, type the exact name of the double-byte font that can be used in case the variable mark's original font was not a double-byte font. The font must reside either in a Prinergy-aware font folder or in the job's font search path.
3. Submit the imposition file to Prinergy.

If the imposition file contains a page name with double-byte fonts, Prinergy outputs the file with these characters.

Slugline

A slugline mark is a text or variable mark that you place on loose page, imposition, or final output. Instead of using **Sheet Marks** or **Page Marks**, you can use **Slugline** to quickly place a slugline mark.

A slugline mark does not need a PDF file, so you can easily place a mark without creating a PDF file. However, a slugline mark is just a line of text or a variable mark. You can only specify the text size.

- In the **Slugline mark** box, type the text or variable mark.
- In the **Text size** box, type the font size for the mark.
- In **Place on media**, specify the distance **from left** and **from bottom**.

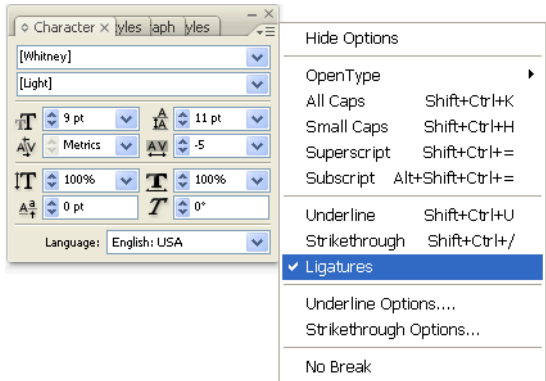
Note: If you are using a variable mark in your slugline, the `_offset` and `_replace` parameters, and any page-oriented variables parameters, are not currently supported.

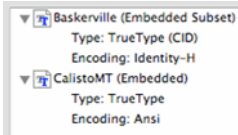
Creating page and sheet mark files that include variable marks

Use these best practices when creating a file that will be used as a page mark or sheet mark with Prinergy

To create page mark or sheet mark files, use software such as Adobe InDesign, Adobe Illustrator, or QuarkXPress that allows registration color.

| Complete these steps, in this order | More information |
|--|--|
| <p>For variable marks (such as <code>\$(color)</code>), choose fonts that can be fully embedded so that the entire character set is available.</p> | <p>Note: OpenType fonts are always subset, so they cannot be used for variable marks. Unfortunately, Illustrator software does not indicate which fonts are OpenType and which are TrueType or PostScript Type 1, making it more difficult than InDesign to avoid the OpenType fonts. Three fonts that <i>will</i> fully embed with InDesign CS4 are BeaufortPro, ChaparralPro and MyriadPro. Although these fonts display an OpenType icon they are in reality Type 1 fonts.</p> <p>InDesign CS5 is much better than CS4 at allowing the full embedding of fonts, with many of the standard fonts now working.</p> |

| Complete these steps, in this order | More information |
|--|--|
| <p>Check for any auto-substitution of ligatures (letter pairs like ff, fi, tt) in your variable marks and change them back to an actual two-letter pair. This may occur in the QuarkXPress or InDesign software.</p> | <p>If the auto-substitution of ligatures is not changed back to an actual two-letter pair, the name of the mark will not be correctly interpreted, and the correct variable data will not appear in the output.</p> <p>The ligature controls for InDesign can be found in the Character panel.</p>  <p>To replace ligatures with separate characters, select all of your type, and ensure that Ligatures is not selected.</p> |
| <p>Select the color of the text of your mark, based on the separation on which you want the information to appear.</p> | <p>Issues to consider:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Registration color will place the mark on every plate. • For the best legibility (no registration issues), bar code marks might best be restricted to black only. • Variable marks that can report <i>different</i> information from each separation are <i>automatically</i> converted to registration color when the mark is processed, regardless of how they are colored in the original PDF file. These include $[\text{color}]$, $[\text{angle}]$, $[\text{calcurve}]$, and so on. |
| <p>From InDesign, select File > Export to export to a PDF file. From Illustrator, select File > Save As to send to a PDF file.</p> <p>To fully embed fonts (if full embedding is permitted), in the Export Adobe PDF dialog box, select Advanced, and type 0 in the Subset fonts when percent of characters used is less than box.</p> | <p>Printing to PostScript is not recommended because it is less reliable for fully embedding fonts. You must also distill it before it can be checked for a completely embedded font.</p> |

| Complete these steps, in this order | More information |
|--|---|
| <p>Check the PDF file to ensure that the fonts are fully embedded.</p> | <p>a. After creating the PDF file, view it in Acrobat, and select File > Properties.</p> <p>b. Select the Fonts tab.</p> <p>c. Ensure that no fonts are listed as Embedded Subset. All fonts must show as Embedded.</p>  <p>If you discover a Font subset, return to your source software, correct the problem, and generate a new PDF file.</p> <p>Actions that may trigger subsetting include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use of OpenType fonts. To fix this problem, switch to a TrueType or PostScript Type 1 font. • Use of system fonts (the dfont version of Heidelberg Helvetica displays as TrueType in the font menu in InDesign, but will always be subset). To fix this problem, switch to a TrueType or PostScript Type 1 font. • Use of special characters, such as bullets or ligatures, that may cause Identity-H (CID) encoding, which will cause subsetting. To fix this problem, remove the special characters and replace ligatures as described above. <p>There should be no need to refine your PDF file again in Prinerly . After you confirm that all fonts are fully embedded, your PDF file is ready to use as a page mark or sheet mark.</p> <p>If you are working in a PDF to PDF Preps workflow, you can use this same procedure to create a mark that contains variable data for use with Preps software. The one additional step is to print PostScript out of Acrobat from your final PDF in order to have a placeholder PostScript file to place on your Preps template.</p> |

Generating CT/LW output for the Karat digital device

You can have the Prinerly system output a continuous tone and line work imposition and send it to a Karat digital device. A thumbnail of

the file appears in the Karat user interface. The Karat device manages the color and screening.

- Follow the instructions in *Starting a Process* and select a CTLW Karat output process template.

Tip:

- You can select pages in the **Pages** view or the **Signatures** view. Pages can be assigned or unassigned. An imposition plan does not need to be added to the job.
- Pages are sent to the Karat device in the order that they are selected.
- When the selected pages are assigned to a page set, and the page set is linked to an imposition plan, the CT/LW output includes the imposition plan's trim and bleed lines if they are configured in the process template.

A Karat job is created and stored in the `CTLW-Output` subfolder of the job folder. You can also specify a location for the job that is outside the job folder.

CTLW Karat Output process template

The CTLW Karat Output process template outputs a CT/LW imposition and sends it to a Karat digital press, which manages the color and screening.

ColorFlow section of the CTLW Karat Output process template

The **ColorFlow** section of the CTLW Karat output process template defines how Prinergy applies ColorFlow settings during CT/LW output to a Karat digital device.

When you configure the ColorFlow settings in an output process template, you select the device, device condition, and plate line, but not a color setup. The color setup used is the one that was assigned to the pages when they were refined—that is, either the color setup specified in the refine process template that was used or the job's default color setup. The color setup that is used during output processing is the color setup specified for each page in the **Color Setup** column in the **Pages** pane.



WARNING: Output will fail if the color setup does not match the color setup assigned during refine, unless the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** option is enabled.

Snapshot

A ColorFlow snapshot captures the state of the entire color database, making its elements available to the workflow and providing a convenient backup. The snapshot feature makes it

unnecessary for you to manually save and name multiple versions of your color control elements after adjusting them. At any time, you can easily roll back (revert) to the state of a previous snapshot in the ColorFlow software. If you roll back to a previous snapshot, ColorFlow behaves as if changes after that snapshot never happened.

When you have completed your work in ColorFlow to a certain level and you are satisfied with the elements in color setups, you will mark a snapshot as *approved*. By default in Prinergy Connect, the currently approved snapshot is used. Only one snapshot can be in the approved state at any time.

Device Name

An individual occurrence of a physical device that captures or produces an image. Devices have a type and customer-specified properties, such as a name and location in the plant. Because the declaration of a device does not include its operating conditions—such as ink selection, type of screening, and paper—you cannot measure the color response of a device on its own.

Device Condition

A combination of a device and the operating conditions in which the device captures or produces an image. A device condition has a known color response. Device conditions can be divided into groups such as print conditions (press and proofer devices), capture conditions (scanner and camera devices), and reference print conditions (industry specifications). A device condition can include more than one device. If all the devices are the same device type, they use the same consumables and operational settings, and they can be calibrated to yield the same color response.

Plate Line

You establish the behavior of a particular plate, screening, and plating line by plating a tint ramp, manually measuring the resulting dot area on the plate, and entering the values in the Plate Setups dialog box in the ColorFlow software.

A ColorFlow plate line is associated with only one plate setup. In your shop, you may use a platesetter and chemistry to process several different screenings. To model this, in ColorFlow, create similar plate lines in the other plate setups. You can name them to match the equipment in your plant. You may want to create several plate lines to indicate when chemistry changes occur. For example, if you routinely change

solutions on Mondays, you might create different ColorFlow plate lines for Monday, Wednesday, and Friday.

ColorConvert section of the CTLW Karat Output process template

This process template section defines how Prinergy handles color converting during CT/LW output to a Karat digital device.

Color converting transforms the color description of colored objects in a CT/LW page to the appropriate final output color space, and then to the appropriate color space of the Karat digital device. As a result, the CT/LW output simulates the intended final output.

Output to

The box contains CTLW Karat ; you cannot change this information.

JTP

Select the job ticket processor (JTP) to use for color conversion. You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Match Colors

Match Colors in Page Content

Enables the Color Matcher to match hues in the page content for proofing. Select this check box to enable this feature; clear the check box to disable this feature.

When you enable this feature, you can set the **Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile** and the **Rendering Intent** options.

Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile

Select **Exactly as Applied During Refining** to use the same profile that was used during the refine process. If the file was not color converted during refining, or the profile is missing, an error is displayed.

Select **As Defined Below, if Not Set in Refining** to use the same profile that was used during the refine process, if the file was color converted during refining. If the file was not color converted during refining, the profile defined in the **Input Device Conditions** box will be used.

Select **Exactly as Defined Below** to use the profile selected in the **Input Device Conditions** box.

Input Device Conditions

Available when **Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile** is set to **As Defined Below, if not set in Refining** or **Exactly as Defined Below**.

From the list, select **Browse** to locate the appropriate profile file for final output.

Rendering Intent

Select **Relative Colorimetric** if the proofing paper is similar to the paper that will be used during final output.

Select **Absolute Colorimetric** to simulate the color of the paper that will be used during final output.

Select **PDF** to use the rendering intent specified in the PDF file when output by the creative software during final output.

Select **Perceptual** to use rendering that uses gamut compression and produces less saturated colors during final output.

Select **Saturation** to make sure colors are represented in a way that preserves or emphasizes saturation during final output.

Retain CMYK Black

Preserves black in images and graphics that are defined in CMYK or RGB color space. For ICC-based color matching engines, CMYK images and graphics get transformed from CMYK to L*a*b* and back to CMYK color in order to perform color matching. In going from CMYK (four components) to L*a*b* (three components) and back again, the black (K) channel separation information (UCR/GCR) has in the past been destroyed. Selecting this check box instructs the Color Matcher to preserve the black generation information from the source color space. As a result, the amount of black relative to CMY in the images and graphics stays about the same. The purpose of this feature is to help preserve the visual weight of images and graphics.

Note: When you enable this feature, Color Matcher requires some additional processing time because of the extra calculations involved.

Overprint Handling (CPU Intensive)

(See [About overprint handling](#) on page 257)

Select to prevent overprinting objects from generating unintended knockouts.

If you are converting spots to process for a proof, or if you are color-matching one CMYK space to another CMYK space for a proof, you probably need to apply overprint handling, even if you applied it during refine.

To use overprint handling, you must:

1. In the **ColorConvert** section, select:
 - The **Color Matcher** JTP
 - The **Match Colors in Page Content** check box
 - The **Overprint Handling** check box
2. Choose between raster and vector overprint handling in the **Methods** list.

Note: The raster option is available only when **Shades=256** is selected in the **Render** section of the process template.

Method

Choose to use vector or raster overprint handling for this output process.

Select **Raster** when outputting to low-resolution contone proofers (for example, Veris digital proofer or Matchprint Inkjet proofer).

Note: To use raster overprint handling, you must select, in the **Render** section of the process template, **Shades=256**.

Additional factors to consider:

- Raster overprint handling can be applied only to continuous tone data
- Raster overprint handling occurs after the RIP
- Raster processing time increases exponentially as the resolution increases
- Raster overprint handling eliminates all overprints

Select **Vector** when outputting to halftone (screen) proofers (for example, the Spectrum device), or to high-resolution contone proofers.

Additional factors to consider:

- Vector overprint handling occurs before the RIP
- Depending on the complexity of the file, vector overprint handling could take longer than raster overprint handling.
- Vector overprint handling does not eliminate all overprints. In objects where overprinting does not have an effect on the output, the objects retain an overprint status. For example, if

you set black to overprint, but one black object is not placed on top of another object, this black object is, after overprint handling, still an overprinting object.

Process CEPS Data

Select this check box to enable spot color mapping and color matching of CEPS data.

For further information, see the CEPS Conversion Section and the Normalize Section of the Refine Process Template.

Process Marks

Select this check box when you want to apply color management to your marks file. Depending on the type of mark, it may be necessary to enable **Overprint Handling** to appropriately convert the mark and apply the necessary color transformation.

Note: When **Process Marks** is checked, both sheet marks and page marks are color managed.

Color match 1-bit images

Select this check box to color match 1-bit images. One-bit images are images that represent two tones, typically black and white. The pixel is either a 0 or a 1 value. Examples are copydot images.

Note: This feature will convert 1-bit images to 8-bit images. This causes pages to become larger and to render more slowly. Turn off this feature if you do not require color matching of 1-bit images, or if the feature causes unacceptable performance degradation. (For example, copydot files take a very long time to refine and render.)

This feature is available when **Match Colors in Page Content** is selected.

Device Condition

Enables the ICC profile, which characterizes the way the Karat device prints.

Select a path to the ICC profile, or select **Browse** to locate the profile.

Source of Color Recipes

Extract Recipe from the File

Select to use the color recipes embedded in the file.

Lookup Recipe in Color Database

Select to use the color libraries selected in this process template.

Color Libraries

From the **Selectable** list, select the color libraries you want Prinergy to search for color recipes, and click **Add**.

Arrange the color libraries in the **Selected** list in the order that you want Prinergy to search. Use the **Move Up** and **Move Down** buttons.

Note: Ensure that you select color libraries with color spaces that are compatible with the **Proof Process Profile**.

Use Recipe from File if not found in Color Database

Select this check box to use color recipes embedded in the file if Prinergy does not find the colors in the selected color libraries.

Layout section of the CTLW Karat Output process template

This process template section defines how Prinergy places the pages on the output media during CT/LW output to a Karat digital press.

Media

Media Configuration

This area is unavailable. The settings for the Karat device determine the type of paper to be used.

Size

Determines the size of the media to which you will output the final files.

Select **Digital** to generate an output file, for example, a file for Virtual Proofing System software. When you select **Digital**, the **Min Width**, **Min Height**, **Max Width**, **Max Height**, and **Layout is 90° Different Than Media** boxes are unavailable.

Select **Cut sheet**, **Roll fed**, or **Roll fed (transverse)**, depending on the media being used.

Min Width

Sets the minimum width for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

Min Height

Sets the minimum height for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

For cut sheet, enter the sheet height. For roll fed, enter the height of the smallest proof you want to make on the device.

Max Width

Sets the maximum width for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

Max Height

Sets the maximum height for the specified media in the unit of measure selected in the list.

Duplexing

This option is available for composite files; it is unavailable for separated files.

Specifies the type of duplexing.

From the **Duplexing** box, select **Turn** or **Tumble** to enable this feature. Select **None** to disable duplexing.

Front Shift and Back Shift

The **Front Shift Along Width...Along Height** and **Back Shift Along Width...Along Height** options give finer adjustment when aligning two-sided proofs than with **Center Along Width/Height**. Use these measurements to shift and align front and back pages along their turn or tumble axes, depending on the page or imposition orientation (portrait or landscape).

These options are available only when **Duplexing** has been set to **Turn** or **Tumble**.

You can specify the shift in points, inches, centimeters, or millimeters.

Layout is 90° Different Than Media

Available when you select **Cut Sheet** or **Roll Fed** from the **Size** box. This option is unavailable when you select **Digital** from the **Size** box or when you select the **Reduce to Fit Media** check box.

Select this check box when the orientation of data is at a 90° angle to the orientation of the media (for example, you are trying to output a landscape layout to a portrait device). You must also select either **Auto clockwise** or **Auto counterclockwise** in the **Orientation** box.

Note: This option is not available when you select **Veris/Matchprint Inkjet** in the **Output To** list at the top of the pane.

Center and crop page to media size

Select this check box when the sheet size of the device is smaller than the media box of the PDF page.

PDF Box to Use

Select the **Trim Box** or the **Media Box** to use as the area of output content.

For example, selecting the trim box produces trimmed output, that is, output without bleeds or registration marks.

Placement

Type

Select the type of placement.

When you select **Top Left to Bottom Right** placement the **N-up** option button is selected and the **Number of Pages Across** option becomes available.

When you select **Page Set Booklet**, the **2x1** option button is selected and the **Vertical Gutter Width** option becomes available

Style

Determines how many pages Prinergy places on each sheet.

- Select **Auto Fit** to let the system determine the best layout, depending on the files submitted.
- Select **2x1** to specify two pages across and one page down.
- Select **1x2** to specify one page across and two pages down.
- Select **N-up** to specify the number of pages across and down.

Number of Pages Across

Available when **N-up** is selected in the **Style** box.

Determines the number of pages to place horizontally on each sheet.

Down

Available when **N-up** is selected in the **Style** box.

Determines the number of pages to place vertically on each sheet.

Vertical Gutter Width

Available when **Auto Fit** is selected in the **Style** box or **N-up** is selected in the **Style** box and the **Number of Pages Across** box contains a value greater than 1.

Determines the minimum space allowed, in the selected unit of measure, for vertical gutters when automatically fitting pages on a sheet. This value may be reduced if the **Reduce Gutters if Required** check box is selected.

Horizontal Gutter Height

Available when **Auto Fit** is selected in the **Style** box, or **N-up** is selected in the **Style** box and the **Down** box contains a value greater than 1.

Determines the minimum space allowed, in the selected unit of measure, for horizontal gutters when automatically fitting pages on a sheet. This value may be reduced if the **Reduce Gutters if Required** check box is selected (see below).

Orientation

(See [Example: orientation](#) on page 653)

Rotates an entire imposition as a unit.

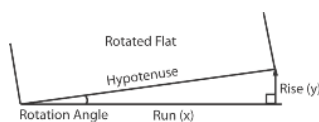
Select **Auto clockwise** to automatically rotate an image clockwise when rotating would result in a better fit.

Select **Auto counterclockwise** to automatically rotate an image counter-clockwise when rotating would result in a better fit.

Flat Rotation

Makes a small angle rotation of the flat or output image. Also called plate cocking. Derive the **(0.0)** percentage value, or gradient, in one of two ways:

- Physically measure the first occurrence of a rotation to find the gradient that you can then apply for all jobs that use that rotation
- Convert a given angle into its gradient



To measure for a gradient:

- Formula: gradient = rise/run x 100 where:
- Rise: (y-axis) measure the distance between where the flat's rotating corner started and where it must be moved as a straight line that meets the x-axis at a 90° angle. Example: 2 units
- Run: (x-axis) measure the distance along the x-axis from the non-rotated corner of the flat to the point where the vertical line transects the x-axis at a right angle. Example: 90 units
- Calculation: $2/90 \times 100 = 2.2$
- The maximum percentage value is 3.1.

To convert an angle to a gradient:

- Formula: gradient = tangent of the angle of rotation x 100
- Calculation using a scientific calculator and an angle of 0.5°:
- $0.5^\circ + \text{Tan}(\text{gent}) \text{ key} = 0.008 \times 100 = 0.8$
- The maximum angle of rotation is 1.78°.

Note: To convert a gradient to an angle, enter the gradient into the calculator and apply the inverse tangent function. Example: 2.2% is entered as $0.022 + \text{Inv}(\text{erse}) \text{ key} + \text{Tan key} = 1.26^\circ$.

- Indicate whether the rotation is to be **clockwise** or **counterclockwise**.

Note: The process template does not let you select flat rotation and web growth at the same time. However, when web growth is applied, flat rotation can be specified in the web growth profile.

Scaling

Scale Vector

Applies scaling to the layout prior to screening the file. The scaling is based on vector data (PDF data).

Scale Raster

Applies raster scaling to the layout. Raster scaling is an optional feature that will allow you to apply distortion after the files are screened.

Raster scaling is recommended for prescreened files (copydot) or files that contain 1-bit TIFF images, since the prescreened bitmap data cannot be properly scaled with vector scaling (could generate artifacts).

Clear this check box to disable this feature.

Spacing

Add Extra Horizontal Space

(See [Example: add extra horizontal space](#) on page 654)

Determines where unused horizontal space should be positioned.

- Select **Right margin only** to position unused space at the right margin, allowing for excess to be easily cut off.
- Select **Evenly to both margins** to divide unused space evenly between the right and left margins.
- Select **Evenly to all gutters and margins** to divide unused space evenly between the vertical gutters and right and left margins.

Add Extra Vertical Space

(See [Example: add extra vertical space](#) on page 653)

Determines where unused vertical space should be positioned.

- Select **Bottom margin only** to position unused space at the bottom margin, allowing for excess to be easily cut off.
- Select **Evenly to both margins** to divide unused space evenly between the top and bottom margins.
- Select **Evenly to all gutters and margins** to divide unused space evenly between the horizontal gutters and top and bottom margins.

Reduce Gutters if Required

Allows gutter values (set in the **Horizontal Gutter Height** and **Vertical Gutter Width** boxes in the **Placement** section) to be reduced if required to fit pages. If selected, gutters will be reduced only to the values set in the **Min Horizontal Gutter Height** and **Min Vertical Gutter Width** boxes.

Min Vertical Gutter Width

Available if the **Reduce Gutters if Required** check box is selected, **N-up** is selected in the **Style** box, and the **Down** box contains a value greater than 1.

Vertical gutters are not reduced below this value.

Min Horizontal Gutter Height

Available if the **Reduce Gutters if Required** check box is selected, **N-up** is selected in the **Style** box, and the **Number of Pages Across** box contains a value greater than 1.

Horizontal gutters are not reduced below this value.

Render section of the CTLW Karat output process template

The **Render** section of the CTLW Karat output process template determines the output resolution and how Prinergy handles spot colors during CT/LW output to a Karat digital press.

JTP

Select the **CTLW Output** job ticket processor (JTP) to use for rendering.

Note: You set up JTPs in Prinergy Administrator.

Device Resolutions

This list is available when an output device format is selected in the **Output To** list.

Select a resolution for the selected device in the list.

Resolution X

Select **2400** dpi or **2540** dpi.

Resolution Y

Select **2400** dpi or **2540** dpi.

Color Model

Select the process color model to use for output.

The list of values varies, depending on the output format selected in the **Output To** list.

Shades

To set the number of shades of gray to output, select **1** for screened data or **256** for continuous tone data. When **1** is selected, the **Calibration & Screening** section of the refine process template is available for input.

The list of values varies, depending on the output format selected in the **Output To** list and the color model selected in the **Color Model** list.

Do Separations

Available when the output format selected in the **Output To** list supports separated output and **DeviceCMYK** is selected in the **Color Model** options.

Select if you want Prinergy to output separations. Clear this check box if you want Prinergy to output a single composite file.

Spot Color Handling

The options in this list determine how to handle spot colors on loose page output.

The list of values varies, depending on the output format selected in the **Output To** list.

- Select **Convert to process** to convert spot colors to process colors.

Note: When **Convert to process** is selected, **Vector Overprint Handling** (in the **ColorConvert** section) is automatically turned on to ensure the correct appearance of any overprinting spot colors.

- Select **Output separately** to preserve spot colors on output.
- Select **Don't output** to suppress output of spot colors.

Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots

This check box is available when **Output Separations Handling** is set to **Convert separations to process**.

If the input files contain overprinted spot colors, the Color Combiner, which is a plug-in to the renderer, will combine the layers and output the overprinted colors correctly.

When this check box is cleared, the renderer handles the conversion of spot colors to process colors if the following conditions exist:

- Input files are composite.
- All spot colors are set to opaque in the color database. (If a spot color is not in the color database, opaque is assumed.)

If the above conditions are not met, the Color Combiner will be used, even if the **Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box is cleared.

We recommend that you always select this check box.

See [About Color Combiner](#) on page [805](#).

Dielines Overprint Other Content

This check box is cleared and unavailable if the **Do Separations** check box is cleared and unavailable.

Select this check box to specify whether die lines overprint other content. Clear this check box if you do not want die lines to overprint other content.

The **Dielines Overprint Other Content** check box is available for the following outputs:

- DCS Raster
- Kodak Approval TIFF
- LQS TIFF
- VPS
- Windows Bitmap

Anti-Aliasing

Select this check box to enable anti-aliasing, and then in the **at Ratio** list, specify a ratio for anti-aliasing.

Anti-aliasing is a technique of improving the appearance of output by minimizing the "stair step" effect on rasterized output. It does so by rendering to a higher resolution than the intended output, and then downsampling to the intended output. This generates "averaged" pixels which softens the "stair step" effect on low-resolution output. The ratio value for anti-aliasing refers to the factor used to determine the intermediate resolution. A higher ratio results in higher quality, but can have an effect on output speed. For example, if the output is a 300 DPI 8-bit TIFF, and the anti-alias ratio is 4, Prinergy will render an intermediate output at 1200 DPI (4 x 300 DPI), and then downsample to the user-requested 300 DPI. Anti-aliasing is only available for 8-bit (256 shade) output.

Fail if font problems detected

Select this check box to fail the output process if a file has missing fonts.

Note: This feature is not available for vector outputs (PDF, PS2, PS3, EPS, DCS Vector, PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, CT/LW, and DELTA).

Ignore Embedded Fonts in Marks Files

Select this check box if you want Prinergy to ignore embedded fonts in a marks file and to look for the fonts in the `system fonts` folder.

Important: You must install the fonts in `%ServerName%\%AraxiHome%\AdobeExtreme\bin\fonts`, or the output will fail.

Convert Text to Paths

This check box converts fonts to outlines before a file is RIPed.

This option was added in Prinergy 3.0 when the CPSI 3016 RIP was included with Prinergy. This option helped situations where the 3016 RIP failed to process the fonts on certain jobs.

This option has limited usefulness now, but is included as a potential workaround in rare cases where fonts are not rendered correctly by the RIP. It is not recommended that you enable this on a permanent basis. When using this option for specific jobs, it is recommended that you ensure that both proofs and plates are output with this option.

Note that when you select the **Convert Text to Paths** check box, you will have text appear fatter on low-resolution proof output. You can overcome this appearance problem by either:

- Rendering to a higher resolution, if rendering to 1-bit output, such as Virtual Proofing System
- Using anti-aliasing, if rendering to contone output

Note: This check box is only available for raster output formats (.VPS, .TIFF, and so on).

Overlay Versioned Content

This check box applies to Layered PDF Versioning. For information, see the *Prinergy Layered PDF Versioning User Guide*.

Versioning Proof Mapping Color

This box applies to Layered PDF Versioning. For information, see the *Prinergy Layered PDF Versioning User Guide*.

Kodak Approval

Densities

Type an integer between -22 and +22.

For more information, see your Approval documentation.

CT/LW

CT Resolution

Type a resolution value in dots per inch (dpi) for the continuous tone (CW) files created during refine.

Note: 304.8 dpi = 12 dpm

LW Resolution

Type a resolution value in dots per inch (dpi) for the line work (LW) files created during refine.

Note: 2032.0 dpi = 80 dpm

Border Handling

Select the resolution at which the borders of overlapping images should be rendered:

- **Borders to CT:** Render borders at the resolution specified in the **CT Resolution** box. If two images overlap, the transition from one continuous tone (CT) image to the next may appear jagged.
- **Borders to LW:** Render borders at the resolution specified in the **LW Resolution** box. This improves the resolution of the overlap area but increases processing time and size of the output file.
- **Borders to Smart Edge:** Improves the appearance of CT-to-CT borders and ensures that the number of line work (LW) colors is not increased.

Output Kind

Select the format to which you want to output. You can output:

- **CT/LW Job Only**
- **TIFF/IT Job Only**
- **CT/LW and TIFF/IT Jobs**
- **CTAndLW**
- **AllToCT**

Force Vignette to CT

Select to convert gradations to the continuous tone (CT) layer and to convert gradations created as PostScript Level 2 to PostScript 3 (to obtain high-quality gradations when converted to CT data).

Converting to CT results in less banding and better quality images than converting to line work (LW). Converting to CT also adds noise to the resulting CT layers, creating a smoother image.

Note: If you clear this check box, some vignettes are still converted to CT data—for example, PostScript Level 2 gradations.

Force LW Vignette to CT

Select to convert the vignettes (gradations and blends) that AVR (Automatic Vignette Recognition) identifies to the continuous tone (CT) layer.

AVR recognizes a vignette as an image with a color difference ©, M, Y, or K) of 6% or less.

An output file in which blends are converted to CT is smaller than an output file in which blends are converted to line work (LW).

Screen Grabs

Select the resolution at which you want screen captures to be rendered:

- **Grabs to CT:** Renders screen captures at the resolution specified in the **CT Resolution** box.
- **Grabs to LW:** Renders screen captures at the resolution specified in the **LW Resolution** box.

CT Type

Select the CT (continuous tone) type that you want to output:

- **NativeCT:** Renders CT to the Kodak native (Whisper) CT format. This format supports up to four separations CMYK and up to 256 shades per separation.

Note: A Native CT file is given a `.ct` extension.

- **HandshakeCT:** Renders CT to the Kodak CT Handshake format. This format supports up to four separations CMYK and up to 256 shades per separation.

Note: A Handshake CT file is given a `.ch` extension.

- **NewCT:** Renders CT to the Kodak extended CT format that supports spot colors, up to 32 separations, and up to 256 shades per separation.

Note: A New CT file is given an `.nct` extension.

LW Type

Select the LW (line work) type that you want to output:

- **NativeLW:** Renders LW to the Kodak native (Whisper) LW format. This format supports up to four separations CMYK and up to 248 colors.

Note: A Native LW file is given an `.lw` extension.

- **HandshakeLW:** Renders LW to the Handshake LW format. This format supports up to four separations CMYK and up to 248 colors.

Note: A Handshake LW file is given an `.lh` extension.

- **NewLW:** Renders LW to the Kodak extended LW format. This format supports up to 32 separations CMYK and up to 64,000 colors.

Note: A New LW file is given an `.nlw` extension.

Make CT same size as Linework file

Select to insert 1-pixel DeviceCMYK CT images in the upper-left and lower-right corners of the media box on PDF pages. The resulting CT layer:

- Is the same size as the LW layer
- Has all DeviceCMYK process colorants

This check box is available only when:

- **Output To** at the top of the process template is set to **CT/LW (CTLWOutput)**.
- **Output Kind** in the **CT/LW** area of the **Render** section is set to **TIFF/IT Job Only** or **CT/LW and TIFF/IT Jobs**.

TIFF/IT Suffix

TIFF/IT FP

When outputting to TIFF/IT, specify the file name ending for the final page (FP) file. Type the file name suffix, which can include characters before the extension—for example, `_FP.tif`.

TIFF/IT CT

When outputting to TIFF/IT, specify the file name ending for the continuous tone (CT) file. Type the file name suffix, which can include characters before the extension—for example, `_CT.tif`.

TIFF/IT LW

When outputting to TIFF/IT, specify the file name ending for the line work (LW) file. Type the file name suffix, which can include characters before the extension—for example, `_LW.tif`.

TIFF/IT HC

When outputting to TIFF/IT, specify the file name ending for the high-resolution contone (HC) file. Type the file name suffix,

which can include characters before the extension—for example, `_HC.tif`.

Note: High-resolution contone (HC) files are line work files with more than 256 colors.

Device section of the CTLW Karat Output process template

This process template section identifies device-related parameters for the CT/LW output to a Karat digital press.

Output Type

Select **Absolute File or Printer**.

Submit as Multiple Print Jobs

Select to submit a separate job for each surface that is output.

Available when **Absolute File or Printer** is selected as the **Output Type** or when the **Delta** option in the **Render** section is enabled.

Device Path

Type the name of the Karat digital press using the UNC (Universal Naming Convention) path. Or you can click **Browse** to select the location.

You can also include the following marks in the Device Path box:

- `[$[jobname;n]`
- `[$[ProcessPlanName;n]`

Note: Replace the `n` in the marks name with a number between one and 99 to specify how many characters from the associated mark to include in the mark.

For example, `%JOB%Proofs\[jobname;6]` for **MyJobName** becomes `%JOB%Proofs\MyJobN`.

Mirror Print

Select to output media with the emulsion side down.

Negative Print

Select to output a negative image.

Cut Media

Select when you want the device to automatically cut the media.

Available when a device with a media cutting system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Load Media

Select when you want the device to automatically load the media.

Available when a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Unload Media

Select when you want the device to automatically unload media.

Available when a format for a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Manually

Select when you want the device to prompt the operator to load the device manually.

Available when a format for a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list.

Media Unload Mode

Select the mode for unloading media.

Available when a format for a device with a media loading system is selected in the **Output To** list. See your device's documentation for more information.

Marks section in the CTLW Karat Output process template

This process template section determines how marks are handled during CT/LW output to a Karat digital press.

Extra Margin for Marks and Bleed

When calculating the position of pages, additional space is included for marks and the bleed, if indicated.

Provide margin values for **Left**, **Right**, **Top**, and **Bottom** margins, in the selected unit of measure.

Bleed for Unassigned Pages

Prints a bleed line when proofing PDF pages that have not yet been assigned to a position of an imposition plan. When assigned pages are proofed, the bleed lines are taken from the imposition plan.

Provide values for **Left**, **Right**, **Top**, and **Bottom** in the selected unit of measure.

Crop Distance Beyond Bleed for Pages

Creates an additional margin beyond the bleed marks to allow output of the software information that is positioned outside the bleed.

Provide values for **Left**, **Right**, **Top**, and **Bottom**, in the selected unit of measure.

This value, and any value that extends the crop beyond the page size, allows the entire page image to be output (up to the page size defined by other layout measurements).

A negative value moves the crop inside the bleed by the specified amount.

If the pages are assigned to page positions linked to an imposition plan, this value is added to the bounding box defined on the imposition plan. If the assigned page positions are linked to multiple imposition plans, the largest bounding box is calculated and this value is added to the calculated measurement.

Default Marks Font

Here's an example of how you could use the feature:

1. Create a Preps imposition file that includes a variable mark, such as \$ [PageName].
2. In Prinerger, in the **Default Marks Font** box in the **Marks** section of the imposition output process template, type the exact name of the double-byte font that can be used in case the variable mark's original font was not a double-byte font. The font must reside either in a Prinerger-aware font folder or in the job's font search path.
3. Submit the imposition file to Prinerger.

If the imposition file contains a page name with double-byte fonts, Prinerger outputs the file with these characters.

Sheet Marks

Identify the name and location of a PDF file containing sheet marks (for example variable marks, logo, and signoff line). Click **Browse** to locate and select a file.

Calibrate

When this check box is selected, the plate curve and print curve are applied to the mark. The curves applied are the ones

selected in the **Plate Curve** list and **Print Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template. When this check box is cleared, only the plate curve is applied. To prevent the application of the plate curve to a mark, select **%None%** in the **Plate Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template.

Locate Sheet Marks Adjacent to

(See [Sheet marks options explained](#) on page 695 and [Sheet marks on final output](#) on page 691.)

Select **Left**, **Right**, **Bottom**, or **Top** to determine on which edge of the paper or plate a sheet mark is placed.

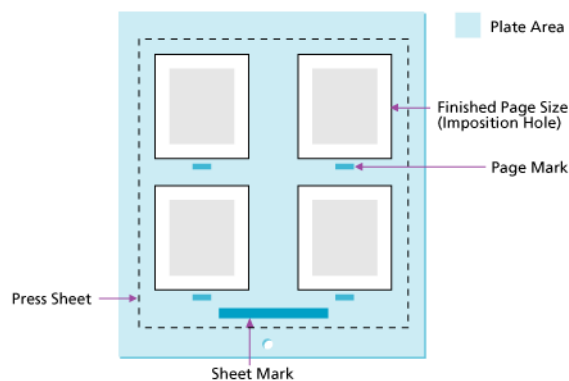
The default setting is **Bottom**.

at Distance

(See [Calculating the at distance value on final output](#) on page 692.)

Determines where, relative to the edge, the mark is placed:

- Sheet marks are placed relative to the plate edge. Depending on the distance you type, you can place the sheet mark on the press sheet or on the plate.
- Page marks are placed relative to the finished page size (the imposition hole).



Justified

Select **Left**, **Center**, or **Right** to determine the justification for the sheet mark.

The default value is **Center**.

Page Marks

Identify the name and location of a PDF file containing page marks. Click **Browse** to locate and select a file.

You may need to provide space for page marks by increasing gutter measurements.

The variable mark **\${PagePositionNumber}** or **\${PPN}** can be used to verify that the pages are in the correct page set positions in the imposition.

Calibrate

When this check box is selected, the plate curve and print curve are applied to the mark. The curves applied are the ones selected in the **Plate Curve** list and **Print Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template. When this check box is cleared, only the plate curve is applied. To prevent the application of the plate curve to a mark, select **%None%** in the **Plate Curve** list in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the process template.

Locate Page Marks Adjacent to

Select where to place the page marks in relation to the page's trim box.

When you select **Right** or **Left**, the page marks rotate as follows:

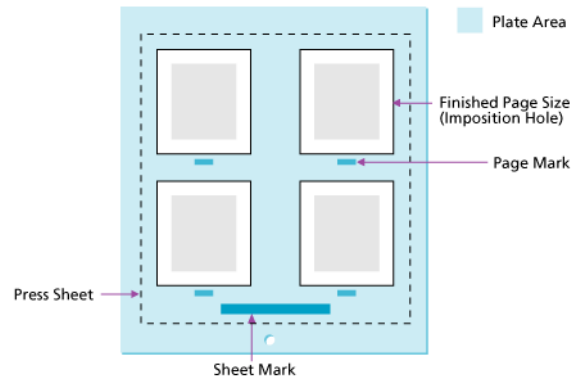
- **Left**—rotates the mark 90° counterclockwise
- **Right**—rotates the mark 90° clockwise
- **Bottom**—no rotation
- **Top**—no rotation

at Distance

(See [Calculating the at distance value on final output](#) on page 692.)

Determines where, relative to the edge, the mark is placed:

- Sheet marks are placed relative to the plate edge. Depending on the distance you type, you can place the sheet mark on the press sheet or on the plate.
- Page marks are placed relative to the finished page size (the imposition hole).



Draw Trim and Bleed Marks

Determines where, in relation to each page, trim and bleed marks should be placed. Trim and bleed marks are created in registration color and are 0.25 points in weight. Bleed marks are solid lines; trim marks are dashed lines. Trim marks are drawn according to the option selected:

None

Trim and bleed marks are not drawn.

On Content

Trim and bleed marks are drawn on the content (complete trim marks are drawn on the proof).

Outside Content

Trim and bleed marks do not extend to the content (only the four corners appear on the proof).

Note: In order to print bleed lines on loose page output, the page must be assigned to a page set that is linked to an imposition plan. The bleed lines are taken from the imposition plan.

Safe Protect Box

The safe protect box enables you to print proofing lines within the trim box (or media box) on a proof to check that the page content is within the page margins. The safe protect box is drawn on the proof inside the trim or media box.

This feature is available in the loose page output and imposition output process templates when the **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks** option is set to **On Content** or **Outside Content**.

Note: If you select **Output To Virtual Proof**, you can select the **Safe Protect Box** check box even if you select **None** for **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks**. In this case, you can view the safe protect box in the Virtual

Proofing System software. The safe protect box is not printed on the proof.

Select the **Safe Protect Box** check box and in each of the **Left, Right, Top,** and **Bottom** boxes, type the distance from the trim or media box that you want the safe protect lines to appear. You can type different numbers in each of the four sides.

When calculating where to place the safe protect lines, note that Prinergy measures from various starting points as shown in the following table.

| Proof | Safe protect box is measured from this location |
|------------|---|
| Imposition | The imposition hole trim box |
| Loose page | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The PDF page trim box—if the PDF page includes trim • The PDF page media box—if the PDF page does not include trim <p>If a PDF page includes trim, it appears in the Trim Size column in the Pages pane of the Pages view.</p> <p>Note: If the PDF page does not include trim, you can define it using the Prinergy Geometry Editor plug-in for Adobe Acrobat. After the trim is defined, refine the page again.</p> |

The lines of the safe protect box are drawn according to the option selected for trim and bleed marks:

- If you selected **Outside Content**, only the four corners of the safe protect box appear on the proof.
- If you selected **On Content**, the complete box is drawn on the proof.

Note: If you entered information for **Trim Adjustment**, the **Safe Protect Box** dimensions are calculated based on the **Trim Adjustment** dimensions.

Trim Adjustment

If you are using pages that have no trim or an incorrect trim box, in the **Trim Adjustment** area, type the distance from the edge of the page that you want trim lines to appear in each of the **Left, Right, Top,** and **Bottom** boxes.

You can type different numbers in each of the four sides.

Trim Adjustment is available only when you select **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks**, and **On Content** or **Outside Content**.

Note: If you enter information for **Trim Adjustment**, the **Safe Protect Box** dimensions are calculated based on the **Trim Adjustment** dimensions.

Locate Crop Mark of Length

Available if **On Content** or **Outside Content** is selected in the **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks** box.

Determines the length of the crop marks to be drawn, in the selected unit of measure.

The **at Distance** box determines how far away from content to draw the crop mark.

at Distance

Available when **On Content** or **Outside Content** is selected in the **Draw Trim and Bleed Marks** box.

Determines how far away from content to draw the crop mark.

Unit Used for Variable Marks

Select the unit you want to use to measure variable marks—inch, cm (centimeter), mm (millimeter), or pts (points).

Slugline

A slugline mark is a text or variable mark that you place on loose page, imposition, or final output. Instead of using **Sheet Marks** or **Page Marks**, you can use **Slugline** to quickly place a slugline mark.

A slugline mark does not need a PDF file, so you can easily place a mark without creating a PDF file. However, a slugline mark is just a line of text or a variable mark. You can only specify the text size.

- In the **Slugline mark** box, type the text or variable mark.
- In the **Text size** box, type the font size for the mark.
- In **Place on media**, specify the distance **from left** and **from bottom**.

Note: If you are using a variable mark in your slugline, the `_offset` and `_replace` parameters, and any page-oriented variables parameters, are not currently supported.

Proofs and final output

About supported output formats

This topic describes the output formats that Prinergy supports and divides them into raster and vector output formats. The output format is selected at the top of each output process template.

The following qualities are also specified in the format descriptions:

- Composite or separated (specified for all output formats)
 - **Composite**—All separations are together in one page in one file.

Note: Not all composite formats support spot colors. Some composite formats support CMYK process colors only.
 - **Separated**— All separations are in separate channels or files.
- Continuous or screened (specified for raster output only)
 - **Contone** (continuous tone (CT))— 8 bits per channel, 256 shades
 - **Screened** (halftone)— 1 bit per channel, prescreened, 1 shade

The following information pertains to output formats selected in the **Output To** list on output process templates.

If you want to move a Prinergy job from one Prinergy system to another, see [About exporting jobs](#) on page 863 or see [About moving jobs](#) on page 112.

| Option | Description | Recommended Use |
|---|--|--|
| Raster Output: Output files are bitmaps that represent an image as a matrix of dots. The output is similar to what one might get from a scanner. Raster output is the result of sending vector data such as text or paths through a RIP. | | |
| DCS Raster | Creates screened or continuous tone, separated output only. Contains already-RIPed, screened bitmap data that can be used with any raster-based proofer. In contrast, DCS vector output contains data that is not RIPed or screened, but is intended to be further processed in another workflow or RIP. Output of spot colors is supported. | Screened: Use when you need a prescreened DCS (copydot-like file. This is when you want to preprocess a file to speed final output, or when you want to lock down the screening. Contone: Use when you want the final RIP to perform the screening, and the final RIP requires rasterized input. Using this method, text edges will appear fuzzy. |
| Epson 5000 and Epson 9000 | Creates 1-bit screened output. Spot colors are converted to process. | Epson 5000 and Epson 9000 printers respectively. |
| EPS Raster | Creates screened or continuous tone, composite output only. This produces one composite bitmap file. Spot colors are converted to process colors (CMYK recipes). Output is supported on four-color process devices. | Third-party proofing devices that support raster output— for example, Hewlett Packard laser printers. |

| Option | Description | Recommended Use |
|---|--|--|
| HPRTL | <p>Creates screened or continuous tone, composite output only.</p> <p>This produces one composite bitmap file per separation. Spot colors are converted to process colors (CMYK recipes).</p> <p>Output supported on four-color process devices.</p> | HP DesignJet plotters. |
| JPEG | <p>Creates continuous tone, composite, RGB output only.</p> <p>This produces one composite bitmap file. Spot colors are converted to process colors (CMYK recipes).</p> | In some circumstances, useful for Web proofing. |
| Kodak Approval EPS | <p>Creates 1-bit screened output.</p> <p>Spot colors are converted to process colors (CMYK recipes).</p> | Kodak Approval printers when connected via AIT or Global Graphics Harlequin. |
| Kodak Approval TIFF | <p>Creates 1-bit separated output suitable for sending to Approval printers.</p> | Kodak Approval printers when connected via AIT or Harlequin. |
| Kodak Proofer (KPS direct connect) | <p>Creates continuous tone, composite output. Spot colors are converted to process colors (CMYK recipes).</p> <p>Prints directly to the Veris, Matchprint Inkjet, or Kodak Approval proofer</p> | Kodak Veris digital proofer, Matchprint Inkjet proofer, and Kodak Approval proofer when connected via Kodak Proofing Software (KPS). |
| LQS TIFF | <p>Creates screened or continuous tone, separated output only.</p> <p>This produces one bitmap file. Spot colors are supported.</p> | Kodak Lotem Spectrum platesetter. |

| Option | Description | Recommended Use |
|---|---|--|
| PDF Raster | <p>Creates screened or continuous tone, composite output only.</p> <p>This produces one composite bitmap file.</p> <p>Spot colors can be converted either by Prinergy or by the digital printer.</p> | <p>Any digital printer that accepts PDF files.</p> <p>If the digital printer is used for final output, choose continuous tone output and configure the digital printer to convert spot colors to process.</p> <p>If the digital printer is used for proofing a press job, choose screened output and convert spot colors to process in Prinergy.</p> <p>Other uses of PDF raster:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Providing remote sites with a soft proof PDF that accurately represents Prinergy's interpretation of the original vector file. • Creating an instant copydot version of any page. <p>Sites receiving a PDF raster file should configure Acrobat or their RIP to respect overprints.</p> |
| Scitex CT (contone) | <p>Creates continuous tone, composite output only.</p> <p>This produces one continuous tone (CT). Spot colors are converted to process colors (CMYK recipes).</p> | <p>Use for output to devices that require Scitex CT files.</p> |
| TIFF | <p>Creates screened or continuous tone, separated or composite output.</p> <p>If separated output, spot colors are retained and output.</p> <p>If composite output, spot colors are converted to process colors (CMYK recipes).</p> | <p>Screened separated output</p> <p>Lotem 400 platesetters.</p> <p>Kodak Dolev 800 V imagesetters.</p> <p>Spectrum proofing devices: Lotem Quantum and Trendsetter devices.</p> <p>Composite continuous tone output</p> <p>Matchprint Inkjet proofer.</p> <p>Other third-party proofing devices.</p> |
| Virtual Proof | <p>Creates screened separated output. Spot colors are retained.</p> <p>Produces a Virtual Proofing System bitmap file. Creates one bitmap file per separation.</p> | <p>Virtual Proofing System software.</p> |
| Windows Bitmap | <p>Creates screened or continuous tone, separated output.</p> <p>Spot colors are not supported.</p> | <p>Can be useful in some circumstances requiring BMP output.</p> |
| <p>Vector output: Output is not screened or RIPed. Output files are often smaller and image faster than raster format files. Text and paths are retained in vector form.</p> | | |

| Option | Description | Recommended Use |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| DCS (Vector output) | <p>Creates separated output.</p> <p>Spot colors are retained. The output DCS files can contain low-resolution previews and OPI information. The purpose is to produce reliable PostScript for downstream imposition, page layout, and RIPing, outside of the Prinergy system. Downstream systems include Preps, Kodak Allegro, Taipan, and imagesetter systems.</p> | <p>Use when you want to place the page within other software such as in a QuarkXPress document or Preps imposition.</p> <p>Note: This format will not work if you want to send directly to an imagesetting device that does not have software.</p> |
| EPS (Vector output) | <p>Creates high-quality PostScript 3-compatible EPS files.</p> | <p>Use when you need to place a file into desktop software, such as QuarkXPress. Final results of placing an EPS are often superior to placing a PDF in the desktop software.</p> |
| PDF (Vector output) | <p>If the input file is a composite PDF, the output can be either composite or separated.</p> <p>If the input file is a separated PDF, the output can only be separated.</p> <p>If launched from Signatures or Separations view, creates an imposed PDF flat. If launched from Pages view (pages pane, Pageset pane), creates single-page or multi-page PDFs, depending on Process Template settings.</p> | <p>Use when you want to send the page or imposition file to a RIP or software application that can consume or work with PDF files, or to create a PDF soft proof.</p> <p>You can also omit and map separations for composite input files when outputting vector PDF (separated or composite). If using Legacy Versioning (2 pages in 1 page set position), vector PDF output will give you a single PDF with the layered PDF on top of the other. Various proofing-related functions, such as adding page marks, trim lines, and creating a signature booklet, can also be accomplished with vector PDF.</p> |
| PDF/X-1a:2001 (Vector output) | <p>Creates composite output only.</p> <p>Spot colors are retained.</p> <p>Creates a flat or single-page PDF file.</p> | <p>Use when you want to send the file to a RIP or software that can consume or work with PDF files, or to create a PDF soft proof.</p> <p>Also useful when exchanging advertisement files or page files.</p> |
| PS2 (Vector output) | <p>Creates a separated PostScript file using PostScript Level 2.</p> | <p>Use when you want to send the page directly to an imagesetting device, to impose in Preps, or to output flats.</p> |
| PS3 (PostScriptOut) | <p>If the input file is a composite PDF file, the output can be either composite or separated PostScript 3.</p> <p>If the input file is a separated PDF file, the output can only be separated.</p> | <p>Use when you want to send the page directly to an imagesetting device or to impose in Preps, or to output flats.</p> |

| Option | Description | Recommended Use |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| CT/LW (CTLWOutput) | Outputs PDF pages to CEPS pages in Scitex CT/LW or TIFF/IT format. CT/LW supports spot colors; TIFF/IT does not. | Use CT/LW for output to other systems, for example, Brisque or gravure imaging systems that require CT/LW files. Use TIFF/IT for advertising agencies that require TIFF/IT files. Note: To specify CT/LW or TIFF/IT output, see the output process template Render section. |

About support output file types

Prinerjy supports the following types of output files:

Raster formats:

- DCS Raster (screened or continuous tone)
- Epson 5000 (screened)
- Epson 9000 (screened)
- EPS Raster (screened or continuous tone)
- HPRTL (screened or continuous tone)
- JPEG (continuous tone)
- Kodak Approval EPS (screened)
- Kodak Approval TIFF (screened)
- Kodak Proofers (KPS direct connect) (continuous tone)
- LQS TIFF
- PDF Raster (screened or continuous tone)
- Scitex CT (continuous tone)
- TIFF (screened or continuous tone)
- Virtual Proofing System
- Windows Bitmap (screened or continuous tone)

Vector formats:

- DCS-2 Vector
- EPS Vector
- PDF Vector (separated or composite, depending on input)
- PDF/X-1a:2001
- PDF/X-3
- PostScript Level 2 (separated)
- PostScript 3 (separated or composite, depending on input)
- CT/LW or TIFF/IT

For information about each output file type, see About Output Formats.

About generating proofs and final output

After refining your files, you can generate the following types of output:

- **Loose page proofs**—use to output unassigned pages.
- **Imposition proofs**—use to output signatures for proofing.
- **Final output**—use to output signatures for final output.

To generate these output types, you must have created an appropriate output process template. Once you have an appropriate output process template, you can use it to start a process.

See also:

[About process templates](#) on page 183

[About supported output formats](#) on page 620

[About support output file types](#) on page 625

[About PDF/X](#) on page 630

[About soft proofs](#) on page 636

[About previewing loose page output](#) on page 752

Remaking plates

If you need to remake a plate, you can do so using the Plate Remake tool. This enables you to remake a plate using the same settings and output device that were used to output the original plate.

For example, suppose that you are printing a job at night and notice that one of the plates that was made during the day shift is damaged. You can use the Plate Remake tool to quickly remake the plate without needing to know how to use Workshop or what settings the day shift operator used to make the original plate, and without opening the job or modifying any process templates. The new plate is output using the settings that were applied when the original plate was made, including being output to the same device that was originally used.

Plate information is kept for 30 days, so you can remake a plate using the Plate Remake tool for up to 30 days after the original plate was output.

To remake a plate using the Plate Remake tool, you must know the identification number of the plate.

Note: For a unique identification number to be printed on a plate for possible remake later, the variable mark **\$(PlateID)** must be included in one of the following: the imposition marks file that was imported with the imposition; the sheet marks file specified in the **Marks** section of the imposition output or final output process template; or the **Slugline mark** box in the **Marks** section of the imposition output or final output process template.

1. Start Prinergy Workshop.
2. In Job Finder, select **Tools > Plate Remake**.
3. In the Plate Remake dialog box, in the **Plate ID** box, type the identification number of the plate that you want to remake.

The **Plate Details** box is automatically populated with information about the plate—for example, the job, imposition, signature, surface, and separation.

4. In the **Work Type** list, select the reason why you are remaking the plate.

Note: The work type applies only if you have Link software set up to work with Prinergy.

5. If you want to customize the work type, click **Edit**. For information about customizing the work type, see [Customizing work types](#) on page 1097.

You cannot change any other settings that were used to make the original plate. For example, you cannot change the output device.

6. Click **OK**.

The plate is output to the device specified in the process template that was used to output the original plate.

Plate Remake dialog box

Use the Plate Remake dialog box to remake a plate using the same settings and output device that were used to output the original plate.

Plate ID

Type the identification number of the plate that you want to remake.

Plate Details

When you enter the plate ID, this box is automatically populated with information about the plate—for example, the job, imposition, signature, surface, and separation.

Work Type

If you have Business Link software set up to work with Prinergy, select the reason why you are remaking the plate.

To customize the work type, click **Edit**. For information about customizing the work type, see [Customizing work types](#) on page 1097.

See also:

[Remaking plates](#) on page 626

Applying ColorFlow curves and making tonal adjustments

If a printing plate has imaged and run on press, but the press is not printing with the desired response, you may need to recreate the plate using a different ColorFlow curve channel for one or more separations. You can also make tonal adjustments to the assigned ColorFlow curve channel. These adjustments, made on-the-fly from the Start Process dialog box, are appended to the ColorFlow calibration curves and have no effect on ColorFlow colorstores.

Applying a custom ColorFlow curve channel may be required if you have a spot color that cannot use the default calibration curve—for example, a metallic spot color. In such a situation, you can define a custom curve channel in ColorFlow for Metallics. When a job is run, selected spot color separations may be mapped to this (or another) curve channel.

Tonal adjustments may be required because of mechanical problems on the press or by lithographic problems caused by press ink/water adjustments. Or else, a customer might simply want a color change. A common solution is to remake one or more plates with an adjusted calibration curve.

Note: This is different from the Plate Remake feature, where the primary purpose is to produce an *identical* plate to replace a worn or broken plate, using the same unique plate ID number, and the same settings and output device that were used to output the original plate. Tonal adjustment is used when you need to produce a different version of the plate.

1. In Prinergy Workshop, start a final output process.
2. In the Start Process dialog box, click the **Tonal Control** button.
The Tonal Control dialog box opens, automatically populated with the information from the separations in the surfaces of the job selected for output.
3. From **Separation** list, select the first separation that you want to work on.
The **Curve Channel** list displays the ColorFlow curve channel that has been assigned for the selected separation.
4. From the **Curve Channel** list, select a different curve channel, if required.
The details of the curve channel that is selected are displayed in the values and slider positions in the **Tonal Adjustments** section.

5. In the **Tonal Adjustments** section, drag the sliders to make adjustments. Alternatively, you can type the values in the boxes under the sliders. The adjustment controls include:
 - The **Midtone (50%)** control affects the full tonal range. The **Quartertone**, **3/4 Tone**, **Highlight**, and **Shadow** points are adjusted according to the values in the **Midtone** control.
 - The **Quartertone (25%)** control affects the lower half of the tonal range. The **Highlight** point is adjusted according to the value in the **Quartertone** control.
 - The **3/4 Tone (75%)** control affects the upper half of the tonal range. The **Shadow** point is adjusted according to the value in the **3/4 Tone** control.
 - The **Highlight (10%)** and **Shadow (90%)** controls are the most localized, and do not affect any other adjustment points.
 - Clicking **Reset** restores the tonal adjustment values to 0.0 and the sliders to midpoint.
6. Repeat the process for any other separations that require tonal adjustment.
7. Click **OK** to return to the Start Process dialog box. The calibration curve channels are modified according to the specified tonal adjustments.

Note: If you remake a plate using the **Tools > Plate Remake** menu item, all the tonal adjustments applied to the original plate will be applied to the remake. You cannot make further tonal adjustments to a remade plate.

Note: It is not possible to reduce solid colors (with 100% ink) using a calibration curve adjusted with tonal adjustment. This is a limitation of Adobe. If you want to reduce 100% solid colors (in particular, spot colors), you need to set the **Output PT** parameter so that the **Screen Solids** value is 90%. For example, in **Final Output > Calibration & Screening**, the **Screen Solids** value is set to **90%**.

Tonal Control dialog box

Use the Tonal Control dialog box to apply custom calibration curves for a specific separation, surface, or job selected for plate output, or to make on-the-fly tonal adjustments to those curves.

Separation

This list contains a list of each separation, in any surface of the job, that has been selected for output in the job. Select the separation that you want to work on.

Curve Channel

This list displays the ColorFlow curve channel that has been assigned for the selected separation. Use this list to select a different curve channel, if required.

If you have a spot color that cannot use the default calibration curve (for example, metallics), you must apply a custom ColorFlow curve channel.

Tonal Adjustments

This section contains sliders that you can drag to make tonal adjustments to the selected curve channel. Alternatively, you can type the values in the boxes under the sliders.

Note: The sliders may appear too short if your screen resolution is set low. If this occurs, increase your screen resolution.

Midtone (50%)

This control affects the full tonal range. The **Quarternone, 3/4 Tone, Highlight** and **Shadow** points are adjusted according to the values in the **Midtone** control.

Quarternone (25%)

This control affects the lower half of the tonal range. The **Highlight** point is adjusted according to the value in the **Quarternone** control.

3/4 Tone (75%)

This control affects the upper half of the tonal range. The **Shadow** point is adjusted according to the value in the **3/4 Tone** control.

Highlight (10%)

This control affects the highlight tones only, and does not affect any other adjustment points.

Shadow (90%)

This control affects the shadow tones only, and does not affect any other adjustment points.

Reset

This button restores the tonal adjustment values to 0.0 and the sliders to midpoint.

About PDF/X

Prinerger can generate PDF/X-1a:2001 and PDF/X-3:2003 files.

PDF/X is an exchange format for sending pages between a page preparation site and a printing site. PDF/X is a subset of the full PDF specification.

A PDF/X file is intended to be more predictable because it has commonly agreed-on characteristics. Using PDF/X does not guarantee the performance of a file, but a PDF/X file will be free of certain common prepress problems such as missing fonts and images, and non-press color space.

Outputting to PDF/X

If you are intending to output PDF/X, you must first choose Refine to PDF/X, rather than just outputting to PDF/X. Prinergy detects and deals with many PDF/X issues at the refine stage. When you select a PDF/X format when outputting, Prinergy checks the master files for PDF/X conformance. However, some issues, including font embedding, image replacement, and color conversion cannot be handled on output and cause Prinergy to fail the file.

What are the flavors of PDF/X?

PDF/X-1 family:

PDF/X-1:1999—Approved by ANSI (American National Standards Institute) as PDF/X-1 in October 1999. This format is based on PDF 1.2 plus Adobe Tech Note 5188.

PDF/X-1:2001—Approved by ISO (International Organization for Standardization) in April 2001. This format is based on PDF 1.3. It is an updated international version.

PDF/X-1a:2001—Approved by ISO in April 2001. This format is based on PDF 1.3. Embedded files are not allowed. This is the version that Prinergy can refine to.

PDF/X-1a:2003—Not yet approved, but the approval process is underway. This format is based on PDF 1.4, but will not allow such 1.4 features as transparency and JBIG2 compression.

PDF/X-2—Not yet approved. All fonts must be embedded. PDF/X-2 does not use OPI; instead it uses a Global Unique ID (GUID) to reference an external file. The external files must be PDF/X-1 or PDF/X-3 files.

PDF/X-3:2002—Approved by ISO in 2002. This format is based on PDF 1.3. It allows for PDF/X-1 color spaces plus L*a*b and RGB spaces.

PDF/X-3:2003—Not yet approved, but the approval process is underway. This format is based on PDF 1.4, but does not allow such 1.4 features as transparency and JBIG2 compression.

Technical requirements of PDF/X-1a:2001 and PDF/X-3:2003

- Fonts must be embedded.
- If OPI is used, the high-resolution image must be swapped into the file and the OPI comment removed.
- Transfer functions (TR and TR2) are not allowed. Prinergy fails pages that contain custom transfer functions.
- Pre-separated pages are not allowed. For whole-page copydot DCS input, Prinergy will try to recomposite the file, which would allow a PDF/X-1a:2001-compliant page.
- Spot colors and CMYK are allowed; RGB and L*a*b* are not allowed.
- LZW and JBIG2 compression are not allowed.
- Bounding boxes are restricted. Each page must have a media box that can include either a trim box or an art box, but not both. A page can have a bleed box or crop box. The trim box or art box must be entirely inside the bleed box or crop box.
- Halftone issues:
 - Named halftones are not permitted. This means you cannot use DotShop screening, since Prinergy relies on the halftone name to choose the screening. When refining to PDF/X-1a:2001, Prinergy removes any halftone dictionary that contains a HalftoneName key, including DotShop halftone dictionaries.
 - There is no Halftone Phase (HTP key).
 - Halftone Type can only be 1 or 5 (no threshold screening).
- Embedded PostScript fragments and PDF features beyond PDF 1.3 are not supported. Thus, transparency cannot be present; Prinergy flattens transparencies in PDF 1.4 input.
- Annotation use is limited. Annotations are allowed if they lie entirely outside the bleed box, or outside the art box or trim box if there is no bleed box. The exception is the TrapNet annotation, which is allowed without restrictions.

Note: Prinergy does not use TrapNet annotations for trapping.

Prinergy does not use TrapNet annotations for trapping.

When refining to PDF/X, Prinergy detects and deals with all of the above issues where possible. If it is not possible to make a PDF/X-compliant file, Prinergy fails the file.

What happens during refining

When you refine to PDF/X, the **Normalize**, **Optimize**, and **ColorConvert** options in the refine process template must be selected.

During the normalize process, Prinergy does OPI replacement and embeds fonts. The **Search for High-Resolution Images in Image**

Search Paths option is enabled, though you can disable it. The **Fail on Missing Fonts** option is enabled and you cannot disable it.

During color conversion, the input color space is converted to CMYK plus spot colors.



CAUTION: If you have a L*a*b* PANTONE color library installed, selecting the **Look Up Recipe in Color Database** option in the **Source of Color Recipes** area of the **Spot Color Handling** section may cause Prinergy to fail the file. If the option is not selected, and color recipes are defined using L*a*b*, Prinergy may also fail the file. L*a*b* color space is not allowed for PDF/X-1a:2001 and PDF/X-3:2003 files.

During optimization, Prinergy checks for the remaining PDF/X issues. If it is not possible to create a PDF/X-compliant file, Prinergy fails the file.

What happens when I select PDF/X-1a:2001 when outputting in Prinergy?

The selected master files are checked for PDF/X-1a:2001 conformance, in case a master file was edited and a non-PDF/X-1a:2001 element or characteristic was introduced into the file. Some issues are corrected at this point. However, some issues—including font embedding, image replacement, and color conversion—cannot be handled at this point and cause Prinergy to fail the file. The file must then be refined to PDF/X-1a:2001 again.

If you select multiple pages and select **Save Pages to Separate Files** in the Publish PDF Files dialog box on output, the selected files are combined into one PDF/X-1a:2001 file.

What is the recommended workflow?

It is important to refine to PDF/X, because it ensures that your proof cycle is based on the same PDF/X file that is output and sent to the printer site.

1. Refine input files to PDF/X-1a: 2001
2. Refine (including OPI, font embedding, and color matching)
3. PDF/X-1a: 2001 digital master files are outputted. From the master files, you can:
 - Display in Acrobat View, or print on a printer which will accept PDF/X as an input type, OR
 - Export to PDF/X-1a, and send the files to a third party printer

Can I simply refine files to PDF as usual, and then output to PDF/X-1a:2001 on Vector JTP output?

Though it might be possible to do so in some cases, in general this is not the recommended way of working. In particular, color matching must be performed during refine. A file needing color matching will not be converted to PDF/X-1a:2001 on output if it has not been refined to

PDF/X-1a:2001. Other issues addressed during refine include font embedding and OPI.

What happens during vector output (Publish PDF or Vector JTP)

When you select PDF/X when outputting in Prinergy, the selected master files are checked for PDF/X conformance. This is in case a master file has been edited and a non-PDF/X element or characteristic has been introduced into the file. Some issues will be corrected at this point, but some issues—including font embedding, image replacement, and color conversion—cannot be handled at this point and will cause Prinergy to fail the file. The file must be refined to PDF/X again.

Must I do OPI replacement?

PDF/X-1a:2001 requires that files not contain OPI comments. The expectation is that OPI replacement was done and that the receiver of the PDF/X file needs no additional external resources (fonts or images) to process the file.

Prinergy does OPI replacement by default during refining to PDF/X-1a:2001. In some cases, the high-resolution image is embedded in the document but the file still contains OPI comments. An example of this is where high-resolution TIFF files are placed in QuarkXPress and printed as fat files. In these cases, Prinergy tries to perform OPI replacement in these cases and generates a warning or error.

If you are working in a non-OPI workflow, clear both the **Search for High-Resolution Images in Image Search Paths** and **Fail On Missing Images** check boxes in the refine process template.

Can I refine a PDF/X-1a:2001 file?

Yes. Prinergy treats a PDF/X-1a:2001 file like any PDF input file. The file can be refined to a regular PDF file, or it can be refined to a PDF/X-1a:2001 file again. If it is refined to a regular PDF file, it no longer has the PDF/X-1a:2001 identification keys. If it is refined to PDF/X-1a:2001, Prinergy checks it the same as any other input file that is refined to PDF/X-1a:2001.

What about PDF/X checkers?

Kodak has tested the following PDF/X checkers:

- Apago PDF/X-1 Checkup, version 2.5
- DDAP PDF/X Verifier version 2.0
- Callas pdfInspektor2, version 1.0
- Enfocus PitStop, version 5.02 using Profile: PDF/X-1a:2001 v2

In our testing, our PDF/X-1a output consistently passes the Apago and DDAP checkers.

We found that pdfInspektor2 and PitStop provide error notifications in the following cases even though the file is PDF/X-1a:2001-compliant:

- Callas pdfInspektor reports in all cases that “OutputIntent Info missing,” even though all PDF/X-1a:2001 required information is present.
- Callas pdfInspektor reports the use of BX and EX operators as errors, even though the PDF/X-1a:2001 specification says these are okay. What is prohibited are non-PDF 1.3 operators, even within BX and EX.
- Enfocus PitStop reports that “Document does not use modern compression mechanisms.” This is generated in PitStop by the “Compression is not optimal” check, which is not related to PDF/X-1a:2001. If this check is left out, this error is not reported.
- Enfocus PitStop reports “Custom halftone function found” whenever there is a Halftone (HT) key. But the Halftone key is permitted in a PDF/X-1a:2001 file if the Halftone Type is 1 or 5.

Are there any known issues with the implementation of PDF/X-1a:2001 in Prinergy?

If a PDF/X page that has the Trapped key set to true is brought into Prinergy and refined with the **Trap** section of the process template enabled, Prinergy tries to retrap the page.

When creating a PDF/X-1a:2001 output file, the Trapped key in the PDF/X-1a:2001 file is always set to false. This is because it is difficult to automatically determine if all trapping has been done.

If an input file is a PDF 1.4 file, then the master file has the PDF 1.4 version tag in it, and possibly a Metadata key. (Note that PDF 1.4 transparency will have been flattened.) On output (using vector PDF output, or Publish PDF output), the file has the proper PDF 1.3 version tag and no Metadata key.

If an input file is a PDF file and does not have the Title or Producer keys filled out, then the master file likewise does not have these keys filled out. On output, the Producer key is filled out, but the Title key is not.

What if I don't want to use the PDF/X feature in Prinergy?

If you don't want to use PDF/X format as your digital master file, simply configure your process template to generate PDF instead of PDF/X-1a:2001. Prinergy generates digital master files the way it always does. This allows the Prinergy functionality that is not possible with PDF/X.

What about PDF/X-3?

A PDF/X-3 file can contain Output Intents, which indicate the file's intended target device, including its color profile.

The system warns you if PDF/X-3 input files contain Output Intents and shows the value of the Output Intents in the history log. This happens automatically; you do not need to enable this feature.

If your input file is PDF/X-3, you can use the color profile specified in the PDF/X-3 Output Intents. Select the **Prefer embedded PDF/X-3 Output Intents for Final Output Profile** check box, which is located in the **ColorConvert** section of the refine process template.

If your output is PDF/X-3, you can specify an ICC profile or named print condition for the PDF/X-3 Output Intents in the **Output Intents** area of the **File Format** section of the output process template.

To check PDF/X-3 compliance and color accuracy of a workflow, refine and output the Altona Test Suite.

Where Can I Find More Information About PDF/X?

- <http://www.iso.org/>—ISO-15930 description of the differences in technical requirements between PDF/X-1a:2001 and PDF/X-3:2003
- <http://www.npes.org/standards/cgats.html>—a link to CGATS (Committee for Graphic Arts Technologies Standards), the group writing the specification
- <http://direct2.timeinc.com>—Time Inc. recommendations on file submission

See also:

[Using the Altona Test Suite](#) on page [662](#)

About soft proofs

A soft proof is a proof displayed on the monitor. Within Prinergy, you can create soft proofs in the following ways:

- View pages with Adobe Acrobat
- Create TIFF files
- Create files to be viewed with Virtual Proofing System software

Adobe Acrobat

In Job Manager you can view and edit individual pages with Adobe Acrobat. This method of soft proofing does not require a process template. Proofing with Acrobat shows you the PDF page content, but not any imposed or screened pages. Use Virtual Proofing System to view these details.

Virtual Proofing System

To soft-proof individual or imposed pages you can create a file for viewing with Virtual Proofing System software. With Virtual Proofing System software you can:

- View the imposed layout (imposed proof only)
- View separations
- View backups of surfaces (imposed proof only)
- View safe protect box
- Zoom in on specific content
- Turn on trim lines
- Check measurements

To create a soft proof, follow the instructions in [Starting processes](#) on page [171](#), and select a Virtual Proofing System software process template.

To view VPS files, right-click the pages, surfaces, signatures, or separations that you want to view--anywhere that a VPS file has been created--and select **Open VPS Files** in the context menu. Alternatively, select **File > Open VPS Files**.

Note: You cannot open VPS files from the Pages pane if the VPS files were output from the Page Sets pane—the resulting VPS files from each location are different. When outputting VPS files from the Page Sets pane, it incorporates geometry information from the associated imposition, whereas outputting VPS files from the Pages pane includes geometry from just the page.

For information about using Virtual Proofing System, see the Virtual Proofing System documentation.

About document screening

The following limitations apply when you select **Use document's screening, if present** in the **Screening Mode** box on the **Calibration & Screening** section of an output process template:

- Possible screen angles are 0, 15, 30, 45, 60, 75, 90, 105, 120, 135, 150, 165. Screen angles you specify from the desktop software are rounded to the nearest applicable screen angle.
- For any object, unless you're mixing AM and FM screens, set the screens for all separations to the same frequency. In other words, you can have the bumper of the car in an ad screened at 175 lpi and the hood screened at 133 lpi, but you shouldn't have the bumper's cyan separation screened at 175 lpi and its magenta separation screened at 133 lpi. Setting all separations to the same frequency is easy to do, as many software applications support a screen all separations at same frequency feature.
- There are no standards for dot shape names-Ellipse in one software application might have a different orientation or shape than Ellipse in another software application. When you select **Use document's**

screening, if present, Prinergy respects the PostScript spot function included with the screen specification.

About dot shapes

You can specify the dot shape in the **Calibration & Screening** section of output process templates.

Note: This topic only applies to regular (rational tangent) screening. For IS screening, see [IS screening](#) on page 665.

With CTP there is little difference between dot shapes in the plating process, but there are some subtle differences on press.

In film workflow, mechanical gain in the imaging and plating process exacerbated mechanical gain on the plates and caused nonlinearities where neighboring dot structures touched, causing a tonal jump right on the plate. This problem was further compounded by mechanical gain on press, leading to even larger visual tone jumps where the dots met.

Thermal CTP eliminates all mechanical gain in the plating process. Even where neighboring dot structures touch, there is no bleeding of the pixels or dot shape into one another, like there is in an analog and/or Gaussian-based exposure system. The result is accurate tonal reproduction onto the plate, so that Round, Euclidean, and Elliptical all produce the same physical dot area on the plate. However, there are subtle mechanical differences between the dot shapes, based on how they respond on press, because the compounding effect of plating gain has been eliminated and the tone jumps are not nearly as obvious.

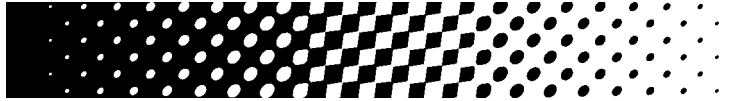
The accuracy of pixel-for-pixel reproduction, and therefore the edges of each halftone dot, is wholly dependant on the optical resolution of the device and media. For CTP devices that do not deliver accurate reproduction of each pixel, differences will be less subtle.

The choice of dot shape is more critical when the plating system produces mechanical gain or loss on plate greater than 4%. Most thermal CTP systems produce linear output and do not affect your choice of dot shapes. Photopolymer plates such as those found on violet CTP and modern high speed negative thermal plates produce measurable levels of gain on plate and users should take note of tone jumps in the tints where neighbouring dot structures touch. Choosing a dot shape that avoids tone jumps in critical areas may be important in selecting the best dot shape for your print application or typical subject matter.

Generally, Round, Euclidean, and Elliptical dots produce similar physical dot area on the plate, but they may respond differently on press. Also, subtle mechanical differences may be seen where the dots touch.

Elliptical

This dot shape is used to avoid the sharp transition at 50 percent that is characteristic of the Euclidean dot shape. This is an excellent dot shape for general use. However, it is not suitable for printing flesh tones, as the chaining of the Elliptical dots at 40 percent and 60 percent may cause visible streaking in the skin tones under certain printing conditions.



Heavy elliptical



Light elliptical



Line



Line1

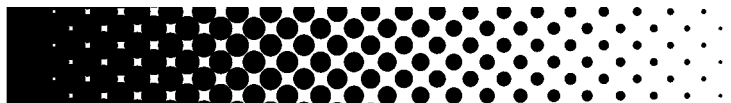


Rhomboid

Sorry, this information is not yet available.

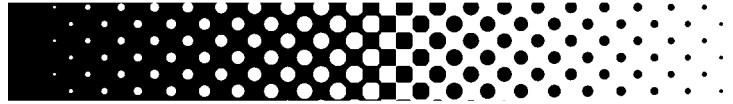
Round

This is a commonly used dot shape that gives a smooth appearance in highlights and midtones. It is commonly used in imaging flesh tones and images with high and medium key detail. Dot gain and tonal jumps can be a problem in the shadow areas, because the white space at the center of four adjoining circles can easily become filled with additional ink as the dots grow and begin touching. However, with accurate and stable imaging, shadow detail is preserved remarkably well on press.



Roundsquare (euclidean)

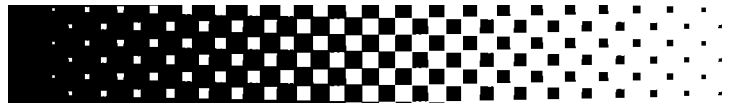
Also known as Euclidean, this general purpose dot shape reduces dot gain in the shadow areas, but creates a tonal jump at 50 percent where the corners of the checkerboard touch and cause excess ink to bridge between the dots. The RoundSquare dot shape is used for general applications, where the midtone tints are not critical to the image. It is particularly suited to high and low key images.



Square



Square1



About minimum dot size calculation

Here is the calculation for figuring out minimum dot size. The minimum dot size control is found in the **Calibration & Screening** section of output process templates.

Print tint patches of the screen at the screen frequency you will use, concentrating the patches in even steps (for example, 0.5 percent or 1 percent) in the highlights and shadows, making sure to fully cover the printing range of your press.

The average distance in pixels between adjacent dot centroids is:

$$\text{device_resolution} / \text{screen_frequency} = \text{average_dot_spacing}$$

For example, at 150 lpi and 2400 dpi, the average dot spacing is 16 pixels.

This means that each dot is, on average, $16 \times 16 = 256$ pixels in size. The supercell screening in Prinergy will allow you to have more than 256 gray levels by distributing additional grays over a wider area, but this is a good number for calculation.

So, a 16-pixel dot cluster at 150 lpi corresponds to a tint of $16/256 = 6.25$ percent. Likewise, a 4-pixel dot cluster is $4/256 = 1.56$ percent. That is, if you see everything at 6 percent or lighter washing out at or not printing reliably at 150 lpi, you should set the minimum dot size to 16 pixels.

The full formula is:

$$\text{Highlight minimum dot size} = \text{lowest_printing_tint} * (\text{device_resolution} / \text{screen_frequency})^2$$

You can do a similar calculation for the other end of the tone scale, in the shadows. For example, if you can print as much as 85% at 150 lpi before totally plugging, then:

$$(100\% - 85\%) * 256 = 38 \text{ device pixels}$$

So the formula is:

$$\text{Shadow minimum dot size} = (100\% - \text{highest printing tint}) * (\text{device_resolution} / \text{screen_frequency})^2$$

The reason why the control specifies the minimum dot size in device pixels rather than a tint value is because, for a given printing process, the number of device pixels that can be reliably printed is usually constant, while the same number of device pixels corresponds to different actual tint values as you change the screen frequency. So, the idea is that you set the minimum/maximum dot value once for your press/plate combination, and leave this setting alone, even if you change to some other screen frequency.

Screen types

Maxtone

Maxtone uses AM screening to create tonal values above the minimum dot size. Once the minimum dot size is reached, Maxtone uses an FM-like technique to progressively remove minimum-sized dots from the AM grid. This technology allows flexo printing to achieve increased highlight values, using the minimum printable dot size.

Maxtone CX

Maxtone CX hybrid AM screening feature enables printers to configure the size of highlight and shadow dots to suit the resolution-rendering capabilities of their output device, plate, and pressroom.

The dots in Maxtone CX are arranged on the same screen-ruling grid as Maxtone screens, and tonality in the midtones is controlled by adjusting the size of the dots. However, for Maxtone CX, tonality in the highlights and shadows is controlled by fixing the dot width and varying the number or frequency of dots placed on the grid.

Maxtone CX is particularly useful in resolution-limited applications in which Maxtone highlight or shadow dots are not rendered reliably or consistently. For example, Maxtone CX is useful in flexo packaging, where highlight scum dots do not print reliably, in heatset web applications, and where highlight dots do not have the same run-length durability as the midtones.

Maxtone CX can also be used for high-screen-ruling commercial offset applications to avoid issues with single pixel dots on plate and on press.

Maxtone IS and CX IS

Maxtone IS screen types are used for seamless sleeve and cylinder output device applications. IS screen systems are predefined and cannot be modified in the process template. For information about defining IS screen sets, see the *Prinergy System Administration Guide*. To see how items in the list of IS screen systems can be hidden, see *Hiding IS screen sets*.

Maxtone CX IS screen types are also used for seamless sleeve and cylinder output device applications, but you can configure the size of highlight and shadow dots.

Maxtone NX

Maxtone NX refers to hybrid AM screening for Kodak Flexcel NX. In Maxtone NX, most of the tonal range uses traditional Maxtone AM screening in order to achieve mottle-free overprints in the midtones, while extreme highlights and shadows are screened with FM patterns to allow smooth highlight areas with larger dot sizes.

Maxtone NX gives you a choice of AM screening for the midtones, and the ability to control the minimum highlight and shadow dot sizes. In the midtones, it is identical to regular Maxtone AM screening. In the extreme highlights and shadows, there is a transition between fully AM behavior and fully FM behavior. The dot size is fixed at the minimum size that you specify, and the distribution of dots becomes FM in nature.

Staccato

Staccato screening is a stochastic, or frequency-modulated (FM), screening solution that can be purchased as an option to Prinergy. The combination of the Staccato screening software and the Kodak SQUAREspot technology gives you a level of control in the printing process that makes stochastic screening viable for routine presswork.

The demands that stochastic screening places on time and equipment mean it is not usually a practical solution for everyday print production. It is difficult for many printers to deliver stochastic screening with conventional output devices, because these devices do not offer the control required in the calibration, development, and platemaking processes. Staccato, however, makes FM screening a practical option for your routine presswork. You can also mix Staccato screens with conventional screens.

For more detailed information about Staccato screening, see the *Staccato User Guide*.

Staccato NX

Staccato NX is a configurable second-order FM screening intended for use with Flexcel NX media for packaging applications.

Staccato NX introduces FM screens for use with Flexcel NX media to address the needs of the packaging sector. In particular, it lets you use extended color sets (beyond CMYK), while avoiding AM screening moiré in the overprints.

Staccato NX consists of a set of preconfigured FM screens that can be selected in Prinergy. Staccato NX gives you a choice of minimum highlight and shadow dot size or dot width, and a choice of midtone frequencies. Screens are specified in terms of pixels for minimum highlight and shadow dot size, and equivalent line screen ruling (lines per inch) for midtone frequency.

See also:

[Staccato Dot Size and Screen Ruling Equivalents](#) on page [647](#)

About screen systems

Screen systems contain an optimal set of screening characteristics for a particular screening requirement. Predetermining the relationship among screen angles, screen rulings, and the screens to which these are assigned reduces the occurrence of screen artifacts.



Screen angles are calculated as in the above illustration.

Set the screen angle control in the **Calibration & Screening** section of output process templates.

Maxtone

This screen system forms a rosette among black, magenta, and cyan by screening these separations at equal rulings with nominal angles of 75°, 15°, and 135°. The yellow separation is screened at 0° with a ruling slightly higher than the other separations to reduce moiré. In the default angle assignment, black, as the most dominant color, is screened at 135°.

This system is susceptible to moiré in smooth tints of two separation pairs: cyan-yellow (greens) and magenta-yellow (peach tones). Angle swapping allows moiré susceptibility to be shifted from one of these separation pairs to the other. For applications with dominant peach tones, set magenta to 135°.

This system has been formulated for best performance on output devices to provide even, low-moiré flat tints, especially on large-format

devices. Screens from this system are compatible with screens generated from the Allegro workflow.

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| Ruling | Ranges from 40 to 240 lpi (The available values depend on the output device.) |
| Dot Shape | EllipticalP, Heavy Elliptical, Light Elliptical, Line, Line1, Round, Round-Square (Euclidean), Square, Square1 |
| CMYK Default Angles | 165 105 0 45 |
| Valid Color Swaps | Cyan Magenta Black |

Maxtone Y30°

This screen system is identical to HQS Classic in all but its yellow screen. It forms a rosette among black, magenta, and cyan.

The yellow separation is screened at 30° with a ruling slightly higher than the other separations. It avoids the 0° screen, which may cause interference problems in some flexography and silkscreen applications. In its default angle-to-color assignment, magenta-yellow moiré is eliminated, leaving the cyan-yellow separation pairs susceptible to moiré.

This system has been formulated for best performance on output devices to provide even, low-moiré flat tints, especially on large-format devices. Screens from this system are compatible with screens generated from the Allegro workflow.

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Ruling | Ranges from 40 to 240 lpi (The available values depend on the output device.) |
| Dot Shape | EllipticalP, Heavy Elliptical, Light Elliptical, Line, Line1, Round, RoundSquare (Euclidean), Square, Square1 |
| CMYK Default Angles | 165 105 30 45 |
| Valid Color Swaps | Cyan Magenta Black |

Maxtone Y60°

This screen system is identical to HQS Classic in all but its yellow screen. It forms a rosette among black, magenta, and cyan.

The yellow separation is screened at 60° with a ruling slightly higher than the other separations. It avoids the 0° screen, which may cause interference problems in some flexography and silkscreen applications. In its default angle-to-color assignment, cyan-yellow moiré is eliminated, leaving the magenta-yellow separation pairs susceptible to moiré.

This system has been formulated for best performance on output devices to provide even, low-moiré flat tints, especially on large-format

devices. Screens from this system are compatible with screens generated from the Allegro system.

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Ruling | Ranges from 40 to 240 lpi (The available values depend on the output device.) |
| Dot Shape | EllipticalP, Heavy Elliptical, Light Elliptical, Line, Line1, Round, RoundSquare (Euclidean), Square, Square1 |
| CMYK Default Angles | 165 105 60 45 |
| Valid Color Swaps | Cyan Magenta Black |

Maxtone Y-fine

This screen system is identical to HQS Classic in all but its yellow screen. It forms a rosette among black, magenta, and cyan.

The yellow separation is screened at 0° with a ruling about 40% higher than the other separations. This raises the moiré frequency of yellow with all other separation pairs to the point where it is invisible at typical screen rulings for offset lithography. The increased yellow screen frequency may increase dot gain, requiring color-specific calibration to avoid a yellow cast in color reproduction.

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Ruling | Ranges from 20 to 600 lpi (The available values depend on the output device.) |
| Dot Shape | Round, RoundSquare (Euclidean), LightElliptical, Elliptical, Heavy Elliptical, Smooth Elliptical, Checker, Line |
| CMYK Default Angles | 75 15 0 135 |
| Valid Color Swaps | Cyan Magenta Black |

Maxtone RT01 YOK45

This historical screen system forms a square rosette among black, magenta, and cyan by screening these separations at slightly different rulings and nominal rational-tangent angles of approximately 18°, 45°, and 72°. The yellow separation is screened at 0° with a ruling slightly higher than the black separation.

This system is susceptible to moiré in smooth tints of olive-green color.

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| Ruling | Ranges from 20 to 600 lpi (The available values depend on the output device.) |
| Dot Shape | Round, RoundSquare (Euclidean), LightElliptical, Elliptical, Heavy Elliptical, Smooth Elliptical, Checker, or Line |
| CMYK Default Angles | 71.6 18.4 0 135 |

| | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| Valid Color Swaps | Cyan Magenta Black |
|--------------------------|--------------------|

Maxtone RT04 Y45K45

This screen system provides an alternative to rosette-forming HQS screen systems. The rosette pattern is practically invisible at typical screen rulings for offset lithography.

Cyan and magenta separations are screened at equal rulings, with rational-tangent angles of approximately 18° and 72° respectively. Yellow and black are screened at 45°. The yellow ruling is about 10% below that of cyan and magenta, and the black ruling is about 33% higher. The differing dot gains resulting from these varied rulings may require color-specific calibration.

This screen system does not exhibit the moiré susceptibility of separation pairs found in the other screen systems.

The key separation (45° fine) can be used as an additional color in combination with the HQS screen systems.

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Ruling | Ranges from 20 to 600 lpi (The available values depend on the output device.) |
| Dot Shape | Round, RoundSquare (Euclidean), LightElliptical, Elliptical, Heavy Elliptical, Smooth Elliptical, Checker, Line |
| CMYK Default Angles | 71.6 18.4 135 135-fine |
| Valid Color Swaps | Cyan Magenta Yellow Black |

Staccato

Staccato screening is a stochastic, or frequency-modulated (FM), screening solution that can be purchased as an option to Prinergy. The combination of the Staccato screening software and the SQUAREspot technology gives you a level of control in the printing process that makes stochastic screening viable for routine presswork.

The demands that stochastic screening places on time and equipment mean it is not usually a practical solution for everyday print production. It is difficult for many printers to deliver stochastic screening with conventional output devices, because these devices do not offer the control required in the calibration, development, and platemaking processes. Staccato, however, makes FM screening a practical option for your routine presswork. You can also mix Staccato screens with conventional screens.

For more detailed information about Staccato screening, see the *Staccato User Guide*.

Staccato Extended Color Screens

Staccato screening is a stochastic, or FM, screening solution. Kodak Staccato Extended Color Screens (ECS) is an add-on for the Staccato 10/20/25 series. Staccato ECS includes 10 unique patterns for each screen to support extended process color printing.

For more detailed information about Staccato Extended Color Screens, see the Staccato documentation.

See also:

[Staccato Dot Size and Screen Ruling Equivalents](#) on page [647](#)

Staccato Dot Size and Screen Ruling Equivalents

| Resolution (dpi) | Screen system | Feature size (microns) | Midtone ruling (lpi) | Approx. midtone dot size (microns) | Highlight dot width (microns) | Approx ruling 1&99% (lpi) | Approx ruling 2&98% (lpi) | Required licenses | Checkerboard test |
|------------------|---------------|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 300 | Staccato | 40 µm | 146.6 | 86.6 | 84.7 | 30 | 42 | Low Res | 1x1 |
| 300 | Staccato | 70 µm | 74.4 | 170.8 | 84.7 | 30 | 42 | Low Res | 2x2 |
| 360 | Staccato | 40 µm | 175.9 | 72.2 | 70.6 | 36 | 51 | Low Res | 1x1 |
| 360 | Staccato | 70 µm | 89.2 | 142.3 | 70.6 | 36 | 51 | Low Res | 2x2 |
| 600 | Staccato | 35 µm | 293.2 | 43.3 | 42.3 | 60 | 85 | Low Res | 1x1 |
| 600 | Staccato | 40 µm | 148.7 | 85.4 | 42.3 | 60 | 85 | Low Res | 2x2 |
| 600 | Staccato | 70 µm | 146.6 | 86.6 | 84.7 | 30 | 42 | Low Res | 2x2 |
| 720 | Staccato | 35 µm | 351.9 | 36.1 | 35.3 | 72 | 102 | Low Res | 1x1 |
| 720 | Staccato | 40 µm | 178.5 | 71.2 | 35.3 | 72 | 102 | Low Res | 2x2 |
| 720 | Staccato | 70 µm | 175.9 | 72.2 | 70.6 | 36 | 51 | Low Res | 2x2 |
| 1016 | Staccato | 30 µm | 251.8 | 50.4 | 25.0 | 102 | 144 | St25 | 2x2 |
| 1016 | Staccato | 40 µm | 213.0 | 59.6 | 25.0 | 102 | 144 | St25 | 3x3 |
| 1016 | Staccato | 50 µm | 192.0 | 66.2 | 50.0 | 51 | 72 | St25 | 3x3 |
| 1200 | Staccato | 25 µm | 297.4 | 42.7 | 21.2 | 120 | 170 | St25 | 2x2 |

| Resolution (dpi) | Screen system | Feature size (microns) | Midtone ruling (lpi) | Approx. midtone dot size (microns) | Highlight dot width (microns) | Approx ruling 1&99% (lpi) | Approx ruling 2&98% (lpi) | Required licenses | Checkerboard test |
|------------------|---------------|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1200 | Staccato | 36 µm | 251.6 | 50.5 | 21.2 | 120 | 170 | St25 | 3x3 |
| 1200 | Staccato | 40 µm | 226.7 | 56.0 | 42.3 | 60 | 85 | St25 | 3x3 |
| 1200 | Staccato | 50 µm | 148.7 | 85.4 | 42.3 | 60 | 85 | St25 | 5x5 |
| 1200 | Staccato | 70 µm | 149.8 | 84.8 | 63.5 | 40 | 57 | St25 | 5x5 |
| 1270 | Staccato | 25 µm | 314.8 | 40.3 | 20.0 | 127 | 180 | St25 | 2x2 |
| 1270 | Staccato | 36 µm | 266.3 | 47.7 | 20.0 | 127 | 180 | St25 | 3x3 |
| 1270 | Staccato | 40 µm | 240.0 | 52.9 | 40.0 | 64 | 90 | St25 | 3x3 |
| 1270 | Staccato | 50 µm | 157.4 | 80.7 | 40.0 | 64 | 90 | St25 | 5x5 |
| 1270 | Staccato | 70 µm | 158.6 | 80.1 | 60.0 | 42 | 60 | St25 | 5x5 |
| 1500 | Staccato | 20 µm | 371.8 | 34.2 | 16.9 | 150 | 212 | St20 | 2x2 |
| 1500 | Staccato | 25 µm | 314.5 | 40.4 | 16.9 | 150 | 212 | St20 | 3x3 |
| 1500 | Staccato | 35 µm | 283.4 | 44.8 | 33.9 | 75 | 106 | St25 | 3x3 |
| 1500 | Staccato | 50 µm | 187.3 | 67.8 | 33.9 | 75 | 106 | St25 | 5x5 |
| 1600 | Staccato | 20 µm | 396.6 | 32.0 | 15.9 | 160 | 226 | St20 | 2x2 |
| 1600 | Staccato | 25 µm | 335.4 | 37.9 | 15.9 | 160 | 226 | St20 | 3x3 |
| 1600 | Staccato | 35 µm | 302.3 | 42.0 | 31.8 | 80 | 113 | St25 | 3x3 |
| 1600 | Staccato | 50 µm | 199.8 | 63.6 | 31.8 | 80 | 113 | St25 | 5x5 |
| 2400 | Staccato | 10 µm | 594.9 | 21.3 | 10.6 | 240 | 339 | St10 | 2x2 |
| 2400 | Staccato | 18 µm | 503.2 | 25.2 | 10.6 | 240 | 339 | St10 | 3x3 |
| 2400 | Staccato | 20 µm | 453.5 | 28.0 | 21.2 | 120 | 170 | St20 | 3x3 |
| 2400 | Staccato | 25 µm | 297.4 | 42.7 | 21.2 | 120 | 170 | St25 | 5x5 |
| 2400 | Staccato | 35 µm | 299.6 | 42.4 | 31.8 | 80 | 113 | St25 | 5x5 |
| 2400 | Staccato | 36 µm | 251.6 | 50.5 | 31.8 | 80 | 113 | St25 | 6x6 |
| 2400 | Staccato | 40 µm | 226.7 | 56.0 | 42.3 | 60 | 85 | St25 | 7x7 |
| 2400 | Staccato | 70 µm | 149.8 | 84.8 | 63.5 | 40 | 57 | St25 | 11x11 |
| 2400 | Staccato | 20.1 µm | 586.5 | 21.7 | 21.2 | 120 | 170 | St10 | 2x2 |
| 2400 | Staccato | 31.1 µm | 391.0 | 32.5 | 31.8 | 80 | 113 | St20 | 4x4 |
| 2400 | Staccato | 42.1 µm | 293.2 | 43.3 | 42.3 | 60 | 85 | St25 | 5x5 |
| 2400 | Staccato | 63.1 µm | 195.5 | 65.0 | 63.5 | 40 | 57 | St25 | 8x8 |
| 2540 | Staccato | 10 µm | 629.6 | 20.2 | 10.0 | 254 | 359 | St10 | 2x2 |

| Resolution (dpi) | Screen system | Feature size (microns) | Midtone ruling (lpi) | Approx. midtone dot size (microns) | Highlight dot width (microns) | Approx ruling 1&99% (lpi) | Approx ruling 2&98% (lpi) | Required licenses | Checkerboard test |
|------------------|---------------|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 2540 | Staccato | 18 µm | 532.5 | 23.8 | 10.0 | 254 | 359 | St10 | 3x3 |
| 2540 | Staccato | 20 µm | 479.9 | 26.5 | 20.0 | 127 | 180 | St20 | 3x3 |
| 2540 | Staccato | 25 µm | 314.8 | 40.3 | 20.0 | 127 | 180 | St25 | 5x5 |
| 2540 | Staccato | 35 µm | 317.1 | 40.0 | 30.0 | 85 | 120 | St25 | 5x5 |
| 2540 | Staccato | 36 µm | 266.3 | 47.7 | 30.0 | 85 | 120 | St25 | 6x6 |
| 2540 | Staccato | 40 µm | 240.0 | 52.9 | 40.0 | 64 | 90 | St25 | 7x7 |
| 2540 | Staccato | 70 µm | 158.6 | 80.1 | 60.0 | 42 | 60 | St25 | 11x11 |
| 2540 | Staccato | 20.1 µm | 620.7 | 20.5 | 20.0 | 127 | 180 | St10 | 2x2 |
| 2540 | Staccato | 31.1 µm | 413.8 | 30.7 | 30.0 | 85 | 120 | St20 | 4x4 |
| 2540 | Staccato | 42.1 µm | 310.4 | 40.9 | 40.0 | 64 | 90 | St25 | 5x5 |
| 2540 | Staccato | 63.1 µm | 206.9 | 61.4 | 60.0 | 42 | 60 | St25 | 8x8 |
| 3200 | Staccato | 10 µm | 604.7 | 21.0 | 15.9 | 160 | 226 | St10 | 3x3 |
| 3200 | Staccato | 20 µm | 396.6 | 32.0 | 15.9 | 160 | 226 | St20 | 5x5 |
| 3200 | Staccato | 25 µm | 335.4 | 37.9 | 23.8 | 107 | 151 | St25 | 6x6 |
| 3200 | Staccato | 35 µm | 302.3 | 42.0 | 31.8 | 80 | 113 | St25 | 7x7 |
| 3200 | Staccato | 50 µm | 199.8 | 63.6 | 47.6 | 53 | 75 | St25 | 11x11 |

About screen angles

You can specify screening angles for spot colors in the **Calibration & Screening** section of output process templates and in the Color Editor.

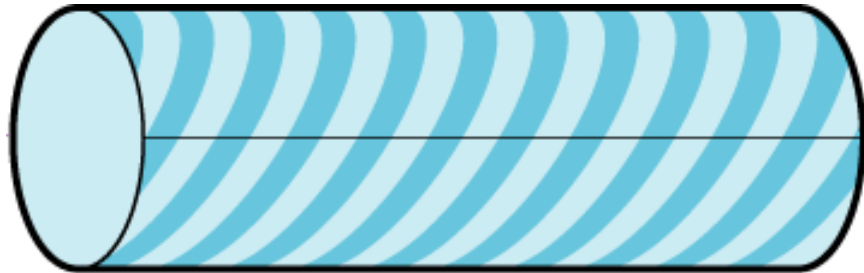
Prinerger searches for spot color screening information in the following order:

1. If the process template has a screening angle for the spot color, Prinerger uses the specified angle.
2. If the process template does not have a screening angle, Prinerger checks the job-specific color library. If the job-specific color library has a screening angle for this spot color, Prinerger uses it.
3. If neither the process template nor the job-specific color library has a screening angle, Prinerger checks the global color library. If the global color library has a screening angle for this spot color, Prinerger uses it.
4. If neither the process template, nor the job-specific, nor the global color library has a screening angle, Prinerger uses the default angle to screen this spot color.

About seamless imaging

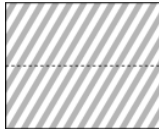
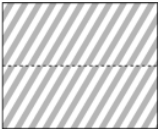
With seamless imaging, the screening pattern is continuous across the boundaries of the artwork to be imaged "in the round" on a sleeve or cylinder.

"In the round" means that the plate is wrapped around the cylinder and imaged on the cylinder, as shown in the following image:



Seamless imaging is used for flexographic printing where the pattern is continuous and there should be no noticeable transition or break where the image repeats (for example, wallpaper or fabric printing).

To make an image seamless, select the **Enable** option in the **Seamless Screening** area on the **Calibration and Screening** section of the output process templates.

| With Seamless Screening | Without Seamless Screening |
|---|--|
|  |  |
| The pattern is continuous around the cylinder. | The pattern is not continuous around the cylinder. |

About advanced TIFF tags

Select the **Advanced TIFF Tags** check box in output process templates, **Device** section, to add advanced TIFF tags to the output file.

The advanced TIFF tags are:

| Tag Name | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| TIFFTAG_CMYK_EQUIVALENT | CMYK color recipes for each ink color in order of process sequence |
| TIFFTAG_INKNAMES | Name of each ink in the file (one ink name for each separation) listed in order of process sequence |
| TIFFTAG_INKSET | Indicates whether the set of inks are CMYK |
| TIFFTAG_NUMBEROFINKS | Number of inks in the file |

| Tag Name | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| TIFFTAG_TIFFIT_COLOR_SEQUENCE | Sequence in which inks are processed |
| CREOTAG_RAST_COLOR_OPACITY | Tag created by Kodak to indicate the opacity of each ink color, listed in order of process sequence |
| CREO_PAGE_SOURCECLIP | Tag created by Kodak to indicate the clipping path of the assigned page |

The benefits of including the advanced TIFF tags when outputting to Virtual Proofing System 2.0 software are:

- You do not need to enter the color recipe of any spot colors for Virtual Proofing System software to display them properly.
- Virtual Proofing System software reflects color opacity.

For more TIFF tag information, search <http://www.adobe.com/extranet> documents for TIFF Specification.

About TIFF compression

You can control TIFF compression from the **File Format** section of output process templates.

G4 is the recommended compression method for high-resolution, 1-bit output in most cases. G3 and G4 compression options are not available if either of the following conditions exists:

- The **Always use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box is selected on the **Render** section of the output process template.
- A stochastic (FM) screening system is selected in the **Screening System** box on the **Calibration & Screening** section of the output process template.

Either of the above conditions may cause stochastic pattern data, which can generate very large files when G4 compression is used.

G4 is a safe and recommended compression method when:

- You have CMYK data only and aren't using a stochastic (FM) screening system.
- You have spot colors and are not using the Color Combiner.

When dealing with stochastic screening, ZIP is the recommended compression method.

What is PJTF?

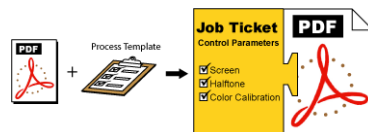
Adobe's Portable Job Ticket Format (PJTF) does the following tasks:

- Contains descriptions of device-specific settings.
- Specifies the sequence of JTPs that will process PDF files.
- Describes the desired output style for one or more pages from PDF files.

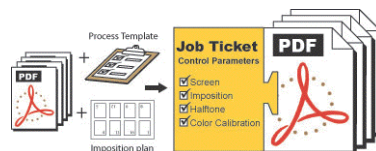
Since the PDF file does not contain these settings, the output device uses PJTF files to set the unique output characteristics, such as duplexing or two-up printing. Complex layouts like those required by a commercial printing press and bindery operation can also be described inside a PJTF file. Since the content of the pages is separate from the content of the PJTF, changing device-specific settings requires only the creation of a new PJTF that references the same PDF.

Prinerger extends the concept of Job Ticket files with features such as archiving. In addition, Prinerger stores some data files such as imposition plans and process templates as PJTF files. Although these files are incomplete job tickets, they are stored using this standard format. Then, when required, Prinerger constructs complete PJTF files for submission to Extreme, by combining the necessary pieces (input file content and layout information contained in templates) with parameters set in process templates.

A job ticket containing loose page output settings is attached to a PDF page to make a complete PJTF file ready for processing by Extreme.



A job ticket containing imposed page output settings is attached to several PDF pages to make a complete PJTF file ready for processing by Extreme.

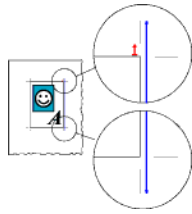


See also:

[What are JTPs?](#) on page [184](#)

[Why PDF?](#) on page [255](#)



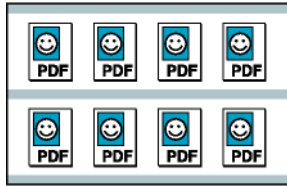
Example: crop marks



The long blue arrow indicates the **Locate crop mark of length** measurement. The short red arrow indicates the **at Distance** measurement.

Example: add extra vertical space

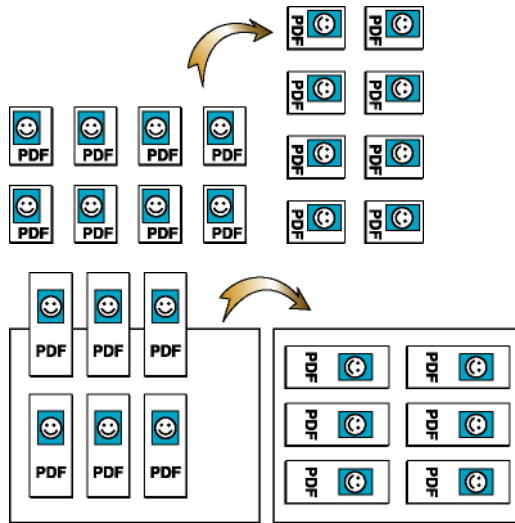
Values selected in the **Add Extra Vertical Space** box in the Layout section of the Loose Page Output process template yield the following results:

| Setting | Result |
|--|--|
| Bottom margin only |  |
| Evenly to both margins |  |
| Evenly to all gutters and margins |  |

Example: orientation

Pages are rotated as a unit not individually. If either **Auto clockwise** or **Auto counterclockwise** is selected in the Orientation box in the **Layout** section of all output process templates, pages are rotated as a unit if rotating produces a better fit.

In this example the **Orientation** box is set to **Auto clockwise**.



Example: add extra horizontal space

Values selected in the **Add Extra Horizontal Space** box in the Layout section of the Loose Page Output process template yield the following results:

| Setting | Result |
|-----------------------------------|--------|
| Right margin only | |
| Evenly to both margins | |
| Evenly to all gutters and margins | |

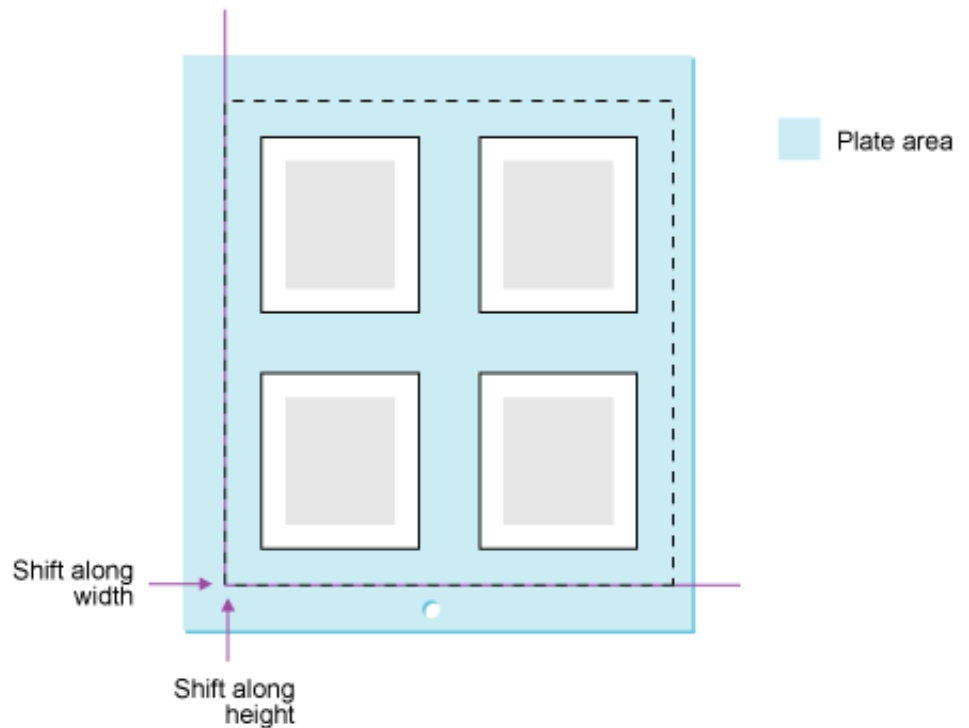
Example: shifting images horizontally and vertically

When generating imposition output or final output, you can shift the imposition plan closer to or farther from the edge of the media using

options in the Layout section of the imposition output process template or the Layout section of the final output process template.

- Use the **Shift Along Width** box to shift the image from the left edge of the media along the horizontal axis.
- Use the **Shift Along Height** box to shift the image from the bottom edge of the media along the vertical axis.

A positive value moves the image away from the original edge. A negative value moves the image closer to the original edge.



About tiling output

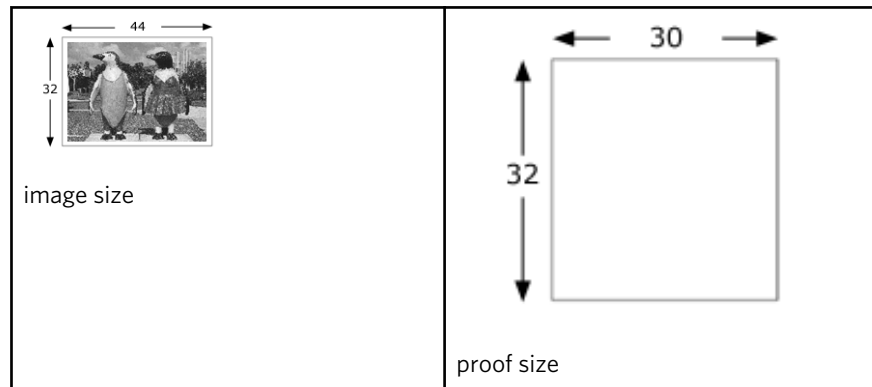
Tiling is normally used in proofing or when outputting an image to film.

Tiling must be handled in Prinergy because tiling is not part of the Adobe job ticket specification. Also, Preps cannot output a tiled job ticket (imposition plan).

To handle tiling in Prinergy, create a process template for each tile. In the process template, specify the appropriate amount of offset for each tile. The tiles should have enough overlap so they can be matched.

Example

For example, say you want to proof a 32-inch by 44-inch image on a proofing device that can only output a 32-inch by 30-inch sheet.



In this case, two tiles are needed. To create the tiles create two imposition output process templates, one for each tile. In the process templates for both tiles, enter the following settings.

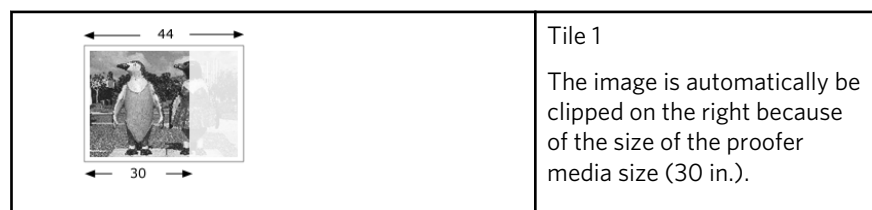
In the **Layout** section, under **Media**:

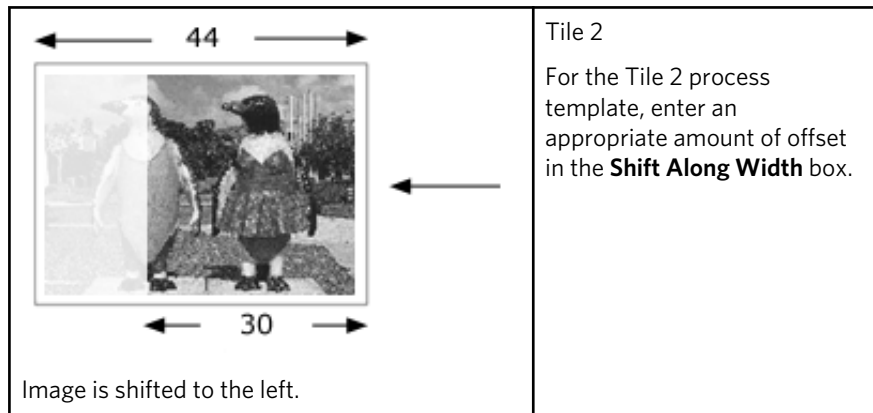
- Set **Size** to **Cut Sheet**.
- Enter the **Max Width** and **Max Height** values. (In our example, this would be 30 inches and 32 inches.)

In the **Layout** section, under **Placement**, ensure that the **Center Along Width** and **Center Along Height** check boxes are cleared.

For Tile 1, save the process template and output the tile. A tile output with a process template with these settings will automatically be clipped on the right because of the media size. See Tile 1, below.

For Tile 2, enter the same settings in the process template. In addition, enter an appropriate amount of offset in the **Shift Along Width** box (in the **Layout** section, under **Placement**). The **Shift Along Width** value should not be greater than the width of the media because you want some overlap so you can match the tiles. See Tile 2, below.





For this example, we entered -14 as the **Shift Along Width** value. The negative sign indicates that the image is shifted to the left. So, the image is shifted to the left along the width by 14 inches. In this case, there will be a 16-inch overlap in the two images output from the proofer.

Using the same technique you can also tile vertically to create a four-tile imposition.

About custom file naming

You can set up Prinergy to create custom file names for output to help you identify them. Custom file names can be based on specified file attributes. For example, when outputting separations, you can create file names that reflect the job name and the separation color.

Set up custom file names in the **Processed File Options** section of the loose page output, imposition output, and final output process templates.

File name template format

When setting custom file names in the **Filename Template** box in the **Processed File Options** section of your output process template, use the following format:

%tag1<n1>%.%tag2<n2>%...%tagN<nN>%

where:

tag1 is the name of the first tag, for example, Job or Color. For supported tags, see below.

n1 is an optional element and represents the maximum number of characters of the first tag that are displayed from left to right. This optional element can also be represented as n-1 to display characters for the tag from right to left.

For example, if the job name is "TestJob", the file name template **%JOB<5>%Spot-%COLOR%.hello.pdf** produces a file name such as **TestJ.Spot-3.hello.pdf**. For the same example, if you specified

%JOB<-5>%Spot-%COLOR%.hello.pdf, the file name is **stJob.Spot-3.hello.pdf**.

The following truncation options are also available:

| | |
|-----------|---|
| <n1,n2> | Start at n1 and use n2 characters to the right of it. |
| <n1,-n2> | Start at n1 and use n2 characters to the left of it. |
| <-n1,n2> | Start at -n1 (n1 characters to the left from the end of the job name) and use n2 characters to the right of it. |
| <-n1,-n2> | Start at -n1 (n1 characters to the left from the end of the job name) and use n2 characters to the left of it. |

Note: The entire file name cannot exceed 128 characters.

Note: If the file or job name has % in it use %% in the tag to get % in the name.

Supported tags

The custom file naming feature supports the following tags:

| Tag Name | Description |
|---|---|
| Artworkname | Name of the input page (same as Page) |
| Color | Color of the separation. If the separation is a spot color, see Full Color Spot Names check box below this table. See %LongColorName%. |
| Colorant | Color of the separation (same as Color) |
| Custom Fields: %CustomfieldJob% %CustomfieldSubpage% %CustomfieldPageset% \$[CustomFieldPagePosition] %CustomfieldPage% %CustomfieldImposition% %CustomfieldSignature% %CustomfieldSurface% %CustomfieldSeparation% | In Prinergy you can create custom fields for jobs or for elements within a job, so that you can track unique information about the job or element. You can use custom fields to create variable marks and custom file naming. For example, if you have created custom fields at the job level or job element level (page, page set, imposition, signature, surface, and separation), you can use them for variable marks and custom file naming. |
| %ImpositionJDFName% %SignatureJDFName% %SheetJDFName% | If you want to name the PPF file with values taken from JDF file, delete the variables that appear by default in the Filename Template box and enter these custom fields. |

| Tag Name | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Extension | Appropriate file name extension based on the output type. For example, if the output is for the Virtual Proofing System, the %JOB<6>%.%EXTENSION% template would generate the file name TestJo.vps . |
| Imposition | Name of the imposition |
| Job | Name of the job |
| Jobname | Name of the job (same as Job) |
| %% | %% is replaced with % . If the file or job name has % in it, use %% in the tag to get % in the name. |
| LongColorName | Replaces the spot color name with the full length name for the spot color, such as PANTONE 300C. This enables the PrintLink digital-ink profiling software external file name to identify the spot color name. |
| OriginalPagename | Name of the input page without the refiner. For example, if the job name is TestJob and the page name is front.p1.pdf, the %ORIGINALPAGENAME%.pdf template would generate the file name front.pdf . In this example, 'p1' is the refiner. |
| OriginalArtwork | Name of the input page without the refiner (same as OriginalPagename) For example, if the artwork name is front.p1.pdf, the %ORIGINALARTWORK%.pdf template would generate the file name front.pdf . In this example, 'p1' is the refiner. |
| PaddedSheet<n> | Sheet number is padded with zeros to create a number with n digits. For example, if the tag used is PaddedSheet<3> , sheet 1 is represented as 001 . |
| PaddedSignature<n> | Signature number is padded with zeros to create a number with n digits. For example, if the tag used is PaddedSignature<3> , signature 1 is represented as 001 . This feature also works with the pageset position. For example, if the tag used is PaddedSignature<3> , pageset position 1 is represented as 001. |
| Page | Name of the input page. Note: The input page name is not the same as the input file name. |
| Pagename | Name of the input page (same as Page) |
| Pageset | Name of the page set |
| Signature | Signature number |
| Sheet | Sheet number |
| Surface | Letter corresponding to the surface (A = front, B = back) |
| Username | Name of the current operator |

| Tag Name | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Version | Number that is given to the output file. The system always sets the version field to 0 for the most recently created file. The second most recent file would be changed to 1 from 0. If there is a third output file, it would be changed to 2 from 1 and so on. |
| Date/Time Tags | |
| Date | Date (DD-MM-YYYY) on which the file is created |
| Day | Day (DD) in which the file is created |
| Month | Month (MM) in which the file is created |
| Year | Current year (YYYY) in which the file is created |
| Time | Time (HH-mm-SS) at which the file is created |
| Hour | Hour (HH) in which the file is created |
| Minute | Minute (mm) in which the file is created |
| Second | Second (SS) at which the file is created |

Controlfile Filename Template box

All of the following output formats require a control (master) file. If you are using one of these formats, you can specify the name of the control file using the **Controlfile Filename Template** box:

- DCS Raster
- DCS (Vector output)
- Approval TIFF
- LQS TIFF

The file name template format and supported tags for the **Controlfile Filename Template** box are the same as those for the **Filename Template** box.

Full Spot Color Names check box

By default, custom file naming uses the numerical format to identify spot colors. The numerical format is derived from the order in which spot colors are listed. For example, if Pthalo Blue is the third spot color listed, a file name template of **%JOB,6%-%COLOR%.pdf** would generate the file name **TestJo-3.pdf**.

If you want to use the spot color names in the output file names, select the **Use Full Spot Color Names** check box. To use this check box, you must include the **%COLOR%** tag in the **Filename Template**.

About outputting to a file

When you select the **Overwrite Existing Files with Same Name** check box, in the **Processed File Options** section of output process templates, the old file is overwritten in all cases.

When the **Overwrite Existing Files with Same Name** check box is cleared, the file naming scheme described below is used.

When you output a file the second time, the older file is renamed with the addition of a version number, and the new file takes on the original name of the first file. Subsequent output causes the version numbers of all old files to be incremented by one number (to a maximum of nine old versions). The effect of this constant renaming is that, regardless of the number of times you output the same information in the same way, the most recent file is always named the same and the oldest file contains the highest version number.

Examples

In the following examples:

- **1A** is the signature and surface number (for loose page output this is always 1A) .
- **C** is the color (CMYK for composite; GRAY for grayscale; and one of C, M, Y, or K for a separation).
- **<ext>** is the appropriate three-character extension for the file type, for example, .JPG, .VPS, .TIF.
- **.1.** is the version number (up to a maximum of .9).
- ***** indicates the oldest file.

| Output # | Loose Page Results |
|----------|---|
| First | <page name>.1A.C.<ext> |
| Second | <page name>.1A.C.<ext> <page name>.1A.1.C.<ext>* |
| Third | <page name>.1A.C.<ext> <page name>.1A.1.C.<ext> <page name>.1A.2.C.<ext>* |

| Output # | Imposition or Final Results |
|----------|---|
| First | <job name>.1A.C.<ext> |
| Second | <job name>.1A.C.<ext> <job name>.1A.1.C.<ext>* |

| Output # | Imposition or Final Results |
|----------|--|
| Third | <job name>.1A.C.<ext> <job name>.1A.1.C.<ext> <job name>.1A.2.C.<ext>* |

Using the Altona Test Suite

Check for PDF/X-3 compliance and color accuracy of a workflow by running the Altona Test Suite.

The documentation package bundled with the Altona Test Suite provides a detailed explanation of the elements that you can use to evaluate output—for example, sample images and typical errors. Use the following settings for the refine and output process templates to run the Altona Test Suite.

1. Go to <http://www.eci.org>.
2. Download the Altona Test Suite from the Downloads section of the European Color Initiative Web site.
3. Create a job in Prinergy.
4. Add the Altona input files.
5. Create or open a refine process template, and in the **Generate** list, select **PDF**.
6. In the **Spot Color Handling** section of the refine process template, clear the **Map All Spot Colors to Process** check box.
7. In the **ColorConvert** section of the refine process template, perform the following steps:
 - a. Clear all of the check boxes in the **Overprint Conversion** area. For example, clear the **Enable Gray Overprint** check box.
 - b. Clear the **Override Embedded Profiles** check box.
 - c. Clear all of the check boxes in the **Assign Source or DeviceLink Profiles** area. For example, clear the **CMYK Images**, **CMYK Graphics**, **RGB Images**, and **RGB Graphics** check boxes.
 - d. Select the **Prefer embedded PDF/X-3 Output Intents for Final Output Profile** check box.
 - e. Set all the **Rendering Intent** lists to **From PDF**.
8. Set the **Trap** and **Thumbnail** sections of the refine process template as desired.
9. Save the refine process template.
10. Refine the Altona input files.
11. Create or open an output process template, and in the **Output To** list, select **TIFF**.

Note: You can choose any raster format that supports contone data.

12. In the **ColorConvert** section of the selected output process template, perform the following steps:
 - a. In the **JTP** list, select **ColorMatch**.
 - b. In the **Match Colors** area, select **Match Colors in Page Content**.
 - c. Set **Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile** to **Exactly as Applied During Refining**.
 - d. Select the **Overprint Handling** check box.
 - e. In the **Method** list, select **Raster**.
13. In the **Render** section of the selected output process template, perform the following steps:
 - a. Set **Shades** to **256**.
 - b. Clear the **Do Separations** check box.

Note: Spot colors will automatically convert to process colors.

14. Output the file.

This outputs the refined PDF file to an ink jet proofer.

15. Output the refined PDF file to a halftone proofer.

For example, output to a Spectrum device.

Assuming that the halftone donor materials match the press inks colorimetrically, color matching and overprint handling is not required—simply output to a halftone proofer as you normally would. If the donors are different and you want to use color matching, in the **Match Colors** area of the output process template, in the **Method** list, select **Vector**.

Setting up Maxtone screens

Select the screen type, screen system, dot shape, and screen ruling. Configure other optional settings, such as screen color and dot width.

1. In the **Screen Type** list, select one of the following screen types:
 - **Maxtone**
 - **Maxtone CX**
 - **Maxtone IS**
 - **Maxtone IS CX**
 - **Maxtone NX**

Note: When you use IS screen types, the resolution in the **Render** section of the process template must be identical to the value in the IS screen system. IS screen systems are predefined and cannot be modified in Prinergy. For information about defining IS screen sets, see the *Prinergy System Administration Guide*.

2. In the **Screen System** list, select a set of screen angles.
3. In the **Dot Shape** list, select a dot shape.
4. In the **Screen Ruling** list, select a ruling.

5. (Optional) Enter a **Screen Color**, select a **Screen Angle** option, and select a screen system angle set in the **at Angle** list to reconfigure the screen color separations.
6. Under **Default Spot Color Handling**, select **Cycle Through Screen Angles** (for each successive spot color) or **Screen as**, and select a color separation in the list.
7. To configure the size of highlights and shadow dots, perform one of the following actions:
 - If you selected **Maxtone CX** or **Maxtone IS CX** in the **Screen Type** list, select a value (in microns) for highlights and a value (in microns) for highlights beside **Dot Width Highlights and Shadows**.
 - If you selected **Maxtone NX** in the **Screen Type** list, select a value (in microns) for highlights and a value (in microns) for shadows beside **Dot Size Highlights and Shadows**.

Note: It is also possible to select the dot size for the highlights and shadows using DotShop Composer. Maxtone NX works on the entire page, so all objects defined with Maxtone NX must have dots of the same size. If there are multiple dot sizes selected, the output process will fail.

Setting up Staccato screens

Choose the screen type, screen system, dot shape, and screen ruling. Configure other optional settings, such as screen color and dot width.

1. In the **Screen Type** list, select one of the following screen types:
 - **Staccato**
 - **Staccato NX**
2. In the **Screen System** list, select a set of screen angles.
3. In the **Dot Shape** list, select a dot shape.
4. In the **Screen Ruling** list, select a ruling.
5. In the **Feature Size** list, select a feature size.

Note: This list is limited by resolution and Staccato licensing.
6. (Optional) Enter a **Screen Color**, select a **Screen Angle** option, and in the **at Angle** list, select a screen system angle set to reconfigure the screen color separations.
7. Under **Default Spot Color Handling**, select **Cycle Through Screen Angles** (for each successive spot color) or **Screen as**, and select a color separation in the list.
8. (Optional) If you selected **Staccato NX** in the **Screen Type** list, you can configure the size of highlights and shadow dots. Type a value (in microns) for highlights and shadows beside **Dot Size Highlights/Shadows**.

IS Screening

See:

[Calibration and Screening section of the loose page output process template](#) on page 459

[Calibration and Screening section of the imposition output process template](#) on page 513

[Calibration and Screening section of the Final Output process template](#) on page 565

IS screening

Kodak IS screening (Irrational Tangent Screening) enables seamless, or continuous, imaging of photopolymer sleeves and gravure cylinders.

This is a specialty screen that images much slower than conventional screens. You can use this type of screen when outputting to devices such as Kodak ThermoFlex Wide II digital flexo imagers or third-party gravure imaging devices.

Kodak IS screening is a licensed feature. For a complete list of the advantages and limitations of using IS screening, see the Prinergy Connect Help.

Creating and editing IS screen sets

Use the IS Screen Set Editor to create and edit IS screen sets. You cannot use the Process Template Editor to edit IS screen sets.

IS screen sets must be defined before you select them in the process template. You cannot change most settings in the process template. You must use the IS Screen Set Editor to set up specific frequency, dot shape, and angle combinations before you can select them in the process template. You can assign or change existing screen angles in the Process Template Editor.

The IS Screen Set Editor is installed on the Prinergy primary server. It is generally easier to use a remote connection to the server when you want to use the IS Screen Set Editor.

- On the Prinergy primary server, select **Start > Programs > Prinergy > Screen Set Editor**.
- The Screen Set Editor window lists all the screen sets with a summary of their settings.

| Field | Description |
|--------------|--|
| Units | Select mm or inch . |
| Name | The name of the screen set when it was created |

| Field | Description |
|---------------|--|
| Owner | Kodak refers to a factory screen set. User refers to a customer-created screen set. |
| Filter | <p>You can apply a filter to view only the screen sets that meet the filter parameters. You can filter by one or more columns in the window. The filter is saved when you quit the Screen Set Editor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Click in the Filter line, and type the words or numbers that you want to search for. All columns are searched. To display all screen sets, delete the filter parameters. |

Tip: To see the version of the Screen Set Editor, click the **About** button at the lower-right corner of the Screen Set Editor window.

- Use the Screen Set Editor to create, modify, or delete screen sets.
 - To create a new screen set, click **New**.
 - To edit a screen set, select a screen set, and click **Modify**.
 - To delete a screen set, select a screen set, and click **Delete**.

| Field | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Resolution | <p>Type the resolution for this screen set. The icons above the resolutions show which resolution is around the drum and which resolution is across the drum. Around the drum corresponds to resolution <y> in Prinerger, and across the drum corresponds to resolution <x>.</p> <p>Changing this resolution in a Prinerger process template changes the frequency of the line screen on output, with one exception: in asymmetrical resolutions, one dimension can be changed by a factor of 2,4, or 8 without affecting the line frequency.</p> |
| = | For symmetrical imaging, click = so that resolution <y> equals resolution <x>. |
| Comment | (Optional) Type a comment for the screen set. |
| Adjust Screen Frequency | Depending on the angle and resolution, select to adjust the frequency and create better rosette quality for that combination of angle and resolution. |
| Angle | <p>Select an angle combination.</p> <p>Do not enter arbitrary angles in each color column. Kodak recommends 30° or 60° separations between cyan, magenta, and black.</p> <p>Note: Some customers may use non-standard angles for additional color separations. These angles may deviate from the recommended angle separations.</p> |
| Frequency | <p>The number of lines per inch or mm</p> <p>Do not enter different frequencies in each color column. If you do, the output may have moiré artifacts.</p> |

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Dot Shape | Select a dot shape. |
| D-Ratio | Specify the depth ratio—the ratio of width to height of the dot size. For example, 80 means the width of the dot is 80% of its height. For a symmetrical dot, use 100. |
| Noise | You can apply noise globally over an entire range or only to specific ranges. Click the Noise button on the left to apply noise globally. |
| Seamless Screening | Select this option to produce seamless imaging on photopolymer sleeves, direct engraving, or gravure devices. |
| Separations | Lists the separations in the screen set. IS screen sets support more than four angles. |

Note: Avoid specifying different frequencies or dot shapes for different colors in the same screen set. Avoid specifying color angles that are not 30° or 60° separated from other colors.

Note: Many IS screen set parameters cannot be changed in the process template—for example, dot shape, screen ruling, screen angle, and so on. Use the IS screen set editor to modify these parameters.

- To add a separation, click **Add**.
- To delete a separation that you have added, select that separation, and click **Delete**. You cannot delete process colors or the **Others** separation.

Next:

Important: After adding, modifying, or deleting a screen set, you must restart all Printer and Marks JTPs in Prinergy Administrator to update Prinergy with your changes.

See also:

[About dot shapes](#) on page [638](#)

Using seamless imaging

Use seamless imaging to make seamless photopolymer sleeves and gravure cylinders.

Requirements:

- In Prinerger Administrator in the JTP Properties dialog box, ensure **Seamless Screening** is selected. See *Adding JTPs* in the Administrator Guide.
- In Prinerger Administrator in **Tools > Configure System > Screening tab**, select **Display all IS Screens**. See *Displaying all IS screens in Process Template Editor* in the Administrator Guide.
- Ensure you use a high-resolution output JTP.
- Ensure you have set up an IS screen set, and that **Continuous Screening** is selected for the IS screen set. You select an IS screen set in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the output process template.

Note: Many IS screen set parameters cannot be changed in the process template—for example, dot shape, screen ruling, screen angle, and so on. Use the IS screen set editor to modify these parameters.

- At the time of output, set the following options in the output process template:

| Section | Setting |
|---------|---|
| Layout | <p>Set Size to Digital.</p> <p>By default, Prinerger creates seamless output in the y direction. If the seamless layout was created in a horizontal orientation, then output Orientation must be set to 0° or 180°. Scaling must be set to 100%.</p> <p>If the seamless layout was created in a vertical orientation, such as with the Kodak Pandora software, then the output Orientation must be set to 90° or 270°.</p> |
| Render | The Resolution must be identical to the resolution in the IS screen set. |

See also:

[Creating and editing IS screen sets](#) on page 665

Hiding IS screen sets

You can hide IS screen sets that you don't use so that they do not appear in the **Screen System** list in the process template.

The names of IS screen sets that are included with the Prinerger system start with "Kodak_TF." You can hide screen sets that you don't use, rather than delete them. Then if you need them in future, you don't have to recreate them.

1. In Windows Explorer, navigate to `\%AraxiHome%\AdobeExtreme\bin\TurboScreen\ScreenSets\Screen2GoVecT`.
2. Create a new subfolder and move all of the unused screen sets into it. Screen sets inside a subfolder do not appear in the **Screen System** list in the process template.
If you want to use these screen sets at a later time, move them out of the subfolder back into the `Screen2GoVecT` folder.
3. Restart all Prinergy printer JTPs.

Digital printers

About using digital printers

Which digital printers you can use

Prinergy can send PDF and PostScript files directly to most digital printers.

With the Prinergy Digital Print option, you can also send a JDF control file to digital printers that accept JDF files, including the following printers:

- NexPress front end version 8.4 and later with NexPress presses
- Creo PODS Spire color server with Xerox DocuColor presses
- Xerox DocuSP version 4.2 and later with DocuColor, Xerox DocuTech, and Xerox DocuPrint presses
- HP Indigo Production Stream Server powered by Creo PODS with HP Indigo presses
- HP SmartStream Production Pro Print Server or the HP SmartStream Onboard Print Server with HP Indigo presses
- Creo PODS IC-301 with Konica Minolta bizhub PRO C500 press
- EFI Fiery front end with a range of Xerox, Konica Minolta, Canon, and Ricoh presses

How to use digital printers

There are two main methods of submitting digital print jobs (also called documents):

Managed connections method

This method involves using the **Send to Digital Direct** option and sends documents to the Digital Direct software. Managed connections enable the digital press operator to schedule documents for printing and to view print status. For information

about adding managed connections, see the *Prinergy System Administration Guide*.

Legacy method

This method involves making selections, including the digital front end, in the **Include JDF for Digital Print** section of the Process Template Editor. Documents are not sent to the Digital Direct software.

Important: Do not use this section of the process template if you are using managed connections.

Pre-requisites

Before using a digital printer, you must perform the following tasks:

- Install and configure digital printing. See the *Prinergy Digital Print Installation and Configuration Guide*.
- Create a process template for the digital printer.

In addition, with a NexPress digital press, you also must perform the following tasks:

- Integrate the NexPress JDF Workflow Planner software with Workshop. For background and instructions, see the topics about Integrating Digital Print client software with Prinergy Workshop.
- Use JDF Workflow Planner to set up a JDF template file. For more information, see the topic about JDF templates for NexPress front end.

In addition, with a Xerox DocuSP controller, you need to install the Xerox FreeFlow Print Manager software. For background, see *About Integrating Digital Print Client Software*. For instructions, see *Integrating Digital Print Client Software With Prinergy Workshop*.

Refining Files for Digital Printers

When you refine files for digital printers, consider these issues:

- Will the files be used on an offset printer, as well as a digital printer?
- Do you need to extract reader spreads from an imposition?

If you plan to use the files only on a digital printer, you can let the digital printer do the trapping, color matching, and spot color handling. To prevent Prinergy from trapping, color matching, and spot color handling, clear the **Trap**, **ColorConvert**, and **Spot Color Handling** sections of the refine process template.

You may want to send files to both digital and offset printers—for example, if you want to split the job among multiple printers or use the

job at multiple locations. When you send files to both types of printers, you may want the outputs to match as closely as possible. In this situation, do trapping, color matching, and spot color handling in Prinergy by selecting and configuring the **Trap**, **ColorConvert**, and **Spot Color Handling** sections of the refine process template. On the digital print controller, set up a job ticket to take the press-ready files and match the offset press colors as closely as possible.

Choosing Between Vector and Raster PDF Output

When you send files to a digital printer using process templates, you can choose any type of PDF output available in the **Output To** list of the process template, including **PDF (Vector output)**, **PDF Raster**, **PDF/X-1a:2000 (Vector output)**, and **PDF/X-3 (Vector output)**.

For most situations, choose one of the vector outputs because vector files are smaller in size, can store more color information, and are compatible with the widest range of printers.

When you choose **PDF Raster**, Prinergy RIPs the entire input file into a raster file before sending it to the printer. This takes additional processing time on Prinergy and produces larger files. Use **PDF Raster** under these circumstances:

- If the input files cannot be printed as vector PDF—for example, DCS-2 files
- If the input files use operations that a digital print controller may not support—for example, white or color overprints
- If you want to ensure that the output was RIPed by Prinergy and will be interpreted exactly the same as the file that you see in Prinergy

See also:

[Start Process for Digital Printing dialog box](#) on page [177](#)

[Refine process template](#) on page [201](#)

[Creating process templates for digital printers](#) on page [673](#)

[About integrating digital print client software](#) on page [1102](#)

[Integrating digital print client software with Workshop](#) on page [1103](#)

Sending files using the Managed Connections method

The Managed Connections method is the newest and easiest method of sending files to a digital press from Prinergy.

Requirements:

You must have configured a managed connection to the digital press. For instructions on configuring a managed connection to a digital press, see the *Prinergy Digital Print Installation and Configuration Guide*.

This procedure uses a Publish File process template with default settings. If you want to use different process template settings, see the

topic about sending files using an alternate Managed Connections method.

1. Select the pages, page set, or imposition that you want to send to the digital printer.
2. Select **File > Send to Digital Direct**.
Tip: You can also right-click the selected element.
3. In the Submit to Digital Print dialog box, complete the boxes as required, and click **Submit**.

The document (digital print order) is sent to the Digital Direct software, where the digital press operator software schedules documents for printing.

Next: For information about Digital Direct tasks, see the *Prinergy Digital Print User Guide*.

Sending files using an alternate Managed Connections method

Use this procedure if you want to send files for digital printing using managed connections, but with special process template settings.

Requirements:

You must have configured a managed connection to the digital press. For instructions on configuring a managed connection to a digital press, see the *Prinergy Digital Print Installation and Configuration Guide*.

1. Select the pages, page set, or imposition that you want to send to the digital printer.
2. Drag the elements to a Publish File process template.
3. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
4. Revise the Publish File process template, and click **OK**.
5. In the Start Process dialog box, click **OK**.

Note: The **Send to Digital Direct** option is selected by default.

Sending files using the legacy method

If you have an unmanaged connection to a digital press, use this method of sending files to the press.

1. [Creating process templates for digital printers](#)
Set up a process template before you send files to a digital printer using the legacy method.
2. [Outputting to digital printers using the legacy method](#)
This procedure describes an older method of sending files to digital presses, and it has many limitations compared to the Managed Connections method.

Creating process templates for digital printers

Set up a process template before you send files to a digital printer using the legacy method.

The digital printer must be set up to work with Prinergy according to *Prinergy Digital Print Installation and Configuration Guide*.

1. Create a new process template using:
 - Loose Page Output process template to send individual pages or page sets to a digital printer
 - Imposition Output process template to send signatures to a digital printer
2. From the **Output To** list, select one of the PDF output types:
 - **PDF (Vector output)**
 - **PDF Raster**
 - **PDF/X-1a:2000 (Vector output)**
 - **PDF/X-3 (Vector output)**
 - **TIFF**
3. In the **ColorConvert** section, in the **Proof Process (Destination) profile** box, type the name of or locate the ICC profile of the printer, to ensure that colors are matched.
4. In the **Layout** section, in the **Size** list, select **Digital**.
5. In the **Render** section, set the resolution and other options, as desired.
6. In the **Device** section, select **Absolute File or Printer**.
7. In the **File Format** section, in the **Document Format** list, select **Multi-Page**, which creates a single PDF file of the selected pages.

Note: Selecting **Single Page**, which creates a separate PDF file for each page, is not recommended for digital printers.
8. Select the **Include JDF for Digital Printing** section.
9. In the Job Settings area:
 - a. In the **Number of Copies** box, type the number of copies.
 - b. In the **Job Name** box, using standard Prinergy placeholders, type the name of the job that is sent from Prinergy to the digital printer.

The default, **%job%**, displays the job name as specified in Prinergy.
10. In the **Device Selection** area:
 - a. In the **Select a device type** list, select a type of digital printer.
 - b. In the **Send Files to Printer using** area, select **Network Copy** or **HTTP Protocol**.

- c. In the **PDF Path** box, type the path to the folder where Prinergy creates the PDF files for the printer to output.
If you are sending these files to a hot folder, this path must not be the one specified in the **JDF Path** box.
 - d. In the **PDF File Name** box, type the file name of the PDF files that Prinergy generates.
Use standard Prinergy placeholders, such as %JOBNAME%.%extension%.
 - e. In the **JDF Path** box, type the path to the folder where Prinergy will create the JDF file.
If you are sending files to a hot folder, this path must be the hot folder for the digital printer. It cannot be the same folder specified in the **PDF Path** box.
 - f. In the **JDF File Name** box, type the file name of the JDF file that Prinergy generates.
Use standard Prinergy placeholders, such as %JOBNAME%.jdf.
11. Complete the following settings, depending on which printer controller you are using:

| With This Printer Controller | Do This |
|---|--|
| NexPress | In the Select JDF Templates area, click Browse and select the JDF template file that has been set up to communicate between Prinergy and the printer. |
| Creo Spire Color Server (Xerox) Creo Production Stream (HP) Creo IC-301 (Konica Minolta) | Set the options in the Media Selection area and the Media Handling area as desired. Note: The Creo Spire may have a default template. Select the template to use the default media options. |
| Xerox FreeFlow Print Manager | Set the options in the Media Selection area and the Media Handling area as desired. In the Device Specific Settings area, identify the device name, queue, device type and protocol. |
| HP SmartStream Print Server | In the Select JDF Templates area, click Browse and select the JDF template file that has been set up to communicate between Prinergy and the printer. In the Device Specific Settings area, in the Job Spec box, type the name of a pre-defined workflow. |

12. From the **File** menu, select **Save**, and save the process template.

Now you can use this process template to start an output process that prints to a digital printer.

Outputting to digital printers using the legacy method

This procedure describes an older method of sending files to digital presses, and it has many limitations compared to the Managed Connections method.

Requirements:

- A process template that uses the **Include JDF for Digital Print** section must be set up for the digital printer.
 - If you are submitting a job that has JDF content, the correct JDF template must be created for the digital device. See the *Prinergy Digital Print Installation and Configuration Guide*.
1. Select the pages, page set, or imposition that you want to send to the digital printer.
 2. Start a process using the process template that is appropriate for the items that you selected:
 - If you selected pages or page sets, use the loose page output process template that you created for digital printing.
 - If you selected an imposition plan, use the imposition output process template that you created for digital printing.

Submit to Digital Print dialog box

Use this dialog box to send input files for digital printing. You can send the input files to the digital press operator's workflow software (Digital Direct) or directly to a digital press.

Document Name

Type a name for the digital print order that you are creating. This name appears in Digital Direct's document lists.

Order Quantity

Type or select the number of copies (of the input files) that you want to print.

Press Settings tab

Digital Press

Select the digital press that you want the document to be printed on, or select **No Target Press** to leave the document untargeted.

Submit to Press Immediately

Select this check box to send the input files directly to a digital press. The input files will not appear in Digital Direct.

Note: For the HP SmartStream Production Pro Print Server and the HP SmartStream Onboard Print Server front ends, you must select the HP Rip and Print JDF template if you want to send a document to directly to the active queue for the press (instead of the holding queue). Alternatively, edit the selected JDF template so that the activation attribute appears as `JDF/@Activation="Active"`.

Order Info tab

Print By

The format is month/day/year/time. You can type the print-by date and time or click the **Calendar** icon or **Clock** icon to select the date and time.

Ship by

The format is month/day/year/time. You can type the ship-by date and time or click the **Calendar** icon or **Clock** icon to select the date and time.

Due By

The format is month/day/year/time. You can type the due-by date and time or click the **Calendar** icon or **Clock** icon to select the date and time.

Customer

Type the customer name.

Product Name

Type the product name. You may want to include the type of print run, such as `brochure` or `catalog`, in the product name.

Shipping Address

Type the address to which the job will be delivered. If you are using a Mac computer, press the Option + Return keys to type information on the next line.

Postal Code

Type the postal code to which the job will be delivered.

Shipping Country

Type the country to which the job will be delivered.

Shipping Method

Type the shipping method to indicate how the job will be delivered.

Publish File process template

Use the Publish File process template to configure files for submission to digital printers using Managed Connections. At the top of the dialog box is the **Output To** list, which you use to select the file format. The file format selection determines the availability of some options in the process template. For this reason, you should select an output format before you set the other options in the process template.

ColorFlow section of the Publish File process template

The **ColorFlow** section of the publish file process template defines how Prinergy applies ColorFlow settings during publishing.

When you configure the ColorFlow settings in an output process template, you select the device, device condition, and plate line, but not a color setup. The color setup used is the one that was assigned to the pages when they were refined—that is, either the color setup specified in the refine process template that was used or the job's default color setup. The color setup that is used during output processing is the color setup specified for each page in the **Color Setup** column in the **Pages** pane.



WARNING: Output will fail if the color setup does not match the color setup assigned during refine, unless the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** option is enabled.

Snapshot

A ColorFlow snapshot captures the state of the entire color database, making its elements available to the workflow and providing a convenient backup. The snapshot feature makes it unnecessary for you to manually save and name multiple versions of your color control elements after adjusting them. At any time, you can easily roll back (revert) to the state of a previous snapshot in the ColorFlow software. If you roll back to a previous snapshot, ColorFlow behaves as if changes after that snapshot never happened.

When you have completed your work in ColorFlow to a certain level and you are satisfied with the elements in color setups, you will mark a snapshot as *approved*. By default in Prinergy Connect, the currently approved snapshot is used. Only one snapshot can be in the approved state at any time.

Device Name

An individual occurrence of a physical device that captures or produces an image. Devices have a type and customer-specified properties, such as a name and location in the plant.

Because the declaration of a device does not include its operating conditions—such as ink selection, type of screening, and paper—you cannot measure the color response of a device on its own.

Device Condition

A combination of a device and the operating conditions in which the device captures or produces an image. A device condition has a known color response. Device conditions can be divided into groups such as print conditions (press and proofer devices), capture conditions (scanner and camera devices), and reference print conditions (industry specifications). A device condition can include more than one device. If all the devices are the same device type, they use the same consumables and operational settings, and they can be calibrated to yield the same color response.

Plate Line

You establish the behavior of a particular plate, screening, and plating line by plating a tint ramp, manually measuring the resulting dot area on the plate, and entering the values in the Plate Setups dialog box in the ColorFlow software.

A ColorFlow plate line is associated with only one plate setup. In your shop, you may use a platesetter and chemistry to process several different screenings. To model this, in ColorFlow, create similar plate lines in the other plate setups. You can name them to match the equipment in your plant. You may want to create several plate lines to indicate when chemistry changes occur. For example, if you routinely change solutions on Mondays, you might create different ColorFlow plate lines for Monday, Wednesday, and Friday.

ColorConvert section of the Publish File process template

This process template section defines how Prinergy handles color converting during publishing.

JTP

Select the job ticket processor (JTP) to use for color conversion. You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Match Colors

Match Colors in Page Content

Enables the Color Matcher to match hues in the page content for proofing. In other words, it enables color matching as it was done in Prinergy 1.1 (as opposed to using the Color Matcher to affect the L*a*b* spot color recipes).

Select this check box to enable this feature; clear the check box to disable this feature.

When you enable this feature, you can set the **Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile** option.

Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile

Select **Exactly as Applied During Refining** to use the same profile that was used during the refine process. If the file was not color converted during refining, or the profile is missing, an error is displayed.

Select **As Defined Below, if Not Set in Refining** to use the same profile that was used during the refine process, if the file was color converted during refining. If the file was not color converted during refining, the profile defined in the **Input Device Conditions** box will be used.

Select **Exactly as Defined Below** to use the profile selected in the **Input Device Conditions** box.

Source or DeviceLink Profile

Available when **Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile** is set to **As Defined Below, if not set in Refining** or **Exactly as Defined Below**.

From the list, select **Browse** to locate the appropriate profile file.

Rendering Intent

Select **Relative Colorimetric** if the proofing paper is similar to the paper that will be used during final output.

Select **Absolute Colorimetric** to simulate the color of the paper that will be used during final output.

Select **PDF** to use the rendering intent specified in the PDF file when output by the creative software during final output.

Select **Perceptual** to use rendering that uses gamut compression and produces less saturated colors during final output.

Select **Saturation** to make sure colors are represented in a way that preserves or emphasizes saturation during final output.

Retain CMYK Black

Preserves black in images and graphics that are defined in CMYK or RGB color space. For ICC-based color matching engines, CMYK images and graphics get transformed from CMYK to L*a*b* and back to CMYK color in order to perform color matching. In going from CMYK (four components) to L*a*b* (three components) and back again, the black (K) channel separation information (UCR/GCR) has in the past been destroyed. Selecting this check box instructs the Color Matcher to preserve the black generation information from the source color space. As a result, the amount of black relative to CMY in the images and graphics stays about the same. The purpose of this feature is to help preserve the visual weight of images and graphics.

Note: When you enable this feature, Color Matcher requires some additional processing time because of the extra calculations involved.

Overprint Handling (CPU Intensive)

(See [About overprint handling](#) on page 257)

Select to prevent overprinting objects from generating unintended knockouts.

If you are converting spots to process for a proof, or if you are color-matching one CMYK space to another CMYK space for a proof, you probably need to apply overprint handling, even if you applied it during refine.

To use overprint handling, you must:

1. In the **ColorConvert** section, select:
 - The **Color Matcher JTP**
 - The **Match Colors in Page Content** check box
 - The **Overprint Handling** check box
2. Choose between raster and vector overprint handling in the **Methods** list.

Note: The raster option is available only when **Shades=256** is selected in the **Render** section of the process template.

Method

Choose to use vector or raster overprint handling for this output process.

Select **Raster** when outputting to low-resolution contone proofers (for example, Veris digital proofer or Matchprint Inkjet proofer).

Note: To use raster overprint handling, you must select, in the **Render** section of the process template, **Shades=256**.

Additional factors to consider:

- Raster overprint handling can be applied only to continuous tone data
- Raster overprint handling occurs after the RIP
- Raster processing time increases exponentially as the resolution increases
- Raster overprint handling eliminates all overprints

Select **Vector** when outputting to halftone (screen) proofers (for example, the Spectrum device), or to high-resolution contone proofers.

Additional factors to consider:

- Vector overprint handling occurs before the RIP
- Depending on the complexity of the file, vector overprint handling could take longer than raster overprint handling.
- Vector overprint handling does not eliminate all overprints. In objects where overprinting does not have an effect on the output, the objects retain an overprint status. For example, if you set black to overprint, but one black object is not placed on top of another object, this black object is, after overprint handling, still an overprinting object.

Process CEPS Data

Select this check box to enable spot color mapping and color matching of CEPS data.

For further information, see the CEPS Conversion Section and the Normalize Section of the Refine Process Template.

Process Marks

Select this check box when you want to apply color management to your marks file. Depending on the type of mark, it may be necessary to enable **Overprint Handling** to appropriately convert the mark and apply the necessary color transformation.

Note: When **Process Marks** is checked, both sheet marks and page marks are color managed.

Color match 1-bit images

Select this check box to color match 1-bit images. One-bit images are images that represent two tones, typically black and white. The pixel is either a 0 or a 1 value. Examples are copydot images.

Note: This feature will convert 1-bit images to 8-bit images. This causes pages to become larger and to render more slowly. Turn off this feature if you do not require color matching of 1-bit images, or if the feature causes unacceptable performance degradation. (For example, copydot files take a very long time to refine and render.)

This feature is available when **Match Colors in Page Content** is selected.

Proof Process (Destination) Profile

Enables the ICC profile for a proofing device. The ICC profile characterizes the way the proofing device prints.

Enable this feature by selecting a profile in the **Process (Destination) Profile** box. Leave this box blank to disable the feature.

Source of Color Recipes

Extract Recipe from the File

Select to use the color recipes embedded in the file.

Lookup Recipe in Color Database

Select to use the color libraries selected in this process template.

Color Libraries

Selectable and Selected

From the **Selectable** list, select the color libraries that you want Prinergy to search for color recipes, and click **Add**.

Arrange the color libraries in the **Selected** box in the order (descending) that you want them to be searched. Use the **Move Up** and **Move Down** buttons.

Note: Ensure that you select color libraries with color spaces that are compatible with the **Final Output Process Profile** box of the **Spot Color Handling** section of the refine process template.

Use Recipe from File if not found in Color Database

Select this check box to use color recipes embedded in the file if Prinergy does not find the colors in the selected color libraries.

Render section of the Publish File process template

This process template section determines the output resolution and how the system handles spot colors during publishing.

JTP

Select the job ticket processor (JTP) to use for rendering.

Note: You set up JTPs using Prinergy Administrator.

Device Resolutions

This list is available when an output device format is selected in the **Output To** list.

Select a resolution for the selected device in the list.

Resolution X

Available when the **Device Resolutions** box is unavailable.

Type a resolution value.

Resolution Y

Available when the **Device Resolutions** box is unavailable and mixed resolution values are allowed for the output format selected in the **Output To** list.

Type a resolution value.

Do Separations

Available when the output format selected in the **Output To** list supports separated output and **DeviceCMYK** is selected in the **Color Model** options.

Select if you want Prinergy to output separations. Clear this check box if you want Prinergy to output a single composite file.

Spot Color Handling

Determines how spot colors should be handled.

The list of values varies, depending on the output format selected from the **Output To** list.

- Select **Convert to process** to convert spot colors to process colors.

Note: When **Convert to process** is selected, **Vector Overprint Handling** (in the ColorConvert section) is automatically turned on to ensure the correct appearance of any overprinting spot colors.

- Select **Output separately** to preserve spot colors on output.
- Select **Don't output** to suppress output of spot colors.

Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots

This check box is available when **Output Separations Handling** is set to **Convert separations to process**.

If the input files contain overprinted spot colors, the Color Combiner, which is a plug-in to the renderer, will combine the layers and output the overprinted colors correctly.

When this check box is cleared, the renderer handles the conversion of spot colors to process colors if the following conditions exist:

- Input files are composite.
- All spot colors are set to opaque in the color database. (If a spot color is not in the color database, opaque is assumed.)

If the above conditions are not met, the Color Combiner will be used, even if the **Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box is cleared.

We recommend that you always select this check box.

See [About Color Combiner](#) on page 805.

Dielines Overprint Other Content

This check box is cleared and unavailable if the **Do Separations** check box is cleared and unavailable.

Select this check box to specify whether die lines overprint other content. Clear this check box if you do not want die lines to overprint other content.

The **Dielines Overprint Other Content** check box is available for the following outputs:

- DCS Raster
- Kodak Approval TIFF
- LQS TIFF
- VPS
- Windows Bitmap

Anti-Aliasing

Select this check box to enable anti-aliasing, and then in the **at Ratio** list, specify a ratio for anti-aliasing.

Anti-aliasing is a technique of improving the appearance of output by minimizing the "stair step" effect on rasterized output. It does so by rendering to a higher resolution than the intended output, and then downsampling to the intended output. This generates "averaged" pixels which softens the "stair step" effect on low-resolution output. The ratio value for anti-aliasing refers to the factor used to determine the intermediate resolution. A higher ratio results in higher quality, but can have an effect on output speed. For example, if the output is a 300 DPI 8-bit TIFF, and the anti-alias ratio is 4, Prinergy will render an intermediate output at 1200 DPI (4 x 300 DPI), and then downsample to the user-requested 300 DPI. Anti-aliasing is only available for 8-bit (256 shade) output.

Fail if font problems detected

Select this check box to fail the output process if a file has missing fonts.

Note: This feature is not available for vector outputs (PDF, PS2, PS3, EPS, DCS Vector, PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, CT/LW, and DELTA).

Ignore Embedded Fonts in Marks Files

Select this check box if you want Prinergy to ignore embedded fonts in a marks file and to look for the fonts in the `system fonts` folder.

Important: You must install the fonts in `%ServerName%\%AraxiHome%\AdobeExtreme\bin\fonts`, or the output will fail.

Convert Text to Paths

This check box converts fonts to outlines before a file is RIPed.

This option was added in Prinergy 3.0 when the CPSI 3016 RIP was included with Prinergy. This option helped situations where the 3016 RIP failed to process the fonts on certain jobs.

This option has limited usefulness now, but is included as a potential workaround in rare cases where fonts are not rendered correctly by the RIP. It is not recommended that you enable this on a permanent basis. When using this option for specific jobs, it is recommended that you ensure that both proofs and plates are output with this option.

Note that when you select the **Convert Text to Paths** check box, you will have text appear fatter on low-resolution proof output. You can overcome this appearance problem by either:

- Rendering to a higher resolution, if rendering to 1-bit output, such as Virtual Proofing System
- Using anti-aliasing, if rendering to contone output

Note: This check box is only available for raster output formats (.VPS, .TIFF, and so on).

Overlay Versioned Content

This check box applies to Layered PDF Versioning. For information, see the *Prinergy Layered PDF Versioning User Guide*.

Versioning Proof Mapping Color

This box applies to Layered PDF Versioning. For information, see the *Prinergy Layered PDF Versioning User Guide*.

File Format section of the Publish File process template

This process template section identifies the format and compression settings of the output files.

Include Images as

If printing to PDF, select **Original** to output the original images in the output file.

Select **Low Resolution** to output low-resolution versions of the images in the output file.

Compression

(See [About outputting to a file](#) on page 661)

The compression options that are available vary depending on the output format selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template. The following compression options are available:

- **None**—Select if you do not want to compress files
- **CCITTG3**—Not available if outputting to a non-screened format
- **CCITTG4**—Not available if outputting to a non-screened format
- **LZW**
- **RLE**
- **ZIP**—Select if you use Kodak Staccato screening software

Note: Compression methods **CCITTG3** and **CCITTG4** are unavailable if the **Always use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box is selected in the **Render** section of the process template or if any Staccato screening system is selected in the **Screen System** box in the **Calibration & Screening** section.

Quality

The quality control option is available only if the **Output To** list is set to **JPEG**.

Prinerigy provides five JPEG compression quality options ranging from **maximum** quality (the least compression and the smallest loss of data) to **minimum** quality (the most compression and the greatest loss of data).

- **Maximum**
- **High**
- **Medium**
- **Low**
- **Minimum**

The lower the quality of JPEG compression, the smaller the file size, but the greater the chance of noticeable blockiness in certain areas of the image. You should experiment with JPEG compression levels to see what amount of image degradation is acceptable for your purposes.

Vector Output Options

Render Shadings

Select to render PostScript 3 vector objects with Level 3 smooth shades to produce rasterized contone objects in order to meet the PostScript Level 2 standard. Target workflows may process rasterized objects faster than vector ones, but there may be some quality degradation for subtle shadings that extend over long distances.

Specify a resolution for the rendered shadings in the **at Resolution** box.

Available when **DCS, PS2, PS3, or PDF** is selected in the **Output To** list.

Font Outlining

Select to replace all text objects with vector objects in output pages.

This is available to DCS, PDF, and separated PostScript vector output formats. It is useful for eliminating font formats that

certain RIPs may not be able to process. Text output in this way cannot be edited and when previewed in Adobe Acrobat, will look bolder than the original text due to loss of font hinting for low-resolution monitors.

Delete Traps

Select to remove any Prinergy-generated traps from PDF, PostScript Level 2, and DCS-2 output files.

Trapping-generated overprints remain in the files.

Apply Geometry

Select to apply geometry settings to PDF, PostScript Level 2, and DCS-2 output files.

You can set the geometry for a page (offset scale, orientation) in the Set Page Geometry dialog box.

If this check box is selected, the geometry is applied to the output file. To access the Set Page Geometry dialog box, from the **Edit** menu, select **Set Page Geometry**.

Simulate overprints (CMYK only)

Select to replace overprint intersections with an opaque object.

This creates a page that maintains its integrity on output, even if a downstream publisher or printer configures their workflow to override overprints.

Preserve PDF Layers

Applies to the Layered PDF Versioning feature. For more information, see the Layered PDF Versioning user guide.

Send PostScript duplexing commands

Select to print on both sides of the media. Assuming a portrait sheet orientation, select **Turn** print pages side to side by flipping on the long edge. Select **Tumble** to print both sides by flipping on the short edge.

This option simply adds the duplex command to the PostScript output. The consuming device may not support this command.

Output Intent

Use this area to specify an ICC profile or named print condition in the Output Intents section of the PDF/X file that you are generating.

A named print condition is a documented printing situation with a defined relationship between input data and the colorimetry

of the printed image. Typically, named print conditions are registered with an organization such as the ICC.

Do one of the following:

- To specify an ICC profile, select the **Profile** check box and specify the path of a profile.
- To specify a named print condition, select the **Name** check box and select a print condition from the list.

This area is available only when a **PDF/X** format is selected in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.

Marks section of the Publish File process template

This process template section determines how marks are handled.

Unit Used for Variable Marks

Select the unit you want to use to measure variable marks—inch, cm (centimeter), mm (millimeter), or pts (points).

Default Marks Font

Here's an example of how you could use the feature:

1. Create a Preps imposition file that includes a variable mark, such as \$ [PageName].
2. In Prinerger, in the **Default Marks Font** box in the **Marks** section of the imposition output process template, type the exact name of the double-byte font that can be used in case the variable mark's original font was not a double-byte font. The font must reside either in a Prinerger-aware font folder or in the job's font search path.
3. Submit the imposition file to Prinerger.

If the imposition file contains a page name with double-byte fonts, Prinerger outputs the file with these characters.

Marks

About marks

Marks are text or images that are printed in addition to page content, on the press sheet and/or output media. A mark usually provides information about the output. For example, a mark can be an exposure bar or the job name. Marks are also often used for customer approval tags.

Page Marks and Sheet Marks

Any mark can be used as a page mark or a sheet mark. However a page mark should relate to page-specific information because it is placed on every page. A sheet mark should contain information relevant to the whole sheet or media because it is placed on the media once. You can place page marks on loose page output, and sheet marks on all output types.

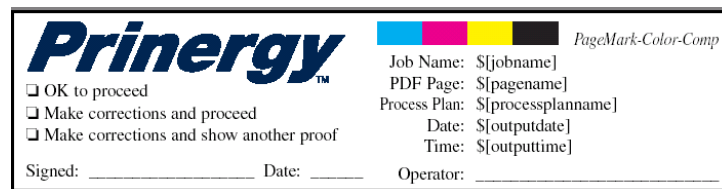
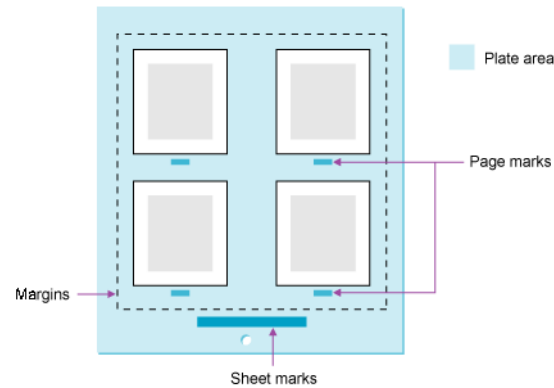


Figure 6: Example of a page mark

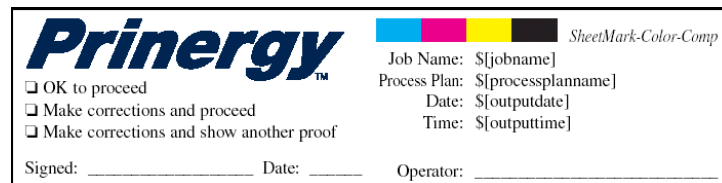


Figure 7: Example of a sheet mark

Adding marks in Prinerger

You can add marks to your Prinerger output in the following ways:

- **Using an imposition marks file**—Add marks to the imposition using imposition software, and then import the imposition and its marks file into Prinerger.
- **Using the process template settings**—Specify the positioning and file path for a mark in the output process template.

Distilling marks for Prinerger

Marks files in Prinerger must be distilled using the recommended settings. If using an imposition marks file, you can set Prinerger to distill

(normalize) the marks file on import. If using the process template settings, you must manually distill the marks file.

Methods of adding marks files

You can add marks to your Prinergy output by using an imposition marks file or by using a process template.

Adding Marks Using an Imposition Marks File

An imposition marks file is a marks file created from imposition software such as Preps. They are used to add marks to imposition output and final output.

The benefit of this method is that you can place marks more precisely, and the marks file can be automatically imported and distilled when you import the imposition.

Adding marks using a process template

Use a process template to add marks to output when you want to avoid using imposition software to add marks.

Create the marks in drawing software, then distill and import them into the output process template. The output process templates allow you to specify the position of the mark. Using this method you avoid having to add the marks in the imposition software and reprocess the imposed marks file.

If you want to place a mark on loose page output you must use this method of adding a mark.

Important: When placing sheet marks on final output, be sure you account for the tail and lead clamps and be sure you know where the press sheet contacts the plate.

Sheet marks on final output

Adding a sheet marks file to the output process template should be done with great care. Before placing a sheet mark, you must know:

- The press sheet size and plate size
- The distance between the plate edge and press sheet edge
- The size of the nonimageable area under the lead and tail clamps
- Where you want the sheet mark to appear

Do not position sheet marks under the plate clamps. If you position the sheet mark under the clamps, some or all of the sheet mark will not be imaged.

Sheet marks are set to overprint. If you position the sheet mark over an object, the sheet mark will overprint the object.

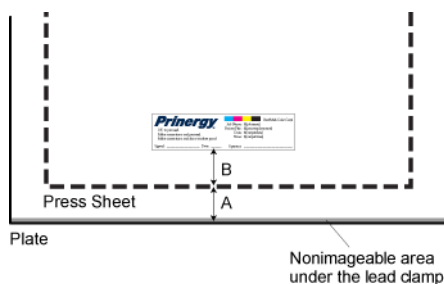
Use the Virtual Proofing System software to check the sheet mark placement. Alternatively, you can output to a low-resolution TIFF file and view the sheet mark placement in the Copydot Toolkit software.

Calculating the at distance value on final output

When placing sheet marks on final output, carefully calculate the value in the **at Distance** box.

- If you want a sheet mark on the plate only, type the distance between the edge of the plate and the sheet mark (shown as A in the following diagram).
- If you want a sheet mark on the press sheet, first calculate the distance between the edge of the plate and the press sheet (A) and the distance between the press sheet and then calculate the sheet mark (B). In the **at Distance** box, type the sum of $A + B$.

In either case, if you are placing a sheet mark on the top or bottom edges, the distance (A) must include the size of the nonimageable area under the lead or tail clamp.



Recommended Acrobat Distiller 8, 9, and X settings for marks

Use the following settings when distilling page marks sheet marks, and Preps marks files to PDF files for Prinergy input:

General tab

File Options

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Compatibility | Acrobat 5.0 (PDF 1.4 and later) Use this setting if you want transparent objects to be handled natively without flattening during the refine process. |
| Object Level Compression | Off |
| Auto-Rotate Pages | Off |
| Binding | Left |
| Resolution | 2400 dpi |

| | |
|----------------------------|--------|
| All Pages | Select |
| Embed thumbnails | Select |
| Optimize for fast web view | Clear |

Default Page Size

| | |
|--------|---------------|
| Width | 8.5 |
| Height | 11.0 |
| Units | Inches |

Images tab

Color Images

| | |
|---------------|---|
| Downsample | Bicubic Downsampling to 300 pixels per inch for images above 450 pixels per inch |
| Compression | ZIP |
| Image Quality | High |

Grayscale Images

| | |
|---------------|---|
| Downsample | Bicubic Downsampling to 300 pixels per inch for images above 450 pixels per inch |
| Compression | ZIP |
| Image Quality | High |

Monochrome Images

| | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| Downsample | Off |
| Compression | CCITT Group 4 |
| Anti-Alias to gray | Off |

Fonts tab

| | |
|--|-------------------|
| Embed all fonts | Select |
| Subset embedded fonts when percent of characters used is less than | 0 (zero) |
| When embedding fails | Cancel Job |
| Embedding: Always Embed | Base 14 Fonts |

Color tab

Adobe Color Settings

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Settings File | None |
| Color Management Policies | Leave Color Unchanged |
| Document Rendering Intent | Preserve |
| Working Spaces: Gray, RGB, CMYK | not applicable |

Device-Dependent Data

| | |
|--|-----------------|
| Preserve under color removal and black generation settings | Select |
| When transfer functions are found | Preserve |
| Preserve halftone information | Select |

Advanced tab

Options

| | |
|--|--------|
| Allow PostScript file to override Adobe PDF settings | Clear |
| Allow PostScript XObjects | Clear |
| Convert gradients to smooth shades | Select |
| Create Job Definition Format (JDF) file | Clear |
| Preserve Level 2 copypage semantics | Select |
| Preserve overprint settings | Select |
| Overprint default is non zero overprinting | Select |
| Save Adobe PDF settings inside PDF file | Clear |
| Save original JPEG images in PDF if possible | Clear |
| Save Portable Job Ticket inside PDF file | Clear |
| Use Prologue.ps and Epilogue.ps | Clear |

Document Structuring Conventions (DSC)

| | |
|--|--------|
| Process DSC Comments | Select |
| Log DSC Warnings | Clear |
| Preserve EPS information from DSC | Select |
| Preserve OPI comments | Select |
| Preserve document information from DSC | Select |

| | |
|--|--------|
| Resize page and center artwork for EPS files | Select |
|--|--------|

Sheet marks options explained

This topic explains the three options in output process templates that position sheet marks: **Locate Sheet Marks Adjacent to** list, **at Distance** box, and **Justified** list.

Using these three options, you can place a sheet mark at various positions on a press sheet or plate. Before making your selection, you must know where you want the sheet mark to appear, the size of your press sheet and plate, and the location of the lead and tail clamps. This is particularly important when placing the sheet mark on a plate.

Important: Use the Virtual Proofing System software to check the sheet mark placement. Alternatively, you can output to a low-resolution TIFF file and view the sheet mark placement in the Copydot Toolkit software.

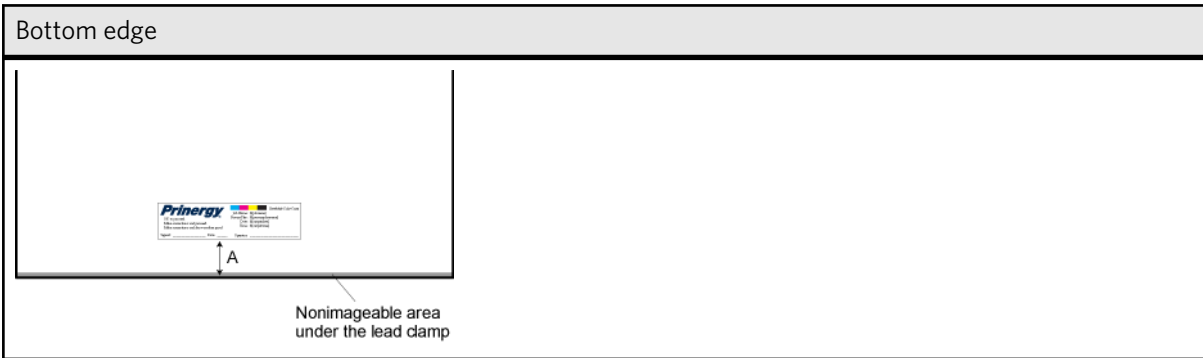
Locate Sheet Marks Adjacent to

The **Locate Sheet Marks Adjacent to** list allows you to place the sheet mark on the left, right, bottom, or top edges of the plate. The sheet mark rotates when positioned on the right and left edges, but not on the top or bottom edges.

| Right edge | Left edge | Top edge |
|------------|-----------|----------|
| | | |

at distance

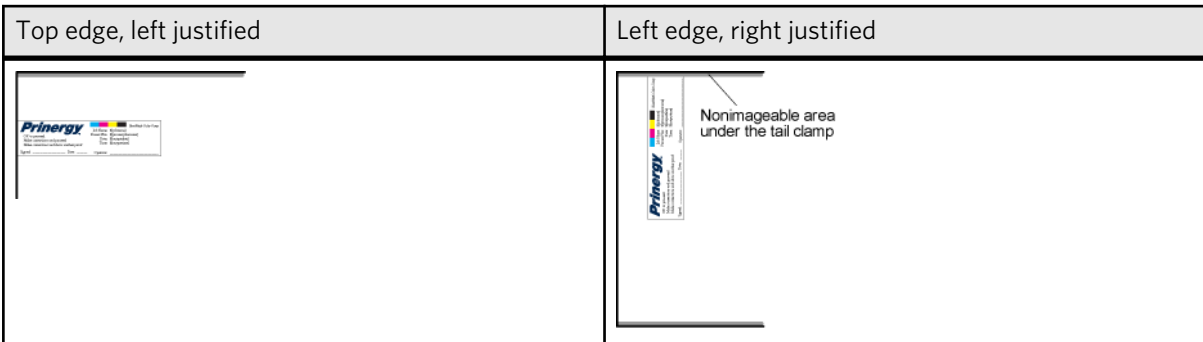
The **at Distance** box determines how far to position the sheet mark from the edge that you selected in the **Locate Sheet Marks Adjacent to** list. The distance is shown as A in the following diagram.



Important: When placing the sheet mark on final output, carefully calculate the **at Distance** value. Otherwise, the sheet mark may print beyond the edge of the press sheet.

Justified

Selecting **Right** or **Left** in the **Justified** list places a sheet mark flush against the edge of the plate, with no border or spacing. In some cases, you may inadvertently place the sheet mark in the nonimageable area under the lead or tail clamp.

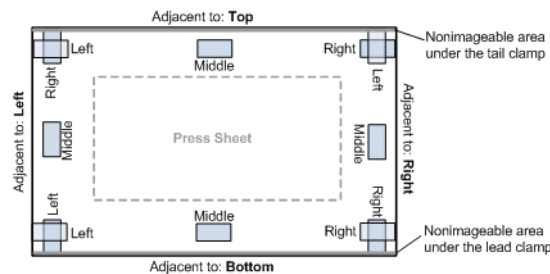


Putting it all together

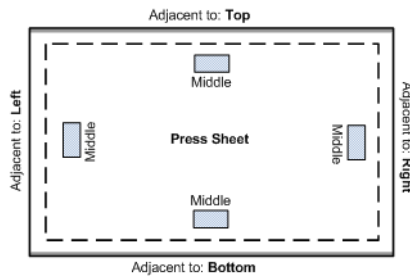
These diagrams (not to scale) show possible combinations of the **Locate Sheet Marks Adjacent to** and **Justified** options. Assume that the **at Distance** value is 6.3 mm (0.25 inches) in all cases.

The following diagram shows sheet marks placed on a plate.

Note: In some combinations, part of the sheet mark is located in the nonimageable area under the lead or tail clamp.



The following diagram shows sheet marks placed on a press sheet.



Overview of adding marks

1. Create the source PostScript for the marks PDF files in any software that allows registration color (for example, QuarkXPress, PageMaker) so it appears on all separations.
2. Once you are satisfied with your file, create a fat, composite PostScript file containing embedded fonts.
3. Perform the following as appropriate:

| If you want to add marks using... | Then... |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| An imposition marks file | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Add the marks to your imposition using imposition software such as Preps and then import the imposition (and marks file). |
| A process template | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Configure an Acrobat Distiller job option file to distill PostScript files to PDF files for Prinergy. This task must be performed only once after installing Prinergy Workshop. b. Use Acrobat Distiller to distill the PostScript to create PDF files of the marks file. c. Create an output process template specifying the marks file and its positioning. d. Apply the output process template to the PDF files in a job. The system will add the marks file from the process template to the job. |

Importing imposition marks files

1. Add the marks in an imposition plan using imposition software such as Preps.
The imposition software creates a .pjtf file and a .eps file. The .eps file is the marks file.
2. Ensure that both files are in the same folder before importing into Prinergy.
3. Set the ImportAll process template for importing the imposition plan and marks file.

The ImportAll process template is automatically used when imposition plans and marks files are imported.

- a. Complete the **Normalize for PostScript Marks Files** section of the ImportAll process template.

If you want the import process not to fail if any images are missing, in the **Images** area, clear the **Fail on Missing Images** check box.

- b. If you want to compress images to reduce the size of the marks file, also complete the **Optimize for PostScript Marks Files** section. In the Color Images area, in the **Compression** box, select **ZIP (lossless)**. In the **Grayscale Images** area, in the **Compression** box, select **ZIP (lossless)**.
4. Select both the imposition plan and the marks file, and import them into Prinergy.

Configuring Distiller for marks

Create an Acrobat Distiller job option to distill PostScript files to PDF for Prinergy. This configuration task must be performed only once after installing Prinergy Workshop.

For more information, see the Acrobat Distiller documentation.

1. Open Acrobat Distiller.
2. Click **Settings > Edit Adobe PDF Options**.
3. In the dialog box, set the options as recommended for Acrobat Distiller.
4. Click **Save As**, and in the **File Name** box, type an appropriate name such as `Prinergy Marks`.

Distilling PostScript marks files

Ensure that you have configured a Acrobat Distiller job option file to distill PostScript files to PDF files for Prinergy.

Note: If your customers have Acrobat Distiller, you can give them the recommended settings file to use on their own workstations. Distribute the following file and have the customer place it in the same location: Adobe Acrobat\Distiller\Settings\Prinerger Pages.joboptions.

For more information, see the Acrobat Distiller documentation.

1. Open Acrobat Distiller.
2. In the **Default Settings** box, select **Prinerger Marks** to use the recommended Prinerger settings.
You can view the settings by selecting **Edit Adobe PDF Setting** from the **Settings** menu. Click **OK** or **Cancel** to close the Adobe PDF Settings dialog box.
3. Drag files to be distilled onto the Acrobat Distiller dialog box.

Setting a process template to use marks file

1. In any window, from the **Tools** menu, select **Process Template Editor**.
2. Open an output process template (loose page output, imposition output, or final output process template) .
3. Open the **Marks** section.
4. To place a sheet mark, click **Browse** beside the **Sheet Marks** box to locate the sheet marks PDF file.

Tip: If you are typing the path name directly in the box, use the variable **%system%** as part of the path name to denote the %AraxiHome%\CreoAraxi folder on your Prinerger system.

Example:

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Entered in Sheet Mark box | %system%\data\MarkSets\Sheet Marks\B&W Proofer\Composite Proofs\SheetMark-BW-Comp.pdf |
| Resulting path name | %AraxiHome%\CreoAraxi\data\MarkSets\Sheet Marks\B&W Proofer\Composite Proofs\SheetMark-BW-Comp.pdf |

5. Select the **Calibrate** check box to apply calibration curves to the marks.
The calibration curve is set in the **Calibration Curve list** in the **Calibration and Screening** section of the output process template.
6. From the **Locate Sheet Marks Adjacent to** box, select a location for the sheet marks, and then specify the distance in the **at Distance** box.
7. If you are setting the loose page process template and you want to set a page mark, click **Browse** beside the **Page Marks** box to locate the page marks PDF.

8. Select the **Calibrate** check box to apply calibration curves to the masks.
9. From the **Locate Page Marks Adjacent to** box, select a location for the page marks, and then specify the distance.
10. Save and close the process template.

Marks options in the process template

For general information on the marks options, see the **Layout** section of the output process template.

See also:

[About recommended Acrobat Distiller 8, 9, and X settings for content](#) on page [165](#)

[Layout section of the Loose Page Output process template](#) on page [445](#)

[Layout section of the Imposition Output process template](#) on page [501](#)

[Layout section of the Final Output process template](#) on page [556](#)

[Calculating the at distance value on final output](#) on page [692](#)

[Sheet marks options explained](#) on page [695](#)

Variable marks

About variable marks

When you send jobs to an output device, you may want to include information identifying that output, such as the name of the color separation, job name, and output date. Variable marks, also known as marks or slug lines, allow this information to be gathered at the time of output.

When an output process template is executed, variable marks are replaced with the correct information.

You can add variable marks to your output either using an imposition marks file or using the process template settings.

List of variable marks

Variable marks template format

Use the following format: **[\$[tag,<n1, n2>]**

where:

tag is the name of a variable mark, for example Job or Color.

n1 is an optional element and represents the index number, a number that begins at 0 for the left-most character and increases sequentially for each character to the right. For example, if your text reads,

"Prinergy" then "P" is index number 0, "r" is index number 1, "i" is index number 2, and so on.

n2 is an optional element and represents the maximum number of characters for the variable mark.

Examples: If the text is "TestJob", the variable mark **#[Jobname<2,4>]** displays **stJo**. Alternatively, if you use **#[Jobname<3,-3>]** the variable mark displays **est**.

If the file or job name has % in it, use %% in the tag to get % in the name.

Notes:

- For variable marks that are based on the page closest to the PDF file containing the variable mark, this is measured from the center of the page or sheet mark's bounding box.
- You can also use text-file-based marks for impositions which retrieve text from a text file.

Optional parameters

For some variable marks, you can add these parameters:

| This parameter | Can be used with these variable marks | To do this |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| _block | #[Angle] #[Color] #[Colour] | Use this parameter to print a swatch or block of color before the color name. For example, if you use #[color_block], a block of color is printed before the color name. If the color name was "black" a black swatch of color would appear before the color name "black". |

| This parameter | Can be used with these variable marks | To do this |
|----------------|---|---|
| _offset | \$[Angle] \$[CalCurve] \$[Color] \$[Colour] \$[FMPattern] \$[MappedPrintingColors] \$[PageColor] \$[PageColour] \$[PlateID] \$[PrintingOrder] \$[WebGrowthExpansionX] \$[WGEX] \$[WebGrowthExpansionY] \$[WGEY] \$[WebGrowthTowerID] \$[WGTID] | Use _offset to introduce space between printed information. For example, if you use \$[color_offset], and your job contains Cyan, Magenta, and Black, on your output you will see "Cyan Magenta Black" in their own colors. If you do not use _offset, "Cyan Magenta Black" would be printed on top of each other (in their own colors). |
| _replace | Any mark | Use this parameter to allow you to shorten long color names. For example, to shorten the color mark "PANTONE-1234" to "PMS-1234" the color mark is \$[color_replace(PANTONE,PMS)]. To shorten the color mark "PANTONE-1234" to "1234" the color mark is \$[color_replace(PANTONE-,)]. |

List of variable marks

The following table lists, in alphabetical order, all valid variable marks and the type of information they represent. Variable marks are not case-sensitive.

| Variable Mark | Mark Type | Information Represented |
|---------------|------------|---|
| \$[Angle] | Page Sheet | The screening angle (after color mapping) for each plate. This mark applies to AM screening only. You can also use the "offset" parameter with this mark to print different text in each separation. |
| \$[CalCurve] | Sheet | The name of the Harmony calibration curve used to calibrate the output device. |

| Variable Mark | Mark Type | Information Represented |
|---|------------|--|
| <p>[\$[Color]] [\$[Colour]]</p> | Page Sheet | <p>The proper color name of an individual color separation. In making a composite proof, it is replaced by the word <i>composite</i>.</p> <p>You can also use the "offset" parameter with this mark to print different text in each separation.</p> |
| <p>[\$[ColorSetupName]]</p> | Page Sheet | <p>This variable mark shows the ColorFlow color setup that was selected in the refine to PDF process template. For more information, see the <i>ColorFlow User Guide</i>.</p> |
| <p>[\$[ColorsOnPage]] [\$[ColoursOnPage]]</p> | Page | <p>This page mark is replaced with a list of all colors that were on a given page before any color mapping was done.</p> <p>It also indicates the layer to which the colors are assigned if additional layers are present for the page.</p> <p>The page for which colors are printed is the closest placed object to the mark.</p> <p>This page mark can be used for separated or composite files.</p> <p>The output is in the following format: Layer 1: <color1>, <color2>, <color3> ... Layer 2: <color1>, ...</p> <p>The Layer 2 is optional; it prints only if additional layers (versions) are present.</p> <p>Note: Make sure the font used for the page mark is small enough so that all colors will fit in the list.</p> |

| Variable Mark | Mark Type | Information Represented |
|------------------------------|-------------------|--|
| <p>[\$[ColorsOnSurface]]</p> | <p>Sheet</p> | <p>This sheet mark is replaced on output with all of the color names that are present on a surface.</p> <p>If the Color Combiner is turned ON in the process template, the colors that are listed on the surface are the output colors supported on the device.</p> <p>Example: If the proofing device is CMYK only and the colors on the PDF pages contain spot colors, the Color Combiner is automatically turned ON in the process template to map the spots to CMYK. On output, the "ColorsOnSurface" mark will list Cyan Magenta Yellow Black.</p> <p>If the Color Combiner is turned OFF in the process template, the colors that are listed on the surface are all colors for all the pages on the surface.</p> <p>The output is in the following format:</p> <p>Layer 1 <color1><color2><color3><color4> Layer 2 <color1><color2><color3><color4></p> <p>The Layer 2 is optional. It is printed only if additional layers (versions) are present.</p> <p>This mark can be used for separated or composite files.</p> |
| <p>[\$[Compound]]</p> | <p>Page Sheet</p> | <p>This mark enables you to print more than one variable mark on a single line for page or sheet marks.</p> <p>If you want a mark that has the job name and color on the same line, use the following text string:</p> <p>[\$[compound_JobName:_%jobname%_color%color%]]. For example, the output would be JobName:5762 color:Cyan.</p> <p>If you want the colors to be offset, use the following text string: [\$[compound_offset_%color%]].</p> <p>If you want to use the date sub-variables with this mark, use this text string: [\$[compound_%date_\%b-\%d-\%Y%]].</p> <p>When using this mark to separate the different marks that you want printed on the same line, you must use %mark% instead of \$[mark], and an underscore instead of a space.</p> |

| Variable Mark | Mark Type | Information Represented |
|---|---------------|---|
| Custom Field Marks: \${CustomFieldJob} \${CustomFieldPageset}, \${CFPS} \${CustomFieldPage}, \${CFPG} \${CustomFieldPagePosition}, \${CFPGPOS} \${CustomFieldImposition}, \${CFIMPO} \${CustomFieldSignature}, \${CFSIG} \${CustomFieldSurface}, \${CFSRF} \${CustomFieldSeparation}, \${CFSEP} | Page | <p>You can create custom fields for jobs or for elements within a job, so that you can track unique information.</p> <p>You can use custom fields to create variable marks and custom file naming. For example, if you have created custom fields at the job level or job element level (page, page set, imposition, signature, surface, and separation), you can use them to create variable marks and custom file naming.</p> <p>To create a custom field mark, you need to specify the name of the custom field that you created in the custom field mark that you want to print. Custom field marks take the name that you define for the custom field as a parameter. See the following two examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For the mark \${CustomFieldSurface_WebNumber}, "WebNumber" is the name that you defined for a surface-level custom field, and the value of the field would print on output, for example, 2. For the mark \${CustomFieldJob_Salesperson}, "Salesperson" is the name that you defined for a job-level custom field, and the value of the field would print on output, for example, Bob. |
| \${Datamatrix_A_#} | Sheet | This mark prints the Datamatrix barcode, which encodes the job and signature names, where # specifies the size of the barcode in points. The lower-left corner of the text mark coincides with the lower-left corner of the barcode. (The barcode is always square.) |
| \${Datamatrix_B_#} | Sheet | This mark prints the Datamatrix barcode which encodes the front/back and separation information, where # specifies the size of the barcode in points. The lower-left corner of the text mark coincides with the lower-left corner of the barcode. (The barcode is always square.) |
| \${Date} | Sheet | See \${OutputDate}. |
| \${Device} | Sheet | <p>For output to a proofer, this mark contains the name of the proofer.</p> <p>For output to a file, such as a virtual proof, this mark contains the name of the file.</p> <p>For final output to plate, this mark does not show the device name. If you want to show the device name in the final output, name the process template with the device name and use \${ProcessPlanName}, or use \${DeviceSerialNumber}.</p> |
| \${DeviceConditionName} | Page Sheet | A ColorFlow device condition name is a combination of a device and the operating conditions in which the device captures or produces an image. For more information, see the <i>ColorFlow User Guide</i> . |

| Variable Mark | Mark Type | Information Represented |
|-------------------------------------|------------|---|
| \${DeviceName} | Page Sheet | A ColorFlow device name is an individual occurrence of a physical device that captures or produces an image. For more information, see the <i>ColorFlow User Guide</i> . |
| \${DeviceSerialNumber} | Sheet | This mark is intended for GDAPI devices and allows you to track which plate line a plate came from. If the device supports serial numbers, this mark prints the serial number on the plate. |
| \$.DotShape | Sheet | The name of the default or override dot shape used to create the output. |
| \$.FMPattern \$.FMPattern_offset | Sheet | This mark is replaced on output with the Staccato pattern number that is used to screen the separation. For example, Cyan may be 1, Magenta may be 2 and so on. You can also use the "offset" parameter with this mark to print different text in each separation. |
| \$.ICCProfile | Page Sheet | The name of the ICC profile selected in the process template, whether the ICC profile is actually used or not. |
| \$.ImpBleedSizeX | Sheet | The horizontal bleed size of the imposition. |
| \$.ImpBleedSizeY | Sheet | The vertical bleed size of the imposition. |
| \$.ImpPlanName | Sheet | The name of the imposition plan used to create the output. |
| \$.ImpTrimSizeX | Sheet | The horizontal trim size of the page position closest to the mark as defined in the imposition plan. |
| \$.ImpTrimSizeY | Sheet | The vertical trim size of the page position closes to the mark as defined in the imposition plan. |
| InkEater mark | Sheet | See Ink eater mark on page 716 |
| \$.Jobcode | Sheet | A user-assigned code for the job that is meaningful to you or your customer. |
| \$.Jobname | Sheet | The name of the Prinergy job. When you create a job, you indicate its name in the Create New Job dialog box. |
| \$.LinkedPageNames | Page Sheet | This mark is for Layered PDF Versioning (LPV) jobs and can only be used for composite proofs. This mark lists all of the names of the linked pages. For the \$.LinkedPageNames, \$[LinkedPageNames_Base], and \$[LinkedPageNames_NotBase] variable marks, you can append the layer you want in the mark argument. For example, the variable mark \$[LinkedPageNames_English] replaces the name of the page contributing English. The variable mark \$[LinkedPageNames_Common] replaces the name of the page contributing the common layers. |

| Variable Mark | Mark Type | Information Represented |
|---|------------|---|
| \${LinkedPageNames_Base} | Page Sheet | This mark is for Layered PDF Versioning (LPV) jobs and can only be used for composite proofs. This mark replaces only those layer/page name pairs that are base layers. "Base" is a parameter that can only be used with this mark. For more information, see the \${LinkedPageNames} variable mark. |
| \${Linked Page names_NotBase} | Page Sheet | This mark replaces only those layer/page name pairs that are not base layers. "Not Base" is a parameter that can only be used with this mark. For more information, see the \${LinkedPageNames} variable mark. |
| \${MappedPrintingColors} \${MappedPrintingColours} | Sheet | This mark displays the names of colors that were mapped to other spot or process colors during output. For example, if you map the spot color "MySpot1" to black, the \${MappedPrintingColors} mark is replaced with "MySpot1" on the black plate on output. Nothing appears on the other plates. |
| \${MarksFileDate} | Sheet | Prints out the time of the marks PDF in %D:%M:%Y format. |
| \${MarksFileTime} | Sheet | Prints out the time of the marks PDF in %H:%M:%S format. |
| \${Medium} | Sheet | The Harmony tonal calibration software medium applied to the output. |
| \${OutputComment} | Page Sheet | The value in the Output Comment box on the Start Process dialog box. |
| \${OutputDate}, \${Date} | Sheet | The date the output is created (yy-mm-dd). If you use the \${OutputDate} mark, the format is yy-mm-dd. If you use the \${Date} mark, the format can be adjusted using these tags: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • %y for year (two digits) • %Y for Year (four digits) • %m for month • %b for month (3 characters) • %d date For example, to create a mark that shows the month, day and year, the tag could be \${date_%b-%d-%Y} for Mar-11-2006. The tags are case sensitive and the underscore after the date in the variable is required. Separate the tags using colons or dashes. Spaces and underscores are supported. |
| \${OutputMonthYear} | Sheet | Prints the date in %M-%Y format on output. |

| Variable Mark | Mark Type | Information Represented |
|---|-----------|--|
| <p>`\${OutputTime}`, `\${Time}`</p> | Sheet | <p>The time the output is created (hh:mm:ss). If you use the `\${OutputTime}` mark, the format is hh:mm:ss. If you use the `\${Time}` mark, the format can be adjusted using these tags:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • %H for hour • %M for minute • %S for second <p>For example, to create a mark that shows only the hour and minutes, the tag could be `\${time_%H:%M}` for 4:15. The tags are case sensitive and the underscore after the time in the variable is required. Separate the tags using colons or dashes. Spaces and underscores are supported.</p> |
| <p>`\${PageColor}` `\${PageColour}`</p> | Page | <p>Prints the colors that exist in the PDF page that is closest to the variable mark.</p> <p>For example, if a page contains Cyan, Magenta, and Black, this mark will display Cyan (in cyan), Magenta (in magenta), and Black (in black).</p> |
| `\${PageFileDate}` | Page | The date that the PDF page was created. This mark prints the date on each layer if additional layers are present. |
| `\${PageFileName}` | Page | <p>The name of the PDF page that is closest to the PDF file containing the variable mark</p> <p>This mark prints out the page file name used for the top layer.</p> |
| `\${PageFileTime}` | Page | The time that the PDF page was created. This mark prints the time on each layer if additional layers are present. |
| `\${PageName}` | Page | <p>The name of the PDF page that is closest to the PDF file containing the variable mark.</p> <p>This mark will print out the page file name used for each layer if additional layers (versions) are present.</p> |
| `\${PageOffsetX}`, `\${POX}` | Page | The horizontal offset of the page closest to the PDF file containing the variable mark. |
| `\${PageOffsetY}`, `\${POY}` | Page | The vertical offset of the page closest to the PDF file containing the variable mark. |
| `\${PagePathName}` | Page | <p>The network path for the page associated with the mark.</p> <p>For example, if you have a four-page layout and the mark is closest to Page 3, the mark would show the path for Page 3.</p> |
| `\${PageOrientation}`, `\${PO}` | Page | The orientation (0°, 90°, 180°, or 270°) of the page closest to the PDF file containing the variable mark. |

| Variable Mark | Mark Type | Information Represented |
|--|---------------|---|
| `\${PagePositionName}` | Page | The page position name for the PDF page closest to the variable mark. Page position names are the identifiers used to indicate position within a page set. |
| `\${PagePositionNumber}`, `\${PPN}` | Page | The page position number for the PDF page closest to the variable mark. Page position numbers are the identifiers used to indicate position within a page set. |
| `\${PageScaleX}` | Page | The horizontal scale of the page closest to the PDF file containing the variable mark. |
| `\${PageScaleY}` | Page | The vertical scale of the page closest to the PDF file containing the variable mark. |
| `\${PageSetName}` | Page | The page set prefix followed by an underscore and then the page set name |
| `\${PageTrimSizeX}`, `\${PageTrimX}`, `\${PTX}` | Page | The horizontal trim size of the page closest to the PDF file containing the variable mark. |
| `\${PageTrimSizeY}`, `\${PageTrimY}`, `\${PTY}` | Page | The vertical trim size of the page closest to the PDF file containing the variable mark. |
| `\${PlateCalCurve}` | Sheet | This mark indicates the plate curve used on output. |
| `\${PlateID}` | Sheet | A unique identification number that is printed on the plate and can be used to remake the plate using the Plate Remake tool. (For more information about remaking plates, see Remaking plates on page 626.) |
| `\${PlateLineName}` | Page Sheet | When using ColorFlow, you establish the behavior of a particular plate, screening, and plating line by plating a tint ramp, manually measuring the resulting dot area on the plate, and entering the values in the Plate Setups dialog box in the ColorFlow software. For more information, see the <i>ColorFlow User Guide</i> . |
| `\${PositionName}` | Page | See `\${PagePositionName}`. |
| `\${PositionNumber}` | Page | See `\${PagePositionNumber}`. |
| `\${PrintingOrder}` | Sheet | The plate's printing position in the job. For example, if the printing order is C-M-Y-K, the `\${PrintingOrder}` mark on the cyan plate is replaced on output with "1", the mark on the magenta plate is replaced with "2", and so on. |
| `\${ProcessPlanName}` `\${ProcessTemplateName}` | Sheet | The name of the output process template used to create the output. |
| `\${ResolutionX}`, `\${RX}` | Sheet | The horizontal resolution of the output closest to the PDF file containing the variable mark. |
| `\${ResolutionY}`, `\${RY}` | Sheet | The vertical resolution of the output closest to the PDF file containing the variable mark. |
| `\${RIP}` | Sheet | This mark prints the RIP that was used for output, either Adobe PDF Print Engine (APPE) or Adobe CPSI. |

| Variable Mark | Mark Type | Information Represented |
|---|------------|---|
| Scaling Factor Marks | Page Sheet | <p>These marks indicate what scaling factor has been used on final impositions. These marks indicate what distortion or scaling factor has been used so that you can see what percent of flex has been used or if flex has not been applied in a process template.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>\$(ImpRasterScaleX)</code> or <code>\$(IRSX)</code>—The horizontal raster scaling amount applied to the surface. • <code>\$(ImpRasterScaleY)</code> or <code>\$(IRSY)</code>—The vertical raster scaling amount applied to the surface. • <code>\$(ImpVectorScaleX)</code> or <code>\$(IVSX)</code>—The horizontal vector scaling amount applied to the surface. • <code>\$(ImpVectorScaleY)</code> or <code>\$(IVSY)</code>—The vertical vector scaling amount applied to the surface. |
| <code>\$(ScreenRuling)</code> , <code>\$(SR)</code> | Sheet | The default or override line screen ruling used for the output. For AM screening, this refers to the size of the screen ruling in lines per inch (lpi). For FM screening, this refers to feature size in microns. |
| <code>\$(ScreenSystem)</code> | Sheet | The default or override screening system family name used for the output. |
| <code>\$(Sheet)</code> | Sheet | The sheet number. |
| <code>\$(Signature)</code> , <code>\$(SIG)</code> | Sheet | The signature number. |
| <code>\$(SignatureID)</code> | Page Sheet | This mark prints the signature ID code on a sheet to identify which signature the sheet will be used for. |
| <code>\$(SignatureID_<n>)</code> | Page Sheet | This mark prints the signature ID code specified when a signature has more than one section assigned to it. The number <code><n></code> after the underscore can be any number up to the maximum number of sections on a signature. Example: For <code>\$(SignatureID_2)</code> , this mark prints the second code when a signature has two sections assigned to it. |
| <code>\$(SnapshotNumber)</code> | Page Sheet | A ColorFlow snapshot captures the state of the entire color database, making its elements available to the workflow, as well as providing a convenient backup. |
| <code>\$(I2of5Checksum)</code> | Page Sheet | This mark prints the signature ID code as human readable characters and appends the checksum digit for the Interleaved 2 of 5 style of barcode. Kodak has also developed an EPS mark that contains a custom font that prints the Signature ID Code as an Interleaved 2 of 5 barcode. This EPS mark is in the Marks folder in the AraxiPreps share. This EPS can be placed as a SmartMark in Kodak Preps digital imposition software and upon output from Prinergy prints a barcode on the signature (see the Preps digital imposition software documentation). |

| Variable Mark | Mark Type | Information Represented |
|--|-----------|--|
| \${SurfaceID}, \${SID} | Sheet | This mark prints the surface ID of the plate. If the plate is the front side, "U" is printed. If the plate is the back side, "L" is printed. |
| \${SurfaceLetter}, \${SL} | Sheet | The letter identifier for the surface. For example, a four-surface signature for a dual web press would be labeled A through D. |
| \${SurfaceName}, \${SN} | Sheet | The name of the surface-either Front or Back. |
| \${Time} | Sheet | See \${OutputTime}. |
| \${UnmappedColorsOnSurface} \${UnmappedColoursOnSurface} | Sheet | Names of colors that were on the surface before the color combiner was used. If color combiner is turned on in the process template, \${ColorsOnSurface} lists the output colors supported on the device and \${UnmappedColorsOnSurface} lists the names of all colors on the surface before the Color Combiner was used. |
| \${Username} | Sheet | Identifies the user that ran the output process. |
| \${VMRRResolution} | Sheet | Indicates the Variable Mainscan Imaging (VMI) resolution that is added to the VMI dpi box. The dpi box is located in the Device section of the final output process template. |
| \${WebGrowthExpansionX}, \${WGEX} \${WebGrowthExpansionY}, \${WGEY} | Sheet | These marks indicate the actual web growth distortion factor on the plate. Use these marks to show the horizontal or vertical web growth expansion factor that was used for the separation as specified by "expansion xpercent" in the XML profile file (with suffix .wpg). Use these marks to show the horizontal or vertical web growth expansion factor that was used for the separation as specified by "expansion ypercent" in the XML profile file (with suffix .wpg). |
| \${WebGrowthProfile} | Sheet | Name of the web growth profile used, if a web growth profile is selected in the process template. |
| \${WebGrowthTowerID}, \${WGTID} | Sheet | Shows the tower ID for the separation as specified in the color tower map file. |
| \${Workstyle} | Sheet | This mark is used to indicate an imposition's workstyle, such as "sheetwise". |

Using variable marks

You can add variable or regular marks by following the same process.

1. Type the variable marks in the marks file.

Note: Leave enough space between each variable mark to ensure that the populated variable marks do not overlap each other, or use the **\${compound}** variable mark to print more than one mark on a single line.

2. Complete the procedures for adding marks as appropriate.

About signature ID codes

Signature ID codes are marks that identify—in alphanumeric or bar code format—which signature the sheet will be used for. Signature ID codes, which can include version and section information, are typically printed on the spine area in bar code format so that automatic binding machines can read the codes and put the signatures together in the correct order.

You can set up and place signature ID codes in the following ways:

- Use imposition software, such as Preps, to create and place the code as a Prinergy variable mark.
- Use the signature ID code in a Prinergy sheet mark or slug line mark.

The signature ID code is applied to an imposition when it is imported into a Prinergy job. When you create the imposed output, Prinergy replaces the variable mark, sheet mark, or slug line with the actual code containing information about that job.

Note: Use naming conventions for your jobs, impositions, and versions so that signature ID codes are meaningful.

Defining the code syntax

In Administrator, customize the signature ID code syntax to fit the requirements of your bindery equipment.

You can override the default signature ID code syntax by editing the import process template, saving it, and then importing the imposition using the updated Import process template. These changes persist for subsequent uses of the import process template.

After it has been imported, the only way to alter the syntax is to reimport the imposition using different settings. In a future release, you will be able to change the syntax from within Workshop.

For more details, see Signature ID code elements and syntax.

See also:

[Signature ID Code Editor dialog box](#) on page [716](#)

Overriding default signature ID codes

You can use the Process Template Editor to override the settings in the default signature ID code syntax that was created in Administrator.

1. In Job Finder or Job Manager, open the import process template that you want to use to import impositions.
2. In the **Signature ID Code** area of the import process template, in the **Template** box, type the ID code in one line in one of the following formats:

- %jobname<n>%%imposition<n>%%version<n>%
%signature<n>%%numsections%

Each tag must be enclosed with a percent sign (%). ID codes can be a mix of letters and numbers.

n is the number of characters to include, starting from the beginning (left side) of the name or number. To include characters from the end (right side) of the name or number, add a minus sign before the number of characters, for example %jobname<-2>%.

- %n+m%

This is a simple incrementing signature ID code that prints a number (*n*) on the first signature version and increments it by a specified number (*m*) for each subsequent version.

For example, %0000+1% prints 0000 on the first signature and each subsequent signature version is incremented by 1.

3. In the **Number of sections per signatures in one imposition** box, type the total number of sections for each signature.
For example, if you import an imposition with five signatures and signatures 2 and 5 each contains two sections, enter 1, 2, 1, 1, 2.
4. Save the import process template and use this import process template to override the default syntax that was created in Administrator.

Examples:

| Description | Context | Signature ID codes (type the signature ID code in one line) | Number of Sections per Signature | Resulting codes |
|---|---|---|----------------------------------|--|
| Simple incrementing number code (not available in 4.0.2.1 release) | Job name: 12345 # signatures: 2 # sections per signature: 1 Versions: 01: English 02: French | %00001+1% | 1 | English signature 1: 00001 English signature 2: 00002 French signature 1: 00003 French signature 2: 00004 |
| Versioned Job | Job name: 12345 # signatures: 2 #sections per signature: 1 Versions: 01 - English and 02 - French | %jobname<-2>% %Version<2>% %Signature<2>% | 1 | English signature 1: 450101 English signature 2: 450102 French signature 1: 450201 French signature 2: 450202 |
| Multi-section job | Job name: 0027 Text Section # signatures: 5 (signature 3 contains 2 sections) | %jobname<-2>% %signature<2>% %numsections% | 1,1,2,1,1 | Signature 1: 27015 Signature 2: 27025 Signature 3: 27035 Signature 4: 27045 Signature 5: 27055 |
| Pre-job (with multiple impositions) | | %imposition<1>% %version<-2>% %signature<2>% | 1 | specific to the job (unique) |

Editing signature ID codes

Add, remove, and modify elements from signature ID codes.

Edit signature ID codes using either the import process template or the Signature ID Codes Editor.

1. Open the Signature ID Code Editor: in the Signatures view of Job Manager, right-click the desired signature and select **Change Signature ID Code Template** or select the desired job and, from the **Job** menu, select **Change Signature ID Code Template**.
2. Select the desired elements under **Create signature ID code template from**. See Signature ID code elements and syntax
3. To manually edit the ID code, under **ID Code Template**, click **Edit**.
4. Under Sections, view and edit the sections associated with each signature. If you are using multiple sections for a signature, under **Create signature ID code template from**, select **Signature Number**.
5. To view the ID codes before you commit your changes, click **Preview**.
6. Click **OK**.

Examples:

| Description | Context | Signature ID codes (type the signature ID code in one line) | Number of Sections per Signature | Resulting codes |
|---|---|--|----------------------------------|--|
| Simple incrementing number code (not available in 4.0.2.1 release) | Job name: 12345 # signatures: 2 # sections per signature: 1 Versions: 01: English 02: French | %00001+1% | 1 | English signature 1: 00001 English signature 2: 00002 French signature 1: 00003 French signature 2: 00004 |
| Versioned Job | Job name: 12345 # signatures: 2 #sections per signature: 1 Versions: 01 - English and 02 - French | %jobname<-2>% %Version<2>% %Signature<2>% | 1 | English signature 1: 450101 English signature 2: 450102 French signature 1: 450201 French signature 2: 450202 |
| Multi-section job | Job name: 0027 Text Section # signatures: 5 (signature 3 contains 2 sections) | %jobname<-2>% %signature<2>% %numsections% | 1,1,2,1,1 | Signature 1: 27015 Signature 2: 27025 Signature 3: 27035 Signature 4: 27045 Signature 5: 27055 |

| Description | Context | Signature ID codes (type the signature ID code in one line) | Number of Sections per Signature | Resulting codes |
|-------------------------------------|---------|--|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Pre-job (with multiple impositions) | | %imposition<1>% %version<-2>% %signature<2>% | 1 | specific to the job (unique) |

See also:

[About signature ID codes](#) on page 712

Signature ID Code Editor dialog box

Use the Signature ID Code Editor dialog box to edit the elements of an ID code.

The syntax for signature ID codes can use one or more of the following tags. None of the tags are required. You can specify how many characters in the name tags to include in the signature ID code.

To manually edit the ID code, under **ID Code Template**, click **Edit...**

| ID Code element | Description | Syntax |
|--|--|-----------------|
| Job Name | Adds the specified number of characters from the beginning or end of the job name. | %jobname<n>% |
| Job Code | Adds the specified number of characters from the beginning or end of the job code. | %jobcode<n>% |
| Imposition Name | Adds the specified number of characters from the beginning or end of the imposition name. | %imposition<n>% |
| Version Name | Adds the specified number of characters from the beginning or end of the version name—for example, the language. | %version<n>% |
| Signature Number | Indicates the section number of the signature. | %signature<n>% |
| Append the total number of sections | Calculates the total number of sections in the signature. If you use this option, you must also select Signature Number . | %numsections% |
| Incrementing ID Code | Any number that is incremented by a value that you specify. This element must be manually entered. | %000+n% |

See also:

[About signature ID codes](#) on page 712

[Editing signature ID codes](#) on page 714

Ink eater mark

For presses that require a minimum ink coverage per separation, the ink eater mark places a bar on the sheet to remove extra ink from the rollers.

The bar is used to constitute the minimum ink coverage that is required for each separation on a press. Prinergy determines the amount of ink

used by content for each pixel column and adds an amount of ink that fulfills the minimum requirement to the specified ink eater bar area. Typically, ink eater bars are placed in the gutter along the width of the sheet.

The Prinergy ink eater mark is calculated on the fly. It takes all other marks into consideration to provide the most accurate calculation of the ink coverage. Also, the Prinergy ink eater mark is smoothed, so that hard edges are not visible between pixel columns.

The ink eater mark has the following format:

```
$  
[InkEater_minX_minY_maxX_maxY_minDensity_maxSaturation_colors]
```

The first four arguments are mandatory and are defined in millimeters. `minX` and `minY` together define the lower-left corner, and `maxX` and `maxY` together define the upper-right corner of a rectangular ink eater mark. These measurements are relative to the lower-left corner of the plate media as defined in the imposition.

- `minDensity` is the minimum amount of ink that any color may have per pixel column. The default value is 7%.
- `maxSaturation` is the maximum saturation that the ink eater mark can have. This is of concern when multiple colors are included in the same ink eater mark. The default value is 180%.
- `colors` is a list of the colors which are to be included in the ink eater mark. The default is `SeparationAll`, which includes all colors. `MK2`, for example, would include Magenta, Black, and the second spot color.

Tip: You can place more than one ink eater bar. This is useful if you need to place other marks in the gutter. Also, it may be useful to create one ink eater bar per color.

For the mark `$(InkEater_5_185_706.2_215_7_180_CMYK1)`, see the following before and after figures.



Limitations

Performance testing estimates additional processing time of approximately 10 to 20 seconds per plate in cases where an ink eater mark is included.

Output to composite output (example, contone TIFF) does not work because the mark is designed to work on separated data. The Marks JTP fails in this case. This limitation dictates that users of this mark should take either of the following actions:

- Not do imposed contone proof outputs if the mark is in the imposition mark PDF
- Build the mark into a PDF file and apply it as a sheet mark in the plating process template, rather than defining the mark in the imposition's mark file

Use of this feature with pre-separated PDF pages will cause processing to fail.

Use of this feature with legacy versioning jobs will result in incorrect output.

Text-file-based marks

About text-file-based marks

You can use an imposition application (for example, Preps or Pandora) to add text-file-based marks to an imposition. Once the imposition is processed, the mark will be replaced with text from a text file.

This feature allows you to quickly change specific text in an imposition without repeatedly opening an imposition software application.

For example, you can place marks on each page within an imposition. Once the imposition is processed, each mark is replaced with the associated text from the text file.

When you need to change the text on the final output, simply modify the text file.

List of text-file-based marks

Place text-file-based marks in the imposition plan.

Text-file-based marks

The supported marks are:

- Signatures: **#[SignatureText]** or **#[SIGT]**
- Sheets: **#[SheetText]** or **#[SHTT]**
- Surfaces: **#[SurfaceText]** or **#[SRFT]**
- Pages: **#[PageText]** or **#[PT]**
- Versions: **#[VersionSignatureText]** or **#[VSIGT]** (The syntax for versions is version <version name> <text>.)

Note: You cannot place both page marks and version marks on the same surface, sheet, or signature.

Syntax

Text-file-based marks are of the form **\$(mark)** or **\$(mark_n)**, where:

- **mark** is the type of text mark to be retrieved.
- **n** is an optional numeric parameter identifying the text string to be used if more than one is defined for the object.

If the optional numeric parameter is omitted, 1 is assumed.

If the text string for the mark cannot be located in the imposition text file the mark is replaced with an empty string.

See [Example: text-file-based marks](#) on page [721](#).

Text file syntax

The text file must be placed in the same directory as the imposition file, and it must have the same name as the imposition file, except ending with a **.txt** extension.

Syntax

The text strings must be arranged in a hierarchy by imposition object. Configure one line per object.

Each line of the text file must be formatted as:

<Object> <ID> <String 1>; <String 2>; ... <String N>

where,

- **<Object>** is:
 - **Signature** or **Sg**
 - **Sheet** or **Sh**
 - **Surface** or **Su**
 - **Page** or **Pg**

Objects are case-insensitive.

- **<ID>** is a numeric identifier or a Preps-style alpha surface identifier. The surface identifiers **Front** or **Fr** and **Back** or **Ba** are also supported. Pages are identified by their run-list position.

More syntax rules

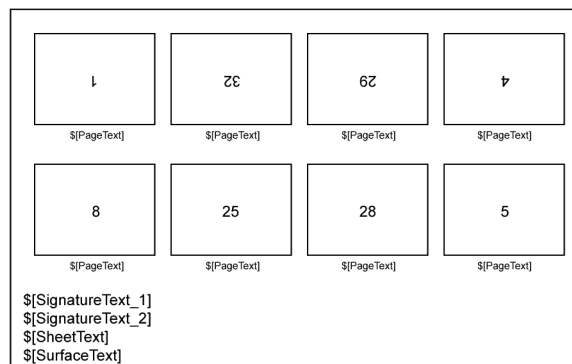
- Strings must be separated by semicolons (and therefore cannot contain semicolons).
- Objects should be listed in hierarchical order. In other words, **signature 1** should be listed before any of the objects in that signature. The order of hierarchy is:
 - Signatures
 - Sheets
 - Surfaces
 - Pages
- If a higher level object is not listed, default values are assumed.
- The file must not contain duplicate objects, and objects must be listed in their hierarchical order unless defaults are being assumed for higher-level objects. If duplicates are found or objects are listed out of order, the output task will fail with an error message listing the problem line. The error must be corrected before the task is resubmitted.

See [Example: text-file-based marks](#) on page [721](#).

Example: text-file-based marks

Eight-page imposition with Preps-like surface identifiers

Imposition with Text-File-Based Marks



Text File

```
Signature 1 <Sig1 text1 goes here>; <Sig1 text2
goes here>
  Sheet 1 <Sheet1 text goes here>
    Surface A <SurfaceA text goes here>
      Page 1 <Page1 text goes here>
      Page 4 <Page4 text goes here>
      Page 5 <Page5 text goes here>
      Page 8 <Page8 text goes here>
      Page 25 <Page25 text goes here>
```

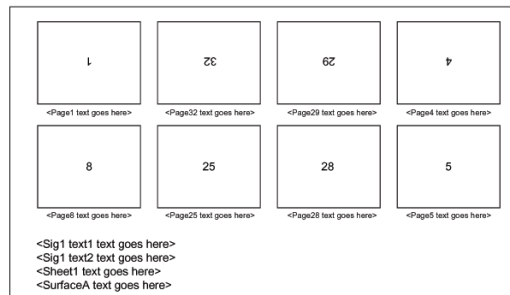
```

Page 28 <Page28 text goes here>
Page 29 <Page29 text goes here>
Page 32 <Page32 text goes here>
Surface B <SurfaceB text goes here>
Page 2 <Page2 text goes here>
Page 3 <Page3 text goes here>
Page 6 <Page6 text goes here>
Page 7 <Page7 text goes here>
Page 26 <Page26 text goes here>
Page 27 <Page27 text goes here>
Page 30 <Page30 text goes here>
Page 31 <Page31 text goes here>
Sheet 2 <Sheet2 text1 goes here>
Surface C <SurfaceC text goes here>
...
Surface D <SurfaceD text goes here>
...
Signature 2 <Sig2 text1 goes here>; <Sig2 text2
goes here>
...

```

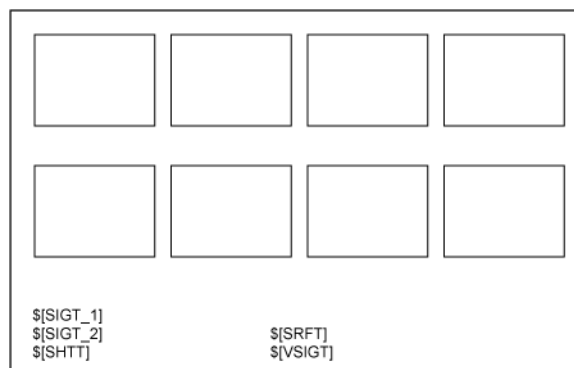
The Resulting Imposition

For signature 1, sheet 1, surface A:



Example: text-file-based marks for versions

Versioned Imposition with Text-File-Based Marks

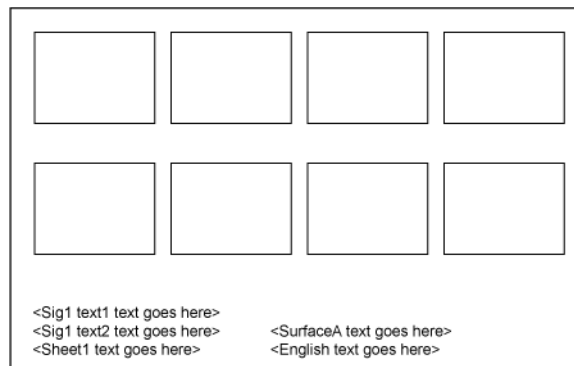


Text File

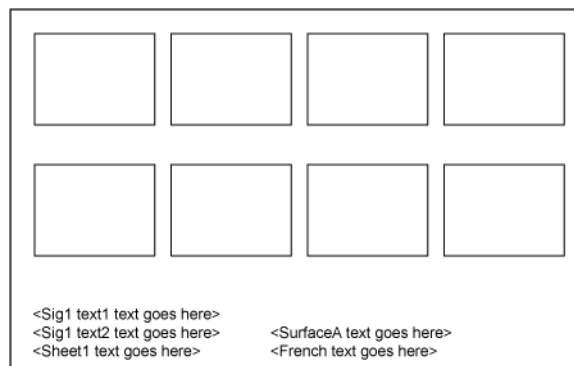
```
Signature 1 <Sig1 text1 goes here>; <Sig1 text2
goes here>
  Sheet 1 <Sheet1 text goes here>
    Surface A <SurfaceA text goes here>
      Version En <English text goes here>
      Version Fr <French text goes here>
      Version De <German text goes here>
      Surface B <SurfaceB text goes here>
      Version Ja <Japanese text goes here>
      Version Zh <Chinese text goes here>
      Version Ko <Korean text goes here>
    Sheet 2 <Sheet2 text1 goes here>
      Surface C <SurfaceC text goes here>
      ...
      Surface D <SurfaceD text goes here>
      ...
Signature 2 <Sig2 text1 goes here>; <Sig2 text2
goes here>
...
```

The Resulting Impositions

For signature 1, sheet 1, surface A, version En:



For signature 1, sheet 1, surface A, version Fr:



and so on...

Using text-file-based marks

1. Using an imposition software application, type Prinergy text-file-based marks in your imposition.

Use imposition software that supports Prinergy variable marks, and use only text-file-based marks.

Note: For use in Pandora, you may have to create specific variable marks for multiple strings, for example, `$(AT_3)`. For information on creating variable marks, see the *Creating Variable Text Marks for Pandora using Adobe Illustrator CS* technical bulletin.

2. Create a text file based on the syntax rules.
3. Give the text file the same name as the imposition file when it is imported into the Prinergy job, but change the extension to `.txt`. For example, if the imposition was imported with the name `DoubleWeb_2Sigs.JT.pjtf`, the text file should be named `DoubleWeb_2Sigs.JT.txt`.
4. Copy the text file to the same folder as the job imposition file: `<job folder>\System\ImpositionPlans`.

Publish to PDF

About publishing PDF files

The publish PDF feature lets you select one or more PDF pages or a page set, and then publish the files to a location on the network in PDF file format. It lets you easily share PDF files with others. You can publish an exact version of the PDF, or you can publish a downsampled version, which is easier to transfer via a network.

When you publish a PDF file, you can choose to:

- Publish images in high resolution
- Publish images in low resolution

When you publish a high-resolution version of the selected files, Prinergy maintains the resolution of the images contained in the selected PDF pages or page set and publishes a PDF file to the location you specify.

When you publish a low-resolution version of the selected files, low-resolution PDF files will be produced only if alternate images were generated during the refining process. (Alternate images can be generated by selecting **Color & Grayscale Alternate Images** in the **Optimize** section of a refine process template.) If no alternate images

are present in the selected files the pages are published as high-resolution.

When publishing PDF pages, you can select two or more PDF pages, specify which resolution you want, and request that Prinergy combine the selected PDF pages into one PDF file that contains multiple pages. The result is published to the location you specify.

When publishing a page set, you can select a page set, specify which resolution you want, specify a page order, and publish it to the location you specify. When you're publishing a page set, the system always generates a multi-file PDF file; it will not let you generate one PDF file for each page in the page set. Also, when a position in a page set contains two or more layers, the system only includes the bottom layer in the published PDF file.

Note: If you have the Vector Output JTP, you can publish PDF files using the loose page output and imposition output process templates. This method lets you publish PDF files in a workflow template.

Publishing PDF files

1. In Job Manager, perform one of the following actions in **Pages** view:
 - In the Pages pane, select the PDFs you want to publish.
 - In the Page Sets pane, select the page set you want to publish.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Publish to PDF File**.
3. In the Publish PDF Files dialog box, set the options as desired.
4. Click **Save**.

The Publish PDF Files dialog box closes, and Prinergy publishes one or more PDF files, depending on the choices you made.

Publish to PDF File dialog box

Save PDF Files to Folder

Lets you navigate to the location to which you want to save the published PDF files.

Volumes

Displays all volumes in the Prinergy system.

Job Folder

Opens the job folder for the current job.

Show Hidden Files

Select this check box to include hidden files, such as system files, in the results.

You can set the default selection of this check box on the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Images

This list lets you specify whether the system downsamples the images in the selected PDF file or page set while publishing the PDF file.

Select **Original** for the system to use the images in the selected PDF files or page set as they are.

In other words, the system doesn't downsample the images.

Select **Low-resolution proof** for the system to downsample the images in the selected PDF files or page set.

When downsampling images, the system uses the resolution specified in the **Color & Grayscale Alternate Images** section of the **Optimize** section of the refine process template.

Outline Fonts

Selecting this check box replaces all text objects with vector objects in the output.

Font outlining is useful for eliminating font formats that certain RIPs may not be able to process. Text formatted in this way cannot be edited, and when previewed in Adobe Acrobat will look bolder than the original due to loss of font hinting for low-resolution monitors.

Output to

This list lets you generate files in PDF, PDF/X-1a:2001, or PDF/X-3 format.

If you choose to output to PDF/X, the input files should previously have been refined to that format using a refine process template. At the output stage, files are only checked for PDF/X conformance; some PDF/X issues cannot be resolved at this stage.

Apply Geometry

Applies geometry settings to the published PDF output.

You can set the geometry for the page (offset, scale, rotate) in the Set Page Geometry dialog box before publishing the PDF

file. If the **Apply Geometry** check box is selected, the geometry will be applied to the published PDF file.

Remove Traps

Removes any Prinergy-generated traps from the published PDF file.

Trapping-generated overprints remain in the PDF files.

Trim Media

Sets the media box equal to the trim box—for example, removes registration marks, and so on, outside of the trim box.

This is useful for PDF files that will be published to the Web.

Save Pages to Separate Files

Generates a PDF file for each PDF page you select.

Select this option to enable this feature.

Note: This feature is available only when you select PDF pages; it is unavailable when you select a page set.

Save to Multipage PDF File

Generates a single PDF file with multiple pages for the selected PDF pages or page set.

Select this option to enable this feature.

Note: This feature is automatically enabled and unavailable when you select a page set.

File name

This box displays the name the system will use for the published PDF files.

The file name must be 31 characters or less.

When you select a page set, the system uses the name of the page set, unless you change this name by typing a new name in the **File name** box.

When you select PDF pages and then select the **Save Pages to Separate Files** option the system uses the name of each page. You can't change the names. However when you select PDF pages and then select the **Save to Multi-Page PDF Files** option you can specify a name for the published PDF file by typing a name in the **File name** box.

Note: If the system generates a PDF file name from the page name, characters may be cut from the page name, so that the file name (page name plus .pdf extension) is not more than 31 characters. Characters are

cut from the left of the page name. For example, if the page name is Thisisareallyreallylongpagename, the system-generated pdf file name would be Thisisareallyreallylongpage.pdf.

Create Preflight report

Generates a Preflight report for the selected PDF pages or page set.

The Preflight report will be located in same directory as you specified for the published PDF files.

Report name

Type a name for the Preflight report you are generating for the selected PDF pages or pageset.

Reader Order

This option is only available when you select a page set. It determines the page order for the published PDF file.

Select this option to publish the page set in reader order—that is, from the smallest page number to the largest page number.

Selected Order

This option is available only when you select a page set. It determines the page order for the published PDF file.

Select the **Selected Order** option to publish the page set in the order you currently have it sorted in Prinergy Workshop. In other words, the system orders the pages based on the order they currently appear on-screen in the page set.

Include Empty Page Positions

Select this check box to include blank pages in the published PDF file. The blank pages represent unassigned page positions.

Clear this check box to omit blank pages from the PDF file. In this case, blank, unassigned page positions are omitted from the published PDF file.

This check box is available only when you select a page set.

Web growth

Web growth profiles

The web growth feature lets the Prinergy software digitally compensate for press distortion.

On a web press, the main direction of growth is across the web. On a sheetfed press or flexo press, you may find more significant growth in the direction of paper travel. The web growth compensation mechanism in Prinergy can simultaneously compensate for growth across and along the web or sheet.

You can compensate for linear, non-linear, and trapezoidal or pillow-shaped scaling:

- Linear scaling—The expansion of the paper as a percentage is the same all across the paper. The percentage growth on the left side is the same in the center as on the right side. As a result, you need to convert your measurements to a percentage expansion in the x (across-web) and y (along-web) directions. See [Example: web growth profile](#) on page 730.
- Non-linear scaling—The paper expands by varying amounts across and along the paper. For more information, see [Example: nonlinear web growth profile](#) on page 731.
- Trapezoidal or pillow-shaped scaling—The expansion of the paper fans out in a trapezoidal or pillow shape. For more information, see [Example: Trapezoidal/pillow sheet growth profile](#) on page 734.

Which files does the feature use?

The web growth feature uses the following files:

- An XML (extensible markup language) DTD (document type definition) file
- An XML profile file (`<file name>.wgp`)
- A tower-color file (`ColorTowerMap.txt`)

The DTD file contains the definitions and comments that describe the XML tags in the profile file. The profile file uses the DTD file; you do not use the DTD file. You can either store the profile file and the DTD file in the same folder, or store the files in separate folders and include the location of the DTD file in the profile file.

A profile file describes press distortions for a specific press, paper stock, humidity, ink coverage, and/or other factors. You create one or more profile files using a text editor after you measure your distortions on press. You enter the measured distortions in the profile file. You can then apply a profile file to each signature in a Prinergy job. Prinergy uses the profile to alter the image for each plate for a specific press/paper combination. A sample profile file is stored in the `CreoAraxi\data\WebGrowthProfiles` folder on the home server.

Consider these defaults when you set up your web growth profile:

- When you omit the distortion values for both surfaces of a given press tower, the system does not apply compensation to either surface.
- When you omit a distortion percentage (the x percentage or y percentage), the system does not apply compensation in that direction.

The tower-color file is a text file that specifies the names of the color separations in a job and the number of the press color tower running each color. A sample tower-color file (`ColorTowerMap.txt`) is stored in the `CreoAraxi\data\WebGrowthProfiles\` folder on the home server. See [Example: tower-color file](#) on page [735](#).

Archiving

When you archive a job, Prinerger archives a reference to the profile file that it used, but does not archive the profile file itself. If you have to remake plates, you will want to use a current profile rather than the one that was used when the plates were originally made.

Example: web growth profile

This page shows the text from a sample web growth profile file (**<file name>.wgp**).

Tip: Copy and modify the sample file that is installed with Prinerger so that you don't have to type the contents.

```
<?xml version=1.0 encoding=UTF-8?>
<!DOCTYPE profile SYSTEM WebGrowthProfile.dtd>
<profile>
  <plate tower=1 side=U>
    <expansion xpercent=1.0 ypercent=0.30 />
  </plate>
  <plate tower=2 side=U>
    <expansion xpercent=0.8 ypercent=0.25 />
  </plate>
  <plate tower=3 side=U>
    <expansion xpercent=0.6 ypercent=0.20 />
  </plate>
  <plate tower=4 side=U>
    <expansion xpercent=0.3 ypercent=0.15 />
```

```
</plate>
</profile>
```

Example: nonlinear web growth profile

In cases where it is not practical to assume that the web growth is linear across the paper, a nonlinear web growth profile can be created to capture the actual displacements from the base separation.

This topic provides nonlinear web growth profile examples for distortions occurring either across the web or across and around the drum.

Example 1: Nonlinear web growth profile-across the web

This web growth profile example uses the same displacement measurements as in Table 1: Displacements from the yellow separation across a grid. It uses plate tower 1 for the black separation, plate tower 2 for the cyan separation, and plate tower 3 for the magenta separation.

```
<?xml version=1.0 encoding=UTF-8?>
<!DOCTYPE profile SYSTEM WebGrowthProfile.dtd>
<profile>
<measurePosition x = 1 y = 1 unit = mm />
<measureShift x = 1 y = 1 unit = mm />
<plate tower=1 side=U>
<xshift x= -886.8 dx= -1.38 />
<xshift x= -584.0 dx= -.82 />
<xshift x= -252.0 dx= -.36 />
<xshift x= -12.7 dx= .10 />
<xshift x= 12.7 dx= .13 />
<xshift x= 315.5 dx= .64 />
<xshift x= 584.0 dx= .95 />
<xshift x= 886.8 dx= 1.40 />
</plate>
<plate tower=2 side=U>
<xshift x= -886.8 dx= -1.04 />
<xshift x= -584.0 dx= -.66 />
<xshift x= -252.0 dx= -.36 />
```

```

<xshift x= -12.7 dx= .10 />
<xshift x= 12.7 dx= .10 />
<xshift x= 315.5 dx= .30 />
<xshift x= 584.0 dx= .46 />
<xshift x= 886.8 dx= .78 />
</plate>
<plate tower=3 side=U>
<xshift x= -886.8 dx= -.52 />
<xshift x= -584.0 dx= -.30 />
<xshift x= -252.0 dx= -.08 />
<xshift x= -12.7 dx= .10 />
<xshift x= 12.7 dx= .08 />
<xshift x= 315.5 dx= .12 />
<xshift x= 584.0 dx= .23 />
<xshift x= 886.8 dx= .40 />
</plate>
</profile>

```

Note that the `xshift` element has two attributes: `x`, which is the horizontal distance across the web; and `dx`, which is the displacement from the base separation.

The profile also specifies how the measurements are spaced along the plate with the `measurePosition` element, and the `measureShift` element specifies the units used for the displacement measurements themselves.

Example 2: Nonlinear web growth profile (across and around the drum)

In this example, measurements are made across the drum (on the `x` axis), and around the drum (on the `y` axis). Across the drum, measurements are made every 8 inches and displacements are measured in 1-millimeter increments:

```

<measurePosition x = 8 unit = inch />
<measureShift x = 1 unit = mm />

```

The `x` origin (the across-the-drum measurement) is at the centre of the plate, and so the left-hand `x` coordinates are negative, and the right-hand coordinates are positive. If the plate is 44 wide, and the first measurement is 2 in from the left edge, this left-most `x` coordinate will be $(44/2 - 2) / 8 = -2.5$. Because the measurements are spaced by

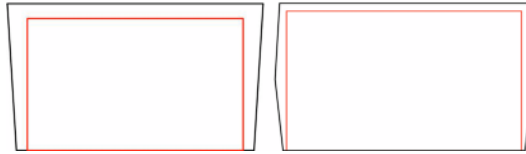
measurePosition, they will have the x coordinates -2.5, -1.5, -0.5, 0.5, 1.5, and 2.5. The displacement, dx, is simply the measured difference between a feature position in the base separation and the current separation.

The y origin (the around-the-drum measurement) is at the plate's leading edge, and so the y coordinates start from 0 and are always positive, but otherwise, the concept is the same as the across-the-drum measurements. The yshift element has two attributes, y and dy, which specify the y offset and the displacement in the y direction respectively. An example web growth profile with nonlinear web growth in both the x and y directions is shown below:

```
<?xml version=1.0 encoding=UTF-8?>
<!DOCTYPE profile SYSTEM WebGrowthProfile.dtd>
<profile>
<measurePosition x = 8 y = 2 unit = inch />
<measureShift x = 1 y = 1 unit = mm />
<plate tower=1 side=U>
<xshift x= -2.5 dx= -1.584 />
<xshift x= -1.5 dx= -.720 />
<xshift x= -.5 dx= -1.544 />
<xshift x= .5 dx= .288 />
<xshift x= 1.5 dx= 1.288 />
<xshift x= 2.5 dx= 1.578 />
<yshift y= .5 dy= -3.288 />
<yshift y= 1.5 dy= 0 />
<yshift y= 2.5 dy= -2.578 />
<yshift y= 3.5 dy= -4 />
<yshift y= 4.5 dy= -2 />
<yshift y= 5.5 dy= 0 />
<yshift y= 6.5 dy= -2 />
<yshift y= 7.5 dy= 0 />
</plate>
</profile>
```

Example: Trapezoidal/pillow sheet growth profile

With some of the newer sheetfed printing presses, the required sheet growth compensation is not necessarily linear; it may be trapezoidal (as pictured on the left) or pillow (the left and right black edges are bowed out or in, creating a pillow-like shape, as pictured on the right).



In the examples shown, the red box is the desired size and shape of the printed sheet. The black box is the size and shape that may result if no sheetfed compensation is applied. The lower edge of the content bounding box is the gripper edge of the printing press.

Both examples show non-parallel growth in the horizontal direction, and parallel growth in vertical direction.

Notice that the top and the bottom sides of the bounding box remain unrotated and parallel to each other. In other words, trapezoidal sheetfed compensation cannot be performed in a vertical direction (that is, parallel to the gripper edge). However, it is possible to apply linear sheetfed growth or contraction in a vertical direction.

This topic provides an explanation of the required format and an example of a trapezoidal growth profile.

Format

To specify trapezoidal sheetfed compensation in the web growth profile, specify two or three points in the following format:

```
<fanout y="<#>" fanoutvalleft="<#>"
fanoutvalright="<#>" dy="<#>" />
```

- `y` is the vertical position of the point being sampled.
- `fanoutvalleft` is the amount of growth/shrinkage on the left side.
 - Use positive values when the measured, uncompensated output is expanding (growing) to the left.
 - Use negative values when the measured, uncompensated output is contracting (shrinking) to the right.
- `fanoutvalright` is the amount of growth/shrinkage on the right side.

- Use positive values when the measured, uncompensated output is expanding (growing) to the left.
- Use negative values when the measured, uncompensated output is contracting (shrinking) to the right.
- dy is the amount of linear growth in the vertical direction at position y . This is similar to linear web growth in Prinerger.

All the above $\langle \# \rangle$ fields are numbers that can be specified in units of measure (mm, pts, in.).

Example

```
<?xml version="1.0"
encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE profile SYSTEM
"WebGrowthProfile.dtd">
<profile>
  <measurePosition x = "1" y = "1" unit = "mm"
/>
  <measureShift x = "1" y = "1" unit = "mm"
/>
  <plate tower="1" side="U">
    <fanout y="0" fanoutvalleft="-1"
fanoutvalright="-1" dy="1" />
    <fanout y="500" fanoutvalleft="0"
fanoutvalright="0" dy="0.5" />
    <fanout y="1000" fanoutvalleft="-1"
fanoutvalright="-1" dy="0" />
  </plate>
</profile>
```

Note: The dy is always calculated from the bottom (gripper) edge of the sheet.

Example: tower-color file

The text from a sample tower-color file is shown below. The tower-color file is always named `ColorTowerMap.txt`.

A wild card character (*) can be used to map any undefined color to a specified color tower. In the example below, all spot colors except SpottySpot will be mapped to tower 3.

Note: This is an example of a `ColorTowerMap.txt` file. You can copy and modify the sample `ColorTowerMap.txt` file that is installed with Prinerger.

| |
|--|
| ##### Sample tower-color file, for use with Prinerger Web Growth |
| ##### Make entries of the form:ColorName TowerNumber |
| ##### Make 1 entry per line |
| Black 1 |
| Cyan 2 |

| |
|--------------|
| Yellow 3 |
| Magenta 4 |
| SpottySpot 5 |
| *3 |

Calculating web growth

This topic gives examples for calculating the percentage of web growth from measurements on press sheets or traditional page-shifts.

The standard process for determining web growth compensation parameters is to print press sheets with no compensation, and then measure the discrepancies between the separations at different points on the surface. The growth percentage for one separation relative to another is then calculated by adding the discrepancy at the farthest left pair of marks, to the discrepancy at the farthest right pair of marks, and dividing by the distance between the pairs.

Once calculated, the percentages are entered into the web growth profile file. Prinergy uses the percentages from the web growth profile in an algorithm to compensate for web growth.

Example 1: Measuring the displacements from the yellow separation across a grid

Table 1 is a table of measurements from a press sheet of grids printed with the ink order KCMY. Each column of numbers corresponds to the vertical grid line at a particular horizontal position. (This is only an example. In reality, a grid would contain far more lines.) Yellow is the last ink down, so it is the base separation against which other separations are measured.

Table 1: Displacements from the yellow separation across a grid

| | Distance in mm Negative numbers indicate distances to the left. Non-negative numbers indicate distances to the right. | | | | | | | | Page Growth |
|-----|---|--------|--------|-------|------|-------|-------|-------|--|
| X | -886.8 | -584.0 | -252.0 | -12.7 | 12.7 | 315.5 | 584.0 | 886.8 | N/A |
| K-Y | -1.38 | -.82 | -.36 | .1 | .13 | .64 | .95 | 1.40 | $(-1.38 + 1.40)/(2 \times 886.8) = .157\%$ |
| C-Y | -1.04 | -.66 | -.36 | .10 | .10 | .30 | .46 | .78 | $(-1.04 + .78)/(2 \times 886.8) = .103\%$ |
| M-Y | -.52 | -.30 | -.08 | .10 | .08 | .12 | .23 | .40 | $(-.52 + .40)/(2 \times 886.8) = .052\%$ |

X measures the horizontal distance (across the web) of the vertical grid line from the horizontal center of the sheet. The first column

corresponds to the left-most grid line, which is 886.8 mm to the left of the center. The last column corresponds to the right-most grid line, which is 886.8 mm to the right of the center.

The figures in row K-Y measure the displacement from the black separation to the yellow separation for corresponding grid lines. C-Y measures the displacement from the cyan separation to the yellow separation. M-Y measures the displacement from the magenta separation to the yellow separation.

Looking at the K-Y row in detail, the -1.38 in the column where X is -886.8 indicates the black separation is 1.38 mm to the left of the yellow separation at the left edge of the sheet. The 1.40 mm in the column where X is 886.8 indicates the black separation is 1.40 mm to the right of the yellow separation at the right edge of the sheet. Thus, the black separation is larger than the yellow (by about $1.38 + 1.40 = 2.72$ mm). This is expected because the black was printed before the yellow, and the paper grew while traveling from the black ink unit to the yellow ink unit. The growth of the black separation, relative to the yellow, is $(1.38 + 1.40) / (2 \times 886.8) = .157\%$, as shown in the %age Growth column at the right of the table.

Similarly, for the C-Y and M-Y rows, the growth of these separations relative to yellow is calculated in the same way and shown at the right of the table. The growth of the cyan is about twice that of the magenta, while the growth of the black is about three times that of the magenta. This is normal for equally spaced ink units.

Note: The only data used to compute the growth was the displacements at the outer edges.

After you calculate web growth, you enter the percentages into the web growth profile for the press and paper to which this growth applies. You must enter values for both the upper and lower surfaces in the same web growth profile. Prinergy takes the percentages from the web growth profile and uses an algorithm to compensate for the web growth. The numbers in the web growth profile should decrease from the first ink tower (first down, so largest growth) to the last ink tower (last down, so no growth).

[Example: web growth profile](#) on page [730](#)

[Example: tower-color file](#) on page [735](#)

Note: Only horizontal percentages appear in the file. If a percentage is missing, as it is for all the y (along-the-web) parameters, it is assumed to be zero. The growth for tower 4 (corresponding to yellow, according to the `TowerColorMap.txt` file) could therefore be left out, given that it is zero. For true web growth, the percentage growth values for the lower surface (side=L) are the same as for the upper surface (side=U) to avoid the paper curling.

Example 2: Measuring page shifts

In this example, the page shifts used to compensate for web growth are specified instead of grid measurements, as might appear in a table in the job jacket when traditional compensation methods are used. In this example, the ink order is KCMY, measurements are in inches, the imposition is four across, and pages are 12.5 inches wide.

Table 2: Page shifts to compensate for web growth

| Page | Left Outer | Left Inner | Right Inner | Right Outer |
|------|------------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| K | 0.005 | 0.002 | -0.002 | -0.005 |
| C | 0.003 | 0.001 | -0.001 | -0.003 |
| M | - | - | - | - |
| Y | -0.004 | -0.002 | 0.002 | 0.004 |

The left outer black page is moved right by .005 in. towards the center. The right outer page is moved left by .005 in. towards the center. The yellow pages are moved out. The magenta separation is not adjusted.

While Table 1 specified the displacement on press, Table 2 specifies the compensation to be applied. In Table 2, magenta is used as the base separation. However, the web growth profile always uses the last ink down as the base separation.

Table 3 below reexpresses the data of Table 2 in the format of Table 1. Consider the left outer page: the black is shifted .005 inches to the right, and the yellow .004 to the left. As a result, relative to the yellow, the black page is shifted .009 inches to the right. Because Table 2 indicates how much to shift each page to align the centers of the pages, and the pages are 12.5 inches wide, the page center of the left outer page is at 1.5×12.5 inches = 18.75 inches left of the signature center. The displacement of the black relative to the yellow at -18.75 inches from the center, then, is -.009 mm.

Table 3: Displacements from the yellow separation at page centers

| | Distance in inches | | | | Page Growth |
|-----|---|-------|------|-------|---|
| | Negative numbers indicate distances to the left. Non-negative numbers indicate distances to the right. | | | | |
| X | -18.75 | -6.25 | 6.25 | 18.75 | N/A |
| K-Y | -.009 | -.004 | .004 | .009 | $(.009 + .009) / (2 \times 18.75) = .048\%$ |
| C-Y | -.007 | -.003 | .003 | .007 | $(.007 + .007) / (2 \times 18.75) = .037\%$ |
| M-Y | -.004 | -.002 | .002 | .004 | $(.004 + .004) / (2 \times 18.75) = .021\%$ |

To compute the growth, we again use only data for the outer pages. The displacements are accurate to only one significant figure, so there's no need to use more than two figures for the growth percentage.

Creating a web growth profile

1. Using a text editor, open the sample profile file located in the following folder on the home server: `CreoAraxi\data\WebGrowthProfiles`.
2. Add the stretch percentages to the sample profile.
3. Save the profile file with a **.wgp** extension—`<file name>.wgp`.

Setting up a tower-color profile

1. Using a text editor, open the sample tower-color file (`ColorTowerMap.txt`).
2. Type the names of the color separations in the job files, as well as the number of the color tower running each color, for example, Yellow 1.

Don't use the following characters in the color names:

- Leading or trailing tabs or spaces
- Tabs embedded in the file name
- Wide characters, for example, CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) characters

If a color separation is missing from the tower-color file, or if Prinerly can't find a tower-color file, Prinerly will fail the process (when you apply a web-growth-enabled process template to an imposition that has a profile associated with it).

3. Save the tower-color file as `ColorTowerMap.txt`.

The tower-color file must have this name for Prinerly to be able to find it.

You can save the tower-color file stored in the same folder as the profile file. This will be the default tower-color file. You can also create a custom tower-color file for a job, and place it in the `<Job Folder>\Control` folder.

Prinerly first searches the `<Job Folder>\Control` folder for a tower-color file. If it can't find a tower-color file in the job folder, it will use the default tower-color file from the same folder as the profile file.

Applying and removing a web growth profile

You can apply a web growth profile to a signature, sheet, or surface. When you apply this process template to the signature/sheet/surface, the system uses the web growth profile you registered with each signature/sheet/surface and a tower-color file. If you haven't

registered a web growth profile with a signature/sheet/surface, the system cannot use one.

Note: if you select a web growth profile for surface A (upper), surface B (lower) automatically takes this profile as well. You can then clear or change the web growth profile for surface B (lower) independently.

The color tower map file does not need to be specified. The system uses the color tower map file that is in the same folder as the web growth profile.

Note: Only use a web growth profile for imposition output when it has the same rotation (usually 270 degrees) as final output. It is recommended to use this option for final output, but not for imposition output.

Note: The process template does not let you select flat rotation and web growth at the same time. However, when web growth is applied, flat rotation can be specified in the web growth profile.

If you use web growth with a TIFF workflow, see About Web Growth Profiles.

1. Set up a process template:
 - a. Edit an imposition process template or final output process template.
 - b. Expand the **Layout** section.
 - c. Select the **Scale Raster** check box.
 - d. Select the **Assign Web Growth Profile, if Available** option to apply a web growth profile. If you select a different scaling option, it will override any web growth profile already assigned to the imposition (in Job Manager). Select one of the following:
 - Select **Use profiles assigned in Job Manager only**. If a profile is not assigned in Job Manager, no web growth profile will be applied.
 - To assign a specific web growth profile to this specific process template (for example, if certain plate sizes always have web growth applied to them), select **Use Default Profile**, and type or locate the **.wgp** file you want to use as your web growth profile.

Note: If a web growth profile is specified for a job in Job Manager, this overrides any web growth profile that is assigned here, unless you also select the **Override profiles assigned in Job Manager** check box.

- To assign a specific web growth profile to each sheet separately, select **Assign Profile to Sheet**. In the **Web Growth Profile** column, type or locate the **.wgp** file you want to use as your web growth profile for each sheet. This feature is useful when, for example, you need different profiles for the left and right webs of a multi-web run. A "sheet" in the **Assign Profile to Sheet list box** refers to two surfaces printed on two sides of the same substrate. For example, a multi-web layout consisting of a single signature with two webs would

map Sheet 1 to Signature 1 sides A and B, and map Sheet 2 to Signature 1 sides C and D. If there were a second signature, then Sheet 3 would map to Signature 2 sides A and B, and Sheet 4 would map to Signature 2 sides C and D.

Note: If a web growth profile is specified for a job in Job Manager, this overrides any web growth profiles that are assigned here, unless you also select the **Override profiles assigned in Job Manager** check box.

- e. Save the process template.
2. (Optional) Apply or remove a web growth profile for specific signatures, sheets, or surfaces:
 - a. In the **Signatures** or **Separations** view, select one or more signatures.
 - b. To select a specific web growth profile, select **Edit > Set Web Growth Profile**, select the web growth profile you want to use, and click **OK**.
 - c. To remove a web growth profile, select **Edit > Clear Web Growth Profile**.
 3. Start an output process on the signatures, sheets, or surfaces using the process template that you set up.

Set Web Growth Profile dialog box

Unlabeled list and results area

Selecting an item in the list at the top left of the dialog box displays that item's contents in the box below.

When you select:

- **Volumes**, the volumes in your system appear
- A volume name, folders at the root of the selected volume appear
- A folder name, files within the folder appear

The path of the displayed item in the list appears in reverse order, for example, folder name followed by volume name.

Show Hidden Files

Select this check box to include hidden files, such as system files, in the results.

You can set the default selection of this check box on the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Volumes

Displays all volumes in the Prinergy system.

Job Folder

Opens the job folder for the current job.

PrintLink

About PrintLink

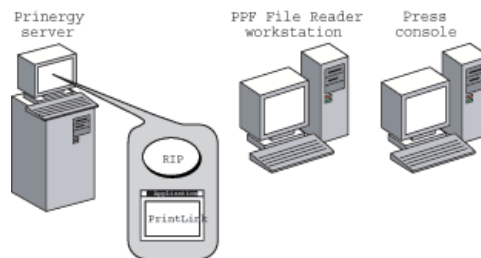
PrintLink digital ink-profiling software can generate JDF (Job Definition Format) and PPF (Print Production Format) files that specify ink coverage information for digital ink key preset systems. This feature reduces misprints and makeready times.

PrintLink controls are found in the **PrintLink** section of the final output process template.

Note: PrintLink is not associated with PrintLink Graphic Arts Placement Services.

PrintLink uses three computers in your printing process:

- Prinergy Workshop workstation (a Prinergy server and a Prinergy secondary server running a RIP)
- PPF file reader workstation
- Press console



Benefits of using PrintLink

Traditionally, a plate scanner is used to produce ink key presets. PrintLink is a digital replacement for a plate scanner and provides more accurate coverage information. Instead of scanning an imaged plate to estimate ink coverage, PrintLink uses the same digital source data that Prinergy uses to image the plate.

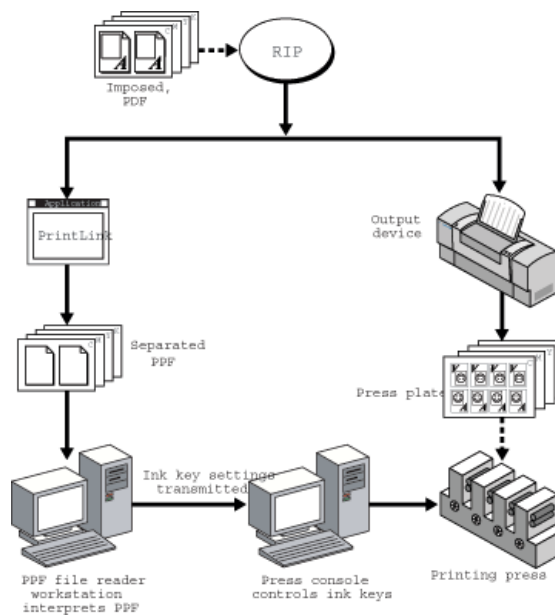
PrintLink computes the ink key settings while your output device images the plate. PrintLink stores the ink key coverage data and identification information in the PPF file. Thus, you can achieve a level of accuracy and repeatability not found with traditional plate scanners. In addition, you eliminate plate scanning time and risk of plate damage.

For presses without CIP3 or CIP4 ink readers, Prinergy can create user-readable ink key settings, which you can manually enter in the press console. This feature reduces makeready time by ensuring that ink

keys are accurately set without the costly investment of purchasing a press with a CIP3 or CIP4 ink reader.

How PrintLink works in a Prinergy workflow

1. Your imposed PDF files are sent to the RIP on a secondary server.
2. The RIP on the secondary server receives the imposed files, RIPs the data, and delivers the high-resolution raster to your output device.
3. While the RIP delivers the raster for plate imaging, PrintLink generates a PPF file, one file per separation.
4. The resulting separated PPF file is sent to the PPF file reader workstation.
5. The PPF file reader workstation interprets the ink coverage data.
6. The digital ink key settings are transmitted to the press console, which controls the ink keys based on the PPF information it receives.



Ink reports

You can generate an ink report from the PPF files produced by PrintLink. The ink report is a text-based report that describes the area of ink coverage (in square centimeters and inches) and the percentage of the plate covered.

Custom PPF file

PrintLink produces PPF files that comply with the International Cooperation for Integration of Prepress, Press, and Postpress (CIP3) PPF file specification. CIP3 has established an open standard for exchanging information among print production devices from multiple vendors, including platesetters, presses, and finishing equipment.

The standard specifies the Print Production Format for communicating ink coverage information, printing form geometries, and other information for digital ink key presets. Although PrintLink adheres to this standard, some press interfaces require additional information from the PPF file. To support these requirements, certain CIP3 tags in the PPF file can be customized.

Creating a process template to generate a PPF file

Configure a final output process template to generate a PPF file (or a text file if you will manually enter the ink key settings) for each separation. When you use this final output process template, PrintLink automatically generates PPF files from the secondary server and then outputs the files to the designated directory on the PPF file reader workstation.

Note: When you require user-readable ink key settings because you will manually enter the ink key settings in the press console, the resulting ink key settings files are text (.txt) files, not PPF files.

For more information, see [Creating a process template for an ink report](#) on page 751 and [Setting up the ink report daemon](#) on page 752 (to monitor the hot folder).

1. In Process Template Editor, create a new final output process template.
2. In the **Output To** box of the process template, select a raster output type.
For example, select **TIFF**.
The **PrintLink** section becomes available.
3. Select the **PrintLink** check box, and click the triangle to expand the section.
4. In the **Preview Resolution** list, select one of the following resolutions for the PPF file preview image:
 - **Low (default)**
 - **Medium**
 - **High**
 - **Very High**

Note: A higher resolution improves the preview image quality and may improve the ink key print accuracy. However, a higher resolution may also increase the processing time and file sizes.

5. Choose where to put the PPF files:

| Location | Do This |
|------------------------|--|
| Inside the job folder | <p>a. Click Browse and select a location inside a job. The Put Files in Directory box lists an absolute file path.</p> <p>b. Select Job-Relative File. This converts the absolute file path to a job-relative path.</p> |
| Outside the job folder | <p>Click Browse and select the location. The Put Files in Directory box lists the file path.</p> |

Important: Ensure that the directory you select has enough space to receive the PPF files generated by PrintLink.

6. (Optional) Select the **Use JDF Name** check box to preserve the names of the sheet, the imposition, and the signature from the JDF. These names will be used in the PPF.
7. (Optional) Customize the tags in the PrintLink configuration file, click **Browse** next to **Press Interface Configuration File**, and locate the PrintLink configuration file (named `PrintLinkConfig.txt`
8. In the **Press Interface** box, select a press interface in the list. The active tags in the PrintLink configuration file override the defaults of the selected press interface. Note the number of divisions for the following manual **Press Interface** options:

| Press Interface Option | Number of Divisions |
|--------------------------|---|
| Manual | 100 divisions (0 to 99) |
| ManualHeidelberg | 16 divisions, each with 16 subdivisions (0 to 16 : 0 to 15) |
| ManualHeidelberg1 | 24 divisions, each with 20 subdivisions (0 to 23 : 0 to 19) |
| ManualManroland | 254 divisions (0 to 253) |
| ManualManRoland1 | 24 divisions (0 to 23) |

9. Configure other PrintLink parameters as required.
10. Save the final output process template.

Customizing tags in the PrintLink configuration file

Customize the PrintLink configuration file by activating and modifying the tags as desired.

1. Open a blank text file in a plain text text editor, such as Notepad or UltraEdit. Do not use Wordpad.
2. Copy the sample PrintLink configuration file and paste it into the text file.
3. Edit the configuration file to activate the tags and modify them as required:
 - To activate a tag, remove the crosshatch (#) in front of the tag.
 - To modify a customizable tag, activate the tag and change the variable. See the list of PrintLink-specific variables in About Customizing Tags in the PrintLink PPF File.
 - To modify a default press interface setting, activate the tag and change the value—for example, from **=false** to **=true**.
4. Save the text file to a volume mounted on the Prinergy server. Name it `PrintLinkConfig.txt`.

Sample PrintLink configuration file

The sample PrintLink configuration file has no tags activated. To make a tag active, remove the crosshatch (#) in front of a tag.

```
#####
# PrintLink Configuration File #
# (Created February 2005) #
#####
#Custom template for /CIP3AdmJobName
#AdmJobName=%job%
#Custom Template for /CIP3AdmSheetName
#AdmSheetName=%signature%/%sheet%%side%
#Custom template for /PageSection (only written for GenericNewspaper
#PageSection=%signatureletter%

#Less common settings - these override the settings in the press interface

#ReplaceUnderscoresFromJobName=false
#RotateWithPreviewMatrix=false
#OutputJDF=false
#UseImpoNameForAdmJobName=true
#UseSigNumInSheetNum=false
#UseImpoNameInFilename=true
#OutputLowPageNumber=false
```

Customizable tags in the PrintLink PPF file

Since some press interfaces require additional details in the PrintLink PPF file that are not included in the CIP3 specification, you can customize the CIP3 tags with variables and change the default press interface settings in the PrintLink configuration file.

Customizable tags

In the PrintLink configuration file, you can customize the following tags with Prinergy custom file naming variables:

/CIP3AdmJobName

/CIP3AdmJobCode

/CIP3AdmSheetName (explained below)

/PageSection (explained below)

For example, if your Prinergy job name is **Docket12345**, and the PrintLink configuration file says **AdmJobName=%job%**, the CIP3 tag in the PPF file prints **/CIP3AdmJobname (Docket12345)**.

Variables specific to PrintLink

You can customize the CIP tags with any valid custom file naming variables, but the following are specific to PrintLink.

| Variable | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| %jobcode% | This variable takes the job code value as defined in the Prinergy job attributes. You can use this variable in the /CIP3AdmJobName and /CIP3AdmJobCode tags. |
| %Side% | The variable prints F for front or B for back. Use this variable with the /CIP3AdmSheetName tag. |
| %SideJapanese% | This variable prints O for Omote (front) and U for Ura (back). Use this variable with the /CIP3AdmSheetName tag for Japanese output. |
| %Lowpagenumber% | This variable prints the low page folio on any given surface. It is the default variable for the /PageNumber tag, however, some newspaper press consoles require the low page folio in the /CIP3AdmJobName tag. |
| %SignatureLetter% | This variable replaces the Prinergy signature number with a letter. For example, signature 1 is replaced with an A , signature 2 is replaced with a B , and so on. Use this variable with the /PageSection tag. |

Changing default press interface settings

You can edit the PrintLink configuration file to override the following press interface defaults. You activate the tag by removing the crosshatch (#) and then changing the default value (for example, from **=false** to **=true**).

#AdmInkColors=true (to add spot colors in L*a*b*. This is useful for Brisque customers who are migrating to Prinergy and use Heidelberg Reader Stations.)

#AlwaysFront=true (to output backs to fronts.)

#SwapFrontswithBacks = true (to output so that back data appears before front data)

#ReplaceUnderscoresFromJobName=false

#RotateWithPreviewMatrix=false

#OutputJDF=false

#OutputLowPageNumber=false

#UseImpoNameForAdmJobName=true

```
#UseSigNumInSheetNum=false
#UseImpoNameInFilename=true
#MirrorWithPreviewMatrix=false
#AdmJobName=%job%
#AdmSheetName=%signature%/%sheet%%side%
#PageSection=%signatureletter%
#OutputLowPageNumber=false (to output special newspaper tags in
the PPF file)
#AdmInkColors=false (to output the AdmInkColors tag in the PPF file)
#OutputKBATags=false (to output special KBA tags in the PPF file)
#KBAPlateType=Broadsheet
#KBAPageType=Broadsheet
```

/CIP3AdmSheetName tag

Some ink key reader stations need the **/CIP3AdmSheetName** tag to define the web and sheet numbers in a web.sheet format. For multiweb impositions to work with PrintLink and Prinergy you must first create each web as its own signature in Preps.

Then edit the PrintLink configuration file to read:

```
/CIP3AdmSheetName=%signature%.%sheet%
```

The PPF File prints the following values.

For web/signature 1:

```
/CIP3AdmSheetName (1.1)
```

where

1.1 = web 1, sheet 1

For web/signature 2:

```
/CIP3AdmSheetName (2.1)
```

where

2.1 = web 2, sheet 1

For more information about how to set up the multiweb impositions see the technical bulletin Configurable PrintLink.

/PageSection tag

The **/PageSection** tag is populated when you activate it in the PrintLink configuration file and select **Generic Newspaper Press Interface** in the **Press Interface** list in the **PrintLink** section of the process template.

Because Prinergy does not use sections, substitute signatures instead. Create each section as a signature in Preps. Then use the variable **%SignatureLetter%** to change the signature number to a letter—for example, signature 1 to pagesection A, signature 2 to pagesection B, and so on.

For example,

When you edit the PrintLink configuration file to read:

/PageSection=%SignatureLetter%

The PPF file prints:

/PageSection (A)

where

A = signature 1

Alternatively, you can set up sheets or surfaces as sections, and use the **%sheet%** or **%surface%** variables.

Ink reports

About ink reports

An ink report is a text file that describes the amount of ink coverage on a plate, allowing you to better estimate ink consumption for a job.

The ink report analyzes the CIP3 PPF file generated by PrintLink digital ink-profiling software to calculate the number of pixels turned on for one or more separations, and creates a report of the area of ink coverage (in square inches and centimeters) and the percentage of the plate covered.

You can automate the running of the ink report by using a final output process template that outputs the CIP3 PPF file to a hot folder. The ink report monitors this hot folder and outputs a text-based report. This feature can be used once the pages have been assigned to an imposition.

You must set up the ink report feature on the primary server before you can use the feature. After the initial setup, you can create a final output process template, and use that process template whenever you want to create an ink report for your job.

Dealing with RIP error files

Occasionally an error may occur when PostScript or PDF files are submitted to the RIP. When an error occurs, PPF files are not generated. You must resubmit the PDF or PostScript file to the RIP to generate PPF files.

PPF file naming conventions for Prinergy

Prinergy creates a name for each PPF file generated. The names are composed of the following elements:

- The first nine characters of the job name
- The Virtual Proofing System naming convention: signature/separation/surface/color convention
- The imposition name
- The PPF file name extension

For example, PPF file names might be:

- testjob.1A.Y.StoryworksLayering.ppf
- testjob.2A.C.StoryworksLayering.ppf
- testjob.2A.K.StoryworksLayering.ppf
- testjob.2A.M.StoryworksLayering.ppf
- longestj.2A.Y.StoryworksLayering.ppf

Creating a process template for an ink report

1. In Process Template Editor, create a new final output process template.
2. In the **Output To** box of the process template, select an output type.
For example, select **TIFF**.
The **PrintLink** section becomes selectable.
3. Select the **PrintLink** check box and expand the section.
4. In the **PrintLink** section, select the options as follows:
 - a. For **Output Type**, select **Absolute File**.
 - b. In the **Put Files in Directory** box, browse to the ink report hot folder—for example, J:\Ink\In—and select it.
 - c. For **File Generation Mode**, you may want to select **One File per Sheet**.
This will put all ink-coverage values for all separations and both surfaces into one text file.
5. Clear the check box beside the **Device** section, because you may not want to produce output that would waste disk space.

Setting up the ink report daemon

1. On the primary server, search the %AraxiHome%\CreoAraxi\bin\Ink directory to find the shortcut file named **Ink Reporting**, and drag this file onto the desktop.
2. Right-click the shortcut, and select **Properties**.
3. If desired, edit the paths in the **Target** box.

In the **Target** box is the command to run the ink report, and two parameters. The first parameter is the path to the hot folder where the CIP3 .ppf files are placed. The second parameter is the directory where ink reports will be generated.

The default path for the hot folder is J:\Ink\in and the default path for the reports is J:\Ink\reports.

4. Double-click the shortcut.
This action will launch the Ink Report daemon that will begin monitoring the hot folder. If any directories for the hot folder or report output do not exist, the Ink Report daemon will create them. This process will run in a minimized window.

Previewing loose pages

About previewing loose page output

While you're setting options in the loose page output process template you can preview the position of PDF pages on media.

The purpose of this feature is to save you time and media. It lets you preview before you process the files.

[Imposition Preview dialog box](#) on page [753](#)

[Previewing loose page output](#) on page [752](#)

Previewing loose page output

1. Open a new or existing process template:
 - a. From the **Tools** menu, select **Process Template Editor**.
 - b. In the Process Template Editor window, expand **Loose Page Output** and then expand the group that you want to use.

- c. Double-click a process template to edit it or right-click a process template and select **New Process Template** to create a new process template.
2. In the loose page output process template, click the **Layout** horizontal bar.
3. In the **Layout** section, set the options as desired.
4. Click **Preview**.
5. In the Imposition Preview dialog box, in the **Assumed Page Size** list, select a size.
6. Change the options in the **Layout** section and view the changes as desired.
7. Click **Close**.
8. Save and/or close the process template.
9. Close Process Template Editor.

Imposition Preview dialog box

graphic

Graphically displays how the PDF pages will fit on the selected media based on the settings in the **Layout** section of the loose page output process template and the page size you specify in the **Assumed Page Size** list.

Assumed Page Size

Lets you specify the size of the PDF pages to which you will apply the loose page output process template. Select a page size, and then select a unit of measure.

You can choose one of three sizes: **US Letter**, **A4**, or **Custom**.

When you select **US Letter**, the **Width** and **Height** options automatically display the US letter dimensions. You can then select a unit of measure.

When you select **A4**, the **Width** and **Height** options automatically display the A4 dimensions. You can then select a unit of measure.

When you select **Custom**, the **Width** and **Height** options are set to zero. You can then specify custom dimensions and select a unit of measure.

Media

Displays a graphic of the media size. You cannot hide the graphic; it is permanently displayed.

Crop

Graphically displays a crop box on the graphic based on the settings in the loose page output process template.

Select the **Crop** check box to display the crop box; clear the check box to hide the crop box.

Bleed

Graphically displays a bleed box on the graphic based on the settings in the loose page output process template.

Select the **Bleed** check box to display the bleed box; clear the check box to hide the bleed box.

Trim

Graphically displays a trim box on the graphic based on the settings in the loose page output process template.

Select the **Trim** check box to display the trim box; clear the check box to hide the trim box.

Sheet Marks

Graphically displays an icon for sheet marks on the graphic in the location specified by the settings in the loose page output process template.

Select the **Sheet Marks** check box to display the icon; clear the check box to hide the icon.

Page Marks

Graphically displays an icon for page marks on the graphic in the location specified by the settings in the loose page output process template.

Select the **Page Marks** check box to display the icon; clear the check box to hide the icon.

Special output

Creating PDF/X output

Use this procedure if your input files do not contain transparent objects. If your files have complex transparency effects, use the

Creating PDF/X output from complex transparency files procedure to avoid transparency problems with the flattener.

1. Refine input files to PDF/X.
Select **PDF/X-1a:2001** in the **Generate** box at the top of the refine process template.
2. Output to PDF/X. Perform one of the following steps:
 - Start a loose page output process template and select **PDF/X-1a:2001** in the **Output To** list at the top of the process template.
 - Publish a PDF file and select **PDFX1a** in the **Output To** list in the Publish PDF Files dialog box.

Creating a process template for DCS vector output

DCS vector output is separated; it uses the DCS file format standard and meets the PostScript Level 2 standard. It is intended to support iMPact and other workflows that require PostScript Level 2 input. Because it is vector-based, screening can be handled by the target workflow.

DCS vector output is different from DCS raster output, another Prinergy output format. DCS raster output contains already RIPed, screened bitmap data that can be used with any raster-based proofer. DCS vector output contains data that is not RIPed or screened; it is intended to be further processed in another workflow or RIP.

1. Open a new or existing process template:
 - a. From the **Tools** menu, select **Process Template Editor**.
 - b. In the Process Template Editor window, expand **Loose Page Output** and then expand the group that you want to use.
 - c. Double-click a process template to edit it or right-click a process template and select **New Process Template** to create a new process template.
2. In the loose page output process template, from the **Output To** list, select **DCS (Vector output)**.
3. In the **Render** section, in the **JTP** list, select the JTP for DCS vector processing.
4. In the **File Format** section, set the options as desired.

The following options are specific to generating DCS vector files:

- **DCS File Format**
- **Add TIFF Preview to DCS Master File**
- **Render Shadings**
- **Font Outlining**

5. From the **File** menu, select **Save As**, and then name and save the process template.
6. Start an output process on your PDF files, using this process template, to create DCS vector files.

Creating a process template for thermal bluelines

To create thermal bluelines, you must first create an imposition output process template for thermal bluelines. Then, select the front and the back of the signature in Job Manager, and start an imposition output process using the thermal blueline process template that you created.

Note: Before starting the output process, ensure that you select an entire signature from the imposition—that is, the front and back of the signature. For work-and-turn impositions, select the single side.

Prinergy always generates a TIFF file for each side of the imposition plan, and it generates the files in the correct orientation for the thermal blueline media, regardless of the imposition style used in the job. As a result, when you turn the media on the device, the images always back up.

1. Open a new or existing process template:
 - a. From the **Tools** menu, select **Process Template Editor**.
 - b. In the Process Template Editor window, expand **Loose Page Output** or **Imposition Output** and then expand the group that you want to use.
 - c. Double-click a process template to edit it or right-click a process template and select **New Process Template** to create a new process template.
2. In the imposition output process template, in the **Output To** list, select **TIFF**.
3. In the **Layout** section, set the following options:

| Options | Setting |
|-------------------|---|
| Size | Select Cut Sheet . |
| Duplexing | Select Tumble . |
| Max Width | Type the height (not the width, as the label implies) of the thermal blueline media—for example, 30.3125 . Note: This is the Around the drum measurement in the Print Console software. |
| Max Height | Type the width (not the height, as the label implies) of the imageable area of the thermal blueline media—for example, 40.5 . Note: This is the Along the drum measurement in Print Console. |

| Options | Setting |
|----------------------------|---|
| Orientation | Select 90° . Note: This option specifies the image placement in the TIFF file. |
| Center Along Width | Select the check box. |
| Center Along Height | Select the check box. |

4. In the **Render** section, set the following options:

| Options | Setting |
|----------------------------|---|
| JTP | Select a TIFF output pool (for example, Proof). |
| Resolution X and Y | Type 2400 . |
| Color Model | Select DeviceGray . |
| Shades | Select 1 . |
| Spot Color Handling | Select Convert to process . |

5. In the **Calibration & Screening** section, set the following options:

| Options | Setting |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Calibration Curve | Select %%NONE%% . |
| Screen Ruling | Select 175 . |
| at Angle | Select 45 . |
| Rotate Screens With Pages | Select the check box. |

Note: The system screens all separations at the same angle, and it always uses Euclidean dot shape. As a result, you don't need to select a screen system from the **Screen System** box or a dot shape from the **Dot Shape** box. Prinergy sets the screen ruling to 175 lpi and screen angle to 45, regardless of how you set the **Screen Ruling** and **at Angle** options.

6. In the **Processed File Options** section, clear the **Overwrite Existing Files with Same Name** check box.
7. In the **File Format** section, in the **Compression** list, select **RLE**.
8. In the **Device** section, set the following options:

| Options | Setting |
|--------------------|--|
| Output Type | Select Absolute File or Printer . |
| Device Path | Specify the path to the thermal blueline hot folder for Print Console. |

9. From the **File** menu, select **Save As**, and then name and save the process template.
You are now ready to start an output process, using this process template, to create a thermal blueline.

Creating a process template for Veris

You can output loose page output and imposition output to the Kodak Veris digital proofer. To output Veris proofs, create a process template for the Veris digital proofer and use that process template when outputting to the proofer.

You can generate imposition output only if the imposition fits in the imageable area of the Veris digital proofer. The imageable area is 533 mm by 724 mm (21 inches by 28.5 inches)—or you can tile in Prinergy.

Before creating a process template for the Veris digital proofer, you must first export the current Veris ICC profiles from the Proofer Controller to a volume mounted on the Prinergy server. The profiles are stored on the Proofer Controller and can be exported using the export utility. For information on how to export ICC profiles, see the Kodak Veris proofer documentation.

Note: You can use your own custom ICC profiles. If you use custom ICC profiles, you must calibrate your proofer and tag all profiles before creating proofs, using the Kodak Certified Process. Contact a service representative to get a profile tagged as a certified profile.

1. Open a new or existing process template:
 - a. From the **Tools** menu, select **Process Template Editor**.
 - b. In the Process Template Editor window, expand **Loose Page Output** or **Imposition Output** and then expand the group that you want to use.
 - c. Double-click a process template to edit it or right-click a process template and select **New Process Template** to create a new process template.
2. In the **Output To** list, select **Veris/Matchprint Inkjet**.
3. In the **Device** section, in the **Proofer Name** list, select the proofer that you want to print to.
The proofer's model appears in the **Proofer Model** box.
4. In the **ColorConvert** section, set the following options:
 - a. Select **Match Colors in Page Content**.
 - b. For **Assumed Final Output Profile**, select the **Exactly As Defined Below** check box.
 - c. For **Source or DeviceLink Profile**, click **Browse** and locate where you stored the Veris ICC profiles that you exported from the Kodak digital proofer.

5. In the **Layout** section, set the following options:
 - a. In the **Media Configuration** list, select the Veris media type.
 - b. In the **VerisSheetTemplates** list, select the applicable template for your proofing job.

For information on the template settings, see the Kodak digital proofer documentation.
6. If you are generating loose page output, in the **Layout** section, set the following options:
 - a. For **Style**, select **N-up** to print more than one PDF page on a sheet of media.
 - b. In the **Number of Pages Across** and **Down** boxes, type the number of pages.

The pages must fit in the imagable area, which is 533 mm by 724 mm (21 inches by 28.5 inches). For example, you can fit four 8.5-by-11-inch pages, with two pages across and two pages down.
 - c. In the **Vertical Gutter Width** and **Horizontal Gutter Height** boxes, type the gutter amounts and select the unit of measure from the list.
7. From the **File** menu, select **Save As**, and then name and save the process template.

Creating PDF 1.3 output from complex transparency files

If you require output containing no transparent objects, and the flattener causes output problems due to complex transparency effects in your input file, use this procedure to ensure that the file prints correctly regardless of the downstream RIP.

If you require output that does not contain transparent objects (for example, PDF/X-1, PDF/X-3, or PDF 1.3 output), process the file as PDF 1.4 through Prinergy. Otherwise, the flattener in the CPSI RIP can cause output problems (either on refine or rendering) because of complex transparency effects in your file. Once the files are ready to send out, use APPE to output the files to PDF raster.

1. Refine the input files without flattening, including the following options:
 - a. In the **Normalize** section of the refine process template, in the **PDF 1.4-1.6 (Acrobat 5-7)** box, select **Leave as is**.
 - b. Perform all operations such as trapping and Color Matching on the unflattened file.
2. Once the pages are ready to send out, set the job to use APPE.
 - a. In the **Edit** menu of Job Manager, select **Edit Job Attributes**.
 - b. In the **Edit Job Attributes** dialog box, in the **RIP Name** box, select **Adobe PDF Print Engine**.
3. Output to PDF raster.
 - a. Start an output process.
 - b. In the **Output To** box at the top of the process template, select **PDF Raster**.
 - c. Set options in the **Render** section as desired.
For example, output to 600 dpi, 256 shades with antialiasing set to 2.

The result is a raster PDF that you use as the exchange file. The file will contain contone data, and will be large and uneditable. Nevertheless, the file will print correctly regardless of the downstream RIP.

Page set booklets

About page set booklets

Page set booklets are two-sided proofs of pages in reader order that can be printed on a duplexing laser printer.

You generate this type of proof after assigning pages to page positions. The purpose of the page set booklet is to ensure that the pages are correctly assigned.

The order in which you select the pages is the order Prinergy uses when creating a saddle-stitched imposition. You can either sort the pages in the desired order then select them, or press the command key (Mac) or CTRL key (PC) while selecting individual pages in the order you want.

Note: If you selected pages then changed the sort order, the sort order of the selected pages changes to match the new sort order. To maintain the selected sort order while you sort pages (for example, if you're looking for another page to select), press the Shift key while you're sorting.

Page set booklets are also called saddle-stitched imposition output or feel-good books.

Creating a process template for page set booklets

1. Open a new or existing loose page output process template:
 - a. From the **Tools** menu, select **Process Template Editor**.
 - b. In the Process Template Editor window, expand **Loose Page Output** and then expand the group that you want to use.
 - c. Double-click a process template to edit it or right-click a process template and select **New Process Template** to create a new process template.
2. In the **Output To** box, select the file type supported by the laser printer you will use to print page set booklets.
For example, select **EPS Raster**.
3. In the **Render** section, set the following options:
 - a. In the **Resolution X** box, type the resolution of the laser printer you will use to print page set booklets.
 - b. Clear the **Do Separations** check box.
Note: If you select the **Do Separations** check box, you cannot select a duplexing option in the **Layout** section.
4. In the **Layout** section, set the following options:
 - a. In the **Media** area, in the **Size** box, select **Cut sheet**, and then set the **Max Width** and **Max Height** boxes to the paper size for the printer you will use.
 - b. In the **Duplexing** box, select **Turn** or **Tumble**, whichever matches the print queue setting for the printer.
 - c. Use the **Front Shift Along Width**, **Along Height**, **Back Shift Along Width**, and **Along Height** options to compensate for any backup registration errors exhibited by your printer.
For example, paper may change size as it goes through a laser printer.
 - d. In the **Placement** area, beside **Type**, select **Page Set Booklet**.
 - e. Beside **Style**, select **2 x 1**.
 - f. Set the **Vertical Gutter Width** box to **1** inch.
 - g. In the **Scaling** area, set the **Non-Printable Margin** boxes to match the settings of the printer.
 - h. If the pages are too big for the paper, select the **Reduce to Fit Media** check box.
 - i. In the **Spacing** area, select the **Reduce Gutters If Required** check box, and then specify a minimum gutter size in the **Min Vertical Gutter Width** box.
5. Set the options in the **Marks** section as desired.

6. In the **Device** section, set the following options:
 - a. Beside **Output Type**, select **Absolute File or Printer**.
 - b. In the **Device Path** box, type the network path to the printer.
When you specify a printer, some of the settings in this section are automatically updated to match that printer.
7. Set other settings in the **Device**, **File Format**, and **Processed File Options** sections as required by your printer, or use the default settings.
8. From the **File** menu, select **Save As**, and then name and save the process template.

Generating a page set booklet

1. After adding and refining input file, create a page set and assign pages to the page set.
2. In the Page Sets pane of the **Pages** view, select the pages you want to print.

Note: Ensure that you select the pages in the order in which you want them printed. The order in which you select the pages determines the order of the pages in the booklet.

3. Start a loose page output process template that is created specifically for page set booklets.

Signature booklets

About signature booklets

Signature Booklet (digital blueline proofing) is a feature in Prinergy for creating 1-up or 2-up reader-order proofs of the page set positions from an imposition plan layout. You can create a signature booklet simply by starting a process template.

Signature Booklet offers similar functionality as iMPact Digital Blueline. The output proof is the same reader-order booklet, but the method to achieve it is different. Prinergy creates the signature booklet by deimposing the imposition plan layout into individual pages, RIPing the pages, and then outputting them-in reader order-to a duplexing laser printer or file. If outputting to a PDF raster or vector file, you can choose to output in a multipage format where the complete signature booklet is in one file, or you can output in a single-file format where each 1-up or 2-up page is saved to its own file.

You can output a signature booklet to any file type listed in the **Output To** list in the imposition output process template.

Diagram: Creating a 1-up signature booklet

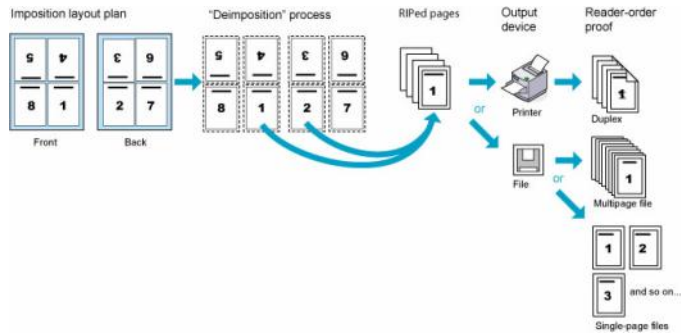
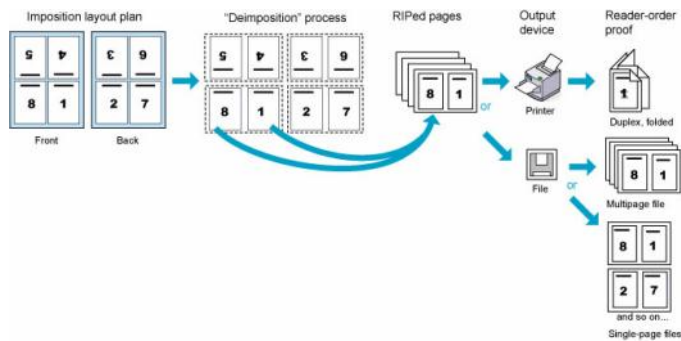


Diagram: Creating a 2-up, folded signature booklet



Preparing to generate a signature booklet

Before configuring the imposition output process template, determine the signature booklet output format and connect the printers.

1. Determine the signature booklet format, and collect the necessary information, using the following table as a guide.

| If Outputting To | Determine |
|------------------|---|
| A printer | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The name and location of the printer • The paper orientation: portrait or landscape? • The duplexing style: turn or tumble? • The signature booklet format: 1-up or folded 2-up? |
| A file | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The paper orientation: portrait or landscape? • The signature booklet format: 1-up or 2-up? |
| A PDF file | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All pages output to one file? • Each pages output to its own file? |

2. If outputting to a duplexing laser printer, determine the correct name of the printer, and connect the printer in one of the following ways:
 - Mount the laser printer on the Prinergy server using Prinergy Administrator.

For more information, see the Prinergy System Administration guide.

- Configure the printer in a Windows print queue.

Creating a process template for signature booklets

If you are printing signature booklets on more than one duplexing laser printer, create an imposition output process template for each printer. The settings in the process template are device-specific, so you cannot share imposition output process templates among several printers.

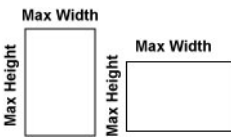
Because there is only one Windows Print Manager document for each signature booklet, you cannot load-balance the printing of signature booklet among several printers.

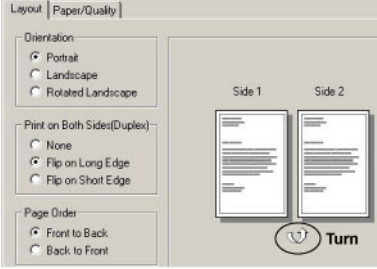
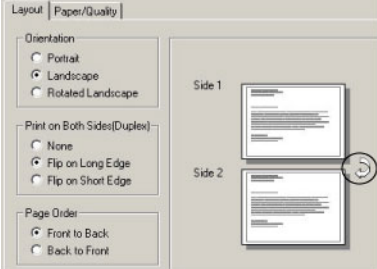
Note: Be sure to test each process template on its specified printer.

1. Plan the signature booklet format and connect the printers.
2. In any window, from the **Tools** menu, select **Process Template Editor**.
3. In the Process Template Editor dialog box, right-click the **Imposition Output** group and select **New Process Template Group**.
4. Name the new imposition output group **Signature Booklets**.
5. Open an existing imposition output process template from within the **Mockup** group.
6. From the **File** menu, select **Save As** and save it in the new **Signature Booklets** group.
You may want to name it according to the output format or output device—for example, **1-up_8.5x11_Turn_HP5Si** or **2-up_Digital_PDFRaster_100dpi**.
7. In the **Output To** list, select the output format of the signature booklet.
8. If you are outputting to a black-and-white printer, expand the **ColorConvert** section and set the following options:

| Options | Instructions |
|--|--|
| Match Colors in Page Content | Clear the check box. No input profiles are required. |
| Proof Process (Destination) profile | Select the output ICC profile as follows: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click Browse. b. In the File Browser dialog box, browse to the ICC profile: %ServerName%\%AraxiHome%\CreoAraxi\data\ICC-Profiles\gray\GenericGray.icm |

9. Expand the **Layout** section and set the following options:
 a. In the **Media** area:

| Options | Instructions |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Size | Select the paper size: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If outputting to a printer, select Cut Sheet. • If outputting to a file, select Digital. |
| Max Width and Max Height | <p>These options apply only if you are outputting directly to a printer.</p> <p>a. In the Max Width box, type the width of the paper and select the unit of measure from the list.</p> <p>b. In the Max Height box, type the length of the paper and select the unit of measure from the list.</p> <p>The values you type in these boxes must match the laser printer's paper orientation (portrait or landscape).</p> <p>Portrait: Landscape:</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For example, for a 1-up portrait orientation, you would type 210 mm (8.5 inches) in Max Width and 297 mm (11 inches) in Max Height. • For example, for a 2-up landscape orientation, you would type 420 mm (17 inches) in Max Width and 297 mm (11 inches) in Max Height. |

| Options | Instructions |
|------------------|--|
| Duplexing | <p>This option applies only if you are outputting to a printer.</p> <p>Match the laser printer's duplexing style as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the paper orientation is set to portrait and the duplex style is set to flip on the long edge, select Turn.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the paper orientation is set to landscape and the duplex style is set to flip on the long edge, select Tumble.  |

b. In the **Placement area:**

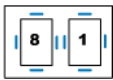
| Options | Instructions |
|----------------------------|---|
| Orientation | Select 0° . |
| Center Along Width | Select this check box to center the page horizontally. This check box must be selected for the signature booklet to output correctly. |
| Center Along Height | Select this check box to center the page vertically. This check box must be selected for the signature booklet to output correctly. |

c. In the **Scaling area:**

| Options | Instructions |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| All options | Clear all options in this area. |

d. In the **Signature Booklet area:**

| Options | Instructions |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Enable Signature Booklet | Select the check box to make the signature booklet options available. |

| Options | Instructions |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Type | Select how many pages will output on the sheet: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To output two PDF pages per sheet (one front and one back) in reader order by signature, select 1-up. To output four PDF pages per sheet (two front and two back) in reader order by signature, select 2-up. |
| Document Folding Style | This list becomes available when you select 2-up from the Type list. Select how the signature booklet will be folded: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you want a vertical fold, select Book-fashion. If you want a horizontal fold, select Calendar-fashion. |
| Use and with Offset | Select Bleed Box or Trim Box . Determines how much of the area around the page's bleed or trim box to include when printing. You can increase the offset amount to see the bleed area, gutters, imposition and page marks, and parts of neighboring imposed pages. Be sure the output sheet is large enough to accommodate both the pages and the bleed or trim offset amount. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To print with only the final bleed or trim, type 0 . 0. To image content outside the page's bleed or trim box, type a positive value and select a measurement from the list. The offset amount you choose depends on the size of the gutter. Typically 6 to 13 mm (0.25 to 0.5 inches) is sufficient. |
| Duplex Offsets | This option applies only if you are outputting to a duplexing printer. Adjust for the mechanical misalignment in the laser printer's unit. There are alignment test targets that you can run that measure how far off the front and back are from center. Use the Front X and Y and Back X and Y values to compensate for any misalignments. Select the units of measure in the list. |
| Page Marks | Identify the name and location of a PDF file containing the page marks. Click Browse to locate and select the marks file. The variable mark \$(PagePositionNumber) or \$(PPN) can be used to verify that the pages are in the correct page set positions in the imposition. |
| Calibrate | Select this check box to apply calibration curves to the marks. The calibration curve is set in the Calibration Curve list in the Calibration and Screening section. |
| Locate Page Marks Adjacent To | Select where to place the page marks in relation to the page's trim box. When you select Right or Left , the page marks rotate as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Left—rotates the mark 90° counterclockwise Right—rotates the mark 90° clockwise Bottom—no rotation Top—no rotation  |

| Options | Instructions |
|--------------------|---|
| at Distance | Place the page marks just outside the bleed box. Otherwise, the page mark may get associated with an adjoining page, or it may overprint onto another page. You may need to increase the Use Trim Box with offset amount to see the page marks. |

10. Expand the **Render** section and set the following options:

| Options | Instructions |
|---------------------------|---|
| JTP | Select a proofing job ticket processor (JTP). |
| Resolution X and Y | Select the output resolution for both the X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) axes. |

11. Complete any remaining options in the **Render** section according to the output device.

12. Configure the **Calibration and Screening** section according to your output device.

13. Expand the **Device** section and set the following options:

| Options | Instructions |
|--------------------|--|
| Output Type | Select the output type and specify its location: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If outputting to a printer, select Absolute File or Printer and either type the printer name or click Browse and browse to the printer location. • If outputting to a file that will be stored on a mounted volume, select Absolute File or Printer, click Browse and browse to the location. • If outputting to a file that will be stored in the job folder, select Job-Relative File and type the folder name. <p>Important: Do not select Submit as Multiple Print Job. If this check box is selected, the signature booklet will output one page at a time.</p> |

14. Expand the **Processed File Options** section and set the following options:

| Options | Instructions |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Prinerly-define File Naming | If outputting to a printer, select Use Prinerly-defined File Naming and leave the remaining options at their default settings. |
| Custom File Naming | If outputting to a file, do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Use Prinerly-defined File Naming and leave the remaining options at their default settings. • Select Use Custom File Naming and in the Filename Template box, type the file name tags. <p>Exception: If you are outputting to single-page PDF files, you must select Use Custom File Naming and include the variable tag %outputsheetnum% as part of file name template. Otherwise, the pages will overwrite each other.</p> |

15. Expand the **Marks** section and set the following options:

| Options | Instructions |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Draw Trim and Bleed Marks | Select the On Content option. |
| Locate Crop Mark of Length | Type the length of the crop mark, and select the unit of measure from the list. |
| at Distance | Type the distance of the crop mark from the trim box. |

16. If you selected a PDF file format in the **Output To** list (for example, **PDF Raster** or **PDF Vector**), expand the **File Format** section and set the following options:

| Options | Instructions |
|------------------------|---|
| Document Format | <p>Select how you want the PDF files saved:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you want all pages of the signature booklet in one file, select Multi Page. If you want each page in the signature booklet saved as a separate file, select Single Page. <p>Important: If you select Single Page, include the variable tag %outputsheetnum% in the Filename Template box. (See the exception above.) Otherwise, each page will overwrite the previously saved page.</p> |

17. Complete the remaining options in the **Device** section according to the requirements of the output type selected in the **Output To** list.

Note: The available options in the **File Format** section change depending on what you select in the **Output To** list.

18. From the **File** menu, select **Save**.

19. From the **File** menu, select **Close**.

Generating a signature booklet

If you are outputting the signature booklet to a networked printer, before you print the signature booklet, be sure to verify the printer's default settings against the process template you configured for that printer. For example, check the default paper tray, the paper orientation, and the duplexing style (turn or tumble).

The following table summarizes the critical settings that must match between the printer and the **Layout** section (**Media** area) of the imposition output process template.

| Output | Printer Settings | Process Template Settings |
|--------|--|--|
| 1-up | Portrait orientation, flip on the long edge (turn) | <p>Max Width: 210 mm (8.5 inches)</p> <p>Max Height: 297 mm (11 inches)</p> <p>Duplex: Turn</p> |

| Output | Printer Settings | Process Template Settings |
|--------|---|--|
| 2-up | Landscape orientation, flip on the long edge (tumble) | Max Width: 420 mm (17 inches) Max Height: 297 mm (11 inches) Duplex: Tumble |

1. In the Imposition Plans pane in the **Signatures** view, select the imposition or signatures you want to generate as a signature booklet.
2. Start the imposition output process template you configured for signature booklets.
3. Wait while Prinergy processes the signature booklet.

While it may appear that Prinergy has stopped responding between the color match and render processes, it has not. This is part of the process where the system is deimposing the imposition plan. Depending on the size and number of signatures being processed, this step may take some time. (You can view the processing time in the job's **History** view.)

Current, iMPact Digital Blueline users who make the switch to Signature Booklet might experience different performance results between the two products due to their different technologies and integration with Prinergy Workshop.

13

Approvals

About approvals

Use approvals to indicate whether elements are ready to move to the next step in the workflow. Prinerger provides two types of approvals:

- Customer approval of pages
- Proof approvals

Customer Approval of Pages

Each page can have a customer approval status. This status helps you work with customers using Prepress Portal. It can also help reduce errors in your workflow by preventing further refining or output based on status.

If a job is web-enabled customers can set approval status of each page using Prepress Portal.

You can also set approval status in Prinerger. However, it is better to use Prepress Portal, because changes in Prepress Portal trigger automatic e-mail notifications from Prepress Portal.

Depending on how Prinerger Administrator is configured, Customer Approval status may affect whether you can run certain processes:

- You may not be able to refine a page again if it has a Customer Approval status set to Approved.
- You may not be able to output using imposed proof process templates or the final output process templates if any pages used in the surface or signature are set to Rejected.
- You may not be able to output using imposed proof process templates or the final output process templates unless all of the pages used in the surface or signature are set to Approved or Approval Not Required.



You can see the Customer Approval status in Prinerger by:

- [Getting information about an element](#) on page 31
- [Displaying and hiding columns](#) on page 1034 to make the **Customer Approval** column appear in the **Pages** pane of either the **Pages** view or the **Signatures** view

Proof Approvals

You can record approval or rejection of every proof that you create. For example, if you print a content proof for a customer, you can indicate its approval before doing a contract proof. To use this approval method, you must first create a proof.

Proof approvals are for internal information only. They are not visible to customers using Prepress Portal, and have no effect on what you can do in Prinerger.


After you set the approval status, an approved icon  or a rejected icon  appears in the column for the proof process, if you are in list view.


Changing the approval status of pages

This procedure explains how to change approval status of a page in Prinerger. For information on changing approval status through Prepress Portal, see the Prepress Portal documentation.



1. In Job Manager, switch to the **Pages** view or the **Signatures** view.
2. In the **Pages** pane, select one or more pages.
3. From the **Edit** menu, point to **Customer Approval** and then select a specific status or select **Clear** to remove any status.
4. In the approval dialog box, enter a comment and click **OK**.

Changing the approval status of proofs

1. Generate the proof.
A new column dynamically appears with the same name as the proof process template that you used. For example, if you used a Virtual Proof process template, a **Virtual Proof** column appears. This column contains status icons, such as , indicating whether the process was successful.
2. Select the status icon in the proof column next to the element that you generated a proof of, and select **Approve** or **Reject** to set the status or select **Clear** to remove a status.

For example, if you want to approve a virtual proof of a surface, select  in the **Virtual Proof** column next to the name of the surface that you used, and select **Approve**.

3. In the approval dialog box, enter a comment and click **OK**.

Depending on your choice, an approved icon  or a rejected icon  appears in the column for the proof process, if you are in list view.

Approval Comment dialog box

This name of this dialog box reflects the approval status that you selected. For example, it is called Approval Requested dialog box when you select **Approval Requested** status.

Comment

Enter a comment that explains why you assigned the status of the page.

14

Color

Color spaces

About color spaces

Each color library must be associated with a color space. Each color space must be associated with an ICC profile, which is used to populate the colorants list. We recommend that you name color libraries and color spaces according to the associated ICC profile.

With the Color Space Editor, you can create new color spaces or change a color space by editing the component (colorant) names. Changes to the colorant names are written to the associated ICC profile.

The following color spaces are provided with Prinergy, and are not editable or removable:

- **CMYK**—Adobe SWOP sheetfed
- **RGB**—Adobe RGB 1998
- **L*a*b***—CIELAB 1976 (the Prinergy default)

You are responsible for creating color recipes for the colors in your color space.

About converting color spaces

Using the Color Matcher with ICC profiles (Prinergy-provided or custom), you can convert:

- RGB to CMYK: RGB graphics and images can be automatically converted to CMYK.
- CMYK to CMYK: The Color Matcher can convert the color space of a PDF file to a color space appropriate for a specific output device.
- Device-independent color spaces to a device color space: The Color Matcher can convert a device-independent color space such as L*a*b* to a final color space according to the ICC profile used.

The Color Matcher also enables you to:

- Map spot colors
- Perform overprint conversions
- Match colors

- Handle CMYK black
- Support extra colors such as L*a*b* color recipes

These features are available in various combinations in the refine, loose page output, and imposition output process templates.

Managing color spaces

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Color Space Editor**.
2. In the Color Space Editor, perform one of the following actions:

| To | Do This |
|----------------------|--|
| Add a color space | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click Add. b. In the Color Space Name box, type the name of the color space. c. Click Browse. In the Select File dialog box, navigate to the location of the ICC profile, click Select"<ICCfilename.icc>", and then click Apply. |
| Rename a component | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the Color Spaces box, select a custom color space. b. In the Components list, select a component, and click Edit. c. In the Rename Color Component dialog box, type the new name, click OK, and then click Apply. |
| Remove a color space | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the Color Spaces list, select a color space, and then click Remove. b. When the confirmation dialog box appears, click OK. |

Color Space Editor window

Color Spaces

Lists the color spaces defined in Prinergy.

Color Space Name

Displays the color space name. If you are adding a new color space, type the new name here.

ICC Profile

Displays the ICC profile associated with the color space. If you are adding a new color space click the **Browse** button to browse to an ICC profile.

Components

Lists the color space components.

Add

Adds a new color to the Color Spaces area. When you click this button, you need to enter a name and associated ICC profile in the Color Space Name box before the Apply button can be activated.

Remove

Removes the selected color space file from the Color Spaces area.

Edit

Lets you edit the name of the selected component.

Apply

Click Apply to save the changes you've made and to apply them to your current selection.

Revert

Click Revert to cancel the changes you've made and to revert the options to the settings you last saved.

Rename Color Component dialog box

Rename color component <color> to

Type a new name for the color space component.

Select File dialog box

Unlabeled list and results area

Selecting an item in the list at the top left of the dialog box displays that item's contents in the box below.

When you select:

- **Volumes**, the volumes in your system appear
- A volume name, folders at the root of the selected volume appear
- A folder name, files within the folder appear

The path of the displayed item in the list appears in reverse order, for example, folder name followed by volume name.

Volumes

Displays all volumes in the Prinergy system.

Show Hidden Files

Select this check box to include hidden files, such as system files, in the results.

You can set the default selection of this check box on the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Select <file>

This button displays Select followed by the name of the file that is selected in the lists above. Click it to select the specified file and close the dialog box.

Menus in Color Space Editor

Note: The **Edit** menu is unavailable.

Workshop menu in Color Space Editor

Note: This menu is available only when running Prinermy Workshop on a Macintosh client.

About Prinermy Workshop

Displays information about Prinermy Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the server name.

Preferences

Use to view and modify Prinermy Workshop preferences. When you select this menu item, the Workshop Preferences dialog box appears.

Note: On a Windows client, this menu item appears under the **Edit** menu. On a Macintosh client, it appears under the **Workshop** menu.

Quit / Quit Prinermy Workshop

Quits Prinermy Workshop. Any open Prinermy Workshop windows are closed.

File menu in Color Space Editor

Close Window

Closes the current window, but does not quit Prinermy Workshop.

Quit / Quit Prinermy Workshop

Quits Prinermy Workshop. Any open Prinermy Workshop windows are closed.

View menu in Color Space Editor

Refresh

Updates the contents of the current window.

Tools menu in Color Space Editor

Change User

Displays the Connect to Server dialog box where you can log in as another user without quitting Prinerigy Workshop.

This menu item appears only if you have Kodak Prinerigy Business Link software connected to the Prinerigy system.

Job Finder

Opens Job Finder.

If you are already in Job Finder, this menu item is unavailable.

Destroy History Entries

In the **History** view, select one or more history entries and then use **Destroy History Entries** to delete the selected entries.

Process Template Editor

Launches **Process Template Editor**, where you can create and modify process templates.

Automated Page Assignment Editor

Starts the **Automated Page Assignment Editor**, which you use to create and check APA files.

Queue Manager

Launches **Queue Manager**, where you can view the Job Ticket Processors (JTPs) and process types.

Media Manager

Launches **Media Manager**, where you can manage your archive tapes and disk volumes.

System History

Launches **System History**, which displays the detailed history of all the activity occurring outside of job context (such as jobs and groups that were created or destroyed), as well as job archive, purge, and retrieve history.

Smart Hot Folder Manager

Launches the Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box, where you can add, edit and delete smart hot folders.

Configure Imposition Application

Displays the Configure Imposition Applications dialog box, where you can identify the location of imposition software that you want to integrate with Prinergy Workshop.

Start Imposition Application

Displays the Start Imposition Application dialog box, where you choose which imposition software to start. You create this list of imposition applications with the Configure Imposition Application tool from the **Tools** menu. If an application requires a license and is licensed, it appears in bold.

Color Editor

Launches **Color Editor**, where you can create color recipes for all jobs.

Color Space Editor

Launches **Color Space Editor**, where you can create and edit color spaces.

Font Converter

Launches **Font Converter**, where you can convert font files into PFA (Printer Font ASCII) format, which Prinergy requires to correctly process fonts.

Preflight Profile Manager

Launches **Preflight Profile Manager**, where you can, during the refine process, evaluate PDFs to detect problems that may affect processing in a publishing or prepress workflow.

Digital Print Administration Console

Launches the Digital Print Administrator, where you can add and configure a digital print application that Prinergy can launch to print PDFs.

Rule Set Manager

Opens the Rule Set Manager, where you can create and edit rule sets. The Rule Set Manager also lets you organize rule sets into groups.

Activate Rule Set in Selected Jobs

Opens the **Select Rule Set** dialog box, where you can activate rule sets for one or more jobs.

Help menu in Color Space Editor

Online help

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy online help.

On <current window or view>

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy Workshop user guide, open to the topic for the currently selected window or view.

Quick Start Guide

Starts Adobe Acrobat and displays a PDF file of the *Prinergy Connect Quick Start Guide*

eCentral Online Support

Starts your Web browser and displays the eCentral portal at <https://ecentral.kodak.com/>.

Visit graphics.kodak.com

Starts your Web browser and displays the Kodak Web site at <http://graphics.kodak.com/default.htm>.

About Prinergy Workshop

Displays information about Prinergy Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the Prinergy server name.

Note: This menu item appears on the **Help** menu only when you are running Prinergy Workshop on a Windows-based client computer. On a Macintosh client computer, the menu item **About Workshop** appears on the **Workshop** menu.

Color libraries and definitions

About color libraries and definitions

Use the Color Editor to manage color libraries and color definitions in Prinergy.

Color definitions can improve job color accuracy and consistency by replacing color definitions that are defined in the input file with color

recipes that are specific to the final printing condition (device, media, inks, and so on).

For example, in composite PostScript or PDF files, override inconsistent color recipes in a job with a standard recipe so a spot color can be converted to process or simulated on a proof in the same way throughout a job.

You can also use the Color Editor to store ink parameters necessary for trapping. When trapping, the trapper looks to the color definition (found according to the library search order specified in the refine process template) for a color's opacity and neutral density values. If the color is not found, the Trapper assumes an opacity value of Normal and determines the neutral density value from the CMYK values in the input file.

Color libraries and alternate color spaces

Color definitions are grouped into libraries. Each color library is associated with an alternate color space. Each alternate color space (ACS) is associated with an ICC profile, which is used to populate the list of colorants. We recommend that you name color libraries according to the associated ICC profile.

The Color Editor uses the following types of color libraries:

- **Factory libraries**—are populated from named spot color systems—for example, PANTONE. Factory libraries are preloaded into Prinergy, and are available to all jobs.
- **User libraries**—are libraries that you populate
 - **Global** tab—contains color definitions that are available to all jobs in the system.
 - **Job** tab—contains color definitions that are available only to the job for which they are defined. Job-specific color definitions override global color definitions of the same name.

Important: When you remove a user library, all color definitions in its global and job-specific libraries will be deleted. You will be prompted to confirm.

Within a user library, you can copy colors between the **Global** tab and the **Job** tab. By copying a color to the **Global** tab, you make the color available to all jobs. By copying a color to the **Job** tab, you can customize the color definition for the job without affecting the color definition for other jobs.

You cannot copy colors between user libraries. But you can import and export user libraries between Prinergy systems.

When you export an entire job in Prinergy, the export includes job-specific color definitions and their ACS and ICC profiles but does not include global color definitions.

See also:

[About neutral density](#) on page [256](#)

[About how Prinergy searches for color definitions](#) on page [783](#)

[About the PANTONE library](#) on page [784](#)

About how Prinergy searches for color definitions

When Prinergy looks for a color definition, it uses the color library search order as specified in the **Spot Color Handling** section of the job's refine process template.

PANTONE colors and related suffixes

Because a PANTONE color may have different suffixes, yet still have the same recipe, Prinergy will search for the different permutations of a PANTONE color name if it cannot find an exact match. For the list of related suffixes, see the **Auto-Resolve Spot Color Naming Conflicts** check box description in Spot Color Handling Section of the Refine Process Template.

Color search order

Prinergy performs the search by:

1. First searching (for the exact color name) in the **Job** tabs of the libraries in the listed order
2. Then searching (for the exact color name) in the **Global** tabs of the user libraries and factory libraries in the listed order
3. Then, if a PANTONE color, searching for permutations of the PANTONE color name in the **Job** tabs of the libraries in the listed order
4. Then, if a PANTONE color, searching for permutations of the PANTONE color name in the **Global** tabs of the user libraries and factory libraries in the listed order

For example, if the libraries are listed in the following order:

| Listed Order | Search Order |
|--------------|---|
| userlib1 | Job tab of userlib1 (exact match) |
| factorylib1 | Job tab of userlib2 (exact match) |
| userlib2 | Global tab of userlib1 (exact match) |
| | factorylib1 (exact match) |
| | Global tab of userlib2 (exact match) |
| | Job tab of userlib1 (loose match) |
| | Job tab of userlib2 (loose match) |
| | Global tab of userlib1 (loose match) |
| | factorylib1 (loose match) |
| | Global tab of userlib2 (loose match) |

About the PANTONE library

The PANTONE library of color definitions is a standard feature of Prinergy. It is loaded into the global color database. You access the global color database when you're using the Color Editor.

The PANTONE library consists of color definitions for 15,751 different PANTONE color names. Most of the colors are defined in the L*a*b* color space; some are defined in the CMYK color space. Each PANTONE color name has only one color definition, also known as a color recipe.

Note: When you install the PANTONE library using Prinergy Administrator, you can choose whether to load the CMYK or L*a*b* color systems. See the Prinergy System Administration guide for more information.

Because Prinergy uses the PANTONE library, it lets you create proofs that are even closer to the color produced by presses.

PANTONE library with QuarkXPress, Illustrator, and Photoshop

The PANTONE library is intended for use with files produced by QuarkXPress, Adobe Illustrator, and/or Adobe Photoshop, which all contain the PANTONE library. In these desktop applications, when you use a color from the PANTONE library, the color name is captured in the file. QuarkXPress, Illustrator, and Photoshop all add characters to the end of PANTONE color names. Prinergy knows the rules by which each of these desktop applications change PANTONE color names. When you add the file to Prinergy and refine it, Prinergy recognizes the PANTONE color name, matches it to the PANTONE color in the PANTONE library, and uses the color recipe from the PANTONE library.

You have the option of changing the color recipe for the PANTONE color for the job. The modified color recipe is stored with the job and does not override the color recipe in the PANTONE library.

PANTONE library with other desktop applications

Prinerger recognizes PANTONE color names in files generated by QuarkXPress, Illustrator, and Photoshop, because Prinerger knows the rules these applications use to specify PANTONE color names. If you are processing a file in Prinerger that is produced by any other desktop application, such as CorelDRAW, you will need to know the rules the applications use to name the PANTONE colors in their files to successfully use the PANTONE library in Prinerger.

PANTONE library presence in Prinerger

The PANTONE library is invisible to you until you've refined files that contain PANTONE spot colors or you have manually added separations with PANTONE color names to a job. When a PANTONE color exists in a job, you can see its color recipe when you display the Color Separations dialog box or the Color Mapping dialog box.

The refining process and Color Combiner both use the PANTONE library.

Adding or changing colors in separations

Use this procedure when generating imposition output or final output.

1. Open the Color Separations dialog box.
 - a. Select a signature in the **Signatures** view.
 - b. From the **Edit** menu, select **Color Separations**.
2. Select the color.
3. Identify whether the colors are defined in the color database by selecting each one in the **Color Information** area and reading its description.

Prinerger identifies a color as undefined if it is not in any color library.


4. Perform one of the following actions:

| To | Do This |
|-----------------|---|
| Add a new color | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click Add Separation. b. In the Add Separation dialog box, type a name for the color separation. c. Click Add. |

| To | Do This |
|------------------------|---|
| Edit an existing color | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the Page Color column, click a color that is defined. b. In the Color Information area, click the Page Color tab, and click Edit. c. Click Edit Color Recipe Globally or Edit Color Recipe For This Job Only as appropriate. d. In the Color Editor dialog box, edit the color attributes. |

Adding or changing color definitions while refining

Use this procedure when you want to add a color definition or change a color definition while you are refining. For example, you can use this procedure to adjust the screen angle of a color while refining.

1. Start a second refine, which is a refine process on refined files.
You cannot add or change color definitions when you refine input files.
2. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Color Mapping**.
3. In the Color Mappings dialog box, identify whether the colors are defined in the color database.
 - A colored square indicates a color is defined. If the color is in a user library, you can change its definition. If the color is in a factory library, you can make a copy of it in a user library and change the copy.
 - An  icon indicates a color that is not defined in any of the factory color libraries or in the user libraries selected in the **Color Libraries** area of the **Spot Color Handling** section of the refine process template that you are using.


Tip: You can also select the color and read its description in the **Color Information** area.

4. Select a color in the **Page Color** column.
5. Perform any of the following actions:


| To | Do This |
|--|---|
| Add an undefined color to the color database | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click Add. b. In the Select a Color Library dialog box, in the Add the color recipe <color> to the library list, select a library. The libraries in the list are the user libraries selected in the Color Libraries area of the Spot Color Handling section of the refine process template that you are using. c. Select either Global or Job <job name> to determine whether the color is available to all jobs or only to the current job. d. Click OK. |

| To | Do This |
|------------------------|--|
| Edit an existing color | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click Edit. b. When prompted, click either Edit Color Recipe Globally to edit add a copy of the color definition to a global user library, or Edit Color Recipe For This Job Only to add a copy of the color definition to a job-specific user library. |

6. In the Color Editor, set the options for the selected color, and click **OK**.

If you added a color, the icon next to it changes from  to a colored square. If you changed a color, the description in the **Color Information** area changes.

Adding or changing color definitions while generating loose proofs

1. Start a loose page output process.
2. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Color Mapping**.
3. In the Color Output dialog box, identify whether the colors are defined in the color database.
 - A colored square indicates a color is defined. If the color is in a user library, you can change its definition. If the color is in a factory library, you can make a copy of it in a user library and change the copy.
 - An  icon indicates a color that is not defined in any of the factory color libraries or in the user libraries selected in the **Color Libraries** area of the **Spot Color Handling** section of the refine process template that you are using.

Tip: You can also select the color and read its description in the **Color Information** area.

4. In the **Page Color** column, perform any of the following actions:

| To | Do This |
|-----------------|--|
| Add a new color | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click a color that is not defined. b. Click Add. c. In the Select a Color Library dialog box, in the Add the color recipe <color> to the library list, select a library. The libraries available in the list are the user libraries selected in the Color Libraries area of the ColorConvert section of the process template that you are using. d. Select either Global or Job <job name> to determine whether the color is available to all jobs or only to the current job. e. Click OK. |

| To | Do This |
|------------------------|--|
| Edit an existing color | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click a color that is defined. b. In the Color Information area, click the Page Color tab and click Edit. |

5. In the Color Editor, set the options for the selected color, and click **OK**.

Color Editor window

Color Libraries

(Visible when you open Color Editor directly from the **Tools** menu, not from another dialog box)

Lists the color libraries defined in Prinergy.

Use the **Add** and **Remove** buttons to add or remove a user library.

Use the **Import** and **Export** buttons to copy color libraries between Prinergy systems.

Colors

(Visible when you open Color Editor directly from the **Tools** menu, not from another dialog box)

Lists the colors defined in the selected color library.

The **Global** tab lists colors that are available to all jobs. The **Job** tab lists colors that are available only to the current job. The **Job** tab is shown only when you open Color Editor from Job Manager.

Type the color recipe name in the **Search** box to locate the color recipe in the list.

Use the **Add**, **Copy**, **Edit**, and **Remove** buttons to manage color recipes.

Color Editor

Displays the color definition (recipe), which includes the name, trapping information, alternative color space, and screening information.

For more details, see the remainder of this table.

Name

Displays the name of the color.

Opacity

Select one of the following opacity options:

Not Specified: Opacity is not specified.

Normal: The color is treated as translucent. Normal colors, or objects covered by or placed on top of Normal colors, may be trapped.

Transparent: Transparent colors are not trapped.

Opaque: Opaque colors, or objects covered by Opaque colors, are not spread. Other colors may trap to Opaque colors, and objects covered by Opaque colors may be choked back.

Opaque Ignored: Opaque Ignored colors are not spread. Other colors do not trap to Opaque Ignored colors.

die line-The color is not trapped. For composite proofs, the color knocks out. When outputting separations, the system treats the color as an overprint ink.

Neutral Density

(Also see [About neutral density](#) on page 256)

Specifies the neutral density for the color.

Note: Unless you need to specify a special neutral density for trapping purposes, we recommend that you leave this blank. The neutral density values are determined from the process color recipe.

Treat Color As Black

This check box is available only for the PDF Trap Editor.

You can specify that a colorant (usually only a spot color) be treated as though it was black. The settings in the **Black** area of the **Trap** section of the refine process template determine how Prinergy handles black objects.

Notes:

- **Normal** inks can be trapped as black if set to **Treat as Black**.
- Other colors trap to **Opaque** inks because **Opaque** inks are always treated as black.
- **Transparent** or **Opaque Ignored** inks are never treated as black.

Alternate Color Space Name

Specifies an alternate color space for the color, for example, RGB, CMYK, or L*a*b*.

The components below the **Name** box specify the percentage (or quantity) of each component forming the color recipe. For

example, PANTONE 159-6 is composed of: Cyan=15%, Magenta=50%, Yellow=0%, Black=25%.

Screening Angle

Specifies the screening angle for the color.

Revert

Click Revert to cancel the changes you've made and to revert the options to the settings you last saved.

Apply

Click Apply to save the changes you've made and to apply them to your current selection.

Managing color definitions

This procedure explains how to add, edit, copy, and delete colors in a color library by accessing the Color Editor directly. You can also access the Color Editor from other dialog boxes while you are working on specific tasks.

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Color Editor**.
2. In the Color Editor, in the **Color Libraries** section, click a library.
3. In the **Colors** section, click the **Global** tab or the **Job** tab.

The **Job** tab is visible only if you open the Color Editor from an open job in Job Manager.

4. Perform any of the following actions:

| To | Do This |
|----------------|---|
| Add a color | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click Add. b. In the Name box, type a name for the new color. c. Set the options, and click Apply. |
| Edit a color | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the Colors box, select a color, and then click Edit. b. Change the options, and click Apply. |
| Copy a color | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the Colors box, select a color, and then click Copy. b. In the Name box, type a name for the new color, and click Apply. |
| Delete a color | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the Colors box, select a color, and then click Remove. b. Click OK to confirm. |

Job Color Picker dialog box

Color Recipes

Displays the job-specific colors in the selected color library.

Create Copy

Select the check box next to one or more color recipes that you want to copy.

Global Color Picker dialog box

Color Recipes

Displays the global colors in the selected color library.

Create Copy

Select the check box next to one or more color recipes that you want to copy.

Managing color libraries

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Color Editor**.
2. In the Color Editor, in the **Color Libraries** section, perform any of the following actions:

| To | Do This |
|------------------|---|
| Add a library | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click Add. b. In the Add New Color Library dialog box, type a name for the new library in the Library Name box. c. Either select an existing color space and click OK, or create a color space. |
| Import a library | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click Import. b. In the Import Color Library dialog box, navigate to and select the color library (.dat) file. c. If you want to rename the color library file, change the file name but do not change the file extension, and then click OK. <p>Note: When importing a color library, ensure that the color space associated with the color library exists in the Prinergy system. If the color space name or colorants don't match, the import fails.</p> |
| Edit a library | See Managing Color Definitions. |

| To | Do This |
|------------------|---|
| Remove a library | Click a library, click Remove , and then click Yes to confirm. Important: Removing a user library deletes color definitions in both Global and Job tabs. |
| Export a library | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the Color Libraries section, click a library, and then click Export. b. In the Export Color Library dialog box, navigate to and select the destination directory. c. If you want to rename the color library file, change the file name but do not change the file extension. Then click OK. |

See also:

[Managing color spaces](#) on page [776](#)

[Color Editor window](#) on page [788](#)

[Managing color definitions](#) on page [790](#)

[Add New Color Library dialog box](#) on page [792](#)

[Import Color Library dialog box](#) on page [792](#)

[Export Color Library dialog box](#) on page [793](#)

Add New Color Library dialog box

Library Name

Type a name for the new library.

Select Alternate Color Space

Select an existing color space or select **Define new colorspace** to create a new color space.

Import Color Library dialog box

Volumes

Displays all volumes in the Prinergy system.

Job Folder

Opens the job folder for the current job.

Show Hidden Files

Select this check box to include hidden files, such as system files, in the results.

You can set the default selection of this check box on the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Name the imported library as

Displays the name for the library as it will appear in the **Color Libraries** area in the **User Libraries** group. You can edit the name if you want to.

Export Color Library dialog box

Volumes

Displays all volumes in the Prinergy system.

Job Folder

Opens the job folder for the current job.

Show Hidden Files

Select this check box to include hidden files, such as system files, in the results.

You can set the default selection of this check box on the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Export the selected color library to file

Displays the file name for the exported color library. You can change the filename, but ensure it ends in the .dat extension.

Copying a color between the Job and Global tabs

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Color Editor**.
2. In the **Color Libraries** list, select a library under **User Libraries**.
3. In the Color Editor, from the **File** menu, select one of the following:
 - **Copy to Job Tab** to copy colors from the **Global** tab to the **Job** tab
 - **Copy to Global Tab** to copy colors from the **Job** tab to the **Global** tab
4. In the Job Color Picker dialog box or Global Color Picker dialog box, click the colors you want to copy, and click **OK**.

Select a Color Library dialog box

Add the color recipe <color> to the library

Select the color library that you want to add the color to.

The libraries that appear in the list depend on what you are doing:

- If you are refining the list includes the user libraries selected in the **Color Libraries** area of the **Spot Color Handling** section of the refine process template that you are using.
- If you are generating loose page output the list includes the user libraries selected in the **Color Libraries** area of the **ColorConvert** section of the process template that you are using.
- If you are working with separations the list includes all of the user libraries in the color database. In addition, you can select **Add new color library**, which opens the Add New Color Library dialog box where you can define the name and alternate color space of a new user library.

Global

Select this option to store the color in a library that is available in all jobs.

Job <job name>

Select this option to store the color in a library that is available only in the current job.

Menus in Color Editor

Workshop menu in Color Editor

Note: This menu is available only when running Prinergy Workshop on a Macintosh client.

About Prinergy Workshop

Displays information about Prinergy Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the server name.

Preferences

Use to view and modify Prinergy Workshop preferences. When you select this menu item, the Workshop Preferences dialog box appears.

Note: On a Windows client, this menu item appears under the **Edit** menu. On a Macintosh client, it appears under the **Workshop** menu.

Quit / Quit Prinergy Workshop

Quits Prinergy Workshop. Any open Prinergy Workshop windows are closed.

File menu in Color Editor

Close Window

Closes the current window, but does not quit Prinergy Workshop.

Copy to Job Tab

Displays the Global Color Picker which allows you to copy color definitions from the **Global** tab to the **Job** tab of a library.

This menu item is visible only when you open Color Editor from Job Manager. It is available only when you select a user library and then select a color on the **Global** tab.

Copy to Global Tab

Displays the Job Color Picker which allows you to copy color definitions from the **Job** tab to the **Global** tab of a library.

This menu item is visible only when you open Color Editor from Job Manager. It is available only when you select a user library and then select a color on the **Job** tab.

Quit / Quit Prinergy Workshop

Quits Prinergy Workshop. Any open Prinergy Workshop windows are closed.

Edit menu in Color Editor

Cut, Copy, Paste (unavailable)

Select All Colors

Selects all the colors listed in the **Colors** box in the Color Editor window.

View menu in Color Editor

Refresh

Updates the contents of the current window.

Tools menu in Color Editor

Change User

Displays the Connect to Server dialog box where you can log in as another user without quitting Prinergy Workshop.

This menu item appears only if you have Kodak Prinergy Business Link software connected to the Prinergy system.

Job Finder

Opens Job Finder.

If you are already in Job Finder, this menu item is unavailable.

Destroy History Entries

In the **History** view, select one or more history entries and then use **Destroy History Entries** to delete the selected entries.

Process Template Editor

Launches **Process Template Editor**, where you can create and modify process templates.

Automated Page Assignment Editor

Starts the **Automated Page Assignment Editor**, which you use to create and check APA files.

Queue Manager

Launches **Queue Manager**, where you can view the Job Ticket Processors (JTPs) and process types.

Media Manager

Launches **Media Manager**, where you can manage your archive tapes and disk volumes.

System History

Launches **System History**, which displays the detailed history of all the activity occurring outside of job context (such as jobs and groups that were created or destroyed), as well as job archive, purge, and retrieve history.

Smart Hot Folder Manager

Launches the Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box, where you can add, edit and delete smart hot folders.

Configure Imposition Application

Displays the Configure Imposition Applications dialog box, where you can identify the location of imposition software that you want to integrate with Prinergy Workshop.

Start Imposition Application

Displays the Start Imposition Application dialog box, where you choose which imposition software to start. You create this list

of imposition applications with the Configure Imposition Application tool from the **Tools** menu. If an application requires a license and is licensed, it appears in bold.

Color Editor

Launches **Color Editor**, where you can create color recipes for all jobs.

Color Space Editor

Launches **Color Space Editor**, where you can create and edit color spaces.

Font Converter

Launches **Font Converter**, where you can convert font files into PFA (Printer Font ASCII) format, which Prinergy requires to correctly process fonts.

Preflight Profile Manager

Launches **Preflight Profile Manager**, where you can, during the refine process, evaluate PDFs to detect problems that may affect processing in a publishing or prepress workflow.

Digital Print Administration Console

Launches the Digital Print Administrator, where you can add and configure a digital print application that Prinergy can launch to print PDFs.

Rule Set Manager

Opens the Rule Set Manager, where you can create and edit rule sets. The Rule Set Manager also lets you organize rule sets into groups.

Activate Rule Set in Selected Jobs

Opens the **Select Rule Set** dialog box, where you can activate rule sets for one or more jobs.

Help menu in Color Editor

Online help

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy online help.

On <current window or view>

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy Workshop user guide, open to the topic for the currently selected window or view.

Quick Start Guide

Starts Adobe Acrobat and displays a PDF file of the *Prinerger Connect Quick Start Guide*

eCentral Online Support

Starts your Web browser and displays the eCentral portal at <https://ecentral.kodak.com/>.

Visit graphics.kodak.com

Starts your Web browser and displays the Kodak Web site at <http://graphics.kodak.com/default.htm>.

About Prinerger Workshop

Displays information about Prinerger Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the Prinerger server name.

Note: This menu item appears on the **Help** menu only when you are running Prinerger Workshop on a Windows-based client computer. On a Macintosh client computer, the menu item **About Workshop** appears on the **Workshop** menu.

Separations

About color separations

You can work with color separations in the Color Separations dialog box to:

- View the pages that a color is on
- Specify whether or not a color is output
- Specify how to handle spot colors

Spot color mapping set through the Color Separations dialog box applies to:

- Imposition proofs and final output only
- Raster output and separated vector output (composite vector output is not supported)

Note: In general, the Color Matcher has better control of spot color mapping/conversion than the RIP does. Therefore, to ensure proofs match plates with respect to spot color handling, it is advisable to do as much processing of spot colors (mapping one spot color to another, conversion of spot color to process) in the refine stage, not during final output.

Resetting initial separations

You can reset the separations in the **Separations** view to the page colors defined in the pages assigned to the page sets. This is useful:

- After you add an imposition plan to a job that contains an existing page set causing the **Separations** view not to display any separations.
- To reset the separations in a job after you've created color mappings.

Common separations

When you have used a versioning imposition with layering you can identify separations as base, common, or unique. The labels appears in the **Common** column in the [Separations view](#) on page [46](#) of Job Manager.

Color print order

Color print order is the order in which the system handles color separations. It is useful in two situations:

- Imposition proofs and final output-Color print order controls the order in which Prinergy outputs color separations from a signature for a job. The order you specify displays in the **Separations** view.
- Color mapping-Color print order controls the order in which Prinergy traps the colors from a signature for a job. Since the first-down ink on the substrate must pull the second-down ink from the plate or cylinder, knowing which colors these are can help you avoid unsightly trap colors.

Identifying common separations

This procedure applies only when you have used a versioning imposition with layering.

- In the **Separations** view of Job Manager, perform one of the following actions:

| To Display | On the Job Menu, Select This |
|--|--|
| A label for the separation in the Common column | Identify Common Separations |
| A typical view of separations | Don't Identify Common Separations |

Seeing which pages contain a color

1. Open the Color Separations dialog box:
 - a. Switch to the **Separations** or **Signatures** view.
 - b. Select a signature.
 - c. On the **Edit** menu, select **Color Separations**.
2. Select a color in the **Page Color** column.

The **Pages containing selected color** area indicates which pages contain the color you selected.

3. Click **OK**.

Adding a color separation

1. Open the Color Separations dialog box:
 - a. Switch to the **Separations** or **Signatures** view.
 - b. Select a signature.
 - c. On the **Edit** menu select **Color Separations**.
2. Click **Add Separation**.
3. In the Add Separations dialog box, type a name in the **Name** box and click **Add**.

The new separation is listed in the **Page Color** column.

4. If you want to map a color to this new color:
 - In the **Page Color** column, click the color you want to map.
 - In the **Output Selected as** list, select the new color you created.

For example, if you have three different PANTONE Blue separations listed in the **Page Color** box, and each one is spelled differently, you can create a new, correctly spelled color name, then map each incorrectly spelled spot color to the new color name.

5. Click **OK**.

Add Separation dialog box

Name

Type the name of the new separation.

Setting initial separations

1. Switch to the **Separations** or **Signatures** view.
2. Select an imposition plan which selects all of the signatures in that imposition plan.
3. From the **File** menu, select **Set Initial Separations**.
4. In the Set Initial Separations dialog box, click **OK**.

Color Separations dialog box

Page Color

Lists the colors in the pages in the selected signature.

One color swatch appears in the **Color Information** section for every color name match found in the color libraries.

When you select multiple colors in this column, the **Output Selected As** menu lists all choices that apply to the selection.

Note: If any of the elements selected can be converted to process, then the **Convert to Process** selection will appear.

Output

Lists the color output treatment you have specified for each color in the **Page Color** list.

Output Selected as

Specifies how you want the system to interpret colors in the selected signatures:

- **Separately**

Outputs the color. For final output, Prinergy outputs the spot color as a separation.

- **Do Not Output**

Suppresses output of the color

- **Convert to Process**

Converts a spot color to process color using the color recipe from the color database.

- **All the colors in the signature**

Outputs the spot color with the selected color.

The last two options are available only for spot colors in composite PDF pages.

Note: This feature is not supported when outputting to a composite vector file.

Note: Impositions usually have marks with colors: CMYK colors, as well as generic spots. The generic spots usually follow a specific naming convention (example, "Spot1", "Spot2", and so on). When you import an imposition, all the imposition colors are set to **Do not output** to avoid unnecessary and wasted plates. When you assign a page to an imposition, Prinergy automatically turns on the necessary colors in the imposition as well. This enables the imposition marks to reflect the colors on the pages. Prinergy also automatically maps the imposition mark spot colors to the page spot colors. For example, it will automatically map imposition mark "Spot1" to page color "PANTONE Reflex Blue C". If necessary, you can override this the automatic mapping by using the **Separations** view of Workshop.

Add Separation

This button is available only for spot colors in composite pages.

This button enables you to add a color to the **Output Selected as** list. You can then map spot colors in composite pages to the new color.

For example, if you had three different PANTONE Blue separations listed in the **Page Color** box, each spelled differently, you could create a new, correctly spelled color, and map the three incorrectly spelled spot colors to it. The spot color is output with the new separation color.

If the new color is not found in the color libraries, a warning icon (⚠) is displayed to the left of the color name in the **Output Selected as** list.

Color Information

Displays the color definition information for the color you selected in the **Page Color** column.

Add

Select this button to add a copy of the color definition.

This button is available only when you select an undefined color.

Note: Factory spot colors cannot be edited.

Edit

Select this button to edit the color definition.

This button appears when you select a color defined in the **Job** tab.

Note: Factory spot colors cannot be edited.

Edit Copy

Select to edit a copy of the color definition. This button creates a copy of a global color in the **Job** tab of the color library.

This button appears when you select a color defined in the **Global** tab.

Note: Factory spot colors cannot be edited.

Pages containing selected color

When you select a color in the **Page Color** column, this panel displays the pages that contain the color you selected.

Specifying a color print order

1. Open the Print Order dialog box in one of these ways:

| To Specify Print Order For | Do This |
|--|--|
| Trapping | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Start a refine process. b. In the Start Process dialog box, click Color Mapping. c. In the Color Mapping dialog box, click Print Order. |
| Imposition proof output and final output | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the Signatures or Separations view, select one or more signatures. b. From the Edit menu, select Color Printing Order. |

2. Select a color in the list, and then click **Print Sooner** or **Print Later** to move the selected to the desired position.
When Prinergy handles the color separations, it starts from the top of the list and works down the list.
3. Repeat step 2 for other colors until the list displays a satisfactory color printing order.
4. Click **OK**.

Print Order dialog box

list

Use this list to determine the lay down order for trapping colors. Select a color, and raise or lower its order in the list by using the Print Sooner and Print Later buttons.

Print Sooner

Select a color in the list to trap into other Opaque colors and then click this button to raise the color before the other colors displayed lower in the list.

Print Later

Select a color in the list to trap into other Opaque colors and to define the shape. (An object that is printed later usually holds the shape, that is, the dominant color in the tone should define the shape of the object.) Click this button to lower the color after the other colors displayed higher in the list.

Spot colors

About reducing and preserving spot colors (overview)

When job files contain spot colors, you need to figure out whether to reduce them.

You can handle a spot color in several ways:

- Preserve it so that it remains in the job files, appears in a proof, or appears in final output.
- Convert it to process color.
- Map it to another spot color.
- Omit it from proofs or final output.

You can handle spot colors at several stages in the workflow:

- Refine: See About Reducing and Preserving Spot Colors During Refine.
- Proof: See About Reducing and Preserving Spot Colors in Proofs.
- Final output: See About Reducing and Preserving Spot Colors in Final Output.

To determine whether to reduce or preserve spot colors, evaluate the spot colors in your input files and compare that to the spot colors expected in the output. Use the table below to select the procedure that best suits your job.

| If the Answer to This Question | Is This | See This Procedure |
|---|---------|---|
| Will the colors in your final output be the same as the colors in your input files? | Yes | Preserving Spot Colors During Refine |
| | No | Reducing All Spot Colors During Refine Reducing Individual Spot Colors During Refine |

| If the Answer to This Question | Is This | See This Procedure |
|---|---------|---|
| When you generate loose page output does the proofer support the spot colors in the pages? | Yes | Preserving Spot Colors in Loose Page Output |
| | No | Reducing All Spot Colors in Loose Page Output Reducing Individual Spot Colors in Loose Page Output |
| When you generate imposition output does the proofer support the spot colors in the signatures? | Yes | Preserving Spot Colors in Imposition Output |
| | No | Reducing All Spot Colors in Imposition Output Reducing Individual Spot Colors in Imposition Output |
| Do the signatures have spot colors that you do not want in the final output? | Yes | Preserving Spot Colors in Final Output |
| | No | Reducing All Spot Colors in Final Output Reducing Individual Spot Colors in Final Output |

About Color Combiner

Color Combiner is a Prinergy feature that lets you simulate the hue of spot colors in output—including traps, knockouts, and overprints, using only the standard four process colors: cyan, magenta, yellow, and black. Color Combiner works equally well on all types of jobs—composite, separated, vector, or copydot.

When used with the Kodak Trendsetter Spectrum digital halftone proofer, Color Combiner lets you simulate the hue and halftone dot structure of spot colors— for example to help you predict moiré in duotones. The Trendsetter Spectrum proofer provides a proof using the same number of donors as a regular four-color job.

Because Color Combiner works with copydot data as well as CT/vector data, you may proof spot color copydot work using standard process colors and be assured the proof accurately reflects the printed piece.

How does Color Combiner work?

Color Combiner uses combinations of CMYK to simulate spot colors in a job. Each spot color (for example, Bright Red #10), must have a single combination of CMYK associated with it—for example, C = 2, M = 85, Y = 96, and K = 0. You can specify the color association using the Color Editor.

When you enable Color Combiner, it uses the CMYK combinations associated with spot color names. If Color Combiner cannot find a CMYK entry in the color database for a spot color, it outputs the spot color in an easily identifiable bright green color. The bright green color warns you that the CMYK combination for the spot color is not in the color database. A yellow warning triangle also appears beside the spot color in the Color Editor dialog box.

Enabling Color Combiner

You can enable Color Combiner in any one of the following process templates:

- Loose page output
- Imposition output
- Final output

To enable Color Combiner in these process templates, in the **Render** section, select the **Do Separations** check box and select the **Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box.

Finding the right color combination

Each CMYK proofing device requires a slightly different combination of CMYK to simulate a particular spot color because the individual colorants used for CMYK differ for each proofer. To get a quicker match to spot colors within the gamut of the proofer, use an ICC profile for the proofer. To do this, measure the L*a*b* absolute color value of the spot color that you want to match. Then, use stand-alone software such as Kodak Profile Wizard, X-Rite ColorShop or Praxisoft VectorPro to achieve the closest CMYK combination for the L*a*b* color space.

Limitations of Color Combiner

Color Combiner has the following limitations:

- It can exactly simulate only spot colors that are within the color gamut of the proofer. For example, it cannot arbitrarily produce a brighter red spot color.
- It can produce only a best approximation of colors that are outside the color gamut of the proofer.
- For best quality, use Color Combiner for AM spot color screens up to and including 175 lpi on the Trendsetter Spectrum proofer.
- If there are many overprints in the same area, the donor pigment may run out. For example, if a solid CMYK 10-60-80-10 spot color simulation overprints a solid CMYK 10-80-10-5 spot, there will be an area where magenta is maximized at 100, instead of 140. This is the tradeoff for using only one set of media.
- For best results, use Color Combiner only with Staccato-qualified halftone proofing media.

When not to use Color Combiner

There are a few instances where you should not use Color Combiner. In that case, clear the **Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box.

For example, do not use Color Combiner if all of the following conditions are true:

- You are outputting to a 1-bit screened format and sending it to a device that is incapable of imaging the Staccato dots that Color Combiner uses in this situation.
- Input files are composite.
- All spot colors are set to **Opaque** in the color database, or a spot color is not in the color database and the default value is **Opaque**.

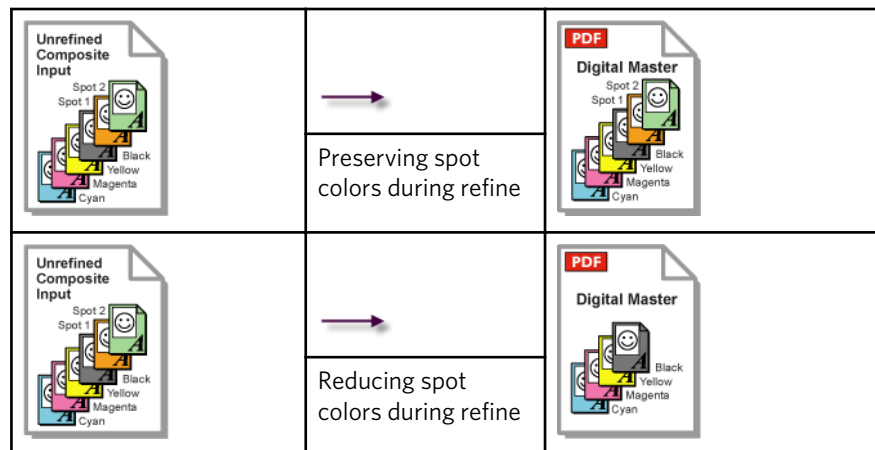
In this case, the Adobe renderer can extract color recipes from the refined PDF file.

Note: If input files are separated, or if spot colors are not set to **Opaque**, the Color Combiner is used even if the **Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box is cleared.

About reducing and preserving spot colors during refine

When you refine input files or pages you can reduce spot colors by converting them to process color or mapping them to other spot colors.

If you preserve or reduce spot colors during refine, it permanently affects the resulting PDF, which is often called the digital master. If you reduce spot colors, they are no longer present when you generate proofs or final output. The original input files remain unchanged.



When to preserve or reduce spot colors during refine

Preserve a spot color during refine in these situations:

- **The spot color will be used in the final output.** For example, if a customer expects the logo on marketing materials to be displayed in a specific PANTONE color.
- **You use a late-binding workflow.** Some printers prefer to preserve color information as long as possible. This means that they delay color conversion and color reduction until the proofing or final

output stages. This is called a late-binding workflow, because the job files are not tied to a specific output device until necessary.



CAUTION: It is better to reduce spot colors during refine—not during proofing and final output—because it ensures consistency between proofs and final output and because color conversion is better in the refine process than in the proofing and final output processes.

Reduce a spot color during refine if the spot color will not be used in final output—for example if a customer mistakenly added a spot color to the files.

How to preserve spot colors during refine

To preserve all spot colors during refine, change a setting in the **Spot Color Handling** section of the refine process template.

If you preserve spot colors, you also need to manage the definitions of the spot colors:

- Make sure the spot colors in the files are defined in the Prinergy color database. You can do this while refining or separately. For instructions on adding colors independent of any process, see *Managing Color Definitions*.
- Make sure the spot colors in the files have the same name that the color has in Prinergy. If a customer uses a different spelling or name for a color, you can point the customer's color to the Prinergy color during the refine process.

How to reduce spot colors during refine

You can reduce spot colors during two types of refine processes:

- By refining the input files. If you know in advance that the input files have unnecessary spot colors, you can eliminate them immediately when you refine the input files.
- By refining the pages. If you do not know what the files contain, you run two refine processes. This is the most common situation. You refine the input files without handling color in any way. After looking at the resulting pages, you then refine the pages and handle any color issues in them. Typically, you create a refine process template specifically for this purpose with a name such as `2ndRefine-MapColors`.

You can reduce spot colors during refine in two ways:

| To Reduce | Use This Method | Consider This |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|
| All spot colors during refine | Change a setting in the refine process template (in the Spot Color Handling section). | <p>This is possible during any refine whether you are refining input files or pages.</p> <p>With this method, you have to convert all spot colors to process color. You cannot omit or map spot colors.</p> <p>This method works only with composite file, not with separated files.</p> |
| Individual spot colors during refine | Use the Color Mapping dialog box when running the refine process. | <p>This is possible only when refining pages not when refining input files.</p> <p>With this method, you have can convert, omit, or map spot colors.</p> <p>If the file is separated, you cannot convert spot colors to process color. You can map a spot color to another spot color, but only using existing separations.</p> <p>If you use the Color Mapping dialog box and edit the process template during the same refine process, the most recently applied settings take precedence.</p> |

See also:

[Managing color definitions](#) on page 790

[Aliasing spot colors to different names](#) on page 815

[Preserving spot colors during refine](#) on page 816

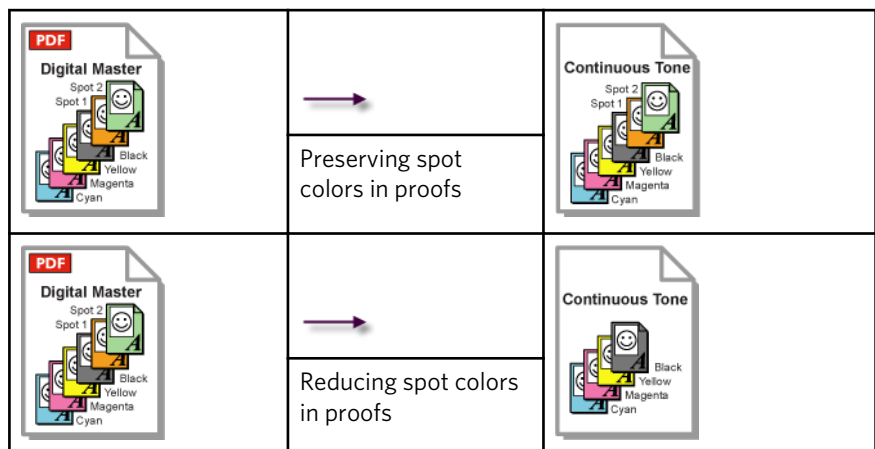
[Reducing all spot colors during refine](#) on page 816

[Reducing individual spot colors during refine](#) on page 817

About reducing and preserving spot colors in proofs

When you generate proofs, you can reduce spot colors by converting them to process color, mapping them to other spot colors, or omitting them entirely.

When you preserve or reduce spot colors in a proof, the changes that you make affect only the proof. The PDF digital master remains unchanged.



If you convert spot colors to process color, the Color Combiner can simulate the hue of spot colors in a proof—including traps, knockouts, and overprints—using the standard four process colors.

When to preserve or reduce spot colors in a proof

Preserve spot colors in proofs if you want to see the spot colors in the proof and the printer supports the spot colors.

Reduce spot colors in proofs in these situations:

- **The proofer supports only process color.** Most proofers handle only process color. When generating a proof on these proofers, convert all spot colors to process color.
- **The spot color requires special handling.** Certain spot colors can be challenging to proof. Here are a few special spot colors and how to handle them:

| With This Spot Color | Handle It This Way |
|---|---|
| Metallic and other colors that are hard to convert to process color | Omit the spot color or output it separately. For example, if the proofer uses donor sheets, omit the spot color when you generate donors for the process colors and then generate the metallic spot color as a separate donor sheet. |
| Varnish | Output the spot color separately as an overlay. This is useful because varnish spot colors usually have an arbitrary color value, such as 2 percent magenta, that makes the varnish visible in the job files. If you leave the spot color in the proof, it may cover objects that you want to check. If you convert the spot color to process color, its color value changes the value of the process color. |
| Die line | Omit the die spot color from the proof. |
| White background on clear plastic | Omit the white spot color or output it separately. For example, with a proofer that uses donor sheets, use a white or yellow donor to make a separate separation that is not laminated together with the process colors. This is useful because the white spot color usually has an arbitrary color value, such as 10 percent magenta, that makes the spot color visible in the job files. If you leave the spot color in the proof, it may cover objects that you want to check. If you convert the spot color to process color, its color value changes the value of the process color. |

- **Spot colors were introduced in marks.** If the marks (for example, the color bar) from the imposition plan contain spot colors that you do not want in the proof, do not output the spot colors.
- **You use a late-binding workflow.** Some printers prefer to preserve color information as long as possible. This means that they delay color conversion and color reduction until the proofing or final output stages. This is called a late-binding workflow because the job files are not tied to a specific output device until necessary.

Caution: It is better to reduce spot colors during refine—not during proofing and final output—because it ensures consistency between

proofs and final output and because color conversion is better in the refine process than in the proofing and final output processes.

How to preserve or reduce spot colors in proofs

To preserve all spot colors in proofs, change a setting in the process template. See Preserving Spot Colors in Loose Page Output and Preserving Spot Colors in Imposition Output.

To reduce spot colors in loose page output choose one of these two methods:

| To Reduce | Use This Method | Consider This |
|---|--|---|
| All spot colors in loose page output | Change a setting in the loose page output process template. See Reducing All Spot Colors in Loose Page Output. | With this method, you have to convert all spot colors to process color. You cannot omit or map spot colors. |
| Individual spot colors in loose page output | Use the Color Output dialog box when you start the proof process. See Reducing Individual Spot Colors in Loose Page Output. | With this method, you can convert or omit spot colors. This method works only with raster files, not with vector files. If you use the Color Output dialog box and edit the process template during the same proof process, the most recently applied settings take precedence. |

To reduce spot colors in imposition output choose one of these two methods:

| To Reduce | Use This Method | Consider This |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|
| All spot colors in imposition output | Change a setting in the Imposition Output process template. See Reducing All Spot Colors in Imposition Output. | With this method, you have to convert spot colors to process color. You cannot omit or map spot colors. |

| To Reduce | Use This Method | Consider This |
|---|--|---|
| Individual spot colors in imposition output | Use the Color Separations dialog box before you generate the proof. See Reducing Individual Spot Colors in Imposition Output. | With this method, you can convert, omit, or map spot colors. When you use this method, it affects all subsequent proofs, final output, and exports. The Color Separations dialog box does not work with PDF files that are composite. Also, with vector files, you can do spot-to-spot mapping, but you cannot omit spot colors or convert them to process color. If you use the Color Separations dialog box and edit the process template during the same proof process, the most recently applied settings take precedence. |

See also:

[Preserving spot colors in loose page output](#) on page 818

[Reducing all spot colors in loose page output](#) on page 818

[Reducing individual spot colors in loose page output](#) on page 819

[Preserving spot colors in imposition output](#) on page 821

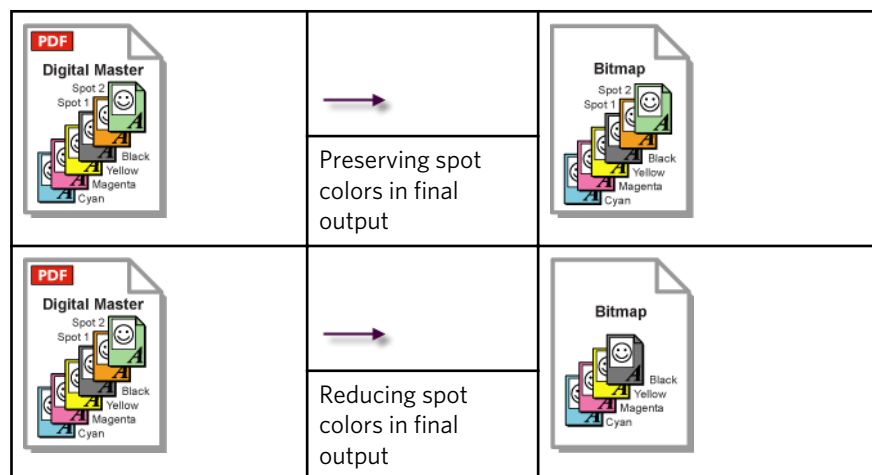
[Reducing all spot colors in imposition output](#) on page 821

[Reducing individual spot colors in imposition output](#) on page 822

About reducing and preserving spot colors in final output

When you generate final output, you can reduce spot colors by converting them to process color, by mapping them to other spot colors, or by omitting them entirely.

When you preserve or reduce spot colors in final output, the changes that you make affect only the output. The PDF digital master remains unchanged.



If you convert spot colors to process color, the Color Combiner can simulate the hue of spot colors in a proof-including traps, knockouts, and overprints—using the standard four process colors. See About Color Combiner.

When to preserve or reduce spot colors in final output

Preserve spot colors in final output if the job files contain only the spot colors that you want in the final output.

Reduce spot colors in final output in these situations:

- **Spot colors were introduced in marks.** If the marks (for example, the color bar) from the imposition plan contain spot colors that you do not want in the proof, do not output the spot colors.
- **The output device changed.** If the output device is different from the one that you anticipated during refine, you may need to reduce spot colors during final output.
- **You use a late-binding workflow.** Some printers prefer to preserve color information as long as possible. This means that they delay color conversion and color reduction until the proofing or final output stages. This is called a late-binding workflow because the job files are not tied to a specific output device until necessary.



CAUTION: It is better to reduce spot colors during refine-not proofing and final output-because it ensures consistency between proofs and final output and because color conversion is better in the refine process than the proofing and final output processes. For example, color conversion during final output may fail or may generate blank areas. Also, overprints and knockouts may be incorrect because the colors are converted by Adobe Extreme which paints over existing raster in an opaque manner.

How to preserve or reduce spot colors in final output

To preserve all spot colors in final output, change a setting in the process template. See Preserving Spot Colors in Final Output.

To reduce spot colors, choose one of these two methods:

| To Reduce | Use This Method | Consider This |
|---------------------------------|---|---|
| All spot colors in final output | Change a setting in the final output proof process template. See Reducing All Spot Colors in Final Output. | With this method, you have to convert all spot colors to process color. You cannot omit or map spot colors. |

| To Reduce | Use This Method | Consider This |
|--|---|--|
| Individual spot colors in final output | Use the Color Separations dialog box before you generate the proof. See Reducing Individual Spot Colors in Final Output. | With this method, you can convert, omit, or map spot colors. When you use this method, it affects all subsequent proofs, final output, and exports. The Color Separations dialog box does not work with composite PDF files. If you use the Color Separations dialog box and edit the process template during the same proof process, the most recently applied settings take precedence. |

See also:

[About Color Combiner](#) on page [805](#)

[Preserving spot colors in final output](#) on page [823](#)

[Reducing all spot colors in final output](#) on page [824](#)

[Reducing individual spot colors in final output](#) on page [825](#)

Reducing spot colors (workflow)

Requirements: Start with a job that already has input files.

This procedure summarizes how and when you can reduce spot colors in a job.

1. (Optional) If you know the definitions of the spot colors, add the colors to the color database, including color names that you want to alias other colors to.
Alternatively, you can add colors later, when you refine.
2. Refine the input files, preserving the spot colors.
3. Review the spot colors in the pages.
4. Refine the pages to handle spot colors:
 - a. If the pages contain spot colors that will not be plated, reduce all spot colors during a refine of the pages, or reduce specific spot colors during a refine of the pages.
 - b. If a spot color is in the Prinergy color database under a different name, add an alias for the color.
5. Generate loose page output:
 - If the proofer supports all of the spot colors, preserve the spot colors in the final output.
 - If the proofer does not support all of the spot colors, reduce all spot colors in the proof, or reduce specific spot colors in the proof.
6. Impose the job as required.

7. Generate imposition output:
 - If the proofer supports all of the spot colors, preserve the spot colors in the proof.
 - If the proofer does not support all of the spot colors, reduce all spot colors in the proof, or reduce specific spot colors in the proof.
8. General final output.
 - a. If the proofer supports all of the spot colors, preserve the spot colors in the final output.
 - b. If you want to reduce spot colors, such as spot colors that were introduced when you imported marks, reduce all spot colors in the final output, or reduce specific spot colors in the final output.

Aliasing spot colors to different names

Use this procedure when a spot color in a file is spelled or named differently from a spot color in Prinergy.

1. Select the input files or pages with the spot colors that you want to affect.
2. Start a refine process on the selected files by dragging the files to the refine process template.
3. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Color Mapping**. This opens the Color Mapping dialog box.
4. Click **Add Alias**.
5. Type a name for the alias color in the **Enter a new color alias** box, and then click **OK**.

Prinergy searches for the name in the color libraries selected in the refine process template.
6. If Prinergy does not find the color and a warning message appears, define the color. Then, click **Add Color** and follow the procedure in Adding or Changing Colors.

You can leave the color undefined by clicking **Continue**. But the PDF digital master will not be complete, and you will not be able to convert to process downstream—for example, during proofing.
7. In the **Page Color** column, select the name of the spot color that is spelled incorrectly.
8. In the **Output Selected as** list, select the alias color name you added.
9. Click **OK**.

The refine process starts.

Preserving spot colors during refine

1. Select the input files.
2. Start a refine process on the selected files by dragging the files to the refine process template.
3. Preserve all spot colors by clearing an option in the process template:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - b. Expand the **Spot Color Handling** section.
 - c. In the **Map Spot Colors** area, clear the **Enable Spot Color Mapping** check box.
 - d. Close the process template.
4. Click **OK** to close the Start Process dialog box.

The refine process occurs. Refined pages are generated.

Tip: You can modify and save the process template before you start. Start the process using the modified process template and do not click **Edit Process Template** in the Start Process dialog box.

Reducing all spot colors during refine

1. Select the input files or pages with the spot colors that you want to affect.
2. Start a refine process on the selected files by dragging the files and dropping them on the refine process template.
3. Reduce all spot colors by selecting two options in the process template:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - b. Select and expand the **Spot Color Handling** section.
 - c. In the **Map Spot Colors** area, select the **Enable Spot Color Mapping** check box and select the **Map All Spot Colors to Process** check box.
4. Click **OK** to close the Start Process dialog box.

The refine process occurs. Refined pages are generated.

Tip:

- This procedure works only with composite files, not with separated files.
- You can also handle spot colors during the initial refine of the input files. You start by select the input files instead of pages.
- You can modify and save the process template before you start. Start the process using the modified process template, and do not click **Edit Process Template** in the Start Process dialog box.

Reducing individual spot colors during refine

1. Select the input files or pages with the spot colors that you want to affect.
2. Start a refine process on the selected files by dragging the files to the refine process template.
3. Enable some but not all spot-color reduction by setting two options in the process template:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - b. Select and expand the **Spot Color Handling** section.
 - c. In the **Map Spot Colors** area, select the **Enable Spot Color Mapping** check box and clear the **Map All Spot Colors to Process** check box.
 - d. Close the process template.
4. Reduce individual spot colors using the Color Mapping dialog box:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Color Mapping**.
The Color Mapping dialog box appears.
 - b. If you want to add or change a color in the **Page Color** column, see Adding or Changing Colors.
 - c. Select the spot color that you want to reduce.
 - d. In the **Output Selected as** list, indicate how to reduce the spot color:

| To Do This | Do This in the Output Selected As List |
|--|--|
| Convert a spot color to process color | Select a process color. |
| Map a spot color to another spot color | Select another spot color. |

- e. Click **OK**.
5. Click **OK** to close the Start Process dialog box.
The refine process occurs applying the settings from both the refine process template and the Color Mappings dialog box. Refined pages are generated.

Tip:

- If the file is separated, you cannot convert spot colors to process color. You can map a spot color to another spot color, but only using existing separations.
- You can also handle spot colors during the initial refine of the input files. You start by select the input files instead of pages.
- You can modify and save the process template before you start. Start the process using the modified process template, and do not click **Edit Process Template** in the Start Process dialog box.

- The Color Mapping dialog box has no effect unless **Enable Spot Color Mapping** is selected in the process template.
- If you edit the process template from the Start Process dialog box and use the Color Mapping dialog box, the most recently applied settings take precedence.

Preserving spot colors in loose page output

Use this procedure if your proofer supports the spot colors in the pages.

1. Select the pages that you want to proof.
2. Start a loose page output process on the selected files by dragging the pages and dropping them on the loose page output process template.
3. Preserve spot colors by selecting a specific option in the process template:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - b. Expand the **Render** section.
 - c. In the **Spot Color Handling** list, select **Output Separately**.

The options available in the **Spot Color Handling** list depend on the output type.
 - d. Close the process template.
4. Click **OK** to close the Start Process dialog box.

The proof process occurs, applying the settings of both the process template and the Color Output dialog box. The proof is generated.

Tip: You can modify and save the process template before you start. Start the process using the modified process template, and do not click **Edit Process Template** in the Start Process dialog box.

Reducing all spot colors in loose page output

Use this procedure if your proofer does not support spot colors.



CAUTION: If the spot colors will never be plated, reduce them during refine whenever possible. Color conversion is more predictable during refine than during other processes.

1. Select the pages that you want to proof.
2. Start a loose page output process on the selected files by dragging the pages to the loose page output process template.
3. Reduce spot colors by selecting specific options in the process template:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - b. Expand the **Render** section.

c. Determine how you want to reduce the spot colors:

| To | Do This |
|--|---|
| Convert all spot colors to process color | <p>a. In the Spot Color Handling list, select Convert to Process.</p> <p>b. Select the Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots check box.</p> |
| Omit all spot colors from the proof | In the Spot Color Handling list, select Don't Output . |

The options available in the **Spot Color Handling** list depend on the output type.

d. Close the process template.

4. Click **OK** to close the Start Process dialog box.

The proof process occurs, applying the settings of both the loose page output process template and the Color Output dialog box. The proof is generated.

Tip:

- You can modify and save the process template before you start. Start the process using the modified process template, and do not click **Edit Process Template** in the Start Process dialog box.
- You can also use this procedure to omit a process color from a proof. Instead of selecting a spot color in the Color Output dialog box, select a process color and set the **Output Selected as** list to **Do Not Output**.
- To quickly set several colors to the same setting in the Color Output dialog box, select them all and then select an option in the **Output Selected as** list.
- If you edit the process template from the Start Process dialog box and use the Color Output dialog box, the most recently applied settings take precedence.

Reducing individual spot colors in loose page output

Use this procedure for spot colors that are difficult to proof.



CAUTION: If the spot colors will never be plated, reduce them during refine whenever possible. Color conversion is more predictable during refine than during other processes.

1. Select the pages that you want to proof.
2. Start a loose page output process on the selected files by dragging the pages to the loose page output process template.
3. Preserve most spot colors by setting options in the process template:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - b. Expand the **Render** section.

- c. In the **Spot Color Handling** list, select **Output Separately**.
The options available in the **Spot Color Handling** list depend on the output type.
 - d. Select the **Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box, if it is available.
 - e. Close the process template.
4. If you want to reduce individual spot colors, use the Color Output dialog box:
- a. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Color Mapping**.
The Color Output dialog box appears.
 - b. If you want to add or change a color in the **Page Color** column, see Adding or Changing Colors.
 - c. Select the spot color that you want to affect and then set the **Output Selected as** list:

| To | Do This in the Color Output Dialog Box |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Convert a spot color to process color | In the Output Selected as list, select Convert to Process . |
| Omit a spot color from the proof | In the Output Selected as list, select Do Not Output . |

- d. If necessary, repeat steps b and c for other spot colors that you want to reduce.
 - e. Click **OK**.
5. Click **OK** to close the Start Process dialog box.

The proof process occurs, applying the settings of both the loose page output process template and the Color Output dialog box. The proof is generated.

Tip:

- This procedure works only with raster files, not with vector files.
- You can modify and save the process template before you start. Start the process using the modified process template, and do not click **Edit Process Template** in the Start Process dialog box.
- You can also use this procedure to omit a process color from a proof. Instead of selecting a spot color in the Color Output dialog box, select a process color and set the **Output Selected as** list to **Do Not Output**.
- To quickly set several colors to the same setting in the Color Output dialog box, select them all and then select an option in the **Output Selected as** list.
- If you edit the process template from the Start Process dialog box and use the Color Output dialog box, the most recently applied settings take precedence.

Preserving spot colors in imposition output

1. Switch to the **Signatures** view, and select the surfaces or signatures that you want to proof.
2. Start an imposition output process on the selected surfaces or signatures by dragging the surfaces or signatures to the imposition output process template.
3. Preserve spot colors by setting a specific option in the process template:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - b. Expand the **Render** section.
 - c. In the **Output Separation Handling** list, select **Output all separately**.
 - d. Close the process template.
4. Click **OK** to close the Start Process dialog box.
The proof process occurs. The proof is generated.

Tip:

- You can also use the Color Separations dialog box to print separations. You select the spot color, and set the **Output Selected As** to **Separately**.
- You can modify and save the process template before you start. Start the process using the modified process template, and do not click **Edit Process Template** in the Start Process dialog box.

Reducing all spot colors in imposition output

Use this procedure to reduce spot colors in impositions proofs—for example, when pages have spot colors that will be plated but are difficult to proof.



CAUTION: If the spot colors will never be plated, reduce them during refine whenever possible. Color conversion is more predictable during refine than during other processes.

1. Switch to the **Signatures** view, and select the surfaces or signatures that you want to proof.
2. Start an imposition output process on the selected surfaces or signatures by dragging the surfaces or signatures to the imposition output process template.
3. Reduce all spot color by selecting two options in the process template:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - b. Expand the **Render** section.
 - c. In the **Output Separation Handling** list, select **Convert Separations to Process**.

- d. Select the **Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box.
 - e. Close the process template.
4. Click **OK** to close the Start Process dialog box.
The proof process occurs. The proof is generated.

Tip:

- You can modify and save the process template before you start. Start the process using the modified process template, and do not click **Edit Process Template** in the Start Process dialog box.
- If you used the Color Separations dialog box to reduce or map spot colors at any time before generating final output, the settings in that dialog box will apply to the final output.

Reducing individual spot colors in imposition output

Use this procedure to reduce spot colors in impositions proofs—for example, when pages have spot colors that will be plated but are difficult to proof.



CAUTION: If the spot colors will never be plated, reduce them during refine whenever possible. Color conversion is more predictable during refine than during other processes.

1. Switch to the **Signatures** view, and select the surfaces or signatures that you want to proof.
2. Reduce individual spot colors using the Color Separations dialog box:
 - a. From the **Edit** menu, select **Color Separations**.
The Color Separations dialog box appears.
 - b. Select the spot color, and then select an option in the **Output Selected As** list:

| To | Select This |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Convert a spot color to process color | Either Convert to Process or a process color |
| Map a spot color to another color | A spot or process color (If the color doesn't already exist, first add a color separation.) |
| Preserve a spot color | Separately (The separation is output separately only if the Do Separations check box is selected in the Render section of the process template.) |
| Omit a color from the proof | Do Not Output |

- c. Click **OK**.

3. Start an imposition output process on the selected surfaces or signatures by dragging the surfaces or signatures to the imposition output process template.
4. Preserve any other spot colors by setting an option in the process template:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - b. Expand the **Render** section.
 - c. In the **Output Separation Handling** list, select **Output all separately**.
 - d. Close the process template.
5. Click **OK** to close the Start Process dialog box.

The proof process occurs, applying the settings of both the Imposition Output process template and the Color Separations dialog box. The proof is generated.

Tip:

- The Color Separations dialog box does not work with PDF files that are composite. Also, with vector files, you can do spot-to-spot mapping, but you cannot omit spot colors or convert them to process color.
- Changes made in the Color Separations dialog box affect all future imposition output and final output.
- You can also use the Color Separations dialog box to print separations. Select the spot color, and select **Separately** in the **Output Selected As** list.
- You can modify and save the process template before you start. Start the process using the modified process template, and do not click **Edit Process Template** in the Start Process dialog box.

Preserving spot colors in final output

1. Switch to the **Signatures** view, and select the surfaces or signatures that you want to use for final output.
2. Start a final output process on the selected surfaces or signatures by dragging the surfaces or signatures to the imposition output process template.
3. Preserve spot colors by clearing an option in the process template:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - b. Expand either the **Render** section or the **ColorConvert** section.
 - c. In the **Color Libraries** area, clear the **Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box.
 - d. Close the process template.
4. Click **OK** to close the Start Process dialog box.

The final output process occurs. The bitmaps are generated.

Tip:

- You can modify and save the process template before you start. Start the process using the modified process template, and do not click **Edit Process Template** in the Start Process dialog box.
- If you used the Color Separations dialog box to reduce or map spot colors at any time before generating final output, the settings in that dialog box will apply to the final output.

Reducing all spot colors in final output



CAUTION: Reduce spot colors during refine whenever possible. Color conversion is more predictable during refine than during other processes.

1. Switch to the **Signatures** view, and select the surfaces or signatures that you want to use for final output.
2. Start a final output process on the selected surfaces or signatures by dragging the surfaces or signatures to the imposition output process template.
3. Reduce all spot colors by selecting an option in the process template:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - b. Expand either the **Render** section or the **ColorConvert** section.
 - c. In the **Color Libraries** area, select the **Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box.
 - d. Close the process template.
4. Click **OK** to close the Start Process dialog box.
The final output process occurs. The bitmaps are generated.

Tip:

- You can modify and save the process template before you start. Start the process using the modified process template, and do not click **Edit Process Template** in the Start Process dialog box.
- If you used the Color Separations dialog box to reduce or map spot colors at any time before generating final output, the settings in that dialog box will apply to the final output.

Reducing individual spot colors in final output



CAUTION: Reduce spot colors during refine whenever possible. Color conversion is more predictable during refine than during other processes.

1. Switch to the **Signatures** view, and select the surfaces or signatures that you want to use for final output.
2. Reduce individual spot colors from the final output using the Color Separations dialog box:

- a. From the **Edit** menu, select **Color Separations**.

The Color Separations dialog box appears.

- b. Select the spot color and then select an option in the **Output Selected As** list:

| To Do This | Select This |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Convert a spot color to process color | Either Convert to Process or a process color |
| Map a spot color to another color | A spot or process color (If the color doesn't already exist, first add a color separation.) |
| Preserve a color | Separately (The separation is output separately only if the Do Separations check box is selected in the Render section of the process template.) |
| Omit the color from final output | Do Not Output |

- c. Click **OK**.
3. Start a final output process on the selected surfaces or signatures by dragging the surfaces or signatures to the imposition output process template.
4. Preserve any other spot colors by clearing an option in the process template:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - b. Expand either the **Render** section or the **ColorConvert** section.
 - c. In the **Color Libraries** area, clear the **Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots** check box.
 - d. Close the process template.
5. Click **OK** to close the Start Process dialog box.

The final output process occurs, applying the settings of both the final output proof process template and the Color Separations dialog box. The bitmaps are generated.

Tip:

- The Color Separations dialog box does not work with PDF files that are composite.
- You can modify and save the process template before you start. Start the process using the modified process template, and do not click **Edit Process Template** in the Start Process dialog box.
- Changes made in the Color Separations dialog box affect all future imposition output and final output.

Note: Impositions usually have marks with colors: CMYK colors, as well as generic spots. The generic spots usually follow a specific naming convention (example, "Spot1", "Spot2", and so on). When you import an imposition, all the imposition colors are set to **Do not output** to avoid unnecessary and wasted plates. When you assign a page to an imposition, Prinergy automatically turns on the necessary colors in the imposition as well. This enables the imposition marks to reflect the colors on the pages. Prinergy also automatically maps the imposition mark spot colors to the page spot colors. For example, it will automatically map imposition mark "Spot1" to page color "PANTONE Reflex Blue C". If necessary, you can override this the automatic mapping by using the **Separations** view of Workshop.

Color Mappings dialog box

Note: The Color Mappings dialog box is a color mapping/color renaming tool. It is not a color removal or extractor tool. This tool is only available for the first refine; the Process Template Editor does not have any knowledge of what colors are in the file. Use this tool to display the available colors to be mapped. You can add more colors from the color database in order to map them on the first refine. When you remove a specified color, this color is not actually removed. Instead, removal means that you don't wish to map the specified color to anything. Objects with this color are still painted.

Page Color

Lists all the colors found in the selected pages.

When a spot color is found in the selected color libraries, a sample color swatch appears to the left of the color name. If the spot color is an exception, it is named Otherwise and a warning icon (⚠) appears to the left of the color name.

After your first refine, you can redefine the Otherwise entries as spot colors in your color database, or redefine them as Convert to Process. After you perform the second refine, all the previous exceptions noted as Otherwise should be eliminated.

Output

Lists the color output treatment you have specified for each color in the **Page Color** list.

Output Selected as

Specifies how you want Prinergy to output each color. After you select one or more colors in the **Page Color** column, the list displays the following options:

- **Separately**

Outputs the spot color. For final output, Prinergy outputs the spot color as a separation. For imposition output, Prinergy outputs the spot color as a separation if **Output all Separations** is selected in the **Output Separation Handling** box.

- **Convert to Process**

Converts a spot color to process color using the color recipe from the color database.

- **All the colors in the PDF pages**

Outputs the spot color with the selected color.

The last two options are available only for spot colors in composite PDF pages.

Add Page Color

Displays the Add Page Color dialog box where you can add a new color mapping to your color database.

Remove Page Color

Select this button to remove a color mapping from your color database.

Note: The Remove Page Color button does not remove or extract colors. It only removes colors from the color database that are used to map colors on the first refine.

Print Order

Displays the Print Order dialog box where you can specify the lay down order for trapping colors.

Add Alias

Displays the Add Alias dialog box where you can create an alias color name which displays in the **Result** column. You can use the alias color name for color mapping.

When you type an alias color name into the Add Alias dialog box and click **OK**, Prinergy searches the color database to see if the color name exists. When the color name exists in the color database, the alias color name appears in the Result column. When the color name doesn't exist in the color database, you

can choose whether to create an alias color name without a color definition or create an alias color name with a color definition and add it to the job.

Color Information

Displays the color definition information for the color you selected in the **Page Color** column.

Add

Select this button to add a copy of the color definition.

This button is available only when you select an undefined color.

Note: Factory spot colors cannot be edited.

Edit

Select this button to edit the color definition.

This button appears when you select a color defined in the **Job** tab.

Note: Factory spot colors cannot be edited.

Edit Copy

Select to edit a copy of the color definition. This button creates a copy of a global color in the **Job** tab of the color library.

This button appears when you select a color defined in the **Global** tab.

Note: Factory spot colors cannot be edited.

Color Output dialog box

Page Color

Lists all the colors found in the selected pages.

When a spot color is found in the selected color libraries, a sample color swatch appears to the left of the color name. If the spot color is an exception, it is named Otherwise and a warning icon (⚠) appears to the left of the color name.

After your first refine, you can redefine the Otherwise entries as spot colors in your color database, or redefine them as Convert to Process. After you perform the second refine, all the previous exceptions noted as Otherwise should be eliminated.

Output

Lists the color output treatment you have specified for each color in the **Page Color** list.

Output

This column specifies how you want Prinergy to output each color. After you select one or more colors in the **Page Color** column, the list displays the following options:

- **Output**-Outputs the color as specified.
- **Do Not Output**-Suppresses output of the color.
- **Convert to Process**-Converts a spot color to process color on output using the color recipe found in the selected color libraries. This option is available only for spot colors in composite PDF pages.

Color Information

Displays the color definition information for the color you selected in the **Page Color** column.

Add

Select this button to add a copy of the color definition.

This button is available only when you select an undefined color.

Note: Factory spot colors cannot be edited.

Edit

Select this button to edit the color definition.

This button appears when you select a color defined in the **Job** tab.

Note: Factory spot colors cannot be edited.

Edit Copy

Select to edit a copy of the color definition. This button creates a copy of a global color in the **Job** tab of the color library.

This button appears when you select a color defined in the **Global** tab.

Note: Factory spot colors cannot be edited.

About Spotless Extended Color Management

Spotless Extended Color Management expands the functionality of Prinergy beyond CMYK to allow extended process color sets to enhance quality and increase the number of spot colors that can be replaced with process colors.

In Prinergy, spot color recipes are replaced with process color recipes (also known as color builds) for a specific ink set. On press, spot color inks are replaced with process color inks, giving spot color performance on a process color budget.

For example, an extended process color set could consist of six process colors: cyan, magenta, yellow, black, orange, and green (CMYKOG). For this process color set, the recipes for all the colors are comprised of combinations of CMYKOG. You store the color recipes in the Color Editor in Prinergy Workshop and use them to convert spot colors to process color.

For more information, see the Spotless Extended Color Management documentation.

Die line and varnishes

About die line and varnish colors

A die is a series of knives used to cut shapes from a press sheet, and a die line is a line that represents the position of the various knives and is used to guide the die in cutting a press sheet. Die lines are usually created using a Computer Assisted Design (CAD) program and included in the original input files added to Prinergy.

A varnish or overprint coating is created to protect or improve the visual appeal of a printed page, and is used to protect the print, for decoration, adhesion, or for resistance to oil or moisture.

Die lines and varnishes need specific opacity attributes to ensure the file prints correctly. For example, die lines cannot be trapped; they need to be set to knockout on composite proofs and as an overprint ink when outputting separations. Varnishes shouldn't display on composite proofs.

Note: The die line or varnish color must have exactly the same name in Prinergy as it has in the input file. For example, if the native application file includes the colors Die and Varn, the color database in Prinergy must include a color Die or Varn.

If a die line or varnish color is not defined in the color database, Prinergy treats it as a separate spot color and the color may print with incorrect attributes.

Setting die line and varnish colors

1. (Optional) Add a color for the die line or varnish to the **Global** tab of the Color Editor with a name such as Die or Varn.
 - a. Set the **Opacity** of a die line color to **die line**.
 - b. Set the **Opacity** of a varnish color to **Transparent**.

This step is optional because you can also add the color while you refine in Step 4.

2. Refine the pages where you want to use the die line or varnish by starting a refine process template on the pages.
3. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Color Mapping**.
4. In the Color Mappings dialog box, perform one of the following actions:

| If the Die or Varn Color | Do This |
|--------------------------|--|
| Is listed as a color | Use the color as a die line or varnish. |
| Is not listed as a color | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Add a color for the die line or varnish to the Global tab of the Color Editor with a name such as Die or Varn. b. Set the Opacity of a die line color to die line. c. Set the Opacity of a varnish color to Transparent. |

Using ColorFlow software

The ColorFlow 1.2 software is integrated with Prinergy.

The ColorFlow software delivers color relationship management that unifies color control elements—such as ICC profiles, DeviceLink profiles, and calibration curves—and manages the relationships between color control elements and device print conditions. Specifically, ColorFlow simplifies the process of setting up color and ensuring that Prinergy jobs are processed using the correct color settings.

Getting started with ColorFlow

| Complete these steps, in this order | Notes |
|--|---|
| Install the ColorFlow software on client computers. | <p>As part of Prinergy, the ColorFlow Workflow Edition software and colorstore database are automatically installed on the Prinergy primary server. The ColorFlow server runs as a process on the Prinergy primary server.</p> <p>You must install the ColorFlow software on one or more client computers that connect to a Prinergy server.</p> <p>Note: Only one user can modify the colorstore database at one time. Therefore, only one ColorFlow client computer can be running at a time.</p> <p>For instructions on installing the ColorFlow software on client computers, see the <i>ColorFlow User Guide</i>.</p> |
| Consider whether you will import Harmony tonal calibration curves. | <p>Decide whether you'll use the ColorFlow software to create and manage color control elements, or import existing Harmony tonal calibration software curves. If you use Harmony, you can delay using some capabilities of ColorFlow until you have time to print and measure charts with your device conditions.</p> <p>Note: When using ColorFlow with Prinergy, we recommend building new curves rather than importing existing Harmony tonal calibration curves.</p> <p>For more information about importing Harmony curves, see the <i>ColorFlow User Guide</i>.</p> |
| Configure ColorFlow. | <p>a. Create a color setup. A color setup is the virtual structure that you build to define the color relationships among the devices in your printing task. It includes devices, device conditions, a simulation target, and color control elements, such as DeviceLink profiles and curves.</p> <p>A color setup manages how its device conditions simulate the primary color output (PCO). If you edit the color response of a device condition, ColorFlow ensures that related color control elements in the color setup are updated to reflect the edit.</p> <p>b. Add device conditions. A device condition is the combination of a device and the operating conditions in which the device captures or produces an image. It has a measurable color response.</p> <p>A device condition can include more than one device. If it does, all devices must have the same device type and must use the same consumables and operational settings. The devices must be able to be calibrated to yield a similar color response. Note that this applies to curve-controlled devices only.</p> <p>For more information about configuring ColorFlow, see the <i>ColorFlow User Guide</i>.</p> |

| Complete these steps, in this order | Notes |
|--|--|
| Measure or import the color response of your device. | <p>Perform either of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Create and measure a ColorFlow characterization chart. • Import an existing measurement set. <p>The attributes of the chart must be suited to the inks you are using on the output device, your measuring device, and the size of your press.</p> <p>For more information about measuring color response, see the <i>ColorFlow User Guide</i>.</p> |
| Define simulation and conversion settings. | <p>Use the Simulation Definition dialog box in ColorFlow to control how a primary color output (PCO) simulates the color target. ColorFlow can perform the simulation using tonal curves or DeviceLinks or a combination.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the Target list, select the color response whose colors the PCO will attempt to simulate. Often this will be an industry reference. b. Using the Curves slider (for offset presses and halftone proofers only), select how you want to use tonal curves. For an explanation of each option, see the <i>ColorFlow User Guide</i>. c. Using the DeviceLinks slider, select how you want to use DeviceLinks. For some types of devices, not all values are available. Because the DeviceLink is used in the context of a simulation, the DeviceLink source is the color space selected in the Target list; the destination is the device condition inside the PCO. For an explanation of each option, see the <i>ColorFlow User Guide</i>. <p>For more information about simulation and conversion, and the options in the Simulation Definition dialog box, see the <i>ColorFlow User Guide</i>.</p> |

Using ColorFlow in Prinergy

After you have configured the ColorFlow software, you can use the ColorFlow settings in the refine, loose page output, imposition output, and final output process templates to apply color control elements during processing.

In the refine process template, you select a color setup. The available color setups are in the ColorFlow colorstore database on the primary server. When a page is refined using the refine process template, the color setup specified in the process template is assigned to the page.

In each output process template, you select the **Color Setup**, **Device**, **Device Condition**, **Plate Setup**, and **Plate Line** color control elements. During output processing, the color setup assigned to each page during refining defines the specific color control elements that are applied on output, unless you choose override the color setup tagged to the file during refine.

In addition, when you create a new job, you must enable ColorFlow in the job and select a default color setup for the job. You do this in the job's attributes. To successfully process job files with ColorFlow

enabled, you must configure the process templates to use ColorFlow *and* enable ColorFlow in the job.

When a job's pages are refined using a refine process template in which you have enabled ColorFlow, the color setup that is assigned depends on the ColorFlow settings in the refine process template:

- If the refine process template indicates to use the default color setup selected for the job, the job's color setup is assigned during refining.
- If a color setup is specified in the refine process template, the settings in the template override the default color setup selected for the job, and the color setup specified in the refine process template is assigned.
- If a color setup is specified in the refine process template but ColorFlow is not enabled for the job, refining will fail. For a job to be processed using ColorFlow, the job must be ColorFlow-enabled and a default color setup must be selected for the job, even if the default color setup is not assigned during refining.

In Job Manager, the **Color Setup** column in the **Pages** pane indicates the color setup assigned to each page.

Note: If the refine process template is not ColorFlow-enabled but the job has a default color setup selected, what happens during refining depends on whether the **Match Colors** option is selected in the process template. If **Match Colors** is *not* selected, the job's default color setup is registered with the refined files, but no color conversion is applied. If **Match Colors** is selected, refining will fail.

It is also possible to change a refine process template's ColorFlow settings when you refine specific pages, to change the selected color setup. This is useful when you plan to print parts of a job differently, such as on different presses or with different ink sets. For example, for a book that consists of a cover and body pages, you might want to print the cover CMYK but print the body pages in black only.

Note: After you run a job with ColorFlow enabled, you cannot rerun the job without ColorFlow enabled, unless you re-create the job.

Setting the halftone output modes

You can select one of four modes for output to halftone devices or files, in the output process template. These modes control the curves that are applied upon output, corresponding to your output goals.

Print Production

Reflects the standard operation of Prinergy and ColorFlow for production. When this option is selected, a *print calibration curve* and a *plate calibration curve* are applied to each output separation.

Print Characterization

Is used to print and measure the response of a print device. When this option is selected, a *device curve* and *plate calibration curve* are applied to each output separation.

Plate Verification

Is used to verify the linear response of plates produced by a particular plate line (consisting of the computer-to-plate device, plate processor setup, and chemistry), with a selected screening system. When this option is selected, only the *plate calibration curve* is applied to input tints of all separations.

Plate Characterization

Supports imaging and measuring the uncalibrated (or intrinsic) response of a plating line, such that a plate linearization curve can be computed. When this option is selected, no calibration curves are applied to input tints of any separations.

Applying ColorFlow curves and making tonal adjustments

If a printing plate has imaged and run on press, but the press is not printing with the desired response, you may need to recreate the plate using a different ColorFlow curve channel for one or more separations. You can also make tonal adjustments to the assigned ColorFlow curve channel. These adjustments, made on-the-fly from the Start Process dialog box, are appended to the ColorFlow calibration curves and have no effect on ColorFlow colorstores.

ColorFlow and archiving

If you retrieve an archived job for which ColorFlow is enabled, the ColorFlow server will request the name of the color setup and the number of the **Snapshot** that was used to initially process files within that job. If you have modified any of the elements within the color setup from the initial time of output, these modified elements will be used to output the archived job.

In addition, if the initial color setup was deleted or renamed, the job will fail processing. If you want to change a color setup, duplicate the original one and make changes to the duplicated and newly named color setup. You can use the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** check box to output the archived job when the selected color setup differs from the color setup assigned by the refine process.

ColorStore database and backups

If you are running the Windows 2003 Server operating system on your Prinergy primary server, the Windows NT Backup utility automatically

backs up your colorstore database. If you are running the Windows 2008 Server operating system on your Prinergy primary server, the System Configuration Backup Utility performs the backup process of the colorstore database. If you are using Prinergy with Hot Standby (Hot Standby combines the basic functionality of failover, allowing a Prinergy secondary server or render station to take over primary server functions if the primary server fails), the colorstore database is also automatically backed up.

Issues to consider when using ColorFlow

- Sharing ColorFlow-enabled work between plants or servers is not possible unless the **Prinergy Job Color Setup** defaults are changed to an available color setup and the **Allow undefined color setup or color setup mismatch** check box is selected in the ColorFlow section in the output process template. Note that output could be significantly different.
- If you refine a file with ColorFlow selected, ensure that you select **ColorConvert** and **Enable ColorFlow** if you refine the file again. Otherwise, an error message appears.
- If you want to change the tagged color setup of a PDF file that has been refined, you must refine the PDF file again with a new color setup specified in the process template.
- You may encounter a situation in which you have two objects with the same CMYK input in a single PDF file. One object is *tagged* with an ICC-based CMYK profile; the other object is *untagged* using Device CMYK. Conversion of the ICC-based CMYK content will happen via embedded profiles for one object. In contrast, the untagged content will be converted via a DeviceLink from ColorFlow, if a DeviceLink is present in the selected color setup. To avoid complication, override the embedded profile in the refine process template, which will ensure that all content is managed via DeviceLink.
- If you refine a file with the Prinergy Bypass Refine feature, ensure you refine the file again to tag a color setup in the PDF file.
- When using ColorFlow, you can assign one color setup per page in the refine process template. When using the imposition output process template with ColorFlow, you can output an imposition file that has different color setups for each page. When outputting in this situation, ensure that you select a device condition that is contained in all of the color setups assigned to all pages.

See also:

[Tell me more about the ColorFlow and Prinergy integration](#) on page [837](#)

Tell me more about the ColorFlow and Prinergy integration

ColorFlow 1.2 is integrated with Prinergy . ColorFlow 1.2 supports RGB devices and RGB color inputs, as well as CMYK devices and CMYK color inputs. You can select default CMYK or RGB source color spaces, and ColorFlow can provide CMYK and RGB device profiles in the Process Template Editor.

Background

- An ICC profile is a color space description that acts as a standard for accurate reproduction of colors across different platforms, devices, and applications, according to the standards of the International Color Consortium (ICC). For example—an ICC profile that describes a specific RGB device, such as a Kodak EasyShare camera, provides a mapping of the camera's red, green, and blue color space to device-independent L*a*b* coordinates (or CIE L*a*b* color space).
- A PDF file is composed of many objects, and each object may have come from a different source—for example, an RGB image captured from a digital scanner or digital camera, CMYK graphics from Illustrator, and so on. Each of these objects may be tagged with an ICC profile.

Prinergy refine process template setup

You can set up color conversion either with or without ColorFlow.

- When you are setting up a refine process template *without* ColorFlow, the **ColorConvert** section allows you to select ICC profiles for color converting RGB and CMYK images and graphics. These ICC profiles are only used by the Color Matcher JTP when an object in the PDF file is *not* tagged with an ICC profile. In the case of tagged PDF content, the ICC profile settings in the process template are ignored by the Color Matcher JTP, and the tagged profile is used.

Note: You can also use a DeviceLink profile that includes both the source and the destination ICC profiles.

- In a ColorFlow-integrated environment, the color conversion that takes place is to the primary color output (PCO) profile. In Prinergy, a ColorFlow device condition is a named instance of a CMYK device color response with an ICC device profile. For example, FOGRA 39 is a built-in device condition for which ColorFlow can provide a CMYK device profile to Prinergy.

The following table summarizes how to configure the two options:

| For this option | Do this |
|--|---|
| <p>To use ColorFlow device conditions for color conversion</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the ColorConvert section of the refine process template, in the Match Colors section, select the Enable ColorFlow check box. b. From the Snapshot list, select the desired snapshot from ColorFlow. c. From the Color Setup list, select the ColorFlow color setup from those available in the selected snapshot. d. Select each image type for which you want to enable ColorFlow color conversion, by selecting the relevant check boxes—CMYK Images, CMYK Graphics, RGB Images and RGB Graphics. e. From the lists next to the image type check boxes, select a ColorFlow device condition. <p>The device conditions are the conditions that have been configured in ColorFlow, which then supplies the DeviceLinks or profiles for the CMYK-to-CMYK or RGB-to-CMYK conversion.</p> |
| <p>To use ICC profiles or DeviceLink profiles for color conversion</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the ColorConvert section of the refine process template, clear the Enable ColorFlow check box. b. Select each image type for which you want to enable color conversion, by selecting the relevant check boxes—CMYK Images, CMYK Graphics, RGB Images and RGB Graphics. c. From the lists next to the image type check boxes, select the relevant ICC profile or DeviceLink profile. <p>If an object in the input file does not have an embedded profile, the ICC profile selected for that object type is applied.</p> |

15

Monitoring

Processes


About monitoring processes in Job Manager

You can get information about active processes for a job via dynamic columns, the Processes Pane, and the Process Info dialog box.

Dynamic columns

When you start each process, a dynamic column automatically appears in Job Manager.

The column has the same name as the process template being executed, and it displays icons indicating the status of the process.

The icons in dynamic columns become grayed out  if their processes are invalidated.

Process Info dialog box

The Process Info dialog box appears automatically if **Show Process Info Window When Process Is Created** is selected in user preferences. If the Process Info dialog box does not appear automatically, you can display it manually. If more than one process is running, many Process Info dialog boxes can appear.

Processes pane

When you start processing on an element, the active process appears in the **Processes** pane. This pane, which is visible in every view of Job Manager, lists all of the active and completed processes initiated from within Job Manager for a specific job.

The **Processes** pane consists of two tabs:

- **Active**—displays any processes in progress.
- **Completed**—displays any processes that completed successfully, completed with warnings or errors, failed, or were stopped before they could be completed.

When a process is completed or stopped, it moves from the **Active** tab to the **Completed** tab. (However, when an archive, purge, or retrieve process fails or is stopped, it may appear in the **Active**

Processes pane for up to 30 minutes, even if subsequent attempts at running the process are successful.)

About completed processes

If a process is completed successfully, it remains on the **Completed** tab of the Processes Pane for a few minutes and then disappears.

If a process fails or stops, it remains on the **Completed** tab until one of the following occurs:

- You delete the process.
- A certain amount of time passes, after which the process is automatically deleted.
- You reselect the same elements and the same process template, and start the process again. If the process is completed successfully, it replaces the original failed or stopped process.





About process status icons

When you initiate a process from Job Manager, icons indicating the status of the process appear in the Processes pane, in a dynamic column next to the elements being processed, and in the Process Info dialog box for the process.

Two kinds of status icons may appear—Activity icons and Condition icons.




Activity icons


Activity icons indicate what stage the processing is at. They appear only while a process is running, not after it is complete.





| Icon | The process is |
|---|---------------------------|
|  | Queued |
|  | In progress |
|  | Paused |
|  | Waiting for a user action |


Condition icons

Condition icons indicate whether any errors or warnings occur.

| Icon | What occurred |
|---|--|
|  | No warnings or errors |
|  | No warnings or errors, and process is complete |
|  | A warning |

| Icon | What occurred |
|---|---------------|
|  | An error |

Activity icons always appear in conjunction with a Condition icon. For example, you may see  and  together, which means that the process encountered a warning but is continuing. Or you may see  and  together, which means that the process has been paused but has so far encountered no warnings or errors.

The icons in dynamic columns become grayed out  if their processes are invalidated.

Viewing detailed information about a process

1. In the **Processes** pane of Job Manager, double-click the process.

Tip: You can also right-click the process and select **Get Info**.

The Process Info dialog box appears, displaying details about the process.

2. When you are finished reviewing the information, click **Close**.

Deleting completed processes

1. Click the **Completed** tab of the **Processes** pane in Job Manager.
2. Perform one of the following actions:
 - Select the process. Then, from the **File** menu, select **Delete Process**.
 - Right-click the process, and select **Delete Process**.

Processes pane

While each process runs, the **Active** tab displays the following:

- Icons indicating the status of the process.
- A description of the process in the following format:

| | | | | | | | |
|--------|---|---------------------------|---|---------------------|---|-----------------------|---------------------|
| server | : | process template group | : | process template | : | number of elements | type of elements |
|--------|---|---------------------------|---|---------------------|---|-----------------------|---------------------|

For example, `Atreus:Templates:Refine:10 Input Files`

If you changed the name of the process template in the Start Process dialog box, the **Processes** pane displays the revised name.

- A progress bar indicating the overall progress of the process. (The same progress bar appears in the Process Info dialog box for the active process.) Once the process is completed or stopped, the progress bar disappears.

Process Info dialog box

Icon (See [About process status icons](#) on page [840](#))

progress bar (unlabeled)

Indicates the overall percentage of the process that is complete.

If a process template executes more than one JTP, each JTP has its own progress bar.

The same progress bar appears under the process in the **Processes** pane of Job Manager while the process is active.

Stop

Click this button to stop a running process.

After the process ends, this button changes to a **Close** button.

Close

Click this button to close the Process Info dialog box.

This button appears only after the process ends. While the process is running, the button is a **Stop** button that you can use to stop the process.

Process Details

Process Template

The name of the process template used to initiate the process.

If you modified the process template when you initiated the process by clicking the **Edit Process Template** button in the Start Process dialog box, the process template name will appear as **Process Template:<name> (Modified)**.

Process Template Group

The group to which the process template used to initiate the process belongs.

Submitted by

The user who initiated the process.

Job

The job from within which the process was initiated.

Comment

Any comments that the user entered in the **Output Comment** box of the Start Process dialog box when they initiated the process.

These comments are also stored in the **History** view for the job.

Status / Process Status

The status of the process, for example, **Queued**, **Active**, or **Ended**.

Submitted (at)

The date and time that the process was initiated.

Started (at)




The date and time that the JTP (job ticket processor) began executing the process.

Ended at

The date and time that the JTP (job ticket processor) finished the process.

system messages box (unlabeled)

Displays details about the progress of the process. The following types of messages may appear:

-  Information—the action completed successfully.
-  Warning—the action encountered a problem but carried on to completion.
-  Error—the action failed.

After the process is complete, these details can also be available in the **History** view.

Process Elements

Lists the element or elements being processed, by file name and file kind.

About Queue Manager

A Queue Manager lists all of the processes being executed by the server. You can use Queue Manager to stop, hold, or resume a process, and to change the priority of a queued process.

The Queue Manager consists of two views—**JTP Queues** and **Process Types**.

JTP Queues

The **JTP Queues** view displays all active processes for a specific JTP (job ticket processor) in your system.

JTPs are software components that process job files according to instructions in the process templates that you apply to the job files. For example, the Archive-Retrieve JTP processes files according to the instructions in an archive or retrieve process template.

Process Types

The **Process Types** view displays all active processes for a specific process type in your system.

Choosing a view

A process may execute multiple JTPs—one JTP for each step. For example, a refine process could include the Normalize, ColorConvert, and Trap JTP.

If a process includes multiple JTPs:

- The **Process Types** view displays the entire process, and indicates the priority of the entire process.
- The **JTP Queues** view displays the process multiple times as it moves through each JTP, and indicates the order of each step within each JTP queue.

More than one process may use the same JTP. For example, both a refine process and an output process may use the ColorConvert JTP.

Opening Queue Manager

- From the **Tools** menu, select **Queue Manager**.

Stopping, pausing, and resuming processes in Queue Manager

1. Open Queue Manager.
2. View the specific process in one of these ways:
 - To select a JTP process, click the **JTP Queues** tab, and select a JTP in the list.
 - To select a process by type, click the **Process Types** tab, and select a process type in the list.
3. In the **View** pane, select the process that you want to change.
4. From the **Edit** menu, select **Process**, and then select the desired activity state:
 - **Pause**: pauses the process, setting its status to **Suspended**. Note that the process pauses at the next logical point—not necessarily immediately.
 - **Resume**: resumes a paused process, setting its status to **Active**.
 - **Stop**: ends the process, removing it from Queue Manager. You cannot restart a stopped process.
Tip: To stop a process, you can also right-click it and select **Stop**.
 - **Force Destroy**: forcibly destroys the process, removing it from Queue Manager. This menu item is available only if you have already tried to end the process using the **Stop** menu item at least once, and the process did not end.

The new activity state appears in the **Status** column of the **View** pane.

Changing processing priority

You set processing priority in the Start Process dialog box when you initiate a process, but you can change the priority of the process in Queue Manager.

1. Open Queue Manager.
2. View the specific process in one of these ways:
 - To select a JTP process, click the **JTP Queues** tab, and select a JTP in the list.
 - To select a process by type, click the **Process Types** tab, and select a process type in the list.
3. In the **View** pane, select the process that you want to change.

4. From the **Edit** menu, select **Process > Select Task Priority**.
5. In the Select Task Priority dialog box, select the desired priority and click **Select**.

The new priority appears in the **Priority** column of the **View** pane.

A new history detail is also created to record the change in priority. History details for a job can be viewed in the History view of Job Manager.

Viewing information about processes in Queue Manager

You can view detailed information about a single process from within Queue Manager.

1. View the specific process in one of these ways:
 - To select a JTP process, click the **JTP Queues** tab, and select a JTP in the list.
 - To select a process by type, click the **Process Types** tab, and select a process type in the list.
2. In the **View** pane, select the process that you want information about.
3. Perform one of the following actions:
 - Double-click the process.
 - Right-click the process and select **Get Info**.
 - From the **File** menu, select **Get Info**.

The Process Info dialog box appears, displaying details about the selected process.

Queue Manager window

The Queue Manager window consists of two views, each with their own columns:

JTP Queues View

Displays all active processes for a specific JTP (job ticket processor) in your system.

The left-hand pane of the **JTP Queues** view (known as the **Filter palette**) lists the JTPs that reside on the server. This list may vary depending on the configuration of your system. Click a JTP to display

all active processes for that JTP in the right-hand pane (the **View** pane).

Name

Displays the name of the process, the status of the process using status icons, and the icon for the process template group to which the process belongs.

Queue Position

A number representing the position of the process in the queue. When processes include multiple files, a range of position numbers is shown, representing the position of the first and last files.

Priority

See Select Task Priority dialog box.

Job

The name of the job with which the process is associated.

User

The logon ID of the user who initiated the process.

Submitted (at)

The date and time that the process was initiated.

Process Template

The name of the process template used to initiate the process.

Process Template Group

The group to which the process template used to initiate the process belongs.

Type

The process template type for this process, for example, **Archive**, **Retrieve**, or **Purge**.

Status / Process Status

The status of the process, for example, **Queued**, **Active**, or **Ended**.

Elements

The number and type of elements that are inputs to the process.

Process Types View

Displays all active processes for a specific process type in your system.

The left-hand pane of the **Process Types** view (known as the **Filter** palette) lists the process types that reside on the server.

This list may vary depending on the configuration of your system. Click a process type to display all active processes for that process type in the right-hand pane (the **View** pane).

Name

Displays the name of the process, the status of the process using status icons, and the icon for the process template group to which the process belongs.

Priority

See Select Task Priority dialog box.

Job

The name of the job with which the process is associated.

User

The logon ID of the user who initiated the process.

Submitted (at)

The date and time that the process was initiated.

Started (at)

The date and time that the JTP (job ticket processor) began executing the process.

Process Template

The name of the process template used to initiate the process.

Process Template Group

The group to which the process template used to initiate the process belongs.

Status / Process Status

The status of the process, for example, **Queued**, **Active**, or **Ended**.

Elements

The number and type of elements that are inputs to the process.

The columns you see depend on which columns you are displaying or hiding.

See also:

[Select Task Priority dialog box](#) on page 849

[Menus in Queue Manager](#) on page 849

[Displaying and hiding columns](#) on page 1034

Select Task Priority dialog box

Use this dialog box to change the priority of the active process you have selected in Queue Manager. Options are:

- **Urgent**
- **High**
- **Normal**
- **Low**

Note: The following applies to GDAPI devices only.

- A task with **High** priority will be sent by the server to the JTP after the device control software queue has processed all the surfaces that have separations. For example, if the device queue has two separations in its queue (Surface1 C and Surface1 M), and Prinerogy has two separations in its queue (Surface1 Y and Surface1 K), then a high priority plate will be made after Surface1 K is finished; that is, after all Surface1 is done.
- A task with **Urgent** priority will be sent right away and queued at the end of the device control software queue, even if the currently-imaging surface still has separations in the Prinerogy queue. For example, if the device queue has two separations in its queue (Surface1 C and Surface1 M), and Prinerogy has two separations in its queue (Surface1 Y and Surface1 K), then an urgent priority plate will be made after Surface1 M; that is, after the queued separations in the device queue, and before the separations still queued in Prinerogy.

Menus in Queue Manager

Workshop menu in Queue Manager

Note: This menu is available only when running Prinerogy Workshop on a Macintosh client.

About Prinerogy Workshop

Displays information about Prinerogy Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the server name.

Preferences

Use to view and modify Prinerger Workshop preferences. When you select this menu item, the Workshop Preferences dialog box appears.

Note: On a Windows client, this menu item appears under the **Edit** menu. On a Macintosh client, it appears under the **Workshop** menu.

Quit / Quit Prinerger Workshop

Quits Prinerger Workshop. Any open Prinerger Workshop windows are closed.

File menu in Queue Manager

Get Info

Displays information about the selected process. When this menu item is selected, the Process Info dialog box appears.

Close Window

Closes the current window, but does not quit Prinerger Workshop.

Quit / Quit Prinerger Workshop

Quits Prinerger Workshop. Any open Prinerger Workshop windows are closed.

Edit menu in Queue Manager

Select All Processes

Selects all of the active processes in the current view.

Process

Enables you to modify the state and priority of the selected process. When you select **Process**, a submenu appears. Options are:

- **Set Process Priority:** Select this menu item to change the priority of the process. (You set the priority in the Start Process dialog box when you initiate a process, but you can change the priority in Queue Manager.) When you select this menu item, the Select Task Priority dialog box appears.
- **Pause:** Pauses the process, setting its status to **Suspended**. Note that when you select **Pause**, the process is not necessarily paused immediately—it is paused at the next logical point.

- **Resume:** Resumes a paused process, setting its status to **Active**.
- **Stop:** Ends the process, removing it from Queue Manager. You cannot restart a stopped process.
- **Force Destroy:** Forcibly destroys the process, removing it from Queue Manager. This menu item is available only if you have already tried to end the process using the **Stop** menu item at least once, and the process did not end.

Preferences

Use to view and modify Prinerly Workshop preferences. When you select this menu item, the Workshop Preferences dialog box appears.

Note: On a Windows client, this menu item appears under the **Edit** menu. On a Macintosh client, it appears under the **Workshop** menu.

Cut, **Copy**, and **Paste** appear on the **Edit** menu, but they do not apply.

View menu in Queue Manager

Refresh

Updates the contents of the current window.

JTP Queues

Displays the **JTP Queues** view in the Queue Manager window.

Process Types

Displays the **Process Types** view in the Queue Manager window.

Visible Columns

Use to display and hide columns in the current window or pane. When you select this menu item, the Visible Columns dialog box appears. From there, you select the columns that you want to display, and clear the columns that you want to hide.

The columns that can be displayed vary from window to window.

Tools menu in Queue Manager

Change User

Displays the Connect to Server dialog box where you can log in as another user without quitting Prinerly Workshop.

This menu item appears only if you have Kodak Prinergy Business Link software connected to the Prinergy system.

Job Finder

Opens Job Finder.

If you are already in Job Finder, this menu item is unavailable.

Destroy History Entries

In the **History** view, select one or more history entries and then use **Destroy History Entries** to delete the selected entries.

Process Template Editor

Launches **Process Template Editor**, where you can create and modify process templates.

Automated Page Assignment Editor

Starts the **Automated Page Assignment Editor**, which you use to create and check APA files.

Queue Manager

Launches **Queue Manager**, where you can view the Job Ticket Processors (JTPs) and process types.

Media Manager

Launches **Media Manager**, where you can manage your archive tapes and disk volumes.

System History

Launches **System History**, which displays the detailed history of all the activity occurring outside of job context (such as jobs and groups that were created or destroyed), as well as job archive, purge, and retrieve history.

Smart Hot Folder Manager

Launches the Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box, where you can add, edit and delete smart hot folders.

Configure Imposition Application

Displays the Configure Imposition Applications dialog box, where you can identify the location of imposition software that you want to integrate with Prinergy Workshop.

Start Imposition Application

Displays the Start Imposition Application dialog box, where you choose which imposition software to start. You create this list

of imposition applications with the Configure Imposition Application tool from the **Tools** menu. If an application requires a license and is licensed, it appears in bold.

Color Editor

Launches **Color Editor**, where you can create color recipes for all jobs.

Color Space Editor

Launches **Color Space Editor**, where you can create and edit color spaces.

Font Converter

Launches **Font Converter**, where you can convert font files into PFA (Printer Font ASCII) format, which Prinergy requires to correctly process fonts.

Preflight Profile Manager

Launches **Preflight Profile Manager**, where you can, during the refine process, evaluate PDFs to detect problems that may affect processing in a publishing or prepress workflow.

Digital Print Administration Console

Launches the Digital Print Administrator, where you can add and configure a digital print application that Prinergy can launch to print PDFs.

Rule Set Manager

Opens the Rule Set Manager, where you can create and edit rule sets. The Rule Set Manager also lets you organize rule sets into groups.

Activate Rule Set in Selected Jobs

Opens the **Select Rule Set** dialog box, where you can activate rule sets for one or more jobs.

Help menu in Queue Manager

Online help

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy online help.

On *<current window or view>*

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy Workshop user guide, open to the topic for the currently selected window or view.

Quick Start Guide

Starts Adobe Acrobat and displays a PDF file of the *Prinerger Connect Quick Start Guide*

eCentral Online Support

Starts your Web browser and displays the eCentral portal at <https://ecentral.kodak.com/>.

Visit graphics.kodak.com

Starts your Web browser and displays the Kodak Web site at <http://graphics.kodak.com/default.htm>.

About Prinerger Workshop

Displays information about Prinerger Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the Prinerger server name.

Note: This menu item appears on the **Help** menu only when you are running Prinerger Workshop on a Windows-based client computer. On a Macintosh client computer, the menu item **About Workshop** appears on the **Workshop** menu.

Keyboard shortcuts in Queue Manager

| Macintosh Keyboard Shortcut | Windows Keyboard Shortcut | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| ⌘ + A | Ctrl + A | Selects all processes in the active View pane |
| ⌘ + H | Ctrl + H | Displays the Select Task Priority dialog box, which you use to change the priority of the selected process |
| ⌘ + I | Ctrl + I | Displays the Process Info dialog box for the selected active process |
| ⌘ + Q | Ctrl + Q | Quits Prinerger Workshop |
| ⌘ + R | Ctrl + R | Refreshes the selected view |
| ⌘ + W | Ctrl + W | Closes Queue Manager |
| ⌘ + 1 | Ctrl + 1 | Displays the JTP Queues view in the Queue Manager window |
| ⌘ + 2 | Ctrl + 2 | Displays the Process Types view in the Queue Manager window |

System History




About System History

System History displays detailed records of all activity occurring outside of job context (such as jobs and groups that were created or destroyed) as well as job archive, purge, and retrieve history.

(For information about processes that occur within a specific job, see the History view of Job Manager.)

Using System History, you can check the results of multiple processes without having to open individual jobs. This is helpful, for example, if several jobs were archived overnight and you want to see the results in the morning—without having to open each job.

Each message in System History is accompanied by an icon representing the severity of the message. Severity levels are:

-  Information—the action completed successfully
-  Warning—the action encountered a problem but carried on to completion
-  Error—the action failed

You can change the display in System History window by:

- Expanding a message about an action to view details about that action
- Displaying different time periods
- Grouping messages into categories, such as Job Settings and Storage, depending on the messages currently in System History

Note: You cannot destroy history messages in System History; you can destroy history messages only in the **History** view of Job Manager.

About viewing screening information of completed jobs

System History records the screening information that was applied to an output.

This information helps you confirm that the correct screening was applied to an output. Also, if you need to regenerate an output (for example, remake a plate or reprint a job), this information helps ensure that the same screening was applied to the regenerated output that was applied to the original output.

Only one history message is generated for each screening setting. For example, if 100 objects are identically screened, only one history message is created to record screening information.


The following screening information is captured in system history:

- Screen system
- Dot shape

- Screen angle
- Ruling
- Maxtone settings

Displaying System History

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **System History**.
2. Perform any of the following actions:

| To | Do This |
|---|--|
| View messages from a different time period. | Select the time period from the History Starting list. |
| Group messages into categories. | Click Group by Category  . |
| Change the columns that are displayed. | See Displaying and Hiding Columns. |

Copying system history messages

1. Display System History.
2. Select the history messages (actions and details) that you want to copy.
3. From the **Edit** menu, select **Copy**.
4. Paste the history messages into the desired text editor.

System History window

Group by Category

Groups history messages into categories. The available categories depend on the messages currently in System History, but can include **Job Settings**, **Storage**, and so on.

History Starting

Use this list to filter the date range of history messages shown in the System History window.

Description

A short description of the action taken. For each action, the description includes a number at the end of the text indicating the number of detail items listed for that action. You can expand an action to view its details.

User Name

The logon name of the user who initiated the action.

Time

The date and time that the action or process was initiated.

Severity

Indicates whether the message is for information only, or is an error or warning.

The columns you see depend on the columns you display or hide.

Menus in System History

Workshop menu in System History

Note: This menu is available only when running Prinerger Workshop on a Macintosh client.

About Prinerger Workshop

Displays information about Prinerger Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the server name.

Preferences

Use to view and modify Prinerger Workshop preferences. When you select this menu item, the Workshop Preferences dialog box appears.

Note: On a Windows client, this menu item appears under the **Edit** menu. On a Macintosh client, it appears under the **Workshop** menu.

Quit / Quit Prinerger Workshop

Quits Prinerger Workshop. Any open Prinerger Workshop windows are closed.

File menu in System History

Close Window

Closes the current window, but does not quit Prinerger Workshop.

Quit / Quit Prinerger Workshop

Quits Prinerger Workshop. Any open Prinerger Workshop windows are closed.

Edit menu in System History

Cut (unavailable)

Copy

Select one or more history messages and select **Copy**. You can then paste the history messages into a separate text editor.

Paste (unavailable)

View menu in System History

Refresh

Updates the contents of the current window.

Visible Columns

Use to display and hide columns in the current window or pane. When you select this menu item, the Visible Columns dialog box appears. From there, you select the columns that you want to display, and clear the columns that you want to hide.

The columns that can be displayed vary from window to window.

Tools menu in System History

Change User

Displays the Connect to Server dialog box where you can log in as another user without quitting Prinergy Workshop.

This menu item appears only if you have Kodak Prinergy Business Link software connected to the Prinergy system.

Job Finder

Opens Job Finder.

If you are already in Job Finder, this menu item is unavailable.

Destroy History Entries

In the **History** view, select one or more history entries and then use **Destroy History Entries** to delete the selected entries.

Process Template Editor

Launches **Process Template Editor**, where you can create and modify process templates.

Automated Page Assignment Editor

Starts the **Automated Page Assignment Editor**, which you use to create and check APA files.

Queue Manager

Launches **Queue Manager**, where you can view the Job Ticket Processors (JTPs) and process types.

Media Manager

Launches **Media Manager**, where you can manage your archive tapes and disk volumes.

System History

Launches **System History**, which displays the detailed history of all the activity occurring outside of job context (such as jobs and groups that were created or destroyed), as well as job archive, purge, and retrieve history.

Smart Hot Folder Manager

Launches the Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box, where you can add, edit and delete smart hot folders.

Configure Imposition Application

Displays the Configure Imposition Applications dialog box, where you can identify the location of imposition software that you want to integrate with Prinergy Workshop.

Start Imposition Application

Displays the Start Imposition Application dialog box, where you choose which imposition software to start. You create this list of imposition applications with the Configure Imposition Application tool from the **Tools** menu. If an application requires a license and is licensed, it appears in bold.

Color Editor

Launches **Color Editor**, where you can create color recipes for all jobs.

Color Space Editor

Launches **Color Space Editor**, where you can create and edit color spaces.

Font Converter

Launches **Font Converter**, where you can convert font files into PFA (Printer Font ASCII) format, which Prinergy requires to correctly process fonts.

Preflight Profile Manager

Launches **Preflight Profile Manager**, where you can, during the refine process, evaluate PDFs to detect problems that may affect processing in a publishing or prepress workflow.

Digital Print Administration Console

Launches the Digital Print Administrator, where you can add and configure a digital print application that Prinergy can launch to print PDFs.

Rule Set Manager

Opens the Rule Set Manager, where you can create and edit rule sets. The Rule Set Manager also lets you organize rule sets into groups.

Activate Rule Set in Selected Jobs

Opens the **Select Rule Set** dialog box, where you can activate rule sets for one or more jobs.

Help menu in System History

Online help

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy online help.

On *<current window or view>*

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy Workshop user guide, open to the topic for the currently selected window or view.

Quick Start Guide

Starts Adobe Acrobat and displays a PDF file of the *Prinergy Connect Quick Start Guide*

eCentral Online Support

Starts your Web browser and displays the eCentral portal at <https://ecentral.kodak.com/>.

Visit graphics.kodak.com

Starts your Web browser and displays the Kodak Web site at <http://graphics.kodak.com/default.htm>.

About Prinergy Workshop

Displays information about Prinergy Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the Prinergy server name.

Note: This menu item appears on the **Help** menu only when you are running Prinerger Workshop on a Windows-based client computer. On a Macintosh client computer, the menu item **About Workshop** appears on the **Workshop** menu.

Keyboard shortcuts in System History

| Macintosh Keyboard Shortcut | Windows Keyboard Shortcut | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| ⌘ + C | Ctrl + C | Copies the selected history messages so that they can be pasted into a separate text editor |
| ⌘ + Q | Ctrl + Q | Quits Prinerger Workshop |
| ⌘ + R | Ctrl + R | Refreshes the selected view |
| ⌘ + W | Ctrl + W | Closes the System History window |

Job history

About viewing job history

The **History** view of Job Manager displays the detailed history of all the activity for a particular job. For each job, the **History** view displays:

- A description of each action taken on the job. (You can expand each description to display additional details, and double-click each additional detail to display more information and copy the text.)
- Individual messages for each action. (The same messages appear in the Process Info dialog box when the process is active.)
- The date and time the action was taken
- The severity of the message

If the History view gets cluttered, you can destroy the messages if you have permission to do so.

About destroying job history

You may want to destroy entries in the **History** view of Job Manager to:

- Reduce clutter in the **History** view.
- Increase the performance of Prinerger Workshop.

Destroying entries also deletes the history log items from the database.

Only certain users have the right to destroy history entries. If a user does not have the right, the **Tools > Delete History Entries** menu item is unavailable and has an [x] to the right of it.


You set user rights in Administrator. For more information about setting user rights, see the *System Administration Guide*.

Viewing job history

- In Job Manager, from the **View** menu, select **History**.

Destroying history entries

1. In Job Manager, select the **History** view.
2. Select the history entries you want to destroy.

Tip: Click  to switch between grouping and ungrouping entries by type.

3. From the **Tools** menu, select **Destroy History Entries**.
4. Click **OK**.

16

Job export/import

Job export

About exporting jobs

You can transfer a job from one Prinergy system to another by exporting all or part of the job using the export process template, and then importing it into the other system.

There are two types of exports:

- Complete exports, which exports the whole job.

For an export to be successful, the job must contain refined PDF pages.

- Incremental or partial exports, which exports portions of a job.

For an incremental export to be successful, the job must contain refined PDF pages and an imposition plan.

The exported file has the same name as the job, plus an extension of .zip, such as **jobname.zip**. If you export more than once, you can choose to either overwrite an existing export file name or create a new export file name if the job name is the same.

All aspects of exports are controlled by export process template options.

An exported job contains most, but not all aspects of the job, as explained in the following table:

| Included | Not Included |
|--|--------------|
| Imposition plans | Input files |
| PDF files for the job, also known as digital masters | Job history |
| Page sets | |
| Page assignments | |
| Page geometry | |
| Final color separations and color mappings | |
| Color database from the Job tab of the Color Editor | |
| Job notes | |

About incremental exports

Incremental exports are exports of certain parts of a job, based on signatures.

Incremental exports are useful to:

- Break up a large job for printing at multiple sites
- Break up a large job into files that are small enough to transfer to a remote site, which gradually reassembles the job
- Send jobs to sites with Prinergy Direct software, which requires only signatures, not all aspects of the job. This is called a hub-and-spoke operation, where the Prinergy Connect or Prinergy Powerpack operator creates partial exports for sites with Prinergy Direct.
- Update a previous export

For an incremental export to be successful, the job must contain refined PDF pages and an imposition plan.

When a site receives an incremental export, it must do an incremental import to bring the file into Prinergy.

Hot folders with incremental exports

To import incremental exports, remote sites can create a pre-job and link it to an import process template.

When you drop an incremental export into a pre-job hot folder, the file name determines whether Prinergy creates a new job. If the incremental export file name:

- Matches the name of an existing job, Prinergy adds the export to an existing job
- Does not match the name of an existing job, Prinergy creates a new job using the export file name

If you want to create more than one incremental export from the same job for use by a remote site with a pre-job hot folder, you need to rename the files. When you first create the incremental exports, give the files different names so that they do not overwrite each other. But before you send the files to the remote site, be sure to rename the file names with the same name so that Prinergy imports the files into the same job.

Exporting a job or partial job

1. Select what you want to export by doing one of the following actions:

| To | Do This |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Export a job from the Job Finder | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Select the job. b. From the File menu, select Export Job. |
| Export a job from Job Manager | From the File menu, select Export Job . |
| Export signatures | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the Signatures view of Job Manager, select one or more signatures. b. From the File menu, select Export Job (Incremental). |

2. In the Choose Process Template dialog box, choose an export process template, and click **OK**.
3. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
4. In the process template, click ▸ next to the **Export** section, set the Export options, and click **OK**.
5. If you want to change the name, type the new name in the **Zip Filename** box, ensuring it ends in the `.zip` extension.
6. Set any other options the Start Process dialog box, and click **OK**.
7. Click **OK**.

Export process template

The export process template contains one section called Export.



Click ▸ to expand this collapsible section and see the options in it.



Select this check box to enable the **Export** section of the export process template.

JTP

Select the JTP you want to use to export job files.

Include Pages in Job Exports

Select to include the PDF pages in the compressed file that Prinerly creates when it exports a job.

Create Export Backwards Compatible with Prinerger 2.0.7

Select when you want the exported job to successfully import into a Prinerger 2.0.7 (or earlier) system.

Export Type

The selection in this box affects the default value displayed in the **Export Path** box. Select an export type and then provide additional information in the **Export Path** box.

Select **Absolute File** to enter the path for a specific network device or file location.

Select **Job-Relative File** to enter a path that is relative to the location of the job folder.

Note: If you enter a path for a network device in the **Export Path** box, Prinerger automatically changes the **Export Type** option to **Absolute File**, if it is not selected.

Overwrite Existing Files with Same Name

Select to enable Prinerger to overwrite an existing exported job file (<job name>.zip) with a new exported job file when the files have the same name.

When you enable this feature and export the same job a second time, Prinerger overwrites the first exported job file with the second exported job file.

When you disable this feature and export the same job a second time, Prinerger gives the second exported job file a unique name by giving it version number, for example, **job1.zip** as opposed to **job.zip**. Because the two files have unique names, they do not overwrite each other. The result is two exported job files.

Export Path

Specifies the folder to which the system exports a job. Click **Browse** to locate and select the folder.

Maximum File Size

Specify the size of the compressed file in kilobytes (KB) to be able to fit the file onto a medium such as a compact disk. (The default is 3145728 KB or about 3 GB.)

Job import

About importing jobs

Importing is the process of creating a job based on a previously exported job. Export files have a .zip extension.

Use any of these methods to import jobs:

- Import a job in the Job Finder using the Import Job menu item
- Import a job while creating a new job
- Import a job using a hot folder
- Import a partial job using the **Import Job (Incremental)** menu item
- Import a partial job using a hot folder

Someone must export a job or a partial job before you can import it.

When you import an exported job, Prinergy decompresses the exported job file, and populates the new job with the content from the exported job.

If the exported job has an APA file, Prinergy looks for the APA file with the latest date and time, and then copies the information from it into a new APA file. The filename of the new APA includes a version number, such as **Job.v1.apa**, to indicate it is a different version than the original **Job.apa** file.

All aspects of imports are controlled by an import process template.

Importing an entire job using the menus

1. In Job Finder, from the **File** menu, select **Import Job**.
2. In the Import Job dialog box, navigate through the volumes and folders to choose an export job to import.
Ensure that the job is an export file by reviewing the information in the **Selected Job Info** list.
3. Under **Options**, read the name of the process template that controls the import process.
If you want to change the template, click **Select**. In the Choose Process Template dialog box, select an ImportAll process template, and click **OK**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. In the Create New Job dialog box, set the options.
6. Specify the group name and job name you want.
If you are importing to the same Prinergy system as the one from which you exported the job, you must use a different job name.
7. Click **Create**.

8. If you want to change any processing options:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, under **Options**, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - b. In the Import Process Template, change any settings, and click **OK**.
9. Click **OK**.

The import process starts, and the new job opens in Job Manager.

Importing an entire job using hot folders

1. Create a pre-job.
2. Create a hot folder for the pre-job, and link it to an ImportAll type of import process template.
3. Using a file browser, drop the export .zip file into the hot folder. Prinergy creates a job on the server where the pre-job is located.

Importing a partial job using the menus

1. Open an existing job.
2. In Job Manager, from the **File** menu, select **Import Job (Incremental)**.
3. In the Import Job dialog box, navigate through the volumes and folders to choose an export job to import.

Ensure that the file is an export file by reviewing the information in the **Selected Job Info** list.
4. Under **Options**, read the name of the process template that controls the import process.

If you want to change the template, click **Select**. In the Choose Process Template dialog box, select an ImportJobIncremental process template, and click **OK**.

By default, the **ImportJobIncremental** process template keeps the existing page set and imposition.
5. Click **OK** to start the import process.
6. If you want to change any processing options:
 - a. In the Start Process dialog box, under **Options**, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - b. In the Import Process Template, change any settings, and click **OK**.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **OK**.

The ImportJobIncremental process starts.

Importing a partial job using hot folders

1. Start with an existing job.
2. Create a hot folder for the job, and link it to an **ImportIncremental** type of import process template.
3. Using a file browser, drop the partial export .zip file into the hot folder.

Prinerger imports the partial job into the existing job. If an imported signature has the same name as an existing signature, Prinerger adds a suffix of "01" to the imported signature.

Import Job dialog box

Unlabeled list and results area

Selecting an item in the list at the top left of the dialog box displays that item's contents in the box below.

When you select:

- **Volumes**, the volumes in your system appear
- A volume name, folders at the root of the selected volume appear
- A folder name, files within the folder appear

The path of the displayed item in the list appears in reverse order, for example, folder name followed by volume name.

Volumes

Displays all volumes in the Prinerger system.

Job Folder

(Visible only when you reach this dialog box by clicking **Import Job** in Job Finder, not **Import Job (Incremental)** in the Job Manager)

Opens the job folder for the current job.

Selected Job Info

Displays information about the job that is selected in the **Choose Job** lists. It displays either the job name or a warning that the job is not an export file.

Show Hidden Files

Select this check box to include hidden files, such as system files, in the results.

You can set the default selection of this check box on the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Select

Click this button to open the Choose Process Template dialog box, where you can change the import process template that controls the current import.

Import process template (jobs)

This topic applies only if you are importing jobs, not importing impositions.

To import entire jobs, use the **ImportAll** process template. To import partial jobs, use the **ImportJobIncremental** process template.

Import section



Select this check box to enable the **Import** section of the import process template.

It determines how Prinergy imports impositions, exported jobs, and exported job files.

If Page Set Already Exists

Determines what happens if a page set with the same name already exists.

Note: When importing an imposition plan via a hot folder, choose any option except **Keep existing page set and imposition**.

The options are:

- **Fail import:** Stops the import process.
- **Delete existing page set and imposition:** Replaces the existing page set and imposition with the page set and imposition being imported.
- **Create alternate page set and imposition:** Creates a new page set and links it to the imposition plan, without affecting the existing page set or its assignments. This is the default in the **ImportAll** process template.
- **Keep existing page set and create new imposition:** Retains the original page set and links it to the new imposition. The imported and existing sets must have the same number of

positions. Selecting this option enables the check boxes in the **Page Sets Options** area of the import process template.

- **Keep existing page set and imposition:** Retains the existing page set and imposition. The imported and existing sets must have the same number of positions. This is the default in the **ImportJobIncremental** process template. Selecting this option enables the check boxes in the **Page Sets Options** area of the import process template.

Page Set Options

A set of check boxes that specify how to handle page assignments in an existing page set when the new imposition is linked to that page set. The check boxes are:

- **Existing assignments replaced by new assignments:** Prinergy replaces the old page assignments with the new page assignments in the imported file. In the **ImportIncremental** process template, this check box is selected by default.
- **Existing assignments replaced by new unassignments:** Prinergy removes page assignments from pages that are not assigned (blank) in the imported file. When this check box is selected, the other two check boxes in **Page Set Options** are automatically selected.
- **Existing unassigned replaced by new assignment:** Prinergy retains existing assignments and applies any new assignments from the imported job or populated PJTF to any unassigned positions in the existing page set. This check box is always selected.

The check boxes are available only if the **If Page Set Already Exists** list is set to either **Keep existing page set and create new imposition** or **Keep existing page set and imposition**.

These check boxes are especially important when you want to manually assign pages to a page set and then link the page set to multiple imposition plans.

Set Initial Separations After Imposition Import

In the imposition software, you may inadvertently add marks that contain separations that are not present in the content of the refined pages.

- Select this check box when you want Prinergy to ignore the additional separations in the marks.
- Clear this check box when you want Prinergy to show the additional colors in the marks.

Important: Clear this check box if you are doing color mapping in the imposition software. Otherwise, Prinergy may ignore your color mapping changes.

Overwrite Existing Automated Page Assignment File

Select this check box if you want Prinergy to overwrite the existing APA file and use the assignments specified in the job you are importing.

Continue Job Import if CRC Error Found

Select this check box when you want Prinergy to skip any files with CRC errors without failing the import. The names of the files with errors are logged in the **History** view, so you can correct and reimport these files into the job.

Do Auto Page Assignment After Unpopulated Imposition Import

Select this check box when you want Prinergy to perform APA assignment and allow pages to be automatically assigned whether they have been refined before or after an imposition import.

Important: Do not select this check box unless you have an APA file with the assignments that you want applied to the selected page set. Any existing assignments are deleted if you have an empty or invalid APA file and this check box is selected.

If you clear this check box, pages can NOT be automatically assigned if they have been processed before an unpopulated imposition import (or before a page set is created).

Center Pages in Imposition

(For imposition imports only)

Specify the placement of each PDF page trim box (or media box) within its assigned imposition trim box during the job import.

The options are:

- **Honor Existing**—Preserves the existing placement of each PDF page (centered or not centered) when the job is imported.
- **Centered**— Each PDF page trim box is centered within its imposition trim box. You can then reassign pages to different positions without worrying about the image shifts caused by different trim box sizes on different PDF pages.
- **Not Centered**—Each PDF page trim box is positioned in the lower-left corner of its imposition trim box.

Signature ID Code

Use these settings to override the default signature ID code syntax that is specified in Administrator.

Template—Type the code syntax. For example, %jobname<7>%%signature<2>%

Number of sections per signatures in one imposition---Type the total number of sections for each signature. For example, if you import an imposition with five signatures and signatures 2 and 5 each contains two sections, enter **1,2,1,1,2**.

See Overriding default signature ID codes .

Normalize for PDF Marks File section

This section does not apply when you are importing jobs or partial jobs.

Normalize for PostScript Marks Files section

This section does not apply when you are importing jobs or partial jobs.

Optimize for PostScript Marks Files section

This section does not apply when you are importing jobs or partial jobs.

Import Raw Imposition Files section

This section does not apply when you are importing jobs or partial jobs.

Import Metadata section

Select XSLT File

If you use Business Link software, you can use this panel to import a defined XSLT file that you can use to create custom fields automatically. After you import the XSLT file, select the file in the Custom Fields Manager dialog box.

Instead of creating custom fields by typing information into the Custom Fields Manager dialog box, you can select an XSLT file and import pre defined custom fields. Currently, only JDF-type imposition files can be imported.

17

Archives

Archive, purge, and retrieve

About archiving, purging, and retrieving jobs

After you finish a job, archive the job files and then purge them to save disk space. If you need the files later, you can retrieve them.

Alternatively, you can copy a job to retrieve an archived job.

The archive, purge, and retrieve process templates control archiving, purging, and retrieving job files.

Generally, you archive and purge job files after the job is printed, although you can archive and purge job files at any time.

The window that you use to archive, purge, and retrieve depends on the scope you want. To affect an entire job or multiple jobs, use Job Finder. (You can archive, purge, and retrieve up to 30 jobs at one time.) To affect selected files in a single job, use Job Manager.

About archiving

Archiving job files saves the files to separate tapes or disks. The files are saved in context and information about the job is retained in the database.

You can archive at two levels:

- Archiving the whole job archives all of the files in the job folder and any files that you added to the job that reside on another input volume. When you later purge the job, the whole job folder is removed from its original volume, but any input files that reside on another input volume are not purged; they remain in their current location.
- Archiving selected files within a job archives only those files. Files that you added to the job from another input volume and files that you copied to the job folder are only archived if you specifically select those files in Job Manager.

When you archive a signature or separation, all of the files linked to that signature or separation are also archived.

To archive, you must specify in the archive process template the media pools or disks to which you want to archive. You should always archive

to more than one media pool or disk, so that you always have a spare copy.

Note: You cannot perform incremental archiving. Complete archiving removes the need for Prinerity to check each file for changes before archiving. When archiving to tape, complete archiving removes the need to switch tapes before archiving—for example—if changed job files are on a different tape than the original job.

About purging

Purging job files removes archived files from the volume on which you created the job. This frees up active disk space but retains a record of the purged files so that they can be retrieved later. You can purge job files only if they are already archived.

When you purge a whole job, the whole job folder is removed from its original volume, but any input files that reside on another input volume are not purged; they remain in their current location.

When you use a purge process template, be sure to specify the same media pools or disk volumes to which you archived the files. Prior to purging the files, Archiver verifies that the files were successfully archived to the specified pools or disks. If you do not specify all of the same pools or disks to which you archived the files, Archiver will check only that each file has been archived to one pool or disk and you may accidentally purge job files before duplicate copies of the archive are made.

Purging versus destroying

Destroying a job completely removes it from the system, and removes all information about the job from the database.

Destroying is different from purging a job; job data is retained in the database. Destroying a job removes the job folder and all of its contents from the volume on which the job was created. (Any files that you added to the job that reside on another input volume are not destroyed.)

After a job is destroyed, you cannot retrieve it. Therefore, you should destroy a job only if you will never need it again. If you think you may need to print the job again, archive and purge it instead.

About retrieving

You can retrieve files if you need to access job files after you archive and purge them. For example, you may want to remake a plate for the job.

Retrieving job files restores them back to the volume on which the job was originally created. You can retrieve job files only if they were previously archived.

When you retrieve a separation, all of the files linked to that separation are also retrieved. When you retrieve a signature, all of the files linked to that signature are also retrieved.

When you attempt to retrieve a file that is already on the volume, Prinerity checks to see if the file to be retrieved matches the file that is online. If the modification dates and times of the two files match, the stored file is not retrieved unless **Overwrite Existing Files** is selected in the retrieve process template.

About status and state changes after archiving, purging, and retrieving

For information about the result of archiving, purging, or retrieving processes, review the archive state of job files or the archive status of the job.

Use the Visible Columns dialog box in Job Manager and Job Finder to display archive columns.

Archive State

The archive state of the file. Possible states are:

- **Online and Never Archived:** The file has never been archived, purged, or retrieved.
- **Online and Currently Archived:** The file has been archived, but has not been purged or retrieved.
- **Offline:** The file has been purged. (It also had to be archived before the purge, or the purging would not occur.)
- **Online and Previously Archived:** The file has been changed since it was archived, and has not been archived since it was changed.
- **Missing:** The file is not on the file system, and it has not been archived. It also has not been purged because purging deletes files only if they have been archived. Therefore, an action other than purging deleted the file.

A job's **Stale Archive Status** is connected to the **Archive State** of its files.

- If the **Archive State** of all files in a job is **Online and Never Archived** or **Online and Currently Archived**, the job's **Stale Archive Status** is **None Stale**.
- If the **Archive State** of some files is **Online and Previously Archived**, the job's **Stale Archive Status** is **Some Stale**.

A file's archive status changes as follows:

| After | The File's Archive State Is |
|------------|---|
| Archiving | Online and Currently Archived |
| Purging | Offline , if the file is in the job folder. Purging affects files only if they are in the job folder. Missing if Archiver doesn't find the file and file isn't archived. |
| Retrieving | Online and Previously Archived |

Archive Status

The quantity of files in the job that you have archived at any time. Possible statuses are:

- **None:** The job has not been archived.
- **Some:** Some but not all files in the job were archived. This can occur when you:
 - Archive only selected files, not the whole job
 - Archive the job, and then add one or more files to the job, for example, by adding input or processing an input file that had not been processed before the archive
 - Change one or more of the archived files, for example by processing it again
- **All:** The job was archived and no changes have been made to any files in the job.

A job's archive status changes as follows:

| After | The Job's Archive Status Is |
|------------|---|
| Archiving | All if the job was archived. Some if selected files were archived. |
| Purging | Unchanged |
| Retrieving | Unchanged |

Archiving

1. Using the Process Template Editor, set up the archive process template.

For settings available in the process template, see Archive Process Template.

2. Select the jobs or files that you want to archive. Perform any of the following actions, depending on what you want to archive:

| To Do This | Perform These Steps |
|---|---|
| Archive an entire job | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you are in Job Manager, under Process Templates in the right pane, select either the Global tab or the Job tab. If you are in Job Finder, select one or more jobs. |
| Archive only the files that are in the job folder | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Open the job in Job Manager. (You can't use Job Finder to work with specific files in a job.) Click the Storage view. Click Group File by Kind. Select View > Visible Columns, select the Location check box, and click OK. Select all of the files, except the files in the Input Files group that have an external location. |
| Archive specific files | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Open the job in Job Manager. (You can't use Job Finder to work with specific files in a job.) Select the files. |
| Archive only the files that have changed since the last archive | Not possible. Archive the entire job again. |

Tip:

- To archive an imposition plan, select all signatures.
- To archive a page set, select the whole page set, not just individual pages.

3. Start the Archive process template by selecting **Process > Storage > Archive > Archive > ArchiveSelected**.

After the process ends, you can check the archive status of the job or the archive state of individual files. See [About Status and State Changes after Archiving, Purging, and Retrieving](#).

See also:

[Selecting items in Job Manager](#) on page 30

[About monitoring processes in Job Manager](#) on page 839

[About status and state changes after archiving, purging, and retrieving](#) on page 877

[Archive process template](#) on page 879

Archive process template

This process template contains only one section, represented by the archive icon:



Verify Archive

Enables the system to verify that what is written to the medium can be retrieved. To do this, the system archives the files, and then verifies the retrievability of the files by reading them and comparing them to the files that it archived. If the files differ, the system fails the archive process and places an error message in the **History** view of Job Manager. You should rearchive files when the system detects an error during the verification step.

We recommend that you enable the **Verify Archive** feature.

Note: When you enable this feature, the archive process takes twice as long because the system reads back all of the files that it archived to ensure that the files can be retrieved.

Fault Tolerance

Specifies whether the process will stop if a warning or error is encountered. Options are:

- **Continue on File Warning or Error:** The process continues even if a file warning or error is encountered.
- **Continue on File Warning / Abort on first File Error:** The process continues if a file warning is encountered, but stops if a file error is encountered. Files that have been archived/purged before the error remain archived/purged.
- **Abort on first File Warning or Error:** The process stops if a file warning or error is encountered. Files that have been archived/purged before the warning or error remain archived/purged.

You can view warning and error details in the **History** view of Job Manager.

Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes

Specifies the media pools or disk volumes that receive the archived job files. If you specify multiple media pools or disk volumes, each media pool or disk volume receives a copy of the archived files.

Select at least two media pools or disk volumes to create duplicate copies of your archives. With two copies, you have a backup in case a tape is lost or a tape or disk is damaged or destroyed.

Remember to create a purge process template with the same media pools or disk volumes as the archive process template. Before purging, Archiver checks that each file has been archived to each specified media pool or disk volume. If you do not

specify all of the media pools or disk volumes, you may purge a job before making duplicate copies of the archive.

Available Pools and Disk Volumes

Lists the media pools and disk volumes available to archive job files. You add media pools or disk volumes from the **Available Pools and Disk Volumes** box to the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** box.

Note: For the **Available Pools and Disk Volumes** list to display media pools and disk volumes, the Archive/Retrieve JTP must be running. For information about JTPs, see the System Administration guide.

Add

In the **Available Pools and Disk Volumes** list, select the media pools or disk volumes to which you want to archive and then click **Add** to move the selected pools or disk volumes to the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list.

Delete

Removes selected media pools or disk volumes from the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list.

Reset

Resets the list of media pools and disk volumes in the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** box to the list that you last saved.

Purging

- Using the Process Template Editor, set up the purge process template.
For settings available in the process template, see Purge Process Template.
- Perform any of the following actions, depending on what you want to purge:

| To Do This | Perform These Steps |
|---------------------|--|
| Purge an entire job | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you are in Job Manager, under Process Templates in the right pane, select either the Global tab or the Job tab. If you are in Job Finder, select one or more jobs. |

| To Do This | Perform These Steps |
|---|--|
| Purge only the files that are in the job folder | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Open the job in Job Manager. (You can't use Job Finder to work with specific files in a job.) b. Click Storage view. c. Click Group by File Kind. d. Select View > Visible Columns, select the Location check box, and click OK. e. Select all of the files, except the files in the Input Files group that have an external location. |
| Purge specific files | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Open the job in Job Manager. b. Click Storage view. c. Click Group by File Kind. d. Select the files. |

Tip:

- To purge anything, it must have been previously archived.
- To purge specific files, the files must be in the job folder.
- To purge an imposition plan, select all signatures.
- To purge a page set, select the whole page set, not just individual pages.

3. Start the purge process template by selecting **Process > Storage > Purge > Purge > PurgeSelected.**

After the process ends, you can check the archive status of the job or the archive state of individual files. See [About Status and State Changes after Archiving, Purging, and Retrieving](#).

See also:

[Selecting items in Job Manager](#) on page [30](#)

[About monitoring processes in Job Manager](#) on page [839](#)

[About status and state changes after archiving, purging, and retrieving](#) on page [877](#)

[Purge process template](#) on page [882](#)

Purge process template

Mark Job as Completed After Successful Purge

Sets the status of purged jobs to **Completed**.

When a job is set to **Completed**, it becomes inactive. Prinergy does not process files that you drop into the job's hot folders and does not display the job in Prepress Portal.

When you disable this feature, the status of the job does not change after you have purged it.

Fault Tolerance

Specifies whether the process will stop if a warning or error is encountered. Options are:

- **Continue on File Warning or Error:** The process continues even if a file warning or error is encountered.
- **Continue on File Warning / Abort on first File Error:** The process continues if a file warning is encountered, but stops if a file error is encountered. Files that have been archived/purged before the error remain archived/purged.
- **Abort on first File Warning or Error:** The process stops if a file warning or error is encountered. Files that have been archived/purged before the warning or error remain archived/purged.

You can view warning and error details in the **History** view of Job Manager.

Available Pools and Disk Volumes

Before Archiver purges a file, it checks that the file was successfully archived to each of the media pools or disk volumes listed in the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list. The **Available Pools and Disk Volumes** list lists the media pools and disk volumes available to be checked. You add media pools or disk volumes from the **Available Pools and Disk Volumes** list to the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list.

Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes

Before Archiver purges a file, it checks that the file was successfully archived to each of the media pools or disk volumes listed in the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list. If Archiver cannot find a file in one of the specified media pools or disk volumes, the purge will fail and it will not delete the file from disk.

When you purge files, the media pools or disk volumes that you specify in the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list of the purge process template should match the media pools or disk volumes to which you archived the files (as specified in the archive process template that you used).

If you do not specify any media pools or disk volumes, Archiver checks only that each file has been archived to one media pool or disk volume and you may accidentally purge a file before duplicate copies of the archive are made.

For information about setting up media pools or disk volumes, see the Prinerly administration documentation.

Add

Before Archiver purges a file, it checks that the file was successfully archived to each of the media pools or disk volumes listed in the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list.

In the **Available Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list, select the media pools or disk volumes that you want Archiver to check, and then click **Add** to move the selected pools or disk volumes to the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list.

Delete

Removes selected media pools or disk volumes from the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list.

Reset

Resets the list of media pools and disk volumes in the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** box to the list that you last saved.

Retrieving

- Using the Process Template Editor, set up the retrieve process template.
For settings available in the process template, see Retrieve Process Template.
- Perform any of the following actions, depending on what you want to retrieve:

| To Do This | Perform These Steps |
|--|---|
| Retrieve an entire job | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you are in Job Manager, under Process Templates in the right pane, select either the Global tab or the Job tab. If you are in Job Finder, select one or more jobs. |
| Retrieve only the files that are in the job folder | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Open the job in Job Manager. (You can't use Job Finder to work with specific files in a job.) Click Storage view. Click Group by File Kind. Select View > Visible Columns, select the Location check box and click OK. Select all of the files except the files in the Input Files group that have an external location. |

| To Do This | Perform These Steps |
|-------------------------|--|
| Retrieve specific files | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Open the job in Job Manager. (You can't use Job Finder to work with specific files in a job.) b. Click Storage view. c. Click Group by File Kind. d. Select the files. |

Tip:

- To retrieve anything, it must have been previously purged.
- To retrieve specific files, the files must be in the job folder.
- To retrieve an imposition plan, select all signatures.
- To retrieve a page set, select the whole page set, not just individual pages.

3. Start the Retrieve process template by selecting **Process > Storage > Retrieve > Retrieve > RetrieveSelected**.

After the process ends, you can check the archive status of the job or the archive state of individual files. See [About Status and State Changes after Archiving, Purging, and Retrieving](#).

See also:

[Selecting items in Job Manager](#) on page [30](#)

[About monitoring processes in Job Manager](#) on page [839](#)

[About status and state changes after archiving, purging, and retrieving](#) on page [877](#)

[Retrieve process template](#) on page [885](#)

Retrieve process template

Overwrite Existing Files

Overwrites files even if the archived files are older than those being overwritten.

Available Pools and Disk Volumes

Lists the media pools or disk volumes available to be searched during the retrieval process. You add media pools or disk volumes from the **Available Pools and Disk Volumes** list to the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list.

When you retrieve archived files, the media pools or disk volumes that you specify in the retrieve process template should match the media pools or disk volumes to which you archived the files (as specified in the archive process template that you used).

Note: For the **Available Pools and Disk Volumes** list to display media pools or disk volumes, the Archive/Retrieve JTP must be running. For information about JTPs, see the System Administration guide.

Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes

When retrieving files, Archiver searches the media in the archiving devices and disk volumes. If it cannot find the files, it searches the media pools and disk volumes specified in the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list.

If you do not specify any media pools or disk volumes and Archiver cannot find the files on any media in the archiving devices, Archiver arbitrarily chooses a medium that contains the file.

When you retrieve archived files, the media pools and disk volumes that you specify in the retrieve process template should match the media pools and disk volumes to which you archived the files (as specified in the archive process template that you used).

For information about setting up media pools, see the System Administration guide.

Add

In the **Available Pools and Disk Volumes** list, select the media pools or disk volumes that you want Archiver to search for files to retrieve, and then click **Add** to move the selected pools or disk volumes to the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list.

Delete

Removes selected media pools or disk volumes from the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list.

Move Up

In the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list, select a media pool or disk volume and then click **Move Up** to move the medium up the list. The order in which media pools and disk volumes are listed specifies the order in which Archiver searches the pools for files to retrieve.

Move Down

In the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** list, select a media pool or disk volume and then click **Move Down** to move the medium down the list. The order in which media pools and disk volumes are listed specifies the order in which Archiver searches the pools and disk volumes for files to retrieve.

Reset

Resets the list of media pools and disk volumes in the **Archive Media Pools and Disk Volumes** box to the list that you last saved.

Moving from Archive-to-tape to Archive-to-disk

Users who want to migrate away from Archive-to-tape and start to use Archive-to-disk sometimes look for guidelines on migrating existing archives. Kodak does not want to recommend strategies that put excessive strain on the tape media or tape device, which could cause lost data for critical jobs.

Therefore, the Kodak recommendation is to only retrieve the jobs that you need, using either of the following two approaches:

- Use a Prinerity Tape Retrieval (PTR) software configuration, which is a standalone Prinerity server that only retrieves jobs from tape.
- Retrieve jobs from tape piecemeal as you need them for reprints, and then archive to disk when you're done.

Use a Prinerity Tape Retrieval (PTR) software configuration

1. Retrieve jobs from tape piecemeal as you need them for reprints.

Note: For more information, see the *Prinerity Tape Retrieval Software User Guide*.

2. Do a job export.
3. Import the job export on the main production Prinerity system.
4. Archive the job to disk when you've finished reprinting the job.

The drawback is that folders (such as `UserDefined` and so on) need to be manually moved to the production system, and job history is not included.

Retrieve jobs from tape as needed and then archive to disk

1. Retrieve jobs from tape piecemeal as you need them for reprints.
2. Archive the job to disk when you've finished reprinting the job.

The drawback is that this approach will be impossible in Prinerity 6, where Windows 2008 will be required, and therefore Prinerity will no longer support tape devices. Customers who are using this approach by the time Prinerity 6 is available will need to either:

- Abandon any tape-based jobs that haven't yet been retrieved and re-archived to disk, or
- Adopt Prinerity Tape Retrieval software

Media Manager

About managing storage media

Media Manager helps you manage your archive tapes and disks. It displays information about the removable storage media and archive disks in your Archiver system, and enables you to:

- Verify that a tape or disk is readable using the **Medium Verify** menu item
- Copy all jobs on a given tape or disk to other media, using the **Medium Logical Copy** menu item, which runs the Archive Medium Logical Copy process template
- Set a tape to read-only using the **Medium Complete** menu item

About Removable Storage media pools

All the tapes in the Removable Storage media pools appear in Media Manager, not just the tapes that Archiver uses.

Note: Removable Storage is a tool in Microsoft Management Console, which is a feature of the Windows operating system. For information about Removable Storage, see the Windows online help.

Archiver supports the following tape formats: AIT (Advanced Intelligent Tape) and LTO (Linear Tape-Open).

For each tape type, Removable Storage creates three default media pools:

- Free media pools
- Import media pools
- Unrecognized media pools

Any other media pools that appear in Removable Storage are software pools created for Media Manager or other software.

Use Archiver only with qualified devices. For information about qualified devices, contact your sales representative.

About verifying a medium

Use the **Medium Verify** operation to verify that:

- A tape or disk is readable.
- A tape or disk has no errors on it.
- The format of a medium's contents is correct.

This operation can take several hours, depending on how much data is on the medium. If there are errors on the medium, it will take longer.

If errors are found:

- You may want to cancel the **Medium Verify** operation if you have other tasks that use the drive.
- You can copy the data to another tape or disk using the **Medium Logical Copy** option.

About copying a medium

Use the **Medium Logical Copy** operation to copy all jobs on a given tape or disk to other tapes or disks in one or more media pools.

Copying is useful to:

- Replace a damaged disk
- Replace a lost or damaged tape
- Make a second copy of data for which only a single copy was originally made
- Copy data from one type of media to another (for example, from an AIT tape to disk)

This operation is called a "logical" copy because it makes another copy of the data on the source tape or disk, but may retrieve the data from other media and may write the data to more than one destination media pool or disk.

How copying works

The Archive Medium Logical Copy process template controls the destination and other aspects of the copying process. Files are copied first to the location specified in the **Temporary Location for Retrieved Files** box of the process template, and then to the destination tape or disk.

Note: The temporary disk location for retrieved files must be on a configured file share.

Data included

Medium Logical Copy makes one copy of all unique data on a given tape or disk.

It does not copy:

- More than one copy of a file on the source medium
- Files that already exist in a destination pool or disk
- Files from a destroyed job
- Files that are no longer registered to a job

If Media Manager finds an error when reading the source medium, it tries to use other copies of the file that are in your system to build a complete new copy of the affected medium.

Resources and time required

Copying requires temporary disk space. It will execute much more slowly if the amount of data stored on the tape or disk is greater than:

- The available free disk space
- The disk space limit specified in the **Working Disk Space to Allocate for Retrieved Files** box in the Archive Medium Logical Copy process template

Copying tasks typically block any other Archiver tasks from executing and can take several hours to complete for large or full media.

Note: If you cancel a copy task, you can restart it. Once restarted, it copies the remaining portion of the data on the media pool or disk.

About completing a tape


Use the **Medium Complete** operation to set a tape to read-only.

This is useful when:

- You have encountered errors reading from or writing to the tape
- You have written particular archives to the tape and do not wish to use it anymore
- The tape is almost full

Note: Media Manager automatically completes tapes when the remaining free space drops below 2.5 percent of the native capacity.

A completed tape can no longer be used for new archive tasks, although it is still available for retrieve tasks.

Performing a Medium Complete operation sets the state of the tape to **Complete** in Removable Storage. Removable Storage Manager uses the same icon for the **Complete** state as for the **Disabled** state: . You can tell the difference between the two states by looking at the **State** column in Removable Storage Manager or the **Partition State** column in the Media Manager **Media** pane.

Viewing information about media pools and disk volumes

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Media Manager**.
2. In the **Pools** pane, select one or more media pool or disk volume. Information about all of the media in the selected media pools and disk volumes appears in the **Media** pane. The exact information that appears depends on the columns that are visible.

Note: Use **Workshop > Media Manager** to monitor the used and free space of the disk volumes you're using. A disk volume with less than 15% free space might have degraded system performance. Consider expanding the disk volume or adding a new disk volume.

Verifying that a media pool or disk volume is readable

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Media Manager**.
2. In the **Pools** pane, select the media pool or disk volume in which the desired medium resides.
All of the media in the selected media pool or disk volume appear in the **Media** pane.
3. In the **Media** pane, select the medium that you want to verify.
4. From the **Medium** menu, select **Medium Verify**, or right-click the medium and select **Medium Verify**.

Medium Verify is not available if you select a media pool that is allocated to software other than Prinergy in Removable Storage Manager.

The Process Info dialog box appears, displaying messages about the status of the process. Messages also appear indicating whether the media pool or disk volume is readable. To see these messages later, display System History.

Copying an entire medium

1. Set up a process template for copying tapes or disks:
 - a. From the **Tools** menu, select **Process Template Editor**.
 - b. In the Process Template Editor window, expand **Archive Medium Logical Copy** type, and then expand the **ArchiveMediumLogicalCopy** group.
 - c. Double-click the **MediumLogicalCopy** process template to edit it, or right-click it and select **New Process Template** to create a new process template.
 - d. In the Archive Medium Logical Copy process template, expand the **Archive Medium Logical Copy** section.
 - e. Define the destination pools or disks, the location for retrieved files, and other options as desired.
2. From the **Tools** menu, select **Media Manager**.
3. In the **Pools** pane, select the tape or disk that you want to copy.
All of the media in the selected media pool appear in the **Media** pane.
4. In the **Media** pane, right-click the tape or disk that you want to copy and select **Medium Logical Copy**.

Tip: You can also select the tape or disk, and select **Medium Logical Copy** from the **Medium** menu.

Note: The **Medium Logical Copy** menu item is not available if you select a media pool that is allocated to software other than Prinerger in Removable Storage Manager.

5. In the Choose Process Template dialog box, select the **MediumLogicalCopy** process template that you created in step 1, and click **OK**.
6. In the Start Process dialog box, click **OK**.

Copying begins as soon as the disks or tapes become available. The Process Info dialog box appears, displaying messages about the status of the process. To see the messages later, display System History.

Making a tape read only

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Media Manager**.
2. In the **Pools** pane, select the media pool in which the desired medium resides.
All of the media in the selected media pool appear in the **Media** pane.
3. In the **Media** pane, perform one of the following actions:
 - Select the medium that you want to complete. From the **Medium** menu, select **Medium Complete**.
 - Right-click the medium and select **Medium Complete**.

Medium Complete is not available if you select a media pool that is allocated to software other than Prinerger in Removable Storage Manager.

The medium is now listed as **Complete** in the **Partition State** column of the **Media** pane. To see these messages later, display System History.

Archive Medium Logical Copy process template

Available Pools and Disk Volumes

Lists the media pools and disk volumes that can be added to the **Destination Pools and Disk Volumes** list or the **Prompt for Tapes From These Pools First** list.

Destination Pools and Disk Volumes

Specifies the media pools and disk volumes to which copies of the jobs will be written. You add media pools and disk volumes to the **Destination Pools and Disk Volumes** list from the **Available Pools and Disk Volumes** list. When you specify a media pool or disk volume, Archiver selects one or more tapes or disk volumes in that media pool to which to copy the data.

We strongly recommend that you archive to two media pools or disk volumes. Similarly, if you are copying a damaged tape or disk volume, we recommend that you create multiple copies by selecting more than one destination pool or disk volume.

Prompt for Tapes From These Pools First

Prinerger may be unable to access a file from a medium in a library, for example, because the file cannot be found on the medium or the file has a read error. In this case, Prinerger may need to retrieve the file from an offline medium and will begin searching other media pools for a medium that contains the desired file. Use the **Prompt for Tapes from These Pools First** list to specify the media pools that you want Prinerger to search first.

For example, you would likely want to prompt for a medium from an onsite pool, rather than an offsite pool. If multiple pools are listed, Prinerger prompts for a medium from the first pool in the list if a medium is available in the pool that contains the desired file. If the file is not available on any medium in the first pool, Prinerger tries to locate the file on a medium in the second pool, and so on.

Add

In the **Available Pools and Disk Volumes** list, select the media pools or disk volumes that you want to add to the **Destination Pools and Disk Volumes** list or the **Prompt for Tapes From These Pools First** list and then click the **Add** button that is next to the desired list.

Delete

Click **Delete** next to the **Destination Pools and Disk Volumes** list to remove the selected media pools and disk volumes from that list.

Click **Delete** next to the **Prompt for Tapes From These Pools First** list to remove the selected media pools from that list.

Move Up

In the **Prompt for Tapes From These Pools First** list, select a media pool and then click **Move Up** to move the media pool up the list. The order in which media pools are listed specifies the order in which Archiver searches the pools for files to copy, when the files cannot be accessed from the medium specified in Media Manager.

Move Down

In the **Prompt for Tapes From These Pools First** list, select a media pool and then click **Move Down** to move the media pool down the list. The order in which media pools are listed specifies the order in which Archiver will search the pools for files to copy, when the files cannot be accessed from the medium specified in Media Manager.

Reset

Resets the list of media pools and disk volumes in the **Destination Pools and Disk Volumes** list or the **Prompt for Tapes From These Pools First** list to the list that you last saved.

Temporary Location for Retrieved Files

Medium Logical Copy retrieves each file to disk as it copies the source medium. Once files are copied back to a destination medium, the temporary disk file is deleted. Use the **Temporary Location for Retrieved Files** list to specify a location where the retrieved files will be temporarily stored.

Important: The temporary location for retrieved files must not be inside a folder that is shared using Services For Macintosh (SFM).

Note: The temporary disk location for retrieved files must be on a configured file share.

Working Disk Space to Allocate for Retrieved Files

Specifies the maximum amount of disk space in GB that the system should use for temporarily storing retrieved files. The default is 20 GB.

The more space you allocate, the more efficient the Medium Logical Copy process will be. Allocating enough space prevents excessive tape swapping.

Note: If you cancel and restart a copy task, recovery takes less time if your working space allocation is smaller.

You can look in Media Manager to see how much data is on a tape or disk volume when considering how much space to allocate for temporary storage of retrieved files. The value in the **Used Space** column is roughly the amount of space you will need to be able to store all of the data on the tape or disk volume.

Verify Archive

Select this option to have the system read every new archive that the Medium Logical Copy task creates, to verify that no hard read errors exist on the destination media.

The purpose of this feature is to ensure that the new tape or disk volume is readable and that the information is retrievable. We recommend that you always enable this option.

If the verification of any new archive fails, the system fails the process and displays an error message in the **History** view of Job Manager and in System History.

Note: When you enable this option, the write phase of the Medium Logical Copy process will take about twice as long.

Skip Remainder of Saveset After First File Read Error

Prevents Archiver from trying to copy the rest of the job after receiving a file read error.

When this feature is enabled and Archiver encounters a file read error, it tries to copy the job from another tape or disk volume (if you archived the job to at least two media pools or disk volumes). Copying the job from another tape or disk volume will likely be much faster than trying to copy from a tape or disk volume with errors.

If the feature is disabled, Archiver tries to copy each file in the job. The time it takes depends largely on the number of files. If some files are barely readable, the process can be extremely slow.

Disable this feature only if all of the following are true:

- The first Medium Logical Copy attempt failed.
- No other copy of the job exists.
- You really need the data.

For tape archives, if you try to perform a medium logical copy with the feature disabled, cleaning the tape drive first gives you the best chance of reading the data.

Media Manager window

The Media Manager window consists of two panes:

Pools

Displays the media pools set up in Removable Storage Manager in the Microsoft Management Console and any archive disks set up by your Prinerdy Administrator. When you select a pool or disk volume in the **Pools** pane of Media Manager, the media in that pool or disk volume appear in the **Media** pane.

Media

Displays the media in the media pool or disk volume that is selected in the **Pools** pane.

The columns in the Media Manager window, which depend on which columns you are displaying or hiding, can include:

Columns in the Pools Pane

Name

Lists all of the media pools and disk volumes in your system. These include the media pools that appear in the Removable Storage Manager and any disk volumes that your Prinergy administrator has set up.

Number of Media

The number of media in the media pool—for example, a media pool may contain five tapes.

Media Type

The type of media in the media pool. Archiver supports the following media types:

- AIT (Advanced Intelligent Tape) tapes
- LTO (Linear Tape-Open) tapes
- Disk (archive disk volumes)

Columns in the Media Pane

Name

The name of the physical medium. This name will be the same as the name of the medium in Removable Storage Manager or will be the name of the archive disk volume.

Location

Where the medium is located. This can be a tape library, a stand-alone tape drive, or an offline location.

Pool

The name of the media pool to which the medium belongs.

Type

The type of media in the media pool. Archiver supports the following media types:

- AIT (Advanced Intelligent Tape) tapes
- LTO (Linear Tape-Open) tapes
- Disk (archive disk volumes)

Created

The date that Archiver first wrote to the medium.

Last Modified

The date and time that Archiver last wrote to the medium.

Free Space

The estimated amount of unused space in the partition.

Used Space

The sum of all the archives on this medium. The used space is calculated based on the original size of the files on disk. The **Used Space** amount can be more than the **Partition Capacity** if the files have been compressed. This value does not account for the space consumed to format the data onto tape—that is, it will underestimate the amount of data actually on tape.

Partition Capacity

The total size of the partition (uncompressed or native).

Partition State

The logical state of the partition on the medium. Possible states are:

- **Allocated**
- **Available**
- **Complete**
- **Import**
- **New**

For more information about partition and media states, see the Prinerger System Administration guide or the Removable Storage Manager guide.

Media State

The physical state of the medium. Possible states are:

- **Idle**
- **In Use**
- **Loaded**

- **Mounted**
- **Waiting for an Operator Request**

Format

The format of the tape medium. This information comes directly from Removable Storage Manager. Formats include:

- Creo (MTF)
- Creo (Prinerger)
- RSM Free Label
- WindowsBackup (MTF)

See also:

[Displaying and hiding columns](#) on page [1034](#)

Menus in Media Manager

Workshop menu in Media Manager

Note: This menu is available only when running Prinerger Workshop on a Macintosh client.

About Prinerger Workshop

Displays information about Prinerger Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the server name.

Preferences

Use to view and modify Prinerger Workshop preferences. When you select this menu item, the Workshop Preferences dialog box appears.

Note: On a Windows client, this menu item appears under the **Edit** menu. On a Macintosh client, it appears under the **Workshop** menu.

Quit / Quit Prinerger Workshop

Quits Prinerger Workshop. Any open Prinerger Workshop windows are closed.

Medium menu in Media Manager

Medium Verify

Verifies that the selected medium can be read, that there are no errors on it, and that the format of the contents is correct.

This menu item is not available when you select a medium that is allocated to software other than Prinergy in Removable Storage Manager.

Medium Logical Copy

Copies all jobs on the selected medium to other media in one or more media pools. Use the operation to replace a damaged medium or to make a second copy of data for which only a single copy was originally made. You can also use the operation to copy data for one media type to another (for example, from a DLT tape to an AIT tape, or from an AIT tape to a disk volume).

If a read error is encountered on the source medium, Media Manager attempts to use other copies of the file that are in your system to build a complete new copy of the affected medium.

This menu item is not available when you select a medium that is allocated to software other than Prinergy in Removable Storage Manager.

Medium Complete

Sets the selected tape to read-only. You may want to set a tape to read-only if:

- You have encountered errors reading from or writing to the tape.
- You have written particular archives to the tape and do not wish to use it anymore.
- The tape is almost full.

The tape is set to **Complete** in Removable Storage Manager as well as in Media Manager.

This menu item is not available when you select a tape that is allocated to software other than Prinergy in Removable Storage Manager.

Close Window

Closes the current window, but does not quit Prinergy Workshop.

Quit / Quit Prinergy Workshop

Quits Prinergy Workshop. Any open Prinergy Workshop windows are closed.

Edit menu in Media Manager

Cut, **Copy**, and **Paste** appear on the **Edit** menu, but they do not apply.

View menu in Media Manager

Refresh

Updates the contents of the current window.

Visible Columns

Use to display and hide columns in the current window or pane. When you select this menu item, the Visible Columns dialog box appears. From there, you select the columns that you want to display, and clear the columns that you want to hide.

The columns that can be displayed vary from window to window.

Tools menu in Media Manager

Change User

Displays the Connect to Server dialog box where you can log in as another user without quitting Prinergy Workshop.

This menu item appears only if you have Kodak Prinergy Business Link software connected to the Prinergy system.

Job Finder

Opens Job Finder.

If you are already in Job Finder, this menu item is unavailable.

Destroy History Entries

In the **History** view, select one or more history entries and then use **Destroy History Entries** to delete the selected entries.

Process Template Editor

Launches **Process Template Editor**, where you can create and modify process templates.

Automated Page Assignment Editor

Starts the **Automated Page Assignment Editor**, which you use to create and check APA files.

Queue Manager

Launches **Queue Manager**, where you can view the Job Ticket Processors (JTPs) and process types.

Media Manager

Launches **Media Manager**, where you can manage your archive tapes and disk volumes.

System History

Launches **System History**, which displays the detailed history of all the activity occurring outside of job context (such as jobs and groups that were created or destroyed), as well as job archive, purge, and retrieve history.

Smart Hot Folder Manager

Launches the Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box, where you can add, edit and delete smart hot folders.

Configure Imposition Application

Displays the Configure Imposition Applications dialog box, where you can identify the location of imposition software that you want to integrate with Prinergy Workshop.

Start Imposition Application

Displays the Start Imposition Application dialog box, where you choose which imposition software to start. You create this list of imposition applications with the Configure Imposition Application tool from the **Tools** menu. If an application requires a license and is licensed, it appears in bold.

Color Editor

Launches **Color Editor**, where you can create color recipes for all jobs.

Color Space Editor

Launches **Color Space Editor**, where you can create and edit color spaces.

Font Converter

Launches **Font Converter**, where you can convert font files into PFA (Printer Font ASCII) format, which Prinergy requires to correctly process fonts.

Preflight Profile Manager

Launches **Preflight Profile Manager**, where you can, during the refine process, evaluate PDFs to detect problems that may affect processing in a publishing or prepress workflow.

Digital Print Administration Console

Launches the Digital Print Administrator, where you can add and configure a digital print application that Prinergy can launch to print PDFs.

Rule Set Manager

Opens the Rule Set Manager, where you can create and edit rule sets. The Rule Set Manager also lets you organize rule sets into groups.

Activate Rule Set in Selected Jobs

Opens the **Select Rule Set** dialog box, where you can activate rule sets for one or more jobs.

Help menu in Media Manager

Online help

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy online help.

On <current window or view>

Starts your Web browser and displays the Prinergy Workshop user guide, open to the topic for the currently selected window or view.

Quick Start Guide

Starts Adobe Acrobat and displays a PDF file of the *Prinergy Connect Quick Start Guide*

eCentral Online Support

Starts your Web browser and displays the eCentral portal at <https://ecentral.kodak.com/>.

Visit graphics.kodak.com

Starts your Web browser and displays the Kodak Web site at <http://graphics.kodak.com/default.htm>.

About Prinergy Workshop

Displays information about Prinergy Workshop, including the version number, a list of licensed features, and the Prinergy server name.

Note: This menu item appears on the **Help** menu only when you are running Prinergy Workshop on a Windows-based client computer. On a Macintosh client computer, the menu item **About Workshop** appears on the **Workshop** menu.

Keyboard shortcuts in Media Manager

| Macintosh Keyboard Shortcut | Windows Keyboard Shortcut | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| ⌘ + Q | Ctrl + Q | Quits Prinergy Workshop |
| ⌘ + R | Ctrl + R | Refreshes the selected view |
| ⌘ + W | Ctrl + W | Closes the Media Manager window |

Cut, **Copy**, and **Paste** appear on the **Edit** menu, but they do not apply to Media Manager.

18

Automation

For rules-based automation (RBA), see the Rules-Based Automation guide.

Hot folders

About hot folders

A hot folder is a job-specific folder that automatically performs a process when you drop a source file in it.

Note: This topic is about job hot folders. If you want to work with smart hot folders, see Using Smart Hot Folders.

You can create hot folders to automate the process of:

- Adding input files to a job
- Refining input files while adding them
- Importing imposition plans

You must use Prinergy Workshop to create a hot folder for a job. You cannot create a hot folder in a file browser. After you create a hot folder, you cannot change its name or location.

You can create a hot folder in a location that is outside of the job folder but within the confines of the network. This is called a custom location. Even though the hot folder is outside of the job folder, it is still associated with the job. When you add files to a hot folder in a custom location, the files are moved to the job folder and placed in the `<Job>\HotFolders\Processed` folder. If you archive the job, any files in the `Processed` folder are archived with the job.

After creating a hot folder, you can add files to it in either of these ways:

- Using a file browser to browse to it and drop files into the hot folder
- Printing files directly from other software (for example, QuarkXPress for input files or Preps for imposition plans) to the hot folder

Hot folders are specific to each job or pre-job. You can reuse hot folders by creating a template job as the basis for new jobs.

Some hot folder parameters can be configured using Administrator. For example, you can set the number of files that will be processed together

when files are dropped into a hot folder. For information about configuring hot folders, see the Prinergy System Administration guide.

See also:

[About adding files to a hot folder](#) on page [906](#)

[About hot folders functions](#) on page [907](#)

[Reusing hot folders with a template job](#) on page [909](#)

[Smart hot folders](#) on page [912](#)

About adding files to a hot folder

Note: This topic is about job hot folders. If you want to work with smart hot folders, see Using Smart Hot Folders.

When you add files to a hot folder, the result depends on the type of files and the type of hot folder:

- Adding input files to an add-only hot folder:

Input files appear in the Input Files pane.

If you drop a file a second time, the new file overwrites the existing file if both files have the same name.

- Adding files to a hot folder linked to a Refine process template:

Input files appear in the Input Files pane.

Prinergy processes the input files into PDF pages, which appear in the Pages pane.

If you drop a file a second time, the new file overwrites the existing file if both files have the same name. The new file is processed again if the number of pages in the old and new file are the same.

- Adding an export to a hot folder linked to a ImportAll process template attached to a pre-job:

Prinergy creates a job with the same name as the zip file, and adds files from the export to the job.

- Adding a partial export to a hot folder linked to a ImportIncremental process template:

Prinergy adds the files from the partial export to the job. If the name of an imported signature matches the name of an existing signature, Prinergy adds an "01" suffix to the imported signature.

- Adding an imposition plan to a hot folder linked to an Import process template:

The imposition plan appears in the Imposition Plans pane.

- Adding files to a hot folder linked to a workflow template:

The results of the import and refine processes are identical to those listed above.

For the output process template, the files are sent to the specified output device.

Supported file formats

You can add the following types of files to hot folders:

- Single-file format: PostScript, EPS, PDF
- Multi-file format: DCS 1, DCS 2, TIFF/IT
- Job and imposition: JT, ZIP

Re-dropping a file into a hot folder

You can re-drop a file into a hot folder; the new file overwrites the existing file if they have the same name. You can also successfully re-refine the new file as long as the number of pages in the old and new files are the same. If the number of pages differ, Prinergy stops the refine process and reports an error.

About hot folders functions

Note: This topic is about job hot folders. If you want to work with smart hot folders, see *Using Smart Hot Folders*.

You can create two types of hot folders—ones that only add files and ones that also process files.

Add input files only

An **Add input files only** hot folder is used to add input files to a job without processing them. Added files automatically appear in the Input Files pane in Job Manager. For example, if you drop a PostScript file into the hot folder, the file is automatically added to the job to which the hot folder is attached.

Add and process files

This type of hot folder has a process template or workflow template linked to it. When you drop files into the hot folder, the files are automatically processed as specified in the process template or workflow template.

For example, if you drop a PostScript file into a hot folder that is linked to a refine process template, the file is automatically added to the job's hot folder and refined. The PostScript file appears in the Input Files pane.

Adding files to a hot folder

Requirements: Before adding files to a hot folder, you must create the hot folder.

Note: This topic is about job hot folders. If you want to work with smart hot folders, see Using Smart Hot Folders.

1. Identify the location of the hot folder.

Most hot folders are inside the job folder at `\Jobs\<<job name>\HotFolders\<<hot folder>`, but they can also use a custom location on the network.

2. Perform any of the following actions:

- Using a file browser, drag-and-drop or copy the files from their original location (for example, a file server) into the hot folder.
- If applicable, print the files directly from the software to the hot folder.

Creating hot folders

Note: This topic is about job hot folders. If you want to work with smart hot folders, see Using Smart Hot Folders.

1. Open the job or pre-job.
2. From the **Job** menu, select **Manage Hot Folders**.
3. In the Manage Hot Folders for Job dialog box, click **Add**.
4. In the Create Hot Folder for Job dialog box, indicate what you want the hot folder to do by selecting either **Add Input Files Only** or **Add and Process Files**.
5. If you are creating a hot folder to process files:
 - Browse to and select the process template or workflow template that you want to link to the hot folder.
 - If you want the source files to be deleted after they are processed, click the **Delete dropped files if processing is successful** check box.

Important: Do not select this check box if you are uncertain of source file integrity, for example, if files may be using incorrect search paths.
6. If you want a different name for the hot folder, change it in the **Name** box.
7. If you want the hot folder to be located somewhere other than in the job folder:
 - a. Expand the **Options** section and select **Use Custom Location**.
 - b. When the Select Folder dialog box appears, select the desired location and click **Select "<folder>"**.
8. Click **OK**, and then click **Close**.

Deleting hot folders

Requirements:

Make sure that the hot folder is not processing files. If you delete a hot folder that is still processing files, any unfinished processes end with an error.

Note: This topic is about job hot folders. If you want to work with smart hot folders, see Using Smart Hot Folders.

1. Open the job or pre-job.
2. From the **Job** menu, select **Manage Hot Folders**.
3. In the Manage Hot Folders for Job dialog box, select the hot folder that you want to delete, and click **Delete**.
4. When the Confirm Hot Folder Delete dialog box appears, click **OK**, and then click **Close**.

Editing hot folders

Note: This topic is about job hot folders. If you want to work with smart hot folders, see Using Smart Hot Folders.

1. Open the job or pre-job.
2. From the **Job** menu, select **Manage Hot Folders**.
3. In the Manage Hot Folders for Job dialog box, select the hot folder that you want to edit and click **Edit**.
4. In the Edit Hot Folder for Job dialog box, edit the options as desired.

Note: You cannot change the name or location of a hot folder once it has been created.

5. Click **OK**, and then click **Close**.

Reusing hot folders with a template job

Note: This topic is about job hot folders. If you want to work with smart hot folders, see Using Smart Hot Folders.

If you expect to create the same hot folders for several jobs, you can reuse the same hot folders by creating them in a template job on which you base new jobs.

1. Create a job with the hot folders that you expect to reuse in other jobs.
Consider this job your template job.
2. When you create a new job, click ▸ beside **Options**, and select **Template Job**.
3. In the Select Template Job dialog box, select your template job.
4. Under **Copy From Selected Job**, select **Hot Folders**.

5. Click **OK**, and click **Create**.

Disabling hot folders

Use this procedure if you want to disable a hot folder, but you do not want to delete it in order that it may be used at a later date.





Requirements:

Make sure that the hot folder is not processing files. If you disable a hot folder that is still processing files, any unfinished processes end with an error.

Note: This topic is about job hot folders. If you want to work with smart hot folders, see Using Smart Hot Folders.

1. Open the job or pre-job.
2. From the **Job** menu, select **Manage Hot Folders**.
3. In the Manage Hot Folders for Job dialog box, select the hot folder that you want to delete, and click **Disable**.

If you are using Windows Explorer or Mac Finder with SMB file-sharing protocol, the hot folder status is represented by the following icons:

| Status | Windows Explorer | Mac Finder |
|---------------------|---|---|
| Enabled hot folder |  |  |
| Disabled hot folder |  |  |

Create/Edit Hot Folder for Job dialog box

This dialog is called **Create Hot Folder for Job** when you are adding a new hot folder, and it is called **Edit Hot Folder for Job** when you are changing an existing hot folder.

Add Input Files Only

Select this option to create an add-input-files-only hot folder.

Use this type of hot folder to add input files to a job without processing them.

Add and Process Files

Select this option if you want the hot folder to process files. When you drop files into the hot folder, the files are automatically processed.

This type of hot folder links to process templates and workflow templates.

Select a template from the list

Displays the process templates, workflow templates, and rule sets that you can link to the hot folder.

This box is available only when you select the **Add and Process Files** option.

<information>

Provides information on the selected object.

Delete dropped files if processing is successful

Select this check box if you want the source files to be deleted after they are processed.

Important: Do not select this check box if you are uncertain of source file integrity, for example, if files may be using incorrect search paths.

Name

The name of the hot folder. The default name of a hot folder is:

- **Add Input Files Only** when you select the **Add Input Files Only** option
- The name of the process template when you select the **Add and Process Files** option and select a process template

In either case, you can modify the hot folder name if desired.

This box is available only when creating a hot folder. You cannot change the name of an existing hot folder.

Use Custom Location

(appears only in the Create Hot Folder for Job dialog box)

Select this option to change the location of the hot folder from the default location, which is the job folder.

When you select this option, the Select Folder dialog box appears.

This option is available only when you are creating a hot folder. You cannot change the location of an existing hot folder.

Change Custom Location

(appears only in the Create Hot Folder for Job dialog box)

Use this button to change the custom location of the hot folder. When you click this button, the Select Folder dialog box appears.

This button is available only after you specify a custom location using the **Use Custom Location** option and before the hot folder is created. You cannot change the location of an existing hot folder.

Manage Hot Folders for Job dialog box

list

Lists all of the hot folders for the job. Each entry includes the hot folder name, process templates linked to the hot folder (if any), and the hot folder location.

When you select a hot folder in the list, the **Edit** and **Delete** buttons become available.

Add

Click this button to create a new hot folder. When you click this button, the Create Hot Folder for Job dialog box appears.

Edit

Click this button to edit the selected hot folder. When you click this button, the Edit Hot Folder for Job dialog box appears.

Note that this button is available only when a hot folder is selected.

Delete

Click this button to delete the selected hot folder. When you click this button, the Confirm Hot Folder Delete dialog box appears.

Note that this button is available only when a hot folder is selected.

Smart hot folders

Smart hot folders

A smart hot folder is a global hot folder that automatically performs a wide range of processes when you drop a source file into it, including creating new jobs and moving files.

Smart hot folders can perform the following tasks:

- Create a new job based on a template job and name the new job according to the name of the source file (see [Diagram: create jobs using smart hot folders](#) on page 926)
- Move the source file to the following locations:
 - An existing job's hot folder for processing (see [Diagram: process files using smart hot folders](#) on page 927)
 - A job-relative location (such as **UserDefinedFolders**)
 - Any location on a mounted server or volume (see [Diagram: move files using smart hot folders](#) on page 926)
- Rename the source file—at the same time as moving it—for any of the following reasons (see [Diagram: rename files using smart hot folders](#) on page 927):
 - To change a customer's file names to conform to your file-naming conventions
 - To conform to another smart hot folder's file naming patterns
 - To move a file to more than one job hot folder
- Move a source file to one or more locations on any mounted volume (see [Diagram: move files using smart hot folders](#) on page 926)

You can also combine any—or all—of these actions within one smart hot folder. For example, you can create smart hot folders that will do the following combined actions:

- Create a job based on the source file name and process the file immediately within the new job's hot folders (see [Diagram: create jobs and process files using smart hot folders](#) on page 924)
- Create a job based on the source file name, process the file, and move it to another location (see [Diagram: create jobs, process, and move files using smart hot folders](#) on page 925)
- Create a job based on the source file name, process the file, rename the file, and move it to another location (see [Diagram: create jobs and process, move, and rename files using smart hot folders](#) on page 923)

For more background, see the topic that describes the options for hot folder types.

Smart hot folders are job-independent, so you can use them for any job.

Supported file formats

Smart hot folders can accept and process any of the following source files:

- Input files (.ps, .pdf, .eps, .tif, and so on)
- Non-incremental Prinergy exported job files (.zip)
- Imposition plans (.pjtf and .jdf from Preps 4.2.3 and later) and marks files (.ps and .pdf)
- Preps .job files
- JDF-MIS stripping parameters

Note: While you can import impositions that were created in earlier versions of Preps, you can only edit them in Preps 6. The Preps DLL on the Prinergy server (which is used to convert Preps jobs, JDFs, and so on to impositions) only works in Preps 6 mode. This means that sites with Preps 5 clients must migrate these clients to Preps 6 in order to edit Prinergy impositions. Preps version 5 and earlier are no longer tested or supported. Preps 5 templates can be migrated by opening and saving them in the Preps 6.2 standalone application. The Preps 6.2 application and DLL have been modified to translate Preps 5 templates to Preps 6 mode at the moment they're opened.

How smart hot folders work

A smart hot folder matches the source file name with the naming patterns configured in the smart hot folder. See the topic on naming patterns in smart hot folders.

For more information about how smart hot folders work, see the case study about smart hot folders.

Note: Smart hot folders are not the same as job-specific hot folders. For information about job-specific hot folders, see the topic about hot folders.

See also:

[Hot folders](#) on page 905

[Examples: invalid naming patterns](#) on page 914

[About the hot folder type options](#) on page 916

[Examples: valid naming patterns](#) on page 917

[About naming patterns in smart hot folders](#) on page 919

[Case study: smart hot folder](#) on page 921

Examples: invalid naming patterns

This topic includes examples of naming patterns that don't work and the reasons why.

Example 1: Incorrect file naming syntax

In the following example, the source file is accepted by the smart hot folder, but a job is not created because the back reference is incorrect.

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Dropped file names | Time_200404_p1.eps Time_200404_p2.eps |
| File naming patterns | Source: Time_[#Date:6]_[\${Page}].[\${Ext}] |
| | Target: TimeMagazine_[#Date:6] |

The reason: You cannot include a character delimiter (for example, :6) in the target job naming pattern.

Example 2: Incorrect file naming syntax

In the following example, the source file is accepted and a job is created, but with the wrong name. The job name is named eps_pages because the second [\${}] wild card (that is not back-referenced) overwrites the first [\${}] wild card (that is not back referenced).

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Dropped file names | Job_2234.eps Job2234_Covers.eps Job2234_Inserts.eps |
| File naming patterns | Source: [\${}].[\${}] |
| | Target: [\${}]_pages |
| New job name or existing job found | eps_pages |

The reason: You cannot use a wild card more than once without a named back reference. The created job is named whatever is referenced by the last wild card.

Example 3: Insufficient back references

In the following example, a new job is created for every source file.

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Dropped file names | Job_1234_042004_001.ps Job_1234_042004_002.ps |
| File naming patterns | Source: [\${}].[\${}] |
| | Target: [\${}] |

The reason: The target job naming pattern is too generic; there are insufficient back references. All source files match the [\${}] target job file naming pattern.

Note: A generic source file naming pattern is valid only when moving or renaming files, as shown in the following example.

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Dropped file names | Job_1234_042004_001.ps Job_1234_042004_002.ps Job1234_Covers.ps 1234_042004_010.eps |
| File naming patterns | Source: [\$.][%] |
| | Target: Not required |

Example 4: Excessive back references

In the following example, a new job is created for every source file.

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Dropped file names | Catalog_200404_001.eps Catalog_200404_002.eps |
| File naming patterns | Source: [%]_[#Date:6]_[\$.].ps |
| | Target: [%]_[#Date]_[\$.].ps |

The reason: The target job naming pattern is too specific with the [\$.] wild card and will match anything in the source file name.

Recommendation: Remove [\$.].ps in the target job name and change the target job name to [%]_[#Date]_pages.

Example 5: Incorrect wild card

In the following example, the source files are not moved, because some of the characters in the file name do not match the wild card.

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Dropped file names | Job_1234_042004.001 Job_1234_042004.p1 |
| File naming patterns | Source: [\$.][%] |
| | Target: Not required |

The reason: The [%] wild card matches letters only, and there are numbers in the file name extension.

About the hot folder type options

In the **General** view, under **Hot Folder Type**, the **File Mover/Renamer** and **Job Creator** options control which options are enabled in the Add Smart Hot Folder dialog box.

- If you select **File Mover/Renamer**, only the options required to move and/or rename files are enabled. The options for creating jobs and selecting a template job are disabled.
- If you select **Job Creator**, all options are enabled. You can create jobs, start workflow processing, move files, and rename files.

Job Creator option

When you select the **Job Creator** option, the first source file dropped into a smart hot folder will create a job if the following two conditions are met:

- The source file name matches the target job naming pattern.
- There is no existing job that matches the target job naming pattern.

Under these conditions, the smart hot folder names the new job according to the target job naming pattern and processes the first source file.

Source files that are subsequently dropped into the same smart hot folder will be treated as follows:

- Source files that match both the source file naming pattern and the target job naming pattern are accepted, moved to the now-existing job, and processed.
- Files that match the source file naming pattern but not the target job naming pattern are accepted but create new jobs (as the existing job will not be found).

For an example of how this works, see [Case study: smart hot folder](#).

Examples: valid naming patterns

This topic includes examples of valid source file naming and target job naming patterns.

Example 1: Input files

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Dropped file names | Time_200404_p1.ps Time_200404_p2.eps |
| File naming patterns | Source: Time_[#Date:6]_[#\$Page].[\$Ext] |
| | Target: TimeMagazine_[#Date] |
| New job name or existing job found | TimeMagazine_200404 |

Example 2: Input files

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Dropped file names | Job2234_CatPages.ps Job2234_Covers.eps Job2234_Inserts.ps |
| File naming patterns | Source: [\$JobID]_[\$] |
| | Target: [\$JobID]_Catalog |
| New job name or existing job found | Job2234_Catalog |

Example 3: Input files

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Dropped file names | XYZ_VA_YP1_0001A_V1.eps XYZ_VA_YP2_0001A_V1.eps |
| File naming patterns | Source: [\$Customer]_[\$City]_[\$Section]_[\$]. [%Ext] |
| | Target: [\$Customer]_[\$City]_[\$Section] |
| New job names or existing jobs found | XYZ_VA_YP1 XYZ_VA_YP2 |

Example 4: Input files

| | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Dropped file name | Magazine_092004.ps |
| File naming patterns | Source: Magazine_[#Date:6].[\$] |
| | Target: Magazine_[#Date] |
| New job name or existing job found | Magazine_092004 |

Example 5: Input files

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Dropped file names | 1234_042004_001.ps 1234_042004_002.ps |
| File naming patterns | Source: [\$ID]_[#Date:6]_[\$] |
| | Target: Job[\$ID]_[#Date]_Pages |
| New job name or existing job found | Job1234_042004_Pages |

Example 6: Exported job files

| | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Dropped file names | JobExportName.zip |
| File naming patterns | Source: [\$].zip |
| | Target: [\$] |
| New job name or existing job found | JobExportName |

Example 7: Exported job files

| | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Dropped file names | Job1234_HubExport.zip |
| File naming patterns | Source: [\$ID:7]_[\$].zip |
| | Target: [\$ID]_Output |
| New job name or existing job found | Job1234_Output |

Example 8: Imposition and Marks Files

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Dropped file names | MyImpositionName.pjtf MyImpositionName.ps |
| File naming patterns | Source: [\$.[%Ext] |
| | Target: [\$.] |
| New job name or existing job found | MyImpositionName |

Example 9: Preps .Job Files

| | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Dropped file name | PrepsJobName.job |
| File naming patterns | Source: [\$.].job |
| | Target: [\$.] |
| New job name or existing job found | PrepsJobName |

Example 10: JDF-MIS Stripping Parameter Files

| | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Dropped file name | JDF-MISStrippingParams.jdf |
| File naming patterns | Source: [\$.].jdf |
| | Target: [\$.] |
| New job name or existing job found | JDF-MISStrippingParams |

About naming patterns in smart hot folders

Smart hot folders use three naming patterns: source file name (source), target job name (target job), and target file name (target file).

- The source file name pattern determines which source files will be accepted by a smart hot folder.

If the source file name does not match the source file name pattern, the source file is rejected and placed in the `Jobs\SmartHotFolders\<Smart Hot Folder Name>\Processed\Rejected` folder.

- The target job name pattern determines the job name by back-referencing the source file naming pattern.

If an existing job is not found that matches the target job name, the smart hot folder creates a job.

Note: No target job name pattern is required for smart hot folders that only move or rename files.

- The target file name pattern determines the name of the source file once it has been moved.

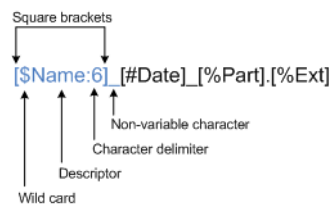
If the source file is moved to more than one hot folder in a job, its file name in each of the hot folders must be different.

Note: Naming patterns are not available for target group name.

Building valid naming patterns

Each naming pattern must be constructed with valid syntax, or a smart hot folder will not behave as expected.

The following diagram shows the components of a valid naming pattern. These apply to all three naming patterns in a smart hot folder (source, target job, and target file).



- Wild cards must be enclosed in square brackets.
- The following wild cards are accepted:
 - [%] to match letters (A-Z, a-z)
 - [#] to match numbers (0-9)
 - [\$] to match letters or numbers (A-Z, a-z, 0-9)
- Adding a descriptor after the wild card (with no space) creates a back reference. Choose a descriptor that clearly identifies the information that is being referenced.

Important: You must add a descriptor to use the same wild card more than once within a naming pattern. For example, the naming pattern [%].[%] is not valid because it repeats the same wild card more than once. To make it valid, add a descriptor after each wild card, such as [%Name].[%Ext].

- Adding a character delimiter (a colon and number after the descriptor) to a wild card in the file naming patterns limits the number of characters that are matched. For example, [\$Name:6] matches the first six letters or numbers of the source file name.

Important: Do not use a character delimiter in the target job naming pattern. A job will not be found or created.

- Non-variable words and characters in the naming pattern must exactly match the source file name. For example, to match the source file naming pattern Job[#ID].[%Ext], all source files must start with Job.

Balancing generic and specific naming patterns

- A source file naming pattern that is very specific (contains many back references) may cause the smart hot folder to reject many of the source files or to create a new job for every source file dropped.
- A source file naming pattern that is very generic (contains few back references or few wild cards) may cause the smart hot folder to create too many jobs.
- More specific target job name patterns (many back references) create more jobs. For example, in the following smart hot folder, a new job is created for every source file; the target job naming pattern is too specific and will match anything.

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Dropped file names | Catalog_200404_001.eps Catalog_200404_002.eps |
| File naming patterns | Source: [%]_[#Date:6]_[\$.ps |
| | Target job: [%]_[#Date]_[\$.ps |
| Recommended | Target job: [%]_[#Date]_pages |

Case study: smart hot folder

The following case study summarizes how a smart hot folder behaves when input files are dropped into it.

Background

Company ABC has a contract to publish magazines. Input files submitted to the prepress department for these publications follow this naming pattern: `Publication_Date_PubPart.extension` (for example, `TeenZone_040404_InCovers.eps`).

The prepress operator has determined that creating a smart hot folder to automatically create a new job and process the input files will save time and effort.

The smart hot folder

When creating the smart hot folder, the operator considers two factors: which input files to accept (the source file naming pattern) and what to name the job (the target job naming pattern).

- **Source File Naming Pattern:** To ensure that the magazine input files are accepted, the operator writes the following source file naming pattern in the smart hot folder:

```
[%Name]_[#Date:6]_[$PubPart].[%Ext]
```

According to this source file naming pattern, only input files that include the name of the publication, a six-digit date, the publication part, and the file extension will be accepted by the smart hot folder.

- Target Job Naming Pattern: The operator wants the job named according to the publication name and date. The operator writes the following target job naming pattern in the smart hot folder:

```
[%Name]_[#Date]
```

Although the input file includes the publication part and the extension, these do not become part of the job name, and all parts of the publication are processed in the same job [%Name]_[#Date].

The input files

The operator is given the following three input files:

- YouthZone_040404_InCovers.eps
- YouthZone_040404_OutCovers.ps
- YouthZone_040404_Pages.pdf

What happens

The operator drops the first input file (YouthZone_040404_InCovers.eps) into the smart hot folder. Since the input file name matches the source file naming pattern, the smart hot folder accepts the input file.

The smart hot folder then searches for the job **YouthZone_040404**. Because this is the first input file dropped for this edition, there is no existing job. The smart hot folder automatically creates a new job called **YouthZone_040404** and processes the input file.

The next two input files (YouthZone_040404_OutCovers.ps and YouthZone_040404_Pages.pdf) match the source file naming pattern and are accepted. The smart hot folder then searches for—and finds—a job named **YouthZone_040404**. The smart hot folder moves the input files into this job and automatically processes them.

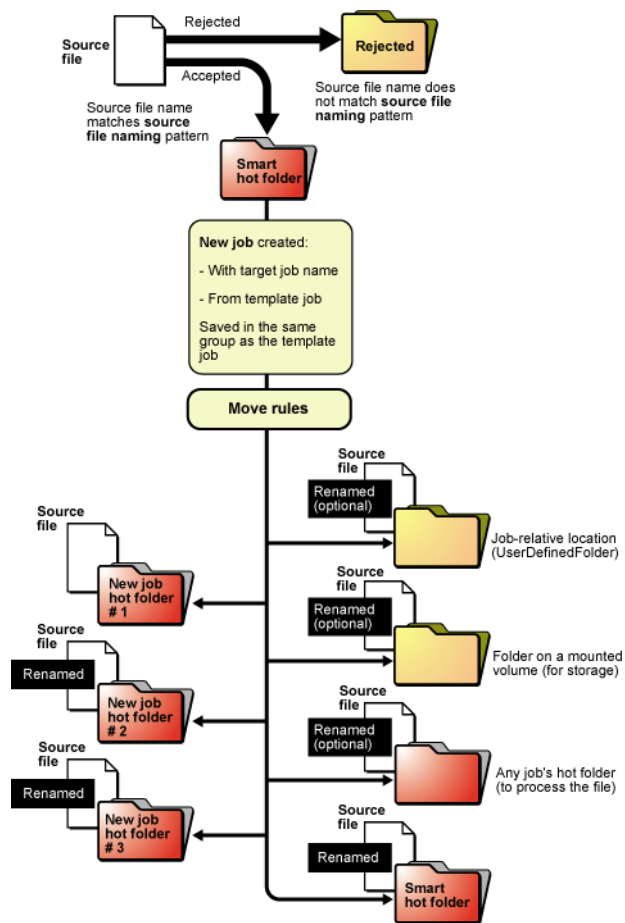
Dropping additional input files

The operator drops an input file named YouthZone_Insert.pdf into the smart hot folder. Because the input file name does not match the source file naming pattern (it is missing the date), the smart hot folder rejects the input file and moves it to the Rejected folder.

The operator drops an input file named YouthZone_040418_Pages.pdf into the same smart hot folder. The input file name matches the source file naming pattern, but it does

not match the existing job name **YouthZone_040404** (the date is different). The smart hot folder, therefore, creates a new job called **YouthZone_040418** and automatically processes the input file.

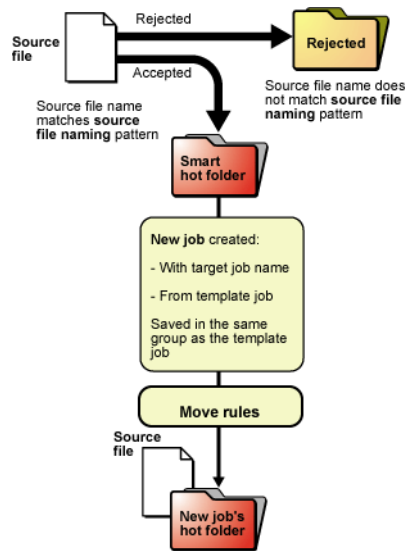
Diagram: create jobs and process, move, and rename files using smart hot folders



Smart hot folders that create a new job and process, move, and rename files:

1. Accept the source file
2. Create a job with the target job name from the template job
3. Save it in the same group as the template job
4. Simultaneously copy, rename, and move the source file to any of the following locations:
 - A job-relative location
 - A folder on a mounted volume (including another smart hot folder)
 - Any job's hot folder
 - Multiple hot folders in the new job

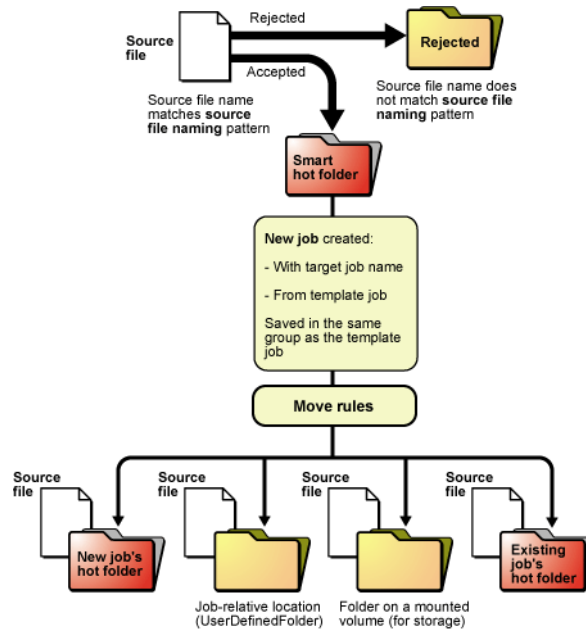
Diagram: create jobs and process files using smart hot folders



Smart hot folders that create jobs and process files:

1. Accept the source file
2. Determine the target job name (based on back-references to the source file name)
3. Create a job with the target job name from the template job
4. Save it in the same group as the template job
5. Move the source file to the new job's hot folder
6. Start processing according to the process templates attached to the job hot folder

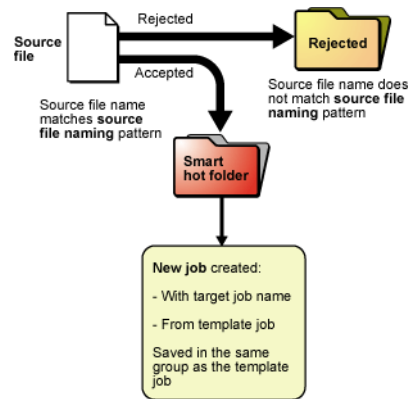
Diagram: create jobs, process, and move files using smart hot folders



Smart hot folders that create jobs and process and move files:

1. Accept the source file
2. Create a job with the target job name from the template job
3. Save it in the same group as the template job
4. Simultaneously copy and move the source file to any of the following locations:
 - The new job's hot folder (initiates processing)
 - A job-relative location
 - A folder on a mounted volume (including another smart hot folder)
 - An existing job's hot folder (initiates processing)

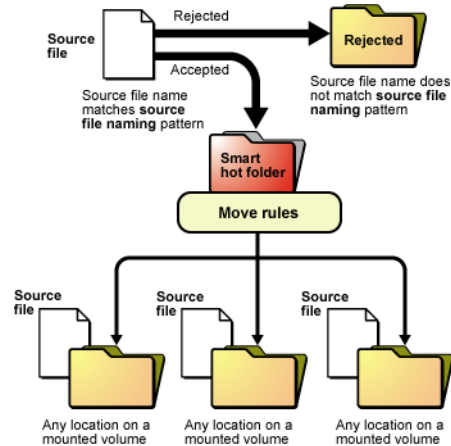
Diagram: create jobs using smart hot folders



Smart hot folders that create jobs:

1. Accept the source file
2. Create a job with the target job name from the template job
3. Save it in the same group as the template job

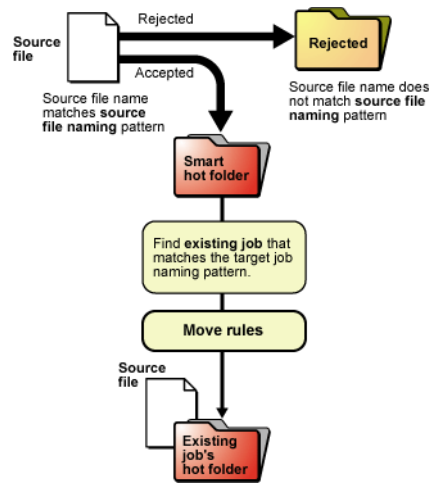
Diagram: move files using smart hot folders



Smart hot folders that move files:

1. Accept the source file
2. Copy and move the source file to another location for storage, backup, or additional processing. All moves happen at the same time.

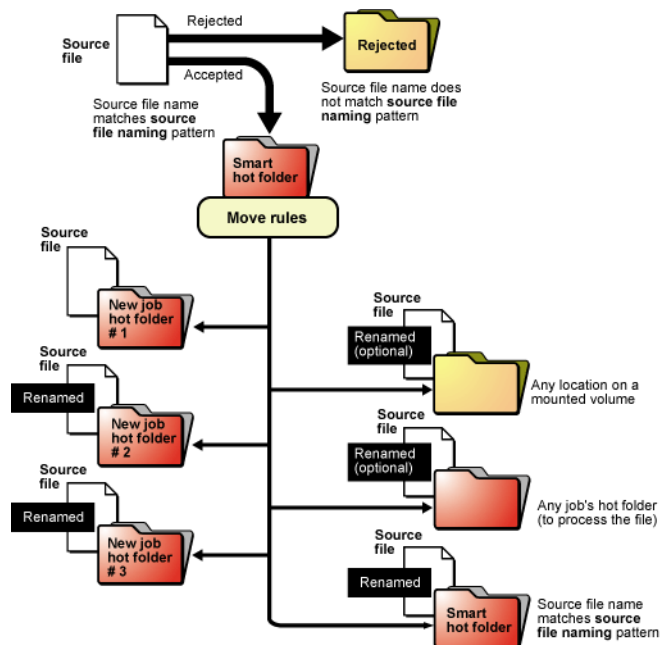
Diagram: process files using smart hot folders



Smart hot folders that start processing in an existing job:

1. Accept the source file
2. Determine the target job name (based on back-references to the source file name) and search for an existing job that matches the target job name
3. Move the source file to the job's hot folder
4. Start processing according to the process templates attached to the job hot folder

Diagram: rename files using smart hot folders



Smart hot folders that rename files:

1. Accept the source file
2. Copy, rename, and move the source file. All moves happen at the same time.

Working with smart hot folders

1. In **Job Finder**, from the **Tools** menu, select **Smart Hot Folder Manager**.
2. In the Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box:

| To | Do this |
|---------------------------|---|
| Add a smart hot folder | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click Add. b. In the Add Smart Hot Folder dialog box, type a name in the Smart Hot Folder Name box and configure the smart hot folder. c. Click OK. |
| Copy a smart hot folder | Select the hot folder that you want to copy and click Copy . |
| Edit a smart hot folder | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Select the hot folder that you want to edit and click Edit. b. In the Edit Smart Hot Folder dialog box, configure the smart hot folder. c. Click OK. |
| Delete a smart hot folder | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Select the smart hot folder that you want to delete, and click Delete. b. When the Confirm Smart Hot Folder Delete dialog box appears, click OK. |

3. Click **Close**.

Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box

Add

Click to add a new smart hot folder. The Add Smart Hot Folder dialog box appears.

Edit

Click to edit the selected smart hot folder. The Edit Smart Hot Folder dialog box appears.

Note: This button is available only when a smart hot folder is selected.

Delete

Click to delete the selected smart hot folder. The Confirm Smart Hot Folder Delete dialog box appears.

Note: This button is available only when a smart hot folder is selected.

Copy

Click to copy the selected smart hot folder. The new smart hot folder is named **Copy of <Smart Hot Folder>** and is configured the same as the original smart hot folder.

Note: This button is available only when a smart hot folder is selected.

Close

Click to close the Smart Hot Folder Manager.

Configuring smart hot folders

Requirements:

Do the following prerequisite tasks, depending on what you want the smart hot folder to do.

| If It will | Do this |
|---|--|
| Create jobs | Create a job to be used as a template job. It can be a pre-job, existing job, or template job. |
| Create jobs and process the source file | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Create a job as a template job. It can be a pre-job, existing job, or template job. b. Include hot folders (not smart hot folders) in the template job. The hot folders must be associated with process templates or workflow templates. |
| Move the source file | <p>Create folders for storage or other purposes.</p> <p>Create the folders using Microsoft Internet Explorer or Macintosh Finder. If the storage folders are on another volume, mount the volume using the Prinergy Administrator software. For more information about mounting volumes, see the Prinergy System Administration guide.</p> |

1. Add or edit a smart hot folder.
2. Under **Smart Hot Folder Location**, select the location of the smart hot folder:

| To locate it | Do this |
|---|---|
| In the <code>Jobs \SmartHotFolders</code> folder | Select the Use Default Location check box. |
| Outside the <code>Jobs \SmartHotFolders</code> folder | Click Browse . In the Select Folder dialog box, select a location. |

3. If the smart hot folder will be used to process files or create jobs, and you want the files to be deleted after they are processed, select the **Automatically Remove Processed Files from Smart Hot Folder** check box.
4. Under **Hot Folder Type**, select the smart hot folder function (see *About the Hot Folder Type Options*):

| To | Do this |
|---|------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Create jobs • Process the source files • Move or rename the source files (optional) | Select Job Creator . |
| Move or rename the source files (not create jobs or process files) | Select File Mover/Renamer . |

5. If you chose **Job Creator**, under **Create new jobs based on the Job Template**, click **Browse**.
 - a. In the Select Template Job dialog box, select the template job (and any aspects that you want to copy into new jobs).
 - b. If the job will process files, select **Hot Folders**.
 - c. Click **OK**.
6. In the left pane, click **Source and Target Patterns**.
7. In the **Source File Name Pattern** box, type the naming pattern for the source file name.
For example, type `[$Name]_[#Date:6]_[$PubPart].[%Ext]`.
8. If you chose **Job Creator**, in the **Target Job Name Pattern** box, type the naming pattern for the target job.

You can type a specific job name, such as `TeenZone_040404`, or a variable job name using a naming pattern that back-references the source-file naming pattern, such as `[%Name]_[#Date]`.

Note: If you want to locate the target job in a specific group, click **Browse** next to the **Target Group** box and select a group. By default, jobs are located in the same group as the template job. Note that you can't use naming patterns for Target Group.

9. If the smart hot folder will only create jobs (and not process, move, or rename source files), click **OK**.
10. In the left pane, click **File Move Rules**.
11. Create one or more move rules for the source file.

Note: The text in the table is red until you finish creating a valid rule.

- a. Click **Add**.
- b. Under **Source File Name Pattern**, specify the pattern for the source files name:

| To Use This | Do This |
|---|--|
| The same file naming pattern as the one in the Source File Name Pattern box in the Source and Target Pattern view | Select Use Smart Hot Folder's Source Pattern . |
| A different pattern from the one in the Source File Name Pattern box in the Source and Target Pattern view | In the Source File Name Pattern box, type the file naming pattern of the source file. |

- c. Under **Target Filename Pattern**, determine whether to rename the source files:

| To | Do this |
|-----------------------|--|
| Move without renaming | Clear the Rename files check box. The target file naming pattern will be the same as the source file naming pattern. |
| Rename and move | Select the Rename files check box, and type the file name of the target file in the Target Filename Pattern box. The file name can be completely different, or it can have a prefix or suffix. |

- d. Identify the destination of the file:

| To move the file to | Do this |
|---|---|
| A job hot folder Note: This option is available only if you chose Job Creator in the General view. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Select Move to Job Hot Folder. b. From the list, select a hot folder. |
| To the job's <code>UserDefinedFolders</code> folder Note: This option is available only if you chose Job Creator in the General view. | Select Move to Job Relative Location . When <code><%Job%></code> <code>\UserDefinedFolders</code> appears in the box, you can choose to add a subfolder by typing a backslash and the folder name. (Prinergy creates the folder if it does not already exist.) |
| Any location on a mounted volume | Select Move to Location , click Browse , and indicate where to move the file. |

12. Click **OK**.

Navigating the Add/Edit Smart Hot Folder dialog box

The Add/Edit Smart Hot Folder dialog box is divided into two panes:

- The left pane is the navigation pane and includes three views: **General**, **Source and Target Patterns**, and **File Move Rules**.
- The right pane includes the options for each view.

You can determine which options appear in the right pane by clicking a view in the left pane. You can also go directly to an option by clicking the option name under the view in the left pane. For example, to go directly to the smart hot folder name, click **Name** under the **General** view in the left pane.

In addition, choosing the type of smart hot folder in the **General** view further modifies which options you see in the right pane.

- If you choose **File Mover/Renamer**, only the options required to move and rename files are available. The options for creating jobs and selecting a template job are unavailable.
- If you choose **Job Creator**, all options are available. You can create jobs and process, move, and rename files.

Add/Edit Smart Hot Folder dialog box

General

Smart Hot Folder Name

Type a meaningful name for the smart hot folder.

Smart Hot Folder Location

Determines where to save the smart hot folder. You must do one of the following:

- Click **Browse** and select a volume mounted on the Prinerger server. If the volume you want does not appear, use Prinerger Administrator to add it.
- Select the **Use Default Location** check box

On installation, the default location is the `Jobs \SmartHotFolders` folder on the Prinerger server.

Use Default Location

Click to select the default location in the **Smart Hot Folder Location** box. On installation, the default location is the `Jobs \SmartHotFolders` folder on the Prinerger server.

Automatically Remove Processed Files from Smart Hot Folder

Select this check box if you want files to be deleted from the smart hot folder after they are processed.

If you do not select this check box, files remain in the smart hot folder until someone manually moves or deletes them.

This check box does not apply to smart hot folders that move files, because the files are already moved out of the folder by the move rule.

Hot Folder Type

File Mover/Renamer

Select to configure the smart hot folder to move and rename files. It does not create jobs.

Job Creator

Select to configure the smart hot folder to create jobs and process, move, and rename files.

Create a new job based on the job template

Click the **Browse** button and select the template job or an existing job that you want to use as a template job.

In the Select Template Job dialog box, select a template job and select the **Hot Folder** check box.

Note: The selected template job must have job hot folders that are associated with process templates.

Source and Target Patterns

Source File Name Pattern

Using smart hot folder syntax, type the file naming pattern of the source file. The smart hot folder will accept all files that match this source file naming pattern.

You can make the source file naming pattern as generic or as specific as you want. It can contain named patterns as back-references to the target job name.

See About naming patterns in smart hot folders.

Target Group

Click **Browse** and navigate to the group that you want the target jobs created in.

The default target group is the one that holds the template job that you selected in General view.

Note: You cannot use naming patterns in the target group.

Target Job Name Pattern

In the **Source Filename Pattern** box, type the file naming pattern for the target job using back references to the source file naming pattern.

If the smart hot folder cannot locate an existing job that matches this target job naming pattern, it creates a new job (based on the job template).

This box is available when **Job Creator** is selected in the **General** view.

File Move Rules

In the **File Move Rules** view, specify what the smart hot folder does to the source file (when it matches the source file naming pattern).

Each row in the table defines one smart hot folder action. These actions are called rules. You can make any number of valid rules using any combination of valid file names and move destinations. Because the smart hot folder executes all rules at the same time, the order of the rules is not important.

Source Pattern

Type the source file naming pattern or, to use the source file naming pattern you configured in the **Source and Target Patterns** view, select the **Use Smart Hot Folder's Source Pattern** check box.

For a source file to be accepted by the smart hot folder, it must match this file naming pattern.

Target Pattern

Type the target file naming pattern.

Move To

Indicate where to move the source file. The file can be moved to the new job's hot folder, a job-relative location, or another location (such as another job hot folder or a storage folder). The location must be on a volume mounted on the Prinerly server.

Add

Click to add a new blank row to the table.

Remove

Removes the currently selected row from the table.

Source File Name Pattern

Type the source file naming pattern, or select the **Use Smart Hot Folder's Source Pattern** check box to use the source file naming pattern from the **Source and Target Patterns** view.

Use Smart Hot Folder's Source Pattern

Select to use the source file naming pattern that you configured in the **Source and Target Patterns** view.

Target File Name Pattern

Select the **Rename files** check box and type the target file naming pattern.

If moving a dropped file to more than one hot folder in a new job, add a prefix or suffix to the target file naming pattern.

Rename files

Clear to use the target file naming pattern that you configured in the **Source and Target Patterns** view.

Select to rename the target file name.

If you are sending the source file to more than one hot folder in a job, you must rename the target file name. The text in the table remains red until you rename the target file name.

Move to Job Hot Folder

Select to move source files to the new job's hot folder. Select a job hot folder from the list.

Only hot folders configured in the template job specified in the **General** view appears in this list.

Move to Job Relative Location

Select to move files to the `Jobs\UserDefinedFolders` folder. To move files to a subfolder, type a backslash and the subfolder name.

Move to Location

Select to move files to another location. Click **Browse** and select the location.

You can move files to any location on any volume that is mounted on your server. This could be a hot folder in an existing job, another smart hot folder, or a storage location.

Browse

Click to select where you want to move the source file. If the volume you want does not appear, use Prinerger Administrator to add it.

Select Target Group dialog box

lists

The drop-down and the list work together to navigate groups.

When the drop-down displays:

- **Groups on <server name>**, the list displays the groups on the specified server
- A group name, the list displays the contents of the specified group, including jobs and groups

When you click the drop-down, you see the path of the displayed item in reverse order. For example, if the drop-down displays a subgroup, when you click the drop-down, you see the name of the group that the subgroup is in, followed by **Groups on <server name>**.

Open

Opens the selected item.

Select "<group name>"

Click this button when you are ready to select the group that you want the job created in.

Checking whether the smart hot folder worked

- Perform any of the following steps:

| To determine whether | Do this in Prinerger |
|---|--|
| The source file was processed | Display the system history and click Group by Category . If there are errors, the system history displays the hot folder error and the location where the failed file was moved. |
| The source file was moved to a job's hot folder | View the job history. |
| The source file name matches the source file naming pattern | If file naming patterns do not match, the file is moved to <Smart Hot Folder Name> \Processed\Rejected. |

Workflow templates

About workflow templates

Workflow templates link two or three process templates together to offer you more automation.

Each workflow template can contain up to three process templates of the following types:

- An import process template
- A refine process template
- An output process template:
 - loose page output
 - imposition output
 - final output

You can create or modify workflow templates in the workflow template editor, where you choose:

- Whether to enable or disable each of the three types of process templates available.

For example, you can disable the import process template in the import, refine, and final output workflow template.

- Which specific process template to use for each process template type that you enabled.

For example, you can choose the 2ndRefine process template as the Refine process template used by the Import, Refine, and Final Output workflow template.

Prinergy offers these types of workflow templates, which are named after the process templates they contain:

- Import, refine, and loose page output workflow template
- Import, refine, and imposition output workflow template
- Import, refine, and final output workflow template

In workflow templates with loose page output, you can output to multiple proofing devices in parallel. For example, you can configure a

single workflow plan to refine and output the following loose page output at the same time:

- Loose page proof to Virtual Proofing System
- Loose page proof to one or more hard copy proofing devices
- Loose page proof to vector PDF

See also:

[Refine process template](#) on page [201](#)

[Loose Page Output process template](#) on page [433](#)

[Imposition Output process template](#) on page [489](#)

[Final Output process template](#) on page [544](#)

[Import process template \(jobs\)](#) on page [870](#)

[Workflow Template Editor](#) on page [939](#)

Using a workflow template

- You can use a process template in the following ways:
 - Select one or more files in Job Manager, start a process, and select a workflow template instead of a process template.
 - Create a hot folder, and link it to a workflow template. Using a file browser, drop the files into the hot folder.

Creating and modifying workflow templates

1. In the **Process Templates** pane, expand **Workflow**.
2. Open the Workflow Template Editor to modify or create a workflow template as follows:

| To | Do This |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Modify an existing workflow template | Double-click it. |
| Create a new workflow template | Right-click any workflow template and click New . |

3. In the **Type** column, select the check boxes next to each type of process template you want the workflow template to include.
4. If you selected **Import**, perform the following actions:
 - a. In the **Group** column, select the process template group that contains the process template you want to use.
 - b. In the **Process Template** column, select the process template that you want to use for the import process.
 - c. If you want to edit the process template, click **Edit**.

5. If you selected **Refine**, perform the following actions:
 - a. In the **Group** column, select the process template group that contains the process template you want to use.
 - b. In the **Process Template** column, select the process template that you want to use for the refine process.
 - c. If you want to edit the process template, click **Edit**.
6. If you selected **Loose Page Output**, perform the following actions:
 - a. In the **Group** column, expand the process template group that contains the process template you want to use.
 - b. Select the process template that you want to use for the loose page output process and click **Add**.
 - c. If desired, add more Loose Page Output process templates.
 - d. If you want to edit a process template, select the item in the **Process Template** column and click **Edit**.
7. Save the workflow template as follows:

| To | Do This |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Save an existing workflow template | From the File menu, click Save . |
| Save a new workflow template | From the File menu, click Save as . In the Save Workflow Template dialog box, save the template. |

Workflow Template Editor

Note: The window title lists the processes that are included in the workflow template.

Type

Select a check box for each type of process templates that you want to include in the workflow template.

Group

Select the process template group that you want for each process template **Type** check box that you selected.

For loose page output, expand the group and select the required process template. Click **Add** to add it to the **Process Template** list. Repeat as many times as required. (Each process template runs in parallel, so there is no need to order the loose page output process templates.)

Process Template

Select the process template that you want in this workflow template. The list displays the available process templates in the group selected in the **Group** list.

For loose page output, you can choose multiple process templates. In the **Group** list, expand the loose page output process template group and select the required process template. Click **Add** to add it to the **Process Template** list. Repeat as many times as required. (Each process template runs in parallel, so there is no need to order the process templates.)

To remove a loose page output process template from the **Process Template** list, select it and click **Remove**.

Edit

Click this button to edit the process template selected in the **Process Template** list.

Important: When you edit the settings in a process template, the changes affect all workflow templates that reference the process template. The workflow template contains references to the process templates, not copies of the process templates.

Add

This button only appears in workflow templates with loose page output process templates.

Adds the selected loose page process template to the workflow template. Expand the **Group** list, select the loose page output process template, and click **Add**. The process template appears in the **Process Template** list.

You can add as many loose page output process templates as you want. Each process template runs in parallel, so there is no need to order the process templates.

Remove

This button only appears in workflow templates with loose page output process templates.

Removes the selected loose page output process template from the workflow template. In the **Process Template** list, select the loose page output process template and click **Remove**.

19

Versions

About versioning

Versioning is used in a job to provide multiple variations of a publication. On each page that requires versioning, some content stays the same (base content) and some content differs (version content).

For example, a publication shipped to several different countries may contain the same content except the language (text) differs for each country.

Prinerger has two versioning systems:

- Legacy Versioning: Use this versioning workflow for Prinerger versioning jobs that were created using the legacy versioning system
- Layered PDF Versioning (LPV): Use this versioning workflow if you are creating a new versioning job

Note: You cannot process Prinerger legacy versioning jobs using Layered PDF Versioning.

Layered PDF Versioning

About Layered PDF Versioning

Layered PDF Versioning (LPV) is a versioning system that is flexible in its input file requirements and efficient in its ability to output multiple versions without manual workarounds. LPV is a system that extracts content from refined pages by colorant and merges them as necessary to output multiple versions (or editions).

LPV benefits

Prinerger LPV provides:

- Support for several different input file models and a similar workflow for all supported input file models
- Simplified and reduced operator steps, including:
 - The ability to output plates for all versions from one process
 - A simplified plate output process that eliminates the need for physical or digital double-burns

- A simplified output process that eliminates possible errors caused by turning on and off separations for output
- The ability to output proofs for all versions from one process as well as the ability to output proofs for individual versions
- No need to import imposition plans more than once
- Proofs that match the plates
- The ability to output proofs in which all or selected versions can be overlaid: this allows you to merge separations across version files
- Viewing of multiple versions in a layered PDF 1.5 file in Adobe Acrobat 6 or later
- Support for automation—different levels of automation are supported

Introduction

Required software and licenses

In order to run the Layered PDF Versioning software, your system must be upgraded to Prinergy 3.0.3 or later, and must include the Prinergy Regional Versioning license.

The Prinergy Regional Versioning license enables two versioning systems: the Prinergy legacy versioning system and the Layered PDF Versioning system.

Layered PDF Versioning is not available on Mac OS 9 operating system software.

Optional licenses

The following are optional licenses for the Prinergy versioning systems:

- For the Prinergy Layered PDF Versioning system:
 - To automate assignment of pages in Prinergy, you need the license: Advanced Production Automation (APA) (part number, 22-0174).
Note: You can autolink refined pages to build versioned pages using the same APA syntax; however, the APA license is not required.
 - To automate generation of versioned pages in Prinergy, you need the license: Rules-Based Automation (part number, 632-00289A).
- For the Prinergy legacy versioning system, to merge separations across version files for proofing, you need the license: Color Proofing System (CPS) software (part number, 20-0065)

For more information about licenses, please contact your sales representative.

Layered PDF Versioning

Layered PDF Versioning (LPV) is a prepress versioning system that is flexible in its input file requirements, and efficient in its ability to output multiple versions without manual workarounds. LPV is a system that extracts content from refined pages by color, and merges them as necessary to output multiple versions (or editions). Content can be extracted from pages by layer if you are using layered input files.

LPV advantages

Prinerger LPV provides:

- Support for several different input file models, including models that support layered input files
- A similar workflow for all supported input file models
- Versioning plans that manage versions and layers
- A new type of Prinerger layer for isolating change content, and the ability to extract change content:
 - From a refined page by color (for non-layered input files)
 - From an input file by layer (for layered input files)
- Simplified and reduced operator steps, including:
 - The ability to output plates for all versions from one process
 - A simplified plate output process that eliminates the need for physical or digital double burns
 - A simplified output process that eliminates possible errors caused by turning on and off separations for output
 - The ability to output proofs for all versions from one process as well as the ability to output proofs for individual versions
 - No need to import imposition plans multiple times
- Proofs that match the plates
- The ability to output proofs in which all or selected versions can be overlaid. This allows you to merge separations across version files. (Proofing no longer requires Color Proofing System (CPS) to merge separations across version files.)
- Approval of individual versions of a versioned page. In addition, the flexibility of being able to correct unapproved versions of a page while protecting approved version content.
- The ability to output multiple versions per surface
- Viewing of multiple versions of a page in a single layered PDF 1.5 file in Adobe Acrobat 6 or later
- Support for automation—Different levels of automation are supported.
- The ability to override color extraction on selected versions of versioned pages. This essentially enables you to use a different version plan for selected versions of a page.

Legacy versioning vs. LPV

Prinerger Regional Versioning includes two versioning systems:

- Prinerger legacy versioning (introduced in Prinerger 2.1), which uses layers, multiple imposition plans, and color separations to manage and output versions

Note: For more information on Prinerger legacy regional versioning, see the Prinerger Regional Versioning Workflow User Guide.

- Prinerger Layered PDF Versioning (LPV), the versioning solution introduced in Prinerger 3.0.

Use the Prinerger legacy regional versioning workflow for Prinerger versioning jobs created in Prinerger 2.1 or later. Prinerger LPV cannot process Prinerger legacy versioning jobs. If you do not have any Prinerger legacy versioning jobs or are creating new versioning jobs, we recommend that you create new versioning jobs using LPV.

For more information

Visit the Kodak eCentral Internet portal for documentation, training courses, downloads, and service and support contacts at <https://ecentral.creo.com/>

LPV terms and concepts

Versioning terms

Review the following terms in order that you can fully understand the information provided in this guide.

Version

One variation of a publication that has some content in common with another variation of the same publication and some content that is unique.

For example, a publication that has common images, but one variation has English text and the other has Spanish text, can be said to have an English version and a Spanish version.

Base content

Content that is the same in (common to) all versions.

For example, if two versions of a publication have the same images, the base content is the common images.

In a job with editions, each edition can have a different set of base content.

Change content

Content that is unique to a version.

For example, if a publication has common images, but one variation has English text and the other has Spanish text, the change content is the English text and the Spanish text.

In a job with editions, change content is content that is unique to a version, or an edition, or both.

Layer

A single thickness of a page that contains page content. Each layer of a page has the same page specifications as other layers of that page, but different content. A page usually consists of two or more layers.

Base layer

A layer that contains base content.

Change layer

A layer that contains change content.

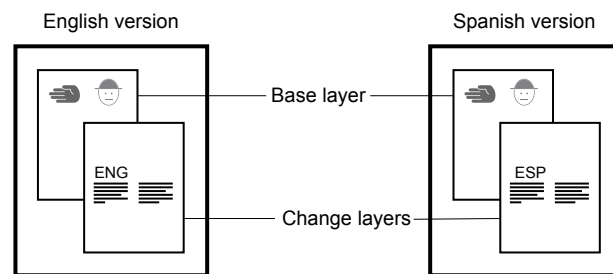


Figure 8: Versions and layers

Versioned page

A collection of refined pages that make up *all versions of a single page*, including the required layers for each version.

Edition

An edition is a set of versions, which has different base content from another set of versions of the same publication. Essentially, editions occur when you have versions within a version. Each edition includes multiple versions.

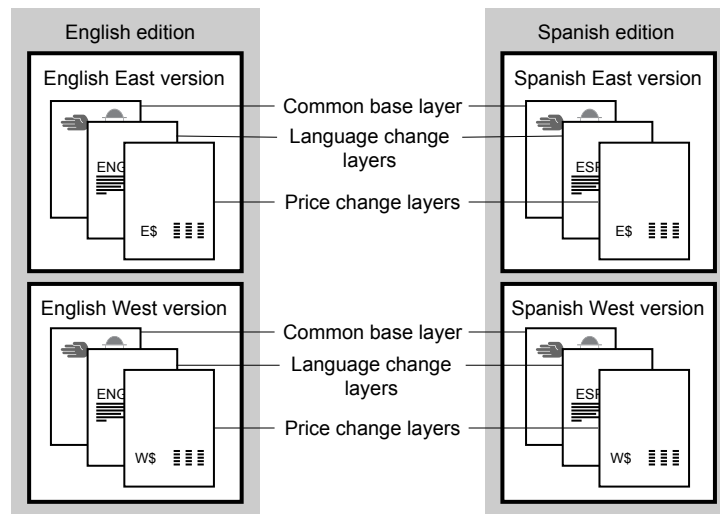


Figure 9: Editions with versions—the English and Spanish editions each have two versions for East and West pricing

Understanding LPV

To understand the LPV workflow, you must understand several new Prinergy tasks:

- Creating a version plan.
- Linking refined pages to versioned pages.
- Generating versioned pages.

You must also understand how layers are related to plates.

Retail catalog scenario

To describe what happens in an LPV job, we need to consider a sample versioning job.

Important: The following scenario is used throughout this guide.

A retailer wants to publish a catalog in two editions: English and Spanish, and each edition has two versions based on eastern prices and western prices. Prices do not change between languages; therefore, only one west price layer is required and one east price layer is required in the job. All versions use the same base images.

Version plan creation

The version plan is a table in each LPV job that you must set up to reflect the layers required for each version. A version plan is similar to the production plan.

To create a version plan:

You must:

- Identify the versions required for the job.
- Identify the layers required for each version.
- Define the contents for each layer by:
 - Listing the colors to be extracted from refined pages in order to identify the contents for each layer (if using non-layered input files).

Note: If using layered input files, content for each version plan layer is already defined by the content in each input file layer.
 - Specifying the final output (plate) color of each layer.

For the retail catalog scenario, you must create in the version plan:

- Four versions (*EngEast*, *EngWest*, *EspEast*, *EspWest*)
- Five layers (*common* for images, *Eng* for English text, *Esp* for Spanish text, *East* for eastern pricing, and *West* for western pricing)

Pre-requisite information

- How each color relates to content layers:

Important: In order to define the contents for each layer, you must know what colors are in each refined page, the content that the color represents, and the final color (plate) to which the content must be mapped.

In this scenario, you must know or have already determined that:

| Refined Page Color | Is Used to Indicate |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| CMYK | common content |
| SpotEng | English text |
| SpotEsp | Spanish text |
| SpotEast | Eastern pricing |
| SpotWest | Western pricing |

- How each content layer relates to plates:

You must also know to which color (plate) the content must be mapped.

In this scenario, all change content must be printed to the black plate; and the base content must print as is: as CMYK. In this scenario, there is only one base layer because the images are common to all versions.

The following diagram shows the version plan for the retail catalog scenario.

① Define the number of versions and the layers required for each version.

② Define the contributing layers for each version by selecting the required layers.

| Layer | Layer Type | Colors To Extract | Output Plate | Page Name Pattern | Page Name Back ... | Page Number Ba... |
|--------|--|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| Common | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Base <input type="radio"/> Chang Cyan,Magenta,Ye... | | Output Separately | | | |
| Eng | <input type="radio"/> Base <input checked="" type="radio"/> Chang SpotEng | | Black | | | |
| Esp | <input type="radio"/> Base <input checked="" type="radio"/> Chang SpotEsp | | Black | | | |
| East | <input type="radio"/> Base <input checked="" type="radio"/> Chang SpotEast | | Black | | | |
| West | <input type="radio"/> Base <input checked="" type="radio"/> Chang SpotWest | | Black | | | |

③ Define for each layer content:

- The colors to extract from the refined pages. This identifies the base and the change content in the refined pages.
- The mapping of each color-to-extract to the ink colors used for final output.
- The page name pattern and back references if using automatic linking of refined pages to versioned pages.

Note: The use of page name patterns is discussed in Chapter 5, Automating LPV Jobs.

Figure 10: Version plan

See also:

[Creating the version plan](#) on page 965

Refined page linking

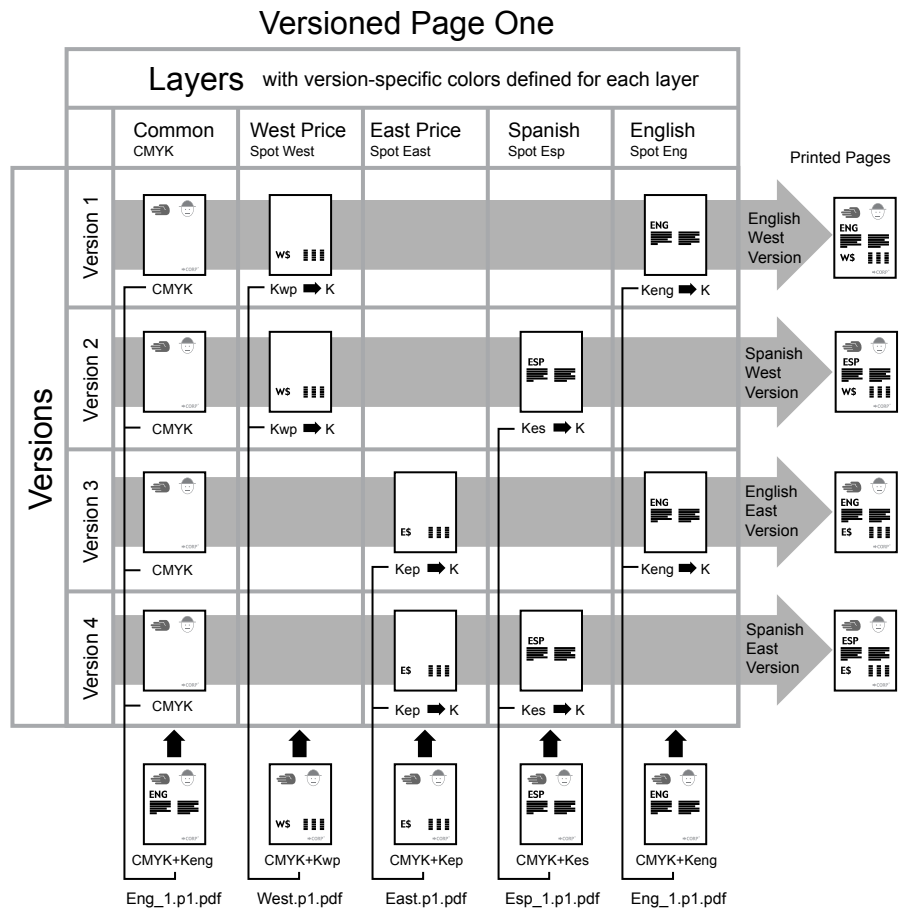
Linking is performed after the version plan is created. Linking associates a refined page to the appropriate layer of a versioned page. This is how Prinergy knows from which file to extract content for a layer.

LPV jobs can have a mix of versioned pages and non-versioned pages.

The following table shows how refined pages must be linked to different layers of versioned page 1 in the retail catalog scenario:

Table 1: Linking for versioned page 1

| The Refined Page | Is Linked to the |
|--|------------------|
| Eng_1.p1.pdf (In this scenario, because all refined pages contain the image content, any one of them can be linked to the common layer) | common layer |
| West.p1.pdf | West layer |
| East.p1.pdf | East layer |
| Esp_1.p1.pdf | Esp layer |
| Eng_1.p1.pdf | Eng layer |



Note: The refined pages in this example represent input file Model One. For information on input file models, see Input File Models Supported.

Note: The refined pages in this example represent input file model 1.

Figure 11: Example of versioned page one, containing all required layers and contributing pages for all versions of page 1

Versioned page generation

Generation is performed after refined page linking to produce a layered PDF file for each versioned page. You must use a generate process template to perform this task. After you perform the generate process, you can use an output process template to output content and view the versioned pages in Acrobat.

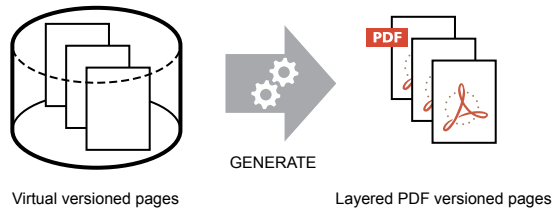


Figure 12: Generate process converts metadata to layered PDF files

Layers vs. plates

In Prinergy LPV, base and change content are grouped differently in the following:

- **Version plan layers**—are virtual layers that are defined in the version plan and that are associated with content after linking refined pages
- **PDF layers**—are layers in a PDF 1.5 file that is created after versioned page generation. PDF layers can be viewed in Adobe Acrobat 6.0 or later.
- **Separated output**—Proofs or plates that are created after starting an output process for final output or for separated proofs)

Using the retail catalog scenario, the following figure illustrates how base and change content appear in version plan layers, PDF layers, and plates.

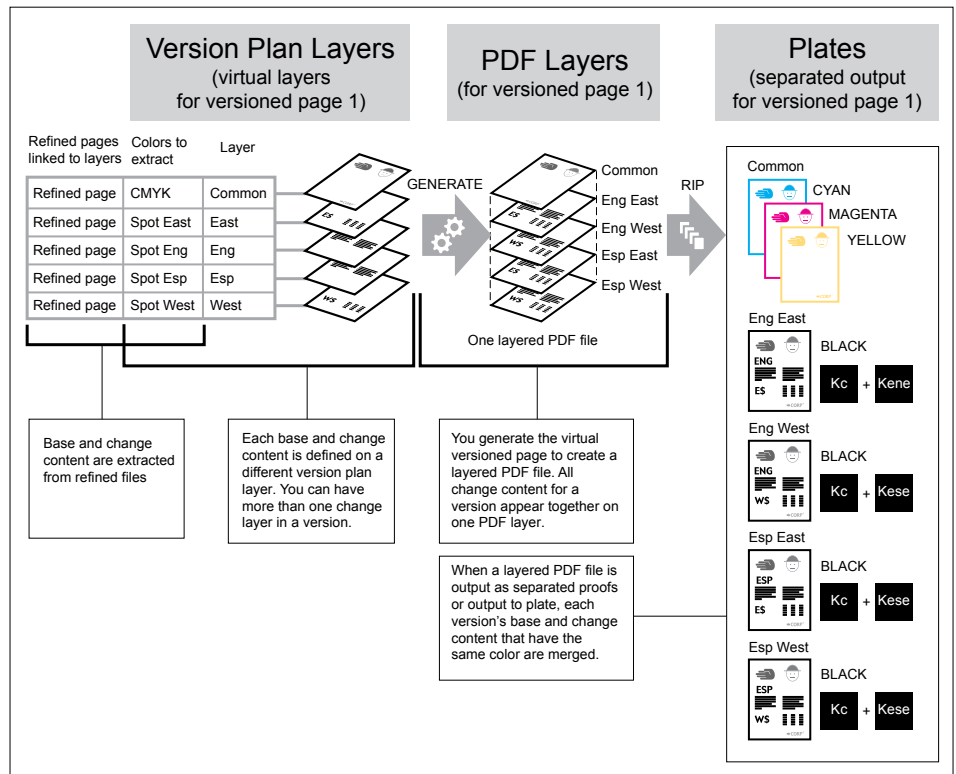


Figure 13: Content on version plan layers, PDF layers, and plates for versioned page 1

Multiple bases

If necessary, you can use multiple bases in your job.

For example, consider the retail catalog scenario, but with different images for the English and the Spanish editions. This would require two bases.

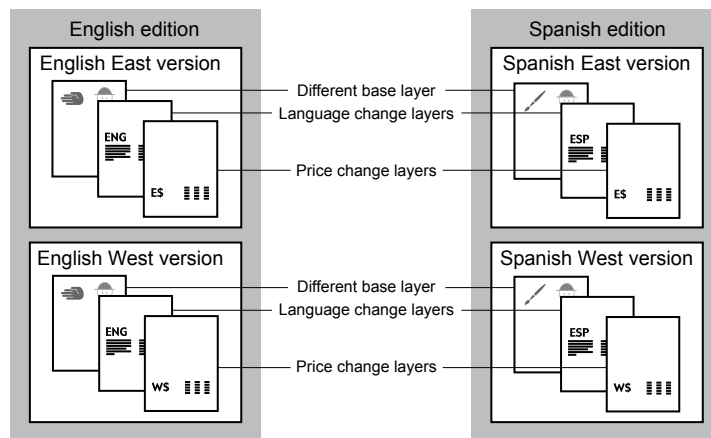


Figure 14: A job with two bases

The version plan would be set to the following:

| Version | Base Layer | Change Layer 1 | Change Layer 2 |
|---------|------------|----------------|----------------|
| EngEast | Base1 | Eng | East |
| EngWest | Base1 | Eng | West |
| EspEast | Base2 | Esp | East |
| EspWest | Base2 | Esp | West |

| Layer | Layer Type | Colorants To Extract | Map To Plate | Page Name Pat... | Page Name ... | Page Number... |
|-------|--|---------------------------|--------------|------------------|---------------|----------------|
| Base1 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Base <input type="radio"/> Change | Cyan,Magenta,Yellow,Black | Do Not Map | | | |
| Base2 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Base <input type="radio"/> Change | Cyan,Magenta,Yellow,Black | Do Not Map | | | |
| Eng | <input type="radio"/> Base <input checked="" type="radio"/> Change | SpotEng | Black | | | |
| Esp | <input type="radio"/> Base <input checked="" type="radio"/> Change | SpotEsp | Black | | | |
| East | <input type="radio"/> Base <input checked="" type="radio"/> Change | SpotEast | Black | | | |
| West | <input type="radio"/> Base <input checked="" type="radio"/> Change | SpotWest | Black | | | |

Figure 15: Version plan with two bases

Input file requirements

Ensure that your input files are of the supported types and comply with one of the supported models.

Input file types supported

Prinerger LPV supports the following types of input files:

- Composite *PostScript* files
- Composite PDF files (layered and non-layered)
- Pre-separated *PostScript* files
- Separated PDF files

Prinerger LPV offers limited support for contone/line work (CT/LW) and CEPS files.

Note: Once a *PostScript* input file has been added into Prinerger and refined, it becomes a PDF page (composite, or separated).

Layered PDF input files

When possible, use layered PDF input files instead of non-layered PDF input files for LPV jobs. Using layered PDF input files generally reduces the number of steps involved in setting up an LPV job:

- Reducing the number of files reduces the potential errors made during the adding and linking steps.
- When you refine layered PDF input files, Prinerger automatically adds and defines the layers in the version plan according to the contents of the input files.

Layered PDF input file requirements

Layer names and content in input files should reflect how you want them in the version plan; however, layers can be mapped to other layers during refine.

See also:

[Mapping input file layers](#) on page [964](#)

Input file models supported

Input files can be created in a variety of ways. LPV supports different input file models based on how the files are created. The models can be divided into the following categories:

- **Category One**—Input files of category one models:
 - Are non-layered files
 - Each contain the entire contents (base and change content) for a version.
- **Category Two**—Input files of category two models:
 - Are non-layered files
 - Each contain either base or change content; not both.
- **Category Three**—Input files of category three models include layered input files.

Input file models affect how you build versioned pages. After versioned pages are generated, workflows are the same.

Conventions

This chapter explains input file models using the following conventions:

- Change content is represented as **Kspot**, **K**, or **S**.
 - **K** represents change content in a file that does not contain content for other versions. **K** can be any process or spot color.
 - **S** represents change content in a file that also contains content for other versions. **S** can be any spot color.
- **[]ⁿ** represents additional files of the same format. The number of additional files varies by model and depends on the number of versions required and/or the number of layers in input files.
- **[Sⁿ]** represents multiple spot colors in a file.
- **CcMcYcKc** represents common content in single base scenarios. In multiple base scenarios, **CbMbYbKb** and **CcMcYcKc** represent different base content.

See also:

[Working with input file models](#) on page [1014](#)

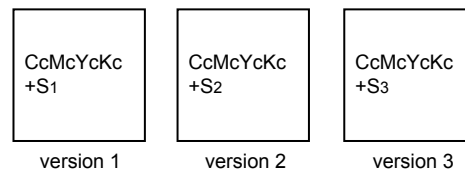
Category 1

Input files of category 1 models are non-layered input files, and each contains the entire contents (base and change content) for one or more versions.

The following illustrations assume that you have one base.

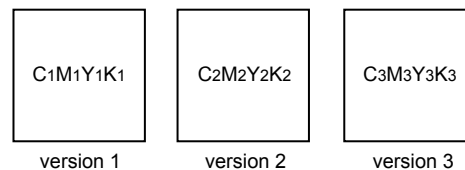
Model 1: [Cc, Mc, Yc, Kc, S]ⁿ

For each version, provide a single input file that contains a mix of base and change content, where the change content is defined as a spot color.



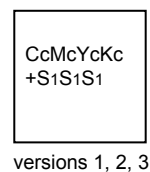
Model 2: [C, M, Y, K]ⁿ

For each version, provide a single input file that contains a mix of base and change content, where all content is in process color. The change content is not identified by color. However, the operator must know which colors contain change content.



Model 3: [Cc, Mc, Yc, Kc + Sⁿ]

For all versions, provide a single input file that contains base and change content, where each version's content is defined with a different spot color.



Category 2

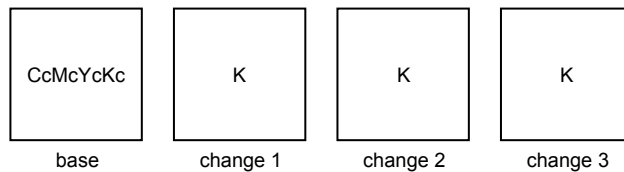
Input files of category 2 models are non-layered files, and each contains either base or change content; not both.

The following illustrations assume that you have one base.

Model 4: [Cc, Mc, Yc, Kc], [K]ⁿ

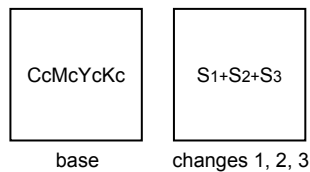
Provide the following files:

- One file with the base content for all editions and versions
- One file for each version, where the change content is identified using process or spot colors

**Model 5: [Cc, Mc, Yc, Kc], [S]ⁿ**

Provide two files:

- One file with the base content for all editions and versions
- One file with all change content, where the content for each version is identified using a different spot color

**Category 3**

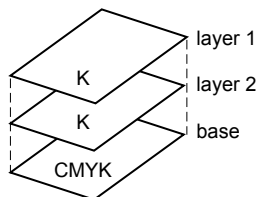
Input files of category 3 models include layered files.

The following illustrations assume that you have one base.

Note: When refining layered input files, multiple layers can be mapped together to simplify the file if necessary.

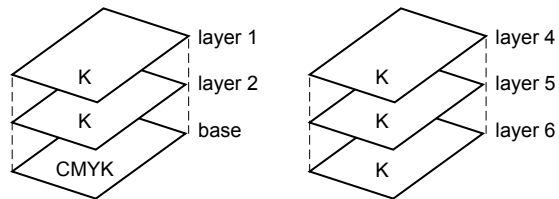
Model 6: [all layers]

Provide a single layered input file in which each layer in the file represents a layer in the version plan.



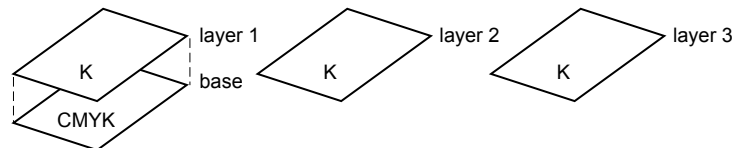
Model 7: [some layers]ⁿ

Provide two or more layered files in which each file contains two or more layers. Each layer must represent a layer in the version plan and contain either base or version content.

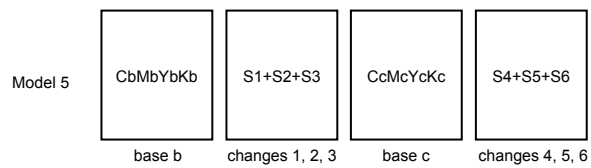
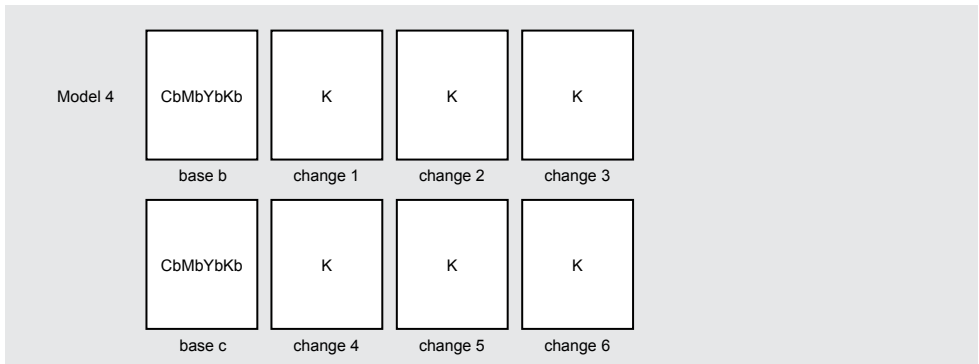
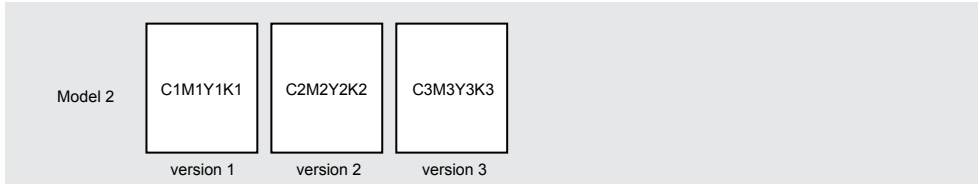
**Model 8: [1 base layer+ 1 version layer], [1 layer]ⁿ**

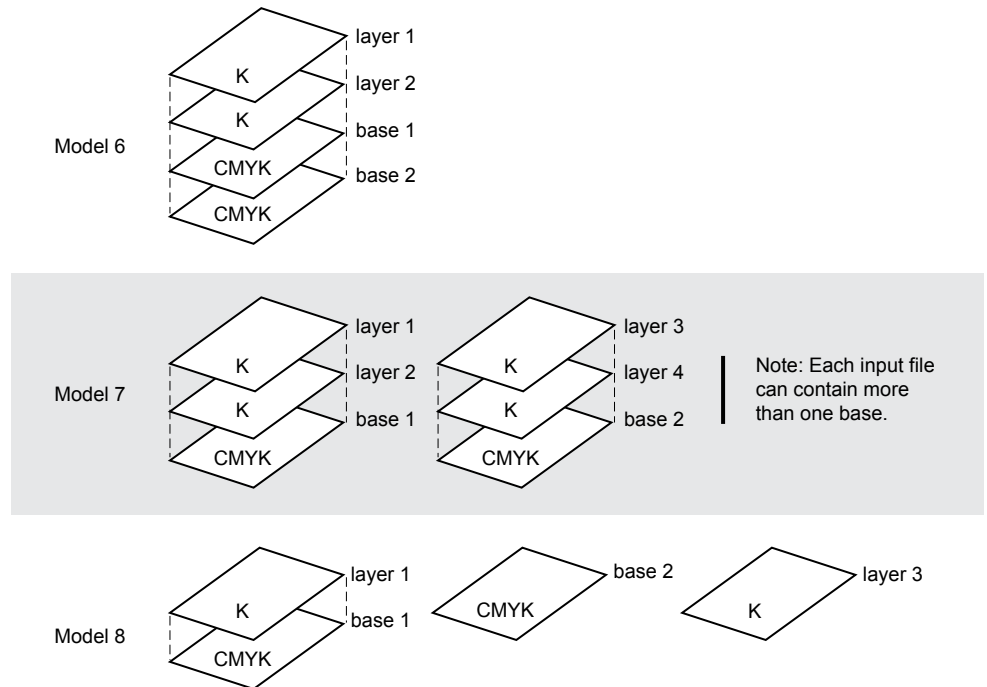
Provide two or more layered files:

- One file containing two or more layers: one layer with base content and other layers with version content
- One or more files each containing content for only one layer (base or version content).

**Models with two bases**

If you require two bases in your job, simply allow for another set of files in each model. For example:





Setting up an LPV job

Introduction

This chapter describes the core tasks required to set up all Layered PDF Versioning (LPV) jobs, and provides requirements and limitations information. Please read this chapter before reading subsequent chapters.

Tip: The procedures in this guide describe how to perform tasks using the menu bar. However, you can also quickly access many menu items using the context menu by right-clicking inside the Workshop window.

Overview of core tasks

To set up and output Prinergy LPV publications, perform the following tasks:

1. Create an LPV job.
2. Add and refine input files.
3. Create the version plan.
4. Add versioned pages.
5. Link refined pages.
6. Generate versioned pages.
7. Assign versioned pages to a page set or imposition plan.
8. Output proofs and final output.

The following figure is a graphic representation of the core LPV tasks.

Illustrated overview of core tasks

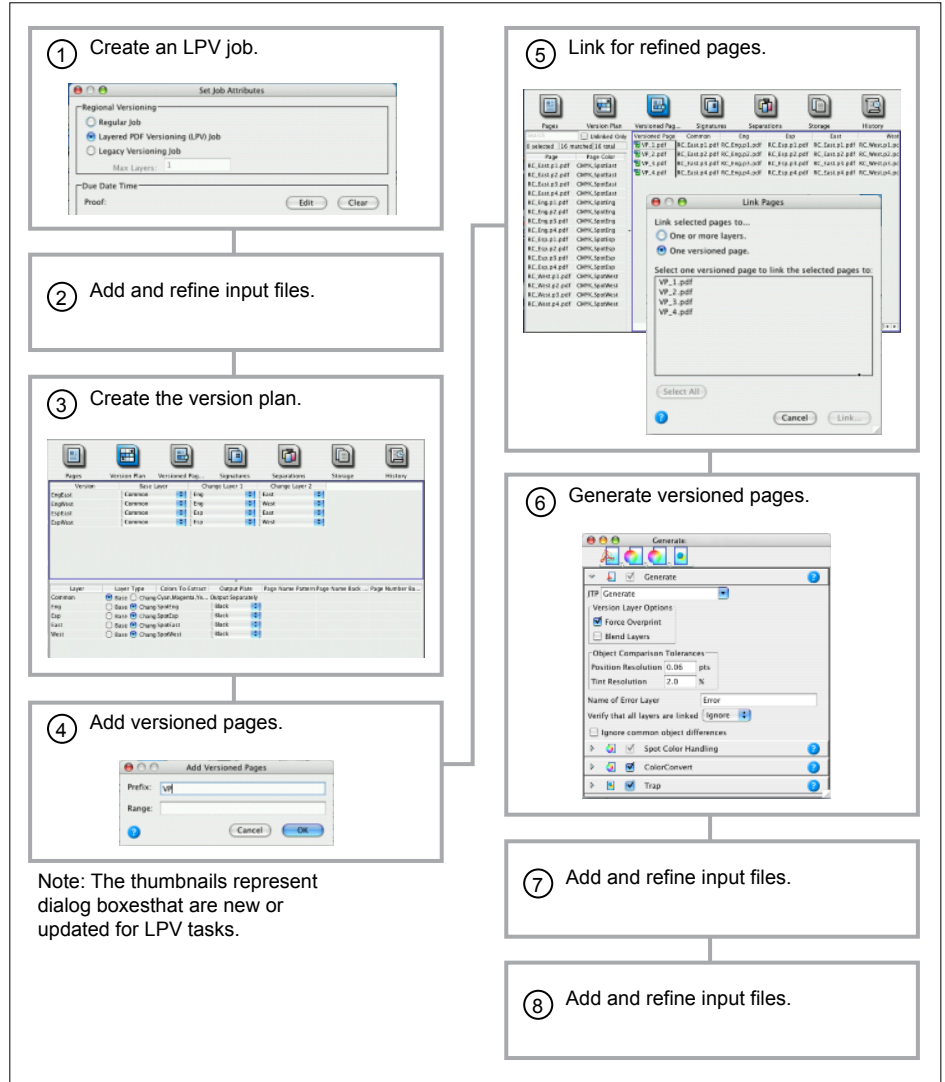


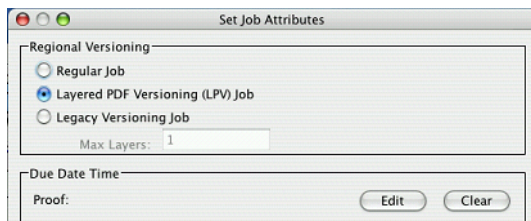
Figure 16: Illustrated overview of core tasks

Creating an LPV job

1. Perform the following as appropriate:

| To | Do this |
|------------------|---|
| Create a job | In Job Finder, in the Jobs view, select File > New Job . |
| Create a pre-job | In Job Finder, in the Pre-jobs view, select File > New Pre-job . |

2. In the Create New Job dialog box, navigate to the group in which you want to create a new versioning job.
3. In the **Create new Job as** box, type the name of the versioning job.
4. Click the triangle beside the **Options** heading to expand the options.
5. In the **Options** section, select the **Job Attributes** check box.
6. In the Set Job Attributes dialog box, select the **Layered PDF Versioning Job** radio button, and then click **OK**.



7. In the Create New Job dialog box, select other options as required, and then click **Create**.

The Job Manager appears as in the following figure.

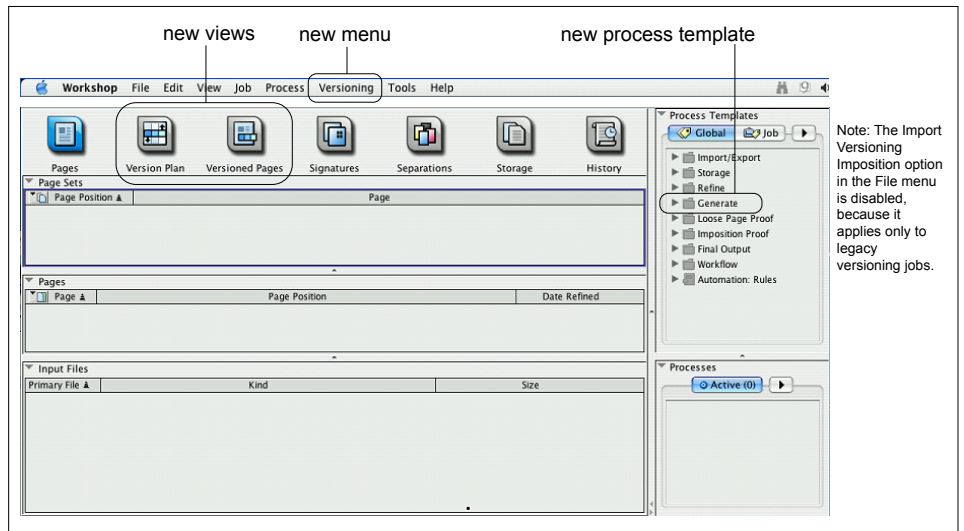


Figure 17: New UI elements in LPV jobs

Creating an LPV job from a template job

Create an LPV job from a template job when you have already produced a very similar job, for example, if you are producing a versioned weekly flyer. This enables you to reuse version plans.

- **Supported template job types:**

- When creating an LPV job from a template job, you can use either a non-versioning job or an LPV job as the template.

Note: You cannot use a legacy versioning job as the template.

- **LPV job attributes in the template:**

If the template job is an LPV job, you can use LPV job attributes from a template job.

The new job can adopt the entire versioning plan from the template job. The LPV job attributes are all elements that are viewable from the **Version Plan** view, including the:

- Versions and layers
- Colors to extract (from the refined page)
- Plate mapping
- Page name patterns



Attention Elements in the **Versioned Pages** view are not adopted in the template job.

1. Perform the following as appropriate:

| To | Do this |
|------------------|--|
| Create a job | In the Job Finder, in the Jobs view, from the File menu, select New Job . |
| Create a pre-job | In the Job Finder, in the Pre-jobs view, from the File menu, select New Pre-job . |

2. In the Create New Job dialog box, navigate to the group in which you want to create a new versioning job.
3. In the **Create new Job as** box, type the name of the versioning job.
4. Click the triangle beside the **Options** heading to expand the options.
5. In the **Options** section, select the **Template Job** check box.
6. In the Select Template Job dialog box, ensure the **Layered PDF Versioning (LPV) Version Plan** check box is selected.
7. Navigate to the job you want to use as the template, and click **OK**.

8. In the Create New Job dialog box, select other options as required, and then click **Create**.

Creating an LPV job using a smart hot folder

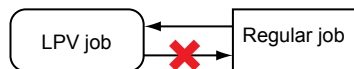
You can set up a smart hot folder to automatically create LPV jobs. This enables you to drag and drop input files into a smart hot folder (in your file management software), and if the input file names match the name of the source file name pattern, the smart hot folder automatically:

1. Creates a job with the target job name from the template job, and saves it in the same group as the template job
2. Adds the input files to the job

For more information about smart hot folders, see the *Prinergy Workshop online help*.

Switching between job types

You cannot switch LPV jobs to regular or to legacy versioning jobs. For example, you must recreate the entire job if you want to switch your LPV job to a regular job.



You can switch jobs from:

- Regular to LPV or to legacy versioning
- Legacy to a regular or to LPV

1. In Job Finder, select the job that you want to change.
2. From the **Edit** menu, select **Edit Job Attributes**.
3. In the Edit Job Attributes dialog box, perform the following as appropriate:

| If you want to switch | Then |
|------------------------|--|
| Regular job to LPV job | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In the Edit Job Attributes dialog box, select the Layered PDF Versioning (LPV) Job option or the Legacy Versioning Job option. |
| LPV job to Regular job | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click Edit > Edit Job Attributes. b. In the Max Layers box, type 1, replacing the existing number, and click OK. |

Adding and refining input files

- Add input files to Prinergy in order that Prinergy can access the source content. Refine the files to prepare pages for LPV job use, and to determine what colors are in the input files.

For general information on how to add and refine input pages, see *Processing Input Files* in the Prinergy Workshop online help.

LPV requirements for refined pages

Refined pages must have spot color naming differences resolved.

Tip: The only colors that should be in refined pages are those that will be mapped in the version plan to an output color.

File name best practices

For each refined page, use file names that identify the associated page position or folio number, and the associated layer. This helps make the linking task faster and easier.

Trim box best practices

All refined pages for a versioned page should have the same geometry settings, such as the trim box settings.

If you have differences between the trim box sizes (of the refined pages of one versioned page), you can remove these differences by editing the geometry on the pages, and refining a second time. If you do not remove the differences, you will receive a warning in the Generate process information.

For information on modifying your trim box settings, see the Prinergy Workshop online help.

Alternate workflow

If you do not have the input files ready, but you know what colors will be in the files, and to what inks the layer colors are to be mapped on output, you can perform the next task (creating the version plan) before you add and refine the input pages.

Adding and refining layered input files

If you are using layered PDF input files:

- Ensure that you set the **PDF 1.4-1.6 (Acrobat 5-7)** box in the **Normalize** section of the refine process template to **Leave as is**.

Layered input files should be trapped at the time of generating instead of refining.

- Version layers and colors are automatically determined and populated in the version plan. In order to have the correct layers and colors populated:
 - Ensure that the colors in the refined files are the correct separation colors to be used in final output.
 - Map input layers to other layers using the **PDF Layer Selection** button on the **Start Process** dialog box.
 - Ensure that versioned pages are not used as input files. Pages that were previously refined as versioned pages are not yet supported as input files.

Tip: You can determine the layers in a refined PDF by selecting the refined PDF in the **Pages** view, and clicking **File > Get Info**. You can also go to the **View** menu and select **Visible Columns** to obtain the same information.

Mapping input file layers

You can map layers from one layer to another. However, you will want to map all input layers to a version plan layer.

For example, if a layer was spelled correctly in the first layered input file, but spelled incorrectly in a second input file, you could map the incorrectly spelled layer to the correct one.

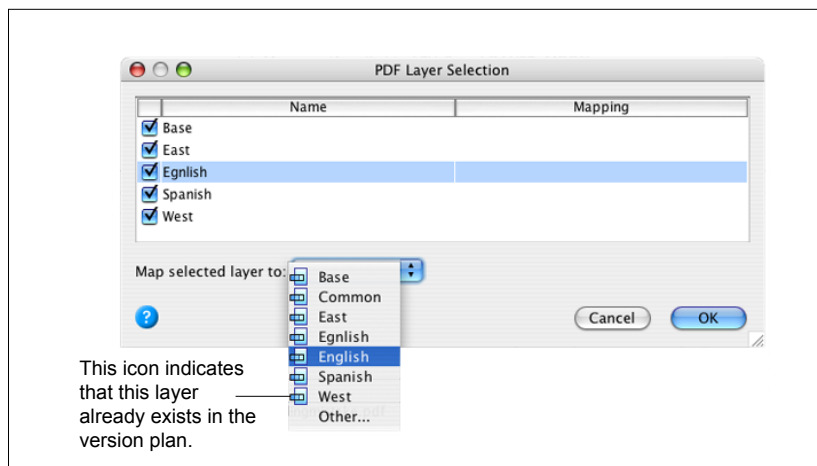


Figure 18: PDF Layer Selection dialog box: mapping input layers

Another reason to map input file layers is if the input file contains multiple layers that contain base content. During refine, you can map

all base content layers to the base version layer to simplify the input files.

1. Start a refine process on a layered input file.
2. In the Start Process dialog box, click **PDF Layer Selection**.
3. In the PDF Layer Selection dialog box, click the layer that you want to map, and in the Map selected layer to box, select the target layer.

Note: When you rerefine input files or refined files, remapping input layers does not remove any unwanted layers from the version plan. You must remove any layers from a version plan manually. In addition, any colors that were mapped or converted to process during a rerefine may still appear in the **Colors to Extract** column of the version plan. If you need to make any changes, they must be done manually.

Creating the version plan

You must create a version plan to configure versions, layers, and color mappings. This task is critical to publishing the correct content in each version.

Two version plan creation methods

You can create a version plan in two ways, using:

- **Version Plan Quick Builder**—is fast and easy to use, but assumes that:
 - You want to give the layers the same name as the versions
 - You want only one change layer for each version.
 - You want all bases to have CMYK extracted, and to be output separately.
 - You want all layers to have black extracted, and to be output as black.

If any of these assumptions are not true for your job, you can modify the version plan accordingly using manual procedures.

- **Manual procedures**—allows you to control all aspects of the version plan, such as removing layers, adding change layers, and editing layer and version names.

If you are using non-layered input files, we recommend that you create a version plan using the Version Plan Quick Builder, and then modify it accordingly with manual procedures.

If you are using layered input files *and* each version corresponds directly to a layer, we recommend that you use the Version Plan Quick Builder to complete the version plan. Otherwise, complete the version plan manually.

Tip: The procedures in this guide describe how to perform tasks using the menu bar. However, you can also quickly perform many tasks using the context menu by right-clicking inside the Workshop window.

Exception pages to the version plan

If you have a job in which there are some pages that cannot use the same color extractions as the rest of the job, you can use a color extraction override to output those pages within the same versioning job.

For example, consider a job in which the bulk of the pages requires only a black plate change between versions, but one signature of one version requires a four-color change. You can set up those pages for a 4-color change within the same job—essentially using a different version plan for those pages.

See also:

[Version plan creation](#) on page [946](#)

Requirements for version plans

- You can have only one version plan per LPV job, and only one job can be associated with a version plan. (When using template jobs, a copy of the version plan is created.)
- Every version plan must have at least one base layer; however, the base layer for a versioned page can be empty, which means that each version of that page is unique.
- If you are using non-layered input files, you must know what colors are in each refined page, the content that the color represents, and the final color (plate) to which the content must be mapped.

Note: If some colors in a refined page are not assigned to a layer in the version plan, these unassigned colors will be placed on an error layer in Acrobat for the versioned page after it has been generated.

If you are using layered input files, colors are automatically determined and populated in the version plan. Ensure that the colors in the refined files are the correct separation colors to be used.

Version name best practices

The length of each version name is limited to 64 characters. However, we strongly recommend that the length of version names be minimized, especially if you are using Apple Filing Protocol (AFP).

Version name best practices for AFP

If you are using AFP, and you plan to output proofs to file, the version name is only one of several components that make up the output file name. This means that the output file name can very easily exceed 31

characters. We recommend that version names be as short as possible, especially if you have many versions in your job. .

Creating a version plan using Quick Builder

Use the Version Plan Quick Builder to help you quickly set up versions and layers. Use the **Tab** key to quickly access successive boxes in the Version Plan Quick Builder.

1. In Job Manager, click the **Version Plan** view.
2. In the **Version Plan** view, from the **Versioning** menu, select **Version Plan Quick Builder**.
3. In the Version Plan Quick Builder dialog box, click **Replace existing Version Plan**.
4. In the **Base Layer** box, type the name of the base layer.
5. In the **Number of Versions** box, type the number of versions that require the base layer that you named in the previous step.
6. In the **Version Names** box, type a version name. Repeat to name the remaining versions, and click **Create Versions**.
7. Perform the following as appropriate:

| If your job requires | Then |
|----------------------|--|
| Only one base | Click Close . Go to step 8. |
| More than one base | Click Add to Version Plan , and repeat steps 4 to 6 for each additional base, and then click Close . Then, go to step 8. |

8. If any assumptions that the Version Plan Quick Builder makes is wrong, in particular, the one change layer assumption, modify the version plan using manual procedures.

Modifying the version plan

1. [To add versions](#)
2. [To add and define layers:](#)
3. [To copy a layer](#)
4. [To add change layer columns](#)
5. [To apply layers to versions](#)

To add versions

1. In Job Manager, click the **Version Plan** view.
2. In the **Version Plan** view, click in the **Versions** (top) section to make it active, and then from the **Versioning** menu, select **Add Version**.

Tip: You can also right-click the **Versions** pane to open the context menu, which allows you to add versions.
3. Double-click in the new version row under the **Version** column to type the name of the version.
4. Repeat this procedure for each additional version you want to add.

To add and define layers:

1. In the **Version Plan** view, click in the **Layer** (bottom) section, and then from the **Versioning** menu, select **Add Layer**.

Tip: You can also right-click the **Versions** section to open the context menu, which allows you to add layers.
2. Double-click in the new layer under the **Layer** column to type the name of the layer. The layer name is limited to 64 characters.
3. Under the **Layer Type** column, select either **Base** or **Change** to define the layer type.
4. Under the **Colors To Extract** column, select the cell to open the **Select Colors To Extract** dialog box.
5. In the **Select Colors To Extract** dialog box, select the colors that are representing the content for this layer.

Alternate workflow: If you are building the version plan before your input files are refined, you can add color names to the list by clicking the **Add** button, and completing the **Add New Colorant** dialog box.

Important: The color name in the refined pages must match the color name specified in the **Colors to extract** column. Color names are case-sensitive.

6. Under the **Output Plate** column, select the ink in which the layer content should print.

Select **Output Separately** if you do not want the colors to be mapped, for example, when a base layer requires CMYK to be extracted, or when you want to output content to a unique separation.

Note: You cannot extract more than one color to the same separation on one version plan layer.

7. If you want to use automatic linking, see the next chapter for information on the **Page Name Patterns**, **Page Name Back Reference**, and **Page Number Back Reference** boxes.
8. Repeat this procedure for the remaining layers.

To copy a layer

- In the **Version Plan** view, click in the layer that you want to copy, and then from the **Versioning** menu, select **Duplicate Layer**.

Tip: You can also right-click the layer to open the context menu, which allows you to duplicate layers.

To add change layer columns

- From the **Versioning** menu, select **Add Change Layer**.

If you require more than one change layer column, repeat for each additional change layer column required. For example, if each version is made up of two change layers and a base layer, you need to add two change layer columns to the version plan.

To apply layers to versions

1. In the **Version Plan** view, in the **Versions** section, on a version row and under the **Base Layer** column, select the base layer for the version from the list.

Note: Only layers that you have defined as a base layer appear in the list.

2. In column **Change Layer 1**, select the required change layer for each version.
3. If required, select additional change layers for each version in columns **Change Layer 2**, **Change Layer 3**, and so on.

Deleting versions and layers

You can delete a *version* at any time. However, before you can delete a *layer*, you must disassociate the layer from all versions and unlink all refined pages from that layer.

1. In the **Version Plan** view, select the version or layer that you want to delete.
2. From the **Versioning** menu, select **Delete Version** or **Delete Layer** as appropriate.

Extracting two colors to one separation on one version plan layer

When you are extracting more than one color, the system does not allow you to output two colors to the same separation using one change layer. You must output the colors separately if using one change layer.

For example, you cannot extract black and spot red to the black separation using the same version plan layer. If you extract two colors on one version plan layer, Prinergy automatically sets the output to

Output Separately. For example:

| Layer | Colors To Extract | Output Plate |
|---------|-------------------|-------------------|
| English | Black, SpotRed | Output Separately |
| Espanol | Black | Black |

To work around this restriction, create another layer for the second color in the English layer. For example:

| Layer | Colors To Extract | Output Plate |
|----------------|-------------------|--------------|
| EnglishBlack | Black | Black |
| EnglishSpotRed | SpotRed | Black |
| Espanol | Black | Black |

Adding versioned pages

Important: In the procedure, *Linking refined pages*, you can also create versioned pages if using the Link to Layers dialog box.

Note: If using automatic linking, you can define the versioned page name prefix using a back reference.

1. In the **Versioned Pages** view, on the **Link** tab, from the **Versioning** menu, select **Add Versioned Pages**.
2. In the Add Versioned Pages dialog box, in the **Prefix** box, type the prefix for the versioned pages if you want to define a prefix.

Note: All versioned page names are composed of a prefix and a number, which are separated by an underscore (_).

Do not type the underscore. Prinergy automatically adds the underscore character between the prefix and the body of the file name.

Tip: Use a prefix which sorts versioned pages to the top of the **Pages** pane of the **Pages** view, for example, **1VP**, in order to make versioned pages easily accessible during a subsequent task.



WARNING: If you use more than one prefix for your versioned pages, only link, at one time, versioned pages of one prefix.

3. In the Add Versioned Pages dialog box, in the **Range** box, type the range of versioned pages that you want to add.
For example, 1–5, 9, 15–20.

Linking refined pages

Link the refined pages to versioned pages in order specify the content file for each layer of each versioned page. Linking is performed on the **Link** tab of the **Versioned Pages** view.

Note: You must first add versioned pages before you can link refined pages manually.

The linking task can be performed in a variety of ways. This section describes the different ways you can perform the subtasks:

- **Selecting refined pages.**
- **Linking refined pages to the linking table.**

Selecting refined pages

Select refined pages in the list of refined pages (left-hand pane) of the **Versioned Pages** view.

| To select | Then |
|-----------------------|---|
| A continuous range | Click the first page you want to link, and then press Shift and click the last page you want to link. |
| A noncontiguous range | Press Ctrl on your Windows computer (or Cmd on your Macintosh computer) and click the pages you want to link. |

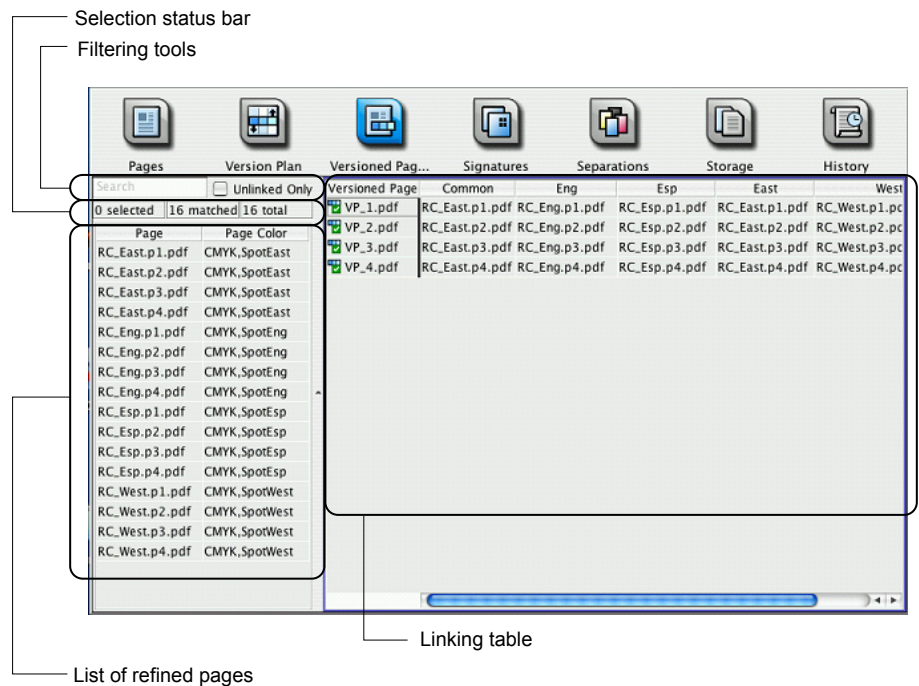


Figure 19: Versioned Pages view

Selection status bar

Use the selection status bar to quickly see the number of total refined pages in the job, the number of pages that match the criteria set in the filtering tools (see below), and the number of currently selected pages.

Filtering the refined pages

Because you can link multiple pages (pages for a row or column) at one time, use the filtering tools to reduce the number of pages in the list and to help you quickly select the appropriate pages.

The image above identifies the filtering tools, which are the:

- **Search** box
- **Unlinked Only** check box

Search box

Use the **Search** box to show only those pages that have matching characters in their names. Because the filter is based on the refine page file names, you should have given refined files names that identify the associated page number and layer.

Type the common portion of the file name in the **Search** box, for example, **p1** or **common**. Once you filter for a layer or for a versioned page, click **Edit** > **Select All** to select them for linking.

For example, if all of your refined pages for the English layer are named with the letters `Eng`, then you can type `Eng` in the **Search** box, to see only those refined pages in the list.

Unlinked only check box

Use the **Unlinked Only** check box to display those refined pages that are not yet linked to a versioned page.

Linking refined pages to the linking table

This section illustrates the different parts of the linking table, and describes the different ways of linking:

Linking table

On the **Link** tab of the **Versioned Pages** view, linking of refined pages to layers and versioned pages is represented in a table. Each layer is a column in the linking table, and each versioned page is a row in the linking table.

The following figure shows the parts of the table:

| Row label | Row | Column label | Column | Cell |
|----------------|-----|--------------|--------|------|
| Versioned Page | Eng | Esp | East | West |
| VP_1.pdf | | | | |
| VP_2.pdf | | | | |
| VP_3.pdf | | | | |
| VP_4.pdf | | | | |

Figure 20: Parts of the linking table

When this guide refers to parts of the table, it is helpful to keep in mind that:

- Row = versioned page
- Column = layer
- Cell = one layer of a versioned page

Drag-and-drop

You can drag the selected refined pages and drop them in the appropriate cells on the **Versioned Pages** tab. You can drop pages into:

- **A cell**—Drag one refined page to one cell.
- **A column or a row**—A continuous range of cells. To drop into a row, press the **Ctrl** key on a Windows computer (or **Cmd** on your Macintosh computer) while dropping.

Note: If you drag a set of pages to an area that is too small to hold all of the selected pages, the extra pages are not linked.

- **A column label**—Opens the Link to Layer dialog box, allowing you to select a noncontiguous range of cells within a column.
- **A row label**—Opens the Link to Versioned Pages dialog box, allowing you to select a noncontiguous range of cells within a row.

Dropping onto row labels or column labels

Dragging-and-dropping onto a row or column label opens a dialog box, which allows you to link pages to a noncontiguous range and allows you to correctly drop pages into columns that have not been sorted alphabetically.

For example, if your layer columns are not in alphabetical order, refined pages that must be linked to different layers of a versioned page cannot be linked correctly using drag-and-drop because the pages are

placed in alphabetical order. See the following table for an example of incorrect results when pages are dropped into a row.

| | Versioned Page | EspWest | EngEast | EspEast |
|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| EngEast.p1.pdf | VP_1.pdf | <i>EngEast.p1.pdf</i> | <i>EspEast.p1.pdf</i> | <i>EspWest.p1.pdf</i> |
| EngEast.p2.pdf | VP_2.pdf | | | |
| EngEast.p3.pdf | VP_3.pdf | | | |
| EspEast.p1.pdf | | | | |
| EspEast.p2.pdf | | | | |
| EspEast.p3.pdf | | | | |
| EspWest.p1.pdf | | | | |
| EspWest.p2.pdf | | | | |
| EspWest.p3.pdf | | | | |

Context menus

Instead of using drag-and-drop, you can use context menus, which are accessed by right-clicking in specific areas of the window. After selecting one or more refined pages, open a context menu by right-clicking in:

- **A cell**—With one page selected, allows you to **Link** (to a cell). With more than one page selected, allows you to **Link Right** (to a row), or **Link Down** (to a column).
- **A column label**—Allows you to **Link to <column>**, and opens the Link to Layer dialog box.
- **A row label**—Allows you to **Link to <versioned page>**, and opens the Link to Versioned Page dialog box. See the *Link pages dialog box* section below.
- **A refined page**—Allows you to **Link...** (to a column or a row), and opens the Link Pages dialog box.

Versioning menu

After selecting one or more refined pages, instead of dragging-and-dropping or using context menus, you can use the **Versioning** menu, which is located on the menu bar.

Link pages dialog box

When using the **Versioning** menu to link, the **Link Pages** dialog box appears. In the **Link Pages** dialog box, you must choose to link selected pages to one of the following:

- **One or more layers of a versioned page**—linking to a row

| Versioned Page | Layer | Layer | Layer |
|----------------|-------|-------|-------|
| VP_1 | | | |
| VP_2 | | | |
| VP_3 | | | |
| VP_4 | | | |



- **The same layer of one or more versioned pages**—linking to a column

| Versioned Page | Layer | Layer | Layer |
|----------------|-------|-------|-------|
| VP_1 | | | |
| VP_2 | | | |
| VP_3 | | | |
| VP_4 | | | |

Linking refined pages using the Versioning menu or the Context menu

1. On the **Link** tab of the **Versioned Pages** view, select refined pages in left-hand pane.
2. Select **Link** either in the **Versioning** menu or in the context menu.

3. In the Link Pages dialog box, perform the following as appropriate:

| If you want to | Then, click the |
|---|---|
| <p>Link to a row (Linking from one versioned page to many layers)</p> | <p>One versioned page button, click the versioned page to which to link the pages, and then click Link.</p> <p>The Link to Versioned Page dialog box appears.</p> <p>a. In the Link to Versioned Page dialog box, in the left table, select a refined page, and click the arrow button  beside the layers to which it must be associated.</p> <p>Tip: If you select the wrong arrow button, select the back button  to unlink the refined page.</p> <p>b. Repeat for the remaining refined pages required for the selected versioned page.</p> |
| <p>Link to a column (Linking many versioned pages to one layer)</p> | <p>One or more layers button, click the layer to which to link the pages, and then click Link.</p> <p>a. The Link to Layer dialog box appears. In the Link to Layer dialog box, in the Range box, type the range of versioned pages to which you want to link the refined pages.</p> <p>b. If you want to link also to other layers, click the Also link to check box, and select the layers from the list.</p> <p>c. Click Link.</p> <p>The refined pages appear in the table of linked pages.</p> |
| <p>Link to all columns</p> | <p>One versioned page button, and then Select All. Click OK.</p> <p>The Link to Layer dialog box appears.</p> <p>a. The Link to Layer dialog box appears. In the Link to Layer dialog box, in the Range box, type the range of versioned pages to which you want to link the refined pages.</p> |

| If you want to | Then, click the |
|---|--|
| (Applicable to model 3; link to all layers of more than one versioned page) | <p>b. If you want to link also to other layers, click the Also link to check box, and select the layers from the list.</p> <p>c. Click Link.</p> <p>Note: If you have finished linking all the refined pages, your next step is generating.</p> |

Linking refined pages by dragging

1. On the **Link** tab of the **Versioned Pages** view, select refined pages in left-hand pane.
2. Perform the following as appropriate:

| If you want to | Drag to |
|---|---|
| Link one refined page | A cell |
| A continuous range of versioned pages | A column (a layer) |
| An alphabetically ordered range of layers | A row (a versioned page) |
| A noncontiguous range of versioned pages | <p>A column label.</p> <p>Opens the link to the Layer dialog box</p> |
| A noncontiguous range of layers | <p>A row label.</p> <p>Opens the Link to versioned pages dialog box</p> |

Range box in the Link to Layers dialog box

When using the Link to Layers dialog box, note that you can use the **Range** box to link:

- **Each contributing page to a single versioned page—specifying each versioned page**

For example: **1, 3, 6**

This links the first selected contributing page to versioned page 1, the second selected contributing page to versioned page 3, and the third selected contributing page to versioned page 6.

- **Each contributing page to a single versioned page—identifying the versioned pages as a range**

For example **1-3, 6**

This links the first selected contributing page to versioned page 1, the second selected contributing page to versioned page 2, the third

selected contributing page to versioned page 3, and the fourth selected contributing page to versioned page 6.

Note: This syntax does not create versioned pages. For example, if versioned page 2 does not exist, it is not created. If versioned page 2 does not exist, then, the example would link the first contributing page to versioned page 1, the second contributing page to versioned page 3, and the third contributing page to versioned page 6.

- **Each contributing page to multiple versioned pages—using parentheses**

For example **(1,3), 6**

This links the first contributing page to versioned pages 1 and 3; and links the second contributing page to versioned page 6.

For example **(1-3), 6**

This links the first contributing page to versioned pages 1, 2, and 3; and links the second contributing page to versioned page 6.

Unlinking refined pages

1. On the **Link** tab of the **Versioned Pages** view, in the right-hand table, select the refined pages that you want to unlink.

Note: To select a non-contiguous range, hold down the ctrl key while selecting the refined pages.

2. From the **Versioning** menu, select **Unlink**.

Tip: You can also right-click to open the context menu, which allows you to unlink refined pages.

Viewing associated contributing pages and versioned pages

1. To view a list of the contributing pages to a versioned page
 - a. Select the versioned page in the **Pages** pane of the **Pages** view.
 - b. Click **File > Get Info**.

In the Get Info dialog box, the **Linked Pages** heading is followed by a list of contributing pages.

2. To view a list of the versioned pages using a contributing page
 - a. Select the contributing page in the **Pages** pane of the **Pages** view.
 - b. Click **File > Get Info**.

In the Get Info dialog box, the **Linked To Versioned Pages** heading is followed by a list of versioned pages.

Overriding color extractions

If you have a job in which there are some pages that cannot use the same color extractions as the rest of the job, you can set a color extraction override for those pages.

Use multiple bases when all versioned pages require two different bases. When only some versioned pages require a different base, use color extraction override.

Note: If you set a color extraction override to a generated versioned page, you must re-generate.


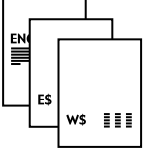

1. In the **Versioned Pages** view, on the **Link** tab, select the versioned pages that require color extraction override.
2. Right-click (over the selected versioned page) to open the context menu and click **Override Colors to Extract**.
3. In the Override Colors to Extract for <versionpagename> dialog box, click the cell, under the **Colors To Extract** column, that you want to change.
4. In the **Edit Colors To Extract** dialog box, select the colors that you want to extract for the selected version of the versioned page, and click **OK**.

The selected version of the versioned page in the **Link** tab changes to a gold color. This color indicates a color extraction override.

5. If you do not want the base layer to appear in the output for the selected version, select **Base** in the **Layer Type** column. This action changes the selected layer to a base layer.
6. Repeat the above steps for any additional versioned pages that require color extraction override.

Example

In the retail catalog scenario, if the base for page 1 of the Spanish versions were modified to be different from the base used for the English versions, you need to use color extraction override to set the Spanish layer to have CMYK extracted instead of Black. Also, you must change the Spanish layer type to **Base**.

| Layers for page 1 | Colors To Extract | Layer Type |
|---|-------------------|------------|
|  <p>Common</p> | CMYK | Base |
|  <p>English, East and West</p> | Black | Change |
|  <p>Spanish (base objects are different from common)</p> | CMYK | Base |

When setting the color extraction override, note that you must right-click under the **Versioned Page** column in the **Link** tab of the **Versioned Pages** view. See the figure below.

| Versioned Page | Eng | Esp | East | West |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| VP_1.pdf | EngEast.p1.pdf | EspEast.p1.pdf | EspEast.p1.pdf | EspWest.p1.pdf |
| VP_2.pdf | EngEast.p2.pdf | EspEast.p2.pdf | EspEast.p2.pdf | EspWest.p2.pdf |
| VP_3.pdf | EngEast.p3.pdf | EspEast.p3.pdf | EspEast.p3.pdf | EspWest.p3.pdf |
| VP_4.pdf | EngEast.p4.pdf | EspEast.p4.pdf | EspEast.p4.pdf | EspWest.p4.pdf |

Right-click to open the context menu

Then, you must left-click under the **Colors To Extract** column in the Override Colors to Extract dialog box to open the Edit Colors to Extract dialog box.

| Override Colors to Extract For VP_2.pdf | | | |
|---|--|-------------------|-------------------|
| Layer | Layer Type | Colors To Extract | Output Plate |
| Eng | <input type="radio"/> Base <input checked="" type="radio"/> Change | Black | Black |
| Esp | <input type="radio"/> Base <input checked="" type="radio"/> Change | Black | Black |
| East | <input type="radio"/> Base <input checked="" type="radio"/> Change | Black | Black |
| West | <input type="radio"/> Base <input checked="" type="radio"/> Change | Black | Black |
| Common | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Base <input type="radio"/> Change | C,M,Y,K | Output Separately |

Left-click to open the Edit Colors to Extract dialog box.

Click to change the Layer Type to Base.

Tip: To reset color extractions:

1. In the **Versioned Pages** view, on the **Link** tab, select the versioned pages for which you want to reset color extraction.
2. Right-click (over the selected versioned page) to open the context menu and click **Reset Colors to Extract**.

The Generate process

You must perform the Generate process on versioned pages in order to convert the versioned page metadata into layered PDF pages. After you perform the Generate process, you can output content and view the versioned pages in Acrobat.

The Generate process performs the following for each versioned page:

- According to the colors mapped in the version plan:
 - Compares each contributing page to identify base content (for input file models 1 and 2 only)
 - Extracts base objects onto a PDF layer named according to the base layers in the version plan
 - Extracts unique objects onto a PDF layer named according to the versions specified in the version plan
- For input file models 1 and 2, tries to match the objects on change layer contributing pages that are meant to be identical to base content. If objects do not match within the tolerances set, both the base layer object and the corresponding unmatched change layer object are extracted onto a PDF layer, which is, by default, named **Error**.
- Finds any objects with colors that are not specified in any layer of the version plan, and extracts them onto the error layer.
- Saves the layered PDF versioned page in the \Job\Subpage directory

Generate process template

The generate task requires you to use a Generate process template.

| Option | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| JTP list | Select the job ticket processor (JTP) you want to use for generating version pages. |

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| <p>Version Layer Options</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Force Overprint check box • Blend Layers check box | <p>Use these options to quickly correct knockout/overprint problems.</p> <p>Force Overprint check box—Select this check box when an object on a change layer creates a knockout in the base layer, and where the knockout is not the same on each version. This check box sets all change objects to overprint, where change objects are objects on pages that are linked to layers other than the base layer.</p> <p>For example, if you have English and French text printing in black over a CMYK image on the base layer, the text in each language must overprint; otherwise, the base CMY plates will have knockouts in both languages and the black text will not fit.</p> <p>Note: One hundred percent (100%) white objects are treated differently and may still create knockouts in some separations.</p> <p>Blend Layers check box—Select this check box when an “invisible” object (an object colored with 0% ink sitting on a blank area of the page) on a change layer obscures or creates a knockout in one or more of the base layer’s separations. This check box uses the PDF Transparency feature to blend layers and to simulate the double burn technique of imaging data on a plate by exposing it multiple times. The check box makes the white or clear areas of versioned objects transparent, and ensures that the colored/tinted versioned objects can only make the area darker.</p> <p>Note: If a page has text that is only partially over an image, you may notice, after selecting the Blend Layers check box, differences between characters that are on the image and those that are not on the image at low resolutions such as 300 dpi. These differences should not appear at higher resolutions such as 1200 dpi or if you choose the Adobe PDF Print Engine as the RIP in the RIP Options section of the Edit Jobs Attributes dialog box.</p> |

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| <p>Object Comparison Tolerances</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Position Resolution box • Tint Resolution box | <p>If you are using input file models 1 or 2, in the Position Resolution box, enter the maximum distance between two identical objects (on different pages) at which the objects are considered the same.</p> <p>If you are using input file models 1 or 2, in the Tint Resolution box, enter the maximum percentage tint difference between two identical objects (on different pages) at which the objects are considered the same.</p> |
| <p>Name of Error Layer box</p> | <p>Type the name that you want for the PDF layer containing all objects (in the contributing pages) that are not mapped in the version plan.</p> |
| <p>Verify that all layers are linked list</p> | <p>Select Warn to receive messages when a versioned page has at least one empty layer. The messages appear in the Process Info dialog box, and in the History view.</p> <p>Select Ignore if you do not want to receive these messages.</p> |

| Option | Description |
|--|---|
| Detect common object differences list | <p>This feature is relevant for models 1 and 2 only. (In model 1, for each version, a single input file contains a mix of base and change content, and change content is defined as a spot color. In model 2, for each version, a single input file contains a mix of base and change content, all content is in process color, and the change content is not identified by color).</p> <p>The options in this list determine how the system will react to differences between 'common' objects—objects that appear on all version pages, and thus belong on the base layer. An object may be visually identical, but have differences in construction, perhaps due to different versions of creative applications in which it was created.</p> <p>Select Warn to receive messages when differences occur between common objects. The messages appear in the Process Info dialog box, and in the History view. The different object will be mapped to the error layer and will not be included on the base layer.</p> <p>Select Fail if you want the generate process to fail with an error icon when common object differences occur. The operation will fail, but a layered PDF is still generated so that the operator can see the problems. The different object will be mapped to the error layer and will not be included on the base layer.</p> <p>Select Ignore to print, despite the object differences. The software that checks the fit of common objects is disabled. Prinergy will map objects to base according to the Colors to Extract column (in the Version Plan view), and will not look for common objects. It is not recommended to select Ignore unless you have already run the generate process with Warn or Fail and you are aware of any errors due to object differences.</p> <p>This option may be appropriate when you are dealing with files with problematic objects that cannot be</p> |

| Option | Description |
|--------|--|
| | fixed by adjusting the pages in a creative application. It is recommended to manually proof the versioned pages to ensure that all change layer objects are in register with the base layer. |

For descriptions of the remaining sections, see the Prinergy Workshop Online Help descriptions of the refine process template, which has the same sections.

Note: If trapping or color matching are enabled during the Generate process, only objects on the common or base layers will be trapped or color matched.

Generating versioned pages

1. In the **Pages** view or **Versioned Pages** view, select the versioned pages that you want to generate.
2. From the **Process** menu, select **Generate**, and then select the generate process template that you want.
3. In the Start Process dialog box, modify the options as desired.

If desired, modify the process template before starting the process by clicking **Edit Process Template**, modifying the process template, and clicking **OK**.

4. Click **OK** to begin processing.

Monitoring generation status

Once a versioned page is generated, it may need to be generated again if you make changes to any related data such as removing a link. Prinergy LPV helps you track which versioned pages need to be generated by displaying a status icon beside each versioned page.

Changes that require regeneration

The following actions require you to regenerate the affected versioned pages:

- Changing the version plan (for example, if you add or remove a layer or a version; or if you change the color mappings)
- Changing links (for example, if you link or unlink a refined page)
- Refining a contributing page after the associated versioned page has been generated
- Changing the geometry using the Set Page Geometry dialog box

Important: If you change a contributing page in Acrobat, you must refine the page again and generate the associated versioned page again.

Prinergy does not alert you when a contributing page modified in Acrobat needs to be refined again.

Viewing generation status

Once you start to generate versioned pages, view generation status in the **Pages** view or in the **Versioned Pages** view. Versioned pages that require generation cannot be output.

Pages view

The **Pages** view shows two types of generation information for each versioned page:

- **Generation requirement**—Whether or not you must generate
- **Generate process result**—Whether or not the last generate process was successful

Generation requirement

The following columns show whether or not you must generate the versioned page:

- **Page** and **Page Position** columns—with icons as shown in the following figure.
- **Versioned Page Status** column—with one of the following phrases: 'Requires Generation' or 'Generated'.

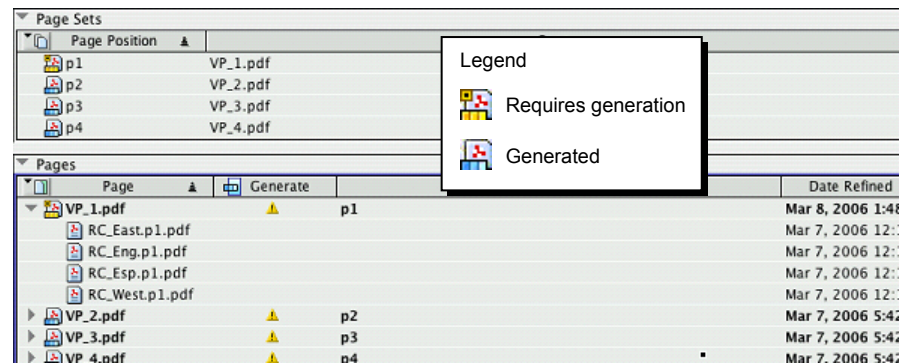


Figure 21: Generate status icons on Page view

Generate process result

The **Generate** column identifies the success or failure of the last generate process. This means that if you make a change that requires regeneration, the icon in this column does not change. This icon would only be affected by a generate process.

The icons used in this column are standard for other process snap-in columns.

Note: The column name is taken from the process template group name. For example, if you use a generate process template in the Dave group of process

templates, the column identifying the versioned page generation status is named Dave.

Recommended visible columns in the Pages view

In many jobs, it is important to note the differences in certain file attributes between pages. Thus, we recommend that you make the following columns visible in the **Pages** pane of the **Pages** view:

- Versioned Page Status
- Page Colors
- Trim Size
- Media Size
- Offset

Note: In LPV jobs, in the **Pages** pane of the **Page** view, the **Group by Input File** button is no longer available. The **Group by Assignment** button continues to be available.

Versioned Pages view

In the **Versioned Pages** view, the icons indicate both generation requirement and the generate process result. The icons appear as in the following figure.

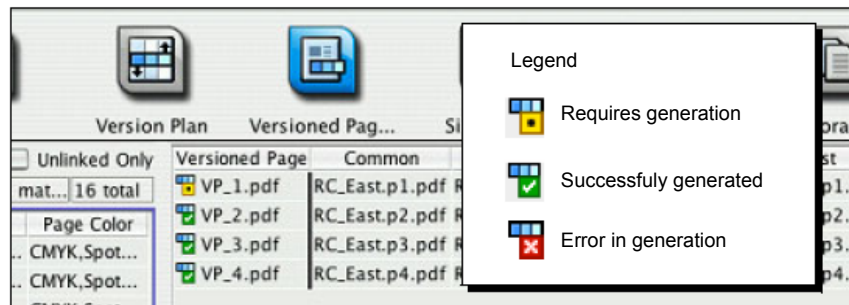


Figure 22: Generate status icons on Versioned Pages view

Viewing generated pages in Acrobat

Once versioned pages have been successfully generated with Acrobat 6.0 or later, you can view the layered PDF files. Layered PDF files allow you to view all versions of a versioned page in one window.

The layers in layered PDF files do not correspond to layers in the version plan. The following types of layers are available in layered PDF files (Acrobat):

- Base layers—contain base content (This is the same as the base layers that are used in the version plan.)
- Version change layers—contains the content for each version excluding the base content. In other words, a version change layer is a combination of all change layers for a version.

For example, you would see the following layers for the retail catalog scenario.

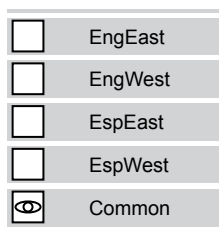


Figure 23: PDF layers in Acrobat

By default, the layered PDF page opens in Acrobat showing only the error layer (if any) and the base layer. To see the version change layers, select the check boxes beside the corresponding version change layer.

Multiple base layers in Acrobat

When you have more than one base layer in a job, each base layer appears as a separate layer in Acrobat. For example, you are able to select the following layers in a layered PDF file (in Acrobat).

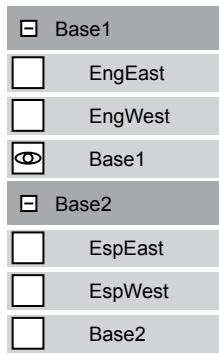


Figure 24: Multiple base layers in Acrobat

Important: Often, you will not be able to see two or more base layers at a time because one will entirely cover the others. Ensure that you have selected only one base layer. If you select two base layers to view, the base layer that is listed first in the layers tab appears on top.

In Acrobat, version change layers are grouped according to their associated base layer.

By default, the versioned page opens with only the first base layer visible. To see the other base layers and change layers, select the check boxes beside the corresponding layers.

Investigating generate warnings

Your generate process can be successful yet still have warnings regarding contributing pages with errors. If you have contributing pages with errors, Prinerger reports the name of the page in the Process Information dialog box and in the **History** view.

Problem file affecting others in the process

For input file models 1 and 2, when Prinerger finds a problem in a contributing page during generation, Prinerger also finds errors in all subsequent pages of the same process. These files may not have errors.

To confirm whether or not the files have errors, remove the problem file and regenerate the remaining files. The files will process successfully if they do not have errors.

The reason why Prinerger finds errors in all files after the first problem file is because it compares each file to the ones previously processed. Thus, when one file contains problems, all remaining files in the process are compared to it, and will, therefore, not match even when they do not have errors.

Objects on the error layer

Prinerger LPV extracts the following objects onto a PDF layer, which is, by default, named **Error**:

- Objects that have been defined with colors that are not specified in the version plan. For example, if no version plan layer is set to extract the color Spot5, then any objects colored with Spot5 are placed on the error layer.
- For input file models 1 and 2, objects from different contributing pages that are meant to be common, but that do not exactly match. For example, if an object in a change layer contributing page has been incorrectly positioned, sized, or colored, but is otherwise the same as the base layer object, both objects (control and test objects) are extracted to the error layer. These objects are extracted to the error layer in order to prevent potential misregistration on press.

To view errors, in the **Pages** view, in the **Pages** pane, open the problem layered PDF page (VP_xxx.pdf) in Acrobat. View the error layer in the problem page, remembering to clear the display of all other PDF layers to isolate the objects in error.

When trying to determine why an object does not match the first set of base objects, remember to compare the following attributes:

- Position
- Font
- Color
- Associated ICC profile
- Clipping path
- The order in which an object is stacked in relation to other objects on the page (z-order)

If you are unable to determine why objects are appearing on the 'error' layer, use Prinerger PDF Compare, a licensed Acrobat plug-in, to help you find the differences between objects.

Note: If you do not want the objects in the error layer to print, you do not need to take any action. Simply leave the objects in the error layer.

Fixing a contributing refined page

If a contributing page has errors, you may want to fix the problem at a later time if the problem is not obvious, and you want to continue generating other pages. To continue generating other pages, you must unlink the problem versioned page.

If the reason for the error is obvious and easy to fix, you may want to fix the error immediately.

1. Perform the following as appropriate:

| If you want to fix the contributing page | Then |
|--|--|
| Immediately | Go to the next step. |
| Later | Unlink the contributing page from the versioned page. Continue to generate other contributing pages. When you are ready to fix the problem file, go to the next step. |

2. Perform the following as appropriate:

| If | Then |
|--|--|
| You can fix the error in Acrobat | Open the contributing page by double-clicking the page, and fix the object. |
| You must fix the error in the original creative application such as QuarkXPress or Adobe Illustrator | Open the original file in the creative application, and fix the object. Add the corrected file to the Prinergy job. |

3. Refine the corrected contributing page (not the versioned page) again.

4. Perform the following as appropriate:

| If | Then |
|--|--|
| You have not unlinked the problem page in step 1 | Go to the next step. |
| You have unlinked the problem page in step 1 | Link the corrected and refined page to the appropriate versioned page. |

5. Regenerate the versioned page.

Prinergy lists the versioned pages that require generation.

Assigning versioned pages to a page set or imposition plan

After you have created a versioned page, assign the versioned pages to a position in a page set or an imposition plan.

In LPV, you assign versioned pages in the same way as you assign non-versioned pages

Important: Note that you must assign the versioned page—not the contributing pages of the versioned page—to the page position.

Tip: Versioned pages that have not been generated can be assigned to a page set or an imposition plan. However, the page cannot be output until it has been generated.

As in a regular job, there are four ways in which you can assign versioned pages to a page set:

- Create page sets and assign versioned pages independent of an imposition plan and then import an imposition plan with the **Use existing page set** option selected
- Import an imposition plan which creates the page sets, and then assign the versioned pages to the page positions in the imposition plan
- In the Job Manager, from the **File** menu, select **Create New Imposition** to create a new imposition plan using Preps software, or

other qualified imposition software, and assign the versioned pages to the page positions in the imposition plan page set

- Import a new imposition plan and use Prinerger APA to automatically assign the versioned pages to the page set.

Once you have refined a page, you can output a loose page proof. Once all page positions in your imposition plan have been assigned, you can output the imposition. For information about outputting from LPV jobs, see the next chapter.

For information about how to add page sets, use Prinerger APA, import imposition plans, and configure integrated imposition software, see the Prinerger Workshop online help.

Versioned white objects

When versioned white objects are designed to be seen on top of another colored object, the colors that make up the colored object must be extracted in the version plan. (Versioned white objects are white objects that do not appear on all versions.)

For example, with the following objects (white text on cyan boxes) in your files, you must extract cyan for each affected version in the version plan.

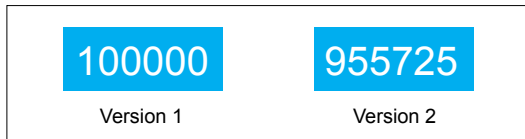


Figure 25: Versioned white objects

| Version | Colors To Extract | Map To Plate |
|-----------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Common | CMYK | Output Separately |
| Version 1 | CK | Output Separately |
| Version 2 | CK | Output Separately |

Background object color not extracted

If you do not extract the colors that make up the background object in the version layers, your output may not appear as intended. See the following examples.

- **Force Overprint OFF**

When cyan is not extracted in the version layers, you receive the following results when the **Force Overprint** check box is OFF (cleared):

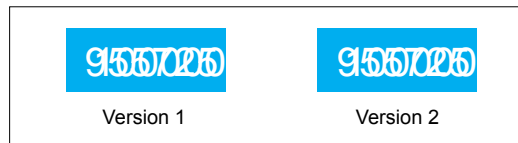


Figure 26: Versioned white objects: Force Overprint OFF

The white objects are included on the 'common' layer in Acrobat so that you can see them.

- **Force Overprint ON**

When cyan is not extracted in the version layers, you receive the following results when the **Force Overprint** check box is ON (selected):

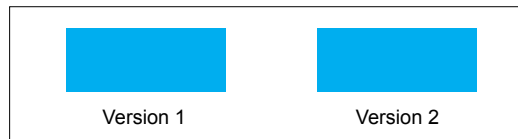


Figure 27: Versioned White objects: Force Overprint ON

Outputting from an LPV job

Introduction

This chapter describes the options and considerations for outputting Layered PDF Versioning (LPV) jobs that are in addition to those options and considerations for outputting non-LPV jobs:

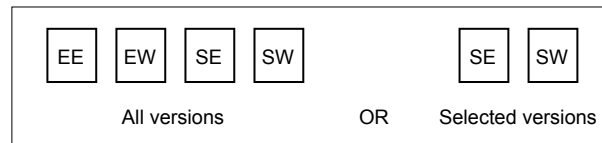
Tip: The procedures in this guide describe how to perform tasks using the menu bar. However, you can also quickly access many menu items using the context menu by right-clicking inside the Workshop window.

For general information about how to create proofs and final output, and how to start a process, see the Prinergy Workshop online help.

Outputting all or selected versions

Note: In the example below, versions are represented as: EE = EnglishEast, EW = EnglishWest, SE = SpanishEast, and SW = SpanishWest

By default, all versions are output. However, when creating proofs, you can select individual versions to output. For example:



1. Perform the following as appropriate:

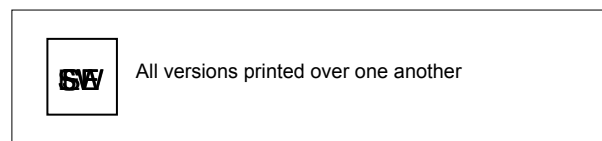
| If outputting | Then |
|-------------------|--|
| Loose page proofs | Select the desired versioned pages in the Pages pane of the Pages view. |
| Imposition proofs | Select the desired surfaces in the Imposition Plans pane of the Signatures view. |

2. Start the output process.
3. In the Start Process dialog box, expand the **Options** area, click **Output Selected Versions**, and select the desired versions.

Outputting all versions overlaid

Note: In the examples below, versions are represented as: EE = EnglishEast, EW = EnglishWest, SE = SpanishEast, and SW = SpanishWest

When creating proof output, you can choose to overlay all versions of a page together. This creates proofs in which all versions are printed over one another. For example:

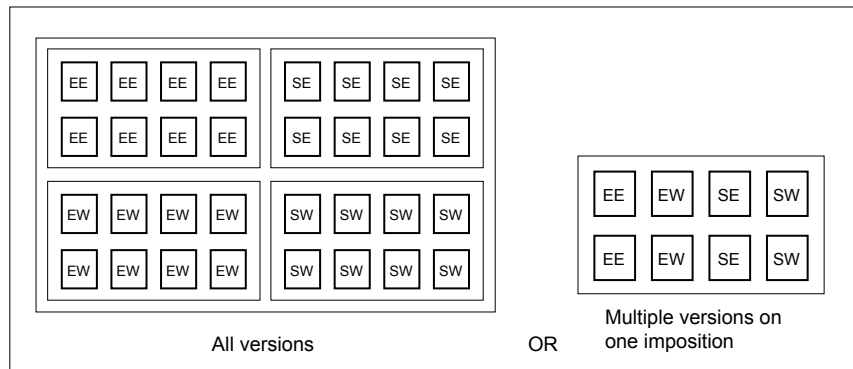


1. Open the output process template that you want to use to proof the overlaid versions.
2. In the output process template, in the **Render** section, select the **Overlay Versioned Content** check box.
3. Start the output process using the process template that you have just modified.

Outputting multiple versions per surface

Note: In the examples below, versions are represented as: EE = EnglishEast, EW = EnglishWest, SE = SpanishEast, and SW = SpanishWest

When outputting surfaces (imposition proofs and final output), you can output pages of different versions on a single surface. By default, all pages of a surface are output with the same version.

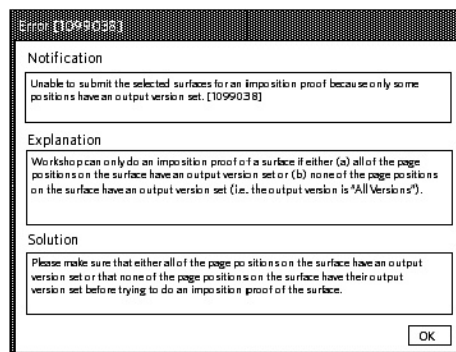


Conditions of this feature are:

- For each surface, all pages must be either:
 - **All versions**—This provides one imposition for each version in the version plan. Each imposition is output with the same version in each page position.
- OR**
- **One specific version**—This provides a single imposition in which the content in each page position can be a different version.

Tip: Use the LPV marks for separations to identify the different versions on an imposition. These marks are replaced with the version(s) associated with the page position that is closest to it.

Important: If you try to output a surface in which the pages are a mix of 'all versions' and specific versions, an error message appears:



- Output versions on page positions can be set only in the **Signatures** view.
- If all page positions on a surface are set to **All versions**, you can choose to output selected versions.
- If you change an imposition plan and reimport it using the same name (as the imposition plan already in the job) and you selected the **Keep existing page set and imposition** setting in the import process template, the output version settings are retained. Conversely, if you change the name of the imposition plan and/or select **Create alternate page set and imposition** in the import

process template, the associated output version settings are changed to **All versions**.

- Imposition plans using the same page set are not restricted to outputting the same versions. For example, if imposition plans A and B are using the same page set, imposition plan A can output all versions, while imposition plan B outputs a mix of English and Spanish versions.
1. In the **Imposition Plans** pane of the **Signatures** view, ensure that you can see the:
 - **Output Version** column
 - Individual page positions of the surface
 2. Select the page positions for which you want to change the output version to one version, and click the **Versioning** menu, **Set Output Version**, and then the desired version.
 3. Repeat step 2 for those page positions which you want to output as another version.
 4. Start the imposition proof or final output process.

Tip: You can also right-click within the **Imposition Plans** pane (after selecting page positions) to open the context menu, which allows you to set the output version.

Outputting proofs to distinguish change content

Note: In the examples below, versions are represented as: EE = EnglishEast, EW = EnglishWest, SE = SpanishEast, and SW = SpanishWest

When outputting proofs, you can select a color to output change content to distinguish them from common content.

For example, if both the EngWest version and the common layer extracted CMYK in the version plan, you could distinguish the change black from the common black by outputting all the change content in a special color such as hot pink.

The color name that you choose must have a recipe in the color library. If Prinergy cannot find the color recipe, the change content will be

output in green color. To add a recipe to the color library, see the Prinerger Workshop online help.

1. Open the proof process template that you want to use.
2. In the **Render** section, in the **Versioning Proof Mapping Color** box, type the color name that you want the change content to appear in.
3. Save the process template.

Use this process template when you want to create proof output in which the change content paints in the specified color.

Outputting PDF vector files

For information about PDF vector files, see *About Supported Output Formats* in the Prinerger Workshop online help.

When outputting to PDF vector files, ensure that:

- You select the **Preserve PDF Layers** check box in the **File Format** section of the process template if you want to preserve PDF 1.5 layers. This prevents the file from writing as a PDF 1.3 file, in which the layers are flattened.
- You select the required **Document Format** option (**Multipage** or **Single Page**) in the **File Format** section.
- Output file names will be unique.

Note: Prinerger does not support vector PDF imposition proofs with preserved PDF layers on surfaces with multiple versions.

Outputting Virtual Proofing files

The Kodak Prinerger Virtual Proofing software, which allows you to soft proof (preview) pages, has been updated to support LPV files.

When outputting LPV pages to the Prinerger Virtual Proofing software, ensure that you select the **Advanced TIFF Tags** check box in the **File Format** section of the proof process template. This enables the Prinerger Virtual Proofing software to automatically sort the separations into versions.

In Prinerger Virtual Proofing software, you can preview each separation, or any combination of separations. The Prinerger Virtual Proofing software also provides a grid showing the separations required for each version. To view the seps per version grid, click the information button on the **Separations** palette.

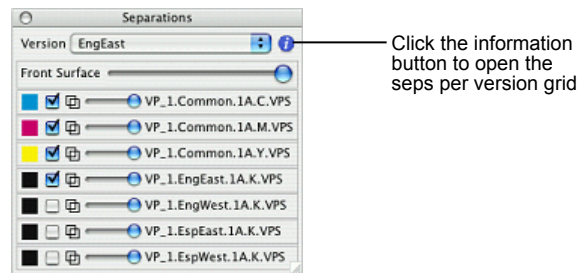


Figure 28: Prinerger Virtual Proofing software separations palette

The following figure shows the seps per version grid.

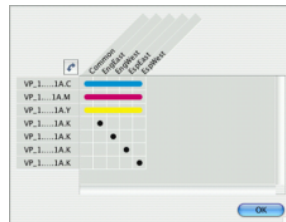


Figure 29: The seps per version grid in the Prinerger Virtual Proofing software

For more information on using Prinerger Virtual Proofing software with LPV jobs, see the *Prinerger Virtual Proofing Online Help*.

Approving versions

Use approvals to indicate whether or not elements are ready to move to the next step in the workflow.

You can approve all or individual versions of a generated versioned page. For example, you can approve the English versions of a generated page, but leave the Spanish versions of the page unapproved.

Versioned elements approved through InSite Prepress Portal are also reflected in Prinerger Workshop.

1. In the **Versioned Pages** view, click the **Approvals** tab.
2. Select the version(s) that you want to approve, and right-click to open the context menu.
3. Click **Approve**.

Once you approve a version of a versioned page, re-generation of the versioned page no longer affects the approved version. Also, once you approve a version of a versioned page, the content is “locked.” You are prevented from making any changes to the job that would affect the

approved page. For example, if you approve the English West version of page 1, you are prevented from:

- Linking, or unlinking the common, English or West layers of page 1
- Changing the colors to extract on the common, English, or West layers in the version plan
- Re-assigning the change layers for the English West version in the version plan

If your system administrator has restricted operators from overwriting approved pages in the System Administrator, you are also prevented from re-refining approved component pages.

However, to ensure the integrity of version approvals, even if an operator is allowed to re-refine approved pages, and proceeds to re-refine and re-generate an approved version of a page, there is no impact on the approved version.

Approved versions lock related layers

If you have a mixture of approved and unapproved versions of a versioned page, you may not modify any layers used in the approved versions. Conversely, you can modify any layers that are not used in the approved versions.

For example, if the EnglishWest and EnglishEast versions are approved, you may not modify the English layer, the West layer, the East layer, or the common layer.

You would be allowed to modify only the Spanish layer. The approved versions always use the layers that it was approved with.

Note: Previous to Prinerger 4.1.2.3, you were not able to approve individual versions of a versioned page; you were only able to approve all versions of a versioned page. Also, previous to Prinerger 4.1.2.3, you were able to approve versioned pages in the **Pages** view, which you are no longer able to do.

Allowing re-refine of approved pages

In Prinerger Administrator, you can allow approved pages on all jobs or only on web-enabled jobs to be re-refined.

Note: Web-enabled jobs are jobs that can be viewed by InSite Prepress Portal users and Storefront users.

1. In Prinerity Administrator, click **Tools > Configure System > Customer Approval**.
2. In the Customer Approval dialog box, select **Allow overwrite of approved pages**.
3. Select **Apply to web-enabled jobs only** or **Apply to all jobs** as appropriate.

Final output and plate mapping

When producing final output for LPV jobs, separations that are common to different versions are output only once. Also, base and change content of the same color are merged.

Example

In the nationwide catalog example, because all change content is mapped to black, the C, M, and Y plates are common to all versions.

Also, the black separation for each version contains both base black content and change content. For example, for the English East version, the black final output separation contains the English content, the East pricing content, and any base black content. See the following figure for an illustration of how separations are handled.

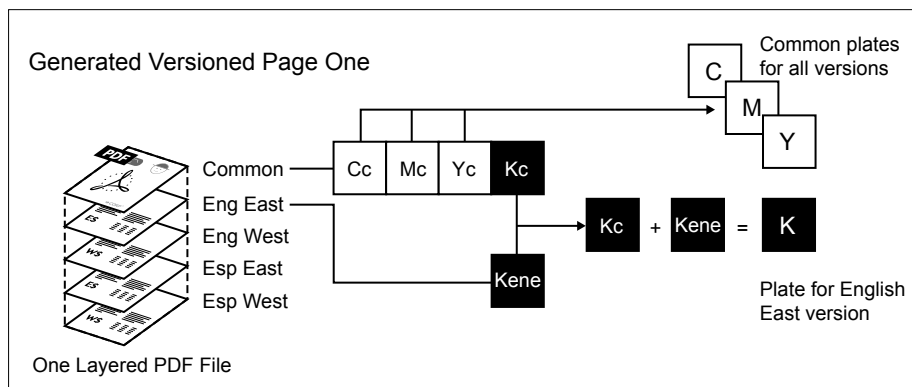


Figure 30: Separations for English East versioned page one

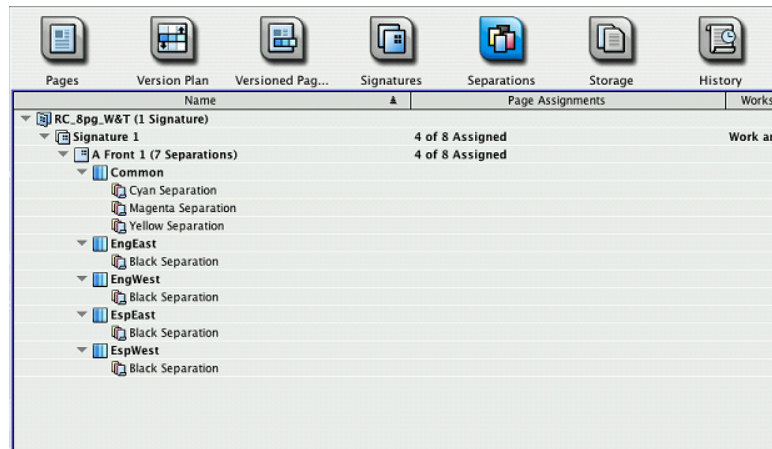


Figure 31: Output separations for nationwide catalog

Variable marks

As with other variable marks with potentially long values, ensure that you leave plenty of space for the value that replaces the mark.

Variable marks for LPV

Additional variable marks are available in LPV jobs. They are:

| Mark | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code>\${BaseLayer}</code> | <p>This mark is replaced with the name of the base layer associated with the version.</p> <p>You can use this mark on composite and separated output. If outputting to separations, the corresponding base layer name appears on all separations.</p> <p>This mark is not useful for output of multiple versions per surface. This mark prints nothing if used on multiple version surfaces.</p> |
| <code>\${SurfaceVersion}</code> | <p>This mark is replaced with the name of the version that is output. On output of multiple versions per surface, this mark is replaced with the version name of the page position that is closest to the mark.</p> <p>Use this mark for composite proofs only; do not use this mark for separated output.</p> |

Marks for separations: Use the following LPV variable marks for separations only.

Note: When placed on output of multiple versions per surface, each of the following marks is replaced with the version(s) associated with the page position that is closest to the mark.

| Mark | Description |
|---|--|
| <code>\${SeparationVersion}</code> | <p>On all separations, this mark is replaced with the names of the versions to which the separation contributes. For example, if a separation applies to the English and French versions, but not the Spanish version, the file name component would be English_French.</p> <p>Note: This mark may be replaced with different text on different separations. This means that once a printed page is produced from the separations, the text will overprint each other, for example, Englishion. To avoid this, use <code>\${SeparationVersion_Offset}</code>.</p> |
| <code>\${SeparationVersion_Offset}</code> | <p>This mark is the same as <code>\${SeparationVersion}</code> except that it is offset on different separations so that the marks do not overprint each other once a printed page is produced.</p> |
| <code>\${SeparationVersionUnique}</code> | <p>This mark is replaced with the name of the version to which it contributes if the separation is unique to only one version. For example, if a separation contributes to only one version, this mark is replaced with the version name. If a separation contributes to two versions, this mark is replaced with an empty space.</p> |
| <code>\${SeparationVersionCommon}</code> | <p>On common separations (separations used in all versions), this mark is replaced with the word 'common'. On separations that are not used in all versions, this mark is replaced with an empty space.</p> |
| <code>\${SeparationVersionNoCommon}</code> | <p>On non-common separations, this mark is replaced with the names of the versions to which it applies. For example, if a separation contributes to the English and French versions, but not the Spanish version, the file name component would be English_French. On common separations, this mark is replaced with an empty space.</p> <p>Note: This mark may be replaced with different text on different separations. This means that once a printed page is produced from the separations, the text will overprint each other, for example, Englishion. To avoid this, use <code>\${SeparationVersionNoCommon_Offset}</code>.</p> |
| <code>\${SeparationVersionNoCommon_Offset}</code> | <p>This mark is the same as <code>\${SeparationVersionNoCommon}</code> except that it is offset on different separations so that the marks do not overprint each other once a printed page is produced.</p> |

Prinergy-defined output file names

When you output to file, for example, when creating soft proofs, ensure that the output file names are unique and meaningful. In LPV jobs, the

default (Prinerger-defined) file names for output use the following patterns:

For loose page proofs

```
%page%.%SeparationVersion<20>%.%signature%%surface%.%color%%dotversion%
%extension%
```

For imposition proofs and final output

```
%imposition%.%SeparationVersion<20>%.%signature%%surface%.%color%%dotversion%
%extension%
```

where,

`%SeparationVersion%` is composed of the names of the versions to which the separation applies.

For example, if a separation applies to the English and French versions, but not the Spanish version, the file name component would be `English_French`. Thus, a possible output file name would be `1VP_1.English_French.1A.K.1.pdf`, which is exactly 31 characters long.

`%dotversion%` is a number that indicates the instance of the file among files of the same name. The most recent file does not have a `dotversion` component, for example, `1VP_1.common.1A.K.pdf`.

A higher `dotversion` number indicates an older instance. For example, `1VP_1.common.1A.K.2.pdf` is older than `1VP_1.common.1A.K.1.pdf`.

For definitions of other components in the file name, see the Prinerger Workshop online help.

Output file name best practices

If you are using Prinerger-defined file naming when outputting to file, ensure that the 20 character limit on the `%SeparationVersion%` tag is sufficient for your output.

If you are using custom file naming when outputting to file, we recommend that you use the `%dotversion%` tag to ensure that output files are not accidentally overwritten.

Note: If you rename a version, ensure that you regenerate all versioned pages that have already been linked and generated.

Output file name best practices for AFP

If you use Apple Filing Protocol (AFP) and are outputting to file, you must use custom file naming to ensure that filenames are 31 characters or less.

Important: The default (Prinerly-defined) file name pattern does not ensure that file names are 31 characters or fewer.

However, you must minimize the length of the following output file name components if you want to output file names to be unique, meaningful, and 31 characters or fewer:

- For **loose page proof** output names, make the combined `%page%` and `%SeparationVersion%` portions of the file names 20 characters or fewer
- For **imposition proof** output names, make the combined `%imposition%` and `%SeparationVersion%` portions of the file names 20 characters or fewer

For example,

1VP_1.common.1A.K.1.pdf

< 20 characters 11 characters or more

Minimizing the `%SeparationVersion%` tag

Because the `%SeparationVersion%` tag is composed of names of the versions to which it applies, this file name component can be very long. Thus, we recommended that version names be as short as possible, especially if you have many versions in your job. See the example below.

Imposition separation output file name example for AFP

Before shortening file names:

You have four versions for which you use the following version names: **Vancouver**, **Toronto**, **Montreal**, and **Calgary**.

If you have a separation that applies to the Vancouver, Toronto, and Montreal versions, the separation name becomes **Vancouver_Toronto_Montreal**. The output file name would be the following if you are using the Prinerly-defined file naming:

```
Impo_8pg_W&T.Vancouver_Toronto_Mo.1A.K.1.pdf
(44 characters)
```

After using custom file naming to limit the imposition and SeparationVersion components each to 9 characters,

```
%imposition<9>%.%SeparationVersion<9>%.
%signature%%surface%.%color%.%dotversion
%.%extension%
```

the file name is:

```
Impo_8pg_.Vancouver.1A.K.1.pdf (30 characters)
```

However, this name does not indicate that the separation also applies to the Toronto and Montreal versions.

After shortening version names:

If you use the version names: **Va**, **To**, **Mn**, and **Ca**, the imposition separation output file name would be:

Impo_8pg_.Va_To_Mt.1A.K.1.pdf (29 characters)

This output file name now indicates all the versions to which it applies.

Importing and exporting LPV jobs

Prinerly supports the import and export of entire LPV jobs. Incremental LPV jobs are not yet supported.

Note: LPV jobs cannot be supported with backward compatibility. Because Prinerly versions lower than 3.0.3.0 cannot read the versioning attributes of an LPV job, you will receive an error if the **Backward Compatibility** check box is selected during export of an LPV job.

Hub and spoke workflows

In hub and spoke workflows, if a spoke is not licensed for LPV, it can output LPV jobs, but is not able to modify them.

If a spoke is licensed for LPV and has the required software, it has the same abilities to modify an LPV job as the hub.

Spokes without an LPV license

Without a license, the spoke:

| Can | Cannot |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Import jobs • Import impositions • Assign/unassign versioned pages to page sets • Output proofs and plates | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • View or modify the version plan • Link/unlink contributing pages • Generate versioned pages |

| Can | Cannot |
|---|--------|
| <p>CAUTION: Although the spoke is able to refine pages without a license, doing so results in versioned pages that need to be regenerated. Because generation is not available to spokes without a Regional Versioning license, the spoke will consequently be unable to output any versioned pages that it has refined.</p> <p>If a spoke accidentally incurs a Requires Generation state on a versioned page, the spoke must reimport the LPV job and avoid changing the generate status to “Requires generation.”</p> | |

If the spoke is not licensed, use one of the following methods of delivering an LPV job to the spoke:

- **Sending an exported LPV job**—Exporting a job generally takes less time than outputting imposed vector files.
- **Sending imposed vector output**—Generally, imposed vector output files are large and take longer to output than an exported job.

Working with related products

This section describes how related products work with Layered PDF Versioning.

PrintLink

LPV supports PrintLink by enabling PrintLink to provide reports on ink usage for each surface, each separation, and each sheet.

PrintLink uses the `%SurfaceVersion%` tag for file naming.

For information on PrintLink, see the PrintLink topics in *Prinerger Workshop online help*.

Automating LPV jobs

You can automate LPV jobs in the following ways:

Linking refined pages automatically

About linking refined pages automatically

In Prinerger LPV, you can link refined pages to versioned pages automatically if the refined pages have consistent file naming patterns. You can define a page name pattern in each layer, and then start a refine process on the input files. Prinerger refines the pages and

automatically links them to versioned pages. Prinerger also automatically creates version pages if they do not already exist.

Consistent refined page names

If your refined page names are not consistent, you can make them consistent by renaming your refined pages using smart hot folders.

For information on using smart hot folders, see the *Prinerger Workshop online help*.

General tasks required to link refined pages automatically

The general tasks required to link refined pages automatically are:

- **Define page name patterns**—Define a page name pattern that matches the refined page names for each layer.
- **Build the versioned page**—After setting the page name pattern in the version plan, refine the files using the **Build Versioned Page** check box in the refine process template. This check box tells Prinerger to use page name patterns to link refined pages to versioned pages, and to create versioned pages if necessary.

When you refine input files in a LPV job that uses automatic linking, Prinerger:

- Compares all refined pages against the page name pattern for the first layer
- Based on the wild card value, creates a versioned page for each refined page that matches the pattern—if one has not already been created.
- Links each refined page to the layer of the corresponding versioned page
- Repeats the above actions for the remaining layers

Page name patterns

Construct the page name pattern carefully to ensure that the automatic linking results are as you intended. After defining a page name pattern, it is important to check that it links refined pages to versioned pages correctly.

Tip: If you create a version plan with page name patterns that you can use for other jobs, the job can become a template for other jobs.

What is a page name pattern?

A page name pattern is a set of characters that matches the refined page names for a layer, where wild cards are used to represent the characters that change between each refined page name.

Important: Use page name patterns to match refined page names; not to match input file names. For example, the single page input file, `RC_English.pdf` becomes `RC_English.p1.pdf` after refining.

Wild cards

The following wild cards are supported:

- `#`—match numbers
- `%`—match letters
- `$`—match letters and/or numbers

Wild card rules

- All wild cards must be enclosed in square brackets. For example, `[#]`
- You can use one or more wild cards in a page name pattern.

Important: Although the pattern matching wild cards are very similar to that used in APA (Advanced Production Automation), you cannot use the APA Editor in Prinergy to create the pattern matching expressions for LPV. You must use the version plan.

Page name pattern errors

If no refined pages match the page name pattern, the refine process completes, the refined pages are added to the **Pages** view, but versioned pages are not created, and the refined pages are not linked.

After a failed auto-linking process, do one of the following to link your refined pages:

- **Fix the page name pattern**—After correcting the page name pattern, perform a minimal rerefine to apply automatic linking. Ensure that the **Build Versioned Pages** check box (**Normalize** pane) is selected in the refine process template.
- **Link refined pages to versioned pages manually**

Names of automatically created versioned pages

When using page name patterns without back references, versioned pages that are automatically created are named with the 'VP' prefix. For example, versioned page one is named `VP_1.pdf`.

If you use back references, you can define the versioned page name prefix.

Page name pattern examples

The following examples illustrate the results of different page name patterns.

Single page input files Example 1: Correct

| Refined page names | Page name pattern | Linked to version page |
|--------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| 1_RC_Eng.p1.pdf | [#]_RC_Eng.p1.pdf | VP_1.pdf |
| 3_RC_Eng.p1.pdf | | VP_3.pdf |
| 5_RC_Eng.p1.pdf | | VP_5.pdf |

Single page input files Example 2: Incorrect

| Refined page names | Page name pattern | Linked to version page |
|--------------------|-------------------|---|
| 1_RC_Eng.p1.pdf | 1_RC_Eng.p[#].pdf | VP_1.pdf |
| 3_RC_Eng.p1.pdf | | A versioned page is not created for these pages (3_RC_Eng.p1.pdf and 5_RC_Eng.p1.pdf) because the refined page name does not match the pattern. |
| 5_RC_Eng.p1.pdf | | |

Multi-page input files Example 1: Correct

| Refined page names | Page name pattern | Linked to version page |
|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1-3_RC_Eng.p1.pdf | 1-3_RC_Eng.p[#].pdf | VP_1.pdf |
| 1-3_RC_Eng.p2.pdf | | VP_2.pdf |
| 1-3_RC_Eng.p3.pdf | | VP_3.pdf |

Multi-page input files Example 2: Incorrect

| Refined page names | Page name pattern | Linked to version page |
|--------------------|-------------------|---|
| 1-3_RC_Eng.p1.pdf | [#]_RC_Eng.p1.pdf | Versioned pages are not created because the refined page name does not match the pattern. That is, the [#] tag does not accept hyphens. |
| 1-3_RC_Eng.p2.pdf | | |
| 1-3_RC_Eng.p3.pdf | | |

Multi-page input files Example 3: Incorrect

| Refined page names | Page name pattern | Linked to version page |
|--------------------|--------------------|--|
| 1-3_RC_Eng.p1.pdf | [\$]_RC_Eng.p1.pdf | Versioned pages are not created because no integer is provided for the number portion of the versioned page name. That is, VP_1-3.pdf is not a valid name. |
| 1-3_RC_Eng.p2.pdf | | |
| 1-3_RC_Eng.p3.pdf | | |

Padded digits for wild card values

If you use padded numbers such as 001 to represent numbers in your refined page names, you can specify the pattern to read padded digits and the versioned pages to be named with padded digits.

Indicate padded digits with a colon and a number after the # sign, such as [#:3].



CAUTION: Refined page names with fewer digits than specified are not matched. Refined page names with more digits than specified are read, but only the number of digits as specified is read. See example 2 below.

Padded digits Example 1: Correct

| Refined page names | Use page name pattern | Linked to version page |
|--------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| MyFile_0001.p1.pdf | MyFile_[#:4].p1.pdf | VP_0001.pdf |
| MyFile_0002.p1.pdf | | VP_0002.pdf |
| MyFile_0003.p1.pdf | | VP_0003.pdf |

Padded digits Example 2: Incorrect

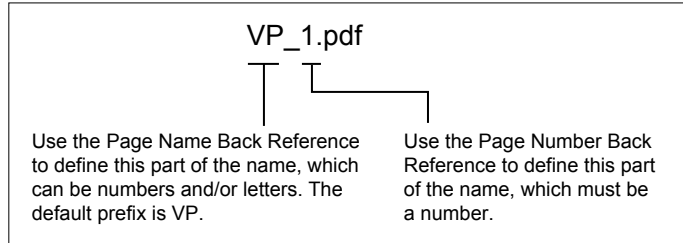
| Refined page names | Use page name pattern | Linked to version page |
|---------------------|-----------------------|---|
| MyFile_01.p1.pdf | MyFile_[#:4].p1.pdf | This refined page is not matched to the pattern because it does not have four folio digits in the name. A versioned page is not created at this time. |
| MyFile_0002.p1.pdf | | VP_0002.pdf |
| MyFile_0003.p1.pdf | | VP_0003.pdf |
| MyFile_00011.p1.pdf | | VP_0001.pdf Important: This refined page is linked to the VP_0001.pdf versioned page, and not VP_00011.pdf because the pattern reads only the first four digits in the folio number. |

Using back references

Back references are optional elements in a page name pattern. Back references help you with linking and naming versioned pages. There are two types of back references:

- **Page name back reference**—This affects the versioned page prefix. This back reference allows you to set the versioned page name prefix to reflect part of the page name.
- **Page number back reference**—This affects the versioned page number. This back reference allows you to use two or more wild cards for numbers ([#]) in a page name pattern. This back reference also allows you to add to or subtract from numbers in your contributing page names that are used to define the versioned page number.

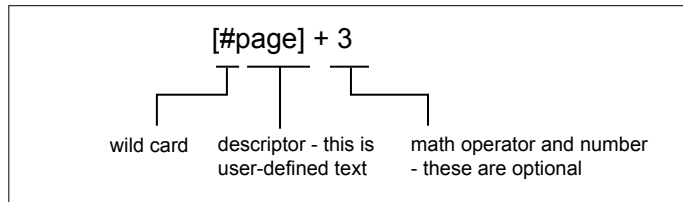
If your refined pages have two or more sets of numbers in the pattern, and you do not use the page number back reference, Prinerity uses the last [#] wild card as the versioned page number.



Important: Ensure that your versioned page names are not specific to a version. For example, do not create versioned page names such as `English_1.pdf` and `French_1.pdf` for refined pages that must be assigned to the same versioned page.

Back reference syntax

A back reference is a wild card with a text descriptor inside the square brackets. You can use addition or subtraction to alter the number, if applicable. For example:



To create a back reference, type the back reference in the appropriate column of the version plan. For example, to create a page number back reference, type the back reference under the **Page Number Back Reference** column.

Use the addition and subtraction math operators when required.

The following examples show some back reference scenarios and the versioned page names they produce.

Back reference example 1: Page name back reference (correct)

| Refined Page Names | Page Name Pattern | Page Name Back Reference | Page Number Back Reference | Linked to Version Page |
|--------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1-3_RC_Eng.p1.pdf | [\$range]_RC_Eng.p[#].pdf | [\$range] | Not required | 1-3_1.pdf |
| 1-3_RC_Eng.p2.pdf | | | | 1-3_2.pdf |
| 1-3_RC_Eng.p3.pdf | | | | 1-3_3.pdf |
| 4-6_RC_Eng.p1.pdf | | | | 4-6_1.pdf |

| Refined Page Names | Page Name Pattern | Page Name Back Reference | Page Number Back Reference | Linked to Version Page |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 4-6_RC_Eng.p2.pdf | | | | 4-6_2.pdf |
| 4-6_RC_Eng.p3.pdf | | | | 4-6_3.pdf |

Note: Prinerigy LPV automatically uses the [#] wild card as the page number. The result is the same as the following example.

Back reference example 2: Page name and page number back reference (correct)

| Refined Page Names | Page Name Pattern | Page Name Back Reference | Page Number Back Reference | Linked to Version Page |
|--------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| RC_Eng1-3.p1.pdf | RC_Eng[\$range].p[#page].pdf | [\$range] | [#page] | 1-3_1.pdf |
| RC_Eng1-3.p2.pdf | | | | 1-3_2.pdf |
| RC_Eng1-3.p3.pdf | | | | 1-3_3.pdf |
| RC_Eng4-6.p1.pdf | | | | 4-6_1.pdf |
| RC_Eng4-6.p2.pdf | | | | 4-6_2.pdf |
| RC_Eng4-6.p3.pdf | | | | 4-6_3.pdf |

Back reference example 3: No back references (incorrect)

| Refined Page Names | Page Name Pattern | Page Name Back Reference | Page Number Back Reference | Linked to Version Page |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| 1_1234.p1.pdf | [#]_[#].p1.pdf | Not required | Not required | VP_1234.pdf |
| 2_5678.p1.pdf | | | | VP_5678.pdf |
| 3_5678.p1.pdf | | | | System message: Some versioned pages already have pages linked to the selected layer. Do you want to link these pages anyways? If you continue to link to layer, the new page link overwrites the previous link. |

Setting refined pages to automatically link to versioned pages

1. Create an LPV job.
2. Add and refine input files with consistent file names.
3. Create the version plan.
4. Defining the page name pattern.
 - a. In the **Version Plan** view, in the **Layers** area, double-click the appropriate box to enter the page name pattern for a layer. Type the page name pattern for the layer. The page name pattern is limited to 100 characters.
 - b. If required, double-click the appropriate box to enter the page name back reference for a layer. Type the page name back reference for the layer. The page name back reference is limited to 100 characters.
 - c. If required, double-click the appropriate box to enter the page number back reference for a layer. Type the page number back reference for the layer. The page number back reference is limited to 50 characters.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Repeat steps 4 to 7 for the remaining layers.
7. Building versioned pages.
 - a. Click the **Pages** view.
 - b. In the **Pages** view, select all input files, and then from the **Process** menu, select **Process > Refine**, and navigate to a refine process template.
 - c. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - d. In the process template, click the triangle beside **Normalize** to expand the section.
 - e. In the **Normalize** section, ensure that the **Build Versioned Pages** check box is selected, and click **OK**.
8. In the Start Process dialog box, click **OK**.

The refined pages are automatically linked to the associated versioned pages.

Assigning versioned pages to a page set automatically

You can use Advanced Production Automation (APA) to assign versioned pages to a page set automatically, in the same way as you would use APA to assign non-versioned pages.

For information, see the topics about APA.

Using Rules-Based Automation

You can use Rules-Based Automation to automatically generate versioned pages after pages have been refined and linked to versioned pages. See the following figure for an example of the rule.

Tip: The refine process should be set up to automatically link pages to versioned pages. If the **Build Versioned Pages** check box is not selected in the refine process template, no files will be available for the generate process.

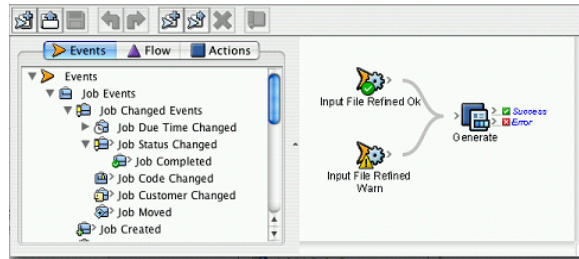


Figure 32: Rule to Generate After Refine

For information on using Rules-Based Automation, see the *Prinergy Rules-Based Automation User Guide*.

Working with input file models

This appendix provides detailed scenarios for linking refined pages in each input file model. Using the retail catalog scenario described throughout the guide, the following examples show how refined pages are linked to a versioned page.

Model 1 scenario

A detailed description of how to link refined pages in a model input file model.

In model 1, the version plan would be:

| Version | Base Layer | Change Layer 1 | Change Layer 2 |
|---------|------------|----------------|----------------|
| EngEast | Common | Eng | East |
| EngWest | Common | Eng | West |
| EspEast | Common | Esp | East |
| EspWest | Common | Esp | West |

| Layer | Layer Type | Colors To Extract | Output Plate | Page Name Pattern | Page Name Back ... | Page Number Ba... |
|--------|---------------------------------------|---|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| Common | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Base | Chang Cyan,Magenta,Ye... | Output Separately | | | |
| Eng | <input type="radio"/> Base | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Chang SpotEng | Black | | | |
| Esp | <input type="radio"/> Base | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Chang SpotEsp | Black | | | |
| East | <input type="radio"/> Base | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Chang SpotEast | Black | | | |
| West | <input type="radio"/> Base | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Chang SpotWest | Black | | | |

Using input file model 1, your refined pages for versioned page one of the nationwide catalog would be:

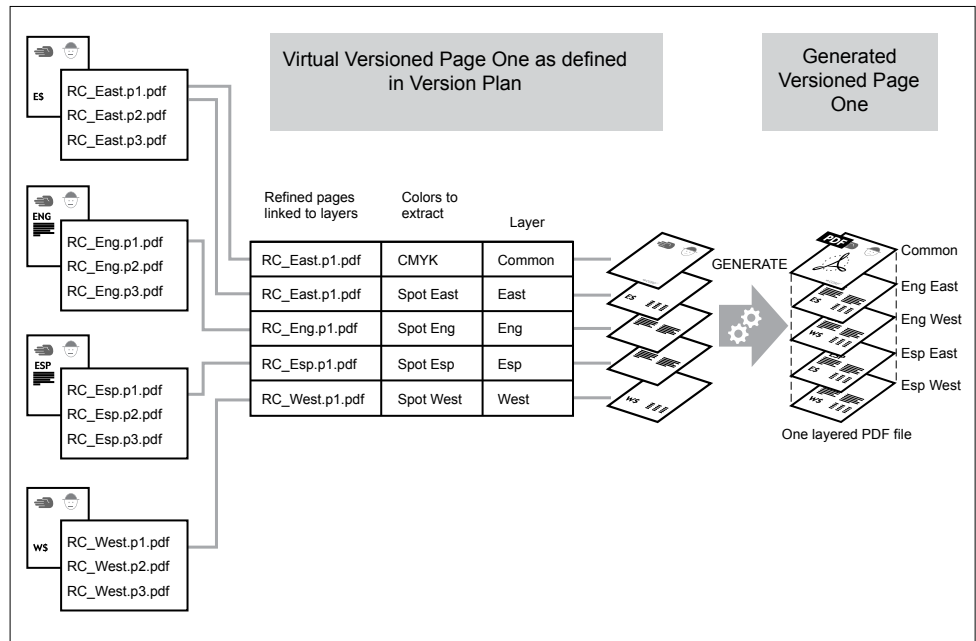
| RC_East.p1.pdf | RC_Eng.p1.pdf | RC_Esp.p1.pdf | RC_West.p1.pdf |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| CcMcYcKc+ Keast | CcMcYcKc+ Keng | CcMcYcKc+ Kesp | CcMcYcKc+ Kwest |

Building versioned pages in model 1

First, link refined pages to the common layer. Because all files contain base content, designate one set of refined pages (one refined page for every versioned page) to provide the base content. This means that these refined pages will be linked to two layers. Thus, link the pages to the common layer and before closing the Link to Layer dialog box, link the refined pages again to the appropriate change layer.

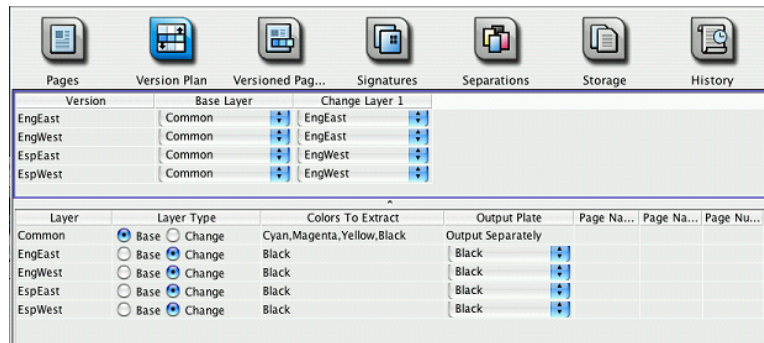
For the remaining versioned content, you can link the refined files by layer or versioned pages. After linking, generate the versioned pages, and the versioned pages are ready to proof.

The following figure shows the refined pages to link to versioned page one.



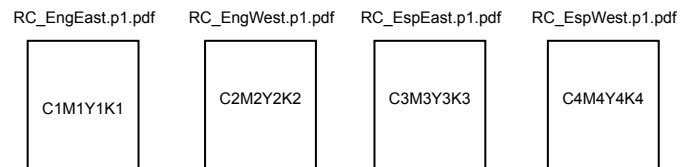
Model 2 scenario

In model 2, the version plan would be:



In this example, the black color in all files contains change content. Thus, all files have been set in the version plan to have the black color extracted.

Using input file model 2, your refined pages for versioned page 1 of the nationwide catalog would be:

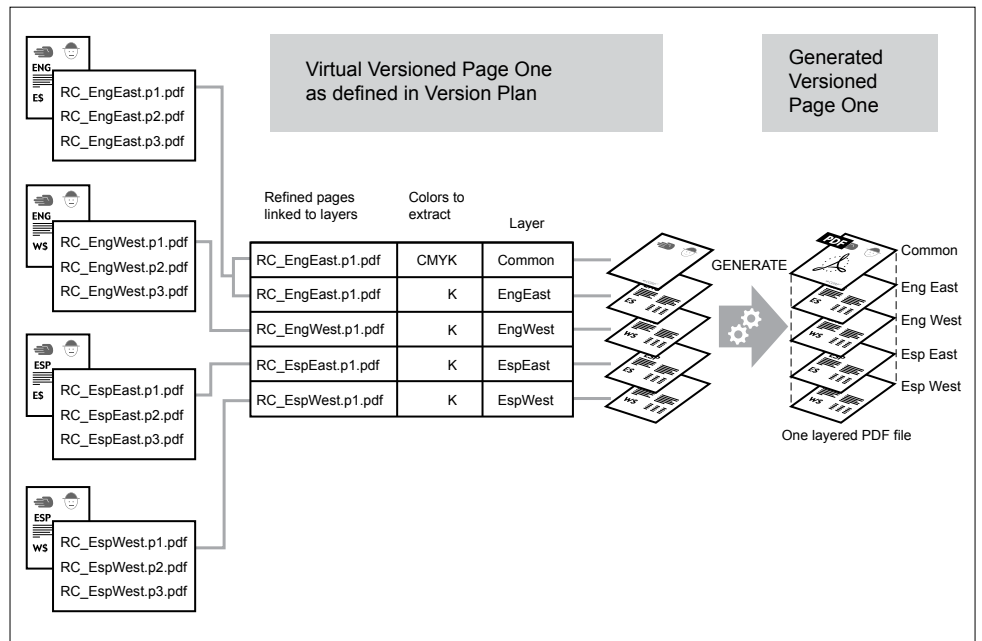


Building versioned pages in model 2

First, link refined pages to the common layer. Because all files potentially contain base content, designate one set of refined pages (one refined page for every versioned page) to provide the base content. This means that these refined pages will be linked to two layers. Thus, link the pages to the common layer and before closing the Link to Layer dialog box, link the refined pages again to the appropriate change layer.

For the remaining refined files, link each set to the appropriate layer. After linking, generate the versioned pages. and the versioned pages are ready to proof.

The following figure shows the refined pages to link to versioned page one.



Model 3 scenario

In this model 3 example, your version plan is the same as in model 1.

Using input file model 3, your refined pages for versioned page one of the nationwide catalog would be:

```
CcMcYcKc
+S1S1S1
```

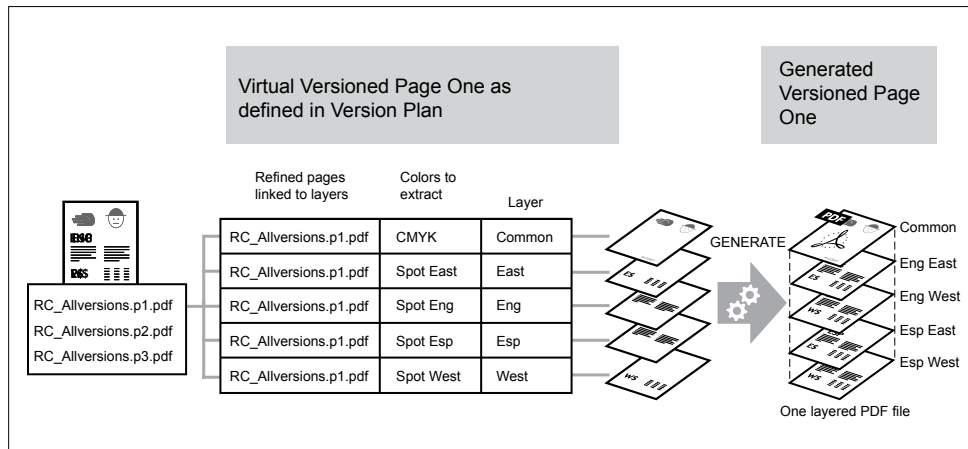
versions 1, 2, 3

Building versioned pages in model 3

Using model 3, all base and change content for a versioned page are in one refined page. Therefore, link the refined pages to all layers including the common layer because a refined page contributes to all layers.

Tip: To link to all layers at one time, use the Link to Layers dialog box, and select the **All layers** option to link a set of refined pages to all layers.

The following figure shows the refined pages to link to versioned page one.



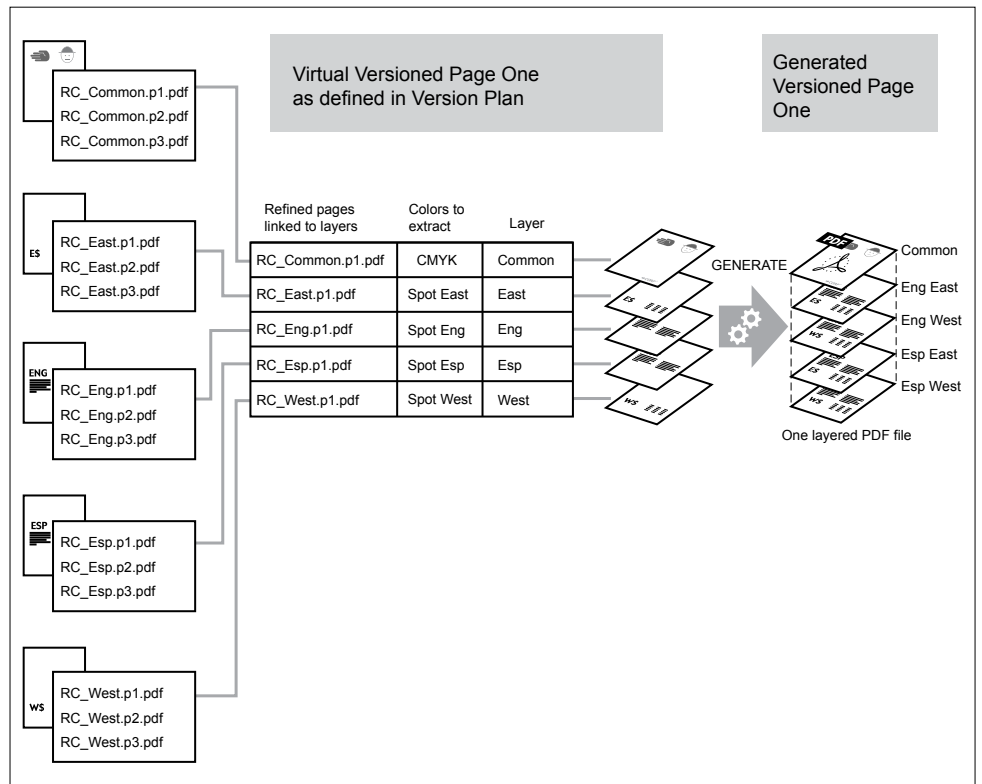
Model 4 scenario

In this model 4 example, your version plan is the same as in model 1.

Building versioned pages in model 4

Link all contributing refined pages to the appropriate layer. You can link the refined files by layer or versioned pages. After linking, generate the versioned pages. and the versioned pages are ready to proof.

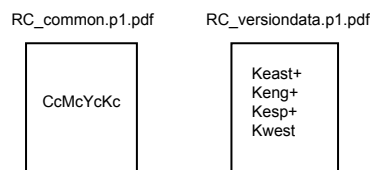
The following figure shows the refined pages to link to versioned page one.



Model 5 scenario

In this model 5 example, your version plan is the same as in model 1.

Using input file model 5, your refined pages for versioned page one of the nationwide catalog would be:



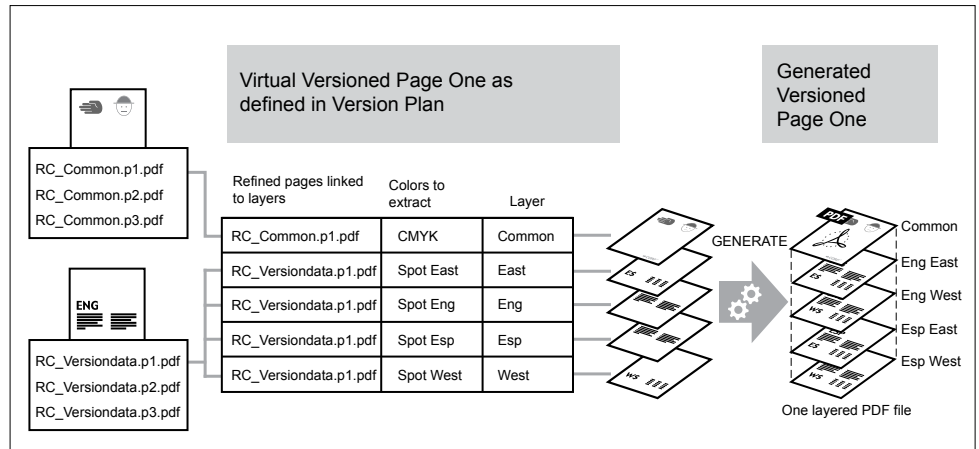
Building versioned pages in model 5

Link all contributing refined pages to the appropriate layer. You can link the refined files by layer or versioned pages. After linking, generate the versioned pages. and the versioned pages are ready to proof.

Tip: You can link refined pages more quickly if you:

1. Select the refined pages with change content, and in the Link to Layers dialog box, link to all layers using the **All layers** option.
2. Select all refined pages in the common layer and unlink them.
3. Select the refined pages with base content, and link to the common layer.

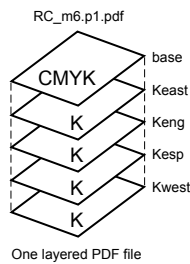
The following figure shows the refined pages to link to versioned page one.



Model 6 scenario

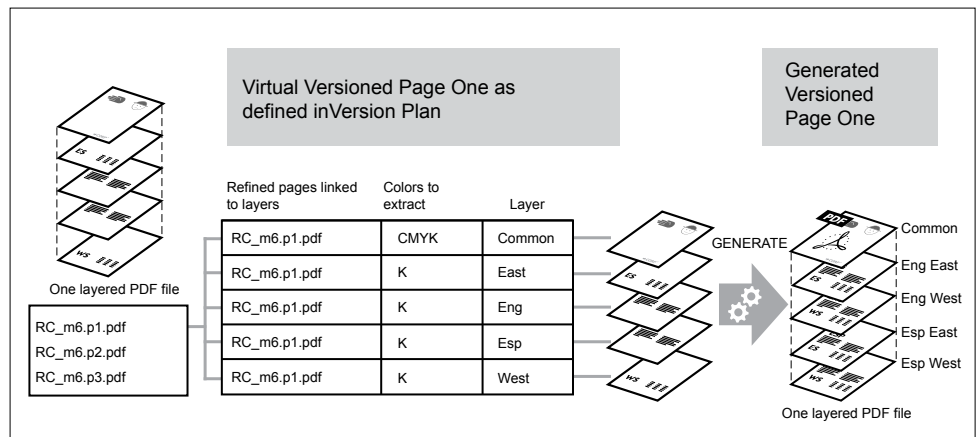
In this model 6 example, your version plan is the same as in model 1.

Using input file model 6, your refined page for versioned page one of the nationwide catalog would be:



Building versioned pages in model 6

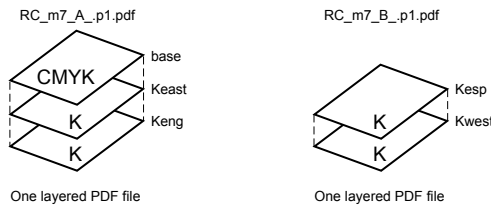
Link all contributing refined pages to the appropriate layer. You can link the refined files by layer or versioned pages. After linking, generate the versioned pages. and the versioned pages are ready to proof.



Model 7 scenario

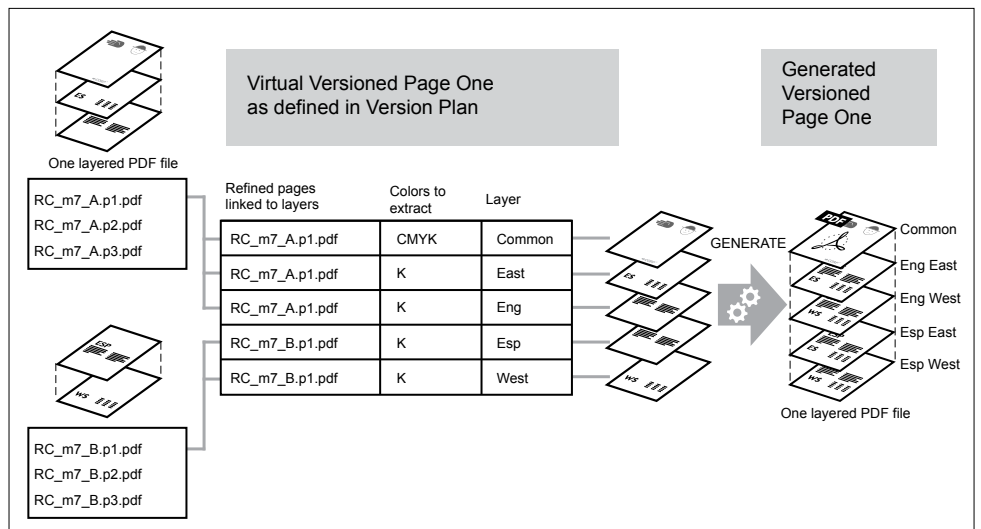
In this model 7 example, your version plan is the same as in model 1.

Using input file model 7, your refined pages for versioned page one of the nationwide catalog would be:



Building versioned pages in model 7

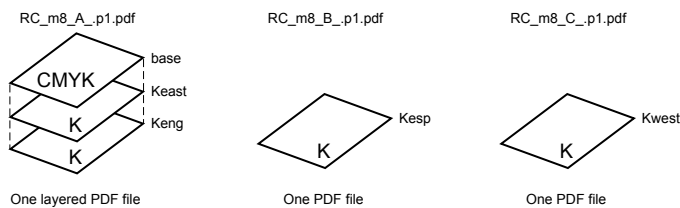
Link all contributing refined pages to the appropriate layer. You can link the refined files by layer or versioned pages. After linking, generate the versioned pages, and the versioned pages are ready to proof.



Model 8 Scenario

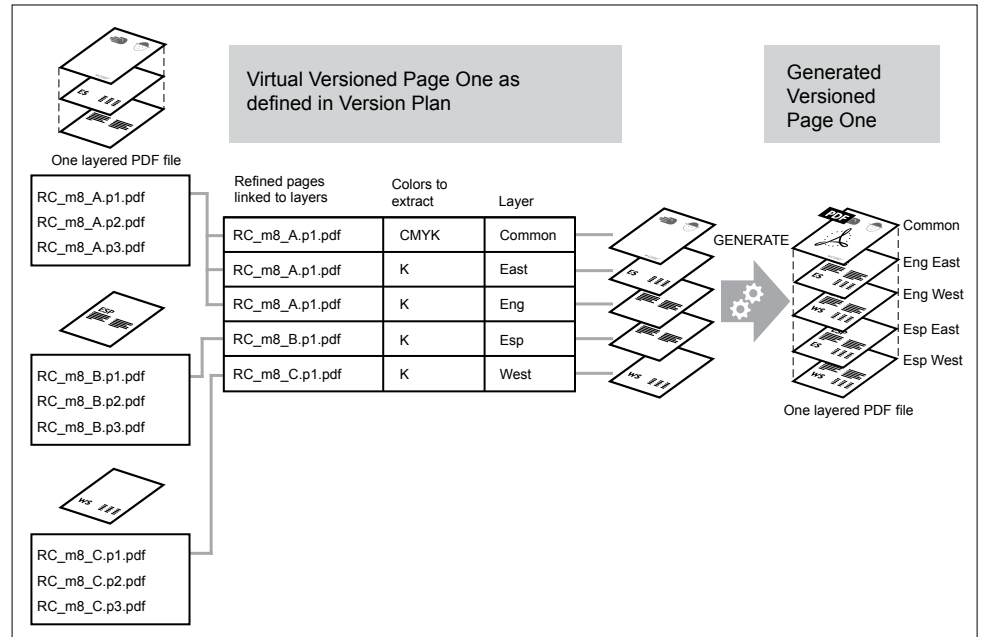
In this model 8 example, your version plan is the same as in model 1.

Using input file model 8, your refined pages for versioned page one of the nationwide catalog would be:



Building versioned pages in model 8

Link all contributing refined pages to the appropriate layer. You can link the refined files by layer or versioned pages. After linking, generate the versioned pages, and the versioned pages are ready to proof.



Legacy versioning

About legacy versioning

With legacy versioning, you can layer the base and version pages in Prinergy Workshop, provided the base and the version information are separate input files.

Limitations

Legacy versioning has these limitations:

- It cannot trap between layers. It can only overprint layers.
- You must set the separations to overprint before you output the job.

Versioning Imposition Plans

In legacy versioning, separations for a versioning imposition have three labels: base, common, and unique. You can view the separation labels in the **Common** column in the **Separations** view in Job Manager. For a description of these labels, see **Common** in Visible Columns Dialog Box in Separations View.

The first versioning imposition plan you import into the job contains the separations labelled as base. The system compares all separations in a versioning job against the base separations. You can change this label as you import a versioning imposition plan.

You can also select a page set from the existing page sets for the job for a particular import.

Note: If you try to import a new versioning imposition in which the number of pages does not match the number of pages in the existing page set, the **Import Imposition** list is unavailable. To correct this error, regenerate the imposition plan with the same number of pages as the existing page set.

For more information about legacy versioning, see the Prinergy Regional Versioning Workflow User Guide.



[Open the Prinergy Regional Versioning Workflow User Guide](#)

For information about the newer system, see *About Layered PDF Versioning*.

Note about legacy versioning

During final output for a legacy versioning job, if the version input file contains spot elements with 0% spot tint and these are placed over color elements in the input base file, they may incorrectly knock out underlying colors when the spot is converted to process.

Solutions:

- If the 0% tint spot elements are not required for the final output, consider removing them from the file before outputting it to a plate.
- If the 0% tint spot elements are required for the final output, use the imposition output process template to output this file to a Tiff.
- Use the Color Combiner to perform the color mapping. However, since the Color Combiner cannot be enabled on final output, create VPS proofs using a final output process template to ensure that the VPS matches the plate output. If unwanted knockouts appear in the VPS proofs, either edit the file to remove the objects causing the knockout or make plates from a Tiff file that was generated using an imposed proof process template and expose them using Tiff Downloader.

Overview of legacy versioning steps

The following steps summarize the sequence for creating and outputting a legacy versioning job.

1. Create a job.
2. In Job Finder, select the job, and from the **Edit** menu, select **Edit Job Attributes**.
3. Click **Legacy Versioning**.
4. Set the **Max Layers** option to the desired number of layers for the job.
See Edit/Set Job Attributes Dialog Box.
5. Prepare the base and version input files.
6. Open the job in Job Manager, and add the base and version input files.
7. Process the base and version input files using a refine process template that generates thumbnails.
8. Import a versioning imposition plan and specify the number of versions.
 - To use an existing page set, see Importing Versioning Impositions and Use Existing Page Sets
 - To also import an existing page set at the same time, see Import a Versioning Imposition
9. Select the pages you want as the base layer and assign these pages to page set positions.
These first pages are assigned to the bottommost layer.
10. Select the pages you want as overlay pages and assign these pages to page set positions.
(If assigning pages using a menu item, choose the **Print Over Previous Assignments** option.) The overlay page is layered on the base.

While assigning pages to page set positions, you can add layers over and under the base layer using different options. See Assign Pages to Page Set Position Dialog Box.

View the assigned layers in the **Page** column in either the:
 - **Page Sets** pane in **Pages** view
 - **Imposition Plans** pane in **Signatures** view
11. If required, reorder page assignments or unassign pages.
12. If required, copy these page assignments to other imposition plans.

13. Output the versioned separations:

- without the Common separations
- with or without the Common separations
- with the Common separations

The system outputs the layered pages as one surface.

Preparing the base and version input files

- Save the input files for the base and version (overlay) layers of a legacy versioning job in separate PostScript files.
- To prepare a varnish layer, use a layering plug-in such as ALAP Xpert Layers to place the varnish objects in a separate PostScript file. You should have two PostScript files: the base file and the varnish file.
- To add text to a copydot scan, create the required text in QuarkXPress, then output the text to a PostScript file. You should have two PostScript files: the copydot file and the text file.

Importing versioning impositions

Use this procedure when you have not yet created page sets in your legacy versioning job.

1. From the **File** menu, select **Import Versioning Imposition**.
2. In the Import Versioning Imposition dialog box, in the **Select a file to use for the imposition** box, navigate to and select the versioning imposition plan you want to import.
Information about the selected file appears in the box on the right side of the dialog box.
3. Click **Auto Name**.
4. In the Enter Number of Version dialog box, in the **Please enter the base name for these versions** box, type in the base name.
5. In the **Please enter the number of versions to create** box, type the number of versions, then click **OK**.
6. You can rename any of the new versioning imposition names if you desire by selecting a name, then clicking **Rename**.
7. Click **Import**.
8. In the Start Process dialog box, click **OK**.

Prinerger imports the versioning imposition plan into the job. After the import processing is completed, the Page Sets pane displays the versions.

Importing versioning impositions and use existing page sets

Use this procedure when page sets already exist and pages have been assigned in your legacy versioning job.

1. Delete the imposition plans for all versions.
Leave the pages assigned to the page sets.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Import Versioning Imposition**.
3. In the Import Versioning Imposition dialog box, in the **Select a file to use for the imposition** box, navigate to and select the versioning imposition plan you want to import.
The new imposition plan must have the same number of pages as the replaced versioning imposition plan.
4. To use existing page sets, click **Existing Page Sets**.
5. In the Select Page Set dialog box, select the existing page sets you want to use.
You can choose some or all.
6. (Optional) In **Imposition suffix**, enter a suffix that will help identify that this is the new imposition plan for an existing page set.
7. Click **Import**.
8. If you want to rename any of the new version names:
 - a. In the Import Versioning Imposition dialog box, select a name, and click **Rename**.
 - b. In the Enter New Version Name dialog box, enter the new name, and click **OK**.

The page set name cannot be changed because the page set already exists.

9. Click **Import**.
Prinergy imports the versioning imposition plan into the job. In the **Signatures** view, the new imposition plan for each version appears. The existing page sets and page assignments are retained.
10. Select the signature.
11. From the **Edit** menu, click **Set Initial Separations**.
This populates the separations information for the impositions. Any previous color mappings from the original imposition made using the Color Separations dialog box are not retained.

Copying source page assignments to other imposition plans

Once you have built up the layers needed in version 1 of the legacy versioning job, copy these layers to the other versions.

1. In the **Page Sets** pane of the **Pages** view, select the page positions you wish to copy.
2. From the **Edit** menu, select **Copy Page Assignments**.
3. In the **Copy Assignments Positions** box, select the layer you wish to copy from the source page set.

You can select some or all layers at once. Examples of layers include: Base Page, Overlay Page 1, and so on.

4. In the **To Page Sets** box, select the version page set to copy the page assignments to.

Tip: Ctrl-click to select more than one destination page set.

For each source page set selected, the page assignments are copied over to the corresponding page positions in the destination page set. If there is an existing page assignment for that page and layer in the destination page set, the existing page assignment will be overwritten. If a particular source page does not have an assignment for a selected layer, then the corresponding assignment in the destination page will be removed.

When seen in Thumbnail view, the layered page positions display a large, black V.

5. Assign the overlay files to their page positions.
6. If required, reorder page assignments or unassign pages.

Reordering page layers

This feature lets you determine the printing order of the versioned PDF pages in the page set position of a legacy versioning job.

1. In the Pages Sets pane of the **Pages** view in Job Manager, select a versioned position.
2. From the **Edit** menu, select **Reorder Page Assignments**.
3. In the Reorder Page Assignment dialog box, select a PDF page.
4. Click **Move Up** or **Move Down** to change the PDF to the desired position.

Note: The PDFs at the top of the list print first.

Enter Number of Versions dialog box

Use this dialog box to specify the number of versions in a legacy versioning job.

Please enter the base name for these versions

Type the base name for the imposition plan.

Please enter the number of versions to create

Type the number of versions you want to create for this imposition plan.

Import Versioning Imposition dialog box

Use this dialog box to import impositions into a legacy versioning job.

Select a file to use for the imposition

Use this box to locate and select the imposition plan that you want to import.

Information about the selected imposition plan appears in the right pane of the dialog box.

Files of Type

Select an option to filter the files that are displayed in the **Select a file to use for the imposition** section by a specific file type. Only files of the selected type are displayed.

Options are:

- All Eligible Files
- All Files
- **Portable Job Ticket File** (JT or PJTF)
- **Job Definition File** (JDF or XML)

By default, **All Eligible Files** is selected. An eligible file is any file of the .pjtf, .icf, or .job type.

Show Hidden Files

Select this option to display hidden files such as system files, in the Select a file to use for the imposition section.

The default selection of this option can be set in the **View** tab of the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Volumes

Displays accessible input volumes as defined in Administration Console. If the input volume that you want does not appear, you must add it to Administrator.

Job Folder

Opens the job folder for the current job.

Import

This button appears as **Open** when an input volume or folder is selected. Click this button to open the selected volume or folder.

This button appears as **Import** once an eligible imposition plan has been selected. Click this button to import the selected imposition plan.

Versions

Select

Click this button to open the Choose Process Template dialog box, where you can change the import process template that controls the current import.

Page set starting page

Specifies the number at which you want the page set to begin.

Imposition name and Page set name

Lists the names of the versioning imposition plans and page sets that you are importing. This list is empty until you either:

- Click **Auto Name** and enter the base name and the number of versions
- Under **New Version Names**, type a version name and click **Add Name**.

Once this list populates, you can rename any of the imposition plans and page sets by selecting the item and clicking **Rename**. Enter the new names in the Enter New Version Name dialog box.

To remove a versioning imposition plan and page set from the list, select the item and click **Remove**.

Auto Name

Click the **Auto Name** button to open the Enter Number of Versions dialog. Type the base name and the number of versions to create. The list of imposition plan names appears in the box.

Existing page sets

Click the **Existing Page Sets** button to display the Select Page Set dialog. Select one or more page sets for the job and add an imposition name suffix.

Rename

Opens the Enter New Version Name dialog, enabling you to rename either the imposition plan name or the page set name, or both.

Remove Version

Enables you to remove an imposition plan and page set from the list. Select an imposition plan, and click **Remove Version**.

New Version Names

Lets you manually name the imposition plan and page sets (both will have the same name). In the **New Version Names** box, type a name, then click **Add Names**.

Add Names

Adds the name you typed in the **New Version Names** box to the list of imposition plans and page sets.

Reorder Page Assignments dialog box

Use this dialog box to reorder page assignments in a legacy versioning job.

list

Lists the pages assigned to the selected position, and their order determine the order in which they will be printed. This feature is designed for versioning.

Pages at the top of the list print over pages at the bottom.

Move Up

Moves the selected page higher in the list.

The pages at the top of the list print over pages at the bottom.

The button is available only when the list contains more than one page.

Move Down

Moves the selected page lower in the list.

The pages at the top of the list print over pages at the bottom.

The button is available only when the list contains more than one page.

Select Page Set dialog box

Use this dialog box to select a page set in a legacy versioning job.

list

Lists the job's existing page sets. Select a page set from the list and add a suffix to distinguish it from the original page set.

Imposition suffix

Type a suffix to distinguish the new page set from the existing page set.

Outputting versioned separations

In a legacy versioning job, the separations for a versioned imposition have three labels: **Base**, **Common**, and **Unique**.

For a description of these labels, see **Common** in the Visible Columns dialog box in Separations View topic. You can view these labels in the **Common** column in the **Separations** view in Job Manager. See Displaying and Hiding Columns.

1. In the **Separations** view in Job Manager, select a signature.
2. From the **Job** menu, select **Identify Common Separations**.
3. In the **Common** column, perform one of the following actions:

| To Output This | Do This |
|----------------------------|--|
| Without common separations | Select the separations labelled Base and Unique , and clear the separations labelled Common . |
| Only common separations | Select the separations labelled Common that you want to output. |

Note: The separations labelled **Common** are grayed-out to help you locate them.

You are ready to generate output.

Tip: You can also control whether output has common separations while you generate the output. When you start an output process template, a warning dialog box asks you to confirm that you want to output the common separations.

20 Customization

About customizing Workshop

You can customize the display of Prinergy Workshop windows and panes by doing any of the following:

- **Displaying and Hiding Columns**

Most windows and panes have several columns, such as file size and type. You control which columns to display for a particular pane using the Visible Columns dialog box. The columns available vary among windows, panes, and views.

- **Sorting by Column**

You can sort the items in a window or pane by a column by clicking a column header. A cone symbol indicates the currently selected column and whether items are sorted in ▲ ascending order (1 to 10) ▼ descending order (10 to 1).

- **Displaying Thumbnails**

You can view thumbnails of pages and pages sets in the **Pages** view and of imposition plans and the pages assigned to those imposition plans in the **Signatures** view.

Note: If a thumbnail with a ? mark appears, the volume where the job is stored is not mounted or the job has been purged from disk. If the volume is not mounted, you must close the job, mount the volume, and reopen the job. If the job has been purged, you must retrieve it.

- **Expanding and Collapsing All Items**

Some Prinergy Workshop views and panes enable you to expand or collapse all of their content at once. For example, you can expand all of the actions in the **History** view of Job Manager to display all of the details for all actions. Or you can expand or collapse the content of the **Process Templates** in Job Manager to hide or display all of the process templates.

- **Setting Workshop Preferences**

You can customize how information is displayed whenever you are logged in by setting preferences. Preferences files are saved by logon ID on the client computer, so your individual preferences are preserved even if you share a client computer with other operators. If you use more than one client computer, a unique preferences file is saved on each computer.

Displaying and hiding columns

1. Select the window or pane that you want to change.
2. Select **View > Visible Columns**.
Tip: You can also right-click a blank area of the window or pane and select **Visible Columns**.
3. In the Visible Columns dialog box, select the check boxes for the columns that you want to display and clear the check boxes for the columns that you want to hide.
Note: The columns that are unavailable are always displayed.
Tip: Use the **Select All** and **Deselect All** buttons if you must select or clear a large number of check boxes.
4. Click **OK**.
5. If you are in thumbnail view, you must display list view to see columns.

The window or pane is updated to display and hide the columns that you indicated. Newly displayed columns appear at the right side of the window or pane. You can move columns and sort items by column.

Moving columns

1. If you are in Thumbnail view, you need to display List view to see columns.
2. Click the heading of a column and drag it to a new position.

Sorting items by column

You can sort the items listed in most windows and panes.

1. If you are in Thumbnail view, you need to display List view to see columns.
2. Click the heading of the column that you want to sort by.

A cone symbol appears in the column heading indicating that the list is now being sorted by that column, in either:

- Ascending order (1 to 10) ▲
- Descending order (10 to 1) ▼

If the cone symbol does not appear, you cannot sort by that column.

3. To switch between ascending and descending order, click the column heading again.

Displaying lists or thumbnails

You can also control thumbnail display by setting Prinerger Workshop preferences.

- To alternate between List and Thumbnail view, perform one of the following actions:
 - From the **View** menu, select **as Thumbnails** or **as List**.
 - Right-click a blank area of the window and select **as List** or **as Thumbnails**.

Expanding and collapsing all items in a view or pane

Many views and panes have items that are grouped. In these views and panes, you can expand the groups to see all items, or collapse the items to see only the groups.

1. Select the view or pane.
2. From the **View** menu, select **Expand All** or **Collapse All** as desired.

Tip: You can also right-click the view or pane, and select **Expand All** or **Collapse All**.

Setting Workshop preferences

1. On a Windows-based client: In Job Finder or Job Manager, select **Edit > Preferences**.
On a Macintosh client: Select **Workshop > Preferences**.
2. In the Prinerger Workshop Preferences dialog box, set the options.
3. Click **OK**.

Prinerger Workshop settings are changed as indicated. If you changed options in the Workshop Preferences dialog box that were marked with an asterisk (*), you must restart Prinerger Workshop to activate your selections.

Overriding the default mode (Connect or Powerpack) on a client

By default, new Prinerger systems are shipped as Prinerger Connect systems. If you want to run a Workshop client computer in Powerpack mode—for example, because your Prinerger server was modified to run in Powerpack mode, or your site does a mix of commercial and packaging work—you must complete the following steps to override the default Workshop mode on the client.

1. On a Windows-based client: In Job Finder or Job Manager, select **Edit > Preferences**.
On a Macintosh client: Select **Workshop > Preferences**.
2. Click the **General** tab.
3. In the **Product** list, select **Connect** or **Powerpack**, and click **OK**.
4. Restart Workshop.

After setting this preference, if you want Workshop to match the mode of the Prinerger server, in the Preferences dialog box, click **Set to Defaults**.

Workshop Preferences dialog box

Note: Options marked with an asterisk (*) in the dialog box require you to restart Prinerger Workshop before they take effect.

Startup Tab

Go to Separations View When Opening Job Manager

Displays the **Separations** view when a job is opened in Job Manager. If this option is cleared, the Pages view displays by default.

Displaying the **Separations** view is recommended if you spend most of your time working in the **Separations** view (for example, if your primary activity is plate or film making).

Restore Last Group Expansion in Job Finder at Login

Select this option to open all groups in Job Finder that were open when you last quit Prinerger Workshop.

Clear this option to close all groups in Job Finder when you start Prinerger Workshop.

This preference does not take effect until after you restart Prinerger Workshop.

General Tab

Workshop Language

Indicates the language in which Prinerger Workshop runs. You can choose to run Prinerger Workshop in the same language as your operating system, or in one of the other languages offered.

This preference does not take effect until after you restart Prinerger Workshop.

Product

If you want Workshop to override the default mode—Connect versus Powerpack—of the server, select an option in this list. The setting affects terminology in the Workshop user interface and user guide. In Connect mode, you see terms for commercial printing, such as "page" and "signature". In Powerpack mode, you see terms for packaging printing, such as "1-up artwork" and "step and repeat".

PDF Color Name Encoding

Select the encoding for displaying color names. Options are ISO Latin 1, UTF-8, and Local System Default. The default is ISO Latin 1.

The color names are displayed using the selected encoding as soon as you close the dialog box. Color names that you manually add to the color database by typing a color name are encoded using the selected encoding.

This feature was added to improve support for Japanese and Asian languages.

Refresh Queue Manager Every

Determines how often the display is refreshed in the **Active Processes** pane in Job Manager, and in the **View** pane in the Queue Manager. The default refresh rate is every 10 seconds.

A less frequent setting reduces network traffic, but decreases the currency of the information displayed.

Maximum Number of Info Windows Displayed

Restricts the number of items for which you can display info windows. Opening a large number of info windows at the same time may have a negative impact on performance.

Show Process Info Window When Process Is Created

Displays the Process Info dialog box when you initiate a process from Job Manager.

If cleared, you can still display the Process Info dialog box for an active process by double-clicking the process in the **Processes** pane.

Use Job Favorites As Default

In the **Process Templates** pane, displays the **Job** tab by default when a job is opened.

Automatically Add Templates Used for Processing to Job Favorites

Select this option to make the **Add Process Template to Job Favorites** check box selected by default each time you open the Start Process dialog box. Selecting the **Add Process Template to Job Favorites** check box adds the process template the **Job** tab of the **Process Templates** pane after you start the process.

Save Window, Column, and View Options

Saves Prinerger Workshop customizations when Prinerger Workshop is closed. Customizations may include size and position of windows, size and order of columns, which columns are displayed, viewing as list or thumbnails, and use of grouping buttons.

Show Not Licensed Dialogs

Displays dialog boxes for unlicensed features even though you cannot use the features. You must purchase a license key to unlock features that you do not have.

Show Confirmation Dialogs for All Deletes

Displays a warning dialog box when you delete an element, with the options to **Continue** or **Cancel** the delete menu item.

View tab

Display Processing Panel on the Left

Select this check box to display the **Process Templates** pane and the **Processes** pane on the left side of the Job Manager window. Clear this check box to display these panes on the right side of the Job Manager window.

This preference does not take effect until after you restart Prinerger Workshop.

Display Page Sets in Reader Spreads

Joins facing page positions in pairs to emulate reader spreads (for example 1, 2-3, 4-5, and so on).

Applies only when displaying as thumbnails.

If cleared, all positions are displayed individually rather than as pairs.

This preference does not take effect until after you restart Prinergy Workshop.

Show Hidden Files in File Browser

Displays hidden files such as system files in lists, for example, in the Add Input Files dialog box.

Use Large Icons for View Selection Buttons

Select this option to display the buttons across the top of Job Finder and Job Manager as large icons instead of small ones.

In Job Finder, the buttons are **Jobs** and **Pre-Jobs**.

In Job Manager, the buttons are:

- **Pages**
- **Signatures**
- **Separations**
- **Storage**
- **History**

This preference does not take effect until after you restart Prinergy Workshop.

Automatically Add Dynamic Columns to Table Views

Select this check box to automatically add dynamic columns to list views in a pane when an element is being processed. If this check box is cleared, dynamic columns are not automatically added. You can add to the information that is displayed in a pane by selecting an option from the Visible Columns dialog box.

By default, this preference is enabled when Prinergy Workshop is installed. If you change this preference, it does not take effect until after you restart Prinergy Workshop.

Measurement Unit

Indicates the unit used to display measurement information in windows and dialog boxes. Options are:

- **Point (pt)**
- **Millimeter (mm)**
- **Centimeter (cm)**
- **Inch (in)**

If you change this setting, the new measurement unit appears the next time you display a dialog box or refresh a window.

Application Font

Indicates the font and font size used to display information.

This preference does not take effect until after you restart Prinerger Workshop.

Display Large Thumbnails

Displays thumbnails that are larger than the default size.

This preference does not take effect until after you restart Prinerger Workshop.

Use Default (Blank) Thumbnails

Displays generic thumbnails for pages and page positions.

With this option selected, you can drag-and-drop pages to page positions without the potential performance impact of real thumbnail images.

Use this option only in the following situations:

- Large jobs in which displaying all generated thumbnails may decrease performance
- Jobs where the page content is similar and thumbnails don't help to distinguish pages, such as textual pages.

This preference does not take effect until after you restart Prinerger Workshop.

Show an Even Number of Thumbnails Per Row in All Page Views

Displays thumbnails in rows containing an even number of thumbnails.

This option works in conjunction with **Display Page Sets in Reader Spreads Display**. If reader spreads are displayed, thumbnails are displayed in even numbers of reader spreads, rather than as individual pages.

This preference does not take effect until after you restart Prinerger Workshop.

Set to Defaults

Returns settings for all preferences to the system defaults. Does not apply to the Configure Digital Print Application tab.

Visible Columns dialog box in History view

Description

A short description of the action taken. For each action, the description includes a number at the end of the text indicating the number of detail items listed for that action. You can expand an action to view its details.

User Name

The logon name of the user who initiated the action.

Time

The date and time that the action or process was initiated.

Severity

Indicates whether the message is for information only, or is an error or warning.

Visible Columns dialog box in Imposition Plans pane

Name

The name of the element.

For a page, the name is in the form of <input file name>.<page #>.p.

Page

When the hierarchy is opened to display individual positions, this column displays the file name that is assigned to each position.

On the rows that contain information other than positions, this column indicates the number of positions in the surface that have files assigned to them—for example, 4 of 4 Assigned.

Assignment Count

Displays the number of pages assigned to the page position

Workstyle

The workstyle as specified by the imposition plan—for example, **Sheetwise**.

Page Set

The name of the page set to which the imposition plan is linked.

Web Growth Profile Name

Any web growth profile associated with the signature, sheet, or surface.

A web growth profile is an XML file used to digitally compensate for press distortion.

Web Growth Profile Path

The location of any web growth profile associated with the signature, sheet, or surface.

Note: If a web growth profile is specified in Job Manager, this overrides any web growth profile that is defined for the process template.

Center Page

Indicates whether the page is centered.

Offset

The horizontal and vertical adjustments made to the page from the lower-left corner.

This column appears in the **Signatures** pane and the **Pages** pane.

If the page is not centered, the value is the same in both panes.

If the page is centered, the value in the **Signatures** pane is the difference between the **Media Size** and the **Trim Size**.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Trim Size

The horizontal and vertical measurements to which the page will be cut. The trim size is determined by the page position to which the page is assigned.

If the file is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

<process template>

The name of the process template group that was used to process the file and the processing status.

This column automatically appears in these panes:

- **Input Files** pane when an input file is processed
- **Pages** pane when a page is processed
- **Imposition Plans** pane when a surface is processed

This is known as a dynamic column. More than one dynamic column may appear if more than one process template is used.

<custom field> (more than one may be visible)

Any custom fields that were created for this job element with the **Show in Workshop** check box selected

Visible Columns dialog box in Input Files pane

Primary File

The name of the input file

Files

The number of input files in the row

Size

The size of the file.

The file size is listed in KB if the file is less than 1 MB, or in MB if the file is 1 MB or more.

If it is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

Modified

The date and time that the file was last modified

Created

The date and time that the file was created

Kind

The file type—for example, **Layered PDF**, **PostScript** or **PDF**

Location

The path to the file

<process template>

The name of the process template group that was used to process the file and the processing status.

This column automatically appears in these panes:

- **Input Files** pane when an input file is processed
- **Pages** pane when a page is processed
- **Imposition Plans** pane when a surface is processed

This is known as a dynamic column. More than one dynamic column may appear if more than one process template is used.

Visible Columns dialog box in Job Finder

Note: Displaying more columns reduces Job Finder performance.

Name

The name of the job, pre-job, or group. This column cannot be hidden.

Custom fields that you create for a job or job element can also be displayed. See Custom Fields Manager.

Fastest Columns

Job Alias

The alias of jobs in your system. For systems where the job name is a number, the job alias provides the meaningful job name. **Job Alias** corresponds to **Job Description** in InSite Prepress Portal. If you change the job alias in Prinergy, the job description in InSite Prepress Portal is changed.

Kind

Indicates whether the item is a job, pre-job, or group.

Job Status

The status of the job. When a job is created, its status is set to **In Prepress**.

You can change a job's status in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box. The following statuses are available:

- **Created**
- **In Prepress**
- **On Press**

- **Shipped**
- **Completed**
- **Ready for Final Output**
- **Completed Final Output**

If the job is enabled for Web access through Prepress Portal, the following additional statuses are available:

- **In Cart**
- **Pending Order Approval**
- **Order Requested**
- **Order Accepted**
- **Order Rejected**

Select **Enable Press Side Proofing** if the workflow includes the Kodak PressProof software.

Job Home

The full path name for the job folder location.

Created

The date and time when you created the job or pre-job.

Job Code

A job code that you specify. The job code can be anything that is meaningful to you or to your customer.

The job code is:

- Available to an imposition job ticket
- Available as a variable mark on the job's output
- Exported with a job
- Included in CIP3 files when Prinergy generates CIP3 files during final output

The job code also appears in Prepress Portal, if the job is enabled for Web access through Prepress Portal. If you change the job code in Prinergy, the job code in PrePress Portal is changed.

Proof Due

The date and time that the proofs for the job are due. This information is set in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box.

Final Output Due

The date and time that the final output for the job is due. This information is set in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box.

Web Access Customer

The name of the customer for whom you have enabled web access. This information is set in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box.

Less Fast Columns

Online

Indicates whether a job is fully or partially **Offline** or **Online**.

Offline indicates that no files in the job's job folder exist on the job home server. Files from outside the job folder may still be online. When you fully purge a job, its status is **Offline** since purging removes all files in the job folder from the job home server.

Online indicates that at least one file for the job is on the job home server.

If this column is blank, the status of the job is not known.

Max Layers

The maximum number of pages that you can assign to one page position. This information is set in the Edit Job Attributes dialog box and only applies to legacy versioning jobs.

Pages Approved

The number of approved pages, over the total number of pages in the job.

Errors/Warnings

Displays the most important error or warning status from the most recent processes in the **Processes** pane of Job Manager.

Full Surfaces

The number of surfaces for which all positions have pages assigned, over the total number of surfaces in the job.

Final Output Count

The number of separations you have output using a final output process template, over the total number of separations in the job.

Last Final Output

Date and time the last separation was output using a final output process template.

Last Archived

The date and time that someone last archived the job.

Slowest Columns

Archive Status

The quantity of files in the job that you have archived at any time. Possible statuses are:

- **None:** The job has not been archived.
- **Some:** Some but not all files in the job were archived. This can occur when you:
 - Archive only selected files, not the whole job
 - Archive the job, and then add one or more files to the job, for example, by adding input or processing an input file that had not been processed before the archive
 - Change one or more of the archived files, for example by processing it again
- **All:** The job was archived and no changes have been made to any files in the job.

Stale Archive Status

The quantity (**All Some**, or **None**) of files in the job that have changed since the last archive.

Columns marked with an asterisk (*) will not refresh automatically. You must manually refresh the Job Finder to update these fields.

The columns available for display are the same in both the **Jobs** and **Pre-Jobs** views.

Visible Columns dialog box in Media Manager

The options in this dialog box depend on which pane you selected before displaying the dialog box.

In the Pools Pane

Name

Lists all of the media pools and disk volumes in your system. These include the media pools that appear in the Removable Storage Manager and any disk volumes that your Prinergy administrator has set up.

Number of Media

The number of media in the media pool—for example, a media pool may contain five tapes.

Media Type

The type of media in the media pool. Archiver supports the following media types:

- AIT (Advanced Intelligent Tape) tapes
- LTO (Linear Tape-Open) tapes
- Disk (archive disk volumes)

In the Media Pane**Name**

The name of the physical medium. This name will be the same as the name of the medium in Removable Storage Manager or will be the name of the archive disk volume.

Location

Where the medium is located. This can be a tape library, a stand-alone tape drive, or an offline location.

Pool

The name of the media pool to which the medium belongs.

Type

The type of media in the media pool. Archiver supports the following media types:

- AIT (Advanced Intelligent Tape) tapes
- LTO (Linear Tape-Open) tapes
- Disk (archive disk volumes)

Created

The date that Archiver first wrote to the medium.

Last Modified

The date and time that Archiver last wrote to the medium.

Free Space

The estimated amount of unused space in the partition.

Used Space

The sum of all the archives on this medium. The used space is calculated based on the original size of the files on disk. The **Used Space** amount can be more than the **Partition Capacity** if the files have been compressed. This value does not account for the space consumed to format the data onto tape—that is, it will underestimate the amount of data actually on tape.

Partition Capacity

The total size of the partition (uncompressed or native).

Partition State

The logical state of the partition on the medium. Possible states are:

- **Allocated**
- **Available**
- **Complete**
- **Import**
- **New**

For more information about partition and media states, see the Prinerger System Administration guide or the Removable Storage Manager guide.

Media State

The physical state of the medium. Possible states are:

- **Idle**
- **In Use**
- **Loaded**
- **Mounted**
- **Waiting for an Operator Request**

Format

The format of the tape medium. This information comes directly from Removable Storage Manager. Formats include:

- Creo (MTF)
- Creo (Prinerger)
- RSM Free Label
- WindowsBackup (MTF)

Visible Columns dialog box in Page Sets pane

Page Position

The page position number is a combination of the page set prefix and the position number (both user-definable).

You define the prefix when you create a page set or add an imposition plan to a job.

A value appears only if the page has been assigned to a page position on a page set.

Page

When the hierarchy is opened to display individual positions, this column displays the file name that is assigned to each position.

On the rows that contain information other than positions, this column indicates the number of positions in the surface that have files assigned to them—for example, 4 of 4 Assigned.

Assignment Count

Displays the number of pages assigned to the page position

Layered Page Number

Applies to the Layered PDF Versioning feature, which is currently under development. For more information, contact your sales representative.

<custom field> (more than one may be visible)

Any custom fields that were created for this job element with the **Show in Workshop** check box selected

Visible Columns dialog box in Pages pane

Page

The page name in the form of **<input file name>.<page #>.p.**

Page Position

The page position number is a combination of the page set prefix and the position number (both user-definable).

You define the prefix when you create a page set or add an imposition plan to a job.

A value appears only if the page has been assigned to a page position on a page set.

Surface

The name of the surface and signature to which the page is assigned. For example, if the page is assigned to the front surface of Signature 1, the **Surface** column displays A Front 1.

This column is available only in the **Pages** pane of the **Signatures** view.

Input File

The name of the input file from which the page was created

Date Refined

The date and time that the page was created

Page File Location

The path to the page file

Size

The size of the file.

The file size is listed in KB if the file is less than 1 MB, or in MB if the file is 1 MB or more.

If it is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

Preflight Report

Indicates whether a PDF Preflight report has been generated for the PDF page, or whether it is not available.

Ordinal Number

The page number in a multi-page file that this page represents

Versioned Page Status

This is part of Layered PDF Versioning. For information about it, see the *Prinergy Layered PDF Versioning User Guide*.

Page Colors

The process and spot colors in the page

Composite

Indicates whether the page is composite.

A composite file is not divided into color separations.

Customer Approval

The approval status of the page. These are the possible approval statuses:

- **Approval not Required**
- **Approval Requested**
- **Approval in Progress**
- **Waiting for Correction**
- **Approved**
- **Rejected**

Media Size

The width and height of the media box of the PDF file.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Trim Size

The horizontal and vertical measurements to which the page will be cut. The trim size is determined by the page position to which the page is assigned.

If the file is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Offset

The horizontal and vertical adjustments made to the page from the lower-left corner.

This column appears in the **Signatures** pane and the **Pages** pane.

If the page is not centered, the value is the same in both panes.

If the page is centered, the value in the **Signatures** pane is the difference between the **Media Size** and the **Trim Size**.

The unit of measure is specified in the Workshop Preferences dialog box.

Scale (%)

The horizontal and vertical scale measurement of the page, as a percentage of the page's original size.

If the file is not a PDF file, the scale appears as **N/A**.

Orientation (°)

The number of degrees that the page is rotated.

Select from 0, 90 CW (clockwise), 180, and 90 CCW (counter-clockwise).

If the file is not a PDF file, the orientation appears as **N/A**.

<process template>

The name of the process template group that was used to process the file and the processing status.

This column automatically appears in these panes:

- **Input Files** pane when an input file is processed
- **Pages** pane when a page is processed
- **Imposition Plans** pane when a surface is processed

This is known as a dynamic column. More than one dynamic column may appear if more than one process template is used.

<custom field> (more than one may be visible)

Any custom fields that were created for this job element with the **Show in Workshop** check box selected

Visible Columns dialog box in Queue Manager

The options in this dialog box depend on which view you were in before displaying the dialog box:

In the JTP Queues View**Name**

Displays the name of the process, the status of the process using status icons, and the icon for the process template group to which the process belongs.

Queue Position

A number representing the position of the process in the queue. When processes include multiple files, a range of position numbers is shown, representing the position of the first and last files.

Priority

See Select Task Priority dialog box.

Job

The name of the job with which the process is associated.

User

The logon ID of the user who initiated the process.

Submitted (at)

The date and time that the process was initiated.

Process Template

The name of the process template used to initiate the process.

Process Template Group

The group to which the process template used to initiate the process belongs.

Type

The process template type for this process, for example, **Archive**, **Retrieve**, or **Purge**.

Status / Process Status

The status of the process, for example, **Queued**, **Active**, or **Ended**.

Elements

The number and type of elements that are inputs to the process.

In the Process Types View**Name**

Displays the name of the process, the status of the process using status icons, and the icon for the process template group to which the process belongs.

Priority

See Select Task Priority dialog box.

Job

The name of the job with which the process is associated.

User

The logon ID of the user who initiated the process.

Submitted (at)

The date and time that the process was initiated.

Started (at)

The date and time that the JTP (job ticket processor) began executing the process.

Process Template

The name of the process template used to initiate the process.

Process Template Group

The group to which the process template used to initiate the process belongs.

Status / Process Status

The status of the process, for example, **Queued**, **Active**, or **Ended**.

Elements

The number and type of elements that are inputs to the process.

Visible Columns dialog box in Separations view

Name

The name of the element.

For a page, the name is in the form of <input file name>.<page #>.p.

Page Assignments

Indicates the number of page positions in the signature or surface that have pages assigned to them—for example, 4 of 4 Assigned.

Workstyle

The workstyle as specified by the imposition plan—for example, **Sheetwise**.

Page Set

The name of the page set to which the imposition plan is linked.

Common

Labels a separation in a versioning job as **Base**, **Common**, **Unique**, or **Not Identified**.

- **Base** identifies the separations in the first imposition plan you imported into the job.
- **Common** identifies the separations you use in each of the versioning impositions. These are the separations that stay the same for each version. Common separations are duplicates of the base separations. For this reason, common separations are grayed-out, indicating you don't need to output them, because you will output the base separations.
- **Unique** identifies the separations for which you have more than one version—that is, the separations that differ for each version.
- **Not Identified** indicates the **Common** column is unpopulated. To populate the column, from the **Job** menu, select **Identify Common Separations**.

Note: When outputting separations for a versioning job, you output the bold separations (the base and unique separations); you don't output the grayed-out separations (the common separations).

Web Growth Profile Name

Displays the name of the web growth profile, if one is selected.

Web Growth Profile Path

Displays the path to the web growth profile, if one is selected.

Content

Displays the kind of content a separation contains:

- **Has Page Content** indicates the separation contains page information.
- **Mark Content Only** indicates the separation has marks only.
- **Empty** indicates the separation has no page information and no marks.

<process template>

The name of the process template group that was used to process the file and the processing status.

This column automatically appears in these panes:

- **Input Files** pane when an input file is processed
- **Pages** pane when a page is processed
- **Imposition Plans** pane when a surface is processed

This is known as a dynamic column. More than one dynamic column may appear if more than one process template is used.

<custom field> (more than one may be visible)

Any custom fields that were created for this job element with the **Show in Workshop** check box selected

The columns you see depend on the columns you display or hide.

Visible Columns dialog box in Storage view

Primary File

The name of the element.

Files

The number of files associated with the primary file.

Size

The size of the file.

The file size is listed in KB if the file is less than 1 MB, or in MB if the file is 1 MB or more.

If it is not a PDF file, the value is **N/A**.

Modified

The date and time that the file was last modified

Created

The date and time that the file was created

Description

The file type and how it is used in Prinergy. For example, **PDF Input File**, **PostScript Input File**, **PDF Page**, or **Imposition Plan**.

Last Archived

The date and time that someone last archived the job.

Location

The path to the file

Archive State

The archive state of the file. Possible states are:

- **Online and Never Archived:** The file has never been archived, purged, or retrieved.
- **Online and Currently Archived:** The file has been archived, but has not been purged or retrieved.
- **Offline:** The file has been purged. (It also had to be archived before the purge, or the purging would not occur.)
- **Online and Previously Archived:** The file has been changed since it was archived, and has not been archived since it was changed.
- **Missing:** The file is not on the file system, and it has not been archived. It also has not been purged because purging deletes files only if they have been archived. Therefore, an action other than purging deleted the file.

A job's **Stale Archive Status** is connected to the **Archive State** of its files.

- If the **Archive State** of all files in a job is **Online and Never Archived** or **Online and Currently Archived**, the job's **Stale Archive Status** is **None Stale**.
- If the **Archive State** of some files is **Online and Previously Archived**, the job's **Stale Archive Status** is **Some Stale**.

Visible Columns dialog box in System History

Description

A short description of the action taken. For each action, the description includes a number at the end of the text indicating the number of detail items listed for that action. You can expand an action to view its details.

User Name

The logon name of the user who initiated the action.

Time

The date and time that the action or process was initiated.

Severity

Indicates whether the message is for information only, or is an error or warning.

21

Integrated products

Preps

Preps integration options

Prinerger offers two options for integrating the Preps imposition software: Full Access and Automated Imposition.

Full access Preps integration option

The full access option enables you to start Preps from within Prinerger Workshop, and to have the full functionality of your licensed Preps (Preps Pro or Preps Plus, floating license or dongle).

With this option, you can create, edit, and export impositions from Preps and import them into Prinerger for use in Prinerger jobs. You can also create and edit a Preps template. You can import the following files into a Prinerger job:

- Preps 5.1 and later job files
- PJTF and JDF files
- PostScript and PDF marks files

The following overview describes the imposition creation workflow for the full access Preps integration option.

1. You add and process the input files and create a page set.
2. You open Preps from within Prinerger and create an imposition.

Preps adds a run list of blank pages based on the page set in Prinerger.

3. You create or edit templates, and then add signatures and define a media (device).
4. You print the imposition as an Adobe Job Ticket or a JDF file.

When saving mixed-file jobs, Preps saves the imposition as a job ticket file (.pjtf or .jdf). The marks are saved as a PostScript file (.ps). When saving as a PDF job, the Preps JDF has .pdf mark flats, and the marks are embedded into the PJTF file.

Prinerger automatically imports the imposition and assigns the pages to the imposition.

Automated Imposition option

With the Automated Imposition option, you can:

- Create impositions in Prinerger from existing Preps templates (without starting Preps). You cannot create or edit templates.

Note: Because the Automated Imposition feature does not allow you to edit the template before creating the imposition, only the **Prinerger Signature Selection** button (not the **Use External Imposition Application** button) is available to you in the New Imposition dialog box.

- Import the following raw imposition files into a Prinerger job, without having to first convert the files into a Prinerger-usable format:
 - Preps .job files from the Preps or UpFront software
 - Preps jobs or JDF-MIS (job definition format-management information system) stripping parameters created by the UpFront software
 - Preps JDF or other JDF (job definition format) stripping parameters from Prinerger-compatible software

Setting up integrated Preps

With either of the Preps integration options, the Prinerger Client Installer automatically identifies the Preps software location. However, some procedures are required to set up integrated Preps.

Set up tasks

- Create and set the default import process template. See the topic about creating an import process template for impositions.
- Copy all Preps templates, marks, and printer files to the Prinerger folder, . . . \CreoAraxi\AraxiPreps. See the topic about saving Preps resource files to a Prinerger folder.
- On a Windows-based client computer, set an exception in the firewall settings to allow `Preps62.exe`, so that the Prinerger server can authorize a floating license for each session.
- On a Mac client computer, you must set **Others** to **Read/Write** for the `AraxiPreps` folder (Go to `Applications\Creo\Prinerger\AraxiPreps`, press `Command+I`, and change the user rights at the bottom).

If you are using a Preps dongle, you must also manually add Preps to the Prinerger imposition application list. See the topic about setting the imposition software location.

Note: For systems licensed for Preps 6, the Prinerger Workshop installer installs Preps 6.2. Additionally, the Preps DLL on the Prinerger server (which is used to convert Preps jobs, JDFs, and so on to impositions) will only work in Preps 6 mode. This means that sites with Preps 5 clients must migrate these clients to Preps 6, in

order to edit Prinergy impositions. Please check My Kodak Services for online training resources, or contact your Kodak representative for training options. Preps 5 and earlier are no longer tested or supported. Functions that previously used Preps 5 (for example, creation of impositions from within Prinergy jobs, creation of impositions outside of Prinergy jobs, editing of impositions, and so on) may still work, but if problems are discovered, customer support will recommend upgrading to Preps 6.

Import profiles for Integrated Preps

With either of the Preps integration options, the **Import raw imposition files** section of the import process template contains two profiles:

- **PrepsPrinergy** is the profile that is used when creating or editing an imposition, and the imposition is automatically imported. Prinergy automatically selects this profile during the automatic import process.
- **Default** is the default profile used when importing either a Preps .job or a JDF file from a management information system (MIS). If you require a different profile, select a profile in the **Import raw imposition files** section of the process template.

Editing Prinergy Impositions in Preps

Depending on how an imposition was created in Prinergy, it may not be editable in Preps.

Any imposition created using an integrated Preps workflow is editable in Preps.

However, if you import any of the following types of imposition files into Prinergy, the imposition will not be editable in Preps:

- PJTF from a stand-alone version of Preps
- MIS JDF with layout
- JDF and PJTF from other imposition applications (for example, Signa Station)

Saving Preps resource files to Prinergy folder

The first time that you set up to use a Preps integration option, move your preexisting folders of Preps templates, marks, and printer files to a special folder on the Prinergy server so that you can use them with integrated Preps.

Alternatively, if you create and edit all impositions from one Prinergy client computer, you can keep the **Templates, Marks, and Printers** folders on the Prinergy Workshop client computer and confirm that Preps preferences point to these local templates and marks folders.

These files will be available to all Prinergy Workshop clients using Preps.

1. Manually copy all Preps templates, marks, and printer files into the **Templates, Marks, and Printers** folders in the `... \CreoAraxi \AraxiPreps` folder on the Prinerger server.
2. Ensure that the shared `... \CreoAraxi \AraxiPreps` folder is mounted to the client computers
3. Configure Preps preferences to point to the **Templates, Marks, and Printers** folders.

Importing a raw imposition file manually

1. In Prinerger Workshop, from the **File** menu, select **Import Imposition**.
2. In the Import Imposition dialog box, browse to find the Preps .job file, Preps JDF file, or the JDF-MIS stripping parameters file to use for the imposition.
3. Select the Preps .job file that you want to import.
4. Open the **Options** section.
5. In the **Imposition Name** box, type a new name or leave the Preps job name as the default.
6. Take one of the following actions:
 - Select **Create New Page Set**, enter a name for the page set, change the page set prefix (if required), and enter the number of pages in the new page set.
 - Select **Use Existing Page Set** and select a matching page set from the list of existing page sets.

Important: These settings in the Import Imposition dialog box override similar settings in the import process template.

7. Click **Import**.
8. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
9. Select settings in the import process template for the results you want.

For example, if you are using an existing page set when importing the imposition, you may also want to select **Set Initial Separations after Imposition Import** to automatically create separations by resetting the output separations to the colors that are defined in the assigned pages.

10. In the **Import Raw Imposition Files** section in the import process template, for **Profile**, select **Default**.

The **PrepsPrinerger** profile is used only by Preps integrated with Prinerger Workshop.

11. In the **Device** list, select an available device that supports your imposition plan.
12. For **Output Signatures**, click **All**.

13. Click **OK**.

When a Preps job file is imported, the integrated Preps software creates the PJTF and marks files and Prinergy automatically starts the import imposition task. The PJTF is imported and the imposition plan and page set are added to the job. The Preps job is saved in the <job folder>\System\ImpositionPlans folder.

When importing a JDF-MIS stripping parameters file, Preps attempts to associate a matching signature to the job, based on signature information contained in the JDF-MIS stripping parameter file. When a JDF-MIS stripping parameters file is imported, the Preps JDF software creates the Preps job, finds a matching signature, and outputs PJTF and marks files that are automatically imported into the Prinergy job. If a matching signature is found, the PJTF and marks file is created and an imposition plan is imported. The page set is created and the Preps job is saved in the <job folder>\System\ImpositionPlans folder.

If no suitable signature can be found due to insufficient information contained in the job file, no imposition plan will be imported into the Prinergy job: the Preps job is created and a page set is created from the JDF-MIS stripping parameter file but no imposition is created. To assign the correct signatures to the Preps job, you must then use the **Create New Imposition** menu item and the **Use Existing Page Set** option to assign the required signatures manually.

Importing a raw imposition file with hot folders

You can import a raw imposition file using a job hot folder. You may need different hot folders with different process template options attached, depending on the import settings required by the job. For example, different device plate sizes require different process templates.

1. Create a job hot folder.
2. Create an import process template to attach to the hot folder.
3. In the **Import** section of the import process template, select one of:
 - **Create Alternate Page Set and Imposition** (if you want to create a new page set and imposition).
 - **Keep Existing Page Set and Create New Imposition**
4. If you selected **Keep Existing Page Set and Create New Imposition**, select one of the available **Page Set Options**.
 - **Existing assignments replaced by new assignments**
 - **Existing assignments replaced by new unassignments**
5. In the **Profile** list in the **Import Raw Imposition Files** section, select **Default**.

6. In the **Device** list, select an available device that supports your plan.
7. For **Output Signatures**, select **All**.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Drop the Preps .job file, Preps JDF file, or the JDF-MIS stripping parameters file into the job hot folder.

When you drop a Preps .job from UpFront software into the job hot folder, the integrated Preps software finds the UpFront software-created template in the `Templates` folder and outputs PJTF and marks files. If the UpFront software-created template referenced in the Preps job is not found, the integrated Preps software will not create the PJTF and the import fails. There will be a message in the History view.

After the hot folder accepts the Preps job file, the integrated Preps software creates the PJTF and marks files that are automatically imported into the job. The imposition plan is added to the job. The Preps .job file is saved in the `<job folder>\System\ImpositionPlans` folder.

When a JDF-MIS stripping parameters file is dropped into an existing job hot folder, the integrated Preps software creates the Preps job, finds a matching signature, and outputs PJTF and marks files that are automatically imported into the Prinergy job. The page set is created and the Preps job is saved in the `<job folder>\System\ImpositionPlans` folder. If a matching signature is not found, the PJTF and marks files are not created and an imposition plan is not imported.

Importing a raw imposition file with smart hot folders

You can use a smart hot folder to create a job based on a template job and then move a Preps job file to one or more job hot folders for processing. You can use the smart hot folder to rename the imposition PJTF and marks files.

1. Create a smart hot folder to create a new job, or find an existing job based on the back reference in the Preps .job file name.
See [Smart hot folders](#) on page [912](#).
2. Create a Prinergy template job to be used when the smart hot folder is creating a new job.
3. In the template job, create job hot folders with an import process template attached.
See [Hot folders](#) on page [905](#).
4. Configure the smart hot folder to move the incoming raw imposition file to the job hot folder for processing.
5. Drop the Preps .job file, Preps JDF file, or the JDF-MIS stripping parameters file into the smart hot folder.

When the smart hot folder moves a Preps .job file into the job hot folder, the integrated Preps software creates the PJTF and marks files. The imposition plan is added to the Prinerger job. The Preps .job file is saved in the <job folder>\System\ImpositionPlans folder.

When the smart hot folder moves a Preps .job file from UpFront software into the job hot folder, the integrated Preps software finds the UpFront software-created template in the Template folder and outputs PJTF and marks files. If the UpFront software-created template referenced in the Preps .job is not found, Preps will not create the PJTF and the import fails.

When the smart hot folder moves a stripping parameter file into the job import hot folder, the page set is created and the Preps job is saved in the <job folder>\System\ImpositionPlans folder. If a matching signature is not found, the PJTF and marks file is not created and an imposition plan is not imported.

Creating a Preps imposition plan

If you have a full access Preps integration license or a Prinerger Workshop Edition Preps Integration license, you can create a Preps imposition through Prinerger Workshop. The license allows for the automatic transfer of files between the imposition software and a Prinerger Workshop job.

1. In **Job Manager**, from the **File** menu, select **Create New Imposition**.
2. In the New Imposition dialog box, in the **Imposition Name** box, enter an imposition name.
Otherwise, the box is read-only.
3. Perform the following as appropriate:

| If you are creating an imposition from a template... | Then... |
|--|---|
| That needs to be modified using an external imposition application, such as Preps. | <p>Select Use External Imposition Application. Then, in the Select an imposition application box, select the software you want to use.</p> <p>Note: If no applications appear on the list, this means that none have been set up. This is done using the Configure Imposition Applications option from the Tools menu.</p> <p>Note: If the application requires a license and is licensed, the application name appears in bold text.</p> |

| If you are creating an imposition from a template... | Then... |
|---|---|
| That does not need to be modified using an external imposition application and if you have the Preps Integration option Automated Imposition . | Select Prinerger Signature Selection . |

Notes: Signature Selection works in Preps 5 mode, while the rest of Prinerger works in Preps 6 mode. This means that:

- It is not possible to edit Preps 6 jobs that use come-and-go, cut-and-stack, or multi-binding styles with Signature Selection. If you try to edit an imposition that uses one of these binding styles, the **Use Prinerger Signature Selection** option will not be available in the Edit Imposition dialog. Instead, you will be able to select **Use External Layout Imposition Applications** to launch Preps 6.
 - There is a difference in the way that Preps 5 and 6 display cut-and-stack and come-and-go jobs. In Preps 6, cut-and-stack jobs are shown as multiple webs, and come-and-go jobs are shown as multiple sections. In Prinerger Workshop, such jobs are displayed in the Preps 6 format, while in Signature Selection, they are displayed in the Preps 5 format. This is just a difference in display: the page assignment is correct and the imposition will print correctly.
4. If you do not want to use the default import or export process template, click **Select** and choose the process template that you want.
 5. In the **Import Type** list, select one of the following options:
 - **Automatic Import** to start the import process automatically. With automatic import of imposition information, the recommended import template option is **Keep existing page set and imposition**.
 - **Manual Import** to open a Start Process dialog box where you can edit the import process template, choosing import options appropriate to your Prinerger job.
 6. Click **OK**.
 7. In the New Imposition Details dialog box, in **Imposition Name**, type the imposition name.
 8. Perform the following as appropriate:

| If you want to | Then |
|--------------------------|--|
| Create a new page set | Click Create New Page Set and specify the name, prefix, and number of pages for the imposition. |
| Use an existing page set | Click Use Existing Page Set , and select a page set from the box below. |

9. Perform the following as appropriate:

| If you selected | Then |
|--|--|
| Prinerger Signature Selection in step 3 | Specify the desired templates, arrange them accordingly, set the desired final output device, and set any shingling and bleed margin default. Click OK . Your imposition is now created and this task is complete. |
| Use External Imposition Application in step 3 | Click OK . The Preps software starts. Continue to the next step and complete the remainder of this procedure. |

10. In Preps, modify the imposition as needed.

For more information on Preps procedures, see the Preps documentation.

11. In the Preps **Signature List** pane, click **Signatures**.

12. Select and add a signature or signatures that conform to the run list count.

13. Select **Preps Layout Details** and set shingling amounts and bleed margins, if required.

14. Click **OK**.

The signatures are added to the signature list in Preps.

15. From the Preps **File** menu, select **Print**.

16. In the **Send to** list, select from the following options:

- To output a PPF file, select **PPF** to generate a file that contains only PPF data.
- To output a PJTF file, select **Adobe Job Ticket** and select **Embed CIP3 cutting data**. From Preps Pro, you can generate a PJTF file that includes the PPF tags for cutter/folders. When you import the imposition into Prinerger, you can output PPF from the Prinerger job.
- To output a JDF file, select **JDF** as the output type.

17. In the **Device** list, select an output device.

18. Specify a **Print Range**, if required.

19. Click **Print**.

For a new imposition, the Preps software creates the PJTF and marks files and Prinerger automatically starts the import imposition process. The PJTF and PostScript marks files are imported into Prinerger and the imposition is added to the Prinerger job.

The imported Preps PJTF and marks files are saved in the <job folder>\System\ImpositionPlans folder. The Preps job, PJTF, and marks files are saved in the <job>\TransientLayouts \<clientmachinename> folder.

To open Preps outside of a job context, see [Opening Preps outside of job context](#) on page 1070.

Editing a Preps imposition

If you have a full access Preps integration license, you can create and edit Preps impositions through Prinergy Workshop. You can also automatically transfer files between the imposition software and a Prinergy Workshop job.

This topic includes a few typical use cases for editing a Preps imposition with integrated Preps.

1. In **Job Manager**, switch to the **Signatures** view.
2. In the **Imposition Plans** pane, double-click the imposition you want to edit, or select **Edit Imposition** in the **Edit** menu.
3. In the Edit Imposition dialog box, if more than one imposition software is configured, in the **Select an imposition application** box, select the software you want to use.
4. If you do not want to use the default import or export process template, click **Select** and choose the process template that you want.
5. In the **Import Type** list, select one of these options:
 - **Automatic Import**—Starts the import process automatically. The only import template option allowed is **Keep existing page set and imposition**.
 - **Manual Import**—Opens a Start Process dialog box where you can edit the import process template, choosing any import options appropriate for your job.
 - **Versioned Import**
6. Click **OK**.
The Preps software starts.
7. In Preps, perform either of these actions:
 - Increase or decrease the number of blank pages in the run list.
 - Change the signature assignment to keep the same number of signatures, to increase the number of signatures, or decrease the number of signatures. The number of blank pages in the run list must be kept the same.

For more information about Preps procedures, see the Preps documentation.

8. From the Preps **File** menu, select **Print** and perform these actions:
 - a. In the **Send to** list, select **Adobe Job Ticket** or **JDF**.
To output a PJTF file, select **Adobe Job Ticket** and select **Embed CIP3 cutting data**. From Preps Pro, you can generate a PJTF file that includes the PPF tags for cutter/folders. When you import

the imposition into Prinergy, you can output PPF from the Prinergy job.

- b. In the **Device** list, select an output device.
 - c. Specify a **Print Range**, if required.
 - d. Click **Print**.
9. If you selected the manual import option, perform these actions:
- a. Click **Import**.
 - b. In the **Start Process** dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
 - c. Select **Create alternate page set and imposition** to create a new page set and imposition, or select **Keep existing page set and create new imposition** to create a new imposition plan with the existing page set.
- Note:** If you increased or decreased the number of blank pages in the Preps run list, you must select **Create alternate page set and imposition**. This is the only page set option that can be used; other options will make the import fail.
- d. Click **OK**.

The results depend on the options you selected:

- If you selected the automatic import option, the edited imposition plan is imported, keeping the existing page set and imposition. The new signatures show in **Signatures** view. The edited imposition plan has the same name as the original plan.
- If you selected the manual import option and selected **Create alternate page set and imposition**, the edited imposition plan is imported. A new page set and imposition plan is created. If you changed the number of blank pages, the new page set has the new number of page position. The imposition plan name is the same as the original with .1 appended. Each time the imposition plan is edited, the .1 is increased by one. There are two imposition plans, the original and the edited, and two page sets.

Note: (Optional) If there were pages assigned in the original imposition plan, copy and paste page assignments into the new, edited plan.

- If you selected the manual import option and selected **Keep existing page set and create new imposition**, the edited imposition plan is imported. A new imposition plan is created with the existing page set. The imposition plan name is the same as the original with .1 appended. Each time the imposition plan is edited, the .1 is increased by one. There are two imposition plans, the original and the edited, and one page set.

Note: (Optional) If there were pages assigned in the original imposition plan, copy and paste page assignments into the new, edited plan.

To open Preps outside of a job context, see [Opening Preps outside of job context](#) on page [1070](#).

Opening Preps outside of job context

This procedure describes how to open Preps from the Prinerger **Tools** menu, outside of a job. This means that Preps does not open with a run list that matches the Prinerger job's page set, and the imposition you create in Preps will not be automatically imported into Prinerger. The benefit of opening Preps outside of job context is that you can work extensively in the Preps software without tying up a Prinerger job.

If you have a Preps (integration or stand-alone, floating license or a dongle), you can open Preps outside of job context (from the Prinerger Tools menu).

Note: Before opening Preps outside of job context for the first time, you must install and configure Preps so that Prinerger knows where to locate the software. See [Overview of tasks for integrating imposition software](#) on page 1088

1. In Job Finder, from the **Tools** menu, select **Start Imposition Application**.
2. In the Start Imposition Application dialog box, choose a software from the list and click **OK**.

Setting Integrated Preps preferences

Edit the `PrepsPrinerger.cfg.template` file on the Prinerger server in order to set preferences for Preps on all clients.

Tip: You can determine what attributes the lines in the file control by experimenting on the `PrepsPrinerger.cfg` that is on the client. Once you determine exactly how to make the desired changes, modify the `PrepsPrinerger.cfg.template` on the server to affect Preps on all clients.

1. On the Prinerger server, navigate to the file `AraxiPreps`
`\Profiles\PrepsPrinerger`
`\PrepsPrinerger.cfg.template`.

Tip: Before you modify the file, you may want to make a copy of the original, naming it `PrepsPrinerger.cfg.template.original`.

Location of the client `PrepsPrinerger.cfg`:

- Macintosh: `Applications\Kodak\Prinerger`
`\AraxiPreps\Profiles\PrepsPrinerger`
- Windows: `Program Files\Kodak\Prinerger`
`\AraxiPreps\Profiles\PrepsPrinerger`

2. Edit the file as appropriate:

| If you want to | Then |
|--|---|
| Set the default unit of measurement to millimetres | Search for the string -UNITS: and replace the number after the colon (:) with 3 . For example: -UNITS:3 |
| Set the default job to be PDF > PDF | Search for the string -DEFAULT_JOB_KIND: and replace the number after the colon (:) with 2 . For example: -DEFAULT_JOB_KIND:2 |
| Set the punch mark on by default | Search for the string -PUNCHMARK: and replace the number after the colon (:) with YES . For example: -PUNCHMARK:YES |

Edit Imposition dialog box

Imposition Name

Displays the name of the imposition you selected. Read-only.

Select an imposition application

| If you are creating an imposition from a template... | Then... |
|---|---|
| That needs to be modified using an external imposition application, such as Preps. | Select Use External Imposition Application . Then, in the Select an imposition application box, select the software you want to use. Note: If no applications appear on the list, this means that none have been set up. This is done using the Configure Imposition Applications option from the Tools menu. Note: If the application requires a license and is licensed, the application name appears in bold text. |
| That does not need to be modified using an external imposition application and if you have the Preps Integration option Automated Imposition . | Select Prinerdy Signature Selection . |

Notes: Signature Selection works in Preps 5 mode, while the rest of Prinerdy works in Preps 6 mode. This means that:

- It is not possible to edit Preps 6 jobs that use come-and-go, cut-and-stack, or multi-binding styles with Signature Selection. If you try to

edit an imposition that uses one of these binding styles, the **Use Prinerger Signature Selection** option will not be available in the Edit Imposition dialog. Instead, you will be able to select **Use External Layout Imposition Applications** to launch Preps 6.

- There is a difference in the way that Preps 5 and 6 display cut-and-stack and come-and-go jobs. In Preps 6, cut-and-stack jobs are shown as multiple webs, and come-and-go jobs are shown as multiple sections. In Prinerger Workshop, such jobs are displayed in the Preps 6 format, while in Signature Selection, they are displayed in the Preps 5 format. This is just a difference in display: the page assignment is correct and the imposition will print correctly.

Import Imposition Using Process Template

Displays the default process template for importing the imposition from the imposition software to Prinerger Workshop.

If you want to change the process template for importing, click **Select**.

Export Imposition Using Process Template

Displays the default process template for exporting the imposition from Prinerger Workshop to the imposition software. When you create or edit an imposition, you can change this process template in the New Imposition or Edit Imposition dialog boxes.

If you want to change the process template for exporting, click **Select**.

Import Type

When you print and send an imposition in Preps, or save an imposition in Pandora, the imposition is brought into Prinerger using the import process template. You can choose the type of import:

- **Automatic Import**—Starts the import process automatically. With automatic import of imposition information, the only import template option allowed is **Keep existing page set and imposition**.
- **Manual Import**—Opens a Start Process dialog box where you can edit the import process template, choosing any import options appropriate for your job.
- **Versioned Import**

New Imposition dialog box

Imposition Name

Type the name for the imposition.

Select an imposition application

| If you are creating an imposition from a template... | Then... |
|---|---|
| That needs to be modified using an external imposition application, such as Preps. | Select Use External Imposition Application . Then, in the Select an imposition application box, select the software you want to use. Note: If no applications appear on the list, this means that none have been set up. This is done using the Configure Imposition Applications option from the Tools menu. Note: If the application requires a license and is licensed, the application name appears in bold text. |
| That does not need to be modified using an external imposition application and if you have the Preps Integration option Automated Imposition . | Select Prinerger Signature Selection . |

Notes: Signature Selection works in Preps 5 mode, while the rest of Prinerger works in Preps 6 mode. This means that:

- It is not possible to edit Preps 6 jobs that use come-and-go, cut-and-stack, or multi-binding styles with Signature Selection. If you try to edit an imposition that uses one of these binding styles, the **Use Prinerger Signature Selection** option will not be available in the Edit Imposition dialog. Instead, you will be able to select **Use External Layout Imposition Applications** to launch Preps 6.
- There is a difference in the way that Preps 5 and 6 display cut-and-stack and come-and-go jobs. In Preps 6, cut-and-stack jobs are shown as multiple webs, and come-and-go jobs are shown as multiple sections. In Prinerger Workshop, such jobs are displayed in the Preps 6 format, while in Signature Selection, they are displayed in the Preps 5 format. This is just a difference in display: the page assignment is correct and the imposition will print correctly.

Import Imposition Using Process Template

Displays the default process template for importing the imposition from the imposition software to Prinergy Workshop.

If you want to change the process template for importing, click **Select**.

Export Imposition Using Process Template

Displays the default process template for exporting the imposition from Prinergy Workshop to the imposition software. When you create or edit an imposition, you can change this process template in the New Imposition or Edit Imposition dialog boxes.

If you want to change the process template for exporting, click **Select**.

Import Type

When you print and send an imposition in Preps, or save an imposition in Pandora, the imposition is brought into Prinergy using the import process template. You can choose the type of import:

- **Automatic Import**—Starts the import process automatically. With automatic import of imposition information, the only import template option allowed is **Keep existing page set and imposition**.
- **Manual Import**—Opens a Start Process dialog box where you can edit the import process template, choosing any import options appropriate for your job.
- **Versioned Import**

New Imposition Details dialog box

Imposition Name

Populates with the imposition name you typed in the New Imposition dialog box.

Create New Page Set

Select this option to create a new page set in Prinergy Workshop that is based on the new imposition plan.

By default, the page set is given the same name as the imposition plan, although you can change its name in the **Name** box.

Name

Displays the name of the page set. You can change the name as desired.

This option is available only when you select **Create New Page Set**.

Prefix

Displays the letter that will be used to identify the page positions in the new page set. You can change the prefix by typing up to five alphanumeric characters. The prefix must not end with a number.

This option is available only when you select **Create New Page Set**.

Number of Pages

The number of pages in the page set. Type the number of pages in this box and the system will dynamically update the **From** box. Alternatively, you can let the system automatically calculate the number of pages based on the **To** and **From** boxes.

This option is available only when you select **Create New Page Set**.

From

The first page set position number. You can change the number as desired.

This option is available only when you select **Create New Page Set**.

To

The last page set position number. You can change the number as desired. The system dynamically updates the **Number of Pages** box.

This option is available only when you select **Create New Page Set**.

Use Existing Page Set

Links the new imposition plan to an existing page set in the job. Select this option and, from the list, select an existing page set to which the imposition plan will be linked. Select a page set with the same number of page set positions as the new imposition plan.

This option is available only when the job contains an existing page set. If there is an existing page set, this option is selected automatically and the first page set in the list is selected.

Note: When you select this option, the page assignments in the new imposition plan will overwrite the page assignments in the existing page set. If you do not want to overwrite the page set assignments, select **Create New Page Set** instead.

Options area

Use existing Preps Job

Select to import an existing Preps job. Browse to and select the .job file.

Note: Signature Selection does not support import of Preps 6 jobs with come-and-go or cut-and-stack binding styles. When creating a new imposition, if you select **Use existing Preps job** and select a Preps 6 jobs with a come-and-go or cut-and-stack binding style, an error message appears. You have the choice of selecting a different job file or using an external imposition application to create the imposition.

Binding Style

Select the binding style to show in the **Available Templates** area, only those imposition templates with the same binding style.

Available Signatures

Navigate to and select the imposition that you want from this area. Once you have clicked the desired imposition, click **Add**.

Alternatively, click **Auto Select** to have Prinergy select impositions that provide the correct number of pages. With **Auto Select**, Prinergy first selects the largest full signature in the template that can accommodate the number of pages in the job. The job pages automatically flow through that signature as many times as needed, and then any remaining pages flow through a partial signature in the template, if available and depending on its position in the selected signatures list. If not, the remaining pages flow through the full signature and blank pages are automatically added, as needed.

Trim Size

Displays the trim size of the selected signature.

Sheet Size

Displays the sheet size of the selected signature.

Device

Select the final output device on which this output is eventually to be printed.

First Page Number in Next Signature

Type the first page number that you want the next signature to start at.

Target Device

Select the device to which you want to associate all selected signatures.

When you associate a signature with a device, you are setting various configuration output attributes for the signature. For information about configuration output attributes that you can set for each device, see the Preps Guide.

Selected Signatures

Displays the signatures that you have selected. You can also edit the **Signature Number** column and the **Page** column.

Use the following buttons to modify the selected signature order and delete selected signatures: **Move Up** **Move Down**, and **Delete**.

Use the **Renumber** button to automatically renumber the signatures after you rearrange them and reset the starting page. This button overrides any locked numbers.

Shingling (Creep)

Type the amount of shingling that you want to apply in order to compensate for page creep. Positive values move the image area toward the binding edge of the page; negative values move the image away from the binding edge of the page. You can specify either an **Inner** amount or an **Outer** amount, or both.

Inner amount

- For perfect-bound or come-and-go template, the Inner amount is applied to the innermost pages of each signature. The specified amounts are applied to the largest signatures of the job, and shingling on any smaller signatures is scaled back so that all signatures match each other after binding.
- For saddle-stitched template, the Inner amount is applied to the innermost pages of the book.

Outer amount

- Corresponding to the Inner amount rules, the Outer amount is applied to the outermost pages.

The shingling amounts are distributed evenly to the remaining pages (based on the total number of pages and the template binding style).

Background: Page creep occurs when a signature is folded and the image area of the inside pages of a signature extend slightly beyond the image area of the outside pages. The amount of creep is affected by the number of folds and by paper thickness. In perfect-bound jobs, creep is limited to the pages in each individual signature. In saddle-stitched jobs, each folded signature is placed inside another folded signature, causing the inside signature to extend a bit farther than the signature inside which it is placed.

Calculating Shingling Amounts

Calculate the amount of shingling to compensate for creep in a job. There are two methods of calculating shingling amounts: using an approximate formula, and using the exact method.

Approximate formula: $(\text{number of sheets} / 4) \times \text{stock thickness}$

Notes: The value you use for the number of sheets depends on the binding type:

- If perfect bound, this refers to pages per signature
- If saddle-stitched, this is pages per entire book

The value of stock thickness is measured in microns. You can use a micrometer to determine this or use the measurement value provided by the paper supplier.

Exact method:

1. Make a folding dummy using the same kind of paper and the same folding equipment you plan to use for the job.
2. Measure the amount of creep with a precise instrument.
3. Measure the difference between the outer edge (face) of the outermost page and the outer edge of the innermost page.

Next, apply the shingling amounts

1. In the **New Imposition** dialog box, select **Prinergy Signature Selection** and select **OK**.
2. In the **New Imposition Details** dialog box, type the inner and/or outer shingling amounts.

Bleed Margin Default

Type the default size of bleed margins which is the distance you want the bleed to extend on all sides beyond the page trim box for all pages. Prinergy will not apply a bleed margin if no bleed margin is specified.

Note: Bleeds are automatically cut off at the gutter fold lines.

You may want to decrease the bleed margin default if the actual press sheet is physically shorter than its defined size in order to prevent bleeding off the back edge of the sheet. Also, it is a good idea to increase bleed margins if a job has severe creep due to thick stock, in order to compensate for any shingling that moves the image area of the inner signature towards the binding.

Note: The unit of measurement is specified in the Preferences dialog box.

Start Imposition Application dialog box

Imposition Name

This list includes the imposition applications you configured using the Configure Imposition Application Tool, except Pandora. Choose an imposition application from the list and click **OK**.

If you added Pandora in the Configure Imposition Application dialog box, you can start Pandora by performing either of the following actions:

- From the **File** menu, select **Create New Imposition** .
- Switch to the **Signatures** view of Job Manager. In the Imposition Plans pane, double-click an imposition.

Preps Ganging

Preps Ganging and Prinergy

The Preps Ganging software creates ganged layouts of different-sized pages to optimize press sheet usage. You can use Preps Ganging integrated with Prinergy or as stand-alone software.

Using Preps Ganging integrated with Prinergy has these benefits:

- Users can view the same resources (templates, marks, profiles, and printers) on all client computers.
- Prinergy can automatically import the imposition file after you print it to JDF in Preps Ganging.

Using stand-alone Preps Ganging, you must manually import the imposition into Prinergy after you print it to JDF or PJTF.

Licenses

To use Preps Ganging integrated with Prinergy, for best results, use Preps 6.0 or later. Preps 5 and earlier are no longer tested or supported.

To use stand-alone Preps Ganging, you need a Preps Pro license.

To import the ganged layout (populated PJTF or JDF) into Prinergy, you need an Import Populated Job Ticket license in Prinergy.

Using Preps Ganging integrated with Prinergy

Before you can use Preps Ganging integrated with Prinergy, you must set the Preps Ganging software location for Prinergy. After the Preps Ganging location is set, you can perform the following tasks:

- Create a Preps Ganging layout (integrated with Prinergy)
- Edit a Preps Ganging layout (integrated with Prinergy)

Note: When using Preps Ganging integrated with Prinergy, printing to JDF is preferred. Printing to JDF preserves the ability to edit your imposition in Preps after it has been imported into Prinergy.

Tip: If you run Preps Pro 5.3.2 or later on a Mac, you can use the AutoGang feature to configure Preps Ganging and Prinergy to automatically create a ganged job. See the topic about automating creation of a ganged job.

Using stand-alone Preps Ganging

If you want to use stand-alone Preps Ganging, you create a populated or unpopulated PJTF or JDF imposition file in Preps Ganging, and then import the file into your Prinergy job. If you are creating an unpopulated layout file, you use placeholders in Preps Ganging.

Note: If you create a populated layout file in Preps Ganging and the imposed PDF files are on the Prinerger server, (and for Mac computers, if your shares are mounted as SMB), Prinerger automatically adds your PDF files to the **Input Files** list when you import the PJTF or JDF into your Prinerger job.

Tip: Using Rules-Based Automation, you can create a rule to refine pages when input files are added.

Setting the Preps Ganging software location

Before you can use Preps Ganging integrated with Prinerger, you must add the Preps Ganging software to Prinerger.

Requirements:

In a Mac environment, for best results, mount your network shares using the SMB file service.

1. In Prinerger Administrator, check your Import JTP to ensure that **Import Populated Job Ticket** is selected.
2. Add Preps Ganging to your Workshop Imposition Application list:
 - a. Click **Tools > Configure Imposition Applications**.
 - b. Click **Add** and browse to the Preps application folder and select `PrepsGanging.exe` in Windows or `Preps Ganging.app` on a Mac.
 - c. Under the **Application Type** column, click **Preps Ganging**.
 - d. Click **Done**.

Creating a layout with integrated Preps Ganging

Create a layout using Preps Ganging integrated with Prinerger in order to have Prinerger automatically import the layout.

1. Refine your files and create a populated page set in your Prinerger job.
2. In Job Manager, click **File > Create New Imposition**.
3. In the New Imposition dialog box, in the **Imposition Name** box, type an imposition name.
4. Click **Use External Imposition Application**.
5. In the **Select an imposition application** box, select **Preps Ganging**, and click **OK**.
6. In the New Imposition Details dialog box, in the **Use Existing Page Set** box, select your populated page set, and click **OK**.
7. In the Preps Ganging software, assign your media, stock, and marks and arrange your pages as needed on your press sheet.

The number of pages on your layout must match the total number of pages in your populated page set. For more information about Preps Ganging procedures, see the Preps Ganging documentation.

8. From Preps Ganging, select **File > Print**.
9. In the **Send to** list, select **JDF**.

Note: You can output a PJTF file that includes the Print Production Format (PPF) tags for a cutter. However, outputting to PJTF prevents you from editing the imposition in Preps after it has been imported into Prinergy. See the Preps documentation.

10. In the **Device** list, select an output device if you didn't select a media earlier.
11. Specify a **Print Range**, if required.
12. Click **Print**. You can now close Preps Ganging and save the Preps .job file if required.
For a new imposition, Preps creates the imposition file (PJTF or JDF) and marks files, and Prinergy automatically imports the imposition file and PDF marks files.

The imported Preps Ganging imposition files are saved in the `<job folder>\System\ImpositionPlans` folder. The Preps job, PJTF/JDF, and marks files are saved in the `<job folder>\TransientLayouts\<client computer name>` folder.

Editing a layout with integrated Preps Ganging

Edit a layout using Preps Ganging integrated with Prinergy in order to have Prinergy automatically import the layout.

Note: You can edit Preps Ganging layouts using this procedure with Preps Classic or Preps Ganging.

1. In Job Manager, go to the **Signatures** view.
2. In the Imposition Plans pane, double-click the imposition that you want to edit, or click **Edit > Edit Imposition**.
3. In the Edit Imposition dialog box, if more than one installation of the Preps software is configured, in the **Select an imposition application** box, select the Preps software that you want to use.
4. In the **Import Type** list, select **Manual Import**, and click **OK**.
The Preps software opens.
5. Make the necessary changes to your layout. The number of pages must be kept the same as in your page set.
6. In Preps/Preps Ganging, select **File > Print**.
7. In the **Send to** list, select **JDF**.

Note: You can output a PJTF file that includes the PPF tags for a cutter. However, outputting to PJTF prevents you from editing the imposition in Preps after it has been imported into Prinergy. For more information, see the Preps documentation.

8. In the **Device** list, select an output device if you didn't select a media earlier.
9. Specify a **Print Range**, if required.

10. Click **Print**. You can now close Preps Ganging and save the Preps .job file if required.
11. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit Process Template**.
12. In the **Import** section of the process template, in the **If Page Set Already Exists** box, select **Delete existing page set and imposition**, because the page set may have changed after ganging. The edited imposition plan is imported. A new page set with the new number of page positions and the imposition plan is created, replacing the previous one.

Automating creation of a ganged job

Configure an automated workflow in which you add PDF input files to a quantity-based subfolder within an AutoGang hot folder, and the files are automatically ganged to a new layout and imported into a new Prinerger job.

Requirements:

You require the following:

- Prinerger client computer running the Mac OS (to use the AutoGang feature in Preps)
- Preps Pro 5.3.2 or later floating license (to use the AutoGang feature in Preps)
- Prinerger Import Populated Job Ticket license (to import the ganged layout)
- Prinerger Rules-Based Automation license (optional; to automatically refine files)

Note: A quantity-based subfolder is folder that groups content by run-length. For example, if a customer typically orders 500 copies, then you need to create a quantity folder called 500 to collect the input files.

The Prinerger job is created with same name as the ganged output file. The ganged output file is named after the date and time that the file was created, and the name of the AutoGang hot folder used to create the file: <YYMMDDHHmm_nn_HotFolderName>, where <nn> represents the incremented file ID number.

Important: After the layout is created in Prinerger, ensure that you open the Preps Ganging software from Prinerger Workshop and check the generated layouts before saving and printing the Prinerger job.

This procedure provides summarized steps. For more details, see the Preps Ganging Guide and the Prinerger Workshop User Guide.

1. [Creating an import process template with APA enabled](#)
Create an import process template that will automatically assign pages on import.
2. [Creating a template job with hot folders](#)

Create a template job with hot folders that will import and assign pages.

3. [Creating a smart hot folder to create Prinergy jobs](#)
Create a smart hot folder to create Prinergy jobs.
4. [Creating an RBA rule to refine input files](#)
Create an RBA rule to automatically refine input files and enable it for the template job.
5. [Creating a Preps Ganging hot folder](#)
Create a hot folder in Preps Ganging to output a ganged layout to the Prinergy smart hot folder.

Creating an import process template with APA enabled

Create an import process template that will automatically assign pages on import.

1. In Prinergy Workshop, create a new import process template.
2. On the **Import** tab, click **Set Initial Separations After Imposition Import** and **Do Auto Page Assignment After Unpopulated Imposition Import**.
3. Save this process template with a name such as `ImportAll-APA`.

Creating a template job with hot folders

Create a template job with hot folders that will import and assign pages.

1. In Prinergy Workshop, in Job Finder, create a new job (or find an existing job) to use as a template job.
Important: You should select a job or create one in a location that will not be removed or destroyed.
2. With the template job open in Job Manager, select **Job > Manage Hot Folders** and follow these steps:
 - a. In the Manage Hot Folders dialog box, click **Add**.
 - b. In the Create Hot folder for Job dialog box, click **Add and Process Files**.
 - c. In the **Workflow Processors** list, navigate to and select the `ImportAll-APA` process template, and click **OK**.
 - d. In the Manage Hot folders dialog box, click **Close**.

Creating a smart hot folder to create Prinerger jobs

Create a smart hot folder to create Prinerger jobs.

1. In Prinerger Workshop, select **Tools > Smart Hot Folder Manager**.
2. In the Smart Hot Folder Manager, click **Add**.
3. In the Add Smart Hot Folder dialog box, in the **Smart Hot Folder Name** box, type a name for the smart hot folder, for example, `Preps Ganging Import`.
4. In the **Smart Hot Folder Location** box, perform one of the following steps:
 - Click **Browse** and navigate to a location that is a convenient place for you to drop the Preps Ganging output file.
 - Click **Use Default Location**.
Note: On installation, the default location is the `Jobs \SmartHotFolders` folder on the Prinerger server.
5. Under **Hot Folder Type**, click **Job Creator**.
6. In the **Create a new job based on the job template** box, click **Browse**. In the Select Template Job dialog box, perform the following steps:
 - a. Navigate to and select the template job with hot folders that you created in [Creating a template job with hot folders](#) on page 1084.
 - b. Under **Copy from Selected Job**, ensure that the **Hot Folders** check box is selected, and click **OK**.
7. In the left-hand pane, click **Source and Target Patterns**.
8. In the **Source File Name Pattern** box, type `[$GangJob] . [%ext]`
9. In **Target Group**, click **Browse**, and select the location to which the newly created jobs should go.
10. In the **Target Job Name Pattern** box, type `[$GangJob]`
11. In the left-hand pane, click **File Move Rules**, and follow these steps:
 - a. Under the table, click **Add**.
 - b. Under **Source File Name Pattern**, click **Use Smart Hot Folders Source Pattern**.
 - c. Under **Target File Name Pattern**, clear the **Rename files** check box.
 - d. Click the **Move to Job Hot Folder** option. From the list, select the import process template that was created in the job hot folder in [Creating an import process template with APA enabled](#) on page 1084, and click **OK**.

Creating an RBA rule to refine input files

Create an RBA rule to automatically refine input files and enable it for the template job.

This procedure is part of automating the creation of a ganged job using Preps Ganging.

1. In Prinergy Workshop, select **Tools > Rule Set Manager**.
2. Click the **New Rule Set** button.
3. In Rule Builder, under **Events**, drag **Input File Added** to the right pane.
4. Under **Actions**, drag **Refine Input File** to the box following **Input File Added**.
5. Edit the **Rule Parameters** to define the **Process Template Path** to your refine processing.
6. Save this rule with a name such as `InputFileAdded_RefinePages`.
7. Enable this rule for the template job you previously created in [Creating a template job with hot folders](#) on page [1084](#).

Creating a Preps Ganging hot folder

Create a hot folder in Preps Ganging to output a ganged layout to the Prinergy smart hot folder.

For more information and details about automatic ganging, see the *Preps 5.3.2 AutoGang* technical bulletin.

1. In Preps Ganging, click **Preps Ganging > Preferences > AutoGang** tab, and set the **Root Hot Folder** to a location on your Prinergy server.
Note: You can define only one root hot folder path for use by all profiles. The default and custom profiles derive your AutoGang presets, hot folder settings, and a single root folder path from a special configuration file called `AutoGanging.cfg`.
2. Complete the Preps Ganging Hot Folder set up dialog box, selecting the output type and location:
 - **Output Type:** **JDF** (or **PJTF** if required)
 - Output ganged layouts to `<Smart hot folder path>` as set in [Creating a smart hot folder to create Prinergy jobs](#) on page [1085](#).
3. In the Finder, add PDF files to the hot folder.
4. If you set the hot folder to print manually, you can start Preps Ganging and review the layouts before clicking **Print**. Otherwise, if the hot folder is set to print automatically, your files will be moved to the Prinergy smart hot folder.

Imposition software

About integrating imposition software

Prinerger supports the integration of the following imposition software:

- **Preps**—Prinerger offers four Preps integration options. See [Preps integration options](#) on page 1059.

Preps is Kodak imposition software for double-sided commercial products such as books, magazines, flyers, trading cards, business cards, and so on.

- **Pandora**—Full, round-trip access to Pandora is supported in Prinerger. This means you can start Pandora from within Prinerger, and use Pandora features. It also enables Prinerger to automatically import Pandora files after you save and close the Pandora imposition. If you created a new imposition, Prinerger automatically creates a new page set and assigns the pages to the page set and imposition. For more information, see the *Pandora with Prinerger User Guide*.

Pandora is signature software for single-sided packaging products such as folding cartons and labels.

- **Heidelberg Prinect Signa Station**—You can import impositions from Prinect Signa Station using the PJTF and JDF file formats. Note that Kodak does not test this integration, so testing is encouraged prior to upgrading.

Prinect Signa Station is Heidelberg's imposition software for commercial products.

Accessing the imposition software

After you integrate the imposition software, you can access it in the following ways:

- Select **File > Create New Imposition**.
- Select **Edit > Edit Imposition**.
- Double-click the imposition in the **Signatures** view
- Select **Tools > Start Imposition Application** (Not available with automatic Preps integration option.) See [Opening Preps outside of job context](#) on page 1070.

Overview of tasks for integrating imposition software

- Perform the following tasks as appropriate to the imposition software that you are integrating.

| If you are integrating | Use the Configure Imposition Applications dialog box to |
|--|---|
| Preps —Any integration option (see Preps Integration Options) | <p>For full details, see <i>Setting up integrated Preps</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Create and set the default import process template. <p>Note: Prinerger automatically searches a default location for Preps software licenses.</p> |
| Preps start-only option (see About Preps Integration Options) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set the imposition software location. <p>Note: With this option, you must import Preps files manually.</p> |
| Pandora | <p>For full details, see the <i>Pandora with Prinerger User Guide</i>.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Set the imposition software location. b. Create and set the default import process template. c. Create and set the default export process template. |
| Heidelberg Prinect Signa Station | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set the imposition software location. <p>Note: Not all versions of Signa Station are qualified. For the most current information, contact a service representative.</p> |

See also:

[Preps integration options](#) on page 1059

[Setting the imposition software location](#) on page 1088

[Create an Export process template for impositions](#) on page 1089

[Create an Import process template for impositions](#) on page 1089

Setting the imposition software location

Use this procedure to integrate imposition software into Prinerger. For background information, see Overview of Procedures for Integrating Imposition Software.

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Configure Imposition Applications**.
2. In the Configure Imposition Applications dialog box, click **Add**.

Note: If you are configuring Pandora on a Windows operating system, select **RunPandora.exe** (not **Pandora.exe**).
3. Locate and select the executable file for the software, and then click **Open**.
4. Click **Application Type**, and then in the list, select the software.

Tip: To delete the integrated software, in the **Application Name** area of the Configure Imposition Applications dialog box, select the software, and click **Delete**.

Create an Export process template for impositions

The export process exports pages and imposition files from Prinergy Workshop into the configured imposition application.

By default, the export process creates a new version of a file if the destination location already has a file with the same name. For editing impositions, we recommend that you overwrite existing files so that there is only one version of them in the configured imposition application.

1. Follow the steps in creating a process template, making sure that you:
 - Choose an **Export** process template as a base.
 - (Recommended) Select **Overwrite Existing Files With Same Name**.
2. From the **Tools** menu, select **Configure Imposition Applications**.
3. Click **Select** next to **Export Imposition Using Process Template** and select the process template from Step 1.

Create an Import process template for impositions

The import process imports new or edited impositions back into Prinergy.

1. Follow the steps in creating a process template, making sure that you:
 - Choose an **Import** process template as a base.
 - In the **Import** section, in the **If Page Set Already Exists** list, choose whether to overwrite previous versions of the same imposition in Prinergy Workshop:

| To | Do This |
|---|--|
| Overwrite previous versions (Recommended) | Select Delete existing page set and imposition |
| Create separate versions | Select Create alternate page set and imposition |

2. From the **Tools** menu, select **Configure Imposition Applications**.
3. Click **Select** next to **Import Imposition Using Process Template** and select the process template from Step 1.

Creating or editing Pandora impositions

Requirements:

Before using the imposition software for the first time, configure the imposition software.

If you have a Pandora integration license, you can create and edit Pandora impositions through Prinergy Workshop. The license allows for the automatic transfer of files between the imposition software and a Prinergy Workshop job.

For more information, see the *Pandora with Prinergy User Guide*.

1. In **Job Manager**, perform the following as appropriate:

| To | Do this |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Create a new imposition | From the File menu, select Create New Imposition . The New Imposition dialog box appears. |
| Edit an existing imposition | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Switch to the Signatures view. b. In the Imposition Plans pane, double-click the imposition you want to edit, or click Edit > Edit Imposition. The Edit Imposition dialog box appears. |

2. If you are creating an imposition, in the **Imposition Name** box, enter an imposition name.
Otherwise, the box is read-only.
3. If more than one imposition software is configured, in the **Select an imposition application** box, select the software you want to use.
4. If you do not want to use the default import or export process template, click **Select** accordingly, and select the process template that you want.
5. In the **Import Type** list, leave the default at **Automatic**.
Select **Manual** only if you want to edit the import process template.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Perform the following as appropriate:

| If you are | Do this |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Creating a new imposition | In the New Imposition Details dialog box, in Imposition Name , type the imposition name. |
| Editing an existing imposition | Go to step 9. |

8. Perform the following as appropriate:

| If you want to | Then |
|--------------------------|--|
| Use an existing page set | Select Use Existing Page Set and select the page set from the list. Click OK . |
| Create a new page set | Select Create New Page Set and specify the name, prefix, and number of pages for the imposition. Click OK . |

9. In Pandora, modify the imposition as needed.
For more information, see the Pandora documentation.
10. Save and close the imposition.
Prinerger automatically imports the imposition into the Prinerger Workshop job.
11. If your imposition fails to import automatically because of a system failure, manually import the job ticket from Pandora.

Configure Imposition Applications dialog box

Add

Select to browse to the file that will launch the software.

The software name will appear in the **Application Name** area, along with the job ticket versions supported.

Reload

Select to update the dialog box with changes.

Delete

Select this to remove the file that will launch the software.

Auto Detect

Select to find all Preps imposition software licenses at the default installation location.

Any Preps software licenses that are found appear in the **Application Name** area.

If any previously configured imposition software is moved from the default installation location, the previously configured software appears in red in the **Application Name** area when you click the **Auto Detect** button. Reconfigure Prinerger to point to the imposition application in the new location.

Default Export Process Template

Select a default process template used to export the imposition from Prinerger Workshop into the imposition software.

When you create or edit an imposition, the process template that you select here appears in the New Imposition or Edit Imposition dialog boxes. In those dialog boxes, you can accept the default process template or change it.

Default Import Process Template

Select a default process template used to import the imposition from the imposition software into Prinerger Workshop.

When you create or edit an imposition, the process template that you select here appears in the New Imposition or Edit Imposition dialog boxes. In those dialog boxes, you can accept the default process template or change it.

Prepress Portal

About integrating with Prepress Portal

Prepress Portal software is a web portal that lets printers and their customers work with print jobs over the Internet. Prepress Portal helps manage reviews and approvals of each page in a job.

You make jobs available for customers to review by setting AutoProcess rules in Prepress Portal, creating the job in Prepress Portal and uploading files to it. The processed pages are immediately available to the customer for review and approval, and an e-mail notification goes to the customer.

Important: You can make a job available to Prepress Portal customers by web-enabling it in Prinergy Workshop (see Enabling Web Access), but the customer will not receive automatic e-mail notification. You must find another way to contact them.

Customers can use Prepress Portal to:

- Create and delete jobs. See About Creating and Controlling Jobs in Prepress Portal.
- Exchange files. See About the Location of Files from Prepress Portal.
- View page sets and signatures in Job Manager.
- Review and annotate pages using Smart Review.
- Review the color conformance of pages.
- Approve, reject, or request corrections to pages. See About Approvals.
- View the status and history of jobs, and enter job codes.

Both you and your customers automatically receive e-mail messages when actions take place, such as when you request a review. These e-mail messages are configured in Prepress Portal.

See also:

[Job management](#) on page [96](#)

[About approvals](#) on page [771](#)

[About approval statuses and Prepress Portal](#) on page [1093](#)

[About the location of files from Prepress Portal](#) on page [1093](#)

[About creating and controlling jobs in Prepress Portal](#) on page [1094](#)

[Job workflow with Prepress Portal](#) on page [1095](#)

[Enabling web access for customers with Prepress Portal](#) on page [1096](#)

About approval statuses and Prepress Portal

Here is a summary of the approval statuses and their meaning:

| Status | Meaning |
|---|--|
| No status (Prinerger) / Work In Progress (Prepress Portal) | No status has been set, or a Prinerger cleared the status. |
| Approval Not Required | A Prinerger user selected this setting to indicate the page will not be reviewed. |
| Approval Requested (Prinerger) / Approval Required (Prepress Portal) | A Prinerger user selected this setting to enable Prepress Portal users to review and approve the page. |
| Approval in Progress | A Prepress Portal user has reviewed the page, but not approved it. |
| Waiting for Correction | A Prinerger user selects this setting to indicate that corrections are in progress. |
| Approved | A Prepress Portal user has approved the page. |
| Rejected | A Prepress Portal user has rejected the page. |

About the location of files from Prepress Portal

Files that are uploaded to Prepress Portal are stored in three folders inside each job folder.

WebAnnotatedProofs

The `WebAnnotatedProofs` folder contains files that users of Prepress Portal have reviewed and annotated. Users of Prepress Portal do not need to place the files there; the files appear automatically in the folder.

This folder is a core part of the review process. You need to get files from this folder any time a customer annotates a file and requests corrections.

WebDownloads

The `WebDownloads` folder contains files for users of Prepress Portal to download. When you place files in this folder, they display in Prepress Portal and users can retrieve them.

This folder is optional. You should upload pages for review and approval in Prepress Portal to ensure that customers receive e-mail notification.

WebUploads

When customers use the upload feature of Prepress Portal, the files appear in the `WebUploads` folder. Each upload in Prepress Portal creates a separate subfolder inside the `WebUploads` folder.

This folder is optional. You do not need it to receive input files from a customer. Users of Prepress Portal automatically add input files when they create a job in Prepress Portal.

The files in this folder are automatically processed in Prinergy, based on the `AutoProcess` rules set in Prepress Portal.

About creating and controlling jobs in Prepress Portal

Users of Prepress Portal can add, delete, and change jobs and pre-jobs.

Adding jobs or pre-jobs

Customers can create new jobs from Prepress Portal. The result has different names in Prepress Portal than in Prinergy:

- It is called a **Pre-Production** job in Prepress Portal.
- It is called pre-job in Prinergy, which is visible only in the **Pre-Jobs** view of Job Manager and has a status of **Created**

Changing jobs or pre-jobs

Customers can use Prepress Portal to make jobs into pre-jobs and vice versa:

- When customers make a **Pre-Production** job into a **Production** job in Prepress Portal, they make a pre-job into a job in Prinergy.
- When customers make a **Production** job into a **Pre-Production** job in Prepress Portal, they make a job into a pre-job in Prinergy.

Deleting jobs or pre-jobs

Customers can use Prepress Portal to delete jobs. They can delete only a **Pre-Production** job in Prepress Portal, which is a pre-job in Prinergy. They cannot delete a **Production** job in Prepress Portal, which is a job in Prinergy.

Job workflow with Prepress Portal

1. In Prepress Portal software, the customer creates a job, which appears as a Pre-Production job in Prepress Portal and as a pre-job with a status of **Created** in Prinerger Workshop.
2. In Prepress Portal, the customer adds input files using any one of many methods available.
For information, see the Prepress Portal documentation.
3. In Prepress Portal, the customer promotes the Pre-Production job (which is a pre-job in Prinerger) to a Production job (which is a job in Prinerger).
4. In Prinerger Workshop, you process the input files into pages.

Tip: You can increase the display speed of PDFs in Prepress Portal by generating alternate low-resolution images which are used when customers open the PDFs in Prepress Portal. To do this, in the **Optimize** section of the refine process template, under **Color & Grayscale Alternate Images**, select **Generate**.

5. To review files, perform these action:
 - a. In Prepress Portal, upload the processed input files and set the status of each page to **Request Approval**.
Note: You can set the customer approval status of each page to **Approval Requested** in Prinerger Workshop, but the customer will not receive an InSite email notification unless you have set up a rule in Prinerger Rules-Based Automation.
 - b. In Prepress Portal, the customer reviews the pages, annotates, approves, or rejects them, and requests correction of annotated pages.
 - c. Make the corrections as needed.
 - d. In Prinerger Workshop, reprocess the files.
 - e. Repeat steps 5a to 5d above until all the customer approves all of the pages.

From this point, you complete the job as usual.

Enabling web access for customers with Prepress Portal

Note: Before enabling web access for any job, you must set up InSite Administration.

1. Either create a new job or change an existing job by doing one of the following:
 - To enable web access while creating a new job, follow the steps in Creating Jobs and Pre-Jobs. While you are in the Create New Job dialog box, select the **Job Attributes** check box.
 - To enable web access for existing jobs or pre-jobs, select one or more jobs or pre-jobs in Job Finder. Then, from the **Edit** menu, select **Edit Job Attributes**.
2. In the Edit Job Attributes dialog box, select the **Enable Web Access** check box.
3. In the Select Web Access Customer dialog box, select the customer in the list.
4. Click **OK**, and then **OK**.

The jobs or pre-jobs are now visible to the customer in Prepress Portal.

Select Web Access Customer dialog box

The list displays customers that have been set up in Prepress Portal. Select a customer and click **OK**.

Prinergy Business Link

About integrating with Prinergy Business Link

If you have Business Link software set up to work with Prinergy, you can track processes by work type. You can also switch users without logging off of Prinergy Workshop.

Work types

If you have Business Link software set up to work with Prinergy, the Start Process dialog box displays a **Work Type** list. Users can select a work type from the list for each process that they run.

Work types capture the reason why work is being done, such as regular work, alterations, or rework.

You typically select a predefined work type, but you can also customize work types on a per-job basis. For each custom work type, you can type the name of the person who approved the work type and a description, such as a why, when, and how the change request was

made. For example, "customer sent new image" or "based on customer e-mail March 23".

Prinerger automatically sends this processing information to Business Link, where it is used in Business Link reports or forwarded to a MIS (management information system).

Switching users

If you have Business Link software set up to work with Prinerger, the Connect to Server dialog box displays an **Enable User Switching** check box when you log on.

Selecting this check box enables the **Tools > Change User** menu item that allows you to change the current user identity without restarting Prinerger Workshop. This is called switching users.

Use this option when multiple people use the same workstation to access Prinerger Workshop throughout a day, and they don't need their individual user properties. If users want to load their own user properties, such as user favorites or Prinerger Workshop preferences, they must restart Prinerger Workshop and log on with their user name.

Sending information to Business Link

Only use this procedure if you have Business Link software connected to the Prinerger system.

1. Start a process as usual.
2. When the Start Process dialog box appears, in the **Work Type** list, select the work type that best describes the type of work being performed.

Note: **Work Type** is available only when you start a process from Job Manager.

If you want to add or change a work type, see Customizing Work Types.

3. After you set other dialog box options, click **OK** to begin processing.

Customizing work types

Only use this procedure if you have Business Link software connected to the Prinerger system.

1. In the Start Process dialog box, click **Edit**.

Note: **Edit** is available only when you start a process from Job Manager, not from Job Finder.

2. In the Manage Work Types dialog box, in the **Category** list, select **Alteration Chargeable**, **Alteration Non Chargeable**, **Rework Chargeable**, or **Rework Non Chargeable**.
(You cannot customize the Regular or Original Work categories.)
3. Perform any of the following actions:

| To | Do This |
|---|---|
| Add a new item to the category | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click Add. b. In the Edit Work Type dialog box, type a Description and the First Name and Last Name of the person who has approved the addition of the item. c. Click OK. |
| Change an existing item in the category | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Select the item in the Items list, and click Modify. b. In the Edit Work Type dialog box, make your changes, and click OK. <p>Note: Some items cannot be modified.</p> |
| Remove an item from a category | Select the item in the Items box, and click Delete . |

Tip: Use the **Description** box to provide more information about why a change is being made. This could include the reason for the alteration or rework and when and how the change request was made. For example, an operator might type "Customer sent new image" or "Based on customer e-mail March 23".

4. Click **Close**.

The changes you make affect the **Work Type** list in the Start Process dialog box.

Manage Work Types dialog box

Category

Lists groups or categories of work types, such as **Non chargeable re-work**. The categories can be system defined or custom. You can add, edit, and delete the items in some categories, but not in all categories. For example, you cannot alter the **Regular or Original Work** category.

Items

Displays all of the work types in the category selected in the **Category** list. The items can be system defined or custom. You cannot modify or delete system-defined items. You can add, modify, or delete custom items.

Add

Click to add a custom item to the category selected in the **Category** list. This button is available only for some categories.

Modify

Click to modify a custom item selected in the **Items** list. This button is not available when you select a built-in item.

Delete

Click to delete a custom item selected in the **Items** list. This button is not available when you select a built-in item.

Edit Work Type dialog box

This dialog box applies only if you have Business Link software connected to the Prinerger system.

Description

Type a descriptive name for the work type that you are adding or changing.

Approved By

Type the first and last names of the person who authorized you to add or change the custom work type.

Switching users

Requirements:

This procedure is only available if you have Kodak Prinerger Business Link connected to the Prinerger system, and you have selected **Enable User Switching** in the Connect to Server dialog box.

1. From the **Tools** menu of any window, select **Change User**.
The Connect to Server dialog box appears.
2. In the **User name** box, type the new user name.
3. In the **Password** box, type the password for the new user name.
4. Click **Login**.

Tip: After you select **Change User**, you cannot cancel the operation. If you selected **Change User** and want to cancel it, enter your current user name and password again.

Connect to Server dialog box

This dialog box applies only if you have Business Link software connected to the Prinerger system and you are switching users.

User name

Enter the user name associated with your Prinerly Workshop account.

Password

Enter the password associated with your Prinerly Workshop account.

Creative software

About opening files in other software

You can open and edit files in other software from within Prinerly Workshop. You can open and edit:

- Input files
- Refined PDF pages that are not assigned to a page set or imposition
- Refined PDF pages that are assigned to a page set or imposition

You first need to configure the list of other software so that Prinerly knows where the software is located.

Configuring the list of other software

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open File With** and then select **Edit List**.

Tip: You can also right-click the input file to select these menu items.

2. In the Configure Applications dialog box, perform one of the following actions:

| To | Do This |
|-----------------|---|
| Add software | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click Add. b. In the Windows Explorer or Macintosh Finder dialog box, browse to and select the software's executable file. The software name appears in the Applications box and the path to the software appears in the Location box. c. (Optional) To rename the software's executable file name, double-click the software in the Applications box and type a new name. d. Click OK. |
| Remove software | In the Applications box, select the software, and click Remove . |

Tip: To change software, remove the existing software and add the new one. This is useful if you change versions, move the software to another location, or change software.

3. Click **OK**.

Opening a file with other software

You can open files in other software from within Prinergy Workshop.

1. In Job Manager, select the file you want to open.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Open File With**.

Tip: You can also right-click the input file to select these menu items.

3. Perform one of the following actions:

| To Open With | Do This |
|------------------|---|
| Default software | Select (default application) Default software is the software your operating system uses when you double-click this type of file in Windows Explorer or Macintosh Finder. |
| Other software | Select the software from the list. If the software you want is not in the list, configure the list of other software. |

Configure Applications dialog box

Applications

Lists the software that Prinergy Workshop has been configured to locate.

To rename the software's executable file name, double-click the software and type a new name.

Add

Opens a Windows Explorer or a Macintosh Finder dialog box. Locate and select the software's executable file.

The software's executable file name appears in the **Applications** box and the path to the software appears in the **Location** box.

Remove

Select a software name in the **Applications** box and click **Remove** to remove the software from the list.

Location

Displays the path to the software you selected in the **Applications** box.

Digital print software

About integrating digital print client software

You can integrate digital print client software with Prinergy Workshop.

Why you should integrate digital print client software

Integrate digital print client software if you want to:

- Use Prinergy Workshop and the digital print client software on the same computer. With integrated software, you do not need to prepare files in Prinergy Workshop and then change computers to use the software that controls the digital printer.
- Run the digital print client software from the **Tools** menu of Prinergy Workshop.

When you should not integrate digital print client software

You do not need to integrate digital print client software if you want to send files to digital printers using only process templates. For information about this method of sending files to digital printers, see *About Using Digital Printers*.

Where and how to integrate digital print client software

Each client computer is integrated with digital print client software separately. Therefore, if you integrate digital print client software, you need to do it on each computer that is running Prinergy Workshop.

For instructions on integrating digital print client software, see *Integrating Digital Print Client Software With Prinergy Workshop*.

For information about installing and configuring digital print client software, see the *Prinergy Digital Print Installation and Configuration Guide*.

How Prinergy Workshop changes when you integrate digital print client software

After you integrate digital print client software, it appears in Prinergy Workshop on the **Tools** menu, next to **Digital Print Administration Console**. With this new menu item, you can start the software from within Prinergy Workshop.

If the digital print client software is from Xerox, the software can also appear in the Submit to Digital Print dialog box that appears when you select **File > Send to Digital Direct** in Job Manager.

If you want to run more than one digital print client, you can integrate more than one client with Prinergy Workshop. When you submit files for digital printing, you select the specific software client that you want in the **Digital Press** list in the Submit to Digital Print dialog box.

The ability to run the Digital Submit and Digital Direct applications is licensed by the Digital Print license in Prinergy Administrator.

See also:

[About using digital printers](#) on page 669

[Integrating digital print client software with Workshop](#) on page 1103

Integrating digital print client software with Workshop

This procedure explains how to integrate digital print client software with Prinergy Workshop.

1. Install the software on the client computer.
See the documentation provided with the software or the *Prinergy Digital Print Installation and Configuration Guide*.
2. Add the software to the **Tools** menu in Prinergy Workshop:
 - a. From the **Tools** menu, select **Digital Print Administration Console > Configure**.
 - b. In the Configure Digital Print Application dialog box, click **Add**.
 - c. In the Add Digital Print Application dialog box, in the **Application Name** box, type the name of the software as you want it to appear in Prinergy Workshop on the **Tools** menu, next to **Digital Print Administration Console**.
 - d. In the **Executable Location** box, click **Browse** to locate and select the executable file.
 - e. Select or clear the **Allow element submission** check box to determine whether you can use the software to send files to a digital printer using the **Job > Submit for Digital Printing** menu item in Job Manager.

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Digital Print Client Software | Setting |
| Xerox FreeFlow Print Manager | Select the Allow element submission check box. |
| NexPress JDF Workflow Planner | Clear the Allow element submission check box. |

- f. Click **Add**, and then click **Done**.

3. Configure the software:
 - a. From the **Tools** menu, select **Digital Print Administration Console > Configure**, and then select the name you gave the software.
 - b. When the software opens, configure it as desired.
See the documentation provided with the software or the *Prinerger Digital Print Installation and Configuration Guide*.
4. Repeat this procedure on each Prinerger Workshop client from which you want to launch the digital print software.

Add Digital Print Application dialog box

Use this dialog box to identify the name and location of digital print software. You open this dialog box from the Configure Digital Print Application dialog box. For background, see *About Integrating Digital Print Client Software*. For instructions, see *Integrating Digital Print Client Software with Prinerger Workshop*.

Application Name

Enter a meaningful name for the software, such as XDS, as you want it to appear on the **Tools** menu, next to **Digital Print Administration Console**.

Executable Location

Either type the path of the executable file for the digital print software in this box or click **Browse** to locate and select the file.

Allow element submission

Determines whether you can use the software to send files to a digital printer using the **File > Send to Digital Direct** menu item in Job Manager.

- For Xerox FreeFlow Print Manager, select the check box.
- For Kodak JDF Workflow Planner, do not select the check box.

Configure Digital Print Application dialog box

Use this dialog box to identify the name and location of digital print software.

For background, see [About integrating digital print client software](#) on page 1102. For instructions, see [Integrating digital print client software with Workshop](#) on page 1103.

Application Name

The names of any digital print software that has been added to Prinergy. You determine the names that will appear on the **Tools** menu, next to **Digital Print Administrator**.

Location

The paths of the digital print software that has been added to Prinergy.

Submit

Indicates whether you can use the software to send files to a digital printer using the **File > Send to Digital Direct** menu item in Job Manager.

Add

Displays the Add Digital Print Application dialog box, where you can enter the name and location of a digital print software.

Remove

Click this button to remove digital print software that you select under **Application Name** or **Location**.

UpFront integration

Use UpFront to automatically export Preps jobs and MIS JDF files to Prinergy.

UpFront, Preps, and Prinergy

If you use Preps files in UpFront software, you can export Preps jobs from UpFront software into Prinergy with the Automatic Imposition feature.

For more information, see [Preps integration options](#) on page [1059](#).

What is Kodak UpFront software?

UpFront software is a production planning tool that centrally stores your company's press and bindery equipment specifications. This information is then used to customize or create a library of impositions.

These impositions, or press layouts, can be reused in all UpFront software jobs. For each job, UpFront software produces perfect, scaled imposition diagrams, and also exports completed Preps templates and jobs as well as CIP3 PPF cutting data files, binding data files, and folding data files.

Connecting UpFront to Prinergy

Use smart hot folders to automate the export of Preps jobs and MIS JDF files from the UpFront software to Prinergy.

Requirements:

The following software must be installed:

- Prinergy 3.0 or later with a Prinergy Automated Imposition license
- UpFront 4.x
- UpFront JDF MIS Export Site License (for JDF only)

Note: If you are running Prinergy 3.1 or later or UpFront 4.0.4 or earlier, you may need to edit the `UpFront40.ini` file to add the proper file-naming convention for smart hot folders. For details, contact a service representative.

You can use smart hot folders to automate the following workflows:

- Export a Preps job or MIS JDF file from UpFront and automatically create a Prinergy job and imposition, based on the exported job's file name.
- Export multiple Preps jobs or MIS JDF files from UpFront and automatically create a single Prinergy job with multiple impositions, based on the exported job's file name.
- Re-export an altered Preps job or MIS JDF file from UpFront and automatically create a new imposition in an existing job, rather than create a new job.

1. [Customizing an import process template](#)
Create a custom import process template for importing jobs from UpFront.
2. [Creating a template job with hot folders](#)
Create a template job that contains one hot folder for each customized import process template.
3. [Creating a smart hot folder](#)
Use a smart hot folder to create a new job (or find an existing job) and for automatic import of the impositions.
4. [Exporting Preps templates and jobs and MIS JDF files from UpFront](#)
Use smart hot folders to export Preps templates and jobs and MIS JDF files from UpFront to Prinergy.

Customizing an import process template

Create a custom import process template for importing jobs from UpFront.

Requirements:

- If you are using UpFront 4.0.3 or earlier, and have different plate sizes in your shop, you must create an import process template for each size.
- If you are using UpFront 4.0.4 or later, you can create only one import process template for all plate sizes, but you must define the **Target Device** setting on the **Preps** tab of the press library in UpFront. For more information, see the *UpFront 4.0.4 Release Notes*.
- If you are exporting a JDF file from UpFront, you must create an import process template for each media size.
- Ensure that all Preps templates, marks, and printer files are located on the Prinerger server in the `Prinerger\CreoAraxi\AraxiPreps` folder.

This procedure applies to an UpFront-to-Prinerger workflow.

1. In Workshop, from the **Tools** menu, select **Process Template Editor**.
2. In Process Template Editor, expand **Import** and locate the **ImportAll** process template.
3. Right-click and select **New Process Template**.
4. In the new import process template, open the **Import raw imposition files** section and perform the following steps:
 - a. In **Profile**, select **Default**.
 - b. In **Device**, select the media size or output device.
For example, select **18x25Portrait**.
Note: Media size is the Preps term for plates or press sheets. The media sizes available in Prinerger are derived from the Preps printer files located on the Prinerger server.
Note: If you are using UpFront 4.0.4 or later, select **Generic PostScript Printer**.
 - c. Under **Output Signatures**, select the **All** option.
 - d. Open the **Import** section, and from the **If Page Set Already Exists** list, select the **Keep existing page set and create new imposition** option.
5. From the **File** menu, select **Save As**, and type a name for the process template.
For example, type `Import-UpFront`.
6. Click **Create Process Template**.
7. Repeat steps 2 through 6 for each media size required.

8. From the **File** menu, click **Close**.

Creating a template job with hot folders

Create a template job that contains one hot folder for each customized import process template.

This procedure applies to an UpFront-to-Prinerly workflow.

1. In Workshop, in Job Finder, create a new job (or find an existing job) to use as a template job.
Important: Select a job or create one in a location that will NOT be removed or destroyed.
2. With the template job open in Job Manager, from the **Job** menu, select **Manage Hot Folders**, and perform the following steps:
 - a. In the Manage Hot Folders dialog box, click **Add**.
 - b. In the Create Hot Folder dialog box, select the **Add and Process Files** option.
 - c. In the **Workflow Processors** list, locate and select an import process template that you created for importing UpFront jobs. For example, select the **Import-UpFront** process template.
 - d. Click **OK**.
3. Perform one of the following actions:
 - If you are using UpFront 4.0.4 or later, create only one hot folder if you are exporting only Preps jobs (not JDF files).
 - If you are using an earlier version of UpFront, repeat step 2 until you have one hot folder for each customized import process template.
4. In the Manage Hot Folders dialog box, click **Close**.

Creating a smart hot folder

Use a smart hot folder to create a new job (or find an existing job) and for automatic import of the impositions.

This procedure applies to an UpFront-to-Prinerly workflow.

1. In Workshop, in Job Manager, from the **Tools** menu, select **Smart Hot Folder Manager**.
2. In the Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box, click **Add**.
Note: For MIS JDF files, you can set up a separate smart hot folder with different source and target patterns to accommodate multiple media sizes.
The Add Smart Hot Folder dialog box appears.
3. In the Add Smart Hot Folder dialog box, in the **Smart Hot Folder Name** box, type a name for the smart hot folder.
For example, type `UpFront Import`.

4. In the **Smart Hot Folder Location** box, perform one of the following actions:

- Click **Browse** and select the folder where you want to drop UpFront Preps job files.
- Click **Use Default Location**.

The default location is the `Jobs\SmartHotFolders` folder on the Prinerger server.

5. Under **Hot Folder Type**, select the **Job Creator** option.
6. In **Create a new job based on the job template**, click **Browse**.
7. In the Select Template Job dialog box, locate and select the template job that you created earlier.
8. Under **Copy from Selected Job**, select the **Hot Folders** check box.
9. Click **OK**.
10. In the left pane, click **Source and Target Patterns**.
11. In **Source File Name Pattern**, type `[$JOBID] . [%EXT]`.

This tells the smart hot folder which source files to accept. The wildcard `[$]` references the text and numbers in the source file name, and the `[%]` wildcard references the letters in the extension. This pattern assumes a file-naming convention of numbers and letters with an extension—for example, `123Filename.job`. Source files that do not fit this file-naming convention are rejected. Rejected source files are stored in the smart hot folder's `Rejected` folder.

Note: If you change the file-naming convention, you must change the source file-naming pattern. For information about source file-naming patterns, see the *Smart hot folders* topic in the Prinerger Workshop user guide. If you are using UpFront 4.0.4 or earlier, you must identify a file-naming convention, source file-naming pattern, and target file-naming pattern to accommodate multi-part jobs.

12. In **Target Group**, click **Browse**, and select the location where new jobs should go.
13. In **Target Job Name Pattern**, type `[$JOBID]`.

This tells Prinerger what to name the job or which job this source file belongs to. The `[$]` wildcard references the text and numbers in the source file name. In this example, Prinerger searches for a job named `123Filename`. If Prinerger cannot find a job with the name `123Filename`, it creates one.

14. In the left pane, click **File Move Rules**.
15. Under the table, click **Add**.
16. Under **Source File Name Pattern**, select the **Use Smart Hot Folders Source Pattern** check box.
The **Source File Name Pattern** box is automatically populated.

17. Under **Target File Name Pattern**, select the **Rename files** check box.
18. In the **Target File Name Pattern** box, type [`$JOBID`].
19. Click the **Move to Job Hot Folder** option.
20. In the list, select the import process template that you created in the job hot folder.
21. Click **OK**.

Note: If you're using UpFront 4.0.3 or earlier or importing UpFront MIS JDF files, you must have a smart hot folder for each media size that uses the same source and target file-naming pattern. Each smart hot folder must access a different job hot folder in the template job.

The file-move rule created in this example moves source files to the job hot folder. Because the files are not renamed during the move, the impositions retain the source file name `123Filename`.

22. In the Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box, click **Close**.

Exporting Preps templates and jobs and MIS JDF files from UpFront

Use smart hot folders to export Preps templates and jobs and MIS JDF files from UpFront to Prinergy.

This procedure applies to an UpFront-to-Prinergy workflow.

1. In UpFront, write the Preps template files to the Prinergy `\CreoAraxi\AraxiPreps\Templates` folder on the Prinergy server.

Note: If the template and signatures referenced in the UpFront Preps job are not in this folder, the import will fail.

2. In UpFront, write the Preps job files to the smart hot folders created in the previous topic.
3. If you are exporting MIS JDF files, in UpFront, write the JDF Intent file to the smart hot folders created in the previous topic.

Note: If the **Include Stripping Process** check box is not selected, the import process will fail.

Use the following table to determine whether the smart hot folder worked.

| To determine whether | Do this in Prinergy |
|-------------------------------|--|
| The source file was processed | Display the system history and click Group by Category . If there are errors, the system history displays the hot folder error and the location where the failed file was moved. |

| To determine whether | Do this in Prinerger |
|---|---|
| The source file was moved to a job's hot folder | View the job history. |
| The source file name matches the source file naming pattern | If file naming patterns do not match, the file is moved to <Smart Hot Folder Name> \Processed\Rejected. |

Index

.job files 906
1007
Files column 33, 39, 48, 1043, 1057
% 1007
\$ 1007

2-up reader spreads, splitting 260
3 Color Joins check boxes 233
3D annotations 126

A

A non press color space is used check box 289
Acrobat 943, 987
Acrobat Distiller 161, 165, 692, 698
 distilling content files 165
 distilling marks files 698
Active Rule Sets check box 88
activity icons 840
Add Alias button 826
Add Change Layer menu option 969
Add Custom Fields dialog box 122
Add Digital Print Application dialog box 1104
Add Digital Print Target to Job Favorites check box 177
Add Extra Horizontal Space list 445, 600, 654
Add Extra Vertical Space list 445, 600
Add Input Files menu item 60
Add Input Files Only option 910
Add Names button 1028
Add New Color Library dialog box 792
Add New Colorant dialog box 968
Add Page Set dialog box 347
Add Page Set menu item 60, 341
Add Process Template to Job Favorites check box 174
Add Processed Pages menu item 60
Add Separation button 801
Add Separation dialog box 800
Add Separator button 58
Add Smart Hot Folder dialog box 932
Add the color recipe to the library list 793
Add TIFF Preview to DCS Master File check box 471, 526, 583
Add Versioned Pages dialog box 970
Add Versioned Pages menu option 970
adding input files 143, 145-147, 906, 907, 1094, 1095
 about 143
 to hot folders 906
addition 1010
addition, page geometry 372, 394
Adobe Acrobat 199, 323, 325, 327, 636, 943
 about 323
 See Acrobat 943
Adobe Extreme 184, 652
Adobe FreeHand 126, 161

Adobe Illustrator 990
Adobe Illustrator files 127, 784
Adobe PageMaker 128, 323
Adobe Photoshop 129, 307, 784
 about 129
 PANTONE Library 784
Advanced PDF Trap Editor plug-in 323, 325
Advanced TIFF Tags check box 471, 526, 583, 650, 997
Advanced Trap Editor plug-in 325
AFP 966, 1002
ALAP Xpert Layers plug-in 1025
All layers option 1017
All or Partial option 358
All Page Sets button 417
all versions
 outputting 993
Allow element submission check box 1104
Alternate Color Space Name box 788
alternate color spaces 781
alternate workflow 963, 968
Always Create Report option 218
Always Use Color Combiner to Convert Spots check box 452, 510, 551, 562, 606, 651
Always Use Custom Large TIFF Format check box 471, 526, 583
annotating pages 1092, 1095
Annotation editing and form authoring check box 278
Annotations are included check box 283
Annotations are set to print check box 283
Anti-Aliasing check box 452, 510, 562, 606
APA 83, 251, 342, 380, 382, 385, 392, 409, 412, 415-417, 429, 991, 1013
 about 380
 page assignment examples 385
 populated job tickets 342
 window 417
APA Behavior on RIP field 103
APA Behavior on RIP list 91
APA Editor 394, 409, 425, 426
Apple Filing Protocol
 See AFP 966
Application Font lists 1036
Application Name box 1104
Application Name column 1104
Applications box 1101
Apply Acrobat rotation check box 209
Apply Clipping Path in Photoshop TIFFs check box 202
Apply Geometry check box 471, 526, 725
Apply Photoshop-embedded ICC Profiles check box 209
Apply Scaling from Layout check box 501, 556
Approval Comment dialog box 773
Approval in Progress page approval status 1093
Approval Not Required page approval status 771, 1093
Approval Requested page approval status 1093
Approval Required page approval status 1093

- approvals
 - about 771, 1093
 - changing 772
 - pages 772
 - proofs 772
 - statuses 1093
 - Approve menu item 68
 - Approved By boxes 1099
 - Approved page approval status 771, 1093
 - Archive Media Pools list 879, 882, 885
 - Archive Medium Logical Copy Process Template 892
 - archive process template 879
 - Archive State column 48, 1057
 - Archive Status column 16, 1044
 - Archive Status field 103
 - archiving 48, 75, 143, 184, 729, 875, 877-879, 887
 - input files 143
 - JTP 184
 - limit 875
 - process template 879
 - Storage view 48
 - art box 272
 - artifacts 159
 - as List menu item 66
 - as Thumbnails menu item 66
 - Asian fonts 316
 - Assign Page to Page Set Position dialog box 349
 - Assign Page to Position menu item 63
 - Assign Source or DeviceLink Profiles area 225
 - ASSIGN statement 385, 409, 412
 - Assigned Page Positions field 53
 - Assigned Positions field 53
 - assigning pages 342, 343, 349, 380, 401, 1030
 - about 342, 343
 - automatically with APA 380
 - manually 343
 - Assignment Count column 33, 39, 1041, 1050
 - associated ICC profile 989
 - Assumed Page Size list 753
 - Assumed Source or DeviceLink Profile options 440, 497, 551, 596
 - at Distance box 483, 538, 588, 614, 653, 692
 - attributes of job 90
 - Author check box 278
 - Auto clockwise orientation example 653
 - Auto counterclockwise orientation example 653
 - Auto Name button 1028
 - Auto-Resolve Spot Color Naming Conflicts check box 221
 - automated imposition, import imposition via hot folder 1063
 - automated imposition, import raw imposition file 1062, 1063
 - automated imposition, Preps integration 1059
 - Automated Page Assignment check box 88
 - automatic columns 839
 - Automatic imposition 1105
 - Automatically Add Templates Used for Processing to Job Favorites check box 1036
 - Automatically generate PDF version of Preflight Report check box 218
 - Automatically Remove Processed Files from Smart Hot Folder check box 932
 - automating 905, 912, 937, 942, 1006, 1013
 - assigning 1013
 - generating 942, 1013
 - hot folders 905
 - linking 942, 1006
 - smart hot folders 912
 - workflow templates 937
 - Available Pools list 879, 882, 885, 892
 - Available Templates area 1074
- ## B
- back references 392, 412, 914, 919, 1007, 1010
 - syntax 1010
 - without 1007
 - Back X and Y boxes 501
 - backward compatibility 1005
 - base content 944, 953, 1022
 - defined 944
 - in input files 953
 - base layer 944, 966-969, 987
 - box 967
 - column 969
 - defined 944
 - requirements 966
 - specifying 968
 - Base separation 1031
 - BaseLayer variable mark 1001
 - bases
 - multiple 951, 956, 987
 - best practices
 - output file names 1002
 - version names 966
 - viewing generation status 986
 - bevel trap 265
 - Binding Style box 1074
 - bitmap images 307
 - Bitmaps list 233
 - Black and white images are check box 296
 - Black area 233
 - Black Color Limit box 233
 - Black Density Limit box 233
 - Black generation curve is used check box 289
 - Black text is smaller than Points and does not overprint check box 300
 - black width scaling 265
 - Black Width Scaling box 233
 - black, ColorConvert options 225
 - bleed box 272
 - Bleed check box 753
 - Bleed for Unassigned Pages check box 483, 614
 - Bleed Margin Default box 1074
 - Blend Layers check box 981
 - booklets, page set 760-762
 - booklets, signature 762-764, 769
 - Border Handling list 452, 606

- Bottom margin only 653
 - boxes 272
 - brackets
 - square 1007
 - bright green color, Color Combiner 805
 - Brisque files 153
 - Brisque Files folder, job folders 84
 - Build Versioned Page check box 1006
 - Build Versioned Pages check box 209, 1013
 - Business Link
 - integrating 1096, 1097, 1099
 - switching users 4, 1099
 - Bypass Refine field 53
 - bypassing Start Process dialog 172
- C**
- calculating sheet mark distance 692
 - CalGray 209, 245
 - Calibrate check box 483, 538, 588, 614
 - Calibration and Screening section, process templates 459, 513, 565
 - Calibration area 459, 513, 565
 - Calibration Curve box 459, 565
 - Calibration Curve list 433, 490, 513, 544
 - CalRGB, device independent data 209, 245
 - case study 921
 - Categories list, Preflight Profile Editor 276
 - Category button 1098
 - category one
 - input file models 953
 - category two
 - input file models 953
 - CcMcYcKc
 - defined 953
 - Center Along Height check box 501, 556
 - Center Along Width check box 501, 556
 - Center and crop page to media size check box 445, 600
 - Center Page column 39, 1041
 - Center Page menu item 63
 - Center Pages in Imposition list 358, 870
 - Centerfold Bleed box 209
 - centering 1-up artworks 379
 - centering pages 379, 380
 - Centerline Trap Limit box 233
 - CEPS
 - conversion settings 201
 - detecting 209
 - JTP 153
 - process data 221
 - CEPS Conversion section 153, 201
 - change content
 - defined 944
 - in input files 953
 - Change Custom Location button 910
 - Change Group Icon menu option 191
 - Change Group menu item 20
 - change layers
 - columns 969
 - defined 944
 - in Acrobat 987
 - specifying 968
 - character delimiters 919
 - Character Identifier fonts 316
 - checking smart hot folders 936
 - Chinese fonts 316
 - Choose Job lists 869
 - Choose Process Template dialog box 174
 - CID fonts 316
 - CIP3 742, 747
 - CIP3 check box 562
 - CIP3AdmJobCode CIP3 tag 747
 - CIP3AdmJobName CIP3 tag 747
 - CIP3AdmSheetName CIP3 tag 747
 - CJK fonts 316
 - Clear menu item 68
 - Clear Web Growth Profile menu item 63
 - client and server versions 4
 - clipped choke trap 265
 - clipping path 989
 - clipping paths 270
 - Close Window menu item 850
 - CMYK
 - color space 775
 - images 307
 - proofing devices 805
 - CMYK Graphics check box 225
 - CMYK Images check box 225
 - Coatings list 479, 534
 - Collapse All menu item 66, 1035
 - collapsing items 31, 1035
 - Collation list 479, 534
 - color 225, 289, 434, 491, 545, 594, 677, 775, 776, 781, 784, 798, 800, 803, 815, 830, 831, 989
 - definitions 781
 - libraries 781
 - names, different 815
 - PANTONE library 784
 - settings in Preflight Editor 289
 - spaces 775
 - varnishes 830
 - Color Combiner 805
 - color conversion 775
 - Color Convert section 497
 - Color Editor area 788
 - Color Editor window
 - about 781
 - options 788
 - Color Information area 801, 826, 828
 - Color Libraries area 440, 497, 551, 562, 788
 - Color list 479, 534
 - color management 225, 434, 491, 545, 594, 677, 775, 831
 - Color Mappings button 174
 - Color Mappings dialog box
 - options 826
 - Color match 1-bit images check box 225
 - Color Match 1-bit images check box 440, 497, 551, 596

- Color Matcher 775
- Color Model options 452, 510, 562, 606
- color name 968
- Color or grayscale images check box 296
- Color Output dialog box 828
- Color Printing Order menu item 63
- Color Recipes field 791
- Color Separations dialog box 801
- Color Separations menu item 63
- Color Settings area 233
- Color Setup box 225
- Color Setup field 53
- Color Space Editor window
 - description 776
- Color Space Name box 776
- color spaces 775
- Color Spaces area 776
- Color TIFF XT plug-in 325
- color, trap 265
- ColorCentral 307
- ColorConvert 201, 225, 257, 440, 551, 596
 - process template 201
 - section, CTLW Karat output process template 596
 - section, final output process template 551
 - section, loose page output process template 440
 - section, refine process template 225
- ColorFlow
 - enabling in refine process template 225
 - section, CTLW Karat output process template 594
 - section, final output process template 545
 - section, imposition output process template 491
 - section, loose page output process template 434
 - section, publish file process template 677
- ColorFlow software 831
- ColorFlow software, limitations 837
- colors 946, 966, 981
 - pre-requisite information 946
 - requirements 966
- Colors area 788
- colors to extract
 - column 968
 - from template job 961
- ColorTowerMap.txt 729
- columns
 - recommended 986
- columns, customizing 1034
- columns, dynamic 839
- columns, Job Finder 16
- columns, Job Manager
 - History view 51
 - Pages view 33
 - Separations view 46
 - Signatures view 39
 - Storage view 48
- Comment box 773
- Comment field 842
- Common column 46
- common density limit 256
- Common Density Limit box 233
 - common separations 799, 1001, 1031
 - variable mark 1001
 - compensating for web growth 729
 - Completed Final Output job status 89
 - Completed job status 89
 - completed processes 173, 840
 - Completed tab 840
 - completing a tape 890, 892
 - Components box 776
 - Composite column 33, 39, 1050
 - composite DCS files 129
 - Composite field 53
 - composite input files 125, 952
 - Compression list 245, 358, 471, 526, 583
 - condition icons 840
 - configuration file, Preps 1070
 - Configure Digital Print Application dialog box 1091, 1104
 - Configure Imposition Applications dialog box 1088, 1091
 - configuring imposition software 1088
 - Connect mode 1036
 - Connect to Server dialog box, when logging in 5
 - Connect to Server dialog box, when switching users 1099
 - content 950, 953, 1000
 - flow diagram 950
 - in input files 953
 - in layers 950
 - merged 1000
 - separations 1000
 - Content column 46
 - Content editing check box 278
 - Content Preparation tab 177
 - context menu 958, 965, 968, 969, 972, 978, 993, 994
 - contiguous range of page set positions 392, 401
 - Continue Job Import if CRC Error Found check box 358, 870
 - Control File File Name Template box 469, 524, 578
 - Control folder 382
 - Control folder, job folders 84
 - conventions 953
 - conversion, overprint 257
 - Convert Text to Paths check box 452, 510, 562, 606
 - converting fonts 320
 - Copy Assignment Positions list 351
 - Copy Job dialog box 115
 - Copy Job process template 117
 - Copy menu item 850, 857
 - Copy Page Assignments dialog box 351
 - Copy Page Assignments menu item 63
 - Copy Pre-Job dialog box 115
 - Copy to Global Tab menu item 795
 - Copy to Job Tab menu item 795
 - copydot 129, 220, 345, 348, 433, 544, 805
 - about 129
 - proofing spot color 805
 - section, final output process template 544
 - section, loose page output process template 433
 - copying 112, 114
 - jobs 112
 - pre-jobs 112

- copying disks 891
 - copying favorite process templates between jobs 83, 85
 - copying files with smart hot folders 928
 - copying job settings with template jobs 83
 - copying page assignments between imposition plans 1027
 - copying page assignments between page sets 345, 350
 - copying tapes 891
 - core tasks 958
 - overview 958
 - correcting knockouts 981
 - corrections 1092, 1095
 - Create a new job based on the job template box 932
 - Create alternate page set and imposition option 1089
 - Create Backwards Compatible Export check box 865
 - Create column 16
 - Create Copy check boxes 791
 - Create Hot Folder for Job dialog box 910
 - Create JDF check box 479
 - Create New Group dialog box 109
 - Create New Imposition menu item 60
 - Create New Imposition menu option 991
 - Create new Job as box 86, 960
 - Create New Job dialog box 86
 - Create New Page Set option 368, 1074
 - Create new Pre-Job as box 86
 - Create New Pre-Job dialog box 86
 - Create Page Set and Assign Pages option 251
 - Create Preflight report check box 725
 - Create Preflight Report, If Available check box 471, 526
 - Create Process Template button 186
 - Create Process Template Group button 186
 - Create Report on Error option 218
 - Create Soft Masks from Photoshop TIFF Alpha Channels check box 202
 - Created column 33, 39, 48, 1043, 1044, 1057
 - Created field 53, 103
 - Created job status 89, 1094
 - creating
 - process template groups 197
 - process templates 185, 186
 - creating imposition plans 1089
 - creating jobs 81-83, 85, 923-926, 929, 1095
 - about 81
 - copying template jobs 83
 - manually 85
 - using InSite 1095
 - Creator check box 278
 - Creo PODS IC-301 669
 - Creo PODS Spire color server 669
 - Creo PODS with HP Indigo presses 669
 - Creo Proofing System software 943
 - crop box 272
 - Crop check box 753
 - Crop Distance Beyond Bleed for Pages list 483, 614
 - crop marks 653
 - cropping images 309
 - ct files 307
 - CT Resolution box 452, 606
 - CT Type list 452, 606
 - CT/LW
 - generating proofs 593
 - CT/LW (CEPS) output format 620
 - CT/LW area 452, 606
 - CT/LW files 126, 153, 157, 160, 201, 625
 - converting to PDF 201
 - input 126
 - processing 153
 - CTLW Karat output process templates
 - description 594, 596, 600, 606, 613
 - CTLW output
 - generating 593
 - custom fields 118-120
 - Custom Fields Manager 120
 - custom file naming 1002
 - Custom File Naming area 469, 524, 578
 - custom file naming variables 657, 747
 - Custom halftone curve is used check box 289
 - custom locations, hot folders 905
 - Custom transfer curve is used check box 289
 - customer access to jobs 1092
 - customer approval 771, 1095
 - Customer Approval column 33, 39, 1050
 - Customer Approval Comment field 53
 - Customer Approval field 53
 - Customer Approval menu item 63
 - Customer field 91
 - customizing
 - Job Finder 119
 - Job Manager 119
 - customizing CIP3 tags, PrintLink 746
 - customizing work types 1097
 - customizing Workshop 1033, 1035, 1036
 - Cut Media check box 476, 531, 580, 613
 - Cut menu item 850, 857
 - Cycle Through Screen Angles option 459, 513, 565
 - cylinder 650
 - cylinder, imaging on 650
- ## D
- daemon 752
 - Date Processed column 33, 1050
 - Date Processed field 53
 - Date Refined column 33, 39, 1050
 - Date Refined field 53
 - DCS (Vector Output) output format 620
 - DCS Compression list 471, 526, 583
 - DCS Data list 471, 526, 583
 - DCS File Format list 471, 526, 583
 - DCS files 126, 127, 129, 625, 906
 - about 129
 - adding 129
 - adding using hot folders 906
 - Adobe Illustrator 127
 - Adobe Photoshop 129
 - Macromedia FreeHand 126, 127
 - Default Export process template 1091
 - Default Font box 202

- Default Page Size area 209
- default press interface, PrintLink 746, 747
- Default Profile box 501, 556
- Default Spot Color Handling area 459, 513, 565
- Default Value 120
- definitions of terms 944
- Delete existing page set and imposition option 1089
- Delete Files After FTP Completes check box 575
- Delete Group menu item 20
- Delete History Entries menu item 861, 862
- Delete menu item 20
- Delete source elements at the end of workflow check box 910
- Delete Traps check box 471, 526, 583
- Delete Version menu option 969
- deleting
 - process template groups 197
 - process templates 188
- deleting completed processes 841
- deleting files 147
- deleting integrated imposition software 1088
- deleting page sets 345, 349
- deleting traps 327
- Delta area 452, 562, 606
- Delta Cache State column 33, 39
- Delta Cache State field 53
- Delta Calibration box 459, 513, 565
- Densities boxes 452, 510, 606
- density limit, common 256
- density, neutral 256
- Descreen check box 433, 490, 544
- Description box 1099
- Description column 48, 51, 856, 1041, 1057, 1058
- design software 1100, 1101
 - configuring 1101
 - integrating 1100
- Desktop button 181
- Destination Pools list 892
- Destroy Entire Job menu item 20
- Destroy Entire Pre-Job menu item 20
- Destroy Imposition dialog box 368
- Destroy Imposition menu item 60
- Destroy Job dialog box 102
- Destroy menu item 67
- destroying 102, 354, 357, 855, 861, 862
 - history, job 861, 862
 - pre-jobs 102
- Details area 53, 103
- Detect column, Preflight Profile Editor 276
- Detect Device Independent check box 209, 245
- Detect if Halftone phase is used 289
- Detect RGB check box 209, 245
- Detect Unknown Objects check box 302
- Device box 1074
- Device Condition box 434, 440, 491, 497, 545, 594, 596, 677
- Device list 358
- Device Name box 434, 479, 491, 534, 545, 594, 677
- Device Path area 479, 534
- Device Path box 476, 531, 580, 613
- Device Resolutions box 452, 510, 562, 606
- Device Resolutions list 459, 513, 565
- Device section, process templates 476, 531, 580, 613
- Device tab 177
- Device Type box 479, 534
- device-specific settings 652
- die lines 127, 168, 257, 830, 831
 - about 830
 - Illustrator 127
 - naming 830
 - overprint 257
- Dielines Overprint Other Content check box 452, 510, 606
- differences
 - object 981
- DigiCap area 459, 513, 565
- Digital Device Queue info 177
- Digital Master Control list 245
- digital masters 75, 255
- Digital Print folder, job folders 84
- digital printing 479, 534, 669, 673, 675, 1102-1104
 - about 669
 - integrating digital print client software 1104
 - options 479, 534
 - output types 669
 - refining 669
 - software 1102, 1103
 - Submit for Digital Printing menu item 669
 - submitting files 675
- digits 1009
 - padded 1009
- Direction list 233
- direction, trap 265
- directory
 - Subpage 981
- directory structure 75
- Display Large Thumbnails check box 1036
- Display Page Sets in Reader Spreads check box 1036
- displaying columns 1034, 1041
- displaying history messages 856
- displaying items as list or thumbnails 1035
- displaying views 16, 30, 107
- Distance
 - Start/End boxes 459, 513, 565
- Distiller Assistant plug-in 325
- distilling content files 165
- distilling marks files 692, 698
- Do Auto Page Assignment After Unpopulated Imposition Import check box 358, 870
- Do OPI Image Replacement check box 358
- Do Separations check box 452, 510, 562, 606
- Do Trapping check box 452, 510, 562, 606
- Document contains actions check box 278
- Document contains annotation lies inside printable area (except TrapNet) check box 302
- Document contains article threads check box 278
- Document contains bookmarks check box 278

- Document contains embedded PostScript fragments
 - check box 302
 - Document contains form fields check box 278
 - Document contains JavaScript check box 278
 - Document contains Layers check box 278
 - Document contains thumbnails check box 278
 - Document contains unused destinations check box 278
 - Document does not conform to check box 302
 - Document does not conform to tagged PDF conventions
 - check box 278
 - Document Folding Style list 501
 - Document Format list 471, 526, 583
 - Document Format option 997
 - Document is ASCII encoded check box 278
 - Document is damaged check box 278
 - document screening 637
 - document settings, PDF Preflight 278
 - Document structure is compressed check box 278
 - documents, locating translated 13
 - Don't Map Spot Colors option 221
 - Don't Use Delta-List Cache check box 452, 562, 606
 - Dot Shape box 459
 - Dot Shape list 459, 513, 565
 - dot shapes 638, 643, 855
 - dot size, calculating minimum 640
 - dotversion file name tag 1002
 - double burn 943, 981
 - Double byte font is completely embedded check box 286
 - Down box 445, 600
 - Down to box 358
 - downloading files from InSite 84
 - downsampling 309, 724, 725
 - drag-and-drop linking 972
 - Draw Trim and Bleed Marks list 483, 538, 614
 - Draw Trim and Bleed Marks option 483, 614
 - Draw Trim and Bleed Marks options 538
 - drop shadows 267, 269
 - DSC vector output 755
 - dtd file, web growth 729
 - Due Date Time area 91
 - due dates 90
 - duotones 130
 - Duplex Offsets area 501
 - Duplexing list 445, 479, 501, 534, 556, 600
 - Dynagram DynaStrip 352
 - dynamic columns 39, 46, 839, 1043, 1050, 1055
- E**
- e-mail notifications 1092
 - eCentral 13
 - Edit Hot Folder for Job dialog box 910
 - Edit Imposition dialog box 1071
 - Edit Imposition menu item 63
 - Edit Job Attributes dialog box 91
 - Edit Job Attributes menu item 22
 - Edit Pre-Job Attributes menu item 22
 - Edit Process Template button 174, 184, 985
 - Edit Smart Hot Folder dialog box 932
 - Edit Work Type Dialog Box 1099
 - editing
 - process templates 183, 187
 - editing imposition plans 1089
 - editing process templates 183, 184
 - edition
 - defined 944
 - electronic filing system 75
 - elements
 - from template 961
 - Elements column 846, 1053
 - elements, getting information 31
 - Eliminate TrimBox and BleedBox check box 209
 - Embedded font is OpenType check box 286
 - Empty Pages check box 283
 - Enable CEPS Detection check box 209
 - Enable CMYK Overprint check box 225
 - Enable ColorFlow check box 225
 - Enable Gray Overprint check box 225
 - Enable Rule Set in Selected Jobs menu item 22
 - Enable Signature Booklet check box 501
 - Enable Spot Color Mapping check box 221
 - Enable User Switching check box 5, 1096
 - Enable Variable Mainscan Imaging check box 580
 - Enable Web Access check box 91
 - enabling Color Combiner 805
 - enabling web access 90, 1092, 1096
 - Encryption check box 278
 - Ended at field 842
 - ending processes 845
 - Enfocus PitStop 153, 325
 - Enter Number of Versions dialog box 1027
 - EPS (Vector Output) output format 620
 - EPS Compression list 471, 526, 583
 - EPS Data list 471, 526, 583
 - eps files 307, 625, 912
 - EPS input 126
 - eps raster output format 620
 - Epson 5000 output 625
 - Epson 5000 output format 620
 - Epson 9000 output 625
 - Epson 9000 output format 620
 - error layer 966, 981, 989
 - Error Message icon 51
 - errors 840, 855, 989, 1007
 - multiple 989
 - page name pattern 1007
 - Errors/Warnings column 16, 1044
 - Errors/Warnings field 103
 - even pages, selecting 30
 - Evenly to all gutters and margins 653, 654
 - Evenly to both margins 653, 654
 - example scenario 946
 - examples 265, 375, 377, 382, 385, 394, 401, 412, 653, 654, 661, 730, 731, 734-736
 - Add Extra Horizontal Space 654
 - Add Extra Vertical Space 653
 - at Distance 653
 - Automatic Production Automation (APA) 385, 394, 401, 412

- crop marks 653
- Locate crop mark of length 653
- Orientation 653
- page geometry order of operations 375
- page offset 375
- page orientation 377
- traps 265
- exchanging files, InSite 1092
- Executable Location box 1104
- Existing Page Sets button 1028
- Existing Page Sets list 347
- Expand All menu item 66, 1035
- expanding items 31, 1035
- Export Color Library dialog box 793
- Export Imposition Using Process Template area 1071, 1073
- Export Job (Incremental) menu item 60
- Export Job menu item 20, 60
- Export Path box 865
- Export process template 865
- export process templates 865, 1089
- Export the selected color library to file box 793
- Export Type box 865
- ExportAll process template 78
- ExportIncremental process template 77
- exporting color libraries 781, 791
- exporting jobs 1005
- exporting jobs and job files 863-865
- Extra Margin for Marks and Bleed boxes 483, 614
- Extract Recipe from the File option 221, 440, 497, 551, 596
- extracting objects from refined pages 981, 989

F

- Facilis 352
- factory libraries 781
- Factory Templates 189
- Fail if font problems detected check box 452, 510, 562
- Fail on Missing Fonts check box 202, 606
- Fail on Missing Images check box 202, 358
- Fault Tolerance list 879, 882
- Feature Size box 459, 513, 565
- fields, custom 118
- File Browser dialog box 181, 190
- File contain CEPS data check box 296
- File Format section 997
- File Generation Mode list 575
- File Move Rules view 932
- File Mover/Renamer option 932
- File name box 725
- file names 657, 661, 963, 1002, 1007
 - best practices 963
 - components 1002
 - custom 657
 - input 1007
 - output 1002
 - tags 1002
 - version numbers 661
- File Naming area 469, 524, 578
- file naming patterns, smart hot folders 914, 917, 919
- file types 126, 352, 625, 952
 - imposition 352
 - input 126
 - output 625
- Filename Template box 469, 524, 575, 578
- files 382, 952, 1093
 - APA 382
- Files to Add list 147
- film, tiling 655
- filtering
 - Versioned Pages view 970
- filtering refined pages 971
- final output 544, 626, 691, 812, 823-825, 1000
 - generating 626
 - producing 1000
- Final Output Count column 16, 1044
- Final Output Count field 103
- Final Output Due column 16, 1044
- Final Output Due field 103
- Final Output field 91
- final output process templates
 - Calibration and Screening section 565
 - Copydot section 544
 - description 545, 551
 - Device section 580
 - Layout section 556
 - PrintLink section 575
 - Processed File section 578
 - Render section 562
- Find Job dialog box 98
- Find Job menu item 22
- Find Job Results dialog box 98
- Find Pre-Job menu item 22
- finding jobs 98
- Finish Installation button 5
- finished processes 840
- First Page Number in Next Signature box 1074
- fixing generate errors 990
- Flat Rotation box 445, 501, 556, 600
- flat-based workflow
 - procedure 79
- Flatness tolerance is different than Points check box 300
- Flattener list 209
- flattening files, transparency 161-163
- flexible packaging 401
- flexo press, web growth 729
- flexographic printing 650
- folding carton 401
- font 989
- Font Converter 320
- Font Installation dialog box 320
- Font is not embedded check box 286
- Font Name check box 286
- Font Outlining check box 471, 526, 583
- font search path 127
- Font Search Path dialog box 322
- Font Search Path menu item 67
- font search paths

- about 314
- options 322
- template jobs 83
- fonts
 - Asian 316
 - embedding 125, 202
 - installation dialog box 320
 - installing and converting 320
 - settings in PDF Preflight 286
- Fonts and Images section, refine process template 202
- Fonts area 202
- Fonts folder, job folders 84
- Force LW Vignette to CT check box 452, 606
- Force Overprint check box 981
- Force Vignette to CT check box 452, 606
- Format area, Preflight Editor 278
- formats, imposition 352
- formats, input 126
- formats, output 625
- formula, multiplicative blend 257
- From box 1074
- From Imposition Plan Name box 578
- Front Shift and Back Shift boxes 445, 501, 556, 600
- Front X and Y boxes 501
- FTP Address box 575
- FTP Logon Name box 575
- FTP Password box 575
- full access, Preps integration 1059
- Full Surfaces column 16, 1044
- Full Surfaces field 103

G

- G3 compression 651
- G4 compression 651
- General tab 1036
- General view 932
- generate 981, 986, 989, 990
 - column 986
 - errors 990
 - process 981
 - process result 986
 - process template 981
 - required status 986
 - status icons 986
 - viewing status 986
 - warnings 989
- Generate Alternate Images check box 220
- Generate check box 245
- Generate menu option 985
- Generated status 986
- generating 275, 593, 620, 626, 669, 673, 675, 744, 950, 981, 1013
 - about 950, 981
 - automating 1013
 - final output 626
 - outputs 620
 - proofs 626
 - to digital printers 669, 673, 675
- geometry 985

- Geometry area 233
- Geometry Assignment tab 417
- geometry assignments, automatic 382, 392
- Geometry Editor 371
- Get Info dialog box 53
- Get Info menu item 20, 31, 60, 850
- getting started with ColorFlow software 831
- Global Color Picker dialog box 791
- Global tab, Color Editor window 781, 783, 793
- Global tab, Font Installation dialog box 320
- Global tab, Process Templates pane 52
- Go to Separations View When Opening Job Manager
 - check box 1036
- Graphic element lies completely outside of the media box
 - check box 283
- gravure 650
- gray overprint 225
- grayscale images 307
- Group by Assignment button 33, 39, 986
- Group by Category button 51, 856
- Group by File Kind button 48
- Group by Input File button 33, 39, 986
- Group by Online Status button 48
- Group by Page Set button 33
- Group field 103
- group icons, changing process template 198
- Group list 939
- groups
 - elements 1035
 - jobs 108, 109

H

- Harmony Medium list 459, 513, 565
- Heidelberg PrePress Signa Station 352
- Height box 209, 534
- Helios image references 307
- hiding columns 1034
- High-resolution image in OPI path is missing check box
 - 299
- high-resolution PDF files 724, 725
- Highlights box 459, 513, 565
- history 51, 855, 856, 861, 862
 - job history 51, 862
 - system history 855, 856
- History Logging list 202
- History menu item 66
- History Starting list 856
- History view 51, 861, 862, 989, 1034, 1035, 1041
 - about 51
 - collapsing groups 1035
 - columns 1041
 - description 51
 - destroying entries 861, 862
 - displaying columns 1034
 - expanding groups 1035
 - hiding columns 1034
 - moving columns 1034
 - options 51

- sorting 1034
 - viewing 862
 - Home area 86
 - Home button 311, 320, 368, 423
 - Horizontal Gutter Height box 445, 600
 - Hot Folder Type area 916
 - hot folder, import imposition 1063
 - hot folders 83, 84, 143, 147, 864, 868, 869, 905-909, 912, 938
 - about 905
 - adding files 906, 907
 - adding input files 143, 147
 - custom locations 905
 - incremental exports 864
 - job folders 84
 - re-dropping files 906
 - supported file formats 906
 - template jobs 83
 - types 906
 - Hot Folders check box 88
 - HotFolders folder, job folders 84
 - HP Indigo presses 669
 - HP Indigo Production Stream Server 669
 - HP Production Flow 669
 - HPRTL Device list 476, 531, 580
 - HPRTL files 620
 - HPRTL output 625
 - hub and spoke 1005
 - hub-and-spoke 77, 78
 - hub-and-spoke setup 76
 - HyperFlex Advanced check box 459, 513, 565
 - HyperFlex area 459, 513, 565
 - HyperFlex Classic check box 459, 513, 565
- I**
- ICC Profile box 776
 - ICC profiles 209, 758, 775, 781, 805
 - alternate color spaces 781
 - apply embedded 209
 - color spaces 775
 - proofing device 805
 - icf files 906, 912
 - icons 840, 986
 - generate status Pages view 986
 - generate status Versioned Pages view 986
 - Identify Common Separations menu item 67
 - identifying common separations 799
 - if Above box 358
 - If EyeMedia Image Not Found list 202
 - If Page Set Already Exists list 358, 870, 1089
 - Ignore common object differences check box 981
 - Ignore Embedded Fonts in Marks Files check box 452, 510, 562, 606
 - ignore option
 - all layers linked 981
 - Ignore option 981
 - Image at option 580
 - Image at rendered resolution option 580
 - image formats supported 307
 - Image has alternates defined 296
 - Image is flipped horizontally check box 296
 - Image is not scaled proportionally check box 296
 - Image is rotated at an angle that is not a multiple of 90 degrees check box 296
 - Image is skewed check box 296
 - image references 307
 - Image Search Path menu item 67
 - image search paths 83, 199, 304, 307, 310
 - about 199, 304
 - about OPI 307
 - template jobs 83
 - Image Search Paths check box 88
 - Image Search Paths dialog box 310
 - image settings, PDF Preflight 296
 - Image Transparency area 202
 - Image uses 16 bits per channel check box 296
 - images 267-270
 - clipping paths 270
 - drop shadows 267, 269
 - masks 267
 - Images area 202
 - Images Attributes area 202
 - Images list 725
 - images, embedding 202
 - images, optimizing 309
 - iMPAct Digital BlueLine 762
 - Import button 1028
 - Import Color Library dialog box 792
 - Import Imposition dialog box 368
 - Import Imposition menu item 60
 - Import Imposition Using Process Template area 1071, 1073
 - Import Imposition, import raw imposition 1062
 - Import Job (Incremental) menu item 60
 - Import Job check box 86
 - Import Job dialog box 869
 - Import Job menu item 20
 - Import metadata from Business Link JDFs 120
 - import process template options (impositions) 358, 1089
 - import process template options (job) 870
 - import raw imposition file 1062
 - Import Type list 1071, 1073
 - Import Versioning imposition dialog box 1028
 - Import Versioning imposition menu item 60
 - importing 342, 353, 355, 356, 368, 698, 781, 791, 867, 869
 - color libraries 781, 791
 - dialog box 368, 869
 - impositions 355
 - jobs 867
 - populated job tickets 342
 - importing jobs 1005
 - Impose options, refine process template 251
 - imposed flats 76
 - imposed flats, Prinerger Direct 79
 - imposition file name component 1002
 - imposition file types 352
 - Imposition Marks Calibration list 538, 588

- Imposition Name box 368, 1071, 1073, 1074
- Imposition Name list 1079
- Imposition Name table 1028
- imposition output 620, 636, 760-764, 769, 821, 822
 - output formats 620
 - page set booklets 760-762
 - signature booklet 762-764, 769
 - soft 636
- imposition output process templates 489, 491, 497, 501, 510, 513, 531, 534, 756, 758, 760-764, 769
 - description 489, 491
 - options 497, 501, 510, 513, 531, 534
 - page set booklets 760-762
 - signature booklets 762-764, 769
 - Veris 758
- imposition plans 30, 346, 351, 352, 354, 355, 357, 368, 652, 756, 762-764, 769, 1022, 1025-1027, 1034, 1065, 1068, 1071, 1073, 1087, 1089
 - about 351
 - and PJTF files 652
 - copying 1027
 - creating 1073, 1089
 - destroying 354, 357
 - editing 1071, 1089
 - exporting 1089
 - file types supported 352
 - importing 355, 368, 1089
 - integrating imposition software 351
 - marks 354
 - removing 354
 - renaming 354
 - selecting 30
 - signature booklets 762-764, 769
 - sorting 1034
 - thermal bluelines 756
 - versioning 1022
- Imposition Plans pane
 - columns 1041
 - displaying columns 1034
 - hiding columns 1034
 - moving columns 1034
 - Signatures View 39
 - sorting 1034
- Imposition Preview dialog box 753
- imposition proofs
 - output names 1002
- imposition software
 - configuring 1087, 1091
 - deleting integrated 1088
 - integrating 351, 1087, 1088, 1091
 - setting the location 1088
- Imposition suffix box 1031
- ImpoStrip 352
- improving performance
 - columns, Job Finder 1044
 - destroying job history 861
- In Prepress job status 89
- In Progress icon 840
- Include Empty Page Positions check box 725
- Include Images as list 471, 526, 583
- Include JDF for Digital Print section 534
- Include Pages in Job Exports check box 865
- Include Spot Channels in Photoshop TIFFs check box 202
- incremental jobs
 - import/export 1005
- InDesign 79, 128, 161
- individual versions
 - outputting 993
- information line 910
- Information Message icon 51
- information on elements, getting 31
- initial separations 801
- Ink coverage is higher than check box 289
- Ink coverage is lower than check box 289
- ink reports 742, 744, 750-752
- Ink Set list 233
- ink, neutral density 256, 781
- Input Device Conditions box 440, 497, 551, 596
- input file
 - names 1007
- Input File column 33, 39, 1050
- Input File Control list 209
- Input File field 53
- input files 125, 126, 143, 147, 157, 161, 200, 382, 907, 952, 963, 981, 1034, 1100
 - adding and refining 963
 - archiving 143
 - geometry 382
 - hot folders 907
 - models See models 981
 - not ready 963
 - opening 1100
 - PDF 161
 - preparing 125, 143
 - removing 147
 - requirements 952
 - sorting 1034
 - storing 143
 - supported 126
 - types 952
- Input Files pane
 - columns 1043
 - displaying columns 1034
 - hiding columns 1034
 - moving columns 1034
 - Pages View 33
 - Signatures View 39
 - sorting 1034
- input volume 143
- Insert Wild Cards area 417
- InSite 82, 245, 771, 1092-1096
 - enabling web access 1092, 1096
 - file locations 1093
 - integrating 1092, 1096
 - page approval status 1093
 - pre-jobs 82
 - setting approvals 771
 - workflow 1095

- working with jobs 1094
- Install button 320
- integrating 1059, 1087-1089, 1091, 1092, 1095, 1096, 1099-1104
 - Business Link 1096
 - digital print client software 1102-1104
 - Heidelberg PrePress Signa Station 1088, 1091
 - imposition software 1088, 1091
 - InSite 1092, 1095
 - other software 1100, 1101
 - Pandora 1087-1089
 - Preps 1059, 1087, 1088
- invisible objects 981
- Items button 1098
- Items to Submit tab 177
- items, collapsing and expanding in Process Templates pane 31
- items, selecting in Job Manager 30

J

- Japanese fonts 316
- JDF File Name box 479, 534
- JDF files, smart hot folders 352, 912
- JDF Path box 479, 534
- JDF-MIS stripping parameter files, smart hot folders 912
- job attributes 90, 961, 1092, 1096
 - about 90
 - from template 961
 - web access 1092, 1096
- Job Attributes check box 86, 960
- Job button 32, 33, 39, 46, 48, 51
- job code 90
- Job Code box 91
- Job Code column 16, 1044
- Job Code field 103
- Job Color Picker dialog box 791
- Job column 846, 1053
- job context, opening Preps 1070
- Job Creator option 932
- job favorites 29, 31, 58, 83
 - about 29
 - options 58
 - template jobs 83
- Job Favorites check box 88
- Job Favorites tab 58
- Job field 842
- Job Finder
 - displaying columns 1034
 - hiding columns 1034
- Job Finder window 15, 16, 26, 85, 107, 1044
 - about 15
 - changing views 16, 107
 - columns 1044
 - jobs and pre-jobs 85
 - options 16
- Job Folder field 103
- job folders
 - about 84
 - input files 143
 - subfolders 84, 1093
- job groups 83, 107-111
 - about 108, 109
- job history 51, 862
- Job Home column 16, 1044
- Job Home field 103
- Job Info dialog box 103
- job information 97, 102, 103
- Job Manager window 29, 30, 32, 73, 839, 840
 - about 29
 - changing views 30
 - description 32
 - monitoring processes 839
 - opening multiple windows 29
 - process status icons 840
 - selecting items 30
 - User and Job favorites 29
 - window title 29
- Job Name box 98
- Job Notes 100
- Job Notes dialog box 101
- job status
 - about 89, 90
 - InSite 1094
 - setting 90
- Job Status column 16, 1044
- Job Status field 103
- Job Status list 91
- Job tab, Color Editor window 781, 783, 793
- Job tab, Font Installation dialog box 320
- Job tab, Process Template pane 52
- job tickets, importing populated 356
- Job.apa 382
- jobs 29, 51, 81-83, 85, 96-100, 102, 103, 107, 108, 112, 114, 118, 863, 865, 867-869, 906, 912, 923-926, 929, 1092, 1094, 1096
 - adding using hot folders 906
 - changing to pre-jobs in InSite 1094
 - copying 112
 - Copying Jobs and Pre-Jobs 114
 - copying settings from template jobs 83
 - creating manually 85
 - creating using pre-jobs 81, 82
 - creating with smart hot folders 912, 923-926, 929
 - creating with template jobs 83
 - custom fields 96, 118
 - destroying 102
 - enabling web access 1092, 1096
 - exporting 863, 865
 - finding 98
 - getting information about jobs 97, 102, 103
 - history 51
 - importing 868, 869
 - job notes 96
 - managing 96
 - moving between groups 107, 108
 - name 29
 - naming 83

- notes 100
 - server 29
 - template jobs 83
 - Jobs menu item 22
 - Jobs view
 - about 16
 - displaying columns 1034
 - hiding columns 1034
 - moving columns 1034
 - sorting 1034
 - jpeg
 - images 307
 - outputs 620
 - JPEG 2000 images 126
 - JPEG compression ratio check box 296
 - JPEG output 625
 - jpg files 307
 - jpg tiff files 307
 - jt files 352, 906
 - JTP list 358, 433, 440, 452, 490, 497, 510, 544, 551, 562, 596, 606, 865
 - JTP Queues menu item 851
 - JTP Queues view 844
 - JTPs 184
 - just-in-time impositions 341
 - Justified list 483, 538, 588, 614
- K**
- Karat digital press 593
 - Keep Even Pages Selected menu item 30, 63
 - Keep Odd Pages Selected menu item 30, 63
 - Keepaway Mode check box 233
 - keyboard shortcuts 26, 73, 195, 429, 854, 861, 903
 - Keyword check box 278
 - Kind column 16, 33, 39, 1043, 1044
 - Kind field 53, 103
 - knockouts 257, 805, 812, 981
 - correcting 981
 - Kodak alternate defined for images check box 296
 - Kodak Approval area 452, 510, 606
 - Kodak Approval files 620
 - Kodak Approval output 625
 - Kodak NexStation 669
 - Kodak Proofers 620, 625
 - Kodak Proofers, layout 445
 - Kodak Proofing Software 620, 625
 - Konica Minolta bizhub PRO C500 press 669
 - Korean fonts 316
 - KPS 620, 625
 - Kspot
 - defined 953
- L**
- L*a*b* 307, 775, 805
 - large format thumbnails 251
 - Last Archived column 16, 48, 1044, 1057
 - Last Archived field 103
 - Last Final Output column 16, 1044
 - Last Final Output field 103
 - lay files 307
 - Layer column 417
 - Layer Type column 968
 - layered input 126
 - layered PDF files 950
 - Layered PDF Flattening Warning message 174, 177
 - layered PDF input 952, 955, 963–965
 - advantages 952
 - creating version plan 965
 - mapping input layers 964
 - models supported 955
 - refining 952, 963
 - requirements 952
 - rerefining 964
 - layered PDF versioning 941
 - Layered PDF Versioning
 - See LPV 943
 - Layered PDF Versioning (LPV) check box 91
 - layering pages 345, 348
 - layers 944, 950, 961, 966, 968, 969, 981, 987, 1022, 1027
 - base 966, 968, 987
 - change 968
 - column 968
 - defined 944
 - deleting 969
 - error 966, 981
 - from template job 961
 - name 968
 - PDF 950, 987
 - version change 987
 - version plan 950
 - vs. plates 950
 - layout
 - shifting vertically 654
 - Layout is 90° Different Than Media check box 445, 600
 - Layout section, process templates 445, 501, 556, 600
 - legacy versioning 961
 - Legacy versioning 345, 348, 620, 941, 1022, 1024–1028, 1031
 - about 1022
 - copying source page assignments 1027
 - importing impositions 1025, 1026
 - layering pages 345, 348
 - options 1028
 - outputting 620
 - outputting separations 1031
 - preparing input files 1025
 - reordering page layers 1027
 - Legacy Versioning check box 91
 - Library Name box 792
 - licensed Preps integration options 1059
 - licenses, color management 775
 - Limit box 459, 513, 565
 - limitations with ColorFlow 837
 - line art settings, Preflight Editor 300
 - Line Joins options 233

- Line Splits box 233
 - Line width less than Points check box 300
 - linear scaling 729
 - Link to Layers dialog box 977
 - linking 948, 970, 972, 977, 978, 985, 1006, 1014
 - about 948
 - automating 1006
 - changes 985
 - figure 948
 - methods 972
 - multiple versioned pages 977
 - scenarios 1014
 - tools 970
 - unlinking 978
 - List view 1035
 - lists, displaying items in 1035
 - Load Media check box 476, 531, 580, 613
 - Locate Crop Mark of Length box 483, 538, 614, 653
 - Locate Page Marks Adjacent to list 445, 483, 501, 600, 614
 - Locate Sheet Marks Adjacent to list 483, 538, 588, 614
 - Location column 33, 39, 48, 1043, 1057, 1104
 - Location field 53
 - logging in, Workshop 4
 - logging on 1096, 1099
 - Lookup Recipe in Color Database option 221, 440, 497, 551, 596
 - loose page 636, 752-754, 758, 1095
 - annotations in InSite 1095
 - previewing 753
 - proofing with Acrobat 636
 - reviewing 1095
 - Veris proofs 758
 - loose page output 433, 755, 758, 809, 818, 819, 937, 938
 - DCS vector 755
 - outputting multiple 937
 - process templates 433
 - Veris 758
 - loose page output process templates
 - DCS vector 755
 - description 433, 434, 440, 445, 452, 459, 476, 479
 - output formats 620
 - Veris 758
 - loose page proofs
 - output names 1002
 - Low Resolution Image Handling list 202, 358
 - low-resolution PDF files 724, 725
 - LPV 941, 961, 1001
 - jobs creating 961
 - variable marks 1001
 - LQS TIFF output 625
 - LQS TIFF output format 620
 - LW Resolution box 452, 606
 - LW Type list 452, 606
- M**
- Macromedia FreeHand 126
 - Make CT same size as Lifework file check box 606
 - Make CT same size as Linework file check box 452
 - Make Drop Shadow Images Transparent check box 202
 - making a tape read only 892
 - Manage Hot Folders for Job dialog box 912
 - Manage Hot Folders menu item 67
 - Manage Job Favorites dialog box 58
 - Manage Job/User Templates menu item 67
 - Manage User Favorites dialog box 58
 - Manage Work Types dialog box 1098
 - management information system, integrating with 1096
 - manual procedures
 - creating version plan 965
 - Manual Trigger Rules menu item 23, 68
 - Manually check box 476, 531, 580, 613
 - Map All Spot Colors to Process option 221
 - Map selected layer to box 964
 - mapping input layers 964
 - Mark Job as Completed After Successful Purge check box 882
 - marks 445, 501, 600, 689, 691, 692, 697-700, 711, 719-722, 724, 1001
 - about 689
 - Acrobat Distiller settings 692
 - calculating at distance 692
 - distilling 698
 - importing 698
 - page 445, 501, 600
 - placement in final output 691
 - process templates 700
 - syntax 721, 722
 - text-file-based 719-722
 - variable 1001
 - Marks area 445, 501, 556, 600
 - Marks section, imposition output process template 538
 - masks 267, 268
 - Match Colors area 225, 440, 497, 551, 596
 - Match Colors in Page Content check box 440, 497, 551, 596
 - Match Digits button 417
 - Match Either button 417
 - Match Letters button 417
 - matching objects 989
 - math operators 1010
 - Max Height box 445, 501, 556, 600
 - Max Layers box 91
 - Max Layers column 16, 1044
 - Max Layers field 103
 - Max Width box 445, 501, 556, 600
 - Maximum Characters for File Name box 469
 - Maximum Characters from Job Name box 524, 578
 - Maximum File Size box 865
 - maximum layers 90
 - Maximum miter limit is above check box 300
 - Maximum Number of Info Windows Displayed box 1036
 - Maxtone area 459, 513, 565
 - Maxtone history 855
 - Measurement Unit list 1036
 - Measurement units check box 283
 - measurements, checking 636
 - Media area 445, 501, 556, 600

- media box 272, 379
 - Media check box 753
 - Media Handling area 479, 534
 - Media Manager 888-892, 895, 899, 900, 903, 1047
 - about 888
 - copying entire tape 891, 892
 - keyboard shortcuts 903
 - making a tape read only 890, 892
 - Media pane, Media Manager 895, 1047
 - media pools 888
 - Media Selection area 479, 534
 - Media Size column 33, 39, 986, 1050
 - Media Size field 53
 - Media State column 895
 - Media Unload Mode list 476, 531, 580, 613
 - Medium Complete menu option 898
 - Medium Logical Copy menu option 898
 - Medium Verify menu option 898
 - menus 19, 24, 26, 60, 70, 72, 190, 192, 193, 195, 424-426, 428, 778, 779, 781, 794, 795, 797, 849, 851, 853, 857, 858, 860, 898-900, 902
 - APA Editor 425, 426
 - Media Manager 899, 900
 - Merge Distance box 459, 513, 565
 - merged content 1000
 - messages 861
 - metadata, PDF Preflight settings 278
 - Method list 440, 497, 551, 596
 - Min Height box 445, 501, 556, 600
 - Min Horizontal Gutter Height box 445
 - Min Vertical Gutter Width box 445
 - Min Width box 445, 501, 556, 600
 - minimizing SeparationVersion tag 1004
 - Minimum Absolute Step Limit box 233
 - Minimum Dot Size box 459, 513, 565
 - minimum dot size, calculation 640
 - Minimum Line Weight box 209
 - Mirror Print check box 476, 531, 580, 613
 - Mirror Screens with Output check box 459, 513, 565
 - MIS, integrating with 1096
 - Miscellaneous area 91
 - Miter Limit box 233
 - miter trap 265
 - mitered corner trap 265
 - mixed geometry pages 372
 - mode, Connect vs Powerpack 1036
 - models 953-956, 981, 989, 1014, 1015, 1017-1021
 - input files about 953
 - input files Model 1 954, 981, 989, 1014
 - input files Model 2 954, 981, 989, 1015
 - input files Model 3 954, 1017
 - input files Model 4 954, 1018
 - input files Model 5 954, 1019
 - input files Model 6 955, 1020
 - input files Model 7 955, 1021
 - input files Model 8 955, 1021
 - input files multiple bases 956
 - Modification and create date are not set check box 278
 - Modified column 33, 39, 48, 1043, 1057
 - Modified field 53
 - Modify button 1098
 - modifying
 - process templates 183, 187
 - modifying process templates 183
 - moire 643
 - monitoring processes 53, 839, 841
 - monotone images 307
 - Move Group dialog box 110
 - Move Job dialog box 107
 - Move Job from Remote Server menu item 20
 - Move Job from Remove Server dialog box 117
 - Move menu item 20
 - Move Rows area 417
 - Move Rules view 932
 - Move to button 110
 - Move To column 932
 - Move to Job Hot Folder option 932
 - Move to Job menu item 20
 - Move to Job Relative Location options 932
 - Move to Location option 932
 - Move to Pre-Job menu item 20
 - moving columns 1034
 - moving files with smart hot folders 912, 923, 925, 926, 929
 - moving job groups 110
 - moving jobs 112, 113, 116
 - moving jobs between groups 107, 108
 - moving pre-jobs between groups 107, 108
 - moving process templates between groups 198
 - moving separators, Process Templates pane 31
 - Multi-Master check box 286
 - Multipage option 997
 - multiple bases 951, 956, 987
 - multiple generate errors 989
 - multiple imposition plans 346
 - multiple loose page output 937, 938
 - Multiple Pages check box 283
 - multiple servers 113
 - multiple users 1096, 1099
 - multiplicative blend formula, overprint 257
- ## N
- Name box 1074
 - Name of Error Layer box 981
 - Name the imported library as box 792
 - named patterns 385, 392, 412
 - names 963, 966, 968, 970, 1002, 1007
 - color 968
 - layer 968
 - output 1002
 - patterns 1007
 - spot color 963
 - versioned pages 970, 1007
 - versions 966
 - names, of jobs and job groups 83
 - names, patterns in smart hot folders 914, 917, 919
 - NChannel color space is used 289
 - Negative Print check box 476, 531, 580, 613

- neutral density 256, 781
- Neutral Density box 233, 788
- new
 - process template groups 197
 - process templates 185, 186
- New Group button 86
- New Group menu item 20
- New Group Name box 109
- New Imposition Details dialog box 1074
- New Imposition dialog box 1073
- New Job menu item 20
- New Name box 100, 111
- New Page Set name box 347
- New Pre-Job menu item 20
- new Prinerger tasks 946
- New Process Template Group menu option 191
- New Process Template menu option 191
- new UI elements 960
- New Version Names box 1028
- New Workflow Template Group menu option 191
- New Workflow Template menu option 191
- NexStation 669
- no warnings or errors icon 840
- Non-Printable Margin box 445, 501
- noncommon separations 1001
- noncontiguous range of page set positions 392, 401
- nonlinear scaling 729
- nonlinear web growth profile 731
- Nonoptimal compression check box 278
- Normalize section 963
- Normalize section, refine process template 209
- Normalizer Input Configuration File box 209
- Notes 100
- Number of Copies box 479, 534
- Number of Pages Across box 445, 600
- Number of Pages box 1074
- Number of Proofs box 476, 531
- Number of separations check box 289
- Number of Versions box 967
- numbers 1009, 1010
 - padded 1009
 - versioned page 1010

O

- object comparison tolerances 981
- object differences 981
- object matching 981, 989
- OCF fonts 316
- odd pages, selecting 30
- Of Bitmap Resolution Below list 202, 358
- Of Contone Resolution Below list 202, 358
- Offset column 33, 39, 986, 1041, 1050
- Offset field 53
- Offset X/Y columns 417
- offsets, page geometry 372, 375, 378, 382
- On Press job status 89
- Online column 16, 1044
- Online field 103
- Opacity list 788

- opacity, die lines and varnishes 830, 831
- Open APA File dialog box 423
- Open button 86, 99, 107, 109, 110
- Open Folder button 181
- Open in Adobe Acrobat menu item 60
- Open Job dialog box 99
- Open Job Folder in File Browser menu item 60
- Open Job menu item 20
- Open Jobs in Group menu item 20
- Open menu item 20
- Open Pre-Job menu item 20
- Open Type fonts 126
- opening Preps outside of job context 1070
- OPI
 - about 307
 - Adobe Photoshop 129
 - clipping paths 270
 - drop shadows 267, 269
 - image search paths 304
 - Macromedia FreeHand 126
 - options 202
 - PDF Preflight 299
 - search method 304
 - soft masks 267, 268
 - spot color channels 270
- OPI is used check box 299
- OPI version is incompatible with check box 299
- Optimize section, refine process template 245
- optimizing images 309
- Options area 86
- order of processing tasks 845
- Ordinal Number column 33, 39, 1050
- Ordinal Number field 53
- Orientation box 653
- Orientation column 33, 39, 417, 1050
- Orientation field 53
- Orientation list 445, 501, 556, 600
- Orientation settings 378
- orientation, page 377
- Original Composite Format fonts 316
- Other Files field 103
- other software
 - configuring 1100, 1101
 - integrating 1100
 - starting 1101
- Outline Fonts check box 725
- output 950
 - separated 950
- Output column 801, 826, 828
- Output Comment box 174
- output devices, reading PJTF files 652
- output file names 1002, 1004
 - best practices 1002
 - customizing 1002
 - minimizing example 1004
 - Prinerger-defined 1002
- output file types 625
- Output Format list 471, 526, 583
- Output Intent area 471

- Output intent does not conform to requirements check box 302
 - Output Intents area 526
 - Output Kind list 452, 606
 - Output list 828
 - output names 1002, 1004
 - imposition proof 1002
 - loose page proof 1002
 - separations 1004
 - Output Plate column 968
 - output plates 1000
 - output process templates
 - final output 544
 - Imposition Output 489
 - loose page output 433
 - Output Selected as list 801, 826
 - Output Separately option 968
 - output separations 1000
 - Output Separations Handling list 510
 - Output to list 620, 725
 - Output Type options 476, 531, 575, 580, 613
 - outputs
 - final output process template 544
 - formats available 620
 - Imposition Output process template 489
 - loose page output process template 433
 - PDF/X 754
 - plates, remaking 626, 627, 629
 - plates, remaking with tonal adjustments 628
 - outputting 626, 669, 1031, 1102, 1104
 - digital printers 669, 1102, 1104
 - outputting versioned separations 1031
 - outside of job context 1070
 - Overlay Versioned Content check box 452, 510, 606, 994
 - overprint 981
 - Overprint Black Bitmaps check box 233
 - Overprint Black Graphics check box 233
 - Overprint Black Strokes Up To check box 233
 - Overprint Black Text Limit box 233
 - Overprint Handling (CPU Intensive) check box 440, 497, 551, 596
 - Overprint Handling check box 225
 - overprints 225, 257, 805, 812, 830
 - overprint conversion 257
 - overprint conversion settings 225
 - preventing unintended knockouts 257
 - varnishes 830
 - Override Embedded Profiles check box 225
 - Override Increased Yellow Ruling check box 459, 513, 565
 - Override Page Size box 209
 - Override Resolution at 1200 dpi check box 202
 - overview 958
 - procedures 958
 - Overwrite Existing Automated Page Assignment File check box 358, 870
 - Overwrite Existing Files check box 885
 - Overwrite Existing Files with Same Name check box 469, 524, 578, 661, 865, 1089
- ## P
- padded numbers 1009
 - page approval status 771, 772
 - page assignments 341, 342, 345, 349-351, 385, 1027
 - assigning 342
 - copying between page sets 345, 350
 - copying versioning source to other impositions 1027
 - examples, APA 385
 - manually 341, 349
 - Page Assignments column 46, 1055
 - Page Assignments tab 417
 - page box layout 272
 - Page box layout does not conform with check box 283
 - Page Color column 801, 826, 828
 - Page Colors column 33, 986, 1050
 - Page Colors field 53
 - Page column 33, 39, 349, 986, 1041, 1050
 - Page Count box 347
 - Page End box 347
 - Page field 53
 - Page File Location column 33, 39, 1050
 - Page File Location field 53
 - page file name component 1002
 - page geometry 323, 371, 372, 375, 377, 378
 - about 371
 - Adobe Acrobat 323
 - dialog options 378
 - examples 375, 377
 - using addition and subtraction 372
 - Page Marks box 483, 614
 - Page Marks check box 445, 600, 753
 - page name back reference 1010
 - Page Name Back Reference box 968
 - page name patterns
 - character limit 1013
 - errors 1007
 - from template job 961
 - using 1006
 - Page Name Patterns box 968
 - page number back reference 1010
 - Page Number Back Reference box 968
 - Page Open for Edit field 53
 - Page orientation is not equal for all pages check box 283
 - Page Position column 33, 39, 986, 1050
 - Page Position field 53
 - page position, APA 392, 394
 - Page scaling factor is used check box 283
 - page set booklets 760-762
 - Page Set column 39, 46, 1041, 1055
 - Page Set list 349
 - Page Set Name/Prefix column 417
 - Page Set Options check boxes 358, 870
 - Page Set Prefix field 53
 - Page set starting page # box 1028

- page sets 30, 341, 346, 347, 349, 351, 724, 725, 1026, 1034
 - about 341
 - deleting 349
 - existing 1026
 - multiple impositions 346
 - options 347, 349, 351
 - publishing PDF files 724, 725
 - selecting 30
 - sorting 1034
- Page Sets pane
 - collapsing groups 1035
 - columns 1050
 - displaying columns 1034
 - expanding groups 1035
 - hiding columns 1034
 - moving columns 1034
 - Pages View 33
 - sorting 1034
- Page size is not check box 283
- Page Start box 347
- Page Type list 86
- pages 147, 262, 283, 323, 326, 345, 348, 375, 377, 379, 380, 724, 725, 771, 772, 800, 1027, 1034, 1093
 - approving 771, 772, 1093
 - centering 379, 380
 - colors contained 800
 - deleting 147
 - layering 345, 348, 1027
 - offset, example 375
 - orientation, example 377
 - publishing PDF files 724, 725
 - settings in PDF Preflight 283
 - sorting 1034
 - thumbnails 262
 - viewing and editing in Acrobat 323
- Pages Approved column 16, 1044
- Pages Approved field 103
- Pages containing selected color area 801
- Pages menu item 66
- Pages pane
 - collapsing groups 1035
 - columns 1050
 - displaying columns 1034
 - expanding groups 1035
 - hiding columns 1034
 - moving columns 1034
 - Pages View 33
 - Signatures View 39
 - sorting 1034
- Pages View 986
- Pages view, Job Manager
 - columns 1034
 - description 33
 - displaying columns 1034
 - hiding columns 1034
 - List view 1035
 - Thumbnails view 1035
- pageset 341-343, 345-351
- Pandora 79, 351, 352, 354, 355, 1087-1089
 - creating imposition plans 1089
 - imposed flats for Prinerger Direct 79
 - impositions 351, 354, 355, 1089
 - integrating with Prinerger 1087, 1088
- panes, customizing
 - collapsing items 1035
 - displaying columns 1034
 - expanding items 1035
 - hiding columns 1034
 - moving columns 1034
- panes, Job Manager 53, 841
- PANTONE
 - color search order 783
 - library 781, 784
- Paper list 445, 556, 600
- partial job import/export 1005
- partial jobs
 - about 863, 864, 867
 - exporting 865
 - importing 868, 869
- Partition Capacity column 895
- Partition State column 895
- Password box 102, 368, 1099
- Paste menu item 850, 857
- paths, clipping 270
- pattern matching, Automatic Production Automation (APA) 382, 385, 398
- Pattern or indexed color is used check box 289
- patterns 98, 1006, 1007
 - page name 1006, 1007
- Paused icon 840
- pausing processes 845
- PDF 126, 161, 162, 252, 255, 620, 625, 652, 724, 725, 754, 1100
 - and PJTF files 652
 - digital master 255
 - high resolution 724, 725
 - input files 161, 162, 1100
 - low resolution 724, 725
 - output 620
 - pages 724, 725
 - PDF/X 754
 - publishing 724, 725
 - specifications 162
 - supported file types 126, 625
 - why used in Prinerger 255
- PDF 1.4/1.5 box 963
- PDF Box to Use list 445, 600
- PDF Color Name Encoding list 1036
- PDF Compare plug-in 325, 327
- PDF File Name box 469, 534
- PDF input files 952
- PDF Layer Selection option 964
- PDF layers 950, 987
- PDF Merge plug-in 325, 327
- PDF Path box 479, 534
- PDF Preflight 199, 218, 271, 274-276
 - about 199, 271

- generating reports for distribution 275
- process Template 218
- settings 276
- PDF Trap Editor plug-in 323, 325
- PDF Trap Viewer plug-in 323, 325
- PDF Trapper JTP 323
- PDF vector files 997
- PDF version is incompatible with check box 278
- PDF/X
 - about 630
 - output 620, 754
 - PDF Preflight 302
 - support for 126, 625
- PDF2Go Files check box 278
- PDFX version key is not set to check box 302
- performance, improving
 - columns in Job Finder 1044
 - destroying job history 861
- pinging servers 12
- Pixels box 459, 513, 565
- pjt files 184, 352, 652
 - about 652
 - and JTPs 184
 - and Prinergy 652
- Placement area 445, 501, 556, 600
- placement order in Pandora 401
- placing sheet marks 691
- Plate Characterization 545
- Plate Line box 434, 491, 545, 594, 677
- plate mapping 961, 1000
 - from template job 961
- plate output 1000
- Plate Remake dialog box 626, 627, 629
- plate scanner, replacement 742
- Plate Verification 545
- plates vs. layers 950
- plates, remaking 626, 627, 629
- plates, remaking with tonal adjustments 628
- plug-ins
 - for Adobe Acrobat 325, 327
 - PageMaker 323
 - QuarkXPress 323
- Pools pane 895, 1047
- populated job ticket, importing 353
- position 989
- Position column 349, 417
- Position list 349
- Position Resolution box 981
- PostScript
 - smart hot folders 912
 - specifications 162
 - support for 126, 625
- PostScript input files 952
- Powerpack mode 1036
- PPF files 742, 744, 750-752
- pre-job 960
- pre-jobs
 - about 82
 - changing to jobs in InSite 1094
 - copying 96, 112
 - creating 81, 85, 86
 - destroying 102
 - groups 108, 109
 - InSite 1095
 - managing 96
 - moving between groups 107, 108
 - naming 83
 - opening 99
 - renaming 100
- Pre-Jobs menu item 22
- Pre-jobs view
 - about 16
 - displaying columns 1034
 - hiding columns 1034
 - moving columns 1034
 - sorting 1034
- Pre-Production job, InSite 1094
- pre-requisite information 946
- Prefer embedded Output Intents for Final Output Profile
 - check box 225
- preferences 1035, 1070
 - Preps 1070
- Preferences menu item 22, 63, 850
- prefix 970, 1007, 1010
 - versioned page name 970
- Prefix box 347, 368, 970, 1074
- Preflight Handling list 218
- Preflight Profile Editor dialog box 276
- Preflight Profile Manager dialog box 276
- Preflight Report column 33, 39, 1050
- Preflight Report Location box 218
- Preflight Report Viewer menu item 67
- preflighting PDF 274
- Prepare 161
- preparing files
 - about 125
 - CT/LW 153
 - duotones 130
 - FreeHand 126
 - Illustrator 127
 - InDesign 128
 - input files 143
 - PageMaker 128
 - Photoshop 129
 - versioning 1025
- Preps 79, 351-355, 912, 917, 1070, 1087, 1088, 1105
 - files from UpFront 1105
 - files in smart hot folders 912, 917
 - importing imposition plans 353-355
 - integrating with Prinergy 1087, 1088
 - opening outside of job context 1070
 - with Prinergy Direct 79
- Preps 5.1.1 or earlier 1070
- Preps in Workshop, create Preps imposition 1065
- Preps in Workshop, edit Preps imposition 1068
- Preps Integration 1059
- Preps software 991
- PrepsPrinergy.cfg 1070

- Preserve PDF Layers check box 997
- Press console 742
- Press Interface list 575
- press sheet 401
- press web growth 729
- press-ready PDFs 252
- Preview button 445, 600
- Preview Resolution list 575
- previewing
 - loose page output 752, 753
- Primary Color Output box 221, 225
- Primary File column 33, 39, 48, 1043, 1057
- Prinerger 10
- Prinerger Client Install Wizard 6
- Prinerger Connect
 - using with ColorFlow 831
 - RGB limitations with ColorFlow 837
- Prinerger Direct 9, 76
- Prinerger DotShop plug-in 325
- Prinerger Geometry Editor plug-in 325
- Prinerger PDF Compare 989
- Prinerger release 942
- Prinerger releases
 - previous 1005
- Prinerger Separation Repair plug-in 325
- Prinerger Separation Viewer plug-in 325
- Prinerger Signature Selection 1065
- Prinerger View Accelerator plug-in 325
- Prinerger-Defined File Naming area 469, 524, 578
- Prinerger-defined output file names 1002
- Print Characterization 545
- Print Later button 803
- Print Order button 826
- Print Order dialog box 803
- print order, color 803
- Print Production 545
- Print Settings tab 177
- Print Sooner button 803
- printer drivers 128
- Printing check box 278
- PrintLink
 - about 742
 - CIP3 compliance 742, 747
 - configuration file 746, 747
 - customizing CIP3 tags 746, 747
 - generating PPF files 744
 - hot folders 752
 - how it works 742
 - ink reports 750, 752
 - PPF files 750-752
 - process templates 744, 751
 - sample configuration file 747
 - section in process template 575
 - setting up 744, 751, 752
- PrintLink section, process templates 575
- prioritizing tasks 845
- Priority column 846, 1053
- Priority list 174, 177
- problem file 989
- procedures 958, 978, 990
 - about 958
 - fixing contributing page 990
 - unlinking 978
- Process (Destination) Profile box 551
- Process CEPS Data check box 221, 225, 440, 497, 551, 596
- Process Details area 842
- Process Elements area 842
- Process Files option 910
- Process Info dialog box 839, 842
- Process Information dialog box 989
- Process Marks check box 440, 497, 551, 596
- Process menu item 850
- Process Name box 174, 177
- Process Selected Files Using Process Template check box 147
- Process Status field 842
- process status icons 840
- process template
 - generate 981
 - group name 986
- Process Template column 33, 846, 1043, 1050, 1053
- Process Template Editor
 - about 185
 - keyboard shortcuts 195
 - menus 192
- Process Template field 174, 842
- Process Template Group column 39, 46, 846, 1041, 1053, 1055
- Process Template Group field 842
- process template groups
 - about 196
 - changing icons 198
 - moving templates between 198
- Process Template list 939
- process template menu item 23, 68
- process templates 7, 29, 117, 183-188, 197, 198, 744, 907
 - about 29, 183
 - and hot folders 907
 - Copy Job 117
 - creating 185, 186, 197
 - deleting 188, 197
 - editing 183, 187
 - moving between groups 198
 - ppf files 744
 - protecting 184
 - renaming 187, 197
 - user rights 184
- Process Templates pane 52
- Process Tools menu item 68
- Process Types menu item 851
- Process Types view 844
- Processed Filename column 417
- Processed folder, job folders 84
- processes 53, 171, 173, 839-841, 844-846
 - changing task priority 845
 - completed 840, 841
 - deleting 841

- deleting completed 173
 - monitoring 53, 839, 841, 844
 - pausing 845
 - queue 844
 - resuming 845
 - stopping 845
 - Processes pane
 - about 53, 841
 - completed processes 840
 - monitoring 839, 841
 - Processing Info area 53
 - processing input files 7, 153, 199–201, 907, 912, 923–925, 927, 929
 - about 199
 - CT/LW files 153
 - how to 200
 - how to start 7
 - refine process template 201
 - TIFF/IT files 153
 - using hot folders 907, 929
 - using smart hot folders 912, 923–925, 929
 - Producer check box 278
 - Production job, InSite 1094
 - production plan 946
 - profile files, tower color 739
 - profile files, web growth 729
 - Profile list 358
 - progress bar 842
 - Prompt for Tapes From These Pools First list 892
 - proof approval status 771, 1093
 - Proof Due column 16, 1044
 - Proof Due field 103
 - Proof field 91
 - Proofer Layout list 445, 600
 - Proofer Model 531
 - Proofer Model box 476
 - Proofer Name list 476, 531
 - proofing
 - generating proofs 626
 - soft 636
 - tiling 655
 - with Adobe Acrobat 636
 - proofs 997
 - Protocol box 479, 534
 - PS2 (Vector Output) output format 620
 - PS3 (Vector Output) output format 620
 - publish file process templates
 - description 677
 - Publish to PDF File dialog box 725
 - Publish to PDF menu item 60
 - publishing PDF files 724, 725, 754
 - options 725
 - PDF/X 754
 - Punch Setting list 445, 501, 556
 - Purge process Template 882
 - purging 875, 877, 881, 882
 - about 875
 - compared to destroying 875
 - limit 875
 - options 882
 - status and state changes 877
 - Put Files in Directory box 575
- ## Q
- Quality list 245, 358, 471, 526, 583
 - QuarkXpress 990
 - QuarkXPress 323, 784
 - Queue box 479, 534
 - Queue Manager
 - about 844
 - choosing views 844
 - JTP Queues view 844
 - keyboard shortcuts 854
 - menus 850
 - options 846, 1053
 - pausing processes 845
 - Process Types view 844
 - resuming processes 845
 - stopping processes 845
 - View menu 851
 - workflow processors 844, 845
 - Queue Position column 846, 1053
 - Queued icon 840
 - Quick Builder 965
 - about 965
 - limitations 965
 - quitting Workshop 12
- ## R
- Range box 349, 358, 970, 977
 - Add Versioned Pages dialog box 970
 - Link to Layers dialog box 977
 - raster output 625
 - raster output files 620
 - raster separated data 167
 - Re-combine check box 209
 - re-dropping files into hot folders 906
 - Reader Order button 725
 - reader spreads, splitting 260
 - reader-order proofs from imposition 762
 - Ready for Final Output job status 89
 - Reduce Gutters if Required check box 445, 600
 - Reduce to Fit Media (On Vector) check box 445, 501
 - refine process template
 - all sections 201
 - CEPS Conversion section 201
 - ColorConvert section 225
 - Copydot section 220
 - Fonts and Images section 202
 - Impose section 251
 - Normalize section 209
 - Optimize section 245
 - PDF Preflight section 218
 - Spot Color Handling section 221
 - Thumbnail section 251, 262

- Trap section 233
- Refined Filename column 417
- refined pages 948, 963, 970, 978, 981, 1006, 1014
 - automating linking 1006
 - linking 948, 970, 1014
 - naming 1006
 - object extraction 981
 - requirements 963
 - unlinking 978
- refining 199–201, 255, 669, 786, 807, 816, 817, 907
 - about 199
 - digital printing 669
 - options 201
 - procedure 200
 - refining process 255
 - using hot folders 907
- Refresh menu item 22, 66, 795, 851, 858
- Refresh Queue Manager Every box 1036
- regenerating 985, 1002
- registration marks 128
- Reject menu item 68
- Rejected page approval status 771, 1093
- rejecting pages, InSite 1092
- Relative check box 311
- relative ink dot percentage 262
- remote access 7
- remote servers 12, 113, 116
- Remove Font XUIDs check box 202, 358
- Remove Traps check box 725
- Remove Version button 1028
- removing
 - color libraries 791
 - imposition plans 354
 - input files 147
 - jobs 102
 - pages 147
- Rename button 1028
- Rename Color Component box 777
- Rename Color Component dialog box 777
- Rename files check box 932
- Rename Group dialog box 111
- Rename Group menu item 20
- Rename Job dialog box 100
- Rename Job menu item 20
- Rename menu item 20
- Rename Pre-Job menu item 20
- renaming 100, 110, 111, 187, 197, 815, 912, 923, 927
 - files with smart hot folders 912, 923
 - job groups 110, 111
 - jobs 100
 - process template groups 197
 - process templates 187
 - spot colors 815
- Render Mode options 452, 510, 562, 606
- Render section, process templates 452, 510, 562, 606
- Render Shadings check box 471, 526, 583
- Rendering Intent area 225
- Rendering intent for images is not check box 289
- Rendering intent for text and line art are not check box 289
- Rendering Intent list 440, 497, 551, 596
- Reorder Page Assignments dialog box 1030
- Reorder Page Assignments menu item 63
- reordering page layers, versioning 1027
- reordering process templates on Job or User tabs 31
- Report column, Preflight Profile Editor 276
- Report name box 725
- Report transparent element check box 283
- reports, ink 750–752
- reports, preflight 275
- requesting corrections 1092
- requirements
 - version plans 966
- Requires Generation status 986
- Resample check box 220, 245, 358, 433, 490, 544
- Resample LW check box 201
- Reset to Default button 225
- Resolution column 33, 39, 1050
- Resolution of B&W images is above check box 296
- Resolution of B&W images is below check box 296
- Resolution of color or grayscale image is above check box 296
- Resolution of color or grayscale image is below check box 296
- Resolution X box 452, 510, 562, 606
- Resolution Y box 452, 510, 562, 606
- Resolve Ambiguous Spot Color Definitions check box 221
- Respect Mac Filenames check box 469, 524, 578
- Restore Last Group Expansion in Job Finder at Login check box 1036
- resuming processes 172, 845
- retail catalog scenario 946
- Retain CMYK Black check box 440, 497, 551, 596
- Retain CMYK Black In area 225
- Retrap Trapped Pages check box 233
- Retrieve process Template 885
- retrieving archives 875, 877, 884, 885
 - about 875
 - limit 875
 - options 885
 - status and state changes 877
- returning centred pages to original offsets 380
- reusing hot folders 909
- reusing job settings with pre-jobs 82
- reusing job settings with template jobs 83
- reviewing pages, InSite 1092
- RGB 307, 775
- RGB Black or CMYK Black is used check box 289
- RGB Gray or CMYK Gray is used check box 289
- RGB limitations with ColorFlow 837
- Right margin only 654
- right-click
 - context menu 958, 965, 968, 969, 972, 978, 993, 994
- RIP 10, 91
- rosette 643
- Rotate Screens With Pages check box 459, 513, 565

- Rotation from CTP to Press list 575
 - rotation, Acrobat 209
 - rotation, order of operations 375
 - round trap 265
 - Rules-Based Automation 942, 1013
 - ruling, system history 855
 - RunPandora.exe 1088
- ## S
- Safe Protect Box check box 483, 538, 614
 - samp files 307
 - Save APA File As dialog box 423
 - Save Pages to Separate Files option 725
 - Save PDF Files to Folder lists 725
 - Save Process Template dialog box 186
 - Save to Multipage PDF File option 725
 - Save Window, Column, and View Options check box 1036
 - saving duotones 130
 - Scale (%) column 33, 39, 1050
 - Scale (%) field 53
 - Scale (on Raster) check box 445, 501, 556, 600
 - Scale (on Vector) check box 445, 501, 556, 600
 - Scale settings 378
 - Scale X column 417
 - Scale Y column 417
 - scaling
 - black width 265
 - small text 265
 - trap color 265
 - Scaling area 445, 501, 556, 600
 - Scaling box 201
 - Scaling Type options 556
 - scaling, examples 265
 - scaling, page geometry 372, 375
 - scaling, web growth 729
 - scenario example 946
 - Scitex CT 620
 - Scitex CT output 625
 - Scitex images 307
 - screen angles
 - about 649
 - and document screening 637
 - calculating 643
 - checking 636
 - history 855
 - soft proofs 636
 - Screen as option 459, 513, 565
 - Screen Color area 459, 565
 - Screen Color box 513
 - Screen Grabs list 452, 606
 - Screen Ruling box 459, 565
 - Screen Ruling list 513
 - Screen Solids check box 459, 513, 565
 - Screen System box 459
 - Screen System list 513, 565, 651
 - screen systems 643
 - Screening Angle box 788
 - Screening Mode options 459, 513, 565
 - screening, document 637
 - screening, seamless 650
 - seamless screening 650
 - Seamless Screening options 459, 565
 - Search box 971
 - Search EyeMedia for Hi-resolution Images check box 202
 - Search for High-Resolution Images in Image Search Paths check box 202
 - Search Subfolders check box 202
 - Secure PDF Password box 209
 - Security area 278
 - Select button 777
 - Select a Color Library dialog box 793
 - Select a template from the list list 910
 - Select All Colors menu item 795
 - Select All Includes Subfolders check box 147
 - Select All menu item 30, 63
 - Select All Processes menu item 850
 - Select Alternate Color Space list 792
 - Select an imposition application list 1071, 1073
 - Select button 869
 - Select Colorants To Extract dialog box 968
 - Select File dialog box 777
 - Select Files to Add lists 147
 - Select Folder dialog box 311
 - Select group name button 936
 - Select JDF Templates area 479, 534
 - Select Named Features box 479, 534
 - Select Page Set dialog box 1031
 - Select Target Group dialog box 936
 - Select Task Priority dialog box 849
 - Select Template Job dialog box 88
 - Select Web Access Customer dialog box 1096
 - Select XSLT File 870
 - Selectable list 562
 - Selected Items list 174
 - Selected Job Info list 869
 - Selected list 562
 - Selected Order button 725
 - Selected Signatures area 1074
 - selecting items, Job Manager 30
 - selection status bar 971
 - Send Files Using FTP check box 575
 - Separated File Control area 209
 - Separated File Control lists 245
 - separated files 125
 - separated input files 952
 - separated output 950
 - Separated Pages check box 283
 - separations 636, 1000, 1001, 1004, 1031
 - common 1001
 - file names 1004
 - noncommon 1001
 - outputting versioned 1031
 - proofing 636
 - Separations menu item 66
 - Separations view 46, 1000, 1034, 1055
 - columns 1055
 - description 46

- displaying columns 1034
- hiding columns 1034
- moving columns 1034
- options 46
- sorting 1034
- SeparationVersion
 - file name component 1004
 - file name tag 1002
 - variable mark 1001
- SeparationVersion file name component 1002
- SeparationVersion_Offset
 - variable mark 1001
- SeparationVersionCommon variable mark 1001
- SeparationVersionNoCommon variable mark 1001
- SeparationVersionNoCommon_Offset variable mark 1001
- SeparationVersionUnique variable mark 1001
- separators, Process Templates pane 31
- server and client
 - starting Workshop 4
 - versions 4
- Server list 5, 86
- Server Version field 5
- Servers 6
 - render stations 6
- Set Black to Overprint check box 225
- Set Colors to Knockout check box 225
- Set Halftone Phase for each Page check box 459, 513, 565
- Set Initial Separations After Imposition Import check box 358, 870
- Set Initial Separations menu item 63
- Set Job Attributes dialog box 91
- Set Job to Completed menu item 22
- Set Job to In Prepress menu item 22
- Set Overprint CMYK White to Knockout check box 225
- Set Page Geometry dialog box 378
- Set Page Geometry menu item 63
- Set Rich Black to Overprint check box 225
- Set to Defaults button 1036
- Set Web Growth Profile dialog box 741
- Set Web Growth Profile menu item 63
- setting imposition software location 1088
- setting initial separations 801
- setting job attributes 90, 91
- setting job status 90
- setting page geometry 377
- Severity column 51, 856, 1041, 1058
- Shades box 459, 513, 565
- Shades options 452, 510, 562, 606
- Shadows box 459, 513, 565
- shadows, drop 267, 269
- Sheet Marks box 483, 538, 588, 614
- Sheet Marks check box 753
- Sheet Size box 1074
- sheet-fed press, web growth 729
- sheetfed web growth profile 734
- Shift Along Height box 501, 556, 654
- Shift Along Width box 501, 556, 654
- Shingling (Creep) area 1074
- Shipped job status 89
- shortcuts, keyboard 26, 73, 195, 429, 854, 861, 903
- Show an Even Number of Thumbnails Per Row in All Page Views check box 1036
- Show Confirmation Dialogs for All Deletes check box 1036
- Show Files of Type list 147, 368, 1028
- Show Hidden Files in File Browser check box 1036
- Show in Workshop 120
- Show Not Licensed Dialogs check box 1036
- Show Press Sheet and Plate Edge check box 538
- Show Process Info Window When Process Is Created check box 1036
- Sides list 358
- Signa Station 352, 1087, 1088
 - integrating with Prinerger 1087, 1088
- signature booklet 762–764, 769
- Signature Booklet area 501
- Signature ID codes 712
- Signature ID Codes 713
- Signatures menu item 66
- Signatures view, Job Manager
 - displaying columns 1034
 - hiding columns 1034
 - List view 1035
 - options 39
 - Thumbnails view 1035
- signatures, thermal bluelines 756
- Simplify Duplicate Rows menu option 425
- Simulate overprints (CMYK only) check box 471, 526, 583
- simulating spot colors 805
- Size box 459, 513, 565
- Size column 33, 39, 48, 1043, 1050, 1057
- Size field 53
- Size list 445, 479, 501, 534, 556, 600
- Sizes area 103
- Skip Images With These Suffixes box 202
- Skip Remainder of Saveset After First File Read Error check box 892
- sleeve, imaging on 650
- small text scaling 265
- Small Text Size Limit box 233
- Small Text Width Scaling box 233
- Smart Hot Folder Location box 932
- Smart Hot Folder Manager dialog box 928
- Smart Hot Folder Name box 932
- smart hot folders 912, 914, 917, 921, 923–929, 932, 936, 962, 1006
 - about 912
 - adding 928
 - case study 921
 - checking 936
 - configuring 929
 - copying 928
 - creating 928
 - deleting 928
 - diagrams 923–927

- dialog box, navigating 932
- dropping additional input files 921
- editing 928
- getting started 928
- naming patterns, examples 914, 917
- Snapshot box 225, 434, 491, 545, 594, 677
- soft masks 267, 268
- soft proofs 636
- software
 - digital print 1102
 - other 1100
- sorting items by column 1034
- Source and Target Patterns view 932
- Source File Name Pattern box 932
- source file name patterns, smart hot folders
 - about 919
 - case study 921
 - examples 914, 917
- Source of Color Recipes area 440, 497, 551, 596
- Source Pattern column 932
- Spacing area 445, 600
- special characters 83
- specific naming patterns, smart hot folders 919
- Spectrum output device 805
- Split Reader's Spread Pages check box 209
- splitting 2-up reader spreads 260
- spoke and hub 1005
- Spot color definition is ambiguous check box 289
- spot color handling 201
- Spot Color Handling list 452, 606
- Spot color has an alternative color space other than CMYK or Gray check box 289
- Spot color is used check box 289
- spot color names 963
- Spot color suffix is not check box 289
- spot colors 221, 256, 270, 781, 804, 805, 807, 809, 812, 814-819, 821-825
 - final output 812, 823-825
 - imposition output 809, 821, 822
 - loose page output 809, 818, 819
 - neutral density 256, 781
 - OPI 270
 - preserving 807, 809, 812, 816, 818, 821, 823
 - reducing 807, 809, 812, 816-819, 821, 822, 824, 825
 - refine 221, 807, 816, 817
 - renaming 815
 - simulating with process colors 805
 - workflow 814
- Spotless Extended Color Management 830
- Spread Splitting area 209
- square brackets 1007
- Stale Archive Status column 16, 1044
- Stale Archive Status field 103, 1044
- standard corner trap 265
- Start Imposition Application dialog box 1079
- Start Process dialog box 174, 183, 964, 985
- Start Process dialog box, bypassing 172
- Start Process for Digital Printing dialog box 177
- Started at field 842
- Started column 846, 1053
- Starting at box 349
- starting other software 1101
- starting Pandora 1087
- starting Preps 1087
- starting Preps outside of job context 1070
- starting processes 171, 172, 174, 177, 1097
 - about 171
 - bypassing Start Process dialog 172
 - digital printing options 177
 - options 174
 - work types 1097
- starting Signa Station 1087
- starting Workshop 4
- Startup tab 1036
- status
 - generate 986
- status bar
 - selection 971
- Status column 846, 1053
- status, jobs in InSite 1094
- status, processes 839, 846
- step limit 262
- Step Limit box 233
- stochastic screening 651
- Stop button 842
- stopping processes
 - any process 845
 - job-specific process 172
- storage
 - about 875
 - status and state changes 877
- Storage menu item 66
- Storage view
 - collapsing groups 1035
 - columns 1057
 - description 48
 - displaying columns 1034
 - expanding groups 1035
 - hiding columns 1034
 - moving columns 1034
 - options 48
 - sorting 1034
- storing input files 143
- Style area 286
- Style list 445, 600
- Subject check box 278
- Submit as Multiple Print Jobs check box 476, 531, 580, 613
- Submit column 1104
- Submit for Digital Printing menu item 67
- Submit Input File to Digital Printer dialog box 675
- Submitted at field 842
- Submitted by field 842
- Submitted column 846, 1053
- Subpage directory 981
- subtraction 1010
- subtraction, page geometry 372, 394
- supported file types

- imposition 352
- input 126
- output 625
- smart hot folders 912
- Suppress Generation of Failed SubPages check box 209
- Surface column 33, 39, 1050
- surfaces, viewing soft proofs 636
- SurfaceVersion variable mark 1001
- suspending processes 845
- switching users 4, 1096, 1099
- syntax
 - APA 409
 - back references 1010
 - Link to Layer dialog box 977
- syntax, file and job names in Smart Hot Folders 914, 919
- syntax, marks files 719, 720
- System folder, job folders 84
- System History
 - about 855
 - keyboard shortcuts 861
 - options 856
 - screening 855
 - window 856
- system messages 855, 856

T

- tag and label printers 401
- tags
 - custom file names 657
 - file name 1002
 - PrintLink 746, 747
- Target Device box 1074
- target file and job names, smart hot folders
 - about 919
 - case study 921
 - examples 914, 917
 - target file name patterns 919
- Target File Name Pattern box 932
- Target Job Name Pattern box 932
- Target Pattern column 932
- Target Queue list 452, 510, 562, 606
- Target Resolution box and list 220
- task priority 845
- Template Job check box 86
- template jobs 83, 909, 961, 1007
 - LPV job attributes 961
 - page name patterns 1007
- Temporary Location for Retrieved Files box 892
- terms and definitions 944
- testing connections to servers 12
- Text and line art images tagged with ICC profile check box 289
- Text area 233
- text files
 - APA files 416
 - marks files 719–721, 724
- Text Grouping list 233
- Text is smaller than and is colored with or more separations check box 300
- Text is smaller than points and white check box 300
- Text is smaller than Points check box 300
- text settings, Preflight Editor 300
- thermal bluelines 756
- Thicken Thin Lines check box 209
- Thickness box 445, 501, 556, 600
- Thin Line Handling list 209
- This Page Set button 417
- This Position button 417
- Thumbnail section, refine process template 262
- thumbnails 251, 262, 326, 1035
 - displaying 1035
 - options 251
 - viewing and editing 326
- Thumbnails view 1035
- TIFF 157, 170, 307, 620, 636, 650, 729
 - files, creating 636
 - images 307
 - output format 620
 - tags, advanced 650
 - web growth 729
- TIFF/IT CT box 452, 606
- TIFF/IT files 307, 625
- TIFF/IT FP box 452, 606
- TIFF/IT HC box 452, 606
- TIFF/IT LW box 452, 606
- TIFF/IT Suffix area 452, 606
- TIFF/IT-P1
 - adding using hot folders 906
 - converting to PDF 201
 - processing 153
- tiling output 655
- Time column 51, 856, 1041, 1058
- tint patches 640
- Tint Resolution box 981
- Title check box 278
- To box 1074
- tolerances
 - object comparison 981
- tonal adjustments 628
- Tonal Control dialog box 628
- tower color file 729, 735, 739
- tracking processes, Business Link 1096
- Translate hot folder 341
- translated documents, locating 13
- transparency 163, 267–269
- transparency, PDF 1.4 (or later) 161, 163
- Transparent Drop Shadow Image Name Suffix check box 202
- transparent objects 981
- transparent overprint 257
- Trap area 233
- trap color scaling 265
- Trap Color Scaling box 233
- trap direction 265
- Trap Editor plug-in 325
- Trap flag check box 278
- Trap Resolution box 233
- Trap Tiling Pattern check box 233

- Trap Time-out box 233
- Trap to check boxes 233
- Trap Trimming list 233
- Trap Viewer plug-in 325
- trapezoidal web growth profile 734
- Trapnet annotation does not conform to requirements
 - check box 302
- trapping tools 323
- traps 201, 233, 256, 262, 265, 323, 326, 327, 803, 805
 - Color Combiner 805
 - common density limit 256
 - deleting 327
 - examples 265
 - neutral density 256
 - options 233
 - order 803
 - process template 201
 - step limit 262
 - tools and methods 323
- Treat Color As Black check box 788
- Treat Input Files as Flats option 251
- Treat pure gray RGB as gray check box 225
- Treat shading as option 225
- Trendsetter Spectrum 805
- Trim Adjustment boxes 483, 538, 614
- trim box 169, 272, 379, 963
 - best practices 963
- Trim check box 753
- trim lines, viewing 636
- Trim Media check box 725
- Trim Offset boxes 501
- trim size 372, 382
- Trim Size area 378
- Trim Size box 1074
- Trim Size column 33, 39, 986, 1041, 1050
- Trim Size field 53
- Trim Size X column 417
- Trim Size Y column 417
- True Type check box 286
- Try Emulation First check box 202
- Type 120
- Type 1 check box 286
- Type 3 check box 286
- Type check box 939
- Type column 846, 1053
- Type field 53
- Type list 445, 501, 600
- types
 - input files 952

U

- UI elements
 - new 960
- Ultimate Technologies ImpoStrip 352
- Unassign menu item 63
- unassigning pages 351
- undefined colors 785
- Under Color Removal function is used check box 289
- underscore 970

- unintended knockouts 257
- Unique separation 1031
- unique separations
 - variable mark 1001
- Unit Used for Variable Marks options 483, 538, 588, 614, 689
- Unlinked Only check box 971
- unlinking 969, 978
- Unload Media check box 476, 531, 580, 613
- Unnamed list 209
- unsupported CT/LW and TIFF/IT files 153
- updating Workshop 6
- UpFront 1105
- uploading files for InSite 84
- Use Custom File Naming check box 469, 524, 575, 578
- Use Custom Location check box 910
- Use Custom TIFF Title Tag check box 471, 526, 583
- Use Default (Blank) Thumbnails check box 1036
- Use Default Location check box 932
- Use document's screening, if present option 637
- Use existing page set option 991
- Use Existing Page Set option 368, 1074
- Use existing Preps job check box 1074
- Use Full Spot Color Names check box 469, 524, 578
- Use Job Favorites As Default check box 1036
- Use Large Icons in Tab Button Panel check box 1036
- Use Page Offsets menu item 63
- Use Prinergy-Defined File Naming check box 469, 524, 578
- Use Recipe from File if not found in Color Database check box 221, 440, 497, 551, 596
- Use Smart Hot Folder's Source Pattern check box 932
- Use System Fonts check box 202
- Use Web Growth Profile, if available box 501, 556
- Use Xerox FreeFlow Print Manager check box 479, 534
- User column 846, 1053
- User Comment box 174, 177
- user favorites
 - about 29
 - adding process templates 31
 - options 58
 - switching users 1096
- User Favorites tab 58
- User Name box 5, 102, 368
- User Name column 51, 856, 1041, 1058
- user name, in title bar 29
- user switching 1096
- User tab, Color Editor window 788
- User tab, Font Installation dialog box 320
- User tab, Process Template pane 52
- user-defined
 - color library 781, 793
 - folders 84
 - Workshop preferences 1033, 1035
- UserDefinedFolders folder, job folders 84
- users, switching 1096, 1099

V

- Variable Mainscan Imaging area 580

- variable marks 1001
 - variables
 - custom file names 657
 - PrintLink 746, 747
 - varnishes
 - about 830
 - Illustrator 127
 - layering pages 345, 348
 - naming 830
 - preparing input files 1025
 - QuarkXPress issue 257
 - using 831
 - vector output 625
 - vector output files 620
 - Vector Output Options area 471, 526, 583
 - vector PDF files 997
 - Verify Archive check box 892
 - Verify that all layers are linked list 981
 - verifying a disk is readable 891
 - verifying a tape is readable 891
 - Veris
 - ICC profiles 758
 - output format 620
 - process template 758
 - Veris/Matchprint output 625
 - version change layers 987
 - Version Names box 967
 - version number, file name 661
 - Version Plan view 1013
 - version plans 946, 950, 965, 966, 985
 - changing 985
 - creating 946, 965
 - defined 946
 - example 946
 - layers 950
 - Quick Builder 965
 - requirements 966
 - versioned page 991, 1010
 - number 1010
 - prefix 1010
 - Versioned Page Status column 986
 - versioned pages 944, 950, 970, 977, 981, 1007
 - adding 970
 - defined 944
 - names 970, 1007
 - numbers 977
 - virtual 950, 981
 - Versioned Pages view
 - filtering 970
 - versioning 941
 - Versioning menu for linking 972
 - Versioning Proof Mapping Color box 452, 510, 606
 - versioning, layered PDF 941
 - versioning, legacy
 - about 1022
 - about steps 1024
 - copying source page assignments 1027
 - importing impositions 1025, 1026
 - layering pages 345, 348
 - options 1028
 - outputting 620
 - outputting separations 1031
 - preparing input files 1025
 - reordering page layers 1027
 - versions
 - column 968
 - defined 944
 - deleting 969
 - from template job 961
 - names best practices 966
 - Vertical Gutter Width box 445, 600
 - View tab, Workshop Preferences dialog box 1036
 - viewing
 - pages 326
 - PDF Preflight reports 275
 - PDFs 323
 - soft proofs 636
 - traps 326
 - viewing information about
 - disk volumes 890
 - job history 51, 862
 - jobs 97, 102
 - processes 839, 841, 846
 - tapes 890
 - viewing PDF layers 987
 - views, customizing
 - changing 16, 30, 107
 - displaying columns 1034
 - hiding columns 1034
 - views, Job Manager
 - History 51
 - Pages 33
 - Separations 46
 - Signatures 39
 - Storage 48
 - Virtual Proofing software 997
 - Virtual Proofing System 84, 620, 636, 650
 - Virtual Proofing System output 625
 - visible columns
 - recommended 986
 - Visible Columns dialog box, Job Finder 1044
 - Visible Columns dialog box, Job Manager
 - History view 1041
 - Imposition Plans pane 1041
 - Input Files pane 1043
 - Page Sets pane 1050
 - Pages pane 1050
 - Separations view 1055
 - Storage view 1057
 - Visible Columns dialog box, Media Manager 1047
 - Visible Columns dialog box, Queue Manager 1053
 - Visible Columns dialog box, System History 1058
 - Visible Columns menu item 22, 66, 851, 858
 - VP prefix 1007
- W**
- Waiting for a user action icon 840

- warn option
 - all layers linked 981
 - Warn option 981
 - warning icon 840
 - Warning Message icon 51
 - warning messages 855
 - Web Access area 91
 - Web Access Customer column 16, 1044
 - Web Access Customer field 103
 - web access to jobs 1092, 1096
 - web growth 729-731, 734, 736, 739
 - about profile 729
 - calculating 736
 - nonlinear 731
 - profile file 730, 736
 - removing 739
 - sheetfed 734
 - trapezoidal 734
 - unapplying 739
 - Web Growth Profile Name column 39, 46, 1041
 - Web Growth Profile Name field 53
 - Web Growth Profile Path column 39, 46, 1041
 - Web Growth Profile Path field 53
 - WebAnnotatedProofs folder 1093
 - WebAnnotatedProofs folder, job folders 84
 - WebDownloads folder 1093
 - WebDownloads folder, job folders 84
 - Webs options 358
 - WebUploads folder 1093
 - WebUploads folder, job folders 84
 - Weight box 479, 534
 - wgp files 729, 739
 - White objects do not knock out check box 300
 - White text does not knock out check box 300
 - Width box 209, 534
 - Width/Height boxes 233
 - wild cards
 - page name patterns 1007
 - wild cards, Automatic Production Automation (APA)
 - 385, 398, 401, 412
 - wild cards, smart hot folders 914, 919
 - Windows bitmap output 625
 - Windows Bitmap output format 620
 - Work in Progress page approval status 1093
 - Work Type list 174, 177
 - work types
 - about 1096
 - customizing 1097
 - entering 1097
 - options 1098, 1099
 - workflow 76, 814, 963, 968
 - alternate 963, 968
 - spot colors 814
 - workflow template menu item 23, 68
 - workflow templates
 - about 937
 - and hot folders 907
 - creating 938
 - modifying 938
 - settings 939
 - using 938
 - workflows 75-79, 905, 1095
 - diagram 76
 - flat-based 79
 - InSite 1095
 - summary 76
 - workflows/Direct 76
 - Working Disk Space to Allocate for Retrieved Files box 892
 - Workshop 4, 6, 12, 325, 1035
 - plug-ins to Adobe Acrobat 325
 - preferences 1035
 - Prinerger Client Install Wizard 6
 - quitting 12
 - starting 4
 - updating 6
 - versions 4
 - Workshop Language list 1036
 - Workshop Preferences dialog box 1036
 - Workshop Version field 5
 - Workstyle column 39, 46, 1041, 1055
 - Workstyle field 53
 - wpg files 739
- ## X
- Xerox DocuColor 669
 - Xerox DocuPrint 669
 - Xerox DocuSP 669
 - Xerox DocuTech 669
 - Xerox FreeFlow Print Manager 669
 - Xerox FreeFlow Print Manager Controls area 479, 534
 - XSLT file 120
- ## Y
- yellow ruling, limit 459, 513, 565
- ## Z
- z-order 989
 - Zip Filename box 174
 - zip files 906, 912

Kodak



Eastman Kodak Company
343 State Street
Rochester, NY 14650 U.S.A.

© Kodak, 2012. All Rights Reserved.
TM: Kodak

To learn more about solutions from Kodak, visit <http://graphics.kodak.com>.

Subject to technical change without notice.